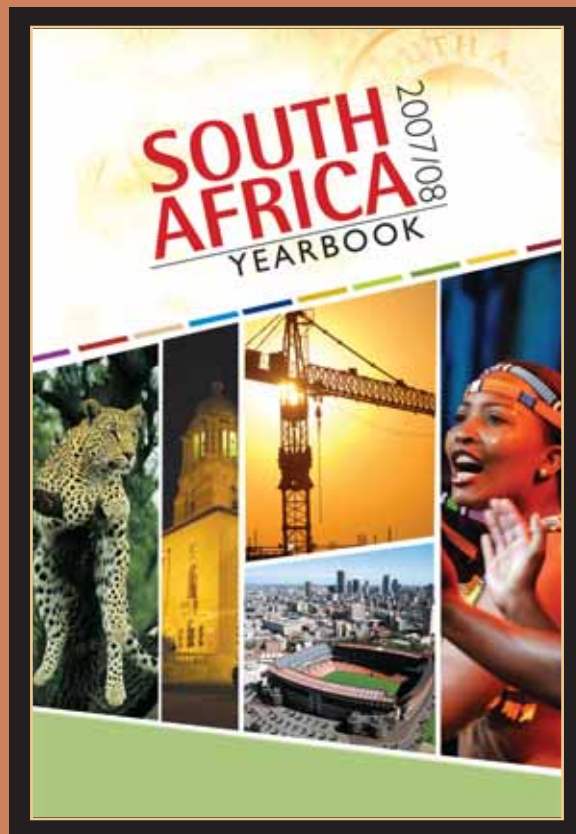
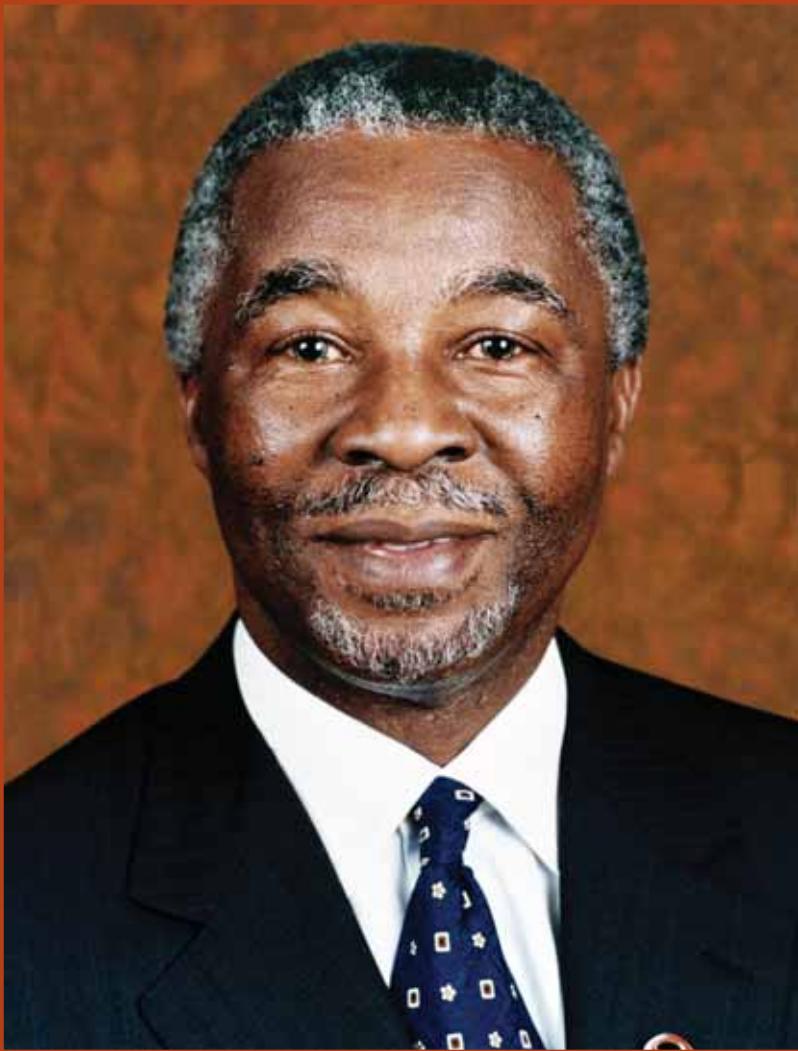






FOREWORD

As in previous editions, the *South Africa Yearbook 2007/08* gives a comprehensive account of the programmes and policies of our government as well as the current state of the South African nation.

I am proud to give this brief foreword because through this *Yearbook* it is clear that since we attained our freedom in 1994 we have made important advances towards the goal of a better life for all.

The advances of last year, similar to those of the preceding years, indicate that while the challenges of poverty and underdevelopment are acute, we have, however, laid the necessary basis for a sustained, comprehensive and integrated development of our country.

Of particular importance, our economy is now growing at a faster rate than the country's population. This economic growth, coupled with prudent fiscal regime, have helped us to be in a better position to address poverty and underdevelopment.

Clearly one of the critical challenges is the delivery of good and reliable services for our people. In this regard, in 2007, 88,6% of South Africans enjoyed access to piped water; 80% of households in South Africa are using electricity for lighting, and unemployment decreased by 2,5% since 2003. We continue to provide free healthcare to children under six years, pregnant and lactating women; and to people with disabilities.

The National Strategic Plan for HIV and AIDS and Sexually Transmitted Diseases for 2007 – 2011 gives the country a holistic view on how to respond to this challenge. It aims to reduce the number of new HIV infections by 50% by 2011; and reduce the impact of HIV and AIDS on individuals, families, communities and society by expanding access to appropriate treatment, care and support to 80% of all affected people.

Over the past year alone, an amount of R100 million was allocated for bursaries in further education and training (FET) colleges, benefiting more than 12 500 students. Government has also committed R2 billion for the systematic modernising and development of the FET college sector.

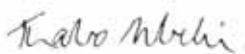
The Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA) and the Joint Initiative on Priority Skills Acquisition are some of our country's strategic interventions for economic growth and development. The successful implementation of AsgiSA will result in greater scope for faster growth. The continued promotion of access to government programmes and economic opportunities brought by democracy is being intensified to ensure that all people, particularly women and youths, benefit. Land restitution continues apace.

The fight against crime has intensified through partnerships with various stakeholders to create safer communities for all. Our goal is to reduce crime levels by between 7% and 10%, giving special focus to crime prevention, integrated law-enforcement operations and the reduction of repeat offending. The South African Police Service's strategic plan for 2005 to 2010 sets out several operational priorities, including combating organised crime, serious and violent crime and crime against women and children.

As the first African hosts of the prestigious FIFA World Cup in 2010, we are excited about the positive spin-offs the tournament will bring for our country and Africa. Investments and programmes for the World Cup will accelerate delivery and the achievement of the development goals and the target economic growth rate in the continent. We say again: *Africa's time has come! South Africa is ready!*

Government is aware that although there have been huge strides, there are still many challenges. We remain committed to working in partnership with all South Africans to create a better life for all.

The *South Africa Yearbook 2007/08* is an important resource and a critical barometer of the advances we are making towards a better life for all.



President Thabo Mbeki
January 2008



South Africa Yearbook 2007/08

Fifteenth edition

Originally published as *South Africa Official Yearbook*

ISSN 0302-0681

Editor: Delien Burger

Assistant editor: Elias Tibane

Editorial support: Ongezwa Manyathi, Cecilia de Vos Belgraver, Antonia Vermeulen and Marié Henning

Photographs supplied by the Government Communication and Information System (GCIS), Department of Foreign Affairs, Satour and Photos.com

Cover design: Neville Rabie

Design and layout: Chris-Mark Prins

Proofreader: Kathleen Bartels for Wordsmiths

Suggested reading lists: Prof Reuben Musiker

Compiled, edited and published by GCIS

Private Bag X745, Pretoria, 0001

Telephone: 012 314-2911, Fax: 012 323-0557

Website: www.gcis.gov.za

Printed and bound in the Republic of South Africa by Formeset Printers

ISBN 978-0-621-37568-8

ISSN 1022-9515

Library of Congress Catalogue Card Number: 57-40609

The *South Africa Yearbook* is compiled and edited by the GCIS. The editorial staff has taken all reasonable care to ensure correctness of facts and statistics. However, any person requiring formal confirmation of any data in the *Yearbook*, or more detailed specific information, should consult the contributors. The information is also available on Government Online (www.gov.za).

Unless otherwise specified, the information contained in this book was the latest available in October 2007.



Contents

Overview

Governance and Administration (G&A)	i – xxii
Cluster	ii – v
Social Cluster	v – ix
Economic Cluster	ix – xiv
Justice, Crime Prevention and Security (JCPS) Cluster	xiv – xvii
International Relations, Peace and Security (IRPS) Cluster	xvii – xx
Key challenges of the Second Decade of Freedom	xx – xxi

Chapter 1

The land and its people

The people	1 – 2
The land	2 – 6
The provinces	6 – 8
	8 – 25

Chapter 2

History

	29 – 48
The early inhabitants	29
The early colonial period	30 – 31
The British Colonial era	31 – 33
The mineral revolution	33 – 34
The Anglo-Boer/South African War (October 1899 – May 1902) and its aftermath	34 – 35
Segregation	35 – 37
Apartheid	37 – 38
The end of apartheid	38 – 41
The First Decade of Freedom	41 – 43
Into the Second Decade of Freedom	43 – 44

Chapter 3

Agriculture and land affairs

	49 – 80
Strategic Plan for South African Agriculture	50
Agricultural economy	50
Genetically modified organisms (GMOs)	50 – 51
Sustainable resource management and use	51
Production	51 – 60
Veterinary services	60 – 61
Pest control	61
Marketing	61 – 62
Land administration	62

Food security	62 – 63
Risk management	63
Credit assistance	63 – 68
Training and research	68
International relations	68 – 70
Import and export control	70 – 74
Land affairs	74 – 77

Chapter 4

Arts and Culture

	81 – 110
National symbols	82 – 83
Arts and culture organisations	83 – 84
Arts institutions	84 – 86
Arts and culture initiatives	86 – 89
Education and training	89
Access to arts	89
Cultural tourism	90
Cultural industries	90 – 91
International relations	91
Arts festivals	91 – 92
Theatre	92
Music	92 – 94
Dance	94 – 95
Visual arts	95
Photography	95 – 96
Architecture	96
Rock art	96
Crafts	97
Design	97 – 98
Literature	98
Film	99 – 101
Museums	101 – 104
Archives and heraldry	104
Library and Information Services (LIS) sector	104 – 106

Chapter 5

Communications

	111 – 136
Telecommunications	112 – 114
Public entities and agencies reporting to the Minister of Communications	114
Presidential National Commission on Information, Society and Development (PNC on ISAD)	115
Internet	115
Telkom	115 – 116
Mobile communications	116 – 117

Liberalisation	117
The postal sector	117 – 119
The media	119 – 127
Media organisations and role-players	127 – 130
Media diversity	130 – 133
Advertising	133 – 134

Chapter 6 Economy **137 – 170**

Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA)	138 – 139
Economic indicators	139 – 142
Price inflation	142 – 143
Exchange rates	143
Foreign trade and payments	143 – 144
Department of Trade and Industry	144 – 161
State-owned enterprises (SOEs)	161 – 163
Public works programmes	163 – 164
Employment and skills development	164 – 167

Chapter 7 Education **171 – 192**

Education structures	172 – 174
Statutory bodies	174 – 177
Equity in education expenditure	177 – 178
Education policy	178 – 185
Education management and governance development	185 – 186
Education infrastructure	186 – 187
School safety measures	187
Human Resource Development Strategy	187
HIV and AIDS	187
Educational portal	188
Partnerships, international relations and funding	188 – 189
Libraries	189 – 190

Chapter 8 Environmental management **193 – 220**

Policy and legislation	194 – 195
State of the environment	195 – 196
Biological diversity	196 – 198
Preserving biodiversity	198 – 204
Conservation areas	204 – 209
Marine resources	209 – 211
Conservation challenges	211 – 218
International co-operation	218 – 219
Private-sector involvement	219

Chapter 9 Finance **221 – 252**

Fiscal policy framework	222
Debt management	222 – 223
Legislation	223 – 226
Financial Services Sector Charter	226
National Treasury	226 – 228
Financial Intelligence Centre	228
Financial and Fiscal Commission (FFC)	228 – 229
Budget Council	229
Public Investment Corporation (PIC)	229
Macroeconomic strategy	229 – 230
South African Revenue Service	230 – 233
Gambling	233 – 235
Auditor-General	235
Financial sector	235 – 242
Financial markets	243 – 246
Exchange control	246 – 248
JSE Limited	248 – 250
Bond Exchange of South Africa	250
Strate Limited	251
Financial sector continuity planning	251

Chapter 10 Foreign relations **253 – 294**

South Africa and Africa	254 – 267
Relations with Asia and the Middle East	267 – 272
Relations with the Americas	272 – 275
Relations with Europe	275 – 281
Multilateral diplomacy	281 – 293

Chapter 11 Government system **295 – 326**

The Constitution	296
Government	296 – 306
Government and communication	306 – 307
International Marketing Council	307 – 308
Co-operative governance	308
Elections	308 – 309
Disaster management	309
The Public Service	309 – 319
Home affairs	320 – 323

Chapter 12 Health **327 – 348**

Statutory bodies	328
Health authorities	328 – 329

Health budget	329
Health policy	329 – 332
Health team	332 – 335
Costs and medical schemes	336
Community health	336 – 340
Reproductive health	340 – 341
Environmental health	341
Traditional medicine	341 – 342
Tobacco control	342 – 343
Alcohol and substance abuse	343
Violence against women and children	343 – 344
Birth defects	344
Oral health	344
Chronic diseases, disabilities and geriatrics	344 – 345
Occupational health	345
Mental health	345
Quarantable diseases	346
Consumer goods	346
Integrated Nutrition Programme (INP) and food security	346

Chapter 13

Housing	349 – 360
Legislation and policy	350 – 353
Capacity-building	353 – 355
Housing institutions	356 – 358

Chapter 14

Justice and correctional services	361 – 396
Judicial system	362 – 374
Human rights	374
Crime prevention	374
Integrated justice system (IJS)	374 – 376
Legislative and constitutional development	376 – 377
Legal structures	377 – 382
Correctional services	382 – 394

Chapter 15

Minerals, energy and geology	397 – 426
Policy	398 – 399
Black Economic Empowerment (BEE)	399 – 400
Mining industry	400 – 403
Mineral wealth	403 – 405
Energy	405 – 413

Electricity	413 – 416
Biomass	416 – 417
Renewable energy	417 – 418
Solar	418 – 419
Wind	419 – 420
Hydro	420
Energy and the environment	421 – 422
Geology	422 – 425

Chapter 16

Safety, security and defence	427 – 454
Safety and security	428
South African Police Service	428 – 437
Business Against Crime (BAC)	437 – 438
Presidential Working Group on Big Business	438 – 439
Defence	439 – 447
Armaments	447 – 451
Intelligence services	451 – 452

Chapter 17

Science and technology	455 – 486
Legislation	456
National System of Innovation	456 – 457
Promoting niche areas	458 – 460
Policy and initiatives	461 – 465
International science and technology operations	465 – 466
National Research Foundation	466 – 471
Science councils	471 – 481
Other scientific research organisations and structures	481 – 482
General research areas	482 – 484
Private-sector involvement	484 – 485

Chapter 18

Social development	487 – 506
Legislation	488 – 489
Comprehensive social security	489 – 491
Combating fraud and corruption	491
Social relief	491
Health insurance	491 – 492
Community development and sustainable livelihoods	492 – 493
Responding to the impact of HIV and AIDS	493 – 495

Promoting and protecting the rights of vulnerable groups	495 – 501	Achieving sustainable forest management	604 – 605
United Nations Population Fund		Legislation	605
Second Country Support Programme for South Africa	501 – 502	Indigenous forests	605 – 607
Welfare services	502 – 503	Research and training	607
Statutory bodies	503	Community forestry	607
Non-profit organisations (NPOs)	503 – 504	Food and Trees for Africa (FTFA)	607
Chapter 19		Addendum	609
Sport and recreation	507 – 522	Index	653
Programmes	508 – 512		
International affairs	512		
Sporting accolades	512		
Legislation	512		
2010 World Cup	512 – 513		
Sports organisations	513 – 515		
2007 sports highlights	515 – 520		
Chapter 20			
Tourism	523 – 560		
Tourism policy and initiatives	525 – 531		
Hints for the tourist	531 – 534		
Tourism in the provinces	534 – 557		
Chapter 21			
Transport	561 – 584		
Policy	562 – 563		
Public entities and other agencies	564 – 565		
Transnet Limited	565		
Road transport	565		
Public transport	566 – 571		
Rail transport	571 – 573		
Civil aviation	573 – 578		
Ports	578 – 580		
Pipelines	580		
Maritime affairs	580 – 582		
Chapter 22			
Water affairs and forestry	585 – 608		
Hydrological conditions	586 – 587		
Water-resource management and development	587 – 590		
Municipal Infrastructure Grant	590 – 591		
Policy and legislation	591 – 594		
Water-management institutions	594 – 599		
Forestry	599 – 604		



SA YEARBOOK 2007/08 | OVERVIEW



The advent of democracy presented government with twin challenges:

- the need for institutional transformation and the introduction of new policies in line with the democratic Constitution
- the need to deal with the legacy of apartheid in South Africa, while integrating the country in a rapidly changing global environment.

From 1994, the State set out to dismantle apartheid social relations and to create a democratic society based on equity, non-racialism and non-sexism.

New policies and programmes have been put in place to dramatically improve the quality of life of all South Africans.

This process, defined in the Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP), has been elaborated in all post-1994 policies. The RDP identifies the following key objectives:

- meeting basic needs
- building the economy
- democratising the State and society
- developing human resources (HR)
- building the nation.

The RDP objectives were elaborated to include more specific priorities of different government clusters and departments.

The *First Decade of Freedom* review, conducted by government in 2003, assessed how far these objectives had been met through the work of its five clusters, and identified challenges of the Second Decade of Freedom. This review was supplemented in 2006 by a report on macrosocial trends.

The report, entitled *A Nation in the Making*, concluded that South African society was making advances in terms of both hard (socio-economic) and soft (identity and social cohesion) issues, but that there were still many challenges to be overcome to fully realise the vision of a better life for all.

In 2007, Cabinet approved a set of key development indicators to provide evidence-based pointers to the evolution of our society.

Based in part on the *Ten Year Review's* human-development indicators, they are markers that help define the milestones in the journey of social change.

Governance and Administration (G&A) Cluster

The first years of democracy saw the introduction of a new constitutional and legislative framework. The Constitution was adopted in 1996 and an average of 90 Acts of new legislation were introduced per year in the first 10 years.

New global standards of governance are also emerging. These include governance reforms and performance areas.

Citizens of developing countries are demanding better performance on the part of their governments, and are increasingly aware of the costs of poor management, corruption and lack of delivery in certain areas. South Africa is no exception. A compendium of development indicators has been identified for government-wide monitoring and evaluation (M&E) to measure government's performance in both the medium and long term. The indicators will measure progress in:

- governance and institutional quality
- social development and poverty alleviation
- economic development and growth indicators
- justice, peace and security
- international relations.

These indicators are deemed most appropriate to South Africa's current particular needs and will be refined over time.

During the first decade, a major new architecture of institutions was created, spanning the three spheres of government. Many procedures and practices were revised in line with international best practice. Significant personnel mobility brought in new skills and motivated people, though it also led to the loss of experience and institutional memory, especially regarding civil servants recruited after 1994.

The combined impact of these changes has meant that state institutions are still undergoing significant growing pains and face the danger of remaining in a permanent and debilitating state of flux.

In the 13 years of democracy, government has established public entities to allow flexibility in conditions of service, to retain income from revenue raised, to expedite systems such as procurement, to ensure operational autonomy, and



to implement commercial principles and practices. These public entities receive considerable state funding and employ more than 280 000 people.

The Public Service Commission released its sixth *Annual State of the Public Service* report in April 2007. From the overview provided in this report, it is clear that significant milestones have been achieved by government. These include an average economic growth rate of almost 5%, the lowering of inflation, and improving the competitiveness and governance ratings of the country internationally. These measures reflect well on the country and have resulted in its successful reintegration into the global economic and political spheres of power.

The report concluded that the solid work that has taken place in the Public Service over the past decade must be maintained and improved upon. In a more competitive global context, it is important that government rallies all sections of society around a common vision and collective programme of growth and development. Ultimately, it is through such a partnership approach that a momentum for change can be sustained and optimal results achieved.

In the Public Service, various legal and regulatory frameworks, policies and programmes provide the parameters that guide good governance.

The introduction of the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), improved accountability in government and to Parliament. Implementation of this Act and the change to a medium-term budget cycle have improved budgeting, and national and provincial financial management. The challenge remains to include local government within government's budgeting and planning cycles.

National Treasury has published over 20 circulars, which give guidance to municipalities on budgeting, accounting systems, procurement and other aspects of financial management so that municipal councils have suitable instruments to hold their executive and management teams accountable for the resources and services for which they are responsible.

Since 2004, the G&A Cluster has undertaken critical work in support of municipalities through Project Consolidate by deploying engineering, financial management and other technical experts. By July 2007, 291 infrastructure projects, valued at R1,5 billion, were receiving implementation support. The infrastructure projects typically focus on service-delivery programmes. Following on

from Project Consolidate's hands-on support to local government, it also addresses institutional capacity and policy refinement.

Government is working on proposals for the establishment of a single public service to allow for skills and human resource (HR) allocation across the three spheres of government. This work will also enhance implementation of the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005 (Act 13 of 2005).

The Single Public Service project is an attempt to remove artificial barriers between spheres of government, eliminate duplication of services and create through a single window of access and one-stop shop experience. This will facilitate an integrated service-delivery model across the three spheres of government. The July 2007 Cabinet Lekgotla approved that consultations on the Single Public Service Bill should commence.

The battle against corruption remains high on government's agenda. Government departments have been provided with a new guide to establishing minimum anti-corruption capacity. The revised guide provides practical examples of successful implementation. The National Anti-Corruption Forum (NACF) has strengthened the country's partnership approach to promote ethical conduct.

The NACF is yielding positive results. South Africa's anti-corruption drive has a strong public participation dimension, whereby citizens are encouraged to actively play a role in reporting acts of corruption. By 30 November 2006, 2 297 allegations of corruption relating to national and provincial departments had been reported through the National Anti-Corruption Hotline.

As part of the anti-corruption initiatives, South Africa hosted the Africa Forum on Fighting Corruption from 28 February to 2 March 2007, as a precursor to the Global Forum V on Fighting Corruption and Safeguarding Integrity, which was hosted by South Africa from 2 April to 5 April 2007. The forum provided a platform to discuss societal values, national integrity systems and the role of leadership in promoting ethical values in all sectors of society.

The Africa Forum and Global Forum have established a new continental and global understanding of and debate on corruption and its impact on development. The forums gave South Africa the opportunity to shape global anti-corruption discourse and identified the need to address the root causes of corruption, which is a structural global phenomenon involving all sectors

of society, and which affects both developed and developing countries.

There is a skills shortage in critical areas, which is exacerbated by the competition for skills from the private sector and abroad. Government launched the Joint Initiative on Priority Skills Acquisition (Jipsa) in March 2006. Jipsa sets skills priorities in support of the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa's (AsgiSA) economic growth objectives. It advises on aligning the training and skills-development efforts of the public and private sectors with the objectives of AsgiSA, without undermining the development and implementation of longer-term human-resource development (HRD) strategies.

Jipsa provides an inclusive platform through which the social partners can demonstrate their commitment to HR and skills development, deliver on both short- and medium-term skills targets, and strengthen the existing mechanisms for skills delivery.

The National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP) was developed to facilitate dialogue between and within spheres about the country's spatial priorities for infrastructure investment and development spending.

The introduction of integrated development plans (IDPs), the cluster approach, the Forum of South African Directors-Generals, the Presidential Co-ordinating Council and the restructured Cabinet committees are all contributing to better co-ordination of policy-making and implementation. IDPs were adopted by all municipalities by the end of July 2007, which represented the first 100% adoption rate since the introduction of IDPs.

By August 2007, the pilot project for the harmonisation of the NSDP, provincial growth and development strategies (PGDSs) and IDPs had been concluded in all identified 13 pilot areas.

In an effort to improve service delivery, Thusong Service Centres (former multipurpose community centres) have been set up to provide information and services to the public. Norms and standards for service delivery at Thusong Service Centres have been developed as part of the service-level agreements with departmental and other service-providers. These service-providers will be trained in Batho Pele principles. By bringing together the

services of many departments, such as health, social development and home affairs, Thusong Service Centres are critical in ensuring that information and services are brought closer to communities. In areas where there are no formal Thusong Service Centres, the Government Communication and Information System (GCIS) is working with other providers of information, ranging from police stations to council offices, to establish Thusong Information Points. By May 2007, agreement had been reached on over 500 such points.

By October 2007, there were 96 operational Thusong Service Centres.

The Batho Pele Gateway, consisting of an Internet portal for information about services and backed up by a call centre, is making comprehensive information about government services available round the clock. This is a resource specifically for Thusong Service Centres, citizen post offices and other intermediaries such as community development workers (CDWs) and organisations.

The decision to introduce CDWs was taken in 2003 as a measure to enhance access to government's socio-economic programmes. By August 2007, 3 011 CDWs were deployed in over 2 000 wards across the country. A further 645 learners were expected to enter the learnership programme by the end of August 2007.

Each year, government defines its Programme of Action for the year to advance implementation of its electoral mandate. The programme is defined by the January Cabinet Lekgotla, attended by ministers, deputy ministers, premiers and senior officials.

The President announces the programme in the State of the Nation Address at the beginning of the parliamentary year and it is further elaborated in a week of media briefings at that time by the ministerial clusters.

Reflecting the emphasis on implementation in the Second Decade of Freedom, an M&E system was initiated at the start of the term of office of the Government elected in 2004. Clusters report every two months to Cabinet on progress in implementing the programme, and identify challenges and problems as well as remedial measures. A mid-year lekgotla in July reviews implementation and identifies emerging priorities.



The Programme of Action and the results of the bimonthly cycle of reporting are communicated to the public in various ways – through the Government website, through regular ministerial media briefings, through mass multimedia communication via print and broadcast media, and through information products produced by government. Communication is structured to promote the widest dissemination, including to people with the least access to media.

The framework for a government-wide M&E system has been approved by Cabinet. By July 2007, the system was being developed. The aim is to create a dashboard reflecting public-sector performance and other statistical information. The government-wide M&E system processes information from a wide range of sources, such as government's transversal systems, including the National Statistical System of Statistics South Africa.

M&E of local government at provincial level has been greatly strengthened, with M&E units established in eight out of nine premiers' offices and six out of nine provincial local government departments.

Intergovernmental relations have been significantly strengthened through the implementation of the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005.

Government must continue with what it has started, only more diligently and more vigorously. Improved capacity of the State to deliver social services requires greater capacity in national departments and attention to some provincial and local weaknesses.

Compliance with regulations is high, but there are some weaknesses with regard to government's capacity to involve the informal sector in adhering to their civic obligations. Success in fighting corruption is slow but notable.

The key challenges for the Second Decade of Freedom include:

- improving service delivery by building the necessary institutions and initiatives
- using the NSDP to focus government's attention on localities with the greatest potential for development, and on poverty alleviation while rebuilding other areas
- building the organisation and capacity of government with special emphasis on the local government system
- improving accountability to, and contact with, citizens at all spheres of government
- developing and maintaining partnerships with

civil society, with the emphasis on practical programmes

- providing leadership to social partners through the articulation of an encompassing framework for South Africa's development in the next decade and beyond
- developing and implementing the government-wide M&E system.

Three years into the Second Decade of Freedom, good progress is being made in meeting these challenges.

Social Cluster

The central programme of the social sector focuses on poverty alleviation through programmes that address income, human capital and asset poverty.

It is in this intersection between access to services, income and assets that the issue of overall poverty trends since 1994 should be examined.

Inequality, as measured at household level before and after factoring in social spending by the State, shows that the impact of social spending (including the tax effect) reduced the degree of inequality massively due to a redirection of spending to the poor since 1994 (see *Towards a Ten Year Review* and *A Nation in the Making*).

Government's approach deals with poverty on multiple fronts: basic income security aimed at providing safety nets for the most vulnerable; basic services and other non-financial transfers (social wage), including free basic municipal services like water, electricity, refuse removal, education and primary healthcare for the poor; addressing asset poverty by accelerating delivery of houses and land-reform programmes; HRD initiatives, which focus on skilling the poor to improve employment prospects; and second-economy initiatives such as the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP); AsgiSA; and small and medium enterprise initiatives.

According to the *Development Indicators* released in 2007 by the Policy Co-ordination and Advisory Services (PCAS) in The Presidency, poverty has been reduced, especially after 2000:

- in real terms, the income of the poorest has improved
- the number of people in Living Standards Measures (LSMs) 1 to 3 has decreased and those in higher LSMs have increased
- the percentage of the population living on less than R3 000 per year (constant rand for the year 2000) has decreased from 50% to 43%
- some 12 million people receive social grants.

The release, for the first time, of the *Development Indicators* by government reflects progress in establishing a government-wide M&E system. The *Development Indicators* provide pointers to the evolution of our society up to the middle of this government's term, two-and-half years after the April 2004 election. In addition to promoting effective planning and implementation, the publication of the indicators is intended as a contribution to public discourse on the progress South Africa is making towards the ideals inscribed in the Constitution.

The review of the state of poverty in South Africa is expected to be completed by March 2008, while by mid-2007, the Anti-Poverty Framework was being developed.

Social grants are no longer allocated on a racial basis as was the case under apartheid. Grants are targeted at, among others, pensioners, poor families with children, war veterans and families taking care of children and people in need.

With regard to social assistance and social insurance, 3,2% of gross domestic product (GDP) is going in the form of social grants to 12,7 million beneficiaries, and the South African Social Security Agency (SASSA) is fully functional, helping to reduce inefficiencies in the social grant system.

The establishment of the Government Employees Medical Scheme has extended medical cover to employees previously not covered by medical schemes.

One of the key programmes launched by government is the EPWP, which is operational in all provinces.

The EPWP is on course to reach its target of one million job opportunities in five years. At least 485 000 net work opportunities were created through the EPWP since inception in 2003 to December 2006.

The EPWP focuses on ensuring that labour-intensive methods are used in government service-delivery programmes in the infrastructure, environmental, culture, social and economic sectors. It provides on-the-job training to those participating so that they will be better equipped to find permanent employment afterwards.

Between 1994 and August 2007, government injected more than R44,1 billion into housing,

which delivered security of tenure, and built 2,4 million houses.

By the end of the 2006/07 financial year, the Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights had settled 93% of the 79 696 claims lodged. It still had to settle an outstanding 5 279 rural claims.

Access to electricity, water and sanitation has improved. By 2005, South Africa had already achieved the Millennium Development Goal in respect of basic water supply, with improvement of access to 83% in 2006. According to the United Nations Development Programme (UNDP), South Africa is one of the few countries that spend less on military budgets than on water and sanitation. According to the *UNDP Human Development Report* of 2006:

"South Africa has demonstrated how the human right to water can serve as a mechanism for empowerment and a guide to policy ... Rights-based water reform has enabled it to expand access and overcome the legacy of racial inequality inherited from apartheid, partly through rights-based entitlements."

In 2006, 1,2 million people received access to basic water, contributing to government's target of eradicating the backlog of people without access to water by 2008. An additional 250 000 households received access to basic sanitation.

By August 2007, 149 863 bucket toilets had been removed around the country compared with the initial backlog of 252 254 in February 2005.

For the medium-term expenditure period of 2005/06 to 2007/08, a budget of R1,2 billion was allocated for bucket eradication under the Municipal Infrastructure Grant programme. In 2005/06, R200 million was allocated to municipalities with capacity to deliver or had already initiated the Bucket Eradication Programme. In 2006/07, R400 million was allocated to municipalities with some capacity but which required support. In 2007/08, R600 million was allocated to municipalities with no capacity and those that received the bucket allocation for the first time. The allocation was increased by a further R400 million at the beginning of 2007.

By July 2007, free basic services reached 74% of the population. By April 2007, access to water had increased from 59% of households in 1994 to

86%; and access to sanitation had increased to 71% from 50% in 1994.

The electrification programme has seen 3,5 million homes electrified between 1994 and 2006. In line with the Integrated National Electrification Programme, government has established the Free Basic Electricity Programme according to which people earning below a certain income bracket receive a free monthly allocation of 50 KWh. By 2006, some 9,6 million households had access to electricity. More than 4,2 million new electrical connections had been made since 1995.

To make the health system more equitable, efficient and effective, the Department of Health is undertaking a complete transformation of the health delivery system.

By April 2007, 1 600 clinics had either been built or upgraded since 1995 and 11 new hospitals built since 1998.

Free healthcare is provided to children under six years of age, pregnant and lactating women and to people with disabilities.

In South Africa, it is recommended that children under the age of five be immunised against the most common childhood diseases. Immunisation should be administered at birth, six weeks, 10 weeks, 14 weeks, nine months, 18 months and five years of age. Childhood immunisations are given to prevent polio, tuberculosis (TB), diphtheria, pertussis, tetanus, haemophilus influenzae type B, hepatitis B and measles.

Government has implemented several immunisation campaigns, resulting in the overall immunisation coverage increasing to 83% by July 2007. In addition, the country has been declared polio-free by the Africa Regional Certification Commission, which is a subcommittee of the Global Certification Commission.

The National School Nutrition Programme (NSNP) provides school meals for children to enhance active learning capacities and to improve attendance patterns at targeted schools. By April 2007, the NSNP was reaching 5,9 million learners in 18 000 schools.

A number of schools participating in the NSNP have established vegetable gardens to enrich the nutritional value of the meals served in schools.

The National Strategic Plan (NSP) for HIV and AIDS and STIs for 2007 – 2011 is a comprehensive and holistic approach that is designed to guide the country's response to the pandemic. The targets set out in the plan have been informed by broad and comprehensive consultation with civil society, South African scientists, labour, business,

traditional leaders, lobby groups and health workers who have extensive experience in the area of HIV and AIDS.

The plan is implemented rigorously in partnership with all of civil society, as co-ordinated by the South African National AIDS Council and the Inter-Ministerial Committee, under the leadership of the Deputy President of South Africa, Ms Phumzile Mlambo-Ngcuka.

The primary aims of the NSP are to:

- reduce the number of new HIV infections by 50% by 2011
 - reduce the impact of HIV and AIDS on individuals, families, communities and society by expanding access to appropriate treatment, care and support to 80% of all people diagnosed with HIV.
- By May 2007, progress had been made in various aspects of the plan:
- In accordance with the plan, each of the 53 health districts in the country had at least one service point providing comprehensive HIV- and AIDS-related services, including antiretroviral therapy (ART), from prevention to terminal palliative care.
 - Some 250 laboratories had been certified to provide support to the programme.
 - Three pharmacovigilance centres had been established to monitor and investigate adverse reaction to treatment. However, at the time, only two were operational.

The accumulative total of patients who started ART was estimated at 300 000 at the end of June 2007. A total of 342 facilities had been accredited to implement this treatment and more sites were being accredited to further expand access.

According to the *Development Indicators*, in 2006, South Africa had 315 000 TB cases. The most affected provinces were the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, Gauteng and the Western Cape.

Free TB-testing is available at public clinics countrywide. Failure of patients to complete their TB treatment regimen poses a major challenge. Government spends R400 on treating every patient with ordinary TB.

When these patients default treatment and, as often happens, develop multidrug-resistant TB, the cost of treatment dramatically increases to R24 000, including hospitalisation and more expensive drugs.

To reverse this situation, government has developed the National TB Crisis-Management Plan, which identifies four districts with a high number of TB cases and low cure rates. These districts are Amatole and Nelson Mandela

Metropole in the Eastern Cape, City of Johannesburg and eThekweni Metro. Government has also selected KwaZulu-Natal and Eastern Cape as provincial focus areas for enhanced interventions against TB.

The goal is to ensure that every case of TB is detected and patients are supported during the entire period of at least six months while on TB treatment to ensure that they are cured.

The prevalence of malaria has decreased substantially over the past five years from prevalence levels above 80% in some areas to current levels below 10%. This can be attributed to the success of indoor residual spraying using DDT and the partnership with Mozambique and Swaziland. In 2006, there were 12 322 malaria cases compared with 27 035 in 1996.

In 2006/07, consolidated investment in the education sector amounted to R93 billion, representing an increase of 12,8% over 2005/06. Education spending as a percentage of GDP remains relatively stable at around 5,5%.

Since the 1990s, the overall balance of boys and girls among the 12,3 million school learners has approached parity.

In September 2007, Cabinet noted the *National Education Infrastructure Management System Report*, which is an update on the *School Register of Needs*. The report highlighted the progress the country was making in addressing the school infrastructure backlogs and the challenges that still lay ahead.

Progress between 1996 and 2006 include the following: the number of overcrowded schools dropped from 51% to 24%; the number of schools with electricity increased from 11 174 to 20 713; and schools without access to water decreased from 8 823 to 3 152.

The 2005 Education Amendment Bill became law in January 2006 and took legal effect with regard to no-fee schools in 2007. By September 2007, nearly five million learners (40%) were beneficiaries of the No-Fee School Policy. The policy has been well received in communities and stands to have a lasting impact in access to education. It has accordingly increased access, reduced pressure on households while removing the uneconomic administration of small amounts.

The Grade 12 class of 2006 was the largest class in the past five years. A total of 528 525 candidates wrote the exam in 8 124 exam centres. The national pass rate was 66,6%. Between 1994 and 1999, the senior certificate pass rate fluctuated between 47% and 58%. After 1999, the pass rate improved substantially, reaching 73% in 2003. From 2004 onwards, there has been a slight drop in the pass rate each year. The focus is now on quality and increasing Mathematics and Science output.

By July 2007, an amount of R100 million was allocated for bursaries in further education and training (FET) colleges, benefiting more than 12 500 students. The National Students' Financial Aid Scheme is responsible for the administration of the bursaries for learners enrolled in the responsive National Certificate Vocational Programme.

Thousands of young people who are first-generation entrants to Higher Education (HE) enjoy state-funded support for study at this level, and positive growth efforts have begun increasing graduation rates in critical fields of study.

Enrolment of female learners in HE increased from 44% in 1994 to 53% in 2003. Black students account for over 72% of enrolments in HE. In FET, institutional reform has been achieved with the formation of 50 FET colleges from 152 technical colleges, and 21 HE institutions from 36 universities and universities of technology, some of which brought together historically black and historically white institutions.

Government has committed R2 billion for the systematic modernising and developing of the FET college sector. Central to modernisation is the offering of high-level vocational skills. The Department of Education's response in support of the Jipsa has been to develop 13 new programmes in skills areas that are critical for the country's economic development. The skills include engineering, construction and other scarce skills areas.

The number of literate people in the country increased between 1995 and 2005. To further decrease the illiteracy rate, in August 2007, Cabinet approved the Operational Plan for a National Mass Literacy Campaign. Eighty thousand tutors will be engaged to enable 4,7 million adults to achieve basic literacy and numeracy by 2012, at a cost of R6,1 billion.



The Youth Desk in the PCAS Unit in The Presidency has sharpened its focus on youth-development and ensured its integration into the mainstream. This has been achieved through the elaboration of youth-development programmes in the Government's Programme of Action since 2006.

Over and above supporting the co-ordination of strategic activities of institutions like the National Youth Commission and the Umsobomvu Youth Fund and supporting the process of reviving and developing the National Youth Service (NYS) programme permeates the thinking, planning and implementation approaches of government departments.

By mid-2007, 19 government departments committed to implement the NYS. About 20 870 youth were engaged in NYS programmes.

The unit has launched the Youth Development Forum, which provides a platform for the youth sector to engage the private sector on critical youth-development issues.

Social-sector programmes have helped address the apartheid legacy of poverty and inequality. However, the challenge of eradicating poverty and other social ills is compounded by societal dynamics set in motion in part by the transition itself. These are further elaborated in the macrosocial report, *A Nation in the Making*.

Among these dynamics are the decrease in the average size of households and the corresponding increase in the number of households, rapid labour-force growth and an increase in rural-urban migration. These trends sharpen the challenges for the social sector and government as a whole in the coming period.

To take interventions in the Second Economy forward, the following additional programmes have been introduced or are being further strengthened, as part of the EPWP, and are focused on providing training, work experience and temporary income, especially to women and youth:

- the Early Childhood Development Programme, based on community participation, having ensured a common approach among all three spheres of government
- increasing the number of community health workers, having harmonised training standards and increased resources allocated to the programme.

To better understand the dynamics of the Second Economy and to ensure effective targeted interventions, a socio-economic survey of these communities will be carried out at three-year intervals.

In addition, campaigns to reduce non-communicable and communicable diseases as well as non-natural causes of death continue, through the promotion of healthy lifestyles and increased focus on TB, AIDS, malaria, cholera and other water-borne diseases, and by generally increasing the standard of living of the poorest.

Broad trends in mortality confirm the need to continue to pay particular attention to the health of the nation. Regarding HIV and AIDS in particular, government's comprehensive plan, among the best in the world, combining awareness, treatment and home-based care, is being implemented with vigour.

Regarding the social sector, government has continued to allocate more resources and to put in more effort to provide services to society at large, and a safety net for the indigent.

More resources have been allocated for the various interventions in the area of education and training, including the merger of institutions of higher learning, improved teaching and learning, especially in Mathematics and Natural Sciences, the provision of additional support to schools in poor areas, and allocations announced for the salaries of educators.

Government's social-sector programme for 2007/08 included the intensification of existing programmes to meet long-term objectives such as the provision of clean running water to all households by 2008, decent and safe sanitation by 2010 and electricity for all by 2012.

Informed by the findings of the macrosocial report, Cabinet has approved the development of a macrosocial strategy, working with civil society, to strengthen social cohesion among South Africans and rapidly ameliorate conditions of all South Africans. It will focus on developing young people through community service and education, strengthening positive community values, enhancing solidarity, and improving social networks. National campaigns will be launched to mobilise young people and to promote nation-building.

Economic Cluster

The RDP has framed government's social and economic development programme since the first democratic election in 1994. Its main elements were to build the economy, meet basic needs, democratise the State and society, develop HR, and build the nation.

In 1996, the Growth Employment and Redistribution programme was introduced to

provide a clearer macroeconomic framework for stable and accelerated growth.

In 2001, National Treasury shifted towards a more expansionary stance, having won credibility from financial markets for conservative and predictable macroeconomic policies. The Microeconomic Reform Strategy was formalised in Cabinet in early 2002.

AsgiSA will open the way for faster implementation of various government programmes. By addressing the binding constraints to faster growth of the economy, it will create conditions for the speeding up of economic growth to at least 6% a year between 2010 and 2014.

This will help halve unemployment and poverty by 2014, as mandated by the electorate in the 2004 election.

AsgiSA is a response to the following binding constraints:

- the relative volatility of the currency
- the cost, efficiency and capacity of the national logistics system
- the shortage of suitably skilled labour amplified by the cost effects on labour of apartheid spatial patterns
- barriers to entry, limits to competition and limited new investment opportunities
- the regulatory environment and the burden on small and medium businesses
- deficiencies in state organisation, capacity and leadership.

Some R500 billion has been set aside for AsgiSA infrastructure programmes between 2007 and 2010.

Some of these programmes will strengthen the economy by investing in the electricity, transport and telecommunications systems. To improve service delivery in underdeveloped urban and rural areas, AsgiSA will work through the Municipal Infrastructure Grant, the EPWP and other infrastructure funds.

These will improve service delivery such as roads and railways, water, electricity, housing, schools and clinics, business-support centres, sports facilities and government-service centres.

Since 2004, growth has averaged over 4,5%, and thus the country seems likely to achieve the

AsgiSA target of at least 4,5% for 2009, and 6% for 2010 to 2014.

Inflows of foreign capital have been exceptionally high since 2003, with South Africa regularly being the third-largest recipient of portfolio investment among emerging markets. South Africa also had several large inward foreign direct investment (FDI) transactions, including, in 2007, a US\$5,5-billion investment in Standard Bank by China's ICBC. This was China's largest-ever outward direct investment, and South Africa's largest-ever single inward investment. South Africa received more than R200 billion in capital inflows during 2006.

Government's efforts in advancing trade, attracting FDI and promoting tourism will focus on strengthening engagement with traditional markets, increased focus on new emerging markets, strengthening economic engagement with the rest of the African continent, and continued work in the World Trade Organisation (WTO).

On average, per-capita growth was negative in the decade before 1994. Since 2000, average output per person has been growing more rapidly. With annual GDP growth of over 4,5%, and the overall population growth rate for 2005/06 estimated at 1,06%, average wealth per person can be expected to continue to rise at over 3% per year for the foreseeable future.

This wealth is not automatically distributed evenly among South Africans, but it represents funds available, some considerable proportion of which can be redistributed through the budget and by other means to reduce poverty and inequality.

The recent improvement in job creation coincides with the period during which economic growth accelerated to over 4,5% per year. If the employment-creation performance achieved since March 2004 is maintained, the target will be met. This is only likely if the growth rate continues to improve, especially in areas with higher rates of labour absorption.

Growth in the number of employed people has been particularly strong in the two years to September 2006 when over a million additional people were employed.

The results of the *Labour Force Survey*, conducted in March 2007, indicated that:

- A total of 12 648 000 South Africans were employed in the year to March 2007.
- There was a net gain of 197 000 jobs in South Africa. The most job gains were seen in the formal sector, excluding agriculture (364 000), while the sharpest decline was in informal/subsistence agriculture, which decreased by 243 000.
- The major contributing industries to new jobs were community and personal services, which increased by 127 000 jobs, finance by 126 000 jobs, and construction by 102 000 jobs.

The reform of trade and industrial policies is reflected in a shift from primary exports to higher value-added secondary and tertiary exports. This is due to government's success in promoting trade liberalisation within a multilateral rules-based global trading regime, and its use of supply-side measures.

Key initiatives included renegotiation of the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu) Agreement, the negotiation of a Southern African Development Community (SADC) free-trade agreement (FTA) and the negotiation of a bilateral trade and development agreement with the European Union (EU).

The unilateral American Africa Growth and Opportunity Act provision has also aided South Africa's exports.

These agreements contribute to new trade activity and to new FDI into South Africa. South Africa is a leading developing country participant in the Doha Round of the WTO; has entered free-trade talks with the United States of America (USA); signed an FTA in December 2004 with the Latin American members of the Mercosur; and is discussing possible bilateral trade agreements with India and China. It has also had a framework discussion with China.

In accordance with AsgiSA, two sectors have been identified for immediate priority attention: business process outsourcing (BPO) and tourism. These industries are labour-intensive, rapidly growing sectors worldwide, suited to South African circumstances, and open to opportunities for Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) and small-business development.

Another priority identified by AsgiSA is the biofuels sector. By November 2007, the biofuels strategy was being finalised. It will assist government to increase job creation, minimise the current account impact of crude oils price increases, and secure local energy supplies and use of clean energies.

BPO has the potential to create 100 000 additional direct and indirect jobs by 2009.

Government and business have a joint project, supported by the Business Trust, and led by the Minister of Trade and Industry and the Chair of Standard Bank, to remove obstacles and refine incentives to achieve this goal.

The tourism industry has, for several successive years, justified its designation as one of AsgiSA's top priority sectors. The year 2006 was no exception with the tourism sector's total GDP contribution estimated at 8,3%.

South African tourism statistics for 2006 showed a 14,5% increase in tourism arrivals compared with 2005 figures. Despite the contribution to the economy, the industry still has to be transformed to benefit more previously disadvantaged individuals. Tourism outperforms most economic sectors in terms of job and entrepreneurial opportunities created. Tourism growth can be attributed to market-related forces and also the aggressive marketing strategies that South African Tourism and other parastatals and private companies have embarked upon internationally. Other high-priority industries which are to follow are in the agriculture and agroprocessing fields.

Further priority sectors include:

- chemicals
- metals beneficiation, including the capital goods sector
- creative industries (crafts, film and TV, content and music)
- clothing and textiles
- durable consumer goods
- wood, pulp and paper.

Cross-cutting industrial policy challenges that are also being addressed include:

- inadequate competition and import parity pricing
- capacity for trade negotiations
- a more co-ordinated African development strategy
- better incentives for private research and development (R&D) investment
- better use of BBBEE to encourage industry transformation, beyond the transfer of equity.

Policy on state-owned enterprises (SOEs) focuses primarily on the key economic sectors of telecommunications, energy, defence supplies and transport. SOEs are increasingly being recognised as vital players in advancing the objectives of the developmental state and obtaining the goals and targets set out in AsgiSA.

Reform of the SOEs is to improve the access of the historically disadvantaged to services such as

telecommunications and electricity; to increase efficiencies and hence reduce costs; and to use the revenues earned through the disposal of state assets to reduce public debt.

In accordance with AsgiSA, government and public-enterprise investment expenditure for the period 2007 to 2010 is planned to be about R500 billion. Of this, about 50% will be spent by public enterprises, mostly Eskom and Transnet, mainly on power generation, power distribution, rail transport, harbours and an oil pipeline. The Airports Company of South Africa has begun major investments in new airport infrastructure at the major airports, and on a new airport for Durban. The general purpose is to improve the availability and reliability of infrastructure services in response to rapidly growing demand.

The priority areas for the Department of Public Enterprises are implementing an effective shareholder-management system; ensuring the implementation of the infrastructure-investment programme; supporting SOEs in maintaining healthy balance sheets; facilitating partnerships with the private sector where required; and maximising the impact of the Capex programme in the economy.

In restructuring state assets and liberalising previously monopolised markets, new systems of regulation have been established. These include new regulators in the transport, tele-communications and energy sectors. Though South African regulators are relatively well endowed by developing-country standards, they are poorer than the corporations they regulate.

Relations between the regulators, their boards/councils and government vary considerably; even among regulators that have similar functions.

South Africa has progressed in introducing and amending labour laws that give employers and employees certainty and security in the employment contract. The balance between the degree of job security and the kind of labour-market flexibility that encourages employers to take on new employees is still being fine-tuned.

Company taxation meets South Africa's needs and is consistent with international practice. Since the early 2000s, South Africa has had a series of

positive reforms regarding the level of personal and company income tax. Significant reforms in recent years have reduced the tax burden for small businesses, and the threshold for tax eligibility has been raised considerably.

New competition authorities, established under the Competition Act, 1998 (Act 89 of 1998), delivered a stronger performance than their predecessors. The competition authorities have not yet been as effective in the field of combating prohibited practices, except where those practices are specifically outlawed, compared with their merger-control function. Industry concentration remains high in some sectors in South Africa, with conglomerates of the 1980s having given way to industry-focused powerhouses. To promote an inclusive economy and competitive outcomes, amendments to the Competition Act, 1998, designed to bring South African legislation in line with international best practice rather than a wholesale review, was presented to Cabinet during 2007.

Combining formal and informal business activities, small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs) constitute about 95% of all enterprises in the country. If one excludes all informal activities and self-employment, SMMEs currently absorb between 50% and 60% of the formally employed labour force and contribute at least 30% to GDP, and their contribution is growing steadily.

South Africa is alive to the challenge of increasing the contribution of small businesses to output and employment. During 2006/07, 39 partner organisations were approved by the South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund with funding commitments of R69 million. Khula has also achieved success in reducing bad debts, with write-offs declining substantially to 5% of all approvals. Small Enterprise Development Agency infrastructure roll-out continues and 40 branch offices were expected to be operational nationwide by the end of 2007.

For both the public infrastructure and private investment programmes, the single greatest impediment is shortage of skills – including professionals such as engineers and scientists; managers such as financial, personnel and project managers; and skilled technical employees such

as artisans and information and technology technicians. The shortfall is due to the policies of the apartheid era and the slowness of South Africa's education and skills-development institutions to catch up with the current acceleration of economic growth.

The AsgiSA responses range from medium-term educational interventions to raise the level of skills in areas needed by the economy, to immediate measures to acquire the skills needed for the implementation of AsgiSA projects.

Educational responses to the skills challenge include:

- the QIDS-UP programme aimed at achieving high levels of literacy and numeracy in the lowest grades, based in 3 500 schools in all provinces
- the Mathematics and Science (Dinaledi) programme for 529 high schools to double Mathematics and Science high-school graduates to 50 000 by 2008
- an upgraded career-guidance programme
- upgrading of FET colleges.

Apart from interventions to address the skills challenge in the educational sphere, measures include the development of the Employment Services System (to close the gap between potential employers and employees), and phase two of the National Skills Development Strategy.

Other key skills projects include the deployment of experienced professionals and managers to local governments to improve project-development, implementation and maintenance capabilities. One important project is the establishment of Siyenza Manje, a bureau of retired civil engineers, municipal managers and project managers to assist municipalities in developing and maintaining infrastructure and services.

Jipsa is led by a committee of the Deputy President, key ministers, business leaders, trade unionists and education-and-training providers or other experts. Its job is to identify urgent skills needs, and quick and effective solutions.

Solutions may include special training programmes, bringing back retirees or South Africans and Africans working out of Africa, and drawing in new immigrants where necessary. They also include mentoring and placement of trainees – both in South Africa and overseas – to fast-track their development. Jipsa has an initial timetable of 18 months, starting in March 2006, after which its future will be reviewed.

According to the *Employment Equity Report 2006/07*, blacks (i.e. Africans, coloureds and Indians)

represented 26,9% of all employees at the senior management level. Black females represented 8% (African female 3,6%, coloured female 2,1% and Indian female 2,3%). Black males represented 18,9% (African male 9,8%, coloured male 3,7% and Indian male 5,4%).

Whites represented 70,9% of all employees at this level. White females accounted for 19% and white males for 51,9%. Foreign nationals represented 2% of all employees at this level.

A huge amount of work still needs to be done to bridge the gender gap, particularly when one takes into account the fact that women make up 42% of the South African working population. The transformation of the South African economy will not be complete until men and women have equal participation in the economy.

The representation of women in Parliament and all provincial legislatures increased from an average of 25,4% in 1994 to an average of 32,5% in 2004. This increase puts South Africa in the league of the few countries that have passed the 30% mark in terms of female representation.

Female representation at local government level increased markedly to about 40% after the 2006 elections. The presence of women has also increased dramatically in the executive branches across the three spheres of government.

After a promising start, the value of BEE transactions in relation to all mergers and acquisitions fell after 1995. Since 1998, the value of these transactions rose steadily to peak at R56 billion in 2006. The average share of BEE in transactions is approximately 15% of mergers and acquisitions.

Government's intermediate goal is to dedicate 1% of GDP to R&D by 2008. R&D spend in South Africa is on the rise. The 2005/06 R&D survey, released in 2007, found gross expenditure on R&D stood at R14 billion, representing a rise of R2 billion on the year before.

This means R&D expenditure, expressed as a percentage of GDP, rose from 0,87% for 2004/05, to 0,91% for 2005/06, representing a new high of R&D intensity in the country.

In 2006, the Minister of Finance announced the introduction of increased tax deductions to the business sector, from 100% to 150%, for conducting R&D, and proposed a more favourable regime for the depreciation of R&D capital expenditure. This is an important development and an expression of government's confidence in the private sector and its role in R&D and innovation.

By most international benchmarking measures, the competitiveness of the South African economy

has improved since the early 1990s. Two key indicators are the improvement and diversification of exports, and the significant improvement in labour productivity. However, most measures still indicate that the availability of skilled labour remains a key weakness. Other concerns are the cost of transport and telecommunications, which are key factors in an economy at such great distance from major world markets. Hence the focus of the Microeconomic Reform Strategy on input costs and skills. These are precisely the issues which AsgiSA has prioritised.

A strong industrial policy is essential in driving this structural diversification of the economy.

The July 2007 Cabinet Lekgotla's approval of the Industrial Policy Action Plan is a major milestone for the Economic Cluster. The action plan will facilitate and support industrial development through the implementation of targeted programmes, and serve as a basis for improved co-ordination within the cluster.

Key action plans in four broad sectors, namely capital goods, transport equipment and metals; automotive assembly and components; chemicals, plastics and pharmaceuticals; and forestry, pulp and paper have been finalised for immediate implementation.

In addition, an industrial upgrading programme will be developed to address the issue of outdated equipment, including in sectors such as clothing and textiles. A review of selected import duties will be undertaken as a means to drive down input costs and enhance the competitiveness of downstream industries that are more labour-intensive.

Cabinet has also approved the 10-year innovation plan that aims to significantly contribute to transforming the economy towards the knowledge-based economy. The plan will focus on increasing investments in:

- human capital development
- knowledge generation and exploitation (R&D activities)
- knowledge infrastructure
- enablers to address the "innovation chasm" between research results and socio-economic outcomes.

Government has been successful in ensuring macroeconomic stability, improving the trade

regime, and taking advantage of the country's natural resources and financial and physical infrastructure.

The country's skills base, the volatility of the exchange rate, the cost of input such as transport and telecommunications, lack of competition in the domestic market, and poor perceptions of Africa and southern Africa have held back higher rates of investment.

As a response to these and other binding constraints, AsgiSA will open the way to the faster and shared growth of which the South African economy is capable.

Justice, Crime Prevention and Security (JCPS) Cluster

The JCPS Cluster is following a two-pronged strategy in the fight against crime in South Africa. The strategy, while confirming the central role of law-enforcement agencies in the fight against crime, also focuses on community involvement and the establishment of partnerships as key instruments in crime prevention and combating.

The National Crime Prevention Strategy (NCPS) emphasises that crime is not purely a security or law-enforcement issue, but that it is also a social issue. Consequently, it gives equal importance to preventing crime on the one hand and combating it on the other.

In respect of social-crime prevention, government has implemented several interventions, particularly in development nodes, which have resulted in significant reductions in the levels of crime in those areas in particular.

The cluster has identified and prioritised 169 police stations that register the highest levels of contact crime. Working and acting in consultation with the provincial administrations, the cluster has developed sociographic profiles of these priority police-station areas. On the basis of these area profiles, relevant developmental projects aimed at preventing crime are being developed.

The responsibility to implement such projects rests with the social and economic clusters, the provincial administrations and local government authorities.

The National Crime Combating Strategy (NCCS) evolved as an operational element of the NCPS that

focuses on reducing crime in the select and priority crime spots that accounted for 50% of all crime – particularly violent crime – in the country.

The NCCS achieved long-term improvement in crime levels, particularly in the 169 police-station areas that accounted for the most crime. Furthermore, law-enforcement agencies, in co-operation with other departments, were able to identify and neutralise several organised-crime syndicates.

Government faces the twin challenges of sustaining the NCCS and of vigorously implementing social crime-prevention initiatives in a more co-ordinated and structured manner. This requires integrated implementation in all spheres of government. Furthermore, for the cluster to effectively implement social-crime prevention, new programmes have to be developed and sustained in partnership with organs of civil society.

The current strategic thrust for policing in South Africa is the reduction of crime levels by between 7% and 10%.

Since the 2003/04 financial year, the following significant cumulative decreases have been recorded: attempted murder (-34,4%), common assault (-26,8%), common robbery (-27,1%), assault with the intent to inflict grievous bodily harm (GBH) (-17,9%), aggravated robbery (-7,3%), murder (-5,2%), rape (-2,4%) and indecent assault (-1,5%).

When the crime figures for 2006/07 were compared to those recorded during the 2005/06 financial year, it was found that most of the contact-related, property-related and other serious crime trends experienced decreases.

Eight serious crimes were grouped together as contact crime or violent crime against the person. These crimes are murder, attempted murder, rape, assault GBH, common assault, indecent assault, aggravated robbery and other robbery. These crimes account for 33,3% of South Africa's recorded crime.

Six of the eight contact crimes, namely rape, attempted murder, assault GBH, common assault, indecent assault and common robbery, decreased by between 8,7% and 3%.

These decreases were: common assault (-8,7%), common robbery (-5,8%), indecent assault (-5,5%), rape (-5,2%), assault GBH (-4,9%) and attempted murder (-3,0%). There was an overall decrease of 3,4% in contact crimes during the period under review. Two of the eight contact crimes, namely aggravated robbery and murder, increased by 4,6% and 2,4% respectively. Aggravated robberies

(instances of robbery accompanied by violence and/or the use of a weapon, and murder) are obviously a cause of concern to the South African Police Service (SAPS). It is concentrating a great deal of its efforts on implementing operations and interventions to prevent and combat this particular crime trend.

Car hijackings and house robberies, two of the subcategories of aggravated robbery, increased by 6% and 25,4% respectively during the period under review, accounting for just more than one out of five aggravated robberies. Almost three quarters of all aggravated robberies were street/public robberies that occurred mainly in central business district areas and the mega-townships where people are robbed of their money or other valuables at gun or knifepoint.

Government has prioritised interventions to deal with certain specific crimes. These include sexual offences, domestic violence, organised crime and corruption, cross-border crime, taxi violence and regulating the ownership and possession of firearms. The Victim-Empowerment Programme has also been a priority of government in addressing the needs of victims.

The Criminal Law (Sexual Offences) Amendment Bill and Domestic Violence Act, 1998 (Act 116 of 1998), seek to improve services for victims of these crimes and increase conviction of offenders. Government has introduced the Anti-Rape Strategy, which saw the establishment of Thuthuzela care centres to reduce secondary victimisation. Sexual offences courts have been set up.

A major challenge pertaining to sexual offences is the high case-withdrawal rate – some 53% of cases referred to court in 2000 were withdrawn.

South Africa is among a number of countries internationally that are defining regulations to impose strict gun-control laws as a means to curb gun violence.

The Firearms Control Act, 2000 (Act 60 of 2000), and the Firearms Control Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 43 of 2003), assist the SAPS in preventing the proliferation of illegal firearms and in removing them from society, as well as to control legally owned firearms.

Between 1 July 2004 and 31 March 2007, a total of 103 541 licensed firearms were handed in voluntarily to the police, together with 1 468 840 rounds of ammunition. During the same period, the police confiscated illegal firearms and ammunition to the tune of 73 132 and 1 125 666, respectively. Between 2002 and 2006, 415 351 firearms were destroyed by the police.

The fight against organised crime was enhanced by the establishment of the Directorate: Special Operations, emphasising closer integration between all the law-enforcement agencies, the prosecution service and the intelligence structures, including the Financial Intelligence Centre. These initiatives and ongoing SAPS operations have yielded some good results.

The SAPS is strengthening the partnership between organised crime investigators and the National Prosecuting Authority (NPA) to ensure appropriate guidance of investigators and to improve conviction rates in this category.

By August 2007, the review of the criminal justice system (CJS) had been finalised for submission to Cabinet.

The review seeks to improve investigation and adjudication, including achieving improvements in case-flow management and reduced case cycle times of criminal matters throughout the CJS.

By August 2007, there were aspects of the review that were already receiving attention and where changes had been effected.

These included the adoption of the E-Scheduler, which is a new electronic court-management system that covers every court to which prosecutors, judicial officers, detectives and court personnel, who administer the court processes, will have access to. By August 2007, 3 852 users had been registered.

An upgrade has been done to 1 208 court rooms, including 222 high-court rooms, where the old manual court-recording system has been replaced by an advanced digital recording system. The video postponement of cases is being rolled out by the provision of high-quality multiprotocol communication links between court rooms and correctional services facilities. Forty courts and 22 correctional centres will benefit from the project.

The Department of Justice designed a programme to accelerate the appointment of women to judicial positions. The effort has already seen 19 female lawyers from the magistracy and the private sector undergoing training towards that end. The project seeks to provide accelerated development to selected participants for possible appointment as judges or acting judges to address the underrepresentation of women in the judiciary.

It is further intended to establish a wider skills pool from which female judges of all races can be drawn.

Between 2001 and 2007, the Department of Correctional Services reduced overcrowding by an average rate of 4,77% per year. However, overcrowding was still estimated at 38%. Interventions made include increasing available bed spaces by nearly 15% through renovations, re-commissioning old prisons, reducing awaiting-trial detainees (ATDs) by 22% through greater integration of the whole CJS and progressively optimising the use of legal instruments at its disposal.

Reducing ATDs, especially children, was one of the strategic initiatives identified by the NPA for 2006/07. The objective of the project was to effectively reduce the number of ATDs, develop criteria to manage them according to severity of crime, the effective management of children awaiting trial, and to participate at provincial level in ATD structures.

National security is protected, in part, in the context of transforming the notion of national security and of the departments that carry out this function. National security departments continue to play a critical role in peace-support operations in the region and on the continent.

South Africa's territorial integrity is rendered vulnerable by the limited capability of the South African National Defence Force (SANDF), the absence of a national security strategy, and the absence of a commonly understood national security-management system.

However, government has done much with regard to border control, both at ports of entry and in respect of borderline security.

While government has enacted the Regulation of Foreign Military Assistance Act (FMAA), 1998 (Act 15 of 1998), its provisions are vague with respect to South Africans who join the national defence forces of foreign countries. Of necessity, such citizens potentially pose a counter-intelligence threat.

The amendments to the FMAA, 1998, rectifying vague and ambiguous provisions, were approved by Cabinet in August 2005. Government has attended to several priorities within the realm of national security, including terrorism, the security

of government information and systems, and political violence.

Government has also substantially reduced the level of political violence. Sporadic attacks continue, but without the degree of organisation present in earlier years. Government is giving priority to instituting community rehabilitation interventions, particularly in areas that have been ravaged by violence.

Among the priorities for the Second Decade of Freedom is the need to entrench the rule of law and to enhance national security, with specific attention to:

- further reducing levels of crime, both organised and serious and violent crime
- enhancing co-ordination with the social and economic clusters and organs of civil society to vigorously implement social crime-prevention initiatives
- continued improvement of the CJS and its operations
- improving border control
- monitoring extremism and terrorism
- improving the capacity of the security and intelligence departments, through the development of a national security strategy and an effective national security-management system.

International Relations, Peace and Security (IRPS) Cluster

Democracy opened a remarkable new chapter in South Africa's international relations. South Africa has established itself as a respected partner and force for good within the community of nations, and has become a leading voice in the developing world for a more progressive, people-centred and multilateral rules-based global system.

Given the apartheid State's isolated and ignominious past, the country's achievements in and contributions to international, continental and regional affairs during the First Decade of Freedom have been truly spectacular.

Since 1994, several strategic objectives have informed the work of the IRPS Cluster. Importantly, South Africa's foreign policy revolves around the international pursuit of the country's domestic policies and priorities, particularly as they relate to nation-building, to reducing poverty, and to creating economic opportunities and a better life for all.

To this end, government has pursued the following objectives:

- to normalise, expand and strengthen South Africa's diplomatic relations with the international community

- to protect and promote the country's national interests and values through bilateral and multilateral interaction
- to promote economic development in an interdependent and globalised world through diversified and deepened trade relations, inflows of FDI and regional integration
- to promote and deepen international co-operation in science and technology (S&T)
- to promote international respect for human rights and democracy
- to contribute towards and support initiatives for international peace, security and stability, as well as post-conflict reconstruction (including international crime prevention and management)
- to prioritise the interests and development of Africa in international affairs
- to promote the agenda of the South through South-South co-operation and North-South partnerships
- to support a strong, effective and equitable multilateral rules-based global order that promotes and protects the interests of developing countries.

South Africa has successfully normalised its diplomatic relations with the world and has rejoined all significant regional, continental and multilateral institutions.

Over the past decade, the country has been honoured to host a number of important multilateral conferences, including the United Nations (UN) Conference on Trade and Development (Unctad) IX (1996), Non-Aligned Movement (1998), Commonwealth (1999), World Conference Against Racism (2001), African Union (AU) (2002) and World Summit on Sustainable Development (2002). It is also the host of the Pan-African Parliament.

In these forums, South Africa has consistently worked to promote agendas and outcomes that address poverty and the underdevelopment of the South. South Africa has also hosted several international sports tournaments, and preparations are well under way to host the FIFA World Cup™ in 2010. South Africa has pledged to be Africa's stage for the hosting of the best World Cup ever. It's a promise the country has guaranteed will be kept and it means the Government will provide all the support that is needed for a successful tournament.

These conferences and events have raised the country's international profile, generally have had a positive impact on the economy, and have favourably presented South Africa in the global

media. The hosting of these events has supported the campaigns of South African Tourism and the initiatives of the International Marketing Council to image, brand and market the country, particularly to attract an ever-increasing number of tourists.

In the two decades before 1990, South Africa received less than one million annual foreign arrivals. In 2006, the country welcomed 8,5 million international visitors. As part of the growth platform targeted by AsgiSA, tourism has been set steep goals for the next five years: 500 000 new jobs, 8,5 million international arrivals annually, and a contribution to GDP of at least R100 billion a year.

Government has diversified and deepened the country's trading networks, export markets and sources of FDI. In a Unctad study of prospects for FDI outflows for 2005/06, South Africa featured in the top-15 leading sources of FDI. South Africa also heads the list of expected leading sources of FDI to Africa, followed by China, the United Kingdom, India, France, the USA, Malaysia, Italy and Germany.

Apart from its traditional trading partners, South Africa has developed more extensive relations with South America, Asia and Africa, thereby enhancing South-South economic co-operation.

As part of its global trade strategy, government has identified strategic partner countries with which to develop economic relations through bilateral FTAs, although it is not seeking FTA negotiations with all of them at this stage.

Over the past decade, South Africa has concluded, or is currently engaged in, a number of trade negotiations:

- WTO: South Africa played an important role in the launch of the new Doha Round (which emerged with a developmental agenda) in 2001, and continues to participate in this round of negotiations through the G20, Africa and Cairns groups.
- Trade, Development and Co-operation Agreement with the EU: This came into effect on 1 January 2000 and the agenda for its review was finalised at the end of 2004.
- SADC Trade Protocol: This was signed in 1996 and there were subsequently negotiations around revised rules of origin.
- New Sacu Agreement: This was concluded in October 2002.

- Sacu: The union is finalising, negotiating or exploring FTAs with the European Free Trade Area, the USA, China, India and Mercosur.

South Africa's investment climate, regime and credit ratings have greatly improved. This is reflected in the net positive FDI inflows that the country has attracted since 1994, although these capital inflows remain low relative to other emerging markets with broadly similar profiles.

South Africa has, over the past decade, signed a number of co-operation agreements in S&T, and has established a number of important S&T projects with strong international participation.

Democratic South Africa has sought to promote international respect for human rights, democracy and good governance. In particular, government is placing a strong premium on the rights of women, children and the disabled. Government has broadly approached the issue of human rights in concert with its African partners, and through multilateral mechanisms such as the UN, AU and SADC.

The area in which South Africa has arguably made the greatest strides in its foreign policy over the past decade, is in its contribution to the development of the African continent. South Africa played a leading role in reconstituting the former Organisation of African Unity into the AU as a more effective pan-African continental body, and in crafting and promoting what became the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad).

Nepad was launched as the socio-economic programme of the AU at the Durban AU Summit in July 2002. Most of the critical organs of the AU are now established and operational. In 2004, as part of the Nepad process, the African Peer Review Mechanism was established as a voluntary mechanism with the mandate to ensure that the policies and practices of participating states conform to agreed political, economic and corporate governance values, codes and standards. It is envisaged as a system of self-assessment, constructive peer dialogue, and persuasion, and for sharing experiences and best practices among members. South Africa was among the first countries to be peer reviewed.

At regional level, South Africa has promoted integration within the context of the SADC, the Sacu and the Common Monetary Area. South Africa



has actively supported the restructuring of the SADC and the development of the Regional Indicative Strategic Development Programme, as well as protocols on particular areas of functional co-operation.

Development can, however, only take place within the context of a stable, secure and peaceful Africa. For this reason, South Africa has invested substantial human and financial resources to support regional and continent-wide initiatives to promote peace, stability and security.

Over the past decade, South Africa has made a number of interventions that have contributed to peace, stability and security in several countries on the continent and beyond. It has assisted in various humanitarian and relief operations in southern Africa, as well as in post-conflict reconstruction.

On the multilateral front, South Africa was involved in the formulation and drafting of the SADC Protocol on Politics, Defence and Security Co-operation, and of the SADC Mutual Defence Pact. Police co-operation agreements have been concluded with several countries in southern Africa and beyond, facilitating cross-border operations and the combating of crime domestically, regionally and internationally.

At continental level, South Africa made significant contributions to the drafting of the framework for the Common African Defence and Security Policy, and participated in drafting the AU Convention on the Prevention and Combating of Terrorism. On a global level, South Africa played a role in the establishment of the International Criminal Court.

South Africa is a relative newcomer to peace-support operations, but has quickly developed a reputation for its positive contribution in support of UN- and AU-mandated peace-support operations. Members of the SANDF are performing exemplary duties in the name of peace and stability as part of the UN and AU missions in the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Burundi and Ethiopia/Eritrea, and more recently in Liberia, Sudan and Côte d'Ivoire.

At the end of July 2007, President Thabo Mbeki visited that country for the Symbolic Burning of Weapons Ceremony. The ceremony marked the launch of the disarmament process throughout Côte d'Ivoire.

South African peace initiatives have also seen the DRC adopting a constitution. Two largely peaceful and successful elections were held in Burundi.

South Africa has sought the transformation of North-South relations (particularly in respect of

debt relief, market access and fairer terms of trade) while consolidating South-South relations. The latter includes the alignment of co-operation between India, Brazil and South Africa (IBSA).

A trilateral commission and co-operation agenda between these three countries has been established and is being implemented.

The country's strategy in transforming North-South relations has included an ongoing and meaningful dialogue with the North through bilateral meetings, engagement with the G8 countries, and a series of conferences examining mutual issues of concern such as sustainable development, HIV and AIDS, and racism.

The engagement of South Africa alongside some of its counterparts in Africa, Asia and South America with the G8 has resulted in these countries committing themselves to the writing-off of 100% of the debt of 18 highly indebted and poor countries, 14 of whom are in Africa. This is complemented by the commitment to increase aid to the developing world to annual sums of US\$50 billion (with half of this amount pledged to Africa) by 2010.

South Africa advocates a system of global governance that is representative, fair, based on international law, and built around the UN. It favours an approach that is more responsive to the needs of our people and to the good of the collective, namely all the UN countries as a whole. South Africa believes that only such an approach will effectively mobilise the international community to tackle the challenges of underdevelopment, global security and the promotion of human rights.

Multilateralism has provided South Africa with a vehicle through which to advance a number of foreign-policy priorities, including human rights, democracy, debt relief, peace and stability, an equitable global trading system, sustainable development, and an enhanced international response to issues of poverty and health. South Africa has also actively advocated for the democratisation and reform of the UN, in particular its Security Council (UNSC).

Important developments have taken place in the UN's reform agenda, such as the establishment of the Human-Rights Council and the Peace-building Commission. South Africa was proud to take its place in the new council that met for the first time in June 2006 in Geneva. South Africa has been elected to serve a two-year period as a non-permanent member of the UNSC.

Key challenges of the Second Decade of Freedom

The programmes detailed in the sections above on the different clusters are informed by the challenges for the Second Decade of Freedom, which arise from lessons of the First Decade of Freedom, new challenges created by the process of change and transformation itself, and from the 2004 mandate of the electorate as the Second Decade of Freedom began.

Influence of the Government's successes have often, though not always, been where it has had significant control, and less so where its influence has been indirect.

There has been great progress in building a new constitutional democracy, three spheres of government and a more integrated administration – but in many areas of service delivery there is a need for better performance by the Public Service.

There has been a major extension of social services, with striking impact on women's rights. However, many of those entitled to grants are still unregistered or poorly serviced. There are still many people who have not been reached by the services they need.

Very good progress has been made in economic areas under government control, but this has not been matched in areas where new agencies or partnerships are involved – such as small business, HRD, restructuring of SOEs and empowerment.

Government has had even less success in matters that depend on the private sector and civil society – including investment and employment creation.

National security has been enhanced, the rule of law established and institutions transformed. But, owing to challenges of the social transition, insufficient civil-society involvement and new forms of organised crime, the gains in crime prevention could have been better.

Internationally, government has made progress beyond its limited resources as the country re-integrates itself into the global arena. Major social trends of the First Decade of Freedom shape the challenges ahead:

- More and smaller households: From 1996 to 2001, the population grew 11% from 40,4 million to 44,8 million. However, the number of

households grew by 30% from 9,7 million to 11,8 million as households became smaller. So, government has to provide additional housing and services to almost three million instead of a million households.

- Bigger economically active population: The population has grown about 2% a year since 1995, but the economically active population grew by over 4% a year (from 11,5 million to 16,8 million). The number of jobs grew by 20% (after accounting for jobs lost), but the economically active population grew by over 40%. New job seekers are not only young adults but also older people who, under apartheid, did not consider themselves part of the labour market. Many of them are African women from rural areas.
- Two economies in one country: While all main economic sectors grew between 1995 and 2002, there was a shift from public services, construction and mining to financial and business-service sectors (where employment doubled). This is consolidating “two economies” in one country. One is advanced and skilled, becoming more globally competitive. The second is mainly informal, marginalised and unskilled. Despite impressive gains in the First Economy, the benefits have yet to reach the Second Economy, which could fall even further behind without decisive government intervention.
- Increased rural migration: There has been a shift from rural to big urban areas. Twenty percent of people in the main urban areas are new migrants. This puts pressure on urban service delivery and economic opportunities, and causes loss of people and opportunities in rural areas. These trends, added to the apartheid backlog, help explain the scale of the past decade's challenges and some of the limitations in progress, for example in unemployment, poverty alleviation and the fight against crime. In this Second Decade of Freedom, the global environment is uncertain, with increasing tension, unilateralism and unresolved international trade issues. However, there are also new opportunities for developing countries to assert their interests. While many



developments could marginalise Africa, there are opportunities for the continent to mobilise itself for a more humane approach to its plight and that of other poor regions.

Among governments and citizens of developed countries there is potential to focus attention on the common objectives of humanity contained in the UN Millennium Declaration. South Africa is equipped to play a critical role in this regard due to its location, the size of its economy on the continent, and its current endeavours and outlook.

- Challenges and opportunities in the Second Decade of Freedom: If South Africans are to make continued and faster progress towards a united, non-racial, non-sexist and democratic society in the Second Decade of Freedom, then we need to move to a higher growth and development path.

This requires a major intervention: to reinforce the consolidation of democracy with measures aimed

at integrating all of society into a growing economy from which they can benefit. This will require:

- an encompassing framework and vision defining a shared approach by all sectors of society in partnership around common development objectives
- better performance by the State, with focus on efficient implementation and decisive intervention to unlock any delivery logjams
- addressing consequences of the social transition, by improving access to work opportunities and sustainable livelihoods in urban and rural areas, and by ensuring that, when people migrate, they have the skills and information to take advantage of opportunities
- improving the regional environment and implementing Nepad, so that South Africa can weld together a number of southern African countries into a locomotive for faster growth in sub-Saharan Africa.





SA YEARBOOK 2007/08 | THE LAND AND ITS PEOPLE



South Africa boasts a rich cultural and ethnic diversity. It is home not only to South Africans, but also to immigrants from different parts of the world. In addition to the 11 official languages, several local and foreign dialects are also spoken here.

The sunny weather, scenic beauty and a wide array of fauna and flora make South Africa a destination of choice for regional and international tourists.

South Africa is often called the Cradle of Humankind, for it is where archaeologists discovered 2,5-million-year-old fossils of our earliest ancestors, and 100 000-year-old remains of modern man.

The people

The results of the second democratic Census (Census 2001) were released in July 2003. On the night of 10 October 2001, there were 44 819 778 people in South Africa. Of these, 79% classified themselves as African; 9,6% as white; 8,9% as coloured; and 2,5% as Indian/Asian.

According to Statistics South Africa (Stats SA), the mid-2007 population was estimated at 47,9 million. Africans were in the majority (about 38 million) and constituted 79,6% of the total South African population. The white population was estimated at 4,4 million, the coloured population at 4,2 million and the Indian/Asian population at 1,2 million.

The provincial estimates showed that KwaZulu-Natal had the largest share of the South African population at 21% of the population, followed by Gauteng with 20,2% and the Eastern Cape with 14,4%. The Free State constituted 6,2%; Limpopo 11,3%; Mpumalanga 7,4%; North West 7,1%; and Western Cape 10,1%. The Northern Cape had the smallest share of the population, namely 2,3%.

The South African population consists of the following groups: the Nguni (comprising the Zulu, Xhosa, Ndebele and Swazi people); Sotho-Tswana, who include the Southern, Northern and Western Sotho (Tswana people); Tsonga; Venda; Afrikaners; English; coloureds; Indians; and those who have immigrated to South Africa from the rest of Africa, Europe and Asia and who maintain a strong cultural identity. A few remaining members of the Khoi and the San also live in South Africa.

Languages

According to the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, everyone has the right to use the language and to participate in the cultural life of their choice, but no one may do so in a manner that

is inconsistent with any provision of the Bill of Rights. Each person also has the right to instruction in their language of choice where this is reasonably practicable.

Official languages

The Constitution recognises 11 official languages, namely Afrikaans, English, isiNdebele, isiXhosa, isiZulu, Sesotho sa Leboa, Sesotho, Setswana, siSwati, Tshivenda and Xitsonga.

Recognising the historically diminished use and status of the indigenous languages, the Constitution expects government to implement positive measures to elevate the status and advance the use of these languages.

According to Census 2001, isiZulu is the mother tongue of 23,8% of the population, followed by isiXhosa (17,6%), Afrikaans (13,3%), Sesotho sa Leboa (9,4%), and English and Setswana (8,2% each).

The least-spoken indigenous language in South Africa is isiNdebele, which is spoken by 1,6% of the population.

Although English is the mother tongue of only 8,2% of the population, it is the language most widely understood, and the second language of the majority of South Africans. However, government is committed to promoting all the official languages.

Language policy

The National Language Service (NLS) provides a range of language services for official documentation, develops and promotes national language policy, and advises on standardising and disseminating information on a range of terminology. The NLS, which was allocated R50 million in 2007/08, is responsible for implementing the National Language Policy Framework (NLPF).

By mid-2007, successful prototypes of spell checkers for Afrikaans, isiXhosa, isiZulu, Sesotho sa Leboa and Setswana had been developed. The development of a multilingual telephone-based information system had been approved and signed, and the Human Language Technology (HLT) National Strategy was completed.

Projects to be implemented between 2007 and 2010 include:

- implementing the HLT National Strategy
- training HLT developers, including fluent speakers of all of South Africa's official languages
- a machine-aided translation system optimised for all official languages
- promulgating the South African Language Practitioners Council Act
- establishing the South African Language Practitioner's Council
- establishing language units within government departments.

National Language Policy Framework

The NLPF is guided by the following principles:

- promoting and protecting linguistic and cultural diversity
- supporting democracy through the entrenchment of language equity and language rights
- asserting the view that multilingualism is a resource
- encouraging the learning of other South African languages.

Where government is required to communicate comprehensive information, documents will be published in all 11 official languages; otherwise national government departments will publish documents simultaneously in at least six languages on a rotational basis. Provinces will formulate their own policies according to regional circumstances. The NLPF is being phased in progressively.

Telephone Interpreting Service of South Africa (Tissa)

Tissa was launched in Kimberley, Northern Cape, in February 2006.

Tissa provides telephone-interpreting services to people who need to access government, and aims to improve verbal communication between citizens and government agencies, thus allowing citizens to exercise their right to use the language of their choice when dealing with government.

Tissa was installed at over 300 sites in government departments as a pilot project, and has begun to set up sign-language sites to enable the deaf community to access the project's services.

Pan South African Language Board (PanSALB)

PanSALB was created in terms of Section 6 of the Constitution and defined by the PanSALB Act, 1995 (Act 59 of 1995). Section 4 sets out the organisation's independence and impartiality, and also provides that no organ of state or any other person is allowed to interfere with the board or its staff's activities.

The board champions the recognition, implementation and promotion of multilingualism in South Africa, and the development of previously marginalised languages.

PanSALB's vision is to achieve equal status and use of all official languages, including Khoi, Nama, San and South African Sign Language.

The board promotes multilingualism in South Africa by:

- creating conditions for the development and equal use of all official languages
- fostering respect for and encouraging the use of other languages in the country
- encouraging the best use of the country's linguistic resources to enable South Africans to free themselves from all forms of linguistic discrimination, domination and division.

The board may also make recommendations on language legislation, practice and policy, and render advice on the co-ordination of language planning in South Africa.

PanSALB may investigate the alleged violation of any language right, policy or practice. It may also summon any person, body or state organ to give evidence. It is furthermore empowered to negotiate or mediate in cases of language conflict and attempts to achieve conciliation.

PanSALB has created national language bodies – one for each of the 11 languages and for the Khoi, Nama, San and South African Sign Language – to standardise spelling and orthography, terminology, literature and lexicography, do research and initiate ad hoc projects.

The 11 national lexicography units, which compile and create dictionaries, were created by PanSALB and incorporated in terms of Section 21 of the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973).



South Africa has 12 public holidays:

- New Year's Day** – 1 January
- Human Rights Day** – 21 March
- Good Friday** – Friday before Easter Sunday
- Family Day** – Monday after Easter Sunday
- Freedom Day** – 27 April
- Workers' Day** – 1 May
- Youth Day** – 16 June
- National Women's Day** – 9 August
- Heritage Day** – 24 September
- Day of Reconciliation** – 16 December
- Christmas Day** – 25 December
- Day of Goodwill** – 26 December

If any of these days fall on a Sunday, then the following Monday becomes a public holiday.

Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities

The Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities aims to contribute meaningfully and constructively to social transformation and nation-building. Its mission is to promote and develop peace, friendship, humanity, tolerance and national unity among linguistic communities. To achieve this, the commission:

- is a channel of communication between the State and communities
- monitors compliance by the State and civil society
- mediates in intercommunity conflict situations and facilitates harmonious co-existence
- facilitates the development of programmes that foster sensitivity, respect and understanding for cultural, religious and linguistic diversity
- lobbies government departments and legislative authorities to identify and recommends amending, repealing or enacting laws undermining or supporting those rights, respectively.

Religion

Religious groups

Almost 80% of South Africa's population follows the Christian faith. Other major religious groups are the Hindus, Muslims, Jews and Buddhists. A minority of South Africa's population do not belong to any of the major religions, but regard themselves as traditionalists of no specific religious affiliation.



The 2007 Community Survey was conducted from 7 to 28 February 2007 to bridge the gap between censuses. Historically, the census took place at five-year intervals (1996 and 2001), but this has been extended to a 10-year interval.

The survey, the largest-ever household-based survey undertaken by Statistics South Africa interviewed more than 232 000 families across the country.

The survey collected demographic, geographic, social and economic data at municipal level.

The data will assist different levels of government and organisations with planning, implementation and policy evaluation and monitoring. Statistics South Africa released the results in October 2007.

The Constitution guarantees freedom of worship and the official policy is one of non-interference in religious practices.

Christian churches

There are many official and unofficial ecumenical relations between the various churches. One of the most important of these links is the South African Council of Churches (SACC), although it is not representative of the full spectrum of churches.

The Church of England in Southern Africa have congregations among all sections of the community.

The major African indigenous churches, most of the Afrikaans churches, and the Pentecostal and charismatic churches are, as a rule, not members of the SACC, and usually have their own co-ordinating liaison bodies.

Church attendance in South Africa is favourable in both rural and urban areas, and churches are well served by a large number of clerics and officials.

On the whole, training for the church ministry is thorough and intensive, and based on a variety of models due to the variety of church denominations.

Apart from the work of the churches, a number of Christian organisations (para-church organisations) operate in South Africa, doing missionary and evangelical work, and providing aid and training.

Regular religious programmes on radio and television, and the abundance of places of worship, reflect the importance of religion in South Africa. Many newspapers carry a daily scriptural message, and various religious magazines, newspapers and books are produced and sold in religious bookshops.

African independent churches (AICs)

The largest grouping of Christian churches is the AICs, and one of the most dramatic aspects of religious affiliation has been the rise of this movement.

Although these churches originally resulted from a number of breakaways from various mission churches (the so-called "Ethiopian" churches), the AICs have developed their own dynamics and

momentum, and continue to flourish. The majority are no longer regarded as Ethiopian churches, but rather Zionist or Apostolic churches. The Pentecostal movement also has its independent offshoots in this group.

The Zion Christian Church (ZCC) is the largest of these churches in South Africa and the largest church overall. The teaching is a syncretism between Christianity and African Traditional Religion. More than a million members gather twice a year at Zion City, Morija, east of Polokwane in Limpopo, at Easter and for the September festival. Traditionally, Easter is the religious highlight of the year. ZCC members, estimated to exceed four million, are not obliged to make the pilgrimage, but have loyally observed the tradition for more than 80 years.

The 4 000 or more independent churches have a membership of more than 10 million people, making this movement the single most important religious group in South Africa.

The independent churches attract people from both rural and urban areas. There are, for example, hundreds of separate churches in rural KwaZulu-Natal, and at least 900 from all ethnic groups in the urban complex of Soweto alone. In the northern KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga areas, these churches serve more than half the population.

Afrikaans churches

The Afrikaans churches are predominantly Protestant. Of these churches, the Dutch Reformed Church family of churches in South Africa is the largest and represents some 3,5 million people. The Dutch Reformed Church, also known as the Nederduitse Gereformeerde Kerk, has a total of about 1 200 congregations countrywide.

Other churches are the Uniting Reformed Church in Southern Africa, the Dutch Reformed Church in Africa and the smaller Reformed Church in Africa, with predominantly Indian members. The Nederduitsch Hervormde Kerk and the Gereformeerde Kerk are regarded as sister churches of the Dutch Reformed Church.

There are several other churches with Afrikaans-speaking adherents, some with very large memberships, such as the Apostolic Faith Mission and the Afrikaanse Protestantse Kerk.

The Dutch Reformed Church also has six fully fledged English-language congregations, one congregation for Dutch-speaking people, and four for Portuguese-speaking people. In total, there are about 2 000 members in each of these congregations.

Roman Catholic Church

The Roman Catholic Church has grown significantly in number and influence in recent years. It works closely with other churches on the socio-political front. The Southern African Catholic Bishops' Conference, founded more than 50 years ago, is the representative body of this church in southern Africa.

Other Christian churches

Other established churches in South Africa include the Anglican Church Southern Africa, the Methodist Church, various Lutheran and Presbyterian churches, and the Congregational Church.

Although the different Baptist groups are not large, they represent a strong church tradition. Together, they form the nucleus of the SACC.

The largest traditional Pentecostal churches are the Apostolic Faith Mission, the Assemblies of God and the Full Gospel Church, but there are numerous others. Many of them enjoy fellowship in groups such as the Church Alliance of South Africa, and operate in all communities.

Hundreds of independent charismatic churches have mushroomed across the country. The largest of these groups is the International Fellowship of Christian Churches (IFCC). Rhema Church, with its 32 000-member congregation, spearheads the movement. The IFCC, representing over 400 churches, is also a member of the SACC.

Also active in South Africa, among the smaller groups, are the Greek Orthodox Church, the Seventh Day Adventist churches, the Church of the Nazarenes and the Salvation Army.

African traditionalists

Because the traditional religion of the African people has a strong cultural base, the various groups have different rituals, but there are certain common features.

A supreme being is generally recognised, but ancestors are of far greater importance, being the deceased elders of the group. They are regarded as part of the community; indispensable links with the spirit world and the powers that control everyday affairs. These ancestors are not gods, but because they play a key part in bringing about either good or ill fortune, maintaining good relations with them is vital and they have to be appeased regularly through a variety of ritual offerings.

While an intimate knowledge of herbs and other therapeutic techniques, and the use of supernatural powers, can be applied for the benefit of the individual and the community, some practitioners

are masters of black magic, creating fear among people. As a result of close contact with Christianity, many people find themselves in a transitional phase somewhere between African Traditional Religion and Christianity.

Other religions

The majority of Indians who originally came to South Africa were Hindu. They retained their Hindu religion and today some two thirds of South Africa's Indians are Hindus. The rest are Muslims and a minority are Christians.

The Muslim community in South Africa is small, but growing rapidly. The Cape Malays, who are mostly descended from Indonesian slaves, make up most of this group, with the remaining 20% being of Indian descent.

The Jewish population numbers less than 100 000. Of these, the majority are Orthodox Jews.

Buddhism is barely organised in South Africa. However, the Nan Hua Buddhist temple has been built at Bronkhorstspuit near Pretoria.

The number of Parsees has decreased, while there is a small group of Jains in Durban. Followers of the Baha'i faith are establishing groups and temples in various parts of the country.

The land

South Africa occupies the southernmost part of the African continent, stretching latitudinally from 22° to 35° S and longitudinally from 17° to 33° E. Its

surface area is 1 219 090 km². The country has common boundaries with Namibia, Botswana and Zimbabwe, while Mozambique and Swaziland lie to the north-east. Completely enclosed by South African territory in the south-east is the mountain kingdom of Lesotho.

To the west, south and east, South Africa borders on the Atlantic and Indian oceans. Isolated, some 1 920 km south-east of Cape Town in the Atlantic, lie the Prince Edward and Marion islands, annexed by South Africa in 1947.

The oceans

South Africa is surrounded by the ocean on three sides – to the west, south and east – and has a coastline of about 3 000 km. The coastline is swept by two major ocean currents – the warm south-flowing Mozambique-Agulhas and the cold Benguela. The former skirts the east and south coasts as far as Cape Agulhas, while the Benguela current flows northwards along the west coast as far as southern Angola.

The contrast in temperature between these two currents partly accounts for important differences in climate and vegetation between the east and west coasts of South Africa. It also accounts for the differences in marine life. The cold waters of the west coast are much richer in oxygen, nitrates, phosphates and plankton than those of the east coast. Consequently, the South African fishing industry is centred on the west coast.

The coasts

The coastline itself is an even, closed one with few bays or indentations naturally suitable for harbours. The only ideal natural harbour along the coastline is Saldanha Bay on the west coast. However, the area lacks fresh water and offers no natural lines of penetration to the interior.

Most river mouths are unsuitable as harbours because large sandbars block entry for most of the year. These bars are formed by the action of waves and currents, and by the intermittent flow, heavy sediment load and steep gradients of most South African rivers. Only the largest rivers, such as the Orange and Limpopo, maintain narrow permanent channels through the bars. For these reasons, the country has no navigable rivers.

Number of individuals by religion (Census 2001)

Religion	%
Christian	79,8%
African Traditional Religion	0,3%
Judaism	0,2%
Hinduism	1,2%
Islam	1,5%
Other	0,6%
No religion	15,1%
Undetermined	1,4%
Total	100%

Relief features

South Africa's surface area falls into two major physiographic categories: the interior plateau, and the land between the plateau and the coast. Forming the boundary between these two areas is the Great Escarpment, the most prominent and continuous relief feature of the country. Its height above sea level varies from about 1 500 m in the dolerite-capped Roggeveld scarp in the south-west, to a height of 3 482 m in the KwaZulu-Natal Drakensberg.

Inland from the escarpment lies the interior plateau, which is the southern continuation of the great African plateau stretching north to the Sahara Desert.

The plateau itself is characterised by wide plains with an average height of 1 200 m above sea level.

The dissected Lesotho plateau, which is more than 3 000 m above sea level, is the most prominent. In general, the escarpment forms the highest parts of the plateau.

Between the Great Escarpment and the coast lies an area which varies in width from 80 km to 240 km in the east and south, and a mere 60 km to 80 km in the west. At least three major subdivisions are recognised: the eastern plateau slopes, the Cape folded belt and adjacent regions, and the western plateau slopes.

Climatic features

The subtropical location, on either side of 30° S, accounts for the warm temperate conditions so typical of South Africa, making it a popular destination for foreign tourists.

The country also falls squarely within the subtropical belt of high pressure, making it dry, with an abundance of sunshine.

The wide expanses of ocean on three sides of South Africa have a moderating influence on its climate. More apparent, however, are the effects of the warm Agulhas and the cold Benguela currents along the east and west coasts respectively. While Durban (east coast) and Port Nolloth (west coast) lie more or less on the same latitude, there is a difference of at least 6° C in their mean annual temperatures.

Gale-force winds are frequent on the coasts, especially in the south-western and southern coastal areas.

Rainfall

South Africa has an average annual rainfall of 450 mm, compared with a world average of 860 mm. About 65% of the country receives less than

500 mm per year, which is generally accepted as the minimum amount required for successful dry-land farming.

About 21% of the country, mainly the arid west, receives less than 200 mm per year.

In Cape Town, the capital city of the Western Cape, the average rainfall is highest in the winter months, while in the capital cities of the other eight provinces, the average rainfall is highest during summer.

South Africa's rainfall is unreliable and unpredictable. Large fluctuations in the average annual rainfall are the rule rather than the exception in most areas of the country. Below-average annual rainfall is more commonly recorded than above-average total annual rainfall. South Africa is periodically afflicted by drastic and prolonged droughts, which often end in severe floods.

Temperatures

Temperature conditions in South Africa are characterised by three main features. Firstly, temperatures tend to be lower than in other regions at similar latitudes, for example, Australia. This is due primarily to the greater elevation of the subcontinent above sea level.

Secondly, despite a latitudinal span of 13 degrees, average annual temperatures are remarkably uniform throughout the country. Owing to the increase in the height of the plateau towards the north-east, there is hardly any increase in temperature from south to north as might be expected.

The third feature is the striking contrast between temperatures on the east and west coasts. Temperatures above 32° C are fairly common in summer, and frequently exceed 38° C in the lower Orange River Valley and the Mpumalanga Lowveld.

Frost, humidity and fog

Frost often occurs on the interior plateau during cold, clear, winter nights, with ice forming on still pools and in water pipes. The frost season (April to October) is longest over the eastern and southern plateau areas bordering on the escarpment. Frost decreases to the north, while the coast is virtually frost-free.

Average annual relative humidity readings show that, in general, the air is driest over the western interior and the plateau. Along the coast, the humidity is much higher, and at times may rise to 85%. Low stratus clouds and fog frequently occur over the cool west coast, particularly during

summer. The only other area that commonly experiences fog is the “mist belt” along the eastern foothills of the escarpment.

Sunshine

South Africa is famous for its sunshine. Generally speaking, April and May are the most pleasant months when the rainy season over the summer-rainfall region has ended, and before the rainy season in the winter-rainfall area has begun. At this time of year, the hot summer weather has abated and the winds are lighter than during the rest of the year.

In certain areas, however, notably the hot, humid KwaZulu-Natal coast, Mpumalanga and Limpopo, June and July are the ideal holiday months.

The provinces

In terms of South Africa's Constitution, the country is divided into nine provinces, each with its own legislature, premier and executive councils. The provinces, with their own distinctive landscapes, vegetation and climate, are the Western Cape, the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, the Northern Cape, Free State, North West, Gauteng, Mpumalanga and Limpopo. (See Chapter 20: *Tourism*.)

Western Cape

The Western Cape is situated on the southernmost tip of the African continent. It is a region of majestic mountains; beautiful valleys; wide, sandy beaches; and breathtaking scenery, making it one of South Africa's prime tourist destinations.

The cold Atlantic Ocean along the west coast is a rich fishing area, while the warmer Indian Ocean skirts the province's southern beaches.

Visitors to the Western Cape can disembark at Cape Town International Airport, George Airport or at the ports of Cape Town, Mossel Bay or Saldanha. A network of roads also leads to Cape Town, the capital, fondly known as the Mother City.

Cape Town houses Parliament and is the country's legislative capital.

Other important towns in the province include Saldanha, a notable harbour for iron exports and the fishing industry; Worcester and Stellenbosch in the heart of the winelands; George, renowned for its indigenous timber and vegetable produce;

Oudtshoorn, known for its ostrich products and the world-famous Cango caves; and Beaufort West on the dry, sheep-farming plains of the Great Karoo.

The Western Cape boasts one of the world's six accepted floral kingdoms. Although it is the smallest of them all, the Cape Floral Kingdom, which is characterised by fynbos, contains more plant species than the whole of Europe. These include the famous proteas and heathers.

Covering an area of more than 553 000 hectares (ha), the Cape Floristic Region World Heritage Site comprises eight separate protected areas stretching from the Cape Peninsula into the Eastern Cape. The Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden is included in this area, which makes it a world-first for South Africa, since no other world heritage site includes a botanical garden.

The Knysna-Tsitsikamma region has the country's biggest indigenous forests; a fairyland of ancient forest giants, ferns and colourful birdlife. Products of the forests include sought-after furniture made from the indigenous yellowwood, stinkwood and white pear trees.

Tourism

The Western Cape's natural beauty, complemented by its famous hospitality, cultural diversity, excellent wine and colourful cuisine, make the province one of the world's greatest tourist attractions.

In 2006, the number of foreign tourists to the Western Cape totalled 1,6 million while three million domestic tourists visited the province. They



Western Cape

Capital: Cape Town

Principal languages:

Afrikaans	55,3%
isiXhosa	23,7%
English	19,3%

Population: 4 839 800 (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2007*)

Area (km²): 129 370

% of total area: 10,6%

GDP* at current prices (2004): R199 412 million

% of total GDP:** 14,4%

* GDP (gross domestic product per region)

** GDP (gross domestic product)

contributed R16,8 billion to the Western Cape's gross domestic product (GDP) and sustained 200 000 formal jobs.

The people

More than 4,8 million people live in the Western Cape on 129 370 km² of land (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2007*). Afrikaans is spoken by the majority, with isiXhosa and English being the other main languages. The Western Cape has the highest adult-education level in the country, with only 5,7% of people aged 20 years or older having no schooling (Census 2001). The province has a strong network of Higher Education (HE) institutions, including the University of Cape Town, Stellenbosch University, the University of the Western Cape and the Cape Peninsula University of Technology.

A potpourri of diverse cultural backgrounds gives the province a cosmopolitan ambiance, resulting in a demographic profile quite different from that of the national pattern.

The profile draws on elements from different parts of Europe, south-east Asia, India and Africa, which are richly reflected in the diversity of the area.

The official unemployment figure for the province is 17,2% (*Labour Force Survey, March 2007*). This was somewhat lower than the national unemployment rate of 25,5% in March 2007.

Agriculture and marine fishery

The Western Cape is rich in agriculture and fisheries. Agricultural exports have increased threefold over the past few years, manifesting in a growth rate of 7,4% in 2005/06.

Primary industries, i.e. agriculture, forestry and fishing, and mining and quarrying, contributed 4,7% to the GDP of the province in 2004, which translated into R9 321 million (gross domestic product per region [GDPR], 2004).

The sheltered valleys between the mountains provide ideal conditions for the cultivation of top-grade fruits, such as apples, table grapes, olives, peaches and oranges. In the eastern part of the Western Cape, a great variety of vegetables is cultivated.

The province can be divided into three climatic regions. The area around the Cape Peninsula and the Boland, further inland, is a winter-rainfall region with sunny, dry summers.

Towards George, along the south coast, the climate gradually changes to year-round rainfall, while inland, towards the more arid Great Karoo, the climate changes to summer rainfall.

The Western Cape is known as one of the world's finest grape-growing regions. Many of its wines have received the highest accolades at international shows.

The wheat-growing Swartland district around Malmesbury, and the Overberg around Caledon, form the bread basket of the country.

The inland Karoo region (around Beaufort West), and the Overberg district (around Bredasdorp), produce wool and mutton, and pedigree Merino breeding stock.

Other animal products include broiler chickens, eggs, dairy products, beef and pork. The Western Cape is the only province with an outlet for the export of horses. This earns the country millions of rands in foreign revenue.

The province has also established itself as the leading facilitator in the export of ostrich meat to Europe. In addition to meat, fine leatherware and ostrich feathers are also exported to destinations all over the world.

The plankton-rich cold Benguela current flows along the west coast of the province and is considered to be one of the world's richest fishing grounds. This resource is protected from overfishing by foreign vessels by means of a 200-km commercial fishing zone and a strict quota system.

Snoek, Cape lobster, abalone, calamari, octopus, oysters and mussels are among the most sought-after piscatorial delights from this region.

Industry

The Western Cape's economy is growing at an average of 5% a year. By mid-2007, it was growing at 5,7%. Some 99 900 jobs had been created since 2004. The construction sector showed an average growth rate of 8% a year since 2004, resulting in full employment in the industry.

Many of South Africa's major insurance companies and banks are based in the Western Cape. The majority of the country's petroleum



On 22 March 2007, the City of Cape Town won the Metro category of the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism's Cleanest Town/Cleanest Metro 2006/07 awards. The Cleanest Town Award went to the Swartland Local Municipality.

It is the second time Cape Town has won this biannual award, the first being in 2002. In 2004, the city was the second runner-up.

companies and the largest segment of the printing and publishing industry are located in Cape Town.

Information and communications technology (ICT) is one of the fastest-growing sectors in the province, and operations are being expanded to other countries.

After Gauteng and KwaZulu-Natal, the Western Cape's manufacturing sector is the third-largest contributor to the national manufacturing sector. The clothing and textile industry remains the most significant industrial source of employment in the province.

Cape Town remains the economic hub of the province, encompassing industrial areas such as Epping, Montagu Gardens, Parow and Retreat. Along the west coast, the Saldanha Steel Project has led to increased economic activity.

2010 FIFA World Cup™

South Africa is preparing to host the 2010 World Cup. Government is using the hosting of the 2010 World Cup to fast-track the growth and development of the country. The investment in 2010 will benefit South Africans long after the tournament.

The Western Cape Government has allocated R212 million for preparations for the tournament, in addition to the R1,9 billion contributed by national government.

The R2,7-billion investment into the Greenpoint Stadium is expected to attract at least another R7 billion to R8 billion in linked public investments for transport and infrastructure. Greenpoint Stadium will be able to accommodate 70 000 spectators.

A similar amount in private-sector investments into the leisure, tourism and retail sectors of the surrounding economy in the V&A Waterfront, the Somerset Hospital Precinct and the larger inner city bowl is expected.

This investment is expected to benefit ordinary citizens through employment in the construction, leisure, transport, tourism and service sectors.

Other benefits include:

- dedicated bus and taxi lanes from the R300 into Cape Town along the N2
- expanding the Cape Town International Airport through a R2-billion expansion investment

- a dedicated rail link from the airport into town
- doubling the capacity of the Cape Town Convention Centre
- building at least six new hotels in the Western Cape by 2010.

Eastern Cape

The Eastern Cape, a land of undulating hills, expansive sandy beaches, majestic mountain ranges and emerald green forests, is the second-largest of the nine provinces in terms of surface area.

The region boasts remarkable natural diversity, ranging from the dry, desolate Great Karoo; to the lush forests of the Wild Coast and the Keiskamma Valley; the fertile Langkloof, renowned for its rich apple harvests; and the mountainous southern Drakensberg region at Elliot.

The Eastern Cape's main feature is its spectacular coastline lapped by the Indian Ocean. With its long stretches of pristine sandy beaches, rocky coves, secluded lagoons and towering cliffs, the coastline provides the province with an unsurpassed natural tourist attraction.

The graceful curve of Algoa Bay provides an ideal setting for the Port of Port Elizabeth. East London offers equally favourable harbour facilities. The province is serviced by three airports situated in Port Elizabeth, East London and Mthatha.

The architecture of many of its cities and towns reflects the rich heritage of its people. Important towns in the province include Bhisho, the capital; Uitenhage, which has important motor vehicle-



Eastern Cape

Capital: Bhisho

Principal languages:

isiXhosa	83,4%
Afrikaans	9,3%
English	3,6%

Population: 6 906 200 (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2007*)

Area (km²): 169 580

% of total area: 13,9%

GDP at current prices (2004): R112 908 million

% of total GDP: 8,1%

manufacturing and related industries; King William's Town, rich in early settler and military history; Grahamstown, also known as the City of Saints because of its more than 40 churches; Graaff-Reinet, with its interesting collection of historic buildings; Cradock, the hub of the Central Karoo; Stutterheim, the forestry centre of the province; Aliwal North, famous for its hot sulphur springs; and Port St Johns, the largest town on the Wild Coast.

In the Eastern Cape, various floral habitats meet. Along the coast, the northern tropical forests intermingle with the more temperate woods of the south. This makes for an interesting forest habitat of various species endemic to this region.

Age-old forests occur at Keiskammahoek, Dwesa, Port St Johns and Bathurst; dune forests are found at Alexandria; and mangroves along the Wild Coast.

Rolling grasslands dominate the eastern interior of the province, while the western central plateau is savanna bushveld. The northern inland is home to the aromatic, succulent-rich Karoo.

The people

The Eastern Cape has almost seven million people living on 169 580 km² of land. The majority of the people speak isiXhosa, followed by Afrikaans and English.

The province has a number of HE institutions, including the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University, the University of Fort Hare and the Walter Sisulu University of Technology. Despite the high quality of education facilities, 22,8% of the population aged 20 years or older has never received any schooling, while 6,3% has completed some form of HE (Census 2001).

In 2007, the unemployment rate of the province stood at 25,5% (*Labour Force Survey, March 2007*).

The provincial economy has performed well over the past three years. Provincial GDP increased by an estimated 4,7% in 2006 (4,8% in 2005), compared with the national GDP growth of 5% in 2006 (5,1% in 2005).

Agriculture, fishing and forestry

The Eastern Cape has excellent agricultural and forestry potential. The fertile Langkloof Valley in the south-west has enormous deciduous fruit orchards, while the Karoo interior is an important sheep-farming area. Angora wool is also produced here.

The Alexandria-Grahamstown area produces pineapples, chicory and dairy products, while coffee and tea are cultivated at Magwa. People in

the former Transkei region are dependent on cattle, maize and sorghum-farming. An olive nursery has been developed in collaboration with the University of Fort Hare to form a nucleus of olive production in the Eastern Cape.

Extensive exotic forestry plantations in the high rainfall areas of Keiskammahoek provide employment for large numbers of the population. The province is a summer-rainfall region with high rainfall along the coast, becoming gradually drier behind the mountain ranges into the Great Karoo.

The Eastern Cape Provincial Government plans to develop the province's forestry and timber industry by creating up to 100 000 ha of plantations over the next 10 years.

Nationwide, the timber industry employs about 170 000 people and annually contributes about R16 billion to the economy.

The Eastern Cape has been selected as the national pilot for the implementation of biofuels, through the mass planting of canola. This project has the potential to create 21 600 direct and indirect job opportunities.

The basis of the province's fishing industry is squid, some recreational and commercial fishing for line fish, the collection of marine resources and access to line-catches of hake.

Ostrich exports are flourishing and the provincial Department of Agriculture has been hailed for the support it is giving this industry. Each ostrich-export establishment has a resident official veterinarian, which is a requirement for exporting ostrich products to the European Union.

The game industry is enjoying unprecedented demand in the international market due to health-conscious consumers increasingly demanding lean organic game meat.

Industry

The metropolitan economies of Port Elizabeth and East London are based primarily on manufacturing, the most important industry being motor manufacturing. The province is the hub of South Africa's automotive industry.



The Eastern Cape has launched a public-private initiative that aims to attract R60 billion worth of investment into the largely rural, eastern part of the province over the next 10 years.

Planned projects – designed to capitalise on the region's high rainfall and large labour supply – include a new dam for hydroelectric power and irrigation, and an agricultural irrigation scheme.

Several of the world's biggest motor manufacturers, such as Volkswagen, Ford (Samcor), General Motors (Delta) and DaimlerChrysler, have plants in the Eastern Cape.

With two harbours and three airports offering direct flights to the main centres, and an excellent road and rail infrastructure, the province has been earmarked as a key area for growth and economic development. Environmentally friendly projects include the Fish River Spatial Development Initiative (SDI), the Wild Coast SDI, and two industrial development zones (IDZs), namely the West Bank (East London) and the Coega IDZs. The latter, 20 km east of the Port Elizabeth-Uitenhage metropolises, was the first IDZ to be earmarked, and is one of the biggest initiatives ever undertaken in South Africa. Plans for the development of the area as an export-orientated zone include the building of the Port of Ngqura.

By mid-2007, the Department of Public Enterprises was in the process of designing the framework for a partnership in the operation of the new container terminal under construction at the port.

The railway from Mthatha to East London was refurbished and the process of finding an operator for the line initiated.

2010 World Cup

The new 50 000-seater Mandela Bay Stadium in Port Elizabeth will host seven matches. By March 2007, construction of the stadium had started.

In King Sabata Dalindyebo Municipality, the final design for a new 15 000-seater stadium had been approved.

In Buffalo City, two stadiums – Absa Stadium, which seats 10 000 and Bhisho Stadium with 20 000 seats – were being refurbished. The city has been identified as a basecamp city for training both prior to and during the 2010 World Cup.

The provincial Department of Sports, Recreation, Arts and Culture has partnered with the Educational Institute for Service Studies in Port Alfred, to upscale the capacity of 40 bed-and-breakfast owners.

Parallel to the football spectacular, there will be an arts and culture programme. A crafters' database was being compiled, together with three additional crafters-hubs in Dimbaza, Dispatch and Flagstaff.

Fan parks – public viewing areas with large-screen TVs, entertainment and food and beverage stands – will be established for the tournament.

Port Elizabeth will spend more than R500 million upgrading the city's transport system – which includes a new bus system – ahead of the 2010 World Cup. The city will have a "bus rapid transit" system that will use low-platform buses travelling in designated bus lanes.

A total of R58 million will be spent on purchasing new buses. The city's innovative business model also integrates the bus and taxi systems.

KwaZulu-Natal

Aptly called South Africa's garden province, KwaZulu-Natal is one of the country's most popular holiday destinations. This verdant region includes South Africa's lush subtropical east coast. Washed by the warm Indian Ocean, it stretches from Port Edward in the south, and northwards to the Mozambique boundary. In addition to the magnificent coastline, the province also boasts sweeping savanna in the east, and the majestic Drakensberg mountain range in the west.

Visitors to KwaZulu-Natal can either disembark at Durban International Airport, which handles more than 2,5 million passengers a year, or at Durban harbour. Alternatively, they can make use of the extensive national road network.

KwaZulu-Natal is one of the major tourist destinations in South Africa. In 2005, the province retained its number-one status as South Africa's leading domestic tourism destination and surpassed the Western Cape in terms of overall foreign tourism arrivals.

According to statistics for 2005 provided by the Tourism Authority of KwaZulu-Natal, the province received 11,6 million domestic visitors and 1,6 million international visitors. This translated to an injection of R20,7 billion into the provincial economy.

Durban is one of the fastest-growing urban areas in the world. Its port is the busiest in South Africa and one of the 10-largest in the world.

The Port of Richards Bay handles over 1 000 containers per month. Combined, these two ports handle about 78% of South Africa's cargo tonnage.

KwaZulu-Natal is the only province with a monarchy specifically provided for in the Constitution.

Richards Bay is an important coal-export harbour. The province has several popular coastal holiday resorts, such as Port Shepstone, Umhlanga Rocks and Margate. In the interior, Newcastle is well-known for steel production and coal mining, Estcourt for meat processing, and Ladysmith and Richmond for mixed agriculture. The KwaZulu-Natal coastal belt yields sugar cane, wood, oranges, bananas, mangoes and other tropical fruit.

The province is also well-known for its active conservation activities. There are several reserves in the province such as the Royal Natal National Park, Giant's Castle and the Kambing Nature Reserve.

Some of South Africa's best-protected indigenous coastal forests are found along the subtropical coastline of KwaZulu-Natal, for example, at Dukuduku and Kosi Bay. It is also along this coast that the magnificent St Lucia Estuary and Kosi Bay lakes are located. In 1999, the former Greater St Lucia Wetlands Park was declared a world heritage site. It has since been renamed iSimangaliso Wetland Park.

Separating KwaZulu-Natal from Lesotho, the Drakensberg runs 200 km along the western boundary of the province.

The northern part of the province, south of the Swaziland border, is typical African savanna, providing a natural backdrop for its rich wildlife, which is protected in several game parks.

The GDPR of KwaZulu-Natal is the second-largest in the country after Gauteng. The GDPR growth rate rose over fivefold from 1% in 1999 to 5,3% in 2005, suggesting the potential to reach a 10% growth rate by the year 2014, which is far above the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa's target of 6%.

KwaZulu-Natal

Capital: Pietermaritzburg

Principal languages:

isiZulu	80,9%
English	13,6%
Afrikaans	1,5%

Population: 10 014 500 (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2007*)

Area (km²): 92 100

% of total area: 7,6%

GDPR at current prices (2004): R231 616 million

% of total GDP: 16,7%



The people

KwaZulu-Natal has more than 10 million people living on 92 100 km² of land (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2007*). The principal language spoken is isiZulu, followed by English and Afrikaans. Remnants of British colonialism, together with Zulu, Indian and Afrikaans traditions, make for an interesting cultural mix in the province.

The province boasts several universities, universities of technology and other educational institutions, including the University of KwaZulu-Natal and the Durban Institute of Technology.

As at 2001, a total of 21,9% of the province's population aged 20 and above had no form of education (Census 2001). By February 2007, the literacy rate in this province had improved to 88,6%.

KwaZulu-Natal was the second-highest contributor to the South African economy during 2005, at 16,4% (at current prices) of GDP.

By March 2007, the unemployment rate was 29,2%.

The key strength of this province's economy is its trade and transport infrastructure.

Agriculture and industry

Richards Bay is the centre of operations for South Africa's aluminium industry. The Richards Bay Coal Terminal is instrumental in securing the country's position as the second-largest exporter of steam coal in the world. Richards Bay Minerals is the largest sand-mining and mineral-processing operation in the world.

The motor vehicle-manufacturing industry has created a considerable multiplier effect in component- and service-providers. In recent times, the province has undergone rapid industrialisation owing to its abundant water supply and labour resources. Industries are found at Newcastle, Ladysmith, Dundee, Richards Bay, Durban, Hammarsdale, Richmond, Pietermaritzburg and Mandeni.

The sugar-cane plantations along the Indian Ocean coastal belt form the mainstay of the economy and agriculture of the region. The coastal belt is also a large producer of subtropical fruit, while the farmers in the hinterland concentrate on vegetable-, dairy- and stock-farming. Another major source of income is forestry in the areas around Vryheid, Eshowe, Richmond, Harding and Ngome, which is also known for its tea plantations.

The summer-rainfall coastal regions of this province are hot and humid with a subtropical climate. The KwaZulu-Natal Midlands between

the coastal strip and the southern Drakensberg Escarpment are drier, with extremely cold conditions in winter and snow on the high-lying ground. In the north, the subtropical strip extends around Swaziland to the edge of the escarpment.

2010 World Cup

From March 2007, R2,2 billion is being spent on the construction of the new stadium in Durban, which will have the capacity to seat 70 000 spectators.

Some R4 billion is expected to be spent on the construction of the new international airport and the Dube Tradeport at La Mercy. By mid-2007, the R350-million P700 Corridor from Richards Bay to Ulundi and the R300-million P577 from Mtubatuba to Hlabisa and Nongoma were under construction.

On completion, the Dube Tradeport alone is expected to contribute R12,4 billion to the economy and create thousands of new jobs.

eThekweni Municipality will spend more than R1 billion over the next three years leading up to the World Cup, to overhaul the public transport system by making it rail-based. The municipality envisages taxis transporting people from places outside the city to railway stations. Trains will then take them to the inner city where buses will be used for further travel.

The KwaZulu-Natal Provincial Government will provide R300 million to upgrade stadiums and build multipurpose sports facilities to allow some of its communities to host teams during the 2010 tournament. The selected municipalities for the projects include Umgungundlovu, Amajuba, Ugu and Uthungulu.

Northern Cape

The Northern Cape lies to the south of its most important asset, the mighty Orange River, which provides the basis for a healthy agricultural industry. The landscape is characterised by vast arid plains with outcroppings of haphazard rock piles. The cold Atlantic Ocean forms the western boundary.

This region covers the largest area of all the provinces and has the smallest population. Its major airports are situated at Kimberley, the capital, and at Upington. The Northern Cape has an

excellent road network, which makes its interior easily accessible from South Africa's major cities, harbours and airports.

Important towns are Upington, centre of the karakul sheep and dried-fruit industries, and the most northerly wine-making region of South Africa; Springbok, in the heart of the Namaqualand spring-flower country; Kuruman, founded by the Scottish missionary Robert Moffat; and De Aar, second most important junction of South Africa's railway network. Sutherland is host to the southern hemisphere's largest astronomical observatory, the multinational-sponsored Southern African Large Telescope.

South Africa has been shortlisted as one of two countries to host the Square Kilometre Array (SKA), a giant next-generation radio telescope being developed by scientists from 17 countries. The proposed SKA will be located in the Northern Cape.

Other important Northern Cape towns include the sheep-farming towns of Carnarvon, Colesberg, Kenhardt and Prieska, which are renowned for its semi-precious stones and variety of succulents.

Apart from a narrow strip of winter-rainfall area along the coast, the Northern Cape is a semi-arid region with little rainfall in summer. The weather conditions are extreme – cold and frosty in winter, with extremely high temperatures in summer.

The largest part of the province falls within the Nama-Karoo biome, with a vegetation of low shrubland and grass, and trees limited to water



Northern Cape

Capital: Kimberley

Principal languages: Afrikaans 68%
Setswana 20,8%

Population: 1 102 200 (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2007*)

Area (km²): 361 830

% of total area: 29,7%

GDPR at current prices (2004): R30 087 million

% of total GDP: 2,2%



courses. The area is known worldwide for its spectacular display of spring flowers that attracts thousands of tourists every year.

This biome is home to many wonderful plant species, such as the elephant's trunk (halfmens), tree aloe (kokerboom) and a variety of succulents.

The province has several national parks and conservation areas. The Kalahari Gemsbok National Park, together with the Gemsbok National Park in Botswana, is Africa's first transfrontier game park, known as the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park. It is one of the largest nature-conservation areas in southern Africa and one of the largest remaining protected natural ecosystems in the world. The park provides unfenced access to a variety of game between South Africa and Botswana.

In October 2007, President Thabo Mbeki officially opened the Mata Mata Tourist Access facility to the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park.

The Ai-Ais-Richtersveld Transfrontier Conservation Park spans some of the most spectacular scenery of the arid and desert environments in southern Africa. Bisected by the Orange River, which forms the border between South Africa and Namibia, it comprises the Ai-Ais Hot Springs Game Park in Namibia and the Richtersveld National Park in South Africa. Some of the distinctive features in the area include the Fish River Canyon (often likened to the Grand Canyon in the United States of America) and the Ai-Ais hot springs. This arid zone is further characterised by a unique and impressive variety of succulent plant species.

Nowhere is the Orange River more impressive than at the Augrabies Falls, which ranks among the world's greatest cataracts on a major river. The Augrabies Falls National Park was established to preserve this natural wonder.

The people

The Northern Cape is sparsely populated and houses more than 1,1 million people on 361 830 km² of land (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2007*). About 68% of the population speak Afrikaans. Other languages spoken are Setswana, isiXhosa and English.

The official unemployment rate of the Northern Cape is 26,5% (*Labour Force Survey, March 2007*).

The last remaining true San (Bushman) people live in the Kalahari area of the Northern Cape. The area, especially along the Orange and Vaal rivers, is rich in San rock engravings. A good collection can be seen at the McGregor Museum in Kimberley. The province is also rich in fossils.

Agriculture and industry

The Northern Cape is enjoying tremendous growth in value-added activities, including game-farming. Food production and processing for the local and export market is also growing significantly.

Underpinning the growth and development plan of the province are the investment projects that link up with the existing plans of the Namaqua Development Corridor, where the focus is on the beneficiation and export of sea products.

The economy of a large part of the Northern Cape, the interior Karoo, depends on sheep-farming, while the karakul-pelt industry is one of the most important in the Gordonia district of Upington.

The province has fertile agricultural land. In the Orange River Valley, especially at Upington, Kakamas and Keimoes, grapes and fruit are cultivated intensively. Wheat, fruit, peanuts, maize and cotton are produced at the Vaalharts Irrigation Scheme near Warrenton.

Mining

The Northern Cape is rich in minerals. The country's chief diamond pipes are found in the Kimberley district. In 1888, the diamond industry was formally established with the creation of De Beers Consolidated Mines. Alluvial diamonds are also extracted from the beaches and the sea between Alexander Bay and Port Nolloth.

The Sishen Mine near Kathu is the biggest source of iron ore in South Africa, while the copper mine at Okiep is one of the oldest mines in the country. Copper is also mined at Springbok and Aggeneys. The province is rich in asbestos, manganese, fluorspar, semi-precious stones and marble.

Until recently, the majority of small- to medium-scale alluvial operations were concentrated along or near the Vaal River system. With the deposits available for mining declining rapidly, there has been a gradual shift towards the Orange River system. Two recent larger-scale investments also show continued prospects in this sector.

Free State

The Free State lies in the heart of South Africa, with Lesotho nestling in the hollow of its bean-like shape. Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this immense rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see.

The capital, Bloemfontein, has a well established institutional, educational and administrative infrastructure, and houses the Supreme Court of

Appeal. The city, also referred to as the City of Roses, is home to some of the province's many tertiary educational institutions, including the University of the Free State and the Central University of Technology.

Important towns include Welkom, the heart of the goldfields and one of the few completely pre-planned cities in the world; Odendaalsrus, another gold-mining town; Sasolburg, which owes its existence to the petrol-from-coal installation established there; Kroonstad, an important agricultural, administrative and educational centre; Parys, on the banks of the Vaal River; Phuthaditjhaba, well known for the beautiful handcrafted items produced by the local people; and Bethlehem, gateway to the Eastern Highlands of the Free State.

Nestled in the rolling foothills of the Maluti mountains in the north-eastern Free State, the Golden Gate Highlands National Park is the province's prime tourist attraction. The park derives its name from the brilliant shades of gold cast by the sun on the spectacular sandstone cliffs, especially the imposing Brandwag rock, which keeps vigil over the park.

The national road, which is the artery between Gauteng and the Western and Eastern Cape, passes through the middle of the Free State.

The annual Mangaung African Cultural Festival, popularly called Macufe, is now being hosted in partnership with the Tourism Authority and the Performing Arts Centre of the Free State. It is expected to develop into a true global arts and cultural pilgrimage.

The people

The Free State houses more than 2,9 million people on about 129 480 km² of land (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2007*). The main languages spoken are Sesotho and Afrikaans. Some 16% of the population aged 20 years or older have no schooling (Census 2001).

According to the *Labour Force Survey* of March 2007, the official unemployment rate is 26,4%.

Many of the towns display a cultural mix that is clearly evident in street names, public buildings, monuments and museums. Dressed-sandstone buildings abound on the Eastern Highlands, while

beautifully decorated Sotho houses dot the grasslands. Some of South Africa's most valued San rock art is found in the Free State. The districts of Bethlehem, Ficksburg, Ladybrand and Wepener have remarkable collections of this art form.

Agriculture

This summer-rainfall region can be extremely cold during the winter months, especially towards the eastern mountainous regions. The western and southern areas are semi-desert.

Known as the "Granary of the country", the Free State has cultivated land covering 3,2 million ha, while natural veld and grazing cover 8,7 million ha.

Field crops yield almost two thirds of the gross agricultural income of the province. Animal products contribute a further 30%, with the balance generated by horticulture. Ninety percent of the country's cherry crop is produced in the Ficksburg district, while the two largest asparagus-canning factories are also situated in this district. Soya, sorghum, sunflowers and wheat are cultivated, especially in the eastern Free State, where farmers specialise in seed production.

About 40% of the country's potato yield comes from the high-lying areas of the Free State.

The province produces about 100 000 (tons) t of vegetables and 40 000 t of fruit each year.

The main vegetable crop is asparagus, both white and green varieties. The industry is expanding and becoming increasingly export-orientated.



Free State

Capital: Bloemfontein

Principal languages:	Sesotho	64,4%
	Afrikaans	11,9%
	isiXhosa	9,1%

Population: 2 965 600 (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2007*)

Area (km²): 129 480

% of total area: 10,6%

GDPR at current prices (2004): R75 827 million

% of total GDP: 5,5%

In terms of floriculture, the Free State has an advantage due to the opposing seasons of the southern and northern hemispheres. The province exports some 1,2 million t of cut flowers per year.

Mining

The mining industry is the major employer in the Free State. Investment opportunities are substantial in productivity-improvement areas for mining and related products and services.

South Africa is the world's largest producer of gold. A gold reef of over 400 km long, known as Lejweleputswa (formerly known as the Goldfields), stretches across Gauteng and the Free State; the largest gold-mining complex being Free State Consolidated Goldfields, with a mining area of 32 918 ha.

Some 82% of the region's mineral production value is derived from this activity, primarily in the goldfields region, which comprises the districts of Odendaalsrus, Virginia and Welkom. Twelve gold mines operate in the province. Roughly 30% of South Africa's gold is obtained from this region, and the province lies in fifth position as a global producer.

Harmony Gold Refinery and Rand Refinery are the only two gold refineries in South Africa.

Gold mines in the Free State also supply a substantial portion of the total silver produced in the country, while considerable concentrations of uranium occurring in the gold-bearing conglomerates of the goldfields are extracted as a by-product.

Bituminous coal is mined in the province and converted to petrochemicals at Sasolburg. Diamonds from this region, extracted from kimberlite pipes and fissures, are of a high quality.

The largest deposit of bentonite in the country occurs in the Koppies district.

The Free State Provincial Government has approved the establishment of two biofuel plants in Bothaville and Hoopstad.

Manufacturing and industry

Since 1989, the Free State economy has changed from being dependent on the primary sector to being a manufacturing, export-orientated economy. The Free State GDP amounted to about R75 827 million in 2004, representing a 5,5% contribution to the South African economy.

Some 14% of the province's manufacturing is classified as being in high-technology industries, which is the highest percentage of all the provincial economies.

An important manufacturing industry in the province can be found in the northern Free State, which is one of the most important chemical hubs in the southern hemisphere. The province has competitive advantages in the production of certain fuels, waxes, chemicals and low-cost feedstock from coal.

The growth in high-tech industries is significant in the context of the changing contribution of the gold-mining industry to gross geographic product (GGP).

The province's development strategy centres on competitiveness, empowerment, capacity-building and beneficiation.

2010 World Cup

Mangaung Stadium Park in Bloemfontein will host five first-round matches and one second-round match in the World Cup. It has 48 000 seats.

The province was expected to embark on the following projects from 2007:

- developing the N8 Road-Development Corridor
- rehabilitating and reviving the rail network from Thaba Nchu to Bloemfontein
- constructing an international convention centre, which will be linked to other 2010 initiatives such as the revamping of the Bloemfontein airport, Macufe and the intermodal transport facility.
- developing the R220-million Inter-Model Public Transport Facility project.

North West

North West, also known as the Platinum Province, is centrally located on the subcontinent with direct road and rail links to all southern African countries, and with its own airport near the capital city, Mafikeng. The province borders Botswana and is fringed by the Kalahari desert in the west and the Witwatersrand area in the east. North West is divided into the Central, Bophirima (towards the west), Southern, Rustenburg and Eastern regions. Most economic activity is concentrated in the Southern Region (between Potchefstroom and Klerksdorp), Rustenburg, and the Eastern Region, where more than 83,3% of GDP of the province is generated.

The province offers several tourist attractions, including the internationally renowned Sun City, the popular Pilanesberg National Park, the Madikwe Game Reserve and the Rustenburg Nature Reserve.

The province recorded an economic growth rate of 4,9% in 2004/05, compared with 4,5% in 2003/04. The largest contributors to the GDP of the province in 2004 were the mining and quarrying

industries (24,9%); finance, real estate and business services (13,6%); and the general government-services sector (12,1%). The lowest contribution to GDP was by the electricity, gas and water industries.

The people

Of the 3,4 million people living in the North West, 65% live in the rural areas (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2007*). The official unemployment rate is 32% (*Labour Force Survey, March 2007*).

The province has the lowest number of people aged 20 years and older (5,9%) who have received HE. The literacy rate is in the region of 57%.

Mining

One of the programmes of the Mafikeng Industrial Development Initiative is the establishment of the Mining Supply and Industrial Park that will result in the creation of a mining goods-and-service warehouse and delivery park for the convenience and benefit of most mining companies around Rustenburg.

This multiyear project envisages benefits being gained from local and Black Economic Empowerment preferential procurement opportunities offered by the Mining Charter.

Diamonds are mined at Lichtenburg, Koster, Christiana and Bloemhof, while Orkney and Klerksdorp have gold mines. The area surrounding Rustenburg and Brits boasts the largest single platinum-production area in the world. Marble is also mined here. Fluorspar is exploited at Zeerust.

Manufacturing

Manufacturing contributes 7% to the province's GDP and 9% of its employment opportunities. It provides 2,6% of the South African manufacturing sector's contribution to GDP.

Manufacturing is almost exclusively dependent on the performance of a few sectors in which the province enjoys a competitive advantage. These are fabricated metals (51%), the food sector (18%) and non-metallic metals (21%) (*Provincial Economies, 2003*).

Industrial activity is centred in the towns of Brits, Klerksdorp, Vryburg and Rustenburg.

The Brits industries concentrate mostly on manufacturing and construction, while those at

Klerksdorp are geared towards the mining industry, and those at Vryburg and Rustenburg towards agriculture.

The Platinum SDI, situated on the Coast-to-Coast Highway that links the Port of Maputo in Mozambique to Walvis Bay in Namibia, is expected to unlock further development. About 200 potential project opportunities in tourism, manufacturing, agriculture and mining have been identified.

Agriculture

Agriculture is of extreme importance to the North West. It contributes about 2,6% to the total GDP and 19% to formal employment.

Some 5,9% of the South African GDP in agriculture and 16,96% of total labour in agriculture are based in the North West (*Provincial Economies, 2004*).

The province is an important food basket in South Africa. Maize and sunflowers are the most important crops, and the North West is the major producer of white maize in the country.

Some of the largest cattle herds in the world are found at Stellaland near Vryburg, which explains why this area is often referred to as the "Texas of South Africa". Marico is also cattle-country. The areas around Rustenburg and Brits are fertile, mixed-crop farming land.

2010 World Cup

Rustenburg is the official hosting city in the North West, with the Royal Bafokeng Stadium being the official match venue.



North West

Capital: Mafikeng

Principal languages:	Setswana	65,4%
	Afrikaans	7,5%
	isiXhosa	5,8%

Population: 3 394 200 (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2007*)

Area (km²): 116 320

% of total area: 9,5%

GDP at current prices (2004): R87 127 million

% of total GDP: 6,3%

The stadium will seat 42 000 people. More than R400 million will be spent on road and traffic infrastructure in Rustenburg and Phokeng ahead of the 2010 World Cup.

Rustenburg Local Municipality received a R19-million grant from the Transport Department which will be used to help improve transport facilities in the city. The municipality, together with the Bojanala Platinum District Municipality, will in line with the North West Provincial Transport Master Plan, spend a further R400 million on major road-infrastructure projects ahead of the 2010 World Cup.

A western bypass is planned to link the N4 with the Sun City Resort and an eastern bypass will link the N4 with the Rustenburg airfield.

Gauteng

Although it is the smallest of the nine provinces, Gauteng is the powerhouse of South Africa and the heart of its commercial business and industrial sectors.

Johannesburg, nicknamed "Egoli" (Place of Gold), is the capital of the province and a city of contrasts. Mine-dumps and headgear stand proud as symbols of its rich past, while modern architecture rubs shoulders with examples of 19th-century engineering prowess. Gleaming skyscrapers contrast with Indian bazaars and African muti (medicine) shops, where traditional healers dispense advice and traditional medicine.

Gauteng continues to strengthen its position as the economic engine of the country and the continent. Continuing the trend of sustained growth over the past 10 years, it reached a growth rate of 5,6% in the fourth quarter of 2004.

The three most important sectors contributing to GDP are finance, real estate and business services, manufacturing and general-government services.

Sustained growth has led to a steady reduction in unemployment. According to the *Labour Force Survey*, unemployment in Gauteng declined from 28,2% in March 2001 to 22,6% in March 2007.

According to the University of South Africa's (Unisa) Bureau of Market Research, the average personal income of Gauteng residents increased from R248 564 to R327 211 between 2001 and 2006.

In line with the strategy to build a smart province, the tertiary sector has expanded significantly and contributes at least 60,8% to growth. Gauteng accounts for the bulk of all employees' remuneration in the country, at 47,7%, and is responsible for 50,4% of all company turnover.

Johannesburg accounts for 40% of the economy of Gauteng and enjoys its unchallenged status of being the economic capital of the country and the subcontinent.

Tourism continues to receive focus as a priority growth sector in Gauteng. Gauteng's share of the growth in national tourism has remained constant at about 50% of all international tourists to South Africa, and the share in domestic tourism stands at 20%. The majority (68%) of these domestic travellers are people visiting friends and relatives.

A pillar of Gauteng's economic success has been public investment in strategic economic infrastructure, which has stimulated private-sector investment, as well as growth and job creation in key projects and sectors such as business tourism, logistics infrastructure, manufacturing and ICT. Through the work done by the Gauteng Economic Development Agency and the Gauteng Shared Services Centre, the province has attracted 27 local and international companies to set up their operations here. The companies invested R506 million in the economy, with a potential to generate more than 4 900 jobs.

Gauteng is also the financial-services capital of Africa. More than 70 foreign banks have their head offices here, as do at least the same number of South African banks, stockbrokers and insurance giants.

The province blends cultures, colours and first- and third-world traditions in a spirited mix that is flavoured by many foreign influences.

Most overseas visitors enter South Africa via OR Tambo International Airport.

South of Johannesburg is Soweto, developed as a township for black people under the apartheid system. Most of the struggle against apartheid was fought in and from Soweto, which is estimated to

Gauteng



Capital: Johannesburg

Principal languages:	isiZulu	21,5%
	Afrikaans	14,4%
	Sesotho	13,1%
	English	12,5%

Population: 9 688 100 (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2007*)

Area (km²): 17 010

% of total area: 1,4%

GDP at current prices (2004): R462 044 million

% of total GDP: 33,3%

be inhabited by over two million people. Soweto is a city of enterprise and cultural interaction.

It is also a popular tourist destination with sites such as Kliptown, where the Freedom Charter was drawn up; the home of former President Nelson Mandela; the Hector Petersen Memorial site; and restaurants and shopping malls. It boasts one of the largest public hospitals on the continent, the Chris Hani-Baragwanath Hospital.

Some 50 km north of Johannesburg lies Pretoria, dominated by government services and the diplomatic corps of foreign representatives in the country.

Pretoria is the administrative capital of South Africa and home to the Union Buildings. Pretoria, also known as the Jacaranda City, is renowned for its colourful gardens, shrubs and trees, particularly beautiful in spring when some 50 000 flowering jacaranda trees envelop the avenues in mauve. The city developed at a more sedate pace than Johannesburg, and town planners had the foresight to include an abundance of open space. Pretoria has more than 100 parks, including bird sanctuaries and nature reserves.

An air of history pervades much of central Pretoria, especially Church Square, around which the city has grown. Many buildings of historical and architectural importance have been retained or restored to their former splendour.

The industrial area of Rosslyn and the townships of Soshanguve and GaRankuwa are situated north of Pretoria. Cullinan, known for its diamonds, lies to the east. Other important Gauteng towns include Krugersdorp and Roodepoort on the West Rand, and Germiston, Springs, Boksburg, Benoni, Brakpan and Kempton Park on the East Rand.

Vanderbijlpark and Vereeniging in the south of the province are major industrial centres, while Heidelberg, Nigel and Bronkhorstspuit to the east are of agricultural importance.

Although the province is highly urbanised and industrialised, it contains wetlands of international importance, such as Blesbokspuit near Springs.

The people

Gauteng is the most densely populated province in South Africa. It houses more than 9,6 million of the

country's people (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2007*). The level of urbanisation is 97%.

The province houses some of the most important educational and health centres in the country. Pretoria boasts the largest residential university in South Africa, the University of Pretoria, and what is believed to be the largest correspondence university in the world, Unisa.

In addition, Gauteng is home to leading research institutions such as the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, the Agricultural Research Council, Onderstepoort Veterinary Institute and various universities. More than 60% of South Africa's research and development (R&D) takes place in Gauteng.

According to the 2001 Census findings, only 8,4% of adults in the province have no formal education.

Johannesburg has two residential universities, namely the University of the Witwatersrand and the University of Johannesburg. There are also several teacher-training colleges, technical colleges and universities of technology in the province.

Manufacturing

The manufacturing sector in Gauteng includes over 9 300 firms, employing more than 600 000 people. Industries that have contributed significantly to this output are basic iron and steel; fabricated and metal products; food; machinery, electrical machinery, appliances and electrical supplies; vehicle parts and accessories; and chemical products.

Technology

A large number of institutions engaged in R&D and innovation choose Gauteng as their preferred site of operation. The Innovation Hub buildings are fully occupied with a waiting list for accommodation.

By mid-2007, Cisco Systems had indicated an interest in establishing a technology centre in the hub. The collaboration between Gauteng and the Department of Science and Technology has resulted in the province being included as part of the key programmes under the Co-operation Framework on Innovation Systems between Finland and South Africa (Cofisa). The 30-month Cofisa programme will focus on capacity development of

key stakeholders and knowledge transfer between the first and second economies.

Agriculture and industry

Gauteng's agricultural sector is geared to provide the cities and towns of the province with daily fresh produce, including dairy products, vegetables, fruit, meat, eggs and flowers.

A large area of the province falls within the so-called "Maize Triangle". The districts of Bronkhorstspuit, Cullinan and Heidelberg hold important agricultural land, where ground-nuts, sunflowers, cotton and sorghum are produced.

This summer-rainfall area has hot summers and cold winters with frost. Hail is common during the summer thunderstorms.

Gauteng is an integrated industrial complex with major areas of economic activity in three sub-regional areas, namely the Vaal Triangle; the East, West and Central Rand; and Pretoria.

The Vaal Triangle has a strong manufacturing sector; the West Rand concentrates on primary mining; and the Central Witwatersrand is dominated by the manufacturing and finance sectors, with mining capital playing a major role.

All sectors rely heavily on the Vaal Dam (on the Vaal River), from where water is piped across the province.

Agriculture made up a small share of the provincial economy and accounted for R2,441 billion of the GDP (at current prices) in 2004. Important agricultural products include selected grain crops, certain vegetables, herbs and flowers.

Food, food processing and beverages make up around R9,9 billion of GGP. There are about 4 000 food-processing companies operating in South Africa, of which roughly half are based in Gauteng. These companies employ around 50 000 of the estimated 183 000 people working in the sector.

The competitive trade areas which are being explored include: organics, essential oils, packaging, floriculture, medicinal plants, natural remedies and health foods. High-value niche crops include the nutritious njugo bean, morogo and cowpeas.

Most steel in South Africa is produced and consumed in Gauteng. South Africa is also one of the top-10 primary producers of aluminium in the world. The value of this industry in Gauteng is worth about US\$20 million. Johannesburg houses the JSE Limited, the largest securities exchange in Africa.

2010 World Cup

Soccer City, near Soweto, Johannesburg, will host the final match of the 2010 World Cup. It will

accommodate 94 700 soccer fans. Ellis Park in Johannesburg, the venue of the 1995 Rugby World Cup final, will undergo a major renovation before the 2010 World Cup. It will have 61 000 seats.

Loftus Versfeld Stadium (50 000 seats) in Pretoria will also host 2010 World Cup games. Some R40 million was set aside in 2007/08 for the rehabilitation of the R21 highway to improve connectivity between Pretoria and the OR Tambo International Airport.

In 2006/07, phase one of the refurbishment of George Thabe in Sharpeville, Sinaba in Daveyton and HM Pitje stadiums in Mamelodi was completed. Phase two of the Sinaba and HM Pitje stadiums was expected to be completed at the end of the 2007/08 financial year. These stadiums will be used as practice venues for the tournament.

The Mary Fitzgerald Square in Newtown were to be turned into a fan park for the Telkom Challenge matches in July 2007.

The province has won the right to host SoccerEx, the largest football business exhibition in the world, over the next three years. It provides an international platform to showcase the province's readiness to host the 2010 World Cup.

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga means "Place Where the Sun Rises". Due to the province's spectacular scenic beauty and abundance of wildlife, it is one of South Africa's major tourist destinations.

With a surface area of only 79 490 km², the second-smallest province after Gauteng, it has the fourth-largest economy in South Africa.

Bordered by Mozambique and Swaziland in the east, and Gauteng in the west, it is situated mainly on the high plateau grasslands of the Middleveld, which roll eastwards for hundreds of kilometres. In the north-east, it rises towards mountain peaks and terminates in an immense escarpment. In some places, this escarpment plunges hundreds of metres down to the low-lying area known as the Lowveld.

The area has a network of excellent roads and railway connections, making it highly accessible. Because of its popularity as a tourist destination, Mpumalanga is also served by a number of small airports, such as the Kruger Mpumalanga International Airport.

Nelspruit is the capital of the province and the administrative and business centre of the Lowveld. Witbank is the centre of the local coal-mining industry; Standerton, in the south, is renowned for its large dairy industry; and Piet Retief in the south-

east is a production area for tropical fruit and sugar. A large sugar industry is also found at Malelane in the east; Ermelo is the district in South Africa that produces the most wool; Barberton is one of the oldest gold-mining towns in South Africa; and Sabie is situated in the forestry heartland of the country.

The Maputo Corridor, which links the province with Gauteng and Maputo in Mozambique, heralds a new era in terms of economic development and growth for the region.

As the first international toll road in Africa, the Maputo Corridor is attracting investment and releasing the local economic potential of the landlocked parts of the country. It will thus generate sustainable economic growth that will lead to sustainable high-quality jobs.

The best-performing sectors in the province include mining, manufacturing and services. Tourism and agroprocessing are potential growth sectors in the province.

Mpumalanga falls mainly within the grassland biome. The escarpment and the Lowveld form a transitional zone between this grassland area and the savanna biome.

Long stretches of undulating grasslands change abruptly into thickly forested ravines and thundering waterfalls of the escarpment, only to change again into the subtropical wildlife splendour of the Lowveld.

Sabie and Graskop provide a large part of the country's total forestry products. These forestry plantations are an ideal backdrop for ecotourism opportunities, with a variety of popular hiking trails, a myriad waterfalls, patches of indigenous forest and many nature reserves.

Lake Chrissie is the largest natural freshwater lake in South Africa and is famous for its variety of aquatic birds, especially flamingos.

The people

Even though it is one of the smaller provinces, Mpumalanga has a population of more than 3,5 million people (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2007*).

According to the 2001 Census results, some 27,5% of those aged 20 years or older have no schooling, while the population growth rate is higher than the national average.

Mpumalanga's official unemployment rate is 26,3% (*Labour Force Survey, March 2007*).

Agriculture and forestry

The province is a summer-rainfall area divided by the escarpment into the Highveld region with cold frosty winters, and the Lowveld region with mild winters and a subtropical climate.

The escarpment area sometimes experiences snow on high ground. Thick mist is common during the hot, humid summers.

An abundance of citrus fruit and many other subtropical fruits – mangoes, avocados, litchis, bananas, pawpaws, granadillas, guavas – as well as nuts and a variety of vegetables are produced here.

Nelspruit is the second-largest citrus-producing area in South Africa and is responsible for one third of the country's export in oranges. The Institute for Tropical and Subtropical Crops is situated here.

Groblersdal is an important irrigation area, which yields a wide variety of products such as citrus fruit, cotton, tobacco, wheat and vegetables.

Carolina-Bethal-Ermelo is mainly a sheep-farming area, but potatoes, sunflowers, maize and peanuts are also produced in this region.

Industry

Mpumalanga is very rich in coal reserves. The country's major power stations, three of which are the biggest in the southern hemisphere, are situated here. Unfortunately, these cause the highest levels of air pollution in the country.



Mpumalanga

Capital: Nelspruit

Principal languages:	siSwati	30,8%
	isiZulu	26,4%
	isiNdebele	12,1%

Population: 3 536 300 (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2007*)

Area (km²): 79 490

% of total area: 6,5%

GDP at current prices (2004): R94 450 million

% of total GDP: 6,8%

Secunda, where South Africa's second petroleum-from-coal installation is situated, is also located in this province.

One of the country's largest paper mills is situated at Ngodwana, close to its timber source. Middelburg produces steel and vanadium, while Witbank is the biggest coal producer in Africa.

2010 World Cup

By mid-2007, the Mpumalanga Provincial Government was establishing the Integrated 2010 Office to streamline all the preparatory work for the 2010 World Cup and to ensure co-ordination among the implementing institutions.

To advance the province's social-development agenda, R10 million was allocated to implement five community sport and recreation programmes in each district municipality in 2007/08. Construction of the Mbombela Stadium in Nelspruit started in June and is expected to be completed in May 2009. Some R15 million was put aside in 2007/08 for the first phase.

Linked to the establishment of the Disaster Management Centre is the implementation of the Health Emergency Medical Services Model that focuses on achieving shorter response times, better communication systems, vehicle replacement, aero-medical services and a basic training course for ambulance assistants.

About R22 million was allocated for the purchase of 83 ambulances.

The 2010 Office is expected to consolidate and facilitate the optimal use of Mpumalanga's relationship with North Rhine Westphalia in Germany, which had three venues during the 2006 FIFA World Cup.

Limpopo

Limpopo, South Africa's northernmost province, lies within the great elbow of the Limpopo River. It is a province of dramatic contrasts – from true bushveld country to majestic mountains, primeval indigenous forests, latter-day plantations, unspoilt wilderness areas and a patchwork of farming land.

Limpopo has a strong rural basis. Its growth strategy centres on addressing infrastructure backlogs, the alleviation of poverty, and social development.

Limpopo is the gateway to the rest of Africa. It is favourably situated for economic co-operation with other parts of southern Africa, as it shares borders with Botswana, Zimbabwe and Mozambique.

The province is linked to the Maputo Development Corridor through the Phalaborwa SDI, which

is a network of rail and road corridors connecting to the major seaports, which will open up Limpopo for trade and investment. This is complemented by the presence of smaller airports in centres such as Phalaborwa and Musina, as well as the Gateway International Airport in Polokwane. The airport carries about 38 000 passengers a year.

The Maputo Corridor will link the province directly with the Port of Maputo, creating development and trade opportunities, particularly in the south-eastern part of the province.

Between 1996 and 2005, Limpopo recorded an average real annual economic growth rate of 4%, which is above the country's average rate during the period under review.

Polokwane is the capital city and lies strategically in the centre of the province.

The Great North Road running through the centre of the province strings together a series of interesting towns.

Bela-Bela, with its popular mineral spa, is near the southern border of the province.

Further north lie Modimolle with its table-grape industry and beautiful Waterberg mountain range; Mokopane; Polokwane; Makhado at the foot of the Soutpansberg mountain range; and Musina, with its thick-set baobab trees.

The crossing into Zimbabwe is at Beit Bridge, where the South African section of this important route north into Africa ends.

Other important Limpopo towns include the major mining centres of Phalaborwa and Thabazimbi; and Tzaneen, producer of tea, forestry products and tropical fruits.

This province is in the savanna biome, an area of mixed grassland and trees, which is generally known as bushveld. A trip through this summer-rainfall area shows that this is tree country.

Rich in natural beauty, culture and wildlife, Limpopo is an ideal breakaway destination for tourists. The province's natural resources include more than 50 provincial reserves, as well as several private game reserves. The largest section of the Kruger National Park is situated along the eastern boundary of Limpopo with Mozambique.

Limpopo and KwaZulu-Natal were the only provinces in the country that received more visitors from foreign countries in 2005, with at least 1% added growth compared with other local destinations.

This prompted the Limpopo Parks and Tourism Board to initiate the translation of niche brochures into Dutch, German, Mandarin and local indigenous languages so as to attract a diverse range of visitors.

The people

In Limpopo, more than 5,4 million people live on about 123 910 km² of land (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2007*).

According to the Census 2001 results, more than a third of those in Limpopo aged 20 years and older have not received any form of education or schooling.

The official unemployment rate for Limpopo is 32,4%. (*Labour Force Survey, March 2007*).

Several museums and national monuments bear testimony to ancient peoples and fearless pioneers who braved the unknown. Living museums include the Bakone Malapa Museum near Polokwane, where Bapedi tribespeople practise age-old skills for the benefit of visitors, and the Tsonga Open-Air Museum near Tzaneen. Mapungubwe (Place of The Jackal) Hill, some 75 km from Musina, used to be a natural fortress for its inhabitants from about AD 950 to 1200. It was declared a world heritage site in 2003.

Valuable archaeological artefacts, including many golden objects, have been discovered in this area, as well as in the northern part of the Kruger National Park.

Agriculture

The bushveld is cattle country, where controlled hunting is often combined with ranching. About 80% of South Africa's hunting takes place in this province. As the largest producers of various crops in the agricultural market, Limpopo is exploiting this capacity as a resource for agritourism. For instance, the Modimolle grape festival is celebrated in January.

Sunflowers, cotton, maize and peanuts are cultivated in the Bela-Bela-Modimolle area. Tropical fruit, such as bananas, litchis, pineapples, mangoes and pawpaws, as well as a variety of nuts, are grown in the Tzaneen and Makhado areas. Extensive tea and coffee plantations also create many employment opportunities in the Tzaneen area.

The climatic conditions in this province allow for double harvesting seasons, which ultimately translates into Limpopo becoming the national food basket. It produces about 60% of the country's tomatoes; 75% mangoes; 65% papaya; 33% oranges; 36% tea; 25% citrus, bananas and litchis; and 60% of its avocados. It has initiated a process

to open market access for exporting some of its fresh produce to the People's Republic of China.

More than 45% of the R2-billion annual turnover of the Johannesburg Fresh Produce Market comes from Limpopo. The largest tomato farm in South Africa lies between Tzaneen and Makhado. Extensive forestry plantations are also found here.

Plantations of hard wood for furniture manufacturing have also been established and many of the rural people practise subsistence farming.

The northern and eastern parts of this summer-rainfall region are subtropical with hot, humid summers and mist in the mountainous parts. Winter throughout the province is mild and mostly frost-free.

Industry

Mining is a significant economic activity in the province.

Limpopo is rich in mineral deposits, including platinum-group metals, iron ore, chromium, high- and middle-grading coking coal, diamonds, antimony, phosphate and copper, as well as mineral reserves like gold, emeralds, scheelite, magnetite, vermiculite, silicon and mica. Base commodities such as black granite, corundum and feldspar are also found in the province.

The province is a typical developing area, exporting primary products and importing manufactured goods and services. It has high potential and capacity with appropriate economic development, and is an attractive location for investors. Resources such as tourism, rain-fed agriculture, minerals and an abundant labour force offer excellent investment opportunities.

Limpopo

Capital: Polokwane

Principal languages:



Sesotho	
sa Leboa	52,1%
Xitsonga	22,4%
Tshivenda	15,9%

Population: 5 402 900 (*Mid-Year Population Estimates, 2007*)

Area (km²): 123 910

% of total area: 10,2%

GDP at current prices (2004): R93 188 million

% of total GDP: 6,7%



2010 World Cup

By mid-2007, construction of the new 46 000-seater Peter Mokaba Stadium was underway. The Limpopo Department of Roads and Transport will spend R76 million upgrading airport facilities ahead of the 2010 World Cup. The money will be used to improve the Giyani and Thohoyandou airports, as well as upgrade the Polokwane Gateway International Airport.

In 2007/08, the department set aside R28 million for the completion of the terminal building, R31 million for the construction of infrastructure at

the cargo hub, and R17 million for the development of the Aero City.

The Aero City will include parking for cars, buses, taxis and rental cars, feeder roads and ring roads around the terminal building.

In 2006, the department spent R13 million to improve navigational aid and R10 million on the construction of part of the terminal building.

The Limpopo Provincial Government will be upgrading two stadiums in line with international standards as part of the 2010 World Cup legacy projects.

Acknowledgements

Original text by Theuns and Heila van Rensburg

Bulletin of Statistics (March 2004), published by Statistics South Africa

Labour Force Survey (March 2007), published by Statistics South Africa

Provincial Economies (May 2003), published by the Department of Trade and Industry
Statistics South Africa

www.cesa.org.za

www.cr/commission.org.za

www.fs.gov.za

www.geda.co.za

www.gov.za

www.limpopo.gov.za

www.pansalb.org.za

www.places.co.za

www.southafrica.info

Suggested reading

Bowie, B. *East London: Heart of Buffalo City*. East London: Lucky Bean Publishers, 2005.

Bowes, B and Pennington, S. eds. *South Africa: More Good News*. Johannesburg: Good News, 2003.

Brown, GW. *et al. Cape Town Uncovered: A People's City*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2005.

Contemporary South Africa. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan, 2004.

City of Johannesburg: A World-Class African City! Johannesburg: Chris van Rensburg Publications, 2004.

Distiller, N and Steyn, M. *Under Construction: Race and Identity in South Africa Today*. Sandton, Heinemann, 2004.

Earle, J. *Sasol First Guide to Weather in Southern Africa*. Cape Town: Struik, 2004.

Field, S. *et al.* eds. *Imagining the City: Memories and Cultures of Cape Town*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press, 2007.

Friend, JFC. *Environmental Management in South Africa: The Blue Model*. Pretoria: Impact Books, 2003.

Goldblatt, D. *Some Afrikaners Revisited*. Cape Town: Umuzi, 2007.

Hendriks, HJ. *Studying Congregations in Africa*. Wellington (Cape): Lux Verbi, 2004.

Hollman, J. ed. *Customs and Beliefs of the !Xam Bushmen*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press,
Philadelphia: Ringing Rocks Press, 2004.

Huffman, TN. *Mapungubwe: Ancient African Civilisation on the Limpopo*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2004.

Jeppie, S. *Language, Identity, Modernity: The Arabic Study Circle of Durban*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press, 2007.

Joburg! The Passion Behind a City. Johannesburg: Affinity Publishing, 2006.

Joubert, L. *Scorched: South Africa's Changing Climate*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2006.

Kobo, J. *After Mandela: The Road Ahead*. Mthatha: The author, 2003.

Kok, P. *et al.* eds. *Migration in South Africa and Southern Africa: Dynamics and Determinants*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2005.

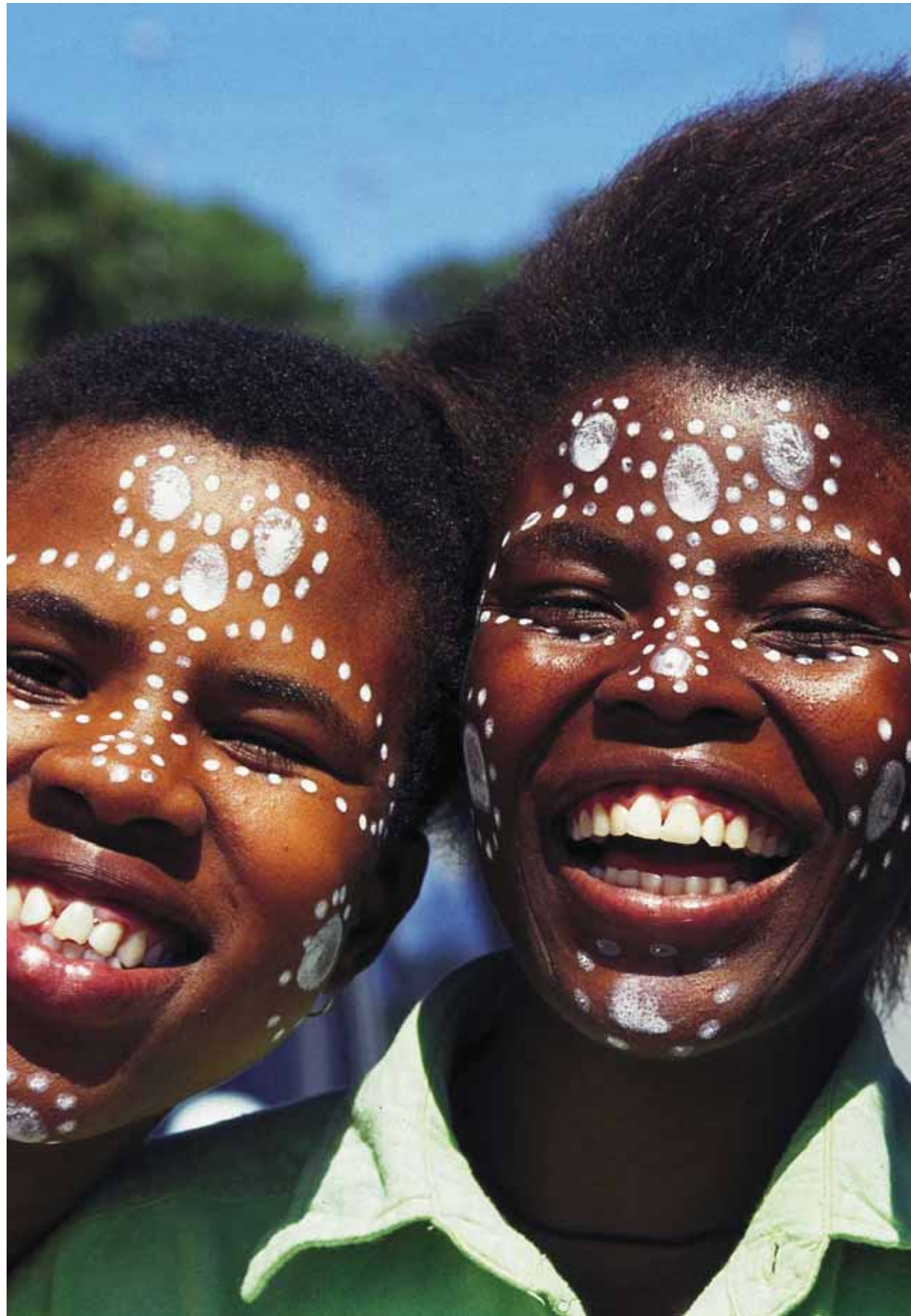
Kok, P. *et al.* *Post-Apartheid Internal Migration in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2003.

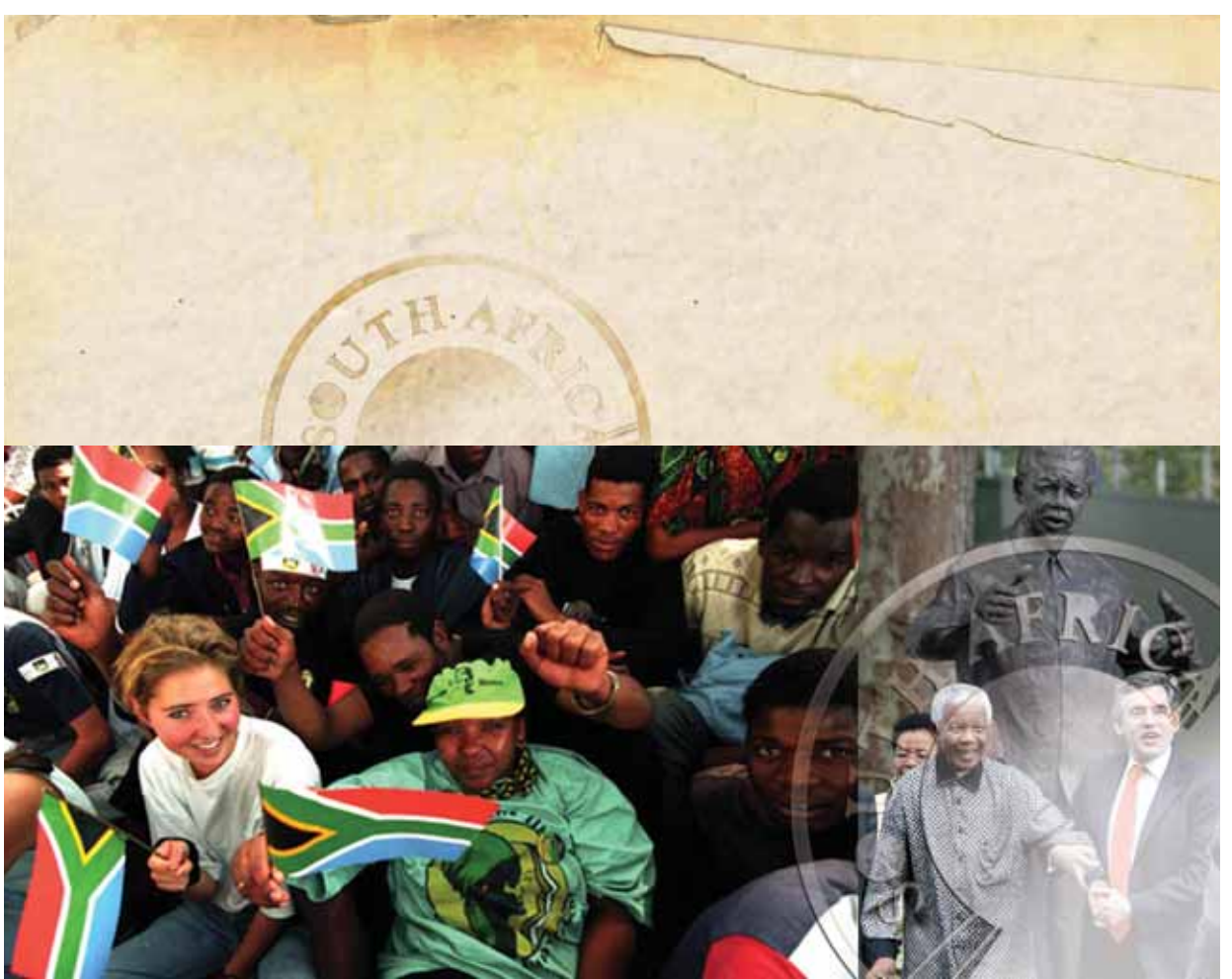
L'Ange, G. *White Africans: From Colonisation to Liberation*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2005.

Le Roux, M. *The Lemba: A Lost Tribe of Israel in Southern Africa?* Pretoria: University of South Africa (Unisa), 2003.

Lee, P. *Compromise and Courage: Anglicans in Johannesburg 1864 – 1999*. Pietermaritzburg: Cluster Publications, 2005.

- 
- Lundy, G and Visser, W. *South Africa: Reasons to Believe*. Cape Town: Aardvark Press, 2003.
- Meckel, D and Ole, K. *Straight Talk: Voices from the New South Africa*. Cape Town: Struik, 2004.
- Mitchley, C. ed. *South African Heritage: A Guide to Our Land, Our People, History and Culture*. Caledon: Mill Street Publications, 2005.
- Mohammed, A. *Not White Enough, Not Black Enough: Racial Identity in the South African Coloured Community*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2005.
- Mountain, A. *First People of the Cape*. Cape Town: David Philip, 2003.
- Oduyoye, M and Kanyoro, M. *The Will to Arise: Women, Tradition and the Church in Africa*. Pietermaritzburg: Cluster Publications, 2006.
- Reimold, W and Roger G. *Meteorite Impact! The Danger from Space and South Africa's Mega-Impact: The Vredefort Structure*. Johannesburg: Chris van Rensburg Publications, 2005.
- Robbins, D. *On the Bridge of Goodbye: The Story of South Africa's Discarded San People*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2007
- Schoeman, K. *The Early Mission in South Africa/Die Vroeë Sending in Suid-Afrika 1799 – 1819*. Pretoria: Protea Book House, 2005.
- Shimoni, G. *Community and Conscience: The Jews in Apartheid South Africa*. Johannesburg: David Philip, 2003.
- Tyson, PD and Preston-Whyte, RA. *Weather and Climate of Southern Africa; 2nd ed*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.
- Westby-Nunn, T. *Hout Bay: An Illustrated Historical Profile*. Cape Town: Westby-Nunn Publishers, 2005.





SA YEARBOOK 2007/08 | HISTORY



There seems to be general agreement among scholars that humankind had its earliest origins in Africa. South Africa is rich in fossil evidence of the evolutionary history of the human family, going back several million years.

The early inhabitants

The discovery of the skull of a Taung child in 1924; discoveries of hominid fossils at Sterkfontein caves, a world heritage site; and the groundbreaking work done at Blombos Cave in the southern Cape, have all put South Africa at the forefront of palaeontological research into the origins of humanity. Modern humans have lived in the region for over 100 000 years.

The small, mobile bands of Stone-Age hunter-gatherers, who created a wealth of rock art, were the ancestors of the Khoekhoe and San of historical times. The Khoekhoen and San (the “Hottentots” and “Bushmen” of early European terminology), although collectively known as the Khoisan, are often thought of as distinct peoples.

The former were those who, some 2 000 years ago, adopted a pastoralist lifestyle herding sheep and, later, cattle. Whereas the hunter-gatherers adapted to local environments and were scattered across the subcontinent, the herders sought out the pasturelands between modern-day Namibia and the Eastern Cape, which, generally, are near the coast.

At around the same time, Bantu-speaking agropastoralists began arriving in southern Africa, bringing with them an iron-age culture and domesticated crops. After establishing themselves in the well-watered eastern coastal region of southern Africa, these farmers spread out across the interior plateau, or “highveld”, where they adopted a more extensive cattle-farming culture.

Chiefdoms arose, based on control over cattle, which gave rise to systems of patronage and hence hierarchies of authority within communities. Cattle exchanges formed the basis of polygamous marriage arrangements, facilitating the accumulation of social power through control over the labour of kin groups and dependants.

Metallurgical skills, developed in the mining and processing of iron, copper, tin and gold, promoted regional trade and craft specialisation. At several archaeological sites, such as Mapungubwe and Thulamela in the Limpopo Valley, there is evidence of sophisticated political and material cultures, based in part on contact with the East African trading economy. These cultures, which were part of a broader African civilisation, predate European

encroachment by several centuries. Settlement patterns varied from the dispersed homesteads of the fertile coastal regions in the east, to the concentrated towns of the desert fringes in the west.

The farmers did not, however, extend their settlement into the western desert or the winter-rainfall region in the south-west. These regions remained the preserve of the Khoisan until Europeans put down roots at the Cape of Good Hope.

Currently, aided by modern science in uncovering the continent's past, which forms part of the African Renaissance, South Africa is gaining a greater understanding of its rich precolonial past and African polities and achievements that were to be disrupted and all but hidden from sight in the period that followed.

The early colonial period

Portuguese seafarers, who pioneered the sea route to India in the late 15th century, were regular visitors to the South African coast during the early 1500s. Other Europeans followed from the late 16th century.

In 1652, the Dutch East India Company (VOC) set up a station in Table Bay (Cape Town) to provision passing ships. Trade with the Khoekhoe(n) for slaughter stock soon degenerated into raiding and warfare.

Beginning in 1657, European settlers were allotted farms by the colonial authorities in the arable regions around Cape Town, where wine and wheat became the major products. In response to the colonists' demand for labour, the VOC imported slaves from East Africa, Madagascar, and its possessions from the East Indies.

By the early 1700s, the colonists had begun to spread into the hinterland beyond the nearest mountain ranges. These relatively independent and mobile farmers (trekboers), who lived as pastoralists and hunters, were largely free from supervision by the Dutch authorities.

As they intruded further upon the land and water sources, and stepped up their demands for livestock and labour, more and more of the indigenous inhabitants were dispossessed and incorporated into the colonial economy as servants.



Diseases such as smallpox, which was introduced by the Europeans in 1713, decimated the Khoisan, contributing to the decline of their cultures. Unions across the colour line took place and a new multiracial social order evolved, based on the supremacy of European colonists. The slave population steadily increased since more labour was needed.

By the mid-1700s, there were more slaves in the Cape than there were “free burghers” (European colonists). The Asian slaves were concentrated in the towns, where they formed an artisan class. They brought with them the Islamic religion, which gained adherents and significantly shaped the working-class culture of the Western Cape. Slaves of African descent were found more often on the farms of outlying districts.

In the late 1700s, the Khoisan offered far more determined resistance to colonial encroachment across the length of the colonial frontier. From the 1770s, colonists also came into contact and conflict with Bantu-speaking chiefdoms. A century of intermittent warfare ensued during which the colonists gained ascendancy, first over the Khoisan and then over the Xhosa-speaking chiefdoms to the east.

It was only in the late 1800s that the subjugation of these settled African societies became feasible. For some time, their relatively sophisticated social structure and economic systems fended off decisive disruption by incoming colonists, who lacked the necessary military superiority.

At the same time, a process of cultural change was set in motion, not least by commercial and missionary activity. In contrast to the Khoisan, the black farmers were, by and large, immune to European diseases. For this and other reasons, they were to greatly outnumber the whites in the population of white-ruled South Africa, and were able to preserve important features of their culture. A spate of state-building was launched beyond the frontiers of European settlement.

Perhaps because of population pressures, combined with the actions of slave traders in Portuguese territory on the east coast, the Zulu kingdom emerged as a highly centralised state. In the 1820s, the innovative leader Shaka established sway over a considerable area of south-east Africa and brought many chiefdoms under his dominion.

As splinter groups conquered and absorbed communities in their path, the disruption was felt as far north as central Africa. Substantial states, such as Moshoešhoe's Lesotho and other Sotho-Tswana chiefdoms, were established, partly for

reasons of defence. The mfecane or difaqane, as this period of disruption and state formation became known, remains the subject of much speculative debate. But the temporary disruption of life on the Highveld served to facilitate Boer expansion northwards from the 1830s, and provided a myth of the “empty land” which whites employed to justify their domination over the subcontinent in the 20th century.

The British colonial era

In 1795, the British occupied the Cape as a strategic base against the French, controlling the sea route to the East.

After a brief reversion to the Dutch in the course of the Napoleonic wars, it was retaken in 1806 and kept by Britain in the post-war settlement of territorial claims. The closed and regulated economic system of the Dutch period was swept away as the Cape Colony was integrated into the dynamic international trading empire of industrialising Britain.

A crucial new element was evangelicalism, brought to the Cape by Protestant missionaries. The evangelicals believed in the liberating effect of “free” labour and in the “civilising mission” of British imperialism. They were convinced that indigenous peoples could be fully assimilated into European Christian culture once the shackles of oppression had been removed.

The most important representative of the mission movement in South Africa was Dr John Philip, who arrived as superintendent of the London Missionary Society in 1819. His campaign on behalf of the oppressed Khoisan coincided with a high point in official sympathy for philanthropic concerns.

One result was Ordinance 50 of 1828, which guaranteed equal civil rights for “people of colour” within the colony and freed them from legal discrimination. At the same time, a powerful anti-slavery movement in Britain promoted a series of ameliorative measures, imposed on the colonies in the 1820s, and the proclamation of emancipation, which came into force in 1834. The slaves were subject to a four-year period of “apprenticeship” with their former owners, on the grounds that they must be prepared for freedom, which came on 1 December 1838.

Although slavery had become less profitable because of a depression in the wine industry, Cape slave-owners rallied to oppose emancipation. The compensation money, which the British treasury paid out to sweeten the pill, injected unprecedented

liquidity into the stagnant local economy. This brought a spurt of company formation, such as banks and insurance companies, as well as a surge of investment in land and wool sheep in the drier regions of the colony, in the late 1830s. Wool became a staple export on which the Cape economy depended for its further development in the middle decades of the century.

For the ex-slaves, as for the Khoisan servants, the reality of freedom was very different from the promise. As a wage-based economy developed, they remained dispossessed and exploited, with little opportunity to escape their servile lot.

Increasingly, they were lumped together as the “coloured” people, a group which included the descendants of unions between indigenous and European peoples, and a substantial Muslim minority who became known as the “Cape Malays” (misleadingly, as they mostly came from the Indonesian archipelago).

The coloured people were discriminated against on account of their working-class status as well as their racial identity. Among the poor, especially in and around Cape Town, there continued to be a great deal of racial mixing and intermarriage throughout the 1800s.

In 1820, several thousand British settlers, who were swept up by a scheme to relieve Britain of its unemployed, were placed in the eastern Cape frontier zone as a buffer against the Xhosa chiefdoms. The vision of a dense settlement of small farmers was, however, ill-conceived and many of the settlers became artisans and traders. The more successful became an entrepreneurial class of merchants, large-scale sheep farmers and speculators with an insatiable demand for land.

Some became fierce warmongers who pressed for the military dispossession of the chiefdoms. They coveted Xhosa land and welcomed the prospect of war involving large-scale military expenditure by the imperial authorities. The Xhosa engaged in raiding as a means of asserting their prior claims to the land. Racial paranoia became integral to white frontier politics. The result was that frontier warfare became endemic through much of the 19th century, during which Xhosa war leaders such as Chief Maqoma became heroic figures to their people.

By the mid-1800s, British settlers of similar persuasion were to be found in Natal. They too called for imperial expansion in support of their land claims and trading enterprises.

Meanwhile, large numbers of the original colonists, the Boers, were greatly extending white occupation beyond the Cape's borders to the north, in the movement that became known as the Great Trek, in the mid-1830s. Alienated by British liberalism, and with their economic enterprise usurped by British settlers, several thousand Boers from the interior districts, accompanied by a number of Khoisan servants, began a series of migrations northwards. They moved to the Highveld and Natal, skirting the great concentrations of black farmers on the way by taking advantage of the areas disrupted during the *mfecane*.

When the British, who were concerned about controlling the traffic through Port Natal (Durban), annexed the territory of Natal in 1843, those emigrant Boers who had hoped to settle there returned inland. The Voortrekkers (as they were later called) coalesced in two land-locked republics, the South African Republic (Transvaal) and the Orange Free State. There, the principles of racially exclusive citizenship were absolute, despite the trekkers' reliance on black labour.

With limited coercive power, the Boer communities had to establish relations and develop alliances with some black chiefdoms, neutralising those who obstructed their intrusion or who posed a threat to their security.

Only after the mineral discoveries of the late 1800s did the balance of power swing decisively towards the colonists. The Boer republics then took on the trappings of real statehood and imposed their authority within the territorial borders that they had notionally claimed for themselves.

The Colony of Natal, situated to the south of the mighty Zulu State, developed along very different lines from the original colony of settlement, the Cape. The size of the black population left no room for the assimilationist vision of race domination embraced in the Cape. Chiefdoms consisting mainly of refugee groups in the aftermath of the *mfecane* were persuaded to accept colonial protection in return for reserved land and the freedom to govern themselves in accordance with

their own customs. These chiefdoms were established in the heart of an expanding colonial territory.

Natal developed a system of political and legal dualism, whereby chiefly rule was entrenched and customary law was codified. Although exemptions from customary law could be granted to the educated products of the missions, in practice they were rare. Urban residence was strictly controlled and political rights outside the reserves were effectively limited to whites. Natal's system is widely regarded as having provided a model for the segregationism of the 20th century.

Natal's economy was boosted by the development of sugar plantations in the subtropical coastal lowlands. Indian-indentured labourers were imported from 1860 to work the plantations, and many Indian traders and market gardeners followed.

These Indians, who were segregated and discriminated against from the start, became a further important element in South Africa's population. It was in South Africa that Mohandas Gandhi refined, from the mid-1890s, the techniques of passive resistance, which he later effectively practised in India. Although Indians gradually moved into the Transvaal and elsewhere, they remain concentrated in Natal.

In 1853, the Cape Colony was granted a representative legislature in keeping with British policy, followed in 1872 by self-government. The franchise was formally non-racial, but also based on income and property qualifications. The result was that Africans and coloured people formed a minority of voters – although in certain places a substantial one.

What became known as the “liberal tradition” in the Cape depended on the fact that the great mass of Bantu-speaking farmers remained outside its colonial borders until late in the 19th century. Non-racialism could thus be embraced without posing a threat to white supremacy.

Numbers of Africans within the Cape Colony had sufficient formal education or owned enough property to qualify for the franchise. Political alliances across racial lines were common in the eastern Cape constituencies. It is therefore not surprising that the eastern Cape became a seedbed of African nationalism, once the ideal and promise of inclusion in the common society had been so starkly violated by later racial policies.

The mineral revolution

By the late 19th century, the limitations of the Cape's liberal tradition were becoming apparent.

The hardening of racial attitudes that accompanied the rise of a more militant imperialist spirit coincided locally with the watershed discovery of mineral riches in the interior of southern Africa. In a developing economy, cheap labour was at a premium, and the claims of educated Africans for equality met with increasingly fierce resistance.

At the same time, the large numbers of Africans in the chiefdoms beyond the Kei River and north of the Gariep (Orange River), then being incorporated into the Cape Colony, posed new threats to racial supremacy and white security, increasing segregationist pressures.

Alluvial diamonds were discovered on the Vaal River in the late 1860s. The subsequent discovery of dry deposits at what became the city of Kimberley drew tens of thousands of people, black and white, to the first great industrial hub in Africa, and the largest diamond deposit in the world. In 1871, the British, who ousted several rival claimants, annexed the diamond fields, which fell in sparsely populated territory to the west of the main corridors of northward migration.

The Colony of Griqualand West thus created was incorporated into the Cape Colony in 1880. By 1888, the consolidation of diamond claims had led to the creation of the huge De Beers monopoly under the control of Cecil Rhodes. He used his power and wealth to become prime minister of the Cape Colony (1890 to 1896) and, through his chartered British South Africa Company, conqueror and ruler of modern-day Zambia and Zimbabwe.

The mineral discoveries had a major impact on the subcontinent as a whole. A railway network linking the interior to the coastal ports revolutionised transportation and energised agriculture. Coastal cities such as Cape Town, Port Elizabeth, East London and Durban experienced an economic boom as port facilities were upgraded.

The fact that the mineral discoveries coincided with a new era of imperialism and the scramble for Africa, brought imperial power and influence to bear in southern Africa as never before.

Independent African chiefdoms were systematically subjugated and incorporated by their white-ruled neighbours. The most dramatic example was the Anglo-Zulu War of 1879, which saw the Zulu state brought under imperial control, during which King Cetshwayo's impis inflicted a celebrated defeat on British forces at Isandlwana. In 1897, Zululand was incorporated into Natal.

The South African Republic (Transvaal) was annexed by Britain in 1877. Boer resistance led to British withdrawal in 1881, but not before the Pedi

(northern Sotho) state, which fell within the republic's borders, had been subjugated. The indications were that, having once been asserted, British hegemony was likely to be reasserted. The southern Sotho and Swazi territories were also brought under British rule but maintained their status as imperial dependencies, so that both the current Lesotho and Swaziland escaped the rule of local white regimes.

The discovery of the Witwatersrand goldfields in 1886 was a turning point in the history of South Africa. It presaged the emergence of the modern South African industrial state.

Once the extent of the reefs had been established, and deep-level mining had proved to be a viable investment, it was only a matter of time before Britain and its local representatives again found a pretext for war against the Boer republics of Transvaal and the Orange Free State.

The demand for franchise rights for English-speaking immigrants on the goldfields (known as uitlanders) provided a lever for applying pressure on the government of President Paul Kruger. Egged on by the deep-level mining magnates, to whom the Boer government seemed obstructive and inefficient, and by the expectation of an uitlander uprising, Rhodes launched a raid into the Transvaal in late December 1895. The raid's failure saw the end of Rhodes' political career, but Sir Alfred Milner, British high commissioner in South Africa from 1897, was determined to overthrow Kruger's government and establish British rule throughout the subcontinent. The Boer government was eventually forced into a declaration of war in October 1899.

The mineral discoveries had a radical impact on every sphere of society. Labour was required on a massive scale and could only be provided by Africans, who had to be drawn away from the land.

Many Africans did respond with alacrity to the opportunities presented by wage labour, travelling long distances to earn money to supplement rural enterprise in the homestead economy.

In response to the expansion of internal markets, Africans exploited their farming skills and family labour to good effect to increase production for sale. A substantial black peasantry arose, often by means of share-cropping or labour tenantry on white-owned farms.

For the white authorities, however, the chief consideration was ensuring a labour supply and undermining black competition on the land. Conquest, land dispossession, taxation and pass laws were designed to force black people off the land and channel them into labour markets, especially to meet the needs of the mines.

Gradually, the alternatives available to them were closed, and the decline of the homestead economy made wage labour increasingly essential for survival. The integration of Africans into the emerging urban and industrial society of South Africa should have followed these developments, but short-term, recurrent labour migrancy suited employers and the authorities, which sought to entrench the system.

The closed compounds pioneered on the diamond fields, as a means of migrant labour control, were replicated at the gold mines. The preservation of communal areas from which migrants could be drawn had the effect of lowering wages, by denying Africans rights within the urban areas and keeping their families and dependants on subsistence plots in the reserves.

Africans could be denied basic rights if the fiction could be maintained that they did not belong in "white South Africa", but to "tribal societies" from which they came to service the "white man's needs". Where black families secured a toehold in the urban areas, local authorities confined them to segregated "locations". This set of assumptions and policies informed the development of segregationist ideology and, later (from 1948), apartheid.

The Anglo-Boer/South African War (October 1899 – May 1902) and its aftermath

The war that followed the mineral revolution was mainly a white man's war. In its first phase, the Boer forces took the initiative, besieging the frontier towns of Mafeking (Mafikeng) and Kimberley in the northern Cape, and Ladysmith in northern Natal.

Some colonial Boers rebelled, however, in sympathy with the republics. But, after a large expeditionary force under lords Roberts and Kitchener arrived, the British advance was rapid. Kruger fled the Transvaal shortly before Pretoria fell in June 1900.



The formal conquest of the two Boer republics was followed by a prolonged guerrilla campaign. Small, mobile groups of Boers denied the imperial forces their victory, by disrupting rail links and supply lines.

Commandos swept deep into colonial territory, rousing rebellion wherever they went. The British were at a disadvantage, owing to their lack of familiarity with the terrain and the Boers' superior skills as horsemen and sharpshooters. The British responded with a scorched-earth policy.

This included farm burnings, looting and the setting-up of concentration camps for non-combatants, in which some 26 000 Boer women and children died from disease. The incarceration of black (including coloured) people in the path of the war in racially segregated camps has been absent in conventional accounts of the war and has only recently been acknowledged.

They too suffered appalling conditions and some 14 000 (perhaps many more) are estimated to have died. At the same time, many black farmers were in a position to meet the demand for produce created by the military, or to avail themselves of employment opportunities at good wages. Some 10 000 black servants accompanied the Boer commandos, and the British used Africans as labourers, scouts, dispatch riders, drivers and guards.

The war also taught many Africans that the forces of dispossession could be rolled back if the circumstances were right. It gave black communities the opportunity to recolonise land lost in conquest, which enabled them to withhold their labour after the war. Most supported the British in the belief that Britain was committed to extending civil and political rights to black people. In this they were to be disappointed, as in the Treaty of Vereeniging that ended the war, the British agreed to leave the issue of rights for Africans to be decided by a future self-governing (white) authority. All in all, the Anglo-Boer/South African War was a radicalising experience for Africans.

Britain's reconstruction regime set about creating a white-ruled dominion by uniting the former Boer republics (both by then British colonies) with Natal and the Cape.

The most important priority was to re-establish white control over the land and force the Africans back to wage labour. The labour-recruiting system was improved, both internally and externally. Recruiting agreements were reached with the Portuguese authorities in Mozambique, from where much mine labour came.

When, by 1904, African sources still proved inadequate to get the mines working at pre-war levels, over 60 000 indentured Chinese were brought in. This precipitated a vociferous outcry from proponents of white supremacy in South Africa and liberals in Britain.

By 1910, all had been repatriated, a step made easier when a surge of Africans came forward from areas such as the Transkeian territories and the northern Transvaal, which had not previously been large-scale suppliers of migrants. This was the heyday of the private recruiters, who exploited families' indebtedness to procure young men to labour in the mines. The Africans' post-war ability to withhold their labour had been undercut by government action, abetted by drought and stock disease.

The impact of the Anglo-Boer/South African War as a seminal influence on the development of Afrikaner nationalist politics became apparent in subsequent years.

The Boer leaders – most notably Louis Botha, Jan Smuts and JBM Hertzog – played a dominant role in the country's politics for the next half century. After initial plans for anglicisation of the defeated Afrikaners through the education system and numerical swamping through British immigration were abandoned as impractical, the British looked to the Afrikaners as collaborators in securing imperial political and economic interests.

During 1907 and 1908, the two former Boer republics were granted self-government but, crucially, with a whites-only franchise. Despite promises to the contrary, black interests were sacrificed in the interest of white nation-building across the white language divide. The National Convention drew up a constitution and the four colonies became an independent dominion called the Union of South Africa on 31 May 1910.

The 19th-century formally non-racial franchise was retained in the Cape but was not extended elsewhere, where rights of citizenship were confined to whites alone.

It was clear from the start that segregation was the conventional wisdom of the new rulers. Black people were defined as outsiders, without rights or claims on the common society that their labour had helped to create.

Segregation

Government policy in the Union of South Africa did not develop in isolation, but against the backdrop of black political initiatives. Segregation and apartheid assumed their shape, in part, as a white response

to Africans' increasing participation in the country's economic life and their assertion of political rights. Despite the government's efforts to shore up traditionalism and retribalise them, black people became more fully integrated into the urban and industrial society of 20th-century South Africa than happened elsewhere on the continent. An educated élite of clerics, teachers, business people, journalists and professionals grew to be a major force in black politics.

Mission Christianity and its associated educational institutions exerted a profound influence on African political life, and separatist churches were early vehicles for African political assertion. The experiences of studying abroad, and in particular, interaction with black people struggling for their rights elsewhere in Africa, the United States of America and the Caribbean, played an important part. A vigorous black press, associated in its early years with such pioneer editors as JT Jabavu, Pixley Seme, Dr Abdullah Abdurahman, Sol Plaatje and John Dube, served the black reading public.

At the same time, African communal struggles to maintain access to the land in rural areas posed a powerful challenge to the white state. Traditional authorities often led popular struggles against intrusive and manipulative policies. Government attempts to control and co-opt the chiefs often failed.

Steps towards the formation of a national political organisation of coloureds began around the turn of the century, with the formation of the African Political Organisation in 1902 by Dr Abdurahman, mainly in the Cape Province.

The African National Congress (ANC), founded in 1912, became, however, the most important black organisation drawing together traditional authorities and the educated African élite in common causes.

In its early years, the ANC was concerned mainly with constitutional protest.

Worker militancy emerged in the wake of the First World War and continued through the 1920s. It included strikes and an anti-pass campaign given impetus by women, particularly in the Free State, resisting extension of the pass laws to them. The Industrial and Commercial Workers' Union, under

the leadership of Clements Kadalie, was (despite its name) the first populist, nationwide organisation representing blacks in rural as well as urban areas. But it was short-lived.

The Communist Party, formed in 1921 and since then a force for both non-racism and worker organisation, was to prove far longer-lasting. In other sections of the black population too, the turn of the century saw organised opposition emerging. Gandhi's leadership of protest against discriminatory laws gave impetus to the formation of provincial Indian congresses, including the Natal Indian Congress formed by Gandhi in 1894.

The principles of segregationist thinking were laid down in a 1905 report by the South African Native Affairs Commission and continued to evolve in response to these economic, social and political pressures. In keeping with its recommendations, the first union government enacted the seminal Natives Land Act in 1913.

This defined the remnants of their ancestral lands after conquest for African occupation, and declared illegal all land purchases or rent tenancy outside these reserves. The reserves ("homelands" as they were subsequently called) eventually comprised about 13% of South Africa's land surface. Administrative and legal dualism reinforced the division between white citizen and black non-citizen, a dispensation personified by the governor-general who, as "supreme chief" over the country's African majority, was empowered to rule them by administrative fiat and decree.

The government also regularised the job colour bar, reserving skilled work for whites and denying African workers the right to organise. Legislation, which was consolidated in the Natives (Urban Areas) Act, 1923, entrenched urban segregation and controlled African mobility by means of pass laws. The pass laws were intended to enmesh Africans in a web of coercion designed to force them into labour and keep them there under conditions and at wage levels that suited white employers, and to deny them any bargaining power.

In these and other ways, the foundations of apartheid were laid by successive governments representing the compromises hammered out by the National Convention of 1908 to 1909 to effect

the union of English- and Afrikaans-speaking whites.

Divisions within the white community remained significant, however. Afrikaner nationalism grew as a factor in the years after union. It was given impetus in 1914, both by the formation of the National Party (NP), in a breakaway from the ruling South African Party, and by a rebellion of Afrikaners who could not reconcile themselves with the decision to join the First World War against Germany. In part, the NP spoke for Afrikaners impoverished by the Anglo-Boer/South African War and dislodged from the land by the development of capitalist farming.

An Afrikaner underclass was emerging in the towns, which found itself uncompetitive in the labour market, as white workers demanded higher wages than those paid to blacks.

Soon, labour issues came to the fore. In 1920, some 71 000 black mineworkers went on strike in protest against the spiralling cost of living, but the strike was quickly put down by isolating the compounds where the migrant workers were housed.

Another threat to government came from white workers. Immigrant white workers with mining experience abroad performed much of the skilled and semi-skilled work on the mines. As mine owners tried to cut costs by using lower-wage black labour in semi-skilled jobs, white labour became increasingly militant. These tensions culminated in a bloody and dramatic rebellion on the goldfields in 1922, which the Smuts government put down with military force. In 1924, a pact government under Hertzog, comprising Afrikaner nationalists and representatives of immigrant labour, ousted the Smuts regime.

The pact was based on a common suspicion of the dominance of mining capital, and a determination to protect the interests of white labour by intensifying discrimination against blacks. The commitment to white labour policies in government employment, such as the railways and postal service was intensified, and the job colour bar was reinforced, with one of its main objectives to address what was known as a "poor-white problem".

In 1934, the main white parties fused to combat the local effects of a worldwide depression.

This was followed by a new Afrikaner nationalist breakaway under Dr DF Malan. In 1936, white supremacy was further entrenched by the United Party with the removal of the Africans of the Cape Province who qualified, from the common voters' roll. Meanwhile, Malan's breakaway NP was greatly

augmented by an Afrikaner cultural revival spearheaded by the secret white male Afrikaner Broederbond and other cultural organisations during the year of the Voortrekker centenary celebrations (1938), as well as by anti-war sentiment from 1939.

Apartheid

After the Second World War in 1948, the NP, with its ideology of apartheid that brought an even more rigorous and authoritarian approach than the segregationist policies of previous governments, won the general election. It did so against the background of a revival of mass militancy during the 1940s, after a period of relative quiescence in the 1930s when black groups attempted to foster unity among themselves.

The change was marked by the formation of the ANC Youth League in 1943, fostering the leadership of figures such as Anton Lembede, AP Mda, Nelson Mandela, Oliver Tambo and Walter Sisulu, who were to inspire the struggle for decades to come.

In the 1940s, squatter movements in peri-urban areas brought mass politics back to the urban centres. The 1946 Mineworkers' Strike was a turning point in the emergence of a politics of mass mobilisation.

As was the case with the First World War, the experience of the Second World War and post-war economic difficulties enhanced discontent. For those who supported the NP, its primary appeal lay in its determination to maintain white domination in the face of rising mass resistance; uplift poor Afrikaners; challenge the pre-eminence of English-speaking whites in public life, the professions and business; and abolish the remaining imperial ties.

The state became an engine of patronage for Afrikaner employment. The Afrikaner Broederbond co-ordinated the party's programme, ensuring that Afrikaner nationalist interests and policies attained ascendancy throughout civil society.

In 1961, the NP Government under Prime Minister HF Verwoerd declared South Africa a republic, after winning a whites-only referendum on the issue.

A new currency, the Rand, and a new flag, anthem and coat of arms were formally introduced. South Africa, having become a republic, had to apply for continued membership of the Commonwealth.

In the face of demands for an end to apartheid, South Africa withdrew its application and a figurehead president replaced the British queen (represented locally by the governor-general) as head of state.

In most respects, apartheid was a continuation, in more systematic and brutal form, of the segregationist policies of previous governments.

A new concern with racial purity was apparent in laws prohibiting interracial sexual and provisions for population registration requiring that every South African be assigned to one discrete racial category or another.

For the first time, the coloured people, who had always been subjected to informal discrimination, were brought within the ambit of discriminatory laws. In the mid-1950s, government took the drastic step of overriding an entrenched clause in the 1910 Constitution of the Union so as to be able to remove coloured voters from the common voters' roll. It also enforced residential segregation, expropriating homes where necessary and policing massive forced removals into coloured "group areas".

Until the 1940s, South Africa's racial policies had not been entirely out of step with those to be found in the colonial world. But by the 1950s, which saw decolonisation and a global backlash against racism gather pace, the country was dramatically opposed to world opinion on questions of human rights. The architects of apartheid, among whom Dr Verwoerd was pre-eminent, responded by elaborating a theory of multinationalism.

Their policy, which they termed "separate development", divided the African population into artificial ethnic "nations", each with its own "homeland" and the prospect of "independence", supposedly in keeping with trends elsewhere on the continent. This divide-and-rule strategy was designed to disguise the racial basis of official policy-making by the substitution of the language of ethnicity. This was accompanied by much ethnographic engineering as efforts were made to resurrect tribal structures. In the process, the government sought to create a significant collaborating class.

The truth was that the rural reserves were by this time thoroughly degraded by overpopulation and soil erosion. This did not prevent four of the "homeland" structures (Transkei, Bophuthatswana, Venda and Ciskei) being declared "independent", a status which the vast majority of South Africans, and therefore also the international community,

declined to recognise. In each case, the process involved the repression of opposition and the use by the government of the power to nominate and thereby pad elected assemblies with a quota of compliant figures.

Forced removals from "white" areas affected some 3,5 million people and vast rural slums were created in the homelands, which were used as dumping grounds. The pass laws and influx control were extended and harshly enforced, and labour bureaux were set up to channel labour to where it was needed. Hundreds of thousands of people were arrested or prosecuted under the pass laws each year, reaching over half a million a year from the mid-1960s to the mid-1970s. Industrial decentralisation to growth points on the borders of (but not inside) the homelands was promoted as a means of keeping blacks out of "white" South Africa.

In virtually every sphere, from housing to education to healthcare, central government took control over black people's lives with a view to reinforcing their allotted role as "temporary sojourners", welcome in "white" South Africa solely to serve the needs of the employers of labour. However, these same programmes of control became the focus of resistance. In particular, the campaign against the pass laws formed a cornerstone of the struggle.

The end of apartheid

The introduction of apartheid policies coincided with the adoption by the ANC in 1949 of its programme of action, expressing the renewed militancy of the 1940s. The programme embodied the rejection of white domination and a call for action in the form of protests, strikes and demonstrations. There followed a decade of turbulent mass action in resistance to the imposition of still harsher forms of segregation and oppression.

The Defiance Campaign of 1952 carried mass mobilisation to new heights under the banner of non-violent resistance to the pass laws. These actions were influenced in part by the philosophy of Mohandas Gandhi.

A critical step in the emergence of non-racialism was the formation of the Congress Alliance, including the ANC; South African Indian Congress;



the Coloured People's Congress; a small white congress organisation (the Congress of Democrats); and the South African Congress of Trade Unions.

The alliance gave formal expression to an emerging unity across racial and class lines that was manifested in the Defiance Campaign and other mass protests, including against the Bantu education of this period, which also saw women's resistance take a more organised character with the formation of the Federation of South African Women.

In 1955, the Freedom Charter was drawn up at the Congress of the People in Soweto. The charter enunciated the principles of the struggle, binding the movement to a culture of human rights and non-racialism. Over the next few decades, the Freedom Charter was elevated to an important symbol of the freedom struggle.

The Pan-Africanist Congress (PAC), founded by Robert Sobukwe and based on the philosophies of "Africanism" and anti-communism, broke away from the Congress Alliance in 1959.

The state's initial response, harsh as it was, was not yet as draconian as it was to become. Its attempt to prosecute more than 150 anti-apartheid leaders for treason, in a trial that began in 1956, ended in acquittals in 1961. But by that time, mass organised opposition had been banned.

Matters came to a head at Sharpeville in March 1960, when 69 anti-pass demonstrators were killed when police fired on a demonstration called by the PAC. A state of emergency was imposed and detention without trial was introduced.

The black political organisations were banned and their leaders went into exile or were arrested.

In this climate, the ANC and PAC abandoned their long-standing commitment to non-violent resistance and turned to armed struggle, combined with underground organisation and mobilisation as well as mobilisation of international solidarity. Top leaders, including members of the newly formed military wing Umkhonto we Sizwe (MK) (Spear of the Nation), were arrested in 1963. In the "Rivonia Trial", eight ANC leaders, including Nelson Mandela, were convicted of sabotage (instead of treason, the original charge) and sentenced to life imprisonment.

In this period, leaders of other organisations, including the PAC and the New Unity Movement, were also sentenced to long terms of imprisonment and/or banned.

The 1960s was a decade of overwhelming repression and relative political disarray among

blacks in the country. Armed action was contained by the state.

State repression played a central role in containing internal resistance, and the leadership of the struggle shifted increasingly to the missions in exile. At the same time, the ANC leadership decided to embark on a campaign to infiltrate the country through what was then Rhodesia.

In August 1967, a joint force of MK and the Zimbabwean People's Revolutionary Army (Zipra) of the Zimbabwe African People's Union (Zapu) entered Zimbabwe, and over a two-month period engaged the joint Rhodesian and South African security forces. Although the joint MK-Zipra force failed to reach South Africa, this was the first military confrontation between the military forces of the ANC-led alliance and white security forces.

The resurgence of resistance politics from the early 1970s was dramatic. The Black Consciousness Movement, led by Steve Biko (who was killed in detention in 1977), reawakened a sense of pride and self-esteem in black people. News of the brutal death of Biko reverberated around the globe and led to unprecedented outrage.

As capitalist economies sputtered with the oil crisis of 1973, black trade unions revived. A wave of strikes reflected a new militancy that involved better organisation and was drawing new sectors, in particular intellectuals and the student movement, into mass struggle and debate over the principles informing it. Rallies at black universities in support of Frelimo, the Mozambican liberation movement, also gave expression to the growing militancy.

The year 1976 marked the beginning of a sustained anti-apartheid revolt. In June, school pupils of Soweto rose up against apartheid education, followed by youth uprisings all around the country. Despite the harsh repression that followed, students continued to organise, with the formation in 1979 of organisations for school students (Congress of South African Students) and college and university students (Azanian Students Organisation).

By the 1980s, the different forms of struggle – armed struggle, mass mobilisation and international solidarity – were beginning to integrate and coalesce.

The United Democratic Front and the informal umbrella, the Mass Democratic Movement, emerged as legal vehicles of democratic forces struggling for liberation. Clerics played a prominent public role in these movements. The involvement of workers in resistance took on a new dimension

with the formation of the Congress of South African Trade Unions and the National Council of Trade Unions.

Popular anger was directed against all those who were deemed to be collaborating with the government in the pursuit of its objectives, and the black townships became virtually ungovernable. From the mid-1980s, regional and national states of emergency were enforced.

Developments in neighbouring states, where mass resistance to white minority and colonial rule led to Portuguese decolonisation in the mid-1970s and the abdication of Zimbabwe's minority regime in 1980, left South Africa exposed as the last bastion of white supremacy.

Under growing pressure and increasingly isolated internationally, the government embarked on a dual strategy, introducing limited reform coupled with intensifying repression and militarisation of society, with the objective of containing the pressures and increasing its support base while crushing organised resistance.

An early example of reform was the recognition of black trade unions to try to stabilise labour relations. In 1983, the Constitution was reformed to allow the coloured and Indian minorities limited participation in separate and subordinate houses of Parliament.

The vast majority of these groups demonstrated their rejection of the tricameral dispensation through massive boycotts of elections, but it was kept in place by the apartheid regime despite its visible lack of legitimacy. Attempts to legitimise community councils as vehicles for the participation of Africans outside the Bantustans in local government met a similar fate.

Militarisation included the ascendancy of the State Security Council, which usurped the role of the executive in crucial respects, and a succession of states of emergency as part of the implementation of a comprehensive counter-insurgency strategy to combat what, by the mid-1980s, was an endemic insurrectionary spirit in the land.

However, by the late 1980s, popular resistance was taking the form of mass defiance campaigns, while struggles over more localised issues saw broad sections of communities mobilised in united

action. Popular support for released political prisoners and for the armed struggle was being openly expressed.

In response to the rising tide of resistance, the international community strengthened its support for the anti-apartheid cause. A range of sanctions and boycotts was instituted, both unilaterally by countries across the world and through the United Nations (UN). These sanctions were called for in a co-ordinated strategy by the internal and external anti-apartheid movement in South Africa.

FW de Klerk, who replaced PW Botha as state president in 1989, announced at the opening of Parliament in February 1990 the unbanning of the liberation movements and release of political prisoners, among them, Nelson Mandela. A number of factors led to this step. International financial, trade, sport and cultural sanctions were clearly biting.

Above all, even if South Africa were nowhere near collapse, either militarily or economically, several years of emergency rule and ruthless repression had clearly neither destroyed the structures of organised resistance, nor helped establish legitimacy for the apartheid regime or its collaborators. Instead, popular resistance, including mass and armed action, was intensifying.

The ANC, enjoying popular recognition and legitimacy as the foremost liberation organisation, was increasingly regarded as a government-in-waiting. International support for the liberation movement came from various countries around the globe, particularly from former socialist countries and Nordic countries as well as the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM).

The other liberation organisations increasingly experienced various internal and external pressures and did not enjoy much popular support.

To outside observers, and also in the eyes of growing numbers of white South Africans, apartheid stood exposed as morally bankrupt, indefensible and impervious to reforms.

The collapse of global communism, the negotiated withdrawal of Cuban forces from Angola, and the culmination of the South-West African People's Organisation's liberation struggle in the negotiated independence of Namibia – formerly South-West Africa, administered by South

Africa as a League of Nations mandate since 1919 – did much to change the mindset of whites. No longer could whites demonise the ANC and PAC as fronts for international communism.

White South Africa had also changed in deeper ways. Afrikaner nationalism had lost much of its *raison d'être*. Many Afrikaners had become urban, middle class and relatively prosperous.

Their ethnic grievances and attachment to ethnic causes and symbols had diminished. A large part of the NP's core constituency was ready to explore larger national identities, even across racial divides, and yearned for international respectability. In 1982, disenchanted hardliners split from the NP to form the Conservative Party, leaving the NP open to more flexible and modernising influences. After this split, factions within the Afrikaner élite openly started to pronounce in favour of a more inclusive society, causing more friction with the NP government, which became increasingly militaristic and authoritarian.

A number of business, student and academic Afrikaners held meetings publicly and privately with the ANC in exile. Secret talks were held between the imprisoned Mandela and government ministers about a new dispensation for South Africa, with blacks forming a major part of it.

Inside the country, mass action became the order of the day. Petty apartheid laws and symbols were openly challenged and removed. Together with a sliding economy and increasing international pressure, these developments made historic changes inevitable.

The First Decade of Freedom

After a long negotiation process, sustained despite much opportunistic violence from the right wing and its surrogates, and in some instances sanctioned by elements of the State, South Africa's first democratic election was held in April 1994 under an interim Constitution.

The interim Constitution divided South Africa into nine new provinces in place of the previous four provinces and 10 "homelands", and provided for the Government of National Unity to be constituted by all parties with at least 20 seats in the National Assembly.

The ANC emerged from the election with a 62% majority. The main opposition came from the NP, which gained 20% of the vote nationally, and a majority in the Western Cape. The Inkatha Freedom Party (IFP) received 10% of the vote, mainly in its KwaZulu-Natal base. The NP and the IFP formed part of the Government of National Unity until 1996, when

the NP withdrew. The ANC-led government embarked on a programme to promote the reconstruction and development of the country and its institutions.

This called for the simultaneous pursuit of democratisation and socio-economic change, as well as reconciliation and the building of consensus founded on the commitment to improve the lives of all South Africans, in particular the poor. It required the integration of South Africa into a rapidly changing global environment.

Pursuit of these objectives was a consistent focus of government during the First Decade of Freedom, seeking the unity of a previously divided society in working together to overcome the legacy of a history of division, exclusion and neglect.

Converting democratic ideals into practice required, among other things, initiating a radical overhaul of the machinery of government at every level, working towards service delivery, openness, and a culture of human rights. It has required a more integrated approach to planning and implementation to ensure that the many different aspects of transformation and socio-economic upliftment cohere with maximum impact.

A significant milestone in the democratisation of South Africa was the exemplary Constitution-making process, which in 1996 delivered a document that has evoked worldwide admiration. So too have been the elections subsequent to 1994 – all conducted peacefully, with high levels of participation compared with the norm in most democracies, and accepted by all as free and fair in their conduct and results.

Local government elections during 1995 and 1996, and then again in 2000 after the transformation of the municipal system, gave the country its first democratically elected non-racial municipal authorities.

Since 2001, participatory democracy and interactive governance have been strengthened through the practice of imbizo, in which members of the executive, in all three spheres of government, including The Presidency, regularly engage directly with the public around implementation of programmes of reconstruction and development.

The second democratic national election in 1999 saw the ANC majority increase to just short of two thirds and the election of Mr Thabo Mbeki as president, as successor to Mr Mandela. It saw a sharp decline of the NP (then the New National Party [NNP]) and its replacement by the Democratic Party, led by Mr Tony Leon, as the official opposition in Parliament. These two parties formed the Democratic Alliance, which the NNP left in 2001.

Although the new Constitution does not provide for a government of national unity, the Government continued to include representatives of opposition parties, namely the IFP, later the Azanian People's Organisation, and the NNP.

The Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC), under the leadership of Archbishop Desmond Tutu, helped inculcate a commitment to accountability and transparency in South Africa's public life, at the same time helping to heal wounds inflicted by the inhumanities of the apartheid era.

During 2003, Parliament accepted the Government's response to the final report of the TRC. Out of 22 000 individuals or surviving families appearing before the commission, 19 000 were identified as needing urgent reparation assistance – virtually all, where the necessary information was available, received interim reparations.

As final reparations, government is providing a once-off grant of R30 000 to individuals or survivors who appeared before, and were designated by, the TRC, over and above the programmes for material assistance. There are also systematic programmes to project the symbolism of the struggle and the ideal of freedom. These include the Freedom Park and other symbols and monuments, and such matters as records of history, remaking of cultural and art forms, and changing geographical and place names.

The ethos of partnership informed the establishment of the National Economic Development and Labour Council. It brings together government, business, organised labour and development organisations to confront the challenges of growth and development for South Africa in a turbulent and globalising international economy.

The Presidential Jobs Summit in 1998 and the Growth and Development Summit (GDS) in June 2003 brought these sectors together to collectively take advantage of the conditions in South Africa for faster growth and development. At the GDS, a comprehensive set of agreements was concluded to address urgent challenges in a practical way and to speed up job-creating growth and development.

Partnership between government and civil society has been further strengthened by the creation of a number of working groups through which sectors of society – business, organised

labour, higher education, religious leaders, youth and women – engage regularly with the President.

From the start, government placed emphasis on meeting basic needs through programmes for socio-economic development such as the provision of housing, piped water, electricity, education and healthcare, as well as social grants for those in need.

The impact of these programmes is seen in the increased proportion of South Africans who now have access to these basic services. This has been achieved despite a social revolution reflected in smaller household sizes (with the number of households growing almost three times faster than the population) and therefore many more households needing basic services.

Another priority has been the safety and security of citizens, requiring both transforming the police into a service working with the community, and overcoming grave problems of criminality and a culture of violence posed by the social dislocations inherited from the past. By the end of the first decade of democracy, crime levels had stabilised and many categories were beginning to decrease.

On the economic front, the key objectives have been job creation, poverty eradication, reduction of inequality and overall growth. There has been progress in rebuilding the economy, in particular with the achievement of macroeconomic stability and the initiation of programmes of microeconomic reform. However, unemployment remains a major challenge – the number of jobs created has not been enough – as the economically active population has grown even faster, and the economy needs more skilled workers. By the end of 2004, growth was accelerating and there were signs of the beginnings of a reduction in unemployment.

The integration of South Africa into the global political, economic and social system has been a priority for democratic South Africa. As a country isolated during the apartheid period, an African country, a developing country, and a country whose liberation was achieved with the support of the international community, it has been of critical importance to build political and economic links with the countries and regions of the world, and to work with others for an international environment more favourable to development across the world, and in Africa and South Africa in particular.



The South African Government is committed to the African Renaissance, which is based on the consolidation of democracy, economic development and a co-operative approach to resolving the challenges the continent faces.

South Africa hosted the launch in 2002 of the African Union (AU), a step towards further unification of Africa in pursuit of socio-economic development, the Organisation of African Unity having fulfilled its mandate to liberate Africa.

President Mbeki chaired the AU for its founding year, handing over the chair to President Joaquim Chissano of Mozambique in July 2003. In 2004, the AU decided that South Africa should host the Pan-African Parliament and it met for its second session in South Africa, the first time on South African soil, in September of that year.

By participating in UN and AU initiatives to resolve conflict and promote peace and security on the continent – in among other countries, the Democratic Republic of Congo, Burundi and Sudan – South Africa has been contributing to the achievement of conditions conducive to the entrenchment of stability, democracy and faster development.

Through the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad), the development programme of the AU, South Africa works with the rest of the continent and its partners in the industrialised world for the development and regeneration of the African continent.

Democratic South Africa has sought to play an active role in international and multilateral organisations. During the First Decade of Freedom, it acted at various times as chair of the Southern African Development Community, NAM, AU and the Commonwealth Heads of Government meetings. It has played host to several international conferences, including the UN Conference on Trade and Development in 1996, the 2000 World AIDS Congress, World Conference Against Racism in 2001, World Summit on Sustainable Development in 2002, and the World Parks Congress in 2003.

South Africa is playing an increasing role in multilateral institutions – for example the Minister of Finance has been a member of the International Monetary Fund's Development Committee since 2002, and the National Commissioner of the South African Police Service was elected president of Interpol in 2004.

In 2006, South Africa assumed the chair of the G77 (and China) and was elected to serve a two-year period as a non-permanent member of the UN Security Council.

Into the Second Decade of Freedom

When South Africa celebrated 10 years of freedom in 2004, there were celebrations across the world in countries whose peoples had helped bring freedom to South Africa through their solidarity, and who today are partners in reconstruction and development.

As government took stock of the First Decade of Freedom in *Towards a Ten Year Review*, it was able to document great progress by South Africans in pursuit of their goals, as well as the challenges that face the nation as it traverses the second decade of its freedom towards 2014. This was further strengthened by the assessment of the country's achievements of its mandate to improve the lives of the people through the publishing of the *Development Indicators*, which point to progress achieved so far.

Some of South Africa's challenges are shared with the rest of the world, especially developing countries.

Globalisation, the digital divide, poverty, HIV and AIDS, and creating conditions conducive to sustainable development are some of the critical issues for which the nation is seeking solutions in partnership with others.

Other challenges are specific to South Africa. Among them are the further strengthening of social partnerships for the development of South African society, the eradication of poverty, improving the performance of the State, addressing the consequences of the social transition that has followed the end of apartheid, including the persistence of two economies in one country, improving the regional environment and implementing Nepad.

Meeting these challenges is essential to taking the country to the path of faster growth and development that is needed to sustain and even surpass the progress of the first decade.

In its third democratic elections, in April 2004, the country gave an increased mandate to the Government's programme for reconstruction and development and for the entrenchment of the rights inscribed in the Constitution. It mandated government specifically to create the conditions for halving unemployment and poverty by 2014. Local government elections in 2006, following a long period of civic unrest as communities protested against a mixed record of service delivery, saw increased participation compared with the previous local elections, as well as increased support for the ruling party based on a manifesto for a concerted effort, in partnership with communities, to make local government work better.

In this context, government's Programme of Action emphasises effective implementation of agreed policies, with particular focus on creating work opportunities, fighting poverty and building the capacity of government, especially local government.

Better economic performance, which began late in 1999 – resulting in the longest business cycle upswing on record – gathered further momentum from 2004, reaching 5% in 2006.

Working with its social partners, the Government has developed AsgiSA, the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa, to raise the trajectory of growth to an average of at least 6% between 2010 and 2014. This acceleration of growth is vital to achieve government's mandate of halving poverty and unemployment by 2014.

In 2007, government released, for the first time, a set of development indicators that reflects progress in establishing a government-wide monitoring and evaluation system. It provided pointers to the evolution of the South African society up to the middle of this government's term, two-and-half years after the April 2004 elections.

The data was compiled by the Policy Co-ordination and Advisory Services in The Presidency, working with clusters and departments, using official statistics and research by other local and international institutions.

The indicators showed, among other things, that by September 2006, there had been a decrease in poverty since 2000. They showed the strides South Africa has made towards creating a better life for all.

The Community Survey by Statistics South Africa has provided a picture of a country moving in the right direction. In addition to promoting effective planning and implementation, the publication of the

indicators is intended as a contribution to public discourse on the progress South Africa is making.

South Africa is preparing to host the 2010 World Cup. Hosting the tournament, which is a first for the African continent, will be part of achieving faster economic growth and the country's development goals. The 2010 event will leave a lasting legacy for the people of South Africa. By that time, South Africa will have better sports facilities, a better public transport system and better telecommunications infrastructure, benefiting generations to come.

The sense of national unity among South Africans and confidence in the direction of the country have, since 2004, been at levels not seen since the dawn of freedom in 1994. According to the *Development Indicators*, there is a high level of pride in being South African (rising from 84% in 2003 to 90% in the subsequent years 2004 to 2006).

The year 2007 saw the anniversary of the deaths of Oliver Reginald Tambo (90 years ago), Inkosi Albert Luthuli (40 years ago) and Steve Biko (30 years ago). It also marked the 60th anniversary of the Doctors Pact of leaders of African and Indian communities (AB Xuma, GM Naicker and Yusuf Dadoo), and the 20th anniversary of the visit to Dakar by Afrikaner intellectuals to meet the ANC.

These commemorations reiterate the role of social partnerships in achieving long-term goals, to the benefit of the country. This is in keeping with government's commitment to build, in partnership with the people, a better life for all.

The fabric of South African society is continually changing, creating not only new challenges, but also greater stability and peace, and laying the foundation for a society in which the individual and collective human potential of the nation can come to full fruition.

Acknowledgement

This chapter has evolved year by year, based on initial text from the Institute for Historical Research, University of the Western Cape.

Suggested reading

- Allen, J. *Rabble-Rouser for Peace*. London: Rider Books, 2006.
- Asmal, K, Chidester, D and James, W. eds. *South Africa's Nobel Laureates Johannesburg*. Jonathan Ball, 2004.
- Barber, J. *Mandela's World: The International Dimension of South Africa's Political Revolution*. Cape Town: David Philip, 2004.
- Beckford-Smith, V and Mendelsohn, R. *Black and White in Colour: African History on Screen. Cape History on Screen*. Cape Town: Double Storey Books, 2006.
- Bergh, JS and Morton, F. *To Make Them Serve: The 1871 Transvaal Commission on African Labour*. Pretoria: Protea Book House, 2003.
- Bozzoli, B. *Theatre of Struggle and the End of Apartheid*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2004.
- Brink, E and Muhlangane, G. *Soweto 16 June 1976: Personal Accounts of the Uprising*. 2nd ed. Cape Town: Kwela Books, 2006.
- Chubb, K and Van Dijk, L. eds. *Between Anger and Hope: South Africa's Youth and the Truth and Reconciliation Commission*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2004.
- Coombes, AE. *History after Apartheid: Visual Culture and Public Memory in a Democratic South Africa*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2003.
- Couzens, T. *Battles of South Africa*. Cape Town: David Philip, 2004.
- D'Ernico, F and Backwell, L. *From Tools to Symbols: From Early Hominids to Modern Humans*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2005.
- De Wet, C. *Three Year's War*. Johannesburg: Galago, 2005.
- Dubow, S. *A Commonwealth of Knowledge: Science, Sensibility and White South Africa, 1820 – 2000*. Cape Town: Double Storey Books, 2006.
- Edgar, R. *The Making of an African Communist: Edwin Thabo Mofutsanyana and the Communist Party of South Africa 1927 – 1939*. Pretoria: University of South Africa (Unisa), 2005.
- Eglin, C. *Crossing the Borders of Power: The Memoirs of Colin Eglin*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2007.
- Fitt, JK. *Beyond Fear*. Cape Town: Pretext Publishers, 2003.
- Foster, D, Haupt, P and De Beer, M. *The Theatre of Violence: Narratives of Protagonists in the South African Conflict*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press, 2005.
- Grobler, JEH. *The War Reporter: The Anglo-Boer War through the Eyes of the Burghers*. Cape Town: Sunbird (Jonathan Ball Publishers), 2004.
- Gumede, W. *Thabo Mbeki and the Battle for the Soul of the ANC*. Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2005.
- Hallett, G. *Moving in Time: Images of Life in a Democratic South Africa*. Johannesburg: KMM Review Publishing, 2004.
- Heunis, J. *The Inner Circle: Reflections on the Last Days of White Rule*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2007.
- Hlongwane, KA. et al. eds. *Soweto 76: Reflections on the Liberation Struggle*. Johannesburg: Mutloatse Arts Heritage Trust, 2006.
- Holmes, R. *The Hottentot Venus: The Life and Death of Saartjie Baartman*. London: Bloomsbury, 2006.
- Johnson, RW. *South Africa: The First Man, The Last Nation*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2005.
- Kaarsholm, P. ed. *Violence, Political Culture and Development in Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal and Ohio University and James Currey, c.2007.
- Khangela, A. et al, eds. *Soweto '76: Reflections on the Liberation Struggles*. Johannesburg: Pan Macmillan, 2006.
- Kriker, J. *The Rand Revolt: The 1922 Insurrection and Racial Killing in South Africa*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2005.

- Laband, M, ed. *Daily Lives of Civilians in Wartime Africa: From Slavery Days to Rwandan Genocide*. Scottsville: University of Kwazulu-Natal Press, 2007.
- Linnegar, J. ed. *Every Step of the Way: The Journey to Freedom in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2004.
- Loos, J. *Echoes of Slavery: Voices from South Africa's Past*. Cape Town: David Philip, 2004.
- Louw, PE. *The Rise, Fall and Legacy of Apartheid*. Westport, CT: Praeger, 2004.
- Mandela, N. *A Prisoner in the Garden: Opening Nelson Mandela's Prison Archive*. Johannesburg: Penguin SA, 2005.
- Mandela: The Authorised Portrait*. Editorial consultants M Maharaj and A Kathrada. Johannesburg: Wild Dog Press, 2006.
- Mashabela, H. *A People on the Boil: Reflections on June 16, 1976 and Beyond; 30th Anniversary Edition*. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2006.
- Mbeki, T. *Letters from the President: Articles from the first 100 editions of ANC Today*. Johannesburg: ANC Communications Unit, 2003.
- Melber, H. ed. *Limits to Liberation in South Africa: The Unfinished Business of Democratic Consolidation*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2003.
- Meredith, M. *Diamonds, Gold and War: The Making of South Africa*. New York: Simon & Shuster, 2007.
- Meredith, M. *The State of Africa: A History of Fifty Years of Independence*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2005.
- Morris, M. *Every Step of the Way: The Journey to Freedom in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2004.
- Naidoo, P. *156 Hands that Built South Africa: The 1956 Treason Trial*. Durban: The Author, 2006.
- Noonan, P. *They're Burning the Churches*. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2003.
- O'Malley, P. *Shades of Difference: Mac Maharaj and the Struggle for South Africa*. New York: Penguin Group, 2007.
- Peires, J. *The Dead will Arise: Nongqawuse and the Great Xhosa Cattle-killing of 1856 – 57*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2004.
- Peires, J. *The House of Phalo*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2004.
- Penn, N. *The Forgotten Frontier: Colonist and Khoisan on the Cape's Northern Frontier in the 18th Century*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2005.
- Pieterse, E and Meintjies, F. eds. *Voices of the Transition: The Politics, Poetics and Practices of Social Change in South Africa*. Sandown: Heinemann, 2004.
- Posel, D and Simpson, G. eds. *Commissioning the Past: Understanding South Africa's Truth and Reconciliation Commission*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2004.
- Road to Democracy in South Africa*. South African Democracy Education Trust. Vol. 1: 1960 – 1970. Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2004.
- Scanlon, H. *Repression and Reality: Portraits of Women's Lives in the Western Cape 1948 –1976*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007.
- Segal, L. ed. *Number Four: The Making of Constitution Hill*. Johannesburg: Penguin, 2006.
- Sideropoulos, E. *Apartheid Past, Renaissance Future*. Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs, 2004.
- State of the Nation: South Africa 2003 – 2004*, edited by J Daniel, A Habib and R Southall. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2003.
- "Stidy" (A Stidolph). *Over the Rainbow: The First Ten Years of South Africa's Democracy in Cartoons*. Pietermaritzburg: The Witness, 2003.
- Stolten, HE. *History Making and Present Day Politics: The Meaning of Collective Memory in South Africa*. Uppsala: Nordiske Afrikainstitutet, 2007.
- Tobias, PV. *Into the Past: A Memoir*. Johannesburg: Picador Africa, 2005.
- Turok, B. *Nothing but the Truth: Behind the ANC's Struggle Politics*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2003.
- Turok, K. *Life and Soul: Portraits of Women who Move South Africa*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2006.

- Van der Ross, RE. *Up from Slavery: Slaves at the Cape; Their Origins, Treatment and Contribution*. Cape Town: Ampersand Press and University of the Western Cape, 2005.
- Van Dijk, L. *History of Africa*. Cape Town: Tafelberg, 2006. Revised edition of *Die Geschichte Afrikas* (Frankfort, 2004)
- Van Onselen, C. *The Fox and the Flies: The World of Joseph Silver, Racketeer and Psychopath*. Johannesburg: Random House, 2007.
- Van Zyl Slabbert, F. *The Other Side of History: An Anecdotal Collection on Political Transition in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2006.
- Waetjen, T. *Workers and Warriors: Masculinity and the Struggle for Nation in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
- Wilson, M and Thompson LM. eds. *Oxford History of South Africa*. Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1969 – 1971. 2 vols.
- Witz, L. *Apartheid's Festival: Contesting South Africa's National Pasts*. Cape Town: David Philip, 2003.
- Women in South African History: Basus'limbokodo, Bawel'Imilambo. They Remove Boulders and Cross Rivers*, edited by N Gasa. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007.
- Worden, N and Groenewald, G. Eds. *Trials of Slavery: Selected Documents Concerning Slaves from the Criminal Records of the Council of Justice at the Cape of Good Hope, 1905 –1794*. Cape Town: Van Riebeeck Society, 2005. (Van Riebeeck Society Series 2, no 36).





SA YEARBOOK 2007/08 | AGRICULTURE AND LAND AFFAIRS



The Department of Agriculture aims to lead and support sustainable agriculture and promote rural development by, among other things, ensuring access to sufficient, safe and nutritious food; eliminating skewed participation and inequity in agriculture; maximising growth, employment and income in the sector; and improving the sustainable management of natural agricultural resources and ecological systems.

Strategic Plan for South African Agriculture

The department, through its socio-economic development initiatives, is committed to reducing poverty in South Africa and on the continent, broadening access to agriculture, and increasing productivity and profitability within the agricultural sector.

The Strategic Plan for South African Agriculture, adopted in 2001, consists of three core objectives:

- equitable access and participation
- global competitiveness and profitability
- sustainable resource management.

The plan is the result of collaboration between government, Agri South Africa (Agri SA) and the National African Farmers' Union (Nafu).

Agricultural economy

South Africa's dual agricultural economy comprises a well developed commercial sector and a predominantly subsistence-oriented sector in the rural areas. About 12% of South Africa's surface area can be used for crop production. High-potential arable land comprises only 22% of total arable land. Some 1,3 million hectares (ha) are under irrigation. This amounts to about 1,5% of South Africa's agricultural land.

The most important factor limiting agricultural production is the availability of water. Rainfall is distributed unevenly across the country. Almost 50% of South Africa's water is used for agricultural purposes.

The country can be subdivided into a number of farming regions according to climate, natural vegetation, types of soil and the type of farming practised.

Agricultural activities range from intensive crop production and mixed farming in winter-rainfall and high summer-rainfall areas, to cattle-ranching in the bushveld, and sheep-farming in the more arid regions. Owing to its geographical location, some parts of South Africa are prone to drought.

Primary commercial agriculture contributes about 2,5% to South Africa's gross domestic product (GDP) and about 8% to formal employment. However, there are strong backward and forward linkages into the economy, so that the agro-industrial sector is estimated to comprise about 15% of GDP.

Today, South Africa is not only self-sufficient in virtually all major agricultural products, but in a normal year it is also a net food exporter. Major import products include wheat, rice and vegetable oils.

Despite the farming industry's declining share of GDP, it remains vital to the economy and the development and stability of the southern African region.

For the past five years, agricultural exports have contributed on average about 8% of total South African exports.

Normally, South Africa is a net exporter of agricultural products in rand value. The largest export groups are wine; citrus; sugar; grapes; maize; fruit juice; wool; and deciduous fruit such as apples, pears, peaches and apricots. Other important export products are non-alcoholic beverages, food preparations, meat, avocados, pineapples, ground-nuts, preserved fruit and nuts, hides and skins, and dairy products.

Genetically modified organisms (GMOs)

South Africa does not have ideal conditions for crop production. Less than 12% of its land is arable and serious climatic constraints, such as periodic droughts, limit agricultural production.

Genetic modification (GM) provides a way of meeting the growing demand for food without placing even greater pressure on scarce resources.

The GMO Act, 1997 (Act 15 of 1997), which was implemented on 1 December 1999, provides for the regulation of GMO activities in South Africa, particularly biosafety assessments being conducted for every proposed GMO activity. In terms of the Act, permits are issued for a specific GMO activity, such as trials for commercial release in the country. The permits may also specify conditions under which a particular activity with GMOs should take place.

The Act promotes the responsible application of GMOs in South Africa without negatively affecting human or animal health, the environment or biodiversity. In terms of the GMO Act, 1997, the Advisory Committee (AC), comprising scientific experts, evaluates risk assessments to determine if a particular GMO is safe for humans, animals and the environment.

The Executive Council (EC) consists of members from the departments of agriculture, of health, of environmental affairs and tourism, of science and technology, of trade and industry, and of labour.

The EC considers the recommendations of the AC, comments from members of the public or interested parties, and compliance with various policies before taking a decision to permit an activity or not.

South Africa has commercialised three different GM crops, namely maize, cotton and soya-beans. Field trials and contained experiments are still being undertaken for soya-bean, potato, maize, sugar cane and cotton.

Sustainable resource management and use

Most of the time, South Africa is able to meet its own food requirements with substantial food exports. The Agricultural Research Council's (ARC) Institute for Soil, Climate and Water (ISCW) has compiled an inventory of soils, terrain forms and climate (land types). The National Land Type Survey, completed in 2001, assists and informs land-use planning and decision-making. Data from this and other more detailed soil and climate surveys are integrated into the comprehensive Agricultural Geo-Referenced Information System (AGIS), which provides access to information, via the Internet, on agricultural potential and land suitability.

Although it is generally recognised that soil degradation is a problem, little reliable data has been collected systematically over time. Soil degradation is largely related to the decline in soil organic matter. Monoculture cereal production, intensive tillage, short-to-no fallow periods and limited crop rotation have contributed to this in the commercial sector.

Excessive fuel-wood collection, inappropriate land-use, population density and overgrazing are the main causes of soil degradation in communal areas. In addition, it is estimated that about 60% of the cropland area is moderately to severely acidic, and probably at least 15% is affected by subsoil acidity.

The World Catalogue for Natural Resources has been successfully incorporated onto the AGIS. The Agricultural Fires Information System that tracks all outbreaks of fire in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) region, has been implemented and can also be viewed at www.agis.agric.za.

Physical degradation

Physical degradation of South Africa's agricultural land results in soil erosion by both water and wind.

It has been estimated that water erosion affects about 6,1 million ha of cultivated soil in South Africa, and wind erosion about 10,9 million ha. Another degradation problem is compaction within the soil profile, especially with fine sandy soils where, for example, maize yields can be adversely affected by some 30% to 40%.

Urban spread, industrialisation and mining (such as opencast coal mining in Mpumalanga) also affect the sustainable use of agricultural land.

In accordance with the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, 1983 (Act 43 of 1983), the Department of Agriculture exercises control over the use of South Africa's natural agricultural resources. The Act provides for the conservation of these resources by maintaining the land's production potential, eliminating and preventing erosion and bush encroachment, protecting vegetation, and combating weeds and invader plants. The Act generally applies to agricultural land in South Africa, except for the sections dealing with weeds and invader plants, which also apply to urban areas.

Irrigation

Irrigation is by far the biggest single user of run-off water in South Africa and has substantial potential to make a significant socio-economic and social impact on rural society. Irrigation is an important factor in the South African economy. Irrigated agriculture contributes more than 30% of the gross value of the country's crop production.

About 90% of the country's fruit, vegetables and wine is produced under irrigation. The Department of Agriculture has identified irrigation development as one of the five priority areas for the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA) and aims to expand irrigation by 50%.

This goal will be achieved by:

- increasing the water-use efficiency of irrigation systems and future irrigated land
- revitalising underused irrigation schemes/areas based on a sustainable and area-wide planning approach
- promoting mini-scale irrigated agriculture for household- and community-level food security through efficient irrigation technologies
- identifying and developing new commercial irrigation areas in co-operation with the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry.

Production

During 2006, the estimated total volume of agricultural production was 2,9% lower than during 2005.

The total gross value of agricultural production (total production during a season valued at the average basic amount received by producers) for 2006 was estimated at R76 146 million (R68 222 million in 2005) – representing an increase of 11,6%.

Prices

Producer prices of agricultural products increased, on average, by 18,2% from 2005 to 2006, compared with a decrease of 7,5% during the previous year.

In 2006, the producer prices of field crops rose by 31,8%, against a decrease of 18% the previous year. This increase was mainly the result of a 50% increase in the price of summer grains, and increases of 33,7% and 39,1% in the prices of winter cereals and dry beans, respectively.

Producer prices of horticultural products increased by 4,7% in 2006 compared with 2005. Prices of vegetables increased, on average, by 12,8% during 2006, while the prices of fresh fruit decreased by 0,8%.

The producer prices of animal products were 23,2% higher in 2006 than in 2005. Prices received for slaughtered stock increased by 5,3%. The price of beef increased by 26,7%, while that of mutton increased by 19,6%.

Prices received for pastoral products increased by 22,5%. The price farmers received for milk was 6,1% higher.

Prices received for poultry products rose by 7,4%.

Farm income

The gross income of producers (the value of sales and production for other uses plus the value of changes in inventories) for 2006 amounted to R76 146 million, compared with R68 222 million in 2005 – an increase of 11,6%.

In 2006, the gross income from field crops increased by 8,5% to R16 792 million, compared with R15 470 million in 2005. This was mainly because of the higher prices that farmers received for summer crops during 2006.

Gross income from horticultural products increased by 5,5%, from R19 669 in 2005 to R20 748 million in 2006.

Income from deciduous and other summer fruit decreased by 7,3% to R4 538 million, while that of citrus fruit increased by 23,9% to R3 132 million.

The income from vegetables amounted to R7 570 million – an increase of 10,8%. Income from potatoes, which made a contribution of about 39% to the gross income from vegetables, increased by 2,5%, from R2 889 million in 2005 to R2 962 million in 2006.

Gross income from animal products was 16,7% higher and amounted to R38 604 million. Producers earned R11 331 million from slaughtered cattle and calves – representing an increase of 42,4%. Income from slaughtered sheep increased by 18,9% and amounted to R2 121 million.

Income from poultry and egg production amounted to R15 729 million – resulting in an increase of 10,4%. Income from ostrich feathers and products dropped by 21,6% to R336,2 million.

Exports

	2002	2003	2004	2005	2006
Total South African products (R'000 000)	314 927	273 127	292 079	327 125	393 047
Total agricultural products (R'000 000)	25 460	22 794	22 074	25 458	26 978
Agriculture as % of total exports	8,1	8,3	7,6	7,8	6,9

Source: Directorate: Agricultural Statistics, Department of Agriculture

Field crops and horticulture

The largest area of farmland planted with field crops is maize, followed by wheat and, to a lesser extent, sugar cane and sunflowers.

The grain industry is one of the largest in South Africa and is a very strategic one.

In 2006, field crops accounted for 22% of the total gross value of agricultural production.

Grain South Africa represents a total of approximately 17 000 grain producers, of whom 11 000 are from disadvantaged communities. These farmers produce roughly 90% of all grain in South Africa. Other major role-players include the silo, milling, baking and animal-feed industries.

Maize

Maize is the largest locally produced field crop, and the most important source of carbohydrates in the SADC for animal and human consumption.

South Africa is the main maize producer in the SADC, with an average production of about 8,9 million tons (mt) a year over the past 10 years.

It is estimated that more than 8 000 commercial maize producers are responsible for the major part of the South African crop, while the rest is produced by thousands of small-scale producers.

Maize is produced mainly in North West, the Free State and Mpumalanga. A total of 6,9 mt of maize was produced in 2005/06 on two million ha of land (developing agriculture included).

Wheat

Wheat is produced mainly in the winter-rainfall areas of the Western Cape and the eastern parts of the Free State. In 2006, production was the highest in the Free State, but there are considerable fluctuations between and within the two provinces. Average wheat production has been about 2 mt a year over the past 10 years. There was a distinct downward trend in the area planted to wheat over the past few years. Extra wheat is imported to meet local requirements.

Barley

Barley is produced mainly on the southern coastal plains of the Western Cape. The area of barley planted totalled 89 700 ha in the 2006 production season. Production totalled 239 260 t.

Ground-nuts

Ground-nuts are grown mainly in the Free State, North West and the Northern Cape. Ground-nut plantings increased by 21% from 40 000 ha in 2004/05 to 48 550 ha in 2005/06. Some 106 000 t

of ground-nuts were available for use during the 2006/07 marketing year.

Sunflower seed

South Africa is the world's 12th-largest producer of sunflower seed, which is produced in the Free State, North West, on the Mpumalanga Highveld and in Limpopo. An area of 472 480 ha was planted in 2005/06, producing 520 000 t.

Lucerne

The area planted with lucerne totals about 30 000 ha.

Sorghum

Sorghum is cultivated mostly in the drier parts of the summer-rainfall areas such as Mpumalanga, the Free State, Limpopo, North West and Gauteng.

In 2005/06, production of sorghum totalled 96 000 t on 37 150 ha of land.

Soya-beans

Soya-beans are mainly produced in Mpumalanga, the Free State and KwaZulu-Natal. Small quantities are produced in Limpopo, Gauteng and North West.

Soya-beans contribute about 3,9% to the gross value of field crops. The estimated average gross value of soya-beans for the past five seasons amounts to R451 million.

Soya-bean production has increased steadily during the past decade, partly as a result of an increase in yield per hectare.

In 2005/06, soya-bean production totalled 424 000 t on 241 000 ha.

Canola

Canola is an oilseed crop that is mainly grown in the Western Cape. However, since the 2001 production season, smaller quantities have also been planted in the northern production areas.

Canola competes with other oilseeds such as sunflower seeds and soya-beans on the local market. For the 2006/07 marketing season, the total supply of canola was estimated at 54 540 t (the estimated canola crop of 41 640 t, together with carry-over stocks of about 12 900 t).

Dry beans

Dry beans are produced mainly in Mpumalanga, the Free State, Gauteng and North West. Small quantities are reported to be produced in KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, the Western Cape and Northern Cape. Local demand is substantially higher than local production and therefore large quantities of

dry beans are imported each year. As China is the main import source, the present high cost of imports from China and the drop in the exchange rate of the Rand may lead to lower imports.

Average yield for 2004/05 was 1,4 t per hectare and a higher yield of more than 1,5 t per hectare is expected in the near future.

Sugar

The South African sugar industry is one of the world's leading cost-competitive producers of high-quality sugar. It is a diverse industry combining the agricultural activities of sugar-cane cultivation with the industrial factory production of raw and refined sugar, syrups and specialised sugars, and a range of by-products.

The industry produces an estimated average of 2,5 mt of sugar per season. About 50% of this sugar is marketed in the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu). The remainder is exported to numerous markets in Africa, the Middle East, North America and Asia.

The South African sugar industry makes an important contribution to the national economy, given its agricultural and industrial investments, foreign-exchange earnings, its high employment rates and its linkages with major suppliers, support industries and customers.



South Africa, through the Ministry of Agriculture and Land Affairs, hosted the fourth World Congress of Rural Women (WCRW) at the International Convention Centre in Durban from 23 to 26 April 2007. The congress was preceded by an African Consultation of Rural Women held at the same venue.

The WCRW is an international gathering of rural women, which occurs at four-year intervals. The aim of the congress was to discuss universal and wide-ranging issues confronting rural women and to share concrete experiences of successes in addressing these worldwide. These included globalisation, trade, sustainable development (social, economic and environment), gender equality, food security, and rural housing, women's health, governance and the impact of public policies on rural women.

The theme of the congress was *United in our Diversity: Working Together towards the Total Emancipation of Rural Women from Poverty and Hunger*.

Direct employment within the sugar industry totals about 85 000 jobs. Direct and indirect employment is estimated at 350 000 jobs, including employment in rural areas. The South African Cane Growers' Association and the milling companies undertake development projects and are involved in Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) through a range of initiatives.

The approximately 47 000 registered sugar-cane growers annually produce on average 22 mt of sugar cane from 14 mill-supply areas, extending from northern Pondoland in the Eastern Cape to the Mpumalanga Lowveld. More than 45 500 are small-scale growers, of whom 23 471 produced 11,16% of the total cane crop in 2006/07.

Deciduous fruit

Deciduous fruit is grown mainly in the Western Cape and in the Langkloof Valley in the Eastern Cape. Smaller production areas are found along the Orange River and in the Free State, Mpumalanga and Gauteng.

In 2005/06, apples made up the largest percentage of the crop (39%), while grapes totalled 25% and pears 19%. About 73% of the total crop was produced in the Western Cape, 12% in the Northern Cape, 11% in the Eastern Cape and 2% in Limpopo.

Horticulture represented 73% of the total value of agricultural exports, while deciduous fruit made up 33% of horticultural products.

About 73% of the total crop was produced in the Western Cape, 15% in the Northern Cape, 8% in the Eastern Cape and 2% in Limpopo.

Income from deciduous fruit decreased by 4% from R4 439 million in 2004/05 to R4 266 million in 2005/06.

The industry is relatively organised, with the umbrella body, Fruit South Africa, and its four shareholders, the Fresh Produce Exporters' Forum (FPEF), the Deciduous Fruit Producers' Trust, the Citrus Growers' Association and the South African Subtropical Growers' Association. The FPEF is a section 21 company that represents 72 out of about 300 fresh-fruit export companies in South Africa.

The FPEF played a significant role in stabilising and unifying the export sector, particularly in the latter half of deregulation. Fruit South Africa has

drawn up an extensive business plan to create a unified, non-racial and progressive fruit industry.

Wine

Internationally, South Africa's wines are highly competitive, with the industry showing a sustainable and increasingly positive trend in recent years.

The wine industry contributes R163 billion a year to South Africa's GDP and employs 257 000 people directly and indirectly, while an additional R4,2 billion is generated annually through wine tourism.

The area planted under wine grapes has increased constantly since 1990, and totalled 102 146 ha in 2006. The 2006 harvest amounted to 1 301 578 t.

In May 2007, the South African Wine Industry Information and Systems estimated the 2007 wine harvest, including grape juice and grape-juice concentrate, and wine for brandy at 1 049,4 million litres (1 355 876 t), and an average of 774 litres per ton of grapes. This was an increase of 4,2% compared with the 2006 crop.

Citrus and subtropical fruit

Citrus production is largely limited to irrigation areas and takes place in Limpopo (16 255 ha), Mpumalanga (11 681 ha), the Eastern Cape (12 923 ha), KwaZulu-Natal (4 004 ha), the Western Cape (9 524 ha) and Northern Cape (639 ha).

A total of 2,2 mt of citrus were produced in 2006/07, which was a 10% increase compared with 2005/06.

Pineapples are grown in the Eastern Cape and in northern KwaZulu-Natal. Other subtropical crops such as avocados, mangoes, bananas, litchis, guavas, papayas, granadillas, and macadamia and pecan nuts are produced mainly in Mpumalanga and Limpopo and in the subtropical coastal areas of KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.

In 2006, South Africa produced 686 582 t of subtropical fruit, which was 81 585 t or 10,6% less than in 2005.

Potatoes

North-West recently started with the production of seed potatoes. The Northern Cape is one of the six largest seed-potato production areas in South Africa. The new South African varieties Darius and Eryn constitute a large percentage of the seed grown in this region.

The KwaZulu-Natal Midlands form the heart of the seed-production area in this province. Some seed is also produced in the north near Louwsburg,

a traditionally virus-free area. This region is one of the largest seed-producing areas in South Africa.

About 40% of the country's potato crop is grown in the high-lying areas of the Free State and Mpumalanga, Limpopo, and the Eastern, Western and Northern Cape. The high-lying areas of KwaZulu-Natal are also important production areas. About two thirds of the country's total potato crop are produced under irrigation.

Of the total crop, 50% is delivered to fresh-produce markets and a further 19% is processed. The South African potato-processing industry has grown tremendously over the past few years. This growth took place primarily in the crisps, chips and French fries disciplines. Frozen French fries comprise 39% of total processed potato products in South Africa.

Gross value of agricultural production, 2006 (R'000)

Field crops	
Maize	6 760 352
Wheat	2 993 449
Hay	2 228 198
Grain sorghum	119 425
Sugar cane	2 268 719
Ground-nuts	233 648
Tobacco	262 787
Sunflower seed	987 446
Cotton	90 251
Other	1 654 116
Total	17 598 391
Horticulture	
Viticulture	2 783 216
Citrus fruit	3 132 249
Subtropical fruit	1 513 233
Deciduous and other fruit	4 538 608
Vegetables	4 608 090
Potatoes	2 961 671
Other	1 211 532
Total	20 748 590
Animal products	
Wool	886 754
Poultry and poultry products	15 729 909
Cattle and cattle slaughtered	11 331 213
Sheep and goats slaughtered	2 198 484
Pigs slaughtered	1 427 699
Milk	5 114 218
Other	1 916 505
Total	38 604 782
Grand total	76 951 763

Preliminary source: Directorate: Agricultural Statistics,
Department of Agriculture

In terms of gross income to the grower, potatoes are by far the most important vegetable crop, contributing 39% to the total income derived from vegetables. This is almost equal to the 40% derived collectively from the next four major crops, i.e. tomatoes, onions, green mealies and sweetcorn.

Income from potatoes increased by 2,5%, from R2 889 million in 2005 to R2 962 million in 2006.

Tomatoes

Tomatoes are produced countrywide, but mainly in Limpopo, the Mpumalanga Lowveld and Middleveld, the Pongola area of KwaZulu-Natal, the southern parts of the Eastern Cape, and the Western Cape. In 2005/06, 451 000 t of tomatoes were produced.

Onions

Onions are grown in Mpumalanga; in the districts of Caledon, Ceres and Worcester in the Western Cape; and at Venterstad and adjoining areas in the southern Free State.

Onions have an estimated planting of 6 500 ha to 7 000 ha and retail value of R200 million a year. In 2005/06, 397 000 t of onions were produced. Exports from South Africa (8 000 t a year) to Europe are relatively small compared with exports to that

of New Zealand (106 000 t a year), Australia and Tasmania (80 000 t a year) and Argentina (20 000 a year).

Cabbages

Cabbages are also grown countrywide, but are concentrated in Mpumalanga and the Camperdown and Greytown districts of KwaZulu-Natal. In 2005/06, 154 000 t of cabbages were produced.

Cotton

Cotton is cultivated in Mpumalanga, Limpopo, the Northern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and North West. It constitutes 74% of natural fibre and 42% of all fibre processed in South Africa. Cotton is grown under irrigation as well as in dry-land conditions.

Since 2004, about 60% of cotton has been produced under irrigation. During 2005/06, 18 114 ha were dedicated to cotton in South Africa, with 9 720 ha under irrigation and 8 394 ha under dry-land conditions.

The greatest quantities of cotton lint for the 2006/07 marketing year were produced in Mpumalanga totalling 36 608 bales, followed by Limpopo with 12 332 bales and Northern Cape with 11 103 bales. The least cotton was produced in the Eastern Cape with 132 bales of cotton lint (each bale weighs 200 kg). About 75% of local production is harvested by hand.

Tobacco

Virginia tobacco is produced mainly in Mpumalanga, Limpopo and North West. The production of Oriental tobacco ceased in 2001.

Flue-cured leaf tobacco contributes more than 80% of total production, with hectares cultivated for flue-cured tobacco being about six times the land cultivated for air-cured leaf tobacco. In 2005/06, 14 000 t of flue-cured tobacco were produced on 6 000 ha.

The industry employs 23 580 workers. About 50% to 60% of leaf tobacco is exported annually. Excise duties and value-added tax on tobacco amount to R6 billion a year.

Tea

The tea industry has seen an improvement in the quality of tea and the establishment of export

Production of important field crops and horticultural products, 2006 ('000 t)

Maize	6 923
Wheat	2 172
Sugar cane	20 275
Grain sorghum	110
Ground-nuts	84
Sunflower seed	541
Deciduous and other soft fruit	1 536
Citrus fruit	1 945
Subtropical fruit	684
Vegetables	2 151
Potatoes	1 854

Preliminary source: Directorate: Agricultural Statistics,
Department of Agriculture

standards, the construction of a large processing and packaging facility in Mossel Bay in the Western Cape, increased consumer awareness, the appearance of several brand names on supermarket shelves and a growing foreign market.

Honeybush tea grows mainly in the coastal and mountainous areas of the Western Cape, but also in certain areas of the Eastern Cape. Honeybush has grown into a commercial crop, with 2006 production exceeding 300 t of processed tea.

The area planted with honeybush exceeds 230 ha, with about 10 commercial farmers contributing some 30% to the total annual production. It is estimated that honeybush grows on about 30 000 ha in South Africa.

About 300 t of honeybush tea were exported in 2005, with Germany being the major export market. Rooibos tea is indigenous to the Cederberg area of the Western Cape, which is about 200 km north of Cape Town. Although the main centre for tea production remains in this area, recent developments have seen production expand to other regions. Rooibos tea is only produced locally and efforts to keep it that way are ongoing.

Floriculture

The South African floriculture industry has the opportunity to grow into a significant player on the international stage. The total floriculture industry employs about 17 500 people. In terms of products and markets, there is a strong demand for South African floriculture worldwide. In particular, Germany, the United Kingdom, Japan and the Netherlands represent the greatest opportunities in the short term.

South Africa's indigenous flowers such as gladioli, nerine, freesias and gerberas, have undergone many years of extensive research in Europe, and have become major crops worldwide. South Africa is the leading exporter of protea cut-flowers, which account for more than half of the proteas sold on the world market. South African proteas and so-called Cape greens (fynbos) are marketed in Europe and are mainly concentrated in the Western Cape.

Livestock

About 80% of agricultural land in South Africa is suitable for extensive livestock-farming. Livestock are also kept in other areas, usually in combination with other farming enterprises. Numbers vary according to weather conditions. Stockbreeders concentrate on developing breeds that are

well adapted to diverse weather and environmental conditions.

By mid-2007, there were 13,5 million cattle, 24,9 million sheep and 6,4 million goats being bred. South Africa generally produces 85% of its meat requirements, while the remaining 15% is imported from Namibia, Botswana, Swaziland, Australia, New Zealand and Europe.

The livestock industry is the largest national agricultural sector. The local demand for products, which generally outstrips production, creates a dependence on imports, even though there are untapped production reserves in the communal farming sector.

National Livestock Development Strategy (NLDS)

The NLDS aims to enhance the sustainability of animal agriculture in South Africa across the entire production, processing and supply chain. By mid-2007, it was being implemented by the relevant national, provincial and local governments and organised agriculture structures.

Implementation includes establishing sector working groups, mobilising rural stock owners and keepers towards economic production, and supporting systems for the conservation of veld and livestock resources through sustainable use.

Dairy-farming

Dairy-farming is practised throughout South Africa, with the highest concentration of dairy farms in the eastern and northern Free State, North West, the KwaZulu-Natal Midlands, the Eastern and Western Cape, the Gauteng metropolitan area and the southern parts of Mpumalanga.

The ARC participates fully in the Multiple Across-Country Evaluation for all four major dairy breeds in South Africa, namely Holstein, Jersey, Guernsey and Ayrshire.

A recent initiative to train and deploy milk recorders has led to an increase in participation in the National Milk Recording Scheme.

Livestock numbers, 2005 – 2006 (million)

	2005	2006
Cattle	13,8	13,5
Sheep	25,3	25,0
Pigs	1,7	1,6
Goats	6,4	6,4

Preliminary source: Directorate: Agricultural Statistics,
Department of Agriculture

Milk South Africa co-ordinates industry matters, including the information and research functions, and is financed by statutory contributions. Market forces determine prices. The dairy industry is an important employer, as some 3 850 milk producers employ about 50 000 farmworkers and indirectly provide jobs to some 38 000 people. Milk production for 2004/05 for commercial markets was estimated at 2 657 million litres (ML).

Beef cattle

Cattle ranches are found mainly in the Eastern Cape, parts of the Free State and KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo, North West, Mpumalanga and the Northern Cape. The indigenous Afrikaner and Nguni and the locally developed Bonsmara and Drakensberger are popular beef breeds. The Angus, Hereford and Sussex; Charolais, Simmentaler and Brahman; and Santa Gertrudis breeds are respectively from Britain, Europe and America, and are maintained as pure breeds or used in cross-breeding.

The gross income from animal products during 2006 was estimated at R38,6 million.

Small stock (sheep and goats)

Sheep-farming is concentrated mainly in the arid and extensive grazing areas of the country. As a result, most of the 25 million sheep in South Africa are found in the Eastern Cape, followed by the Northern Cape, Free State, Western Cape and Mpumalanga. Most sheep (18 million) are woolled or dual-purpose sheep.

The sheep breed with the highest wool production per head in South Africa is the South African Merino, followed by other dual-purpose Merino breeds, of which the Dohne Merino, South African Mutton Merino, the Afrino and Letelle are the most popular. Dual-purpose breeds are bred with the specific aim of maximising wool and mutton income. These breeds have better body conformation than the Merino, but produce slightly less wool per kilogram (kg) of body weight.

Average Merino fleece weights vary from 4 kg to 5 kg per year in the semi-arid regions, and up to 8 kg per year from sheep grazing on cultivated pastures. The total wool production for the 2005/06 season was 42,2 million kg, which was sold for R689 million.

Mutton sheep are mostly found in the semi-desert areas of the Northern and Western Cape.

The most popular mutton breed is the locally developed Dorper. Limited numbers of indigenous fat-tailed sheep and Karakul sheep are still found.

The Merino and Dorper account for most of the 5,5 million sheep slaughtered annually in South Africa. A large proportion of the 6,4 million goats in South Africa occur in communal grazing areas. The Eastern Cape has the most goats (39%), followed by Limpopo (17%).

Karakul sheep are farmed in the more arid areas. The gross value of Karakul pelts for 2006 was estimated at R6,2 million.

The indigenous meat-producing Boer goat accounts for about 40% of all goats in South Africa. Almost all of South Africa's Angora goat (mohair) farmers are located in the Eastern Cape, where they farm with about a million Angora goats. The South African mohair clip of four million kg accounts for 60% of the world's mohair production.

About 63% of all goats in South Africa are so-called indigenous goats.

Poultry- and pig-farming

The poultry and pig industries are more intensive than the sheep and cattle industries, and are located on farms near metropolitan areas such as Gauteng, Durban, Pietermaritzburg, Cape Town and Port Elizabeth.

The predominant pig breeds are the South African Landrace, the Large White, the Duroc and the Pietrain.

South Africa's annual poultry meat production is estimated at 930 000 t. Broiler production contributes about 80% to total poultry-meat production, with the rest made up of mature chicken slaughter (culls), small-scale and backyard poultry production, ducks, geese, turkeys and other specialised white-meat products.

Commercial producers slaughtered an estimated 628 million broilers in 2005 and an estimated 645 million in 2006.

South Africa accounts for 68% of world sales of ostrich products, namely leather, meat and feathers. The income from ostrich products is derived as follows: leather (50% – 70%), meat (20% – 30%) and feathers (20% – 30%).

The gross value of ostrich products during 2006 was estimated at R336 million.

Aquaculture industry (freshwater and marine)

South Africa is still in the developing phase of aquaculture, which is an underused market with great potential for job creation and food security. The total aquacultural production from South Africa is insignificant compared with African and global production.

The growth in aquaculture and aquaculture interest in South Africa is likely to lead to the rapid expansion of the sector during the next decade. This expansion depends on the integrated use of natural resources, funding, government support and human resource development.

Game ranching

Game ranching in South Africa is one of the fastest-growing branches of the agricultural industry.

Since the 1970s, there has been a huge shift from cattle-farming to game ranching. By 2001, there were 10 000 registered game ranchers in the country covering more than 11 million hectares. Provided they observe approved game-fencing rules, registered game ranches have permission to hunt throughout the year.

Some 49,04% of registered game ranches with an area of 3 325 652 ha are found in Limpopo. The Northern Cape has the second-highest number of game ranches (19,48%), covering 4 852 053 ha.

The Eastern Cape has 12,33% of the total game ranches, covering 881 633 ha. The Western Cape has the fewest game ranches (1,62%, and covering 265 205 ha).

Owing to the expansion of game ranches, the total area covered by these privately owned ranches exceeds that of all national parks and provincial nature reserves put together. Game ranches also have growing numbers of game.

In terms of game ranching, game is considered to be an agricultural product as defined in the Marketing of Agricultural Products Act, 1996 (Act 47 of 1996).

The South African game-farming industry incorporates various subsectors, ranging from extensive wildlife ranching (with minimal human intervention) to intensive wildlife ranching (with supplementary feeding), wildlife breeding and eco-tourism.

The Range (Veld) and Forage Section of the Directorate: Animal and Aquaculture Production Systems (AAPS) of the Department of Agriculture

has, as its primary objective, the sustainable management, use and ecological protection of range and forage resources, as used by both livestock and wildlife (game) production systems, across provincial boundaries.

The Directorate: AAPS has developed the National Game-Farming Policy, which aims to:

- support the effective management of viable game-farming systems
- ensure the sustainable management of natural resources
- facilitate the development of norms and standards for sustainable game-farming
- promote and support equitable access to health management
- establish a national game-farm and animal database
- facilitate promotion and marketing
- deal with relevant food-safety issues
- promote research, training and support services.

The National Game-Farming Working Group consists of all relevant stakeholders in the game-farming industry to ensure that all the parties concerned are represented and participate fully.

Bee-keeping

The bee-keeping industry contributes directly and indirectly to South Africa's GDP. At least 80% of the country's fruit and other vegetation is pollinated by honey bees. Many fruit growers obtain up to 100% greater yield of a crop by using the services of bee-keepers in the pollination process.

By mid-2007, there was a domestic deficit of honey production, necessitating an increase in bee-keepers. The income from honey- and hive-related products is estimated to be around R25 million.

However, the impact that bee-keeping has on commercial crop production is estimated to be worth more than R3 billion and involves some 250 000 jobs.

Indigenous food crops

The Directorate: Plant Production in the Department of Agriculture has developed the Draft Policy on Indigenous Food Crops. The policy was approved by the Departmental Executive Committee (Dexco) and recommended for consultation with various stakeholders.

A mini survey on knowledge of indigenous crops among the rural communities in eight provinces took place between October 2006 and January 2007.

It was envisaged that input received would be incorporated into the policy and that this would

assist in prioritising the common intervention measures and giving direction on which area to best focus on for the intended promotion and awareness programmes.

The ARC has been commissioned to undertake research projects on the following:

- 2004/05: millet, cowpeas, bambara ground-nuts and cassava
- 2005/06: amaranthus and amadumbe
- 2006/07: *Dovyalis caffra*, *Mimusops zeyheri*, *Engelophytum magalismontanum*, *Vangueria infausta*, *Parinari curatellifolia*, *Ximenia caffra* and *Garcinia livingstonei*.

Veterinary services

State Veterinary Services constantly guards against the introduction of animal diseases from outside South Africa. Existing animal diseases, which may be detrimental to South Africa's economy and to human and animal health, are also controlled and combated. Stock in the high-risk areas is inspected at short intervals.

The Directorate: Animal Health of the national Department of Agriculture sets norms and standards for the delivery of veterinary services in South Africa.

Legislation provides the necessary powers to control diseases such as foot-and-mouth disease (FMD), swine fever, rabies and anthrax. South Africa, excluding the Kruger National Park and surrounding game reserves, is recognised as an FMD-free zone by the *Office International des Épizooties* (OIE), the world animal-health organisation.

The Department of Agriculture has created a new biosafety and biosecurity unit and a new branch to deal with all emerging diseases and improve on biosecurity and food-safety measures.

Animal-disease control is an important factor in ensuring the productivity of the livestock sector and in promoting international trade in agricultural products.

Surveillance systems are in place to ensure that all agricultural products entering and leaving the country are disease-free and therefore safe for human consumption. All ports are thoroughly monitored to make sure that imported and exported goods are disease-free.

Particular emphasis is placed on the control of borders with neighbouring countries to prevent the introduction of FMD.

Onderstepoort Biological Products (OBP)

The OBP is a state-owned public company. It has the capacity and technology to produce veterinary vaccines and related biological products for local and international markets.

The OBP is the sole or main producer of a number of vaccines for African and tropical animal diseases. The OBP provides vaccines to combat major outbreaks of diseases such as CBPP (lung-sickness in cattle), lumpy-skin disease, rift valley fever, bluetongue, horsesickness and anthrax.

The OBP has joined the Pan-African Vaccine Network and contributed to the control of diseases, such as rinderpest and CBPP, through the supply of appropriate vaccines.

The OBP was also involved in projects with the Food and Agriculture Organisation (FAO) to supply vaccines to African countries, and has worked with the European Union (EU).

In the cutting-edge area of biotechnology, the research and development work by the OBP has led to the successful creation of new and innovative vaccines, such as the doublesure vaccine, which is a combination treatment for the prevention of anthrax and blackquarter disease.



The Agricultural Marketing Information System was launched in Pretoria on 2 March 2007. The system will enable farmers and traders to make informed decisions about selecting which crops to grow, when to harvest, to which markets the produce should be sent, and whether or not to store produce.

The web-based system (www.agis.agric.za/mis) will be complemented by other technologies such as cellphones, to ensure maximum access by all.

To broaden the information base, the system is hyperlinked to more than 60 other domestic and international sources of market information on field crops, livestock and horticultural industries.

The system offers data such as daily price information on the qualities and quantities of fresh produce sold; fresh-produce market-related information, including market fees and market agents; and information on fresh-produce facilities.

The ARC and the OBP have signed a co-operation agreement for the diagnosis of diseases and the development and manufacturing of vaccines.

Pest control

The South African Pest Control Association (Sapca) is the official representative of the pest-, termite- and woodborer-control industries. All Sapca-qualified inspectors have to register with the Department of Agriculture.

South Africa liaises with other countries and international organisations to ensure the transfer of pest-control technology.

Migratory pest control

In terms of the Agricultural Pests Act, 1983 (Act 36 of 1983), the Department of Agriculture is obliged to control the registered national pests, namely, red-billed quelea, locust and blackfly. These are migratory pests and individual farmers cannot be expected to control them to prevent damage in areas away from their own farms.

The ARC provides research support to the department to optimise control procedures in terms of efficacy, cost and environmental considerations. Technical advice is also provided to neighbouring countries during locust-control campaigns.

The Information Core for Southern African Migrant Pests (Icosamp) has been developed and endorsed by the SADC. This is a computer-based information centre for the SADC region that provides a “hub” for reporting the distribution of migratory pests in the region, and a platform for technical co-operation and the sharing of research information.

By providing early warning information on cross-border invasions of migratory pests, such as army worm, locust and red-billed quelea, Icosamp enhances the forecasting efficiency of control organisations, thereby assisting national crop-protection agencies to ensure food security.

Marketing

South Africa’s agricultural marketing has undergone transformation since 1994 with the introduction of the Marketing of Agricultural Products Act, 1996.

This Act has changed agricultural marketing policy and practice dramatically to ensure that it occurs in a free environment.

The deregulation process was aimed at ensuring that farmers and agribusinesses position themselves as players in the globally competitive environment.

The deregulation process entailed closing agricultural marketing boards, phasing out import- and export-control measures, eliminating subsidies and introducing tariffs to protect the domestic agricultural industry value chains against unfair international competition.

The Directorate: Marketing in the Department of Agriculture works closely with the National Agricultural Marketing Council (NAMC) on agricultural marketing matters. The directorate develops, promotes and facilitates the implementation of programmes and measures aimed at supporting equitable access to competitive and profitable agricultural markets on a sustainable basis. This broad mandate is achieved through the following:

- administering market-access measures in the form of trade (imports and exports)
- facilitating fair, open, efficient and competitive domestic markets
- developing policies and strategies, and facilitating the implementation of programmes and measures to facilitate equitable access to mainstream the domestic market
- liaising with other government departments and relevant parties to enhance the efficiency of the agricultural marketing value chains.

The directorate comprises three subdirectorates, namely Marketing Administration, Commodity Marketing, and Marketing Development and Support.

The Subdirectorates: Marketing Administration administers the issuing of import and export permits to enhance trade and market access. It also facilitates the participation of new entrants in the trading environment. The Subdirectorates: Commodity Marketing profiles key agricultural commodity marketing value chains and undertakes further analyses of market structures to determine market-access qualifiers. It further investigates the behaviour of commodity and non-commodity markets to recommend policy options, thereby ensuring equitable access to mainstream markets by all.

The Subdirectorates: Marketing Development and Support implements programmes and measures to enhance the development of a vibrant domestic market.

National Agricultural Marketing Council

The NAMC was established by the Marketing of Agricultural Products Act, 1996 to provide the Minister of Agriculture with strategic advice on agricultural marketing to ensure improved market access for all participants, marketing efficiency,

optimisation of export earnings and the viability of the agricultural sector.

The NAMC investigates agricultural marketing and marketing policy, reviews statutory levies collected by various industries, and provides guidelines on such levies so that a portion thereof may fund the empowerment of people from previously disadvantaged communities in the areas of training, exposure and market access.

The NAMC, in collaboration with the Maize Trust, the Oilseed Trust and the Winter Cereals Trust, developed the summer grains marketing scheme to support 5 000 growers from black farming communities over five years.

Land administration

The primary goal of the Directorate: Land Settlement and Development is the internal administration of state agricultural land to achieve farmer settlement and ownership reform.

It also aims to facilitate the implementation of land and agrarian reform projects and promote sustainable growth in the agricultural sector for improved livelihoods by supporting projects, developing policy guidelines and ensuring the disposal of agricultural state land.

The directorate ensures farmer support by developing policies such as the Farmer-to-Farmer Mentorship Policy, implementing programmes such as the Comprehensive Agriculture Support Programme (CASP) and other land-reform revitalising programmes. The directorate manages and controls 125 227 ha of state land, which consists of:

- land already leased: 57 154 ha
- vacant land: 13 811 ha
- land for restitution: 54 262 ha.

Food security

The Integrated Food Security and Nutrition Programme (IFSNP) aims to achieve physical, social and economic access to safe and nutritious food for all South Africans. Its goal is to eradicate hunger, malnutrition and food insecurity by 2015.

The IFSNP recognises the broad regional food-security framework that the Regional Indicative Sustainable Development Programme highlighted, and that prompted South Africa to respond to the humanitarian appeal by the United Nations (UN) World Food Programme for emergency food relief in the SADC region.

In South Africa, by May 2007, more than six million learners in public primary schools had access to quality meals. Some 6 000 food-production projects and 7 429 vegetable gardens were in place in nodal schools.

By May 2007, the agricultural production packages aimed at improving food security among vulnerable communities in all nine provinces had reached over 66 000 beneficiaries. More than 5 000 small and micro agro-enterprises had received financial assistance amounting to R41 million.

Regional issues

South Africa participates in the Regional Advisory Committee (RAC) of the Regional Food Security Training Programme (RFSTP).

The RFSTP was developed over a five-year period as endorsed by the RAC. The activities of the RFSTP focus on three main areas: strengthening the supply of food-security training services, strengthening the effective demand for training and development, and sustaining regional markets for food-security-related training services.

The SADC has instituted the Subcommittee for Plant Protection, which is tasked with harmonising phytosanitary requirements in southern Africa. South Africa is also a member of the Inter-African Phytosanitary Council, which was established in 1954.

Regional plant-protection organisations such as these are able to provide valuable co-ordination for



In December 2007, Cabinet approved the Biofuels Industrial Strategy. It will be implemented in phases with the first phases of development being from 2008 to 2013, a five-year period. The strategy proposes a 2% biofuels production by 2013, which is a revised target from the initial 4,5% target proposed in the draft strategy. The revision on the target is in consideration of the agricultural concerns.

The strategy further proposes that the use of maize be excluded in the development of the biofuels in the initial stages of this industry development. This is largely due to food security concerns, fears around price increases, and the fact that maize is a staple food source for the majority of the poor in the country.

the activities and objectives of the International Plant Protection Convention (IPPC) at local level.

International issues

As a signatory to the Rome Declaration, South Africa has committed itself to the implementation of the World Food Summit Plan of Action. For this purpose, South Africa reports annually to the World Committee for Food Security. South Africa is also collaborating with the FAO on the implementation of the Special Programme for Food Security, within the context of the Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Programme.

South Africa is an active participant in other international standard-setting bodies that are vital to its global market share, such as the IPPC and Codex Alimentarius.

Risk management

Disaster risk management

Natural hazards which affect agriculture in South Africa include floods, hail damage, drought, runaway fires, cold spells, pests and diseases. While disaster risk is inevitable, the Department of Agriculture believes that it can be managed and reduced through appropriate policy and actions.

The department, in accordance with the Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002), emphasises prevention, mitigation and adaptation strategies such as the strengthening of an early warning system for the sector and research on climate change, including large-scale epidemics and hazards; as well as the provision of information to farmers on agricultural markets and climate.

The development and strengthening of institutions, mechanisms and capacities at all levels, particularly at community level, can systematically contribute to building resilience to hazards.

The Department of Agriculture has established the National Agrometeorological Committee, comprising provincial departments of agriculture, the ARC, the South African Weather Service, relevant directorates within the department and certain academic and scientific institutions with a mandate to provide an early warning advisory role to the sector.

The committee meets quarterly to review conditions in the country, look at the expected weather conditions and issue advisories to the agricultural sector. This committee is chaired by the Directorate: Agricultural Disaster Risk Management.

The department has produced a document on climate change and the agricultural sector in South

Africa. During 2006, the department organised a successful climate-change sector workshop and drafted climate-change sector plans that will be discussed further with stakeholders.

Agricultural drought management

Drought in South Africa has become a normal condition in the recent past. Climatic change has induced drought interspersed with flooding, resulting in lower average yields in various agricultural commodities.

While the drought has been continuing unabated nationally since April 2006, the farming communities are facing the problem of possible inflationary pressures on food prices and other agricultural products.

The department discussed the Agricultural Drought Management Plan with all stakeholders at national and provincial levels during the 2006/07 financial year. The plan was expected to be finalised in 2007/08.

The plan will respond to drought-related disasters that affect farmers and will provide for animal feed and water. Long-term interventions by the department include improved research, a fully functional early warning system, and agricultural strategies to address disaster risk-management issues.

Credit and assistance

The six major sources of credit for farmers are banks (50%), agricultural co-operatives and agribusinesses (12%), the Land Bank (21%), private creditors (8%), other creditors and financial institutions (9%), and the State (1%).

Business and Entrepreneurial Development (BED)

The Directorate: BED of the Department of Agriculture is responsible for promoting and providing strategic support in the development of viable and empowered businesses, stimulating growth and promoting unity through partnerships and niches.

The ultimate aims are to:

- unlock the economic potential of idle-to-underused resources of emergent groups through empowerment efforts
- facilitate restructuring and the expansion of existing farming/agribusinesses to enhance their competitiveness and contribution to the sector and the economy at large.

The directorate has three units. The Business Development Unit works closely with industries/

commodity groups to develop inclusive, enhanced and harmonised commodity strategies and joint action plans.

It assists marginalised groups in creating, expanding and rehabilitating businesses to become profitable and sustainable in the long term, focusing on growth and wealth creation based on mutual gains in the sector. It also encourages and facilitates win-win partnerships for niche enterprises at all levels in the agricultural value chains.

Through the directorate, the department has contributed towards the development of the National Emergent Red Meat Producers' Organisation's database, the Grain Industry Strategy, the Fruit Industry Plan and the implementation of the Cotton Industries Strategy.

The directorate renders support and guidance to the cotton, grain and fruit industries in the implementation of their developed strategies. It is facilitating and supporting the potato industry in developing a potato industry strategy.

The unit is working jointly with industry role-players and other relevant parties in operationalising the Agri Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) Entrepreneurial Programme in floriculture. The aim is to develop market/business opportunities for BEE enterprises across the value chain to grow and become globally competitive and sustainable, contributing to employment creation and economic development.

The unit has been working with Nafu and emerging farm leaders to mobilise increased participation of emerging farmers into commodity groups.

The unit is in alignment with the objectives of the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA) and supports Operation Gijima, Women in Agriculture and Rural Development and National Movement for Rural Women projects, as well as programmes involving people with disabilities, youth and farm labourers.

In July 2007, the Minister of Agriculture and Land Affairs, Ms Lulama Xingwana, received the draft AgriBEE Charter and indicative scorecards for consideration before it was gazetted.

The AgriBEE Charter aims to enhance participation in agricultural opportunities, deracialise land and

enterprise ownership, and unlock the full entrepreneurial potential in the sector.

To facilitate and guide implementation, the directorate will facilitate the performance and maintenance of baseline research, which will inform the status of BEE implementation in the agricultural sector and allow for benchmarking progress in economic empowerment.

In stimulating the participation of previously disadvantaged individuals (PDIs), the directorate has partnered with institutions to support the cause to transform ownership- and management-control profiles in the sector.

Plans are in place for continuous engagement and consultation with subsectors regarding their BEE implementation strategies and plans. The partnership with the floriculture industry is doing well, as part of an industry-specific BEE programme that will assist with driving transformation imperatives in this industry.

Similar initiatives are envisaged for other industries during the next few years. These will be based on empowerment strategies that are currently being formulated for designated groups (women, youth, people living with disabilities and labour) under the AgriBEE Charter Framework.

LandCare Programme

The LandCare Programme is a community-based and government-supported approach to the sustainable management and use of agricultural natural resources.

The vision of the LandCare Programme is for communities and individuals to adopt an ecologically sustainable approach to the management of South Africa's environmental and natural resources, while improving their quality of life. It implies that cultivation, livestock grazing and the harvesting of natural resources should be managed in such a manner that no further degradation (such as soil erosion, nutrient loss, loss of components of the vegetation and increased run-off) occurs.

The overall goal of the LandCare Programme is to optimise productivity and sustainability of natural resources, resulting in greater productivity, food security, job creation and better quality of life for all.

The LandCare Programme has been expanded into additional subprogrammes. The department

has initiated the integrated Soil Protection Strategy (SPS) in support of growth and sustainable development in the agricultural sector.

The project aims to improve agricultural productivity and contribute to economic growth by focusing on erosion, declining soil acidity, soil fertility and organic matter, and veld rehabilitation.

This initiative arose from the Minister of Agriculture's request that a strategy for addressing the erosion problem in South Africa be developed. The SPS focuses on high- to moderate-potential agricultural land with high erosion status (about three million ha) and will initially identify three priority tertiary catchment areas.

LandCare themes are grouped into two areas, namely, focused investment (WaterCare, VeldCare, SoilCare, Eco-Technology, the Agritourism Programme [ATP], Infield Rainwater Harvesting [IRWH] and Junior LandCare) and small community grants.

Focused investment

WaterCare

The WaterCare theme targets Limpopo in particular, because of water shortages and the importance of water for irrigation. This theme establishes a framework for managing land and preventing the silting up of dams for irrigation. WaterCare works in partnership with the community to develop action plans for managing and restoring irrigation schemes.

The rehabilitation of irrigation schemes increases water supply and household food security. WaterCare promotes the development of techniques for water-resource management and encourages opportunities for training in this field.

VeldCare

This theme promotes best grazing systems and erosion-prevention practices to improve production. It develops and maintains agricultural activities in accordance with the principles of ecologically sustainable development. Economic and social-development opportunities are realised by improving grazing areas and maintaining viable grazing areas throughout rural communities.

SoilCare

The SoilCare theme encourages rural farmers in KwaZulu-Natal, the Eastern Cape and Mpumalanga to build innovative structures to combat soil erosion. This includes reducing the depletion of soil fertility and acidity. Through SoilCare, sustainable agricultural production systems such as

diversification, management of input and conservation tillage are introduced.

Eco-Technology

The objective of the Eco-Technology theme is to identify, adapt, demonstrate and spread promising and appropriate eco-technologies locally (e.g. conservation, farming, water harvesting, etc.), which will provide resource-poor farmers with social, economic and environmental benefits. The expected outcomes of this theme are to see a number of promising appropriate eco-technologies identified and evaluated on-farm; an increasing number of farmers adopting eco-technologies; and improved social, economic and environmental (e.g. employment) benefits.

Eco-technology projects will initially be implemented in presidential nodal areas where water is very scarce, e.g. KwaZulu-Natal (Umkhanyakude and Zululand) and Limpopo (Sekhukhune and Bohlabela).

Agritourism Programme

Some 56 ATPs had been identified and were expected to be implemented in 21 nodal areas in collaboration with partners such as the Development Bank of Southern Africa, the Industrial Development Corporation, Umsobomvu Youth Fund, Eskom Foundation, Sasol, Anglo Platinum and others.

The ATPs will be extended with support from the Independent Development Trust. The partnership was expected to create about 2 500 jobs.

The ATP aims to accelerate economic (employment) benefits by promoting agritourism and implementing identified projects in phases. It also aims to take advantage of the fast-growing tourism sector to create an increased demand for agricultural products and services in nodes and other poverty-stricken areas.

The programme intends providing training and capacity-building to women and youth, particularly in agritourism-related ventures through registered learnerships by the Tourism and Hospitality Sector Education and Training Authority (Seta).

The ATP also aims to promote agricultural operations in rural and urban areas as preferred destinations that would offer local and foreign tourists with a unique experience.

The expected outcomes of the ATP are the expansion of agritourism nationwide, involvement of targeted groups, improved socio-economic status, and more enterprises owned by PDLs.

Infield Rainwater Harvesting

IRWH technology, which improves the efficiency of water-use and increases yields with a suitable choice of crop combinations under low and erratic rainfall conditions on low-potential clay soils, has been transferred with great success to numerous communities in the Free State and Eastern Cape.

Using IRWH in croplands, community members have increased maize and sunflower yields by between 26% and 40% compared with conventional practices. Socio-economic studies on vegetable gardens have shown that IRWH can secure household food security for nine out of 10 years, compared with three out of 10 years using conventional cropping methods.

Transfer of technology, training and extension are used to implement IRWH, with consequent improvement of household livelihoods in rural communities where the majority of members live below the poverty line.

Junior LandCare

Junior LandCare encourages young people to develop a sense of responsibility towards the land and other natural resources, in order to conserve these for future generations.

The objectives of Junior LandCare are to empower previously disadvantaged youth by providing training in facilitation and leadership skills.

This includes the promotion of food security at home and in schools, promoting awareness of sustainable agriculture, and stimulating the formation of youth clubs and projects that aim to promote other components of LandCare. Junior LandCare addresses the needs of young people in an integrated way and involves interdisciplinary approaches. This is done for youth both in and out of school.

Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South Africa (Land Bank)

The Land Bank operates as a development-finance institution within the agricultural and agribusiness sectors and is regulated by the Land and Agricultural Development Bank Act, 2002 (Act 15 of 2002).

It provides a range of finance options to a broad spectrum of clients within the agricultural sector,

including wholesale and retail financing for commercial and developing farmers, co-operatives and other agriculture-related businesses.

It provides long-, medium- and short-term loans to all agricultural sectors. The bank is the sole shareholder in the Suid-Afrikaanse Verband-versekeringsmaatskappy Beperk, a company which provides mortgage insurance cover to the bank's clients.

The bank also manages the funds transferred from the department to the Micro-Agricultural Financial Institution of South Africa (Mafisa).

By mid-2007, government was intensifying efforts to turn around the Land Bank to ensure it delivers on its mandate and remains sustainable. At the time, the Government had already injected R700 million into the Land Bank and extended a R1,5-billion guarantee.

Micro-Agricultural Financial Institution of South Africa

Mafisa, the first state-owned scheme to provide micro and retail agricultural financial services on a large, accessible, cost-effective and sustainable basis in rural areas, was launched in 2005 in three pilot provinces, namely Ga-Sekhukhune District Municipality in Limpopo, OR Tambo Municipality in the Eastern Cape, and the Umkhanyakude District Municipality in KwaZulu-Natal. Mafisa was launched in the Northern Cape in July 2007.

Many poor and emerging farmers who were previously turned down by financial institutions can now obtain loans of up to R100 000 at an affordable rate.

The 10 million potential beneficiaries include farm and non-farm entrepreneurs such as farm workers, tenants, household producers, landless people, small landholders, food-garden producers, and rural and micro-entrepreneurs.

Mafisa's four products and services for the rural working poor and enterprises are credit, savings, insurance and payment facilities.

It provides basic short- and medium-term loans, with a number of permutations that are available to the poor at the rural district councils of the poorest provinces in terms of the Human Development Index, as determined by Statistics South Africa.

By the end of September 2006, Mafisa had approved 900 loan applications to the value of R24 million.

Agri South Africa

Agri SA promotes, on behalf of its members, the sustainable profitability and stability of commercial agricultural producers and agribusinesses through its involvement in and input at national and international levels.

Agri SA is structured into three chambers, namely the General Affairs Chamber, which deals with general agricultural policy matters on behalf of nine provincial affiliates, the Commodity Chamber, which deals with subsector policy issues on behalf of 25 commodity organisations, and the Agricultural Business Chamber (ABC) with 65 agribusinesses as members.

Agri SA's annual congress, representative of its affiliates, is its highest decision-making body and also elects the organisation's president, deputy president and chamber vice presidents.

Agri SA is a member of Business Unity South Africa, the International Chamber of Commerce, the International Federation of Agricultural Producers, the Southern African Federation of Agricultural Unions and the Cairns Group Farm Leaders.

Agri SA participates in the Presidential Commercial Agriculture Working Group that deals with policy matters specifically in terms of the Strategic Plan for South African Agriculture.

Agri SA's policy advocacy includes work on trade negotiations, industrial policy, labour laws, training, taxation, financing, land reform, farmer development, environmental affairs, water rights, farm safety, law and order, infrastructure, technology development and transfer, statistical information and local government matters.

It publishes a bimonthly magazine and a weekly electronic newsletter, and also runs a regular radio programme in collaboration with the SABC.

Agricultural Business Chamber

The ABC is a sectoral body representing an important component of South Africa's business sector. ABC's members represent total assets of almost R20 billion and an annual agricultural business turnover of about R20 billion.

ABC members operate more than 2 000 service centres countrywide with more than 100 000 employees. In many rural areas, members of the ABC form the business hub of the community and make a key contribution towards maintaining rural infrastructure. There are about 250 agricultural co-

operatives and companies affiliated with the ABC. The ABC is an integral part of the Agri SA Group, and is associated with Business South Africa, various international bodies and the International Agribusiness Management Association.

Agricultural businesses play a significant role in the economy of South Africa as handlers, processors and marketers of agricultural products, and as suppliers of production input and services.

Transvaal Agricultural Union South Africa (TAU SA)

TAU SA was established in 1897 as the Transvaal Agricultural Union. In 2002, the union reorganised to become a national agricultural union serving commercial farmers. It also renders services to its members in terms of:

- property rights
- economic issues
- safety and security.

TAU SA conducts a variety of projects to enhance the concept of successful agriculture. The various farmers' markets and the marketing of effective micro-organisms contribute to alternative options available to members and the public.

Agribusiness as an economic sector

Agribusiness can be divided into two categories: non-co-operative business ventures and co-operatives or transformed co-operatives.

Non-co-operative business ventures, also known as profit companies, are involved in the production and distribution of agricultural equipment and production requisites, and the marketing of agricultural products.

Co-operatives dominate the distribution of intermediate requisites and the handling, processing and marketing of agricultural products.

Agricultural co-operatives or agribusinesses are regarded as the farmers' own independent business organisations. There are close to 1 000 primary agricultural co-operatives and agribusinesses throughout the country.

They supply their members with production input such as seed, fertiliser, fuel and repair services. They also provide credit and extension services, and handle a large percentage of their members' produce.

There are more than 15 central co-operatives in the country, which aim to supply the primary co-operatives with specific services such as the processing and marketing of agricultural products, insurance services for crops, short-term cover and farming requisites.

The structure of agribusiness has changed substantially since the deregulation of the agricultural sector into a free-market economy in 1994. Many co-operatives have transformed into private companies, consolidations and mergers have occurred, international groups have entered South Africa, and agribusinesses have listed on the JSE Limited.

Agribusinesses are involved in producing and distributing agricultural equipment and production requisites, and in the marketing and processing of agricultural products.

National African Farmers' Union

Nafu strives to promote the interests of the disadvantaged farming sector by lobbying for access to support services and empowering its members through effective communication and capacity-building programmes.

Institutional capacity-building

The Department of Agriculture has developed a databank for South Africa's agricultural human resource capacity.

In collaboration with the Economic Development Institute of the World Bank, the department has designed and developed training courses for rural restructuring and development.

Comprehensive Agriculture Support Programme

The CASP focuses on on-and-off farm infrastructure, information and knowledge management, financial assistance, technical and advisory services, training and capacity-building, and marketing and business development.

Between 2004/05 and 2006/07, the Government successfully rolled out almost 2 500 projects, supporting over 167 000 beneficiaries.

In 2007/08, 786 projects were expected to be rolled out to benefit an additional 60 000 farmers.

Training and research

South African agriculture has a strong research component. Many of the people involved are world leaders in their respective fields. The ARC, an autonomous statutory body set up in terms of the Agricultural Research Act, 1990 (Act 86 of 1990), is

the largest agricultural research organisation in Africa.

The ARC provides research support to the Department of Agriculture and the nine provincial departments of agriculture. ARC scientific expertise supports most of the Department of Agriculture's regulatory directorates, such as the directorates: animal health, public veterinary health, agricultural production, agricultural resource cultivation and plant health.

The ARC also supports other agricultural institutions such as the Registrar of Livestock Improvement and Identification, the Registrar of Brands, the South African Veterinary Council and the Perishable Products Export Control Board. (See Chapter 17: *Science and technology*.)

South Africa has a number of specialised agricultural high schools and regular schools offering a comprehensive range of agricultural subjects. Prospective farmers can be trained at 11 colleges. Degree courses and B. Tech degrees are offered by the faculties of agriculture at various universities.

Veterinary surgeons are trained at the University of Pretoria's Faculty of Veterinary Sciences at Onderstepoort.

In 2006/07, about 160 graduates were interned in the Department of Agriculture and agricultural-commodity organisations. About 800 emerging farmers received hands-on training in various fields of farm management through the Grootfontein Agricultural Development Institute.

Some 10 000 received commodity-driven mentorship programmes and 2 251 farm workers received Adult Basic Education and Training. During 2006/07, 41 research and development projects costing R42 million were commissioned.

International relations

The Department of Agriculture's Directorate: International Relations facilitates and co-ordinates international activities on both multilateral and bilateral bases.

The department is a member of the FAO; the Consultative Group on International Agricultural Research; the Food, Agriculture and Natural Resources Sector of the SADC; the International Seed-Testing Association; the Organisation for

Economic Co-operation and Development's Seed Schemes; and the Union for the Protection of New Varieties of Plants.

Contributing to the political, social and economic development of Africa is an international priority for the department. Agriculture continues to be the mainstay of African economies and is an important driver for socio-economic growth.

South Africa's agricultural engagement in Africa is guided by a clear sense of the enormous potential for agricultural trade, training, research and technical co-operation opportunities that exist on the continent.

The Directorate: International Relations coordinates, facilitates and supports the promotion of South Africa's agricultural interests internationally through bilateral and multilateral relations.

The directorate developed the International Agricultural Strategy, which sets priorities for international engagement in the medium term. The strategy is guided by South Africa's foreign-policy and economic-development objectives. The priorities are:

- consolidation of the African agenda
- active participation in the African Union (AU)
- active participation in and efficient implementation of the programme of the SADC food, agriculture and natural resources; and trade, finance and investment directorates
- sustainable development and poverty alleviation through the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad)
- implementation of the South African Customs Union (Sacu) Agreement.

The ARC participates in various co-operative research agreements, international organisations and networks.

The ARC also supports various government departments in deliberating international agreements and disputes, for example, the Convention on Biodiversity, the Kyoto Protocol on Global Change, the Montreal Protocol, GMO policy and indigenous knowledge systems issues.

International trade relations

The Department of Agriculture's Directorate: International Trade analyses international trade and related policies, advises on multilateral and bilateral agricultural trade policy, and promotes trade initiatives.

The directorate is responsible for dealing with matters concerning agricultural trade relations with other countries and organisations, such as the

Sacu, the SADC, the World Trade Organisation (WTO) and the International Grains Convention. The directorate participates in exploring possible new trade relations in collaboration with the Department of Trade and Industry.

South Africa maintains bilateral trade agreements with countries in Africa, and will be involved in trade negotiations with India as part of Sacu. Sacu has concluded trade agreements with the EU through the SA/EU Trade Development and Co-operation Agreement (TDCA), South American Common Market (Mercosur), and the European Free Trade Association.

Negotiations have continued with Mercosur in an attempt to balance the agreement in favour of the smaller members of both Sacu and Mercosur. The negotiations with the United States of America (USA) met with some difficulty and both Sacu and the USA have decided to pursue a trade, investment and development co-operation agreement. This framework will enable a series of trade-enhancing agreements. It is individually also involved in the WTO agricultural negotiations, as a member of the G20 Group, the Cairns Group and the Africa Group.

The Directorate: International Trade is responsible for implementing South Africa's commitments in terms of the Agreement on Agriculture as defined under the Doha Development Agenda. South Africa commits itself to comprehensive negotiations aimed at substantial reductions in tariffs, with a view to phasing out all forms of export subsidies, and achieving substantial reductions in all trade-distorting support. In addition, the department is creating market-access opportunities by implementing the minimum market-access commitments contained in the agreement.

South Africa's objectives regarding the agricultural negotiations are to establish a fair and market-oriented trading system through a programme of fundamental reform.

Other objectives will achieve a substantial improvement of market access for South African agricultural exports, to ensure that South Africa's commitment, in terms of domestic support, fully covers the development needs of the country and that special and differential treatment is available for developing countries.

South Africa is developing trade relations with other countries. This includes implementing the agricultural aspects of the Sacu Agreement that came into effect in July 2004, the SADC Protocol on Trade and the South Africa-EU TDCA.

The South Africa-EU TDCA was implemented on 1 January 2000. The department has introduced a system for making full use of opportunities created by the agreement. This includes providing information to potential exporters, as well as the administration of export quotas granted to South Africa under the agreement.

Since 1 January 2000, the department has been issuing export permits for various products such as wine, canned fruit, fruit juice, cut flowers, proteas, cheese and frozen strawberries to be exported to the EU at reduced levels of duty.

With the enlargement of the EU, the agreement was extended to include new members. It provides for reciprocal preferential access for the agreed list of products, including agriculture. The review of the TDCA will be merged with the SADC Economic Partnership Agreement negotiations with the EU.

The South African Government signed the Fixed Preferences Agreement with Mercosur (a treaty establishing a common market between Argentina, Brazil, Paraguay and Uruguay) in December 2004.

The department has reviewed the Trade and Marketing Policy to ensure stronger emphasis on long-term sustainability, and to make certain that policies and implementation are aligned. In addition, the Directorate: International Trade does annual strategic market research to inform the positioning of the agricultural export sector in the global trading environment.

The department is investigating and evaluating export opportunities for agricultural products on world markets. By mid-2007, the directorates: international trade and marketing were further strengthening their capacity to deal with issues relating to the strategic repositioning of the agricultural export sector. Strategic market intelligence and formulating new industry strategies such as cluster formation for exports are priorities.

The Directorate: International Trade facilitates national capacity and the training of role-players in the use of trade tools.

International agreements and conventions

South Africa is a signatory to a number of international agreements and conventions, requiring that the matter of sustainable resource-use and management be addressed in a responsible way.

Agenda 21 is an action plan and blueprint for sustainable development, and was one of five documents adopted by more than 178 governments at the United Nations (UN) Conference on Environment and Development in Rio de Janeiro in 1992. Specific to sustainable resource-use is Chapter 14, which addresses the promotion of agriculture and rural development.

International conventions that apply to aspects of sustainable resource-use include the Convention on Biological Diversity, the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change, and the Convention to Combat Desertification (CCD). The CCD requires that South Africa draws up a national action programme, which will be integrated into a regional programme for the SADC region.

All these activities are receiving attention under the leadership of the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, involving all stakeholders, including the national and provincial departments of agriculture.

Import and export control

The Import Export Policy Unit of the Department of Agriculture's Directorate: Animal Health aims to formulate and support policies to reduce sanitary (health) risks in the import and export of animals and animal products.

Import requirements vary according to the product and the animal-health situation in individual countries.

South Africa is an active member of the OIE. Disease reports are received from the OIE and through direct contact with the veterinary administrations in exporting countries.

Trade in animals and animal products is based on a series of requirements considered appropriate by the importing country to prevent the entry of diseases.

The department is one of the key regulatory state departments with the authority to enforce laws enacted by Parliament to protect the South African consumer, producer and farmer; the environment; and other national interests.

The department's regulatory activities regarding plants and plant products are primarily enforced by the directorates: agricultural products inspection services (APIS) and genetic resources.

In addition, the South African Revenue Service participates in this effort by detaining imported goods when requirements are not met.

The Directorate: APIS is involved in inspections and other related activities aimed at ensuring that imported luggage, cargo, mail, animals and plants and their products are free from quarantine pests and diseases, and comply with genetic resources and quality-assurance prescripts and standards. These border inspections are conducted by the Division: Ports of Entry Point Control at designated ports of entry.

Pre-border inspections are aimed at exports for compliance with international requirements of trading partners, and post-order inspections are intended for those regulated articles that were given extended detentions at inspected borders or escaped the border-control inspections.

These inspections, together with local control inspections, are conducted by the Division: National Plants and Plant Products Inspection Services for compliance with plant-health, plant-improvement, genetic-resources and food- and quality-assurance legislation.

The Directorate: Plant Health's core mandates are to manage the risks associated with plant pests and diseases by developing and amending phytosanitary legislation and facilitating safe trade in plants and plant products.

Control measures are published to prevent or combat the spread of pests to other areas in the country. Import control is vital to prevent the introduction of potentially harmful foreign pests. Prospective importers of plants and plant products have to apply for an import permit for those controlled goods mentioned in the Agricultural Pests Act, 1983.

A pest risk-analysis (PRA) division conducts scientific analyses of risks posed, based on scientific data, and specific phytosanitary requirements set out according to the phytosanitary risk(s) involved. These are stipulated in the permit issued to the importer. Importers are obliged to present the material to the official representative for inspection at the port of entry.

The Directorate: Plant Health's division Plant Quarantine Services manages the risks associated with the importation of plant propagation material.

This is achieved by prescribing a compulsory quarantine detention period for specific high-risk categories as determined by the PRA division. The core function of Diagnostic Services is to prevent the introduction of harmful exotic plant pests through testing and auditing all imported plant material.

The division Early Warning ensures sound plant health-risk management-implementation services through surveillance, detection and rapid response.

Early detection of economically important exotic pests prevents the spread of such pests, thereby maintaining pest-free areas. Hand-in-hand with early detection is proper pest-awareness programmes to ensure the agricultural sector and the general public are kept informed.

The division International Standards aims to facilitate effective and efficient official phytosanitary communication between the Directorate: Plant Health and its international, regional and other national plant-health clients.

This is done through the establishment of a national plant-protection contact point and participation in initiatives of external clients such as the Agreement on Sanitary and Phytosanitary Committee of the WTO-Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measures, the IPPC and its working groups and committees, the Inter-African Phytosanitary Council, other national plant-protection organisations or governments, research institutes, as well as any member of the international agricultural trade sector.

The division Import/Export Protocols' core function is to ensure and maintain market access for South African plants and plant products. This includes exchanging plant-health information and expertise in terms of bilateral engagements, and maintaining bilateral export/import programmes in compliance with trading partner requirements according to established protocols.

Food safety and quality assurance African Stockpile Programme (ASP)

The departments of agriculture, of land affairs and of environmental affairs and tourism are embarking on the ASP, which aims to remove all obsolete pesticide stocks from Africa and put in place measures to prevent the recurrence thereof.

South Africa is one of seven African countries selected for the first phase of the clean-up and disposal operation under this programme. These dangerous chemicals pose a threat to the environment and surrounding communities through the contamination of food, water, soil and air.

Some of the leading partners involved are the AU, FAO, Pesticide Action Network, the World Bank, the World Wildlife Fund and the Global Environmental Fund.

The ASP will also include a strategy to prevent the accumulation of stockpiles. The objectives are to:

- reduce reliance on pesticides for agriculture and public health
- introduce better import controls
- improve storage, stock-management and distribution systems
- improve awareness and training for pesticide users
- establish container and pesticide waste-management systems
- raise public awareness and education.

The ASP will identify and remove all obsolete, unwanted and banned pesticides in public ownership, including those used in the commercial sector, and those from small and emerging farmers, households and government stocks. A complete clean-up will include taking inventory of all obsolete stockpiles, buried pesticides and containers.

While the ASP will be co-ordinated by both the departments of agriculture and of environmental affairs and tourism at national level, the project implementation will be anchored at provincial and local levels.

In March 2007, the collection of obsolete pesticides from farmers and relevant government stakeholders started in Limpopo. By mid-2007, it was estimated that about 30 t of obsolete pesticides had been collected. It was envisaged that a total of 50 t of obsolete pesticides would be collected from Limpopo.

South African Pesticide Initiative Programme (Sapip)

The objective of Sapip is to ensure South African horticultural crops have access to the EU market by complying with EU chemical residue levels for horticultural products. This will be done by focusing on capacity-building among emerging farmers, providing regulatory support for fruit producers, conducting adaptive research, adjusting agricultural practices, relevant intervention by stakeholders, promoting good agricultural practices, conducting mapping research, and pesticide-residue analysis.

In 2006/07, the programme achieved, among other things, the following:

- The capacity-building component was boosted through the sharing of information on chemical maximum residue levels with visiting experts from the EU.
- A workshop regarding the integration of emerging farmers with a commercial-grower association was held. Four integration contracts were signed with Sapip, the Citrus Growers' Association, the Deciduous Fruit Producers' Trust and South African Veg.
- Twenty-four students completed four fundamental modules of a technician course that aims to train PDIs in the inspection of quality and food safety of exported agricultural food products. A new contract was signed by the Perishable Products Export Control Board for sponsorship of a second programme called AgriExport Technologists
- A discussion took place between the Department of Agriculture and National Treasury regarding the possibility of extending the Sapip as recommended in the *Mid-Term Review Report*.
- A new broad-based programme was regarded as the way forward, which will align with the new country strategy and Agricultural Development Programme. It will focus on priorities such as employment creation (especially the development of small, medium and micro-enterprises), social cohesion (the development of infrastructure, health and education) and research and development.

Food-control system

A task team, made up of officials from the departments of agriculture, of health, and of trade and industry, was established to direct the creation of an effective food-control system for South Africa.

A service-provider has been identified to assess the existing food-control scenario.

Wine and Spirits Agreement

The Wine and Spirits Agreement between South Africa and the EU was signed in January 2002.

The agreement improves access for South African wine and spirits to the large European market.

Applying an annual duty-free tariff quota of 42 ML ensures better access for South African wines. In addition, the EU makes available an amount of 15 million euros for restructuring the South African wine and spirits industry. Part of the agreement involves phasing out names traditionally

used in South Africa for specific types of wines. The names “port” and “sherry” will be phased out over five years for exports to non-SADC markets, starting from 1 January 2000.

They must be phased out of all markets after 12 years. South Africa also has to phase out the names “grappa”, “ouzo”, “korn/kornbrand”, “jäger” and “pacharan” within five years of signing the agreement.

The phasing out of the names “port” and “sherry” to all export consignments, including the non-SADC markets has already commenced.

Some local producers have also started phasing out “port” by renaming products “Cape ruby”, “Cape tawny” and “Cape vintage”.

The final date for phasing out both these names on the local market is 1 January 2012. The phasing out of “grappa” has also commenced on both the local and export markets.

The Wine Online system currently blocks export applications containing any reference to “grappa”, “port” and “sherry”.

Progress at the International Wine Office (IWO)

The IWO was established on 3 April 2001, when a new treaty was signed, which aimed to establish a truly international organisation for wine and vine. Discussions then started on the drafting of a strategic plan for the new IWO.

After inputs were collated by 40 member countries over four years, the first-ever triannual strategic plan was agreed on for the IWO during the October 2005 General Assembly.

South Africa was instrumental in directing the process and assisted in drafting the text of the strategic plan.

During the IWO meetings in March 2006, the activities, timelines and work schedule for each of the expert groups of the IWO were agreed on in line with the guidelines of the strategic plan.

This was a historical achievement for the IWO, as the original International Wine Office was first established in 1924 and had never had a strategic plan to give direction to its activities.

After a strategic plan for the IWO was established, its structure was reviewed. A new structure with novel expert groups and commissions was adopted in October 2006.

South Africa is represented on the Science and Technical Committee and is therefore in a position to influence the scientific agenda of the IWO.

Progress with the Liquor Products Amendment Bill

The Liquor Products Amendment Bill proposes to:

- amend the Liquor Products Act, 1989 (Act 60 of 1989)
- provide for traceability requirements, for example, compulsory particulars on containers of liquor products and gauging of tanks and to comply with South Africa's international obligations (the EU/South Africa Wine and Spirit Agreement)
- ensure the Act's compatibility with the Constitution, 1996 and general legal principles
- provide for gender-equal or gender-passive terminology.

The instruction for amending the Liquor Products Act, 1989 emanated from the Minister of Agriculture and Land Affairs, mainly to address the composition of the Wine and Spirit Board and to ensure that equal participatory rights are afforded to all.

By mid-2007, the Liquor Products Amendment Bill had been placed on the Cabinet roll.

National analytical services

Food safety and quality are achieved through the introduction and application of various regulatory programmes and interventions. The analytical laboratories provide quality analytical data by utilising appropriate infrastructure together with highly skilled personnel and international standards.

The analytical laboratories' service is based on internationally accepted and recognised methods, technologies, procedures and scientific principles. The laboratories assist import and export regulators to ensure that agricultural food products do not pose a health hazard to consumers. They also ensure compliance with norms and standards to achieve the expansion and protection of existing global markets, and the establishment of new markets.

The unit operates in terms of the Agricultural Product Standards Act, 1990 (Act 119 of 1990), and the Liquor Products Act, 1989; also taking into consideration internationally benchmarked standards set by bodies such as the IWO and Codex, importing country requirements (on government level), and other international standards pertaining to food safety and quality assurance as part of an official control system.

Meat safety

In terms of the Meat Safety Act, 2000 (Act 40 of 2000), no person may sell or provide meat for

human or animal consumption unless the animal from which the meat is sourced has been slaughtered at a registered abattoir.

The Directorate: Food Safety and Quality Assurance provides regulations under the Act and, in co-operation with the provinces, ensures that the essential national standards for abattoirs and meat safety required by the Act are implemented countrywide.

The directorate, in conjunction with the Directorate: Animal Health, is responsible for monitoring standards at export abattoirs and the safety of imported meat. The directorate provides inspection services at a number of export abattoirs to ensure compliance with EU requirements.

Land Affairs

The Department of Land Affairs aims to be a global leader in the creation and maintenance of an equitable and sustainable land dispensation that results in social and economic development for all South Africans.

The department's key focus is on providing enhanced land rights to all South Africans, with particular emphasis on PDIs, which will result in increased income levels and job opportunities, productive land-use and well planned human settlements.

South Africa's land reform is premised on three programmes: land-tenure reform, redistribution and restitution. While the Department of Land Affairs implements land-tenure reform and redistribution, the Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights (CRLR) implements the restitution programme.

The department has four branches, namely Land and Tenure Reform (LTR), Restitution, Land Planning and Information (LPI) and Financial Management and Corporate Services.

Branch: Land and Tenure Reform

The Branch: LTR is responsible for implementing redistribution, tenure reform and state-land administration and disposal. It is made up of the Chief Directorate: Land Reform Systems and Support Services (LRSSS) and the Chief Directorate: Land Reform Implementation Management (LRIM).

The Chief Directorate: LRSSS consists of the Directorate: Public Land Support Services, Direc-

torate: Tenure Reform Implementation Systems and the Directorate: Redistribution Implementation Systems. This chief directorate is responsible for developing and refining legislation, systems and procedures to enable provincial land-reform offices (PLROs) to deliver land at scale. It also supports PLROs in the areas of capacity-building, information management and communication.

The Chief Directorate: LRIM is responsible for co-ordinating the actual implementation of the land- and tenure-reform programme and manages state land at provincial level, through the PLROs and at district level through the district land-reform offices.

Land-reform implementation

The department delivered 152 445 ha of land to 8 687 beneficiaries in the 2005/06 financial year. The target is to redistribute 30% of white-owned commercial agricultural land by 2014. To achieve this, 3% has to be redistributed every year.

The envisaged massification programme and the Proactive Land Acquisition Strategy (PLAS) will go a long way towards addressing the concerns raised during the National Land Summit in July 2005 about the slow pace of land delivery. In line with the objective of increasing the pace of land delivery, an implementation framework for the PLAS was developed.

Specific systems were developed for a pilot project in the Free State. The department has since adopted this framework, which was expected to be replicated across the country in 2007. This new approach is one of the interventions the department has developed to respond to the concerns raised at the summit.

The Commonage Subprogramme delivered 55 661 ha in 2006. The department delivered 2 793 ha of land for settlement and slum clearance and plans to revive the bilateral approach to align policies, programmes and resources with those of the Department of Housing.

The details of the National Implementation Framework (NIF) for the Communal Land Rights Act (Clara), 2004 (Act 11 of 2004), were finalised during the 2005/06 financial year. The purpose of the NIF is to clarify the important implementation arrangements for the CLaRA, including the

provision of necessary resources for implementing the Act.

Launched in 2001, the Land Redistribution for Agricultural Development (LRAD) Programme, which is a subprogramme of the Land Redistribution Programme, provides financial support to emerging farmers through a match-funding arrangement in which the beneficiary has to contribute money, labour (sweat equity) or capital equipment.

Depending on the size of the contribution, the beneficiary qualifies for a grant of between R20 000 and R100 000. An investigation into the appropriateness of the LRAD grant size in relation to the escalating land prices and the profile of land-redistribution beneficiaries was conducted.

The grant was found to be not necessarily sufficient for highly intensive projects such as timber or horticulture projects. In line with the recommendations from the Land Summit, all grants are expected to be reviewed to ensure that they achieve their objectives.

Vesting and disposal of state land

A total number of 20 294 land parcels covering 4 476 613 ha was confirmed as vested by 31 March 2006, comprising 18,75% of the total number of 108 222 land parcels to be surveyed.

About 663 344 ha of Department of Land Affairs-controlled land have been disposed of since 1994, of which 53 657 ha were disposed of during the 2005/06 financial year, going mainly to emerging farmers through transfers and options to purchase.

Short-term leases (usually three-year terms and with an option to purchase) are used as an interim measure to support the transfer process of land. In this regard, the Department of Land Affairs manages leases for land areas of up to 35 000 ha with the aim of freeing state land for disposal.

Branch: Land Planning and Information

The Branch: LPI is responsible for the surveying, mapping and registration of land, as well as for spatial planning and information.

The surveys and mapping component is responsible for the national mapping series of the country, as well as for providing the survey-control network, which enables all surveys in South Africa to be spatially co-ordinated. Private land surveyors base their surveys of land and real rights on this control network.

The Surveyor-General examines and approves these surveys, which are then registered by the Register of Deeds. All the information emanating

from these functions is available as hard-copy maps as well as in digital format.

The National Spatial Information Framework, which is responsible for data standards and the exchange of information, is also situated in this branch.

The Chief Directorate: Spatial Planning and Information stores, transmits and uses information relating to land. This information is necessary for land-use purposes and many other land-based or land-related functions (such as the population census, elections, property taxation, telecommunications, water resources, electricity, housing, defence, safety and security, identification of suitable land as part of government's land-reform policy, and national and international co-operation and commitments).

The provision of hands-on support to the municipalities was expected to be one of the major outputs of the Branch: LPI for 2007/08 and it was expected to conduct a land audit as required by the Land Summit.

Deeds registration

The nine deeds registries are located in Pretoria, Cape Town, Johannesburg, Pietermaritzburg, Bloemfontein, Kimberley, King William's Town, Vryburg and Mthatha. These offices register deeds and documents relating to real rights in more than seven million registered land parcels consisting of township erven, farms, agricultural holdings, sectional title units and sectional title exclusive-use areas.

To take deeds-registry services to the people, the department aims to establish a deeds registry in every province. The first phase of this project entails establishing a deeds registry in Nelspruit, Mpumalanga.

The boom in the property market led to an increase of 7% in the volume of work in the Deeds Office in 2006. Despite this, the Deeds Office maintains the turnaround time of their vital registration function of 10 working days from lodgement.

The Deeds Registration Trading Account generated a substantial net surplus of R151 million for the 2005/06 financial year, without having to increase fee tariffs for that period, due to sound financial management of this account, coupled with the significant rise in property values and the increase in transaction volumes.

Botswana and Namibia are two of several southern African countries that adopted the South African model of the deeds registration system, the

Sectional Titles Act, 1968 (Act 95 of 1968), and the Deeds Registries Act, 1937 (Act 47 of 1937), with the necessary adaptations to suit their national circumstances.

Cadastral surveys

The function of approving cadastral surveys is carried out in the five offices of the Surveyor-General, situated in Pretoria, Cape Town, Pietermaritzburg, Bloemfontein and Nelspruit.

In spite of critical staff shortages in the professional category and the increased workload resulting from the boom in the property market, most of the offices of the Surveyor-General managed to maintain, and in some instances even to improve on, the turnaround time of 15 working days.

This was achieved through continued improvement of procedures, restructuring of offices, working overtime and using the enhanced cadastral information system.

Spatial planning information

The department has assisted with the necessary operational requirements of the South African Council for Planners. The council held public hearings in all provinces to obtain public views on the issues affecting the profession in the process of transformation.

By mid-2007, all four committees of the council had started with their respective tasks, namely registration, accreditation, an audit of registered planners and curriculum development for the profession. An audit of all planners in the country confirmed that there were 1 149 registered planners. These consisted of 888 professional planners, 89 technical planners and 172 candidate planners.

Surveys and mapping

The integrated spatial reference framework (national control survey network) provides a unique, highly accurate positioning system across the country.

The network of continuously operating global positioning system stations, TrigNet, has been improved to ensure a reliable service. A real-time TrigNet service is being established and 17 stations were activated during 2006/07 to ensure at least 98% availability of this service.

As part of programmes that seek to contribute to the consolidation of the African Agenda, the department actively participated in the Committee for Development Information. Major strides were made in the Mapping Africa for Africa project.

The Chief Directorate: Surveys and Mapping also played a leading role in the project for the unified African Spatial Referencing System.

An agreement with the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research in 2004 led to the systematic coverage of the SADC region by medium-resolution satellite images. This is provided in support of government policy on poverty alleviation and in line with the broader objectives of Nepad.

This imagery is also required for land-reform support, land-use/land-cover mapping and spatial planning. Other organs of state, in particular the departments of agriculture, of environmental affairs and tourism, of water affairs and forestry, and of minerals and energy, as well as Statistics South Africa and Eskom use the remotely sensed imagery from satellite-borne sensors to achieve their objectives.

This agreement was extended for acquiring satellite imagery in 2006/07. Coverage of the whole country (1,22 million km²) and the SADC region was acquired and is distributed on request.

The Chief Directorate: Surveys and Mapping provided technical training, MapAware workshops and bursaries to targeted groups to embrace government priorities, encourage growth and development, promote job creation and improve the quality of life of all South Africans.

Technical in-service training was provided to students and interns who needed experience to complete their studies towards surveying or cartography diplomas. Twenty-two students completed the programme.

The department sponsors 87 students through the special bursary scheme for surveying/geomatics.

The 1:50 000 topographical map series is the largest-scale map series, providing full coverage of South Africa. Small-scale maps of 1:250 000 and 1:500 000 are produced from the 1:50 000 map series.

The popular large-scale 1:10 000 orthophoto map series provides coverage of predominantly built-up areas, areas of economic importance and areas experiencing rapid development.

The chief directorate is a full member of the National Air Space Committee and produces aeronautical charts for the southern African region that are vital to the interests of air safety. The chief directorate provides up-to-date charts that reflect changes to airspace with respect to the Future Airspace Management Efficiency Programme.

Branch: Restitution

Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights

The CRLR is a statutory body set up in terms of the Restitution of Land Rights Act, 1994 (Act 22 of 1994), as amended. The role of the commission is to provide redress to victims of dispossession of rights in land, as a result of racially discriminatory laws and practices that took place after 19 June 1913.

The commission is led by the Chief Land Claims Commissioner and has nine regional offices headed by regional land claims commissioners.

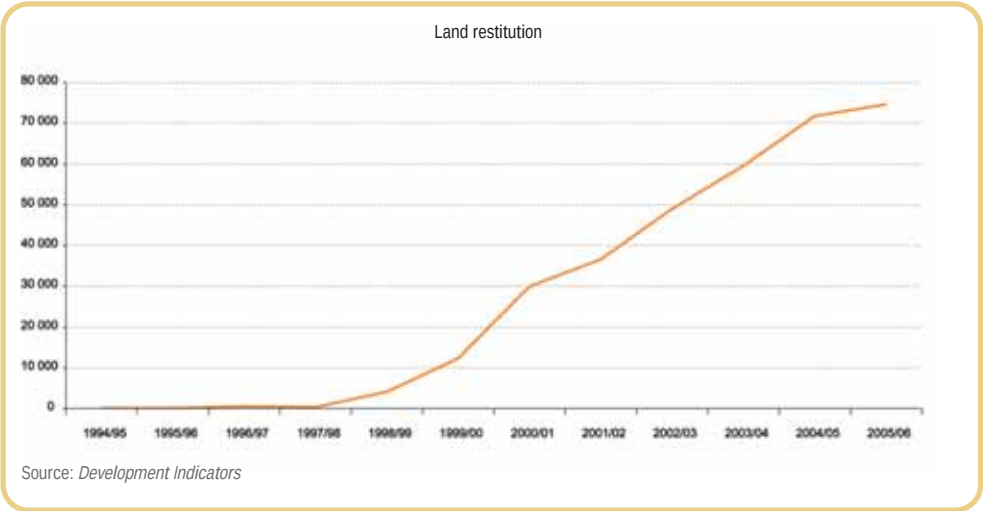
Across the country, out of a total of 79 696 claims lodged, 74 417 claims had been settled by 31 March 2007 (93% of the total number of claims).

The CRLR has delivered on the biggest land claim ever settled in South Africa – the Tenbosch properties with a total value of R1,1 billion involving 32 387 ha of land. Most of the land is used for commercial farming.

Another significant land claim is the St Lucia Wetland Park, a world heritage site. The settlement comprises seven land-restitution claims by the local communities of 1 825 families on the 22 908 ha of land.

The State has committed R89 million towards the finalisation of this claim.

Twenty-five percent of this amount will be allocated to the claimants for development.



Acknowledgements

Abstract of Agricultural Statistics, 2007
 Agricultural Research Council
 BuaNews
Business Day
 Commission for the Restitution of Land Rights
 Department of Agriculture
 Department of Land Affairs
Estimates of National Expenditure 2007, published by National Treasury
 South African Sugar Association
 South African Wine Industry Information and Systems
<http://land.pwv.gov.za>
www.landbank.co.za
www.gov.za
www.news24.com

Suggested reading

Abstract of Agricultural Statistics. Pretoria: Department of Agriculture, Directorate: Agricultural Information Services, annually.

AgriBEE: Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Framework for Agriculture. Pretoria: Department of Agriculture, 2004.

Agriculture Investment Sourcebook: Agriculture and Rural Development. Washington: World Bank, 2005.

Atkinson, D. *Going for Broke: The Fate of Farm Workers in Arid South Africa*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press, 2007.

Bell, S. *The Happy Warrior: The Story of TC Robertson*. Howick: TC Robertson Trust, 2005.

Devereux, S and Maxwell, S. eds. *Food Security in Sub-Saharan Africa*. Pietermaritzburg: University of Natal Press, 2003.

Economic Review of South African Agriculture. Pretoria: Department of Agriculture, annually.

Harr, T and Vorster, I. *Indigenous Knowledge on the South African Landscape: Potential for Agricultural Development*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Huggins, C and Clover, J. eds. *From the Ground Up: Land Rights, Conflict and Peace in Sub-Saharan Africa*. Pretoria: Institute of Security Studies, 2005.

Investment, Farming and Agribusiness South Africa. Johannesburg: Trade Edge, annually.

James, D. *Gaining Ground? "Rights" and "Property" in South African Land Reform*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2007.

Lee, M and Calvard, K. eds. *Unfinished Business: The Land Crisis in Southern Africa*. Pretoria: Africa Institute of South Africa, 2004.

Maswikwaneng, M.J. *Urban Agriculture in the Informal Settlements of Atteridgeville*, Pretoria. Technikon Pretoria, 2003.

Moyo, S and Yeros, P. eds. *Reclaiming the Land: The Resurgence of Rural Movements in Africa, Asia and Latin America*. London: Zed Books; Cape Town: David Philip, 2005.

Nieuwoudt, L. and Groenewald, J. eds. *The Challenge of Change: Agriculture, Land and the South African Economy*. Pietermaritzburg: University of Natal Press, 2003.

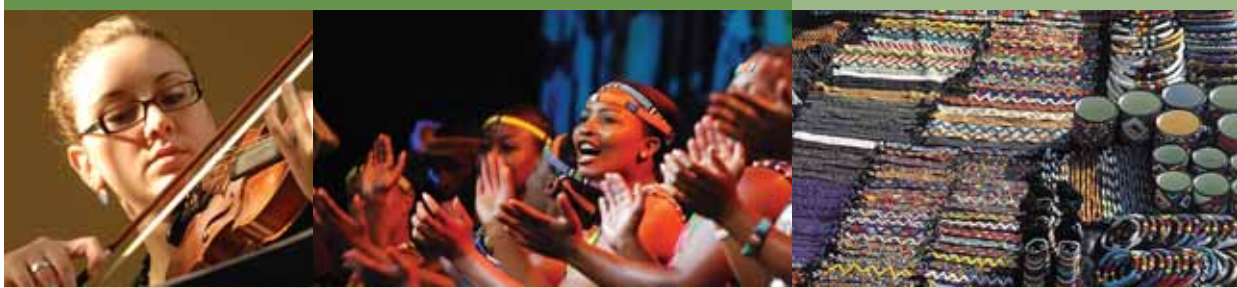
Ntsebeza, L. *Democracy Compromised: Chiefs and the Politics of Land in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2006.

- Ntsebeza, L and Hall, R. eds. *The Land Question in South Africa: The Challenge of Transformation and Redistribution*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007.
- Perret, S and Mercoiret, MR. eds. *Supporting Small-Scale Farmers and Rural Organisations: Learning from Experiences in West Africa: A Handbook for Development Operators and Local Managers*. Pretoria: Protea Book House, 2003.
- Rosenberg, A and Linders, T. *Organic Agriculture: A Handbook*. Johannesburg: Lindros Whole Earth Consultants, 2004.
- Schadeberg, J. *Voices From the Land*. Pretoria: Protea Book House, n.d.
- Smith, B. *The Farming Handbook*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal, c. 2006.
- Sombalo, LL. *Urban Livelihood Strategies and Agricultural Activities in Khayelitsha Communities, Western Cape*. Pretoria: University of Pretoria, 2003.
- Strategic Plan for the Department of Agriculture 2004*. Pretoria: Department of Agriculture, 2004.





SA YEARBOOK 2007/08 | ARTS AND CULTURE



The Department of Arts and Culture seeks to develop and preserve South African culture to ensure social cohesion and nation-building.

National symbols

National anthem

South Africa's national anthem is a combined version of *Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika* and *The Call of South Africa* (*Die Stem van Suid-Afrika*). *The Call of South Africa* was written by CJ Langenhoven in May 1918. The music was composed by Rev ML de Villiers in 1921. *Nkosi Sikelel' iAfrika* was composed in 1897 by Enoch Sontonga, a Methodist mission schoolteacher.

The words of the first stanza were originally written in isiXhosa as a hymn. Seven additional stanzas in isiXhosa were later added by the poet Samuel Mqhayi. It has been translated into most of South Africa's official languages.

National flag

South Africa's national flag was launched and used for the first time on Freedom Day, 27 April 1994. The design and colours are a synopsis of the principal elements of the country's flag history.

The central design of the flag, beginning at the flag-pole in a "V" form and flowing into a single horizontal band to the outer edge of the fly, can be interpreted as the convergence of diverse elements within South African society, taking the road ahead in unity. The flag was designed by the State Herald.

When the flag is displayed vertically against a wall, the red band should be to the left of the viewer, with the hoist or the cord seam at the top. When it is displayed horizontally, the hoist should be to the left of the viewer and the red band at the top. When the flag is displayed next to or behind the speaker at a meeting, it must be placed to the speaker's right. When it is placed elsewhere in the meeting place, it should be to the right of the audience.

National coat of arms

South Africa's coat of arms was launched on Freedom Day, 27 April 2000.

A focal point of the coat of arms is the indigenous secretary bird with its uplifted wings, crowned with an image of the rising sun. The sun symbolises a life-giving force, and represents the flight of darkness and the triumph of discovery, knowledge and understanding of things that have been hidden. It also illuminates the new life that is

coming into being. An indigenous South African flower, the protea, is placed below the bird. It represents beauty, the aesthetic harmony of the different cultures, and South Africa flowering as a nation. The ears of wheat symbolise the fertility of the land, while the tusks of the African elephant, depicted in pairs to represent men and women, also represent wisdom, steadfastness and strength.

The shield, placed in the centre, signifies the protection of South Africans from one generation to the next. The spear and a knobkierie above it are representative of the defence of peace rather than the pursuit of war. This shield of peace, which also brings to mind an African drum, conveys the message of a people imbued with a love of culture. Its upper part is a shield imaginatively represented by the protea.



Contained within the shield are some of the earliest representations of humanity. Those depicted were the very first inhabitants of the land, namely the Khoisan people. These figures are derived from images on the Linton Stone, a world-famous example of South African rock art. The motto on the coat of arms, *!ke e:ǀxarra!ke*, written in the Khoisan language of the /Xam people, means "diverse people unite" or "people who are different joining together".

National orders

National orders are the highest awards that the country can bestow on individual South Africans and eminent foreign leaders and personalities.

The Order of Mapungubwe is awarded to South African citizens for excellence and exceptional achievement.

The Order of the Baobab is awarded to South African citizens for distinguished service in the fields of business and the economy; science, medicine and technological innovation; and community service.

The Order of the Companions of OR Tambo is awarded to heads of state and other dignitaries for promoting peace, co-operation and friendship towards South Africa.

The Order of Luthuli is awarded to South Africans who have made a meaningful contribution to the

struggle for democracy, human rights, nation-building, justice and peace, and conflict resolution.

The Order of Ikhamanga is awarded to South African citizens who have excelled in the fields of arts, culture, literature, music, journalism and sport.

The Order of Mendi for Bravery is awarded to South African citizens who have performed extraordinary acts of bravery.

National symbols

South Africa's national symbols are:

- National animal: Springbok
- National bird: Blue crane
- National fish: Galjoen
- National flower: King protea
- National tree: Real yellowwood.

Arts and culture organisations

National Heritage Council (NHC)

The NHC, a statutory body that aims to bring equity to heritage promotion and conservation, was officially constituted on 26 February 2004 in terms of the NHC Act, 1999 (Act 11 of 1999). The council creates an enabling environment for preserving, protecting and promoting South African heritage.

Its other objectives are to protect, preserve and promote the content and heritage that reside in orature to make it accessible and dynamic; to integrate living heritage into the council and all other heritage authorities and institutions at national, provincial and local level; to promote and protect indigenous knowledge systems; and to intensify support for promoting the history and culture of all South Africans.

Over the 2007 Medium Term Expenditure Framework, the council will develop, together with other heritage role-players, a heritage-development strategy to unlock the economic potential of the sector. The development of a heritage transformation charter was expected to begin in 2007.

South African Heritage Resources Agency (Sahra)

The National Heritage Resources Act, 1999 (Act 25 of 1999), established the Sahra to manage the heritage resources of the country in co-operation with similar provincial agencies.

The Sahra has established the National Heritage Resources Fund to provide financial assistance, in the form of a grant or a loan, to an approved body or individual, for any project which contributes to the conservation and protection of South Africa's national heritage resources.

Conservation categories include:

- national heritage sites, registers, areas and objects
- protected areas
- structures over 60 years old
- burial grounds and graves
- fossils (palaeontology) and archaeology
- rock art
- historical shipwrecks.

Heritage audit

By mid-2007, the ground-breaking National Audit of Heritage Resources Project in Public Custodianship was under way. Collections of heritage resources that had already been audited included those held in Tuynhuys, Parliament, Groote Schuur Estate, Bryntirion Estate and the Union Buildings. Six thousand heritage resources had been identified, described and digitally photographed as part of the first phase.

The Sahra website (www.sahra.org.za) provides access to National Inventory items. Sahra has also conducted a national survey of almost 2 000 public offices and bodies that are potential custodians of heritage resources.

The survey has identified a need across all three tiers of government and parastatals to ensure proper accountability for the management of heritage resources to curb loss of and damage to these heritage resources.

Theft of cultural heritage

South Africa is a signatory to the 1970 Convention on the Means of Prohibiting and Preventing the Illicit Import, Export and Transfer of Ownership of Cultural Property. South Africa is also in the process of becoming a signatory to the Unidroit Convention on Stolen or Illegally Exported Cultural Objects.



Among the commemorations that featured prominently in 2007/08 were:

- The 40th anniversary of the tragic death of Inkosi Albert Luthuli to pay tribute to this great South African, the first African to be awarded the Nobel Peace Prize.
- The 90th anniversary of the tragedy of the *SS Mendi* to commemorate the 600 victims of the fallen *SS Mendi* in 1917.
- The 30th anniversary of the murder of Steve Biko: government committed R5 million to the Steve Biko Foundation to undertake a number of projects to commemorate the memory of Biko. The anniversary also marked the banning of a host of organisations and the newspaper *The World*.

These conventions ensure that the cultural property of signatory countries is protected internationally from theft and illicit trafficking.

South African Geographical Names Council (SAGNC)

The SAGNC is an advisory body appointed by the Minister of Arts and Culture in terms of the SAGNC Act, 1998 (Act 118 of 1998). The council advises the minister on the transformation and standardisation of official geographical names in South Africa.

The council has jurisdiction over all names of geographical features and entities falling within the territories over which the South African Government has sovereignty or jurisdiction acquired by treaty.

The following principles are adhered to:

- each individual feature or entity should have only one official name
- the following types of geographical names should generally be avoided:
 - approved names of places elsewhere in South Africa
 - names of places in other countries, and names of countries
 - names that are blasphemous, indecent, offensive, vulgar, unaesthetic or embarrassing
 - names that are discriminatory or derogatory
 - names that may be regarded as an advertisement for a particular product, service or firm
 - names of living persons.

Geographical names committees have been established in all nine provinces. These committees play an important role in standardising geographical names. A list of all approved names is available at <http://sagnc.dac.gov.za>.

National Arts Council of South Africa (NAC)

The NAC aims to:

- support arts practice by creating and providing opportunities to achieve excellence in the arts, within a climate of freedom
- achieve equity by redressing imbalances in the allocation of resources
- promote and develop appreciation, understanding and enjoyment of the arts through strategies that include education, information and marketing

- enhance support for and recognition of the arts by promoting and facilitating national and international liaison between individuals and institutions

- establish and recommend policy in the development, practice and funding of the arts.

It also offers block bursaries to tertiary institutions for undergraduate students. Individual bursaries are offered for studies towards a postgraduate qualification in South Africa and abroad.

In 2006/07, the NAC allocated grants to about 250 projects and 75 performing arts companies in theatre, dance, music, literature, the visual arts and craft. From 2007/08 to 2009/10, the council plans to fund about 1 000 projects each year.

The responsibility for funding the Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng philharmonic orchestras was shifted to the NAC. The council is also responsible for funding the Cape Town Jazz Orchestra.

Mmino

Mmino, a South Africa-Norwegian education and music programme, hosted by the NAC in close co-operation with the Norwegian Concert Institute, is the only funding programme in South Africa that funds music projects exclusively.

Mmino aims to support projects with national impact in the areas of music education, documentation, research and exchange, choral music and festivals.

Arts institutions

The following arts institutions assist in creating a sustainable performing arts industry based on access, excellence, diversity and redress, and encourage the development of the full range of performing arts:

- State Theatre, Pretoria
- Playhouse Company, Durban
- ArtsCape, Cape Town
- Market Theatre, Johannesburg
- Performing Arts Centre of the Free State, Bloemfontein
- Windybrow Theatre, Johannesburg.

The institutions receive annual transfers from the Department of Arts and Culture, but also generate revenue through entrance fees, donor assistance, sponsorships and rental income.

National symbols and orders



The Order of the Baobab



The Order of Luthuli



The Order of Mendi for Bravery



The Order of Mapungubwe



The Order of the Companions of
OR Tambo



The Order of Ikhamanga



National bird: Blue crane



National flower: King protea



National fish: Galjoen



National tree: Real yellowwood



National animal: Springbok

Business and Arts South Africa (Basa)

Basa was founded in 1997 as a joint initiative of government and the business sector. Registered as a section 21 company and a public-benefit organisation, Basa aims to promote mutually beneficial and sustainable business and arts partnerships that will benefit civil society in the long term.

Basa receives annual funding from the Department of Arts and Culture to implement its supporting grant scheme. It is designed to attract funding or in-kind support from the business sector by offering a grant to arts projects specifically for additional marketing or other benefits for the business sector.

In addition, Basa initiates or enters into partnerships with programmes and projects designed to mainstream the arts and lift its public profile, including a range of media partnerships and high-profile arts projects with national reach. In 2005/06, Basa's grants totalled R4 million, leveraging a further R20 million in corporate support.

Basa boasts some 110 companies as corporate members nationally. This number fluctuates as companies shift from corporate social investment to sponsorship.

The *Business Day*/Basa Awards are presented annually.

Arts and Culture Trust (ACT)

The ACT was launched in October 1994 to finance and manage funding for the arts in South Africa. The trust, with former President Nelson Mandela as its chief patron, has Nedbank, Sun International, the Ministry of Arts and Culture, Vodacom and the Dutch Government as its major funders. The trust also seeks to build a better arts and culture dispensation through proactive initiatives, including:

- forums, conferences and campaigns concerning strategic issues
- the annual ACT Awards, which recognise the important contributions of role-players such as administrators, journalists and educators
- establishing mutually beneficial relationships between the trust and the arts and culture community.

The ACT was the first independent body established to fund arts and culture in post-apartheid South Africa. It has funded more than 500 projects across the spectrum. Support for a further 31 projects in 11 disciplines to the value of R1 million was approved.

The ACT focuses on the development of job creation, creative skills, management skills, cultural diversity and cultural-tourism marketing.

Other cultural organisations

Non-governmental organisations (NGOs), community-based organisations and other cultural projects that were previously not considered for funding are now being funded.

Community art centres are positioned to be leading centres for poverty-alleviation programmes in both rural and urban communities.

The Community Arts Centre Programme contributes to ensuring optimally functioning community arts centres in South Africa. This has led to the development and implementation of many strategies that changed the face of these centres in South Africa.

Arts and culture initiatives

Investing in Culture

Investing in Culture is the flagship programme for eradicating poverty, also providing the necessary skills to enable people to assume greater responsibility for their future.

The Investing in Culture Programme aims to provide access to skills and markets as a tool for urban regeneration, rural development and job creation.

Over 5 000 jobs were directly created, with 62% of the beneficiaries being women; 53% youth; and 8,5% people with disabilities. Forty percent of the funds for this programme is invested in nodal municipalities in support of the integrated sustainable rural development and urban renewal programmes. Some R96,3 million went towards the Investing in Culture Programme in 2007/08.

The programme develops capital by allocating resources to ensure return on investments that will fulfil the key objectives of the Department of Arts and Culture and broader imperatives of government.

The national anthem

Nkosi sikelel' i Afrika
Maluphakanyisw' uphondo lwayo,
Yizwa imithandazo yethu,
Nkosi sikelela, thina lusapho lwayo.

Morena boloka setjhaba sa heso,
O fedise dintwa le matshwenyeho,
O se boloke,
O se boloke setjhaba
sa heso,
Setjhaba sa South Afrika –
South Afrika.

Uit die blou van onse hemel,
Uit die diepte van ons see,
Oor ons ewige gebergtes,
Waar die kranse antwoord gee.

Sounds the call to come together,
And united we shall stand,
Let us live and strive for freedom,
In South Africa our land.



Functions and activities include:

- ensuring the realisation of empowerment opportunities through training and job creation in the arts, culture and heritage sector
- potential sustainable economic growth through, among other things, music, arts and heritage
- building social cohesion
- promoting co-ordinated governance (across the three tiers of government)
- capacity-building through support provided by provincial co-ordinators
- contributing to the Expanded Public Works Programme
- aligning projects with the Provincial Growth and Development Strategy and integrated development plans.

Legacy projects

Monuments, museums, plaques, outdoor art, heritage trails and other symbolic representations create visible reminders of, and commemorate, the many aspects of South Africa's past.

Government has initiated several national legacy projects to establish commemorative symbols of South Africa's history and to celebrate its heritage.

The legacy projects include the:

- **Women's Monument:** On 9 August 2000, President Thabo Mbeki unveiled a monument at the Union Buildings in Pretoria to commemorate the contribution of the women of South Africa in the struggle for freedom. The ceremony marked the day, in 1956, when 20 000 women marched to the Union Buildings to protest against government's pass laws.
- **Chief Albert Luthuli's house in KwaDukuza, KwaZulu-Natal,** has been restored by the Department of Arts and Culture as a museum with a visitors' interpretative centre. The project also involved the unveiling of Chief Luthuli's sculpture at the KwaDukuza municipal grounds.
- **Battle of Blood River/Ncome Project:** Following the unveiling of the Ncome Monument and Wall of Remembrance on 16 December 1998, the Ncome Museum was opened on 26 November 1999. The structures honour the role played by the Zulu nation in the battle.
- **Samora Machel Project:** The Samora Machel Monument in Mbuzini, Mpumalanga, was

unveiled on 19 October 1998. The second phase (totalling R4,1 million) was completed in 2005.

- **Nelson Mandela Museum:** This museum in the Eastern Cape was opened on 11 February 2000. It is being developed as a single component comprising three elements, namely a museum in Mthatha, a youth centre at Qunu, and a visitors' centre in Mvezo, where former President Mandela was born. The second phase (totalling R8,2 million) was completed in 2005.
- **Constitution Hill Project:** The Old Fort Prison in Hillbrow, Johannesburg, was developed into a multidimensional and multipurpose precinct that houses the Constitutional Court (CC) and accommodates various constitutional commissions. The Constitution Hill Project involved the development of the Constitutional Hill precinct to accommodate the CC, the Constitution Museum, the Women's Jail, the Old Fort and a commercial precinct.
- The development of the Sarah Baartman monument and the Khoisan Legacy Project started in 2006 at an estimated cost of R5 million.
- **Freedom Park Project:** Construction of the Freedom Park Project, a memorial to the anti-apartheid struggle at Salvokop in Pretoria, began in 2002. It is expected to be completed in 2010. The first phase of the R560-million memorial site was handed over to government in March 2004. This phase, costing R45 million, involved the design and construction of the Garden of Remembrance in honour of the country's departed freedom fighters.

Indigenous Music and Oral History Project

The Department of Arts and Culture has a partnership with the universities of Venda, Zululand



In 2006, the Department of Arts and Culture established the African World Heritage Fund (AWHF) to deal with the challenges that face the conservation and protection of world heritage sites on the African continent.

The AWHF was launched in May 2006. It is administered by the Development Bank of Southern Africa and audited by the Auditor-General.

It consists of all African Union countries that are signatories to the World Heritage Convention and has already invested in various projects.

and Fort Hare. The mandate of these universities is to conduct research to identify, document, protect and promote indigenous music (instruments), oral history and indigenous knowledge.

Research has been conducted into procedures and forms of marriage; indigenous medical practice; indigenous pest control; different types of indigenous dance and music; Inkosi Cetshwayo; and the role of izindabuli; izinqmbi and amagosa in dance songs.

Some of the expected outcomes of the project are the amplification of the sound of indigenous instruments; the modernisation of indigenous instruments; the provision of teaching material for arts, music and other forms of indigenous knowledge at educational institutions; and the use of indigenous knowledge for community development and sustainability, poverty alleviation and moral regeneration.

Heritage Month celebrations

The Department of Arts and Culture is responsible for the Heritage Month celebrations. Heritage Month promotes and celebrates various aspects of South African heritage, in accordance with the adopted theme. Provinces host various heritage activities during Heritage Month. These activities culminate in national Heritage Day, which is held on 24 September. The theme for the 2007 Heritage Month was *Celebrating our Poetry*.

Mosadi wa Konokono (Women of Substance)

Mosadi wa Konokono is a flagship campaign of the Department of Arts and Culture. It is a socio-cultural-economic campaign that was conceptualised as a vehicle for elevating the profile of ordinary women in grassroots communities. The campaign uses arts and culture to foster social cohesion and to nurture a spirit of economic self-determination. The campaign has also been created as a platform to enable the emergence of talented women and youth who are already instrumental in and proactively building their communities.

Education and training

Training is critical for the development of arts and culture, to achieve both the developmental and economic potential of the sector.

The creative industries form part of the Media, Advertising, Publishing, Printing and Packaging Sector Education and Training Authority (Mappp-Seta).

Recognising the challenges facing this sector, the Mappp-Seta, in partnership with the departments of arts and culture and of labour, the

NAC, and the National Film and Video Foundation (NFVF), initiated the Creative Research Education and Training Enterprise South Africa (Create SA) Strategic Project to develop a comprehensive on-the-job training framework for the creative industries. The project is funded by the National Skills Fund and the Department of Arts and Culture, and focuses on people who otherwise might not have had access to training opportunities.

The Artists in Schools Project places artists with a flair for education and teaching within schools wishing to offer arts curricula.

Access to arts

The Arts, Social Development and Youth Programme is working towards greater arts access for all communities, particularly marginalised groups. These groups include women, youth in distress and people with disabilities.

One project supported under arts access includes art therapy under the auspices of the Art Therapy Centre.

The department launched the National Youth, Arts, Culture and Heritage Expressions Campaign in May 2006 to coincide with the 30th anniversary of the Soweto uprisings. This campaign facilitates learnerships for disadvantaged youth in the technical aspects of arts and culture management. The aim is to broaden exposure to various aspects of arts management, with a view to creating sustainable employment opportunities.

The department envisages running accredited learnerships in community arts centres and other sites of learning situated within those targeted communities. Learners are expected to complete a nine-month programme that will be assessed continuously.

The pilot Art in Correctional (AIC) Facilities Programme was introduced at three facilities in 2005. As a result of its success, the project will progressively be implemented in 36 other correctional facilities, identified as centres of excellence.



The Copyright Lekgotla was held in June 2007 in Cape Town. The lekgotla was organised by the Academic and Non-Fiction Authors' Association of South Africa and the Publishers' Association of South Africa.

The general theme was *Who Owns our Knowledge?*

Sponsors of the event included the Norwegian Non-Fiction Writers' and Translators' Association; Kopinor (Norwegian Reproduction Rights Organisation); Jonathan Ball Publishers; the Dramatic, Artistic and Literary Rights Organisation; and the World Intellectual Property Organisation.

The AIC Facilities Programme is a rehabilitative vehicle for creative expression for offenders. It provides a skills base that is intended to ease re-entry into society.

The department, as part of extending the reach of arts access, is seeking to include children under the age of five, who live with their mothers in correctional facilities.

The department has devised the Social Cohesion Campaign that has cultural fluency as a central component. This is aimed at engendering a constructive socio-cultural dialogue to create a nation that embraces cultural diversity and fosters a unifying South African identity.

Cultural tourism

Cultural tourism is one of the most rapidly growing sectors of the multibillion-Rand international tourism industry, and is an area in which South Africa is well placed to compete. Professional and innovative museums, galleries and theatres are key attractions for cultural tourists.

Cultural villages

Most tourists visiting South Africa are eager to explore the country's cultural diversity. At the same time, an increasing number of local tourists want to learn more about the people they were separated from under apartheid. (See Chapter 20: *Tourism*)

Various projects around the country offer insight into South Africa's cultural wealth, ranging from traditional dances and rituals in rural areas, to excursions into the urban and township milieux that give South Africa its defining features. These include Khaya Lendaba near Port Elizabeth; the Basotho Cultural Village situated in the QwaQwa Nature Reserve near Harrismith, Free State; the Makhosini Cultural Village and Tourism Initiative in the Valley of Kings at Umgungundlovu in KwaZulu-Natal; the Lesedi Cultural Village near Johannesburg; Tlholego in Magaliesburg; the KoMjekejeke Cultural Village, north of Pretoria; the Mapoch Ndebele Village in Winterveld, north-west of Pretoria; the Gaabo Motho Cultural Village in Mabopane; the Rainbow Cultural Village, west of the Hartbeespoort Dam, North West; Botshabelo in Middelburg, Mpumalanga; and Shangana in Hazzyview, Mpumalanga.

Cultural industries

The Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA) has identified creative industries as one of the key areas in which South Africa can achieve the goals of job creation and greater economic growth in South Africa.

The Cultural Industries Growth Strategy capitalises on the economic potential of the craft, music, film, publishing and design industries. The Department of Arts and Culture provides support in the form of financing, management capacity, advocacy and networking, and by developing public-private partnerships and other initiatives that use culture as a tool for urban regeneration.

South Africa's entertainment industry is valued at about R7,4 billion. According to the *Create South Africa Report*, the industry employs an estimated 20 525 people. Film and television alone are worth R5,8 billion and have a strong technical base of skills and infrastructure. More than 100 000 people are employed within the music, film and television industry. A further 1,2 million people earn their living through crafts and related trade sectors.

Worldwide, the turnover of cultural industries makes this the fifth-largest economic sector, which comprises design, the performing arts, dance, film, television, multimedia, cultural heritage, cultural tourism, visual arts, crafts, music and publishing.

The Department of Arts and Culture entered into partnership with significant stakeholders in 2007 to map the cultural industries.

A comprehensive cultural audit, an analysis thereof and a report were expected to be completed by March 2008.

By June 2007, a fully functional national representative body as a one-stop service facility for South African crafters, which can also provide a networking forum, was being established.

The renowned *Beautiful Things Craft Supermarket* with South Africa's first lady, Ms Zanele Mbeki as patron, was launched as an annual event in 2006 to showcase South African crafts.

Plans are under way to establish a crafts emporium to increase market access. A nationally recognised award for master crafters and a skills-transfer programme by these crafters will help preserve indigenous knowledge and traditional methods and techniques of production.

By mid-2007, the Department of Arts and Culture was working with the Department of Communications on the Information Society and Development Strategy. The department seeks to leverage information communications technology (ICT) for the development of South Africa's creative industries.

International relations

The Department of Arts and Culture's participation in various activities in the international cultural arena helps to identify, promote and exploit mutually beneficial partnerships for social and economic development in South Africa.

Together with the African Union and the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad), South Africa has embarked on the road to restoring, preserving and protecting African heritage.

In 2006/07, the department supported almost 400 South African artists and cultural practitioners to showcase their talent abroad and forge closer links with counterparts around the world.

The department's mandate is to ensure that South African talent takes its rightful place on the global stage and to use artistry as a tool for economic self-liberation. Bilateral agreements have been signed with France, the United Kingdom (UK), China, Cuba, India, New Zealand and Belarus.

South Africa ratified the Convention on the Promotion and Protection of Cultural Diversity Convention in 2006, becoming the 35th member country to do so.

During 2007/08, the department was expected to ratify a number of international treaties, including the:

- United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation's Convention for the Safeguarding of the Intangible Cultural Heritage
- Underwater Cultural Heritage Convention.

The ratification of these conventions will enhance the country's capacity to safeguard and promote its heritage. The department believes this can contribute to social cohesion and building a South African national identity.

In 2007, South Africa hosted the conference of the Southern African Development Community National Arts Councils and launched the Commonwealth Foundation.

Arts festivals

In 2006, the Department of Arts and Culture provided financial support to 29 arts and culture festivals. The range of arts festivals around South Africa offers visitors the opportunity to combine

their pursuit of culture with sightseeing, wine tasting, beach visits, wildlife viewing, history, palaeo-anthropology and relaxing in some of South Africa's most beautiful spots.

The National Arts Festival, held annually in July in Grahamstown, Eastern Cape, is one of the largest and most diverse arts gatherings of its kind staged in Africa, rating favourably against similar international festivals. It showcases southern African talent in all arts disciplines. There is also growing interest and participation from artists in other African countries and the rest of the world.

The Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees is a vibrant festival for the performing arts, presented mainly, but not exclusively, in Afrikaans. It is held annually in Oudtshoorn in the first quarter of the year. Disciplines include drama, cabaret and contemporary and classical music.

The Arts Alive International Festival, held in Johannesburg, is an annual festival of music, dance, theatre and performance-poetry.

Heritage-reclamation festivals are also emerging at local level in communities destroyed by apartheid, such as Vrededorp (Fietas) in Johannesburg.

The Mangaung Cultural Festival (Macufe) is gaining status as one of the biggest cultural tourism events in southern Africa.

Aardklop, held annually in Potchefstroom, North West, is inherently Afrikaans, but universal in character. The festival provides a platform for the creativity and talent of local artists.



The Department of Arts and Culture hosted the prestigious United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation's Memory of the World (MoW) meeting in Pretoria from 11 to 15 June 2007.

The MoW Programme assists in looking after and publicising historic documentary heritage throughout the world. The programme's international register lists documentary heritage that is correctly preserved by different heritage institutions in the world.

Two South African collections had already been registered in this programme:

- the Bleek Collection of rare material relating to the history of the Khoisan people
- the VOC collection of early Dutch material, which is a joint registration with the Netherlands, Indonesia and other countries.

After the meeting, two other South African collections were added to the MoW Register:

- the Rivonia Trial Collection, which is preserved by the National Archives
- the Liberation Struggle Living Archive, which is preserved by Doxa Productions in Cape Town.

Other festivals that attract visitors at both national and international level are the Joy of Jazz International Festival; Oppikoppi; Calabash; the One City Festival in Taung, North West; the Awesome Africa Music Festival in Durban; the Spier Summer Festival at Spier Estate in the Western Cape; and the Windybrow Theatre Festival in Johannesburg.

The Department of Arts and Culture and the NAC support numerous festivals throughout South Africa, including the Cape Town International Jazz Festival, Port St Johns Festival, Splashy Fen Music Festival in Durban and the National Arts Festival in Grahamstown.

The departments of arts and culture and of environmental affairs and tourism have established a forum of festival directors to maximise tourism opportunities.

Theatre

The theatre scene in South Africa is vibrant, with many active spaces across the country offering everything from indigenous drama, music, dance, cabaret and satire, to West End and Broadway hits, classical music, opera and ballet.

South African theatre is internationally acclaimed as unique and top-class.

Apart from early productions, notably the ground-breaking musical *King Kong* in the 1960s, theatre created in South Africa by South Africans only began to make an impact with the advent of Johannesburg's innovative Market Theatre in the mid-1970s, just as the cultural, sporting and academic boycott was taking hold.

The Market Theatre was formally opened on 21 June 1976. It was there that Johannesburg theatregoers were introduced to the work of most of South Africa's leading playwrights and directors, including Welcome Msomi, Zanemvula (Zakes) Mda, Pieter-Dirk Uys, Gibson Kente, Paul Slabolepszy, Mbongeni Ngema, Adam Small, PG du Plessis, Kessie Govender, Bartho Smit, Maishe Maponya, Percy Mtwa, Deon Opperman, Reza de Wet, Matsemela Manaka and many others.

It was to the Market Theatre that Athol Fugard brought his *A Lesson from Aloes*, *Master Harold ... and the Boys*, *The Road to Mecca*, *A Place with the Pigs*, *My Children! My Africa!* and *Playland*. At the

Market, Barney Simon and his actors developed in workshop *Cincinatti – Scenes from City Life*, *Call Me Woman*, *Black Dog Inj'emnyana*, *Outers*, *Born in the RSA* and *Woza Albert!*

The performing arts marketed South Africa to overseas audiences most effectively during the 1980s, specifically through theatre and musical productions.

Music

South African music is characterised by its fusion of diverse musical forms. South Africa has nurtured the development of an array of distinctive styles of music, and it has contributed significantly to music heard on the continent.

These styles range from South African jazz, which describes a range of music from early marabi-inspired sounds in the late 1930s and 1940s by bands like the Merry Blackbirds Orchestra, to current performers such as trumpeter Hugh Masekela, Jonas Gwangwa, Abdullah Ibrahim, Jimmy Dludlu, Judith Sephuma and others.

Kwaito and hip-hop are very popular. They combine elements of rap, reggae, and other musical styles into a distinctly South African style. Popular kwaito musicians include Arthur Mafokate, Mzekezeke, Bongo Maffin, Zola, Skwatta Kamp, Mandoza and Mdu.

Music is one of the key cultural industries identified in the *Cultural Industrial Growth Strategy Report*, and government has committed itself to harnessing its potential. In addition to its cultural value, music plays an important economic role in the country, generating significant copyright revenue. In music, the department has solid foundations to build on. These include the annual South African Music Week, the in-school education programme run in conjunction with the Department of Education, and the Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition.

Launched in 2004, Moshito is a private-public partnership that produces an annual music industry trade show comprising a conference, an exhibition, the sale of music products and services, and music-business seminars. The Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition is a section 21 company that helps newcomers to the music industry gain an understanding of how it operates.

Midem 2007

The international music market, Midem, which is held annually in France, took place in January 2007. Every year, the global music industry's key players converge at Cannes to conduct deals, network, learn about the sector's future through best practices, and witness first-hand the new talent on tap. Midem also offers high-level conferences, cutting-edge concerts and events, and many business services. South Africa was the first African country to exhibit at Midem. In 2005, the Department of Arts and Culture elevated the profile of the domestic music industry internationally by hosting the first-ever South African Pavilion at Midem, together with the Moshito Conference and Exhibition.

In 2007, it was attended by more than 60 South African delegates.

South African Music Week

The South African Music Week is an annual project that celebrates South African music on radio, television and through live events in the community. The project is considered the largest platform for developing South Africa's live and recording music industry through broadcasting, workshops, awareness and promoting local music products.

During the music week, many broadcasters increase airplay of South African music, providing



The Lion King, the musical, has been seen by more than 52 million people across the globe.

Bringing the show to South Africa had been the dream of composer, singer, Grammy and South Africa Music Award winner, Lebo M, who performed and composed songs in the first production on Broadway in 1997.

A 1 900-seat theatre was specially constructed at Monte Casino, Johannesburg, to accommodate the enormity of the show.

The Lion King opened in June 2007 with an entirely local cast of 53 and a 20-member orchestra backed by a technical crew of 40.

Due to its popularity, the show was extended to February 2008.

artists with a platform to market their products and providing income in the form of royalties to copyright owners.

The 2006 South African Music Week was characterised by a number of workshops, which were held in Polokwane, Cape Town, Durban, Nelspruit and Bloemfontein. South African Music Week 2006 was staged during Heritage Month, as part of the 2006 Heritage Month theme *Celebrating our Music, our Heritage*.

Blank-tape levy

The Music Industry Task Team has recommended the implementation of a blank-tape levy to curb piracy.

Through this system, a levy is charged on blank recording carriers, and in some cases also on recording equipment. The principles on which these levies have been established and the levels at which they have been set, have often been ambiguous. In most countries, the legislation on blank levy includes a provision that a proportion of the money collected should be used for collective cultural purposes.

By mid-2007, the Department of Arts and Culture was conducting research and feasibility studies on issues pertaining to a blank-tape levy for the South African music industry.

South African Electronic Music Conference 2006

Electronic music is one of the strategic platforms for the growth of the local music industry. The sector has shown its strength in appealing to the youth market in terms of music sales.

Nonetheless, the sector has, to a certain extent, received less attention from the mainstream developmental agenda. In the past years, development of the sector was left to the mercy of



Some of the winners of the 2006 Naledi Theatre Awards, held in February 2007, included:

Best Performance by a Newcomer/Breakthrough (Female) – Nqobile Sipamla: *The Suitcase*

Best Performance by a Newcomer/Breakthrough (Male) – Tshediso Lawrence Mofali

Best Community Theatre Award – *Echoes*
Reflections Theatre Festival – Community Theatre – *When the Bell Rings*

Best Comedy Performance (Play, Musical or Revue) – Sylvaine Strike (female winner): *Coupé*

Best Comedy Performance (Play, Musical or Revue) – Gerard Bester (male winner): *Coupé*

Best Musical Director/Score/Arrangement – Taliep Petersen: *Ghoema*

Best Performance in a Musical (Female) – Angela Killian: *My Fair Lady*

Best Performance in a Musical (Male) – Lindani Nkosi: *Ain't Misbehavin'*

Best Performance by an Actress in a Lead Role (Play) – Kate Normington: *Bombshells*

Best Performance by an Actor in a Lead Role (Play) – Siyabonga Twala: *The Suitcase*

Best Director of a Play or Musical – James Ngcobo: *The Suitcase*.

aspiring individual disc jockeys (DJs) and producers.

However, in 2006, the Department of Arts and Culture, for the first time, entered into a partnership with DJs Unite. DJs Unite is a body formed by individual DJs and music-industry practitioners to assist aspiring practitioners through skills development.

The partnership significantly strengthened the South African Electronic Music Conference by increasing the scale at which the project was pitched, allowing many aspiring music producers to be accommodated. The conference was held in April 2006 in Newtown, Johannesburg.

The department's support for the industry stems from the belief that nurturing and protecting local artistic talent should be done in partnership with institutional development.

The Association of Independent Recording Companies of South Africa is one of the institutions that was developed through the department's leadership, with the idea that, together with other stakeholders, it will drive the efforts to break the existing monopoly and ensure increased market shares for local companies.

South African Music Awards (Samas)

The 13th annual Sama ceremony took place in April 2007. Categories and winners included:

- Best Female Artist: Simphiwe Dana – *The One Love Movement on Bantu Biko Street*
- Best Male Artist: Vusi Mahlasela – *Naledi Ya Tsela*
- Best Duo/Group: Mafikizolo – *Six Mabone*
- Best Newcomer: Siphokazi – *Ubuntu Bam*
- Album of the Year: Simphiwe Dana – *The One Love Movement on Bantu Biko Street*
- Song of the Year: DJ Sbu – *Remember when it Rained.*

Indigenous music

The department funds the annual National Traditional Dance and Music Festival, called Zindala Zombili, under the auspices of the African Cultural Heritage Trust. This platform showcases and promotes the rich and diverse indigenous traditional dance and music of South Africa.

The festival entails 22 regional and eight provincial competitions, culminating in a national festival.

Dance

South African dance is unique in its vitality and energy. More and more South African dance companies, individual dancers and choreographers are being invited to perform at festivals throughout Europe, Australia and the United States of America (USA).

Contemporary work ranges from normal preconceptions of movement and performance art or performance theatre, to the completely unconventional.

Added to this is the African experience, which includes traditional dance inspired by wedding ceremonies, battles, rituals and the trifles of everyday life.

An informal but highly versatile performance venue in Johannesburg, The Dance Factory, provides a permanent platform for a variety of dance and movement groups.

The Wits Theatre (part of the University of the Witwatersrand) is also a popular dance venue. It is home to the annual First National Bank Dance Umbrella.

In 2007, the Dance Umbrella celebrated 19 years of presenting new contemporary choreography and dance in Johannesburg. Featuring choreographers and companies from all over South Africa, this multidisciplinary festival, which presents work ranging from community-based/youth groups, young up-and-coming choreographers and new commissioned work from South African artists to international companies, has been the main



In February 2007, South Africa's Soweto Gospel Choir won a Grammy Award in the category Best Traditional World Music for their album *Blessed*.

The Grammy Awards ceremony took place at the Staples Centre in Los Angeles, United States of America (USA).

Since its formation in 2002, the Soweto Gospel Choir has performed in Australia, New Zealand, the United Kingdom, the USA, Europe and Singapore. The 26-member group mixes earthy rhythms with rich harmonies to express the energy of South Africa.

Accompanied by a four-piece band and percussion section, the choir gives its own unique interpretation to both traditional and contemporary music, performing in six of South Africa's 11 official languages.

“stepping stone” for many South African choreographers who now work internationally. These include people such as Vincent Mantsoe, Robyn Orlin, Boyzie Cekwana and Gregory Maqoma.

The Cape Town City Ballet, started in 1934 as the University of Cape Town Ballet Company, is the oldest ballet company in the country.

The largest ballet company is the South African Ballet Theatre, situated in Johannesburg.

Visual arts

Art galleries in South Africa's major cities, such as the Durban Art Gallery in KwaZulu-Natal; the Johannesburg Art Gallery in Gauteng; the South African National Gallery in Cape Town; and the Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Art Museum in Port Elizabeth in the Eastern Cape display collections of indigenous, historical and contemporary works.

Universities also play an important role in acquiring artwork of national interest. These include collections housed in the Gertrude Posel Gallery of the University of the Witwatersrand, the University of South Africa (Unisa) Gallery in Pretoria, the Edoardo Villa Museum and other galleries at the University of Pretoria, and a collection of contemporary Indian art at the University of Durban-Westville. Corporate collections of national interest include those of Standard Bank, Amalgamated Banks of South Africa (Absa) and the MTN cellular phone network.

The Department of Arts and Culture supports a number of projects that promote the visual arts. These range from arts publications and women-empowerment programmes to national and international exhibitions and infrastructure funding.

The Department of Arts and Culture's art collection has been restored and the works are displayed in the building occupied by the department.

The department funded the Cape Africa initiative that included a conference on contemporary art in Africa and the diaspora and an exhibition. Trans Cape was the first in a series of large-scale arts events organised by the Cape Africa Platform. The exhibition brought some of the most innovative and challenging contemporary African art to Cape Town. Exhibitions were held in over 20 venues and sites.

The department funded the exhibition *In the Name of all Humanity – The African Spiritual Expression of Ernest Mancoba* at the Gold Museum in Cape Town. Apart from the exhibition, an artists' workshop was held involving South African artists and those from Greenland. A catalogue of the exhibition was published.

The department, the South African Police Service, Sahra and Interpol worked together on an information session on stolen cultural property that was held in September 2006 at the University of Pretoria. A live satellite link with the Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI) in Washington DC gave session goers an opportunity to interact with officials from the FBI.

A poster designed and printed by the department was launched with the images of six stolen South African art works in protection of South Africa's heritage.

The very first-ever auction devoted exclusively to South African visual art was held in 2007 at Bonhams, in London, and raised approximately R20 million.

It comprised paintings by Irma Stern, Gerard Sekoto, Alexis Preller and Jacob Hendrik Pierneef, and all were sold well above their reserve prices.

At an earlier auction at Bonhams, paintings by Sekoto fetched a record price – among them were nine watercolours depicting scenes inspired by the Sharpeville Massacre of 1960, a watershed moment in the South African liberation struggle, which is now annually commemorated as Human Rights Day.

The Department of Arts and Culture acquired *Recollections of Sharpeville* and *The Round Up* – another watercolour – by Sekoto on behalf of the nation. They are on permanent loan to the South African National Gallery.

Photography

With its scenic beauty, abundant wildlife, diversity of cultures and rich historical heritage, South Africa is a photographers' paradise. Many South African photographers have been acclaimed for their work, which features in coffee-table books,



In February 2007, the Department of Arts and Culture held a '60s music awards ceremony.

In an effort to promote the practice of preserving film, video and sound material, the department started a project to honour musicians from different eras. The project began in 2005 and aims to educate all South Africans about the value of archives, and to instil a sense of pride in collective history.

The 2007 ceremony was part of the 50th anniversary of the women's anti-pass march to the Union Buildings. The department recognised some 50 female musicians of the 1960s for their contribution to the music industry and the development of South Africa. Some of the musicians honoured included Conny Mhlongo, Elizabeth Mdlalose, Emily Zwane, Gladys Setai, Bertha Egnos and Lindi Khumalo.

documentaries, local and overseas exhibitions, magazines and newspapers.

National and international photographic exhibitions and competitions are held in South Africa annually, and various national awards are bestowed on local photographers. South Africa is especially known for its excellent wildlife photography. The Agfa Wildlife and Environment Photographic Awards, presented for the first time in 1981, have become one of Africa's most prestigious wildlife photographic competitions, attracting entries from top wildlife photographers, not only from Africa, but across the world.

Architecture

South Africa has a rich architectural heritage to which all the cultural groups in the country have contributed. Through the centuries, a trend in South Africa's architectural style has developed, which has been referred to as an innovative marrying of traditions.

Today, this is evident in the variety of architectural structures found all over the country, ranging from humble dwellings, historical homesteads and public buildings, to modern commercial buildings reflecting state-of-the-art technology and designs that match the best in the world. Schools of architecture exist within various South African universities.



The *Africa Remix* exhibition was held in Johannesburg from June to August 2007.

Featuring 137 artworks and more than 85 artists from 25 countries on the African continent and the diaspora, the Johannesburg Art Gallery came alive with paintings, sculptures, installations, videos, drawings, photography and design, produced by artists over the past 10 years.

Never before in history had an exhibition of such magnitude, focusing exclusively on Africa, been shown to African audiences.

It was first exhibited in 2004 at the *Museum Kunst Palast* in Germany, and was considered to be the largest exhibition of contemporary African art ever seen in Europe. From there it toured to the Hayward Gallery in London, the *Centre Pompidou* in Paris, the Mori Art Museum in Tokyo and the *Moderna Museet* in Stockholm.

Sahra conserves buildings of historical or architectural value. More than 4 000 buildings, sites and other objects (including trees) have been declared national monuments. Heritage South Africa is a non-profit private organisation that conserves South Africa's variety of architectural gems.

Rock art

There are many traces of ancient cultures that existed in the country in the distant past. Experts estimate that there are 250 000 rock-art sites south of the Zambezi.

The San people left a priceless and unique collection of Stone Age paintings and engravings in South Africa, which is also the largest of its type in the world. The mountains, especially the Drakensberg range and those in the Cape, are home to fascinating rock-art panels.

Rock engravings are scattered on flat rock surfaces and boulders throughout the interior. The artworks depict mainly hunter-gatherers and their relationship with the animal world and historical events, as well as interaction with and observation of newcomers encroaching upon their living space. Indigenous people with spears and Nguni cattle, Khoikhoi fat-tailed sheep, European settlers on horseback with rifles and wagons, and ships and soldiers in uniform were captured in surprising detail.

Immortalised visions of the artists' spiritual world are found on the sandstone canvases. These depict complex symbols and metaphors to illustrate the supernatural powers and potency they received from nature.

The oldest dated rock art in South Africa, an engraved stone, was discovered in a living floor some 10 200 years old at the Wonderwerk Cave near Kuruman in the Northern Cape.

The oldest painted stones (6 400 years) were recovered at Boomplaas Cave in the Congo Valley near Oudtshoorn.

Three painted stones were also found at the Klasies River caves, which yielded the second-oldest painted stone, dating back 3 900 years.

The Department of Arts and Culture supports a number of projects, including a rock heritage project in Clanwilliam in the Western Cape.

Crafts

It is estimated that the crafts industry in South Africa employs over 1,2 million people and generates an income of R3,5 billion a year. The crafts they produce are exported all over the world.

The mandate for activities and programmes undertaken by government in the development of the craft sector, is derived primarily from the *White Paper on Arts, Culture and Heritage* and the Cultural Industries Growth Strategy.

The development of South Africa's crafts industry is an ongoing priority for government, through the Department of Arts and Culture. Numerous stakeholders are involved in various initiatives to develop this sector. The development policy focuses on addressing the co-ordination of the sector; preserving indigenous knowledge systems; acknowledging living treasures; product development and training; skills development; market access; and access to information, raw material and funding.

The National Crafts Development Initiative, spearheaded by the NAC and supported by several national bodies, provides a platform for developing the local market by staging craft fairs at various levels.

As a joint venture with the Department of Trade and Industry, the Department of Arts and Culture is developing a craft marketing strategy to enhance export opportunities to curb the exploitation of crafters.

Examples of successful craft projects include the rural development projects in Limpopo, where the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR) linked up with various rural craft projects to develop new products. In Thohoyandou, in Limpopo, the Ifa Textile Project is producing

fashionable handbags in traditional Venda designs. Crafters of the Lubombo Spatial Development Initiative in northern KwaZulu-Natal have incorporated minimal interventions in their designs to produce butter dishes, thus creating new marketing opportunities.

The department has craft projects in all nine provinces. The products of these and other projects can be viewed at a number of venues, including two state-assisted outlets at the Bus Factory in Newtown, Johannesburg, and the Boardwalk in Port Elizabeth.

Design

The Department of Arts and Culture has launched a number of initiatives aimed at creating centres of expertise. These have promoted collaborative ventures between the private and public sectors in areas of product design and the use of computer-aided design (CAD) engineering. The initiatives involve:

- A partnership with the South African Fashion Week on developmental initiatives to address the Second Economy.
- Established designers facilitating workshops in an effort to unearth new talent and fuse design with craft.
- The National Product Development Centre at the CSIR, which operates within a national framework, optimising the contributions of service-providers throughout the country in the area of design technology.
- The CAD initiative at the CSIR, which is linked to the technology station at the Free State University of Technology and similar institutions in KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.
- The Cape Craft and Design Institute.
- The awarding of design learnerships through Create SA to help emerging designers.
- The annual Design Indaba Conference and Expo held in Cape Town in February. The indaba is regarded as one of the premier design events in the world. The expo is a gallery, a marketplace, a school and a theatre featuring the finest original South African design, covering everything from homeware and jewellery to architecture, fashion, film, multimedia and graphic design. The department, as part of its support for the Design Indaba, enables the participation of people with disabilities.

The Department of Arts and Culture was also involved in:

- establishing design dialogue (discussion forums on design)



Lost works by artists living in South Africa's strife-torn townships in the 1970s and 1980s are returning home.

Many of the works, chronicling the turbulence of the final two decades of apartheid and unappreciated in their own country, were bought by diplomats and others visiting South Africa.

They found their way into boardrooms and private collections in the United States of America, the United Kingdom, Australia, Canada and elsewhere.

Ifa Lethu – the Homecoming Foundation – is working to bring the artwork back to South Africa. Headed by Dr Mamphela Ramphele, chair of Circle Capital Ventures and former managing director of the World Bank, Ifa Lethu already has a substantial collection of township art.

This collection is set to grow after the BHP Billiton Development Trust handed over a R1-million contribution to the foundation.



Dungamanzi/Stirring Waters, an exhibition of Tsonga and Shangaan artwork produced and collected by the Makhubele family, was displayed at the Johannesburg Art Gallery in May 2007.

This ground-breaking show was the first exhibition to celebrate Tsonga and Shangaan art and included some of South Africa's finest heritage objects.

- designing development fusion workshops to address the Second Economy
- a process to develop a policy for the design sector that includes an audit of the sector needs analysis and database collation
- the third annual Arts and Culture Design Seminar at the Fashion Week
- partnering with the Design Indaba on the developmental aspect of the 10th International Design Indaba conference, to provide opportunities and open up markets for young rural and developing designers
- continued support of the Mzansi Designers Incubator, as a programme to address skills development and job creation for young new designers.

Literature

South Africa has a vibrant and rich oral tradition. This form of expression goes back many centuries and has been passed down from generation to generation as an important way of sharing advice, remembering history, telling stories and reflecting on contemporary society.

Gross turnover in the publishing sector totals about R3 billion a year.

The African Languages Literary Museum at Unisa caters for all indigenous languages. Featured authors include Maja Serudu, EM Ramaila, OK Matsepe and Semakaleng Monyaise. The museum also features books, manuscripts, old typewriters used by certain African writers, antiques and authors' portraits.

There is an English literary museum in Grahamstown and an Afrikaans museum in Bloemfontein. The Centre for African Literary Studies at the University of KwaZulu-Natal, is home to the Bernth Lindfors collection of African

literature. The centre is committed to preserving and adding to the collection to maintain the largest library of African literature on the continent.

The Department of Arts and Culture supported the 2006 Time of the Writer and Poetry Africa literary festivals. A Johannesburg leg of Poetry Africa was introduced, with a massive turnout of over 800 people.

The department is developing the National Book Policy. The first draft was circulated among over 800 stakeholders before it was submitted to the department in December 2005.

The department also commissioned the Print Industries Cluster Council (PICC) to conduct a national survey on the reading habits of adult South Africans, to inform all activities across the book value chain.

The department commissioned research on the cost of books, outlining the factors contributing to this cost, with recommendations across the value chain.

The department transformed the PICC into a national representative body reflective of the South African society and in line with the principles of Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE). On 17 June 2007, the Minister of Arts and Culture, Dr Pallo Jordan, launched the South African Book Development Council, which will include all role-players across the book value chain.

The department has launched the Indigenous Literature Publishing Project, aimed at producing a series of publications in different languages by writers from different backgrounds across South Africa.

This is done to stimulate the growth and development of literature in indigenous languages and generate new readerships.



In 2007, Dylan Lewis became the first contemporary South African artist to have a solo exhibition of his work auctioned at Christie's in London, United Kingdom. Before, Christie's had always grouped South African artists together.

Lewis' animal bronzes are sought after worldwide. The exhibition included a life-size black rhino and a cheetah, and all of the 75 artworks were sold.

Film

At the dawn of the 20th century, South Africa was the site of the earliest films ever shot. The Anglo-Boer/South African War of 1899 to 1902 was the first-ever war to be filmed.

The South African film industry, which is based mainly in Cape Town and Johannesburg, generates some R518 million a year. The industry has a strong skills base, boasting more than 1 000 registered producers. Outstanding production and post-production facilities are also in place. The cost of film production in South Africa is 30% to 40% lower than in the USA, and 20% lower than in Australia.

The NFVF was established to develop and promote the film and video industry in South Africa. It provides for and encourages the creation of opportunities for people from disadvantaged communities to participate in the industry. The foundation also promotes local film and video products, supports the development of and access to the industry and addresses historical imbalances in infrastructure skills and resources in the industry.

In 2006, the foundation disbursed grants to the value of R20,5 million for developing and producing feature films, short films, television series, documentaries and animation projects, as well as to support 75 bursary students. The grants also ensured a South African presence at major local and international film markets, festivals and exhibitions. By March 2007, grants awarded amounted to R26 million.

Developing and producing local content in genres with wide appeal is a high priority for the foundation. This will be achieved by:

- establishing the South African Film Portfolio
- supporting script development and producing specific genre films that reflect and develop a South African aesthetic
- supporting development of the local market
- supporting co-production projects.

Research has begun on a national strategy for film education and training, and to develop sector-information systems to measure sector performance and the related economic and job-multiplier effects. The industry received a major boost with the launch of the Film and Television Production Rebate by the Department of Trade and Industry in June 2004.

The rebate complements existing support measures. It provides for the production of both foreign and local large-budget films made in South Africa or under co-production agreements.

For a company to be eligible for the rebate, it must be a South African resident company, or a

non-South African resident company with a South African business registration that operates with a permanent establishment in the country.

A number of large South African media companies have acquired production companies to increase their capabilities in the media and entertainment sector. The increase in the number of television channels available to South African viewers has resulted in an increased demand for local programming, due to local-content quotas. In South Africa, locally produced television productions are extremely popular.

South African broadcasters are exploring opportunities to distribute local productions in the rest of Africa through direct sales and a form of bartering, where content is exchanged for advertising airtime. This is expected to increase the demand for locally produced television content.

The three largest film distributors in South Africa are Ster-Kinekor, United International Pictures and Nu-Metro. Ster-Kinekor has a specialised art circuit called Cinema Nouveau with theatres in Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban and Pretoria.

Film festivals include the Sithengi Film and Video Festival and Market in Cape Town; the Durban Film Festival; the North West Film Festival; the Apollo Film Festival in Victoria West; the Three Continents Film Festival (specialising in African, South American and Asian films); the Soweto Film Festival; and the Encounters Documentary Festival, which alternates between Cape Town and Johannesburg.



The Cape Town Book Fair (CTBF) 2007, held from 16 to 19 June 2007, was a huge cultural event for the general public, with more than 300 activities taking place, including readings, book launches, panel discussions and seminars.

Attendance figures at the CTBF 2007 were close to double those of the inaugural event in 2006. Over 49 000 visitors attended the four-day fair at the Cape Town International Convention Centre (CTICC). This figure didn't include the many thousands of children who also attended the event, which was one of the largest ever to be held at the CTICC. In 2006, 26 000 visitors attended the fair.

Over 260 journalists, including an international contingent, covered the event. More than 200 authors and 354 exhibitors participated in the fair, with representatives from countries such as the United States of America, Ghana, Germany, India, China and France. Directors from the Beijing and Frankfurt book fairs were in attendance, as well as the heads of the British and Caribbean publishers' associations.

Pavilions at the 2007 event included a magical kids zone and a comics section, aimed at comic lovers of all ages. One of the highlights of the 2007 fair was the focus on book collections.

In 2006/07, the Department of Arts and Culture:

- hosted the African Film Summit that brought film representatives together from all over the continent as a contribution to the Nepad Cultural Industries Programme
- participated in key festivals and markets in promoting the South African film industry, with a continued partnership in Sithengi, support for Cannes and other important international festivals and markets
- commenced a study to investigate the feasibility of establishing film schools
- partnered with a film-incubator programme towards film training and skills development
- developed a programme for collaboration with the National Archives regarding the Legal Deposit Act, 1997 (Act 54 of 1997)
- collaborated with the Newtown Film and TV School on the Indigenous Language Screen-writing Project "Script to Screen in your Mother Tongue"
- collaborated with the Department of Communications' National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa (Nemisa) on the Animation Project to produce new South African animation.

Film and Publication Board (FPB)

The FPB was established by the Film and Publications Act, 1996 (Act 65 of 1996), to:

- regulate the creation, production, possession and distribution of certain publications and certain films by means of classification, the imposition of age restrictions and giving consumer advice
- make punishable the exploitive use of children in pornographic publications, films or on the Internet.

The FPB assists the public to make informed choices about whether a particular film is appropriate by displaying guidelines, which identify classifiable elements such as strong language, violence, sex, nudity, drug abuse, blasphemy and religious prejudice.

The board also alerts the public, through age restrictions and consumer advice, about the frequency and intensity of these classifiable elements in a particular film.

Any person who distributes or exhibits a film or interactive computer games in South Africa must

first register with the board as a distributor or exhibitor of films or interactive games. Any film intended for distribution or exhibition must first be submitted to the board for classification in terms of the Film and Publications Act, 1996. To monitor distributors on-site and to ensure that films are distributed in compliance with the provisions of the Act, the board has appointed compliance monitors. They advise distributors and exhibitors of films and interactive games of the Act's requirements and ensure that all products display the classification reference number, age restriction, consumer advice and such other conditions as may have been imposed by the board. In 2006/07, the board classified 6 848 films and interactive games, compared with 4 829 in the previous financial year.



In 2007, the Centre for the Book, in collaboration with the Cape Town International Book Fair, compiled a list of 30 great books written by South Africans:

- *A Change of Tongue* – Antjie Krog
- *African Salad* – Tamsen de Beer and Stan Engelbrecht
- *Agat* – Marlene van Niekerk
- *Coldsleep Lullaby* – Andrew Brown
- *Confessions of a Gambler* – Rayda Jacobs
- *Die Aandag van jou Oë: Gedigte vir die Liefde* – Petra Muller
- *Disgrace* – JM Coetzee
- *Dog Eat Dog* – Niq Mhlongo
- *Green-Eyed Thieves* – Imraan Coovadia
- *I Remember King Kong (The Boxer)* – Denis Hirson
- *Jamela's Dress* – Nicky Daly
- *Karoo Boy* – Troy Blacklaws
- *Orion* – Deon Meyer
- *People who have Stolen from Me* – David Cohen
- *Portrait with Keys* – Ivan Vladislavic
- *Seasonal Fires* – Ingrid de Kok
- *Shirley, Goodness and Mercy* – Chris van Wyk
- *Skyline* – Patricia Schonstein Pinnock
- *Some Afrikaners Revisited* – David Goldblatt
- *Song Trials* – Mxolisi Nyezwa
- *Spud* – John van de Ruit
- *The Abundant Herd* – Marguerite Poland and Leigh Voight
- *The Children's Day* – Michiel Heyns
- *The Good Cemetery Guide* – Consuelo Roland
- *The Native Commissioner* – Shaun Johnson
- *The Quiet Violence of Dreams* – K Sello Duiker
- *The Whale Caller* – Zakes Mda
- *Touch my Blood* – Fred Khumalo
- *Welcome to my Hillbrow* – Phaswane Mpe
- *The Zuma Code* – Zapiro.

The Film and Publications Act, 1996 recognises the right of adults to freedom of expression, except with respect to child pornography, and requires the board to intervene where there is a risk of harm to children.

Child pornography is defined as any image, however created, or any description of a person, real or simulated, who is depicted or described as being under the age of 18 years engaged in sexual conduct; participating in or assisting another person to participate in sexual conduct; and showing or describing the body, or parts of the body of such a person in a manner that amounts to sexual exploitation.

The board is running a national anti-child pornography campaign to educate learners of ways to avoid victimisation. The board launched school roadshows in July 2006 and by the end of March 2007, it had reached 50 523 learners.

The board has a toll-free number (0800 148 148) to report child-pornography websites. The board has content analysts who assist to track down child-pornography websites, and to identify online distributors of pornographic movies and publications. By May 2007, the board had referred 30 websites to the police for investigation.

The board has submitted the Film and Publications Bill to Parliament for amendments. The Bill seeks to:

- amend the composition, functions and powers of the board
- provide for appointments and powers of compliance officers
- provide for the composition, functions, powers and management of the classification office
- repeal certain schedules to the Act for more effective “implementation” of child-protection measures.

Ministerial Task Team on Child Pornography

The Ministerial Task Team on Child Pornography was established in December 2006.

The task team has forged strategic partnerships with mobile phone operators and Internet service-providers, the SABC and other government departments. It has assessed the work done by all these institutions to help in the fight against child pornography.

To assist the task, the FPB commissioned the Human Sciences Research Council to conduct research on the extent of child pornography in South Africa and on the capacity to deal with it in the form of laws, policies and institutions.

The results of the research were expected to further inform both the task team's programme of

action and the agenda for the Conference on Child Pornography planned for late in 2007.

Museums

Museums are the windows to the natural and cultural heritage of a country. South Africa can justifiably be called the museum country of Africa, with the earliest of its museums dating back to the first half of the 19th century.

Today, more than 300 of the approximately 1 000 museums in Africa are situated in South Africa. They range from museums of geology, history, the biological sciences and the arts, to mining, agriculture, forestry and many other disciplines.

Most of the country's national museums are declared cultural institutions (national museums that have framework autonomy and are managed by their own councils), and fall under the overall jurisdiction of the Department of Arts and Culture. They receive an annual subsidy from the department, but are mostly autonomous.

In terms of the Cultural Institutions Act, 1998 (Act 119 of 1998), the declared museum institutions in Gauteng and Cape Town have been grouped together into two organisations known as flagship institutions. While the components of these two museum flagships (the museums from which they have been constituted) continue to operate as semi-independent museums regarding their core functions (collection, preservation, research and education), other functions, particularly administration, financing and human-resource management, have been centralised.

The following museums report to the Minister of Arts and Culture in terms of the Act:

- Northern Flagship Institution, Pretoria
- Iziko museums, Cape Town
- Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- National Museum, Bloemfontein
- Die Afrikaanse Taalmuseum, Paarl
- The National English Literary Museum, Grahamstown
- Voortrekker Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein
- Robben Island Museum, Cape Town



Ivan Vladislavic's novel, *Portrait with Keys*, was shortlisted for the prestigious Royal Society of Literature Ondaatje Prize. The R140 000-prize is awarded annually to “a book of the highest literary merit – fiction, non-fiction or poetry, best evoking the spirit of a place”.

- William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley
- Engelenburg House Art Collection, Pretoria
- Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha
- Luthuli Museum, KwaDukuza.

The Northern Flagship consists of the National Cultural History Museum (NCHM) and its former satellite museums (Kruger House, Tswaing Meteorite Crater, Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum, Pioneer Museum, Sammy Marks Museum and the Coert Steynberg Museum), the Transvaal Museum and the South African National Museum of Military History in Johannesburg.

The Iziko museums of Cape Town, formerly known as the Southern Flagship Institution, consist of the South African Museum, the South African Cultural History Museum and its satellite museums, the South African National Gallery, the William Fehr Collection and the Michaelis Collection.

In terms of the Cultural Institutions Act, 1998, the declared museums in other provinces continue to operate as before. These include the National Museum and the War Museum of the Boer Republics, the William Humphreys Art Gallery, the Natal Museum and the Voortrekker Museum, the National English Literacy Museum and the Afrikaanse Taalmuseum.

The Act also provides for the National Museums Division, comprising the CEOs and directors of the flagship museums and other declared museums.

The Robben Island Museum was established as a national monument and museum, and declared South Africa's first world heritage site in 1999. Guided tours are offered to historical sites on the island, including the cell in which former President Mandela was imprisoned. The Robben Island Museum has its own council and is a separate declared institution, independent of Iziko.

Apart from the declared museums that fall under the department, there are also a number of other national museums that are administered by central government departments or research councils. Notable examples are the Museum of the Council for Geoscience (Pretoria); the Theiler Veterinary Science Museum at Onderstepoort (Pretoria); the South African Air Force Museum at Air Force Base Zwartkop (Pretoria) with its satellites in Cape Town, Port Elizabeth and Durban; the museum of the Department of Correctional Services (Pretoria); and

the Porcinarium (the world's first pig museum) outside Pretoria on the Irene Campus of the Agricultural Research Council.

A number of museums fall directly or indirectly under the provincial government departments responsible for arts and culture. In some provinces, these museums render museum-support services at provincial level, while other provinces, notably Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal, Western Cape and the Free State, have separate museum-service organisations.

However, many museum and heritage services are also rendered by the declared national museums on a consultancy basis. Many municipalities also manage museums. Other museums fall under universities and university departments, or are owned and managed by private-sector companies, NGOs or individuals.

The largest museums are situated in Johannesburg, Pretoria, Cape Town, Durban, Pietermaritzburg and Bloemfontein. The best-known natural history collections in South Africa are housed in the Iziko museums and the Northern Flagship Institution, as well as in the following:

- Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- National Museum, Bloemfontein
- McGregor Museum, Kimberley
- East London Museum
- South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity, Grahamstown
- Port Elizabeth Museum
- Durban Museum of Natural History.

The best-known cultural-history collections are housed in the Iziko museums and the Northern Flagship Institution, and in the following:



Between July 2005 and December 2006, Cape Town's film industry attracted 120 investments worth over R52 million, injecting over R2,6 billion into the Western Cape economy.

According to the Cape Film Commission, film activity during 2005/06 included 2 100 photography shooting days and the production of 687 film and television commercials and 30 feature films. These included international movies such as *Blood Diamond* and *Goodbye Bafana*.

By March 2007, there were 150 production companies, 1 650 skilled supply companies and six world-class equipment rental companies operating in the province.

- National Museum, Bloemfontein
- Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg
- Durban Local History Museum
- Museum Africa, Johannesburg.

Art museums include the:

- South African National Gallery, Cape Town
- Johannesburg Art Gallery
- Pretoria Art Museum
- William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley.

The South African Cultural History Museum (Slave Lodge) in Cape Town houses the oldest cultural history collection in the country.

The South African Museum (Cape Town) showcases the natural history of South Africa, as well as relics of the early human inhabitants of the subcontinent. The huge Whale Hall houses possibly the most impressive of all its exhibitions. This is the only collection in South Africa with a planetarium attached to it.

The Transvaal Museum in Pretoria houses the skull of Mrs Ples, a 2,5 million-year-old hominid fossil, and depicts the origin and development of life in South Africa, from the most primitive unicellular form of life to the emergence of mammals and the first human beings. It has an impressive collection of early human fossils and houses some of the largest herpetological and ornithological collections in southern Africa.

The Tswaing Meteorite Crater, situated to the north-west of Pretoria, supports the presidential imperatives by combining a museum with a cultural-development initiative.

The NCHM (former African Window) in Pretoria is a centre for the preservation and promotion of the culture and heritage of all South Africans. It explores cultural diversity and commonalities, links the present and the past to offer a better understanding of both, and nurtures the living culture of all South Africans.

Mining is best represented by the De Beers Museum at the Big Hole in Kimberley, where visitors can view the biggest hole ever made by man with pick and shovel. It includes an open-air museum, which houses many buildings dating back to the era of the diamond diggings.

Another important mining museum is at Pilgrim's Rest, Mpumalanga, where the first economically viable goldfield was discovered. The entire village has been conserved and restored.

Agriculture in South Africa is depicted mainly at two museums. These are Kleinplasia in Worcester, Western Cape, which showcases the wine culture and the characteristic architecture of the winelands; and the Willem Prinsloo Agricultural

Museum between Pretoria and Bronkhorstspuit in Gauteng. This museum comprises two "house" museums, and runs educational programmes based on their extensive collection of early farming implements, vehicles of yesteryear and indigenous farm animals.

The Absa Museum and Archives in Johannesburg aims to preserve the banking group's more than 110 years of history. It also houses a unique and very valuable coin and banknote collection.

The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg offers a realistic view of the political situation in South Africa during the 1970s and 1980s. Exhibitions in the museum feature, among other things, audio-visual footage recorded during the apartheid era.

One of the most common types of museum in South Africa is the "house" museum. Examples include an entire village nucleus in Stellenbosch; an example of the lifestyle of the wealthy wine farmer in Groot Constantia in the Western Cape; the mansion of the millionaire industrialist Sammy Marks, outside Pretoria; the Victorian affluence mirrored in Melrose House, Pretoria; and the Kruger House Museum in Pretoria, the former residence of President Paul Kruger.

Simpler architectural variations have not been neglected, for instance the pioneer-dwelling in Silverton, Pretoria; and the humble farmhouse at Suikerbosrand near Heidelberg in Gauteng. There are several open-air museums that showcase the black cultures of the country, for example Tsongakraal near Letsitele, Limpopo; the Ndebele Museum in Middelburg, Mpumalanga; the Bakone Malapa Museum in Polokwane, Limpopo; and the South Sotho Museum in Witsieshoek, Free State.

South Africa has two national military history museums. The South African Museum for Military History in Johannesburg reflects the military history of the country, while the War Museum in Bloemfontein depicts the Anglo-Boer/South African War in particular. The famous battlefields of KwaZulu-Natal, the Northern Cape and North West are also worth a visit.



The annual World Library and Information Congress was held in Durban in August 2007.

This was only the second time that this, the main annual gathering of the world's librarians, was held in Africa and the first time it was held in South Africa.

The work of the War-Graves Division of Sahra includes the upkeep of graves of victims of the struggle for South Africa's liberation.

Archives and heraldry

Archives of governmental bodies are transferred to archive repositories after 20 years, and are accessible to the public and to the office of origin.

The National Archives functions in terms of the National Archives and Records Service of South Africa Act, 1996 (Act 43 of 1996).

The National Archives in Pretoria includes the National Film, Video and Sound Archives. Its primary functions are to obtain and preserve films, videotapes and sound recordings of archival value and to make these available for research and reference purposes.

The archives of central government are preserved in the National Archives' repository in Pretoria. Provincial archive repositories in Pretoria, Cape Town, Pietermaritzburg, Durban, Ulundi, Mthatha, Port Elizabeth and Bloemfontein house archives dating from before 1910, as well as the relevant provincial archives. Record centres for archives less than 20 years old exist in Pretoria, Bloemfontein and Cape Town.

The retrieval of information from archives is facilitated by the automated archival information system (www.national.archives.gov.za), which includes national registers of manuscripts, photographs and audio-visual material. The National Archives also renders a comprehensive record-management service for current records, aimed at promoting efficient administration.

The National Archives is responsible for collecting non-public records with enduring value of national significance. In so doing, it is obliged to pay special attention to aspects of the nation's experience neglected by archives of the past.

The Oral History Project seeks to build the National Archives' capacity to document the spoken word, and to develop a national oral history programme. The automated National Register of Oral Sources is an important element of the project.

The Act also provides government with a measure of control over private collections. Archives are taken to the people through co-ordinated national and provincial archive services.

At the same time, National Archives is responsible for ensuring effective, transparent and accountable management of all public records, as far as possible.

The Bureau of Heraldry is responsible for registering coats of arms; badges and other emblems such as flags, seals, medals and insignia of rank and offices of order; and registering names and uniforms (colours) of associations and organisations, such as universities.

Library and Information Services (LIS) sector

South African libraries have developed over a period of more than 150 years. The world's first free public library service was established here by Lord Charles Somerset in 1820, by levying a tax on the sale of wine. When he returned to England, tax reforms by the new governor spelt the end of the free library; but it formed the basis of what is today the National Library of South Africa (NLSA) in Cape Town.

By 1900, subscription libraries were operating in most towns and cities, financed by annual membership fees and, in most cases, grants from local authorities. An investigation in the 1930s by the Carnegie Corporation of New York found that most of these libraries were inadequate and poorly funded. The necessity for government support to ensure free public libraries was recognised.

By the 1950s, all four provinces of the Union of South Africa had ordinances that set out the functions of local and provincial government, and public-library development gathered momentum.

In 1985, librarians commissioned Unisa to investigate the role that libraries could and should play in developing South Africa. The result was that greater emphasis was placed on providing material that would support formal and informal education. Outreach programmes to schools and pre-schools received priority. Many libraries also started presenting literacy classes for adults.

South Africa's growing LIS sector includes a national library, public/community libraries, special libraries, government libraries and higher education (HE) libraries. By mid-2003, South Africa had more than 11 373 libraries, with 77 HE libraries, 9 416 school libraries, 79 government departmental

libraries, one national library with two branches, and 1 800 public libraries provided by provincial and local government (library services and metro libraries). Less than 10% of secondary schools had school libraries.

A library transformation charter was expected to be launched in 2007 to establish a new direction for South Africa's community libraries.

Provincial library services

In 2007, the Department of Arts and Culture allocated an additional R200 million for the upgrading of libraries countrywide.

The nine provincial library authorities provide, in partnership with local governments, extensive public-library services. Public libraries increasingly render community and general information services, and provide study material and facilities for school and tertiary students.

The approximately 1 800 public libraries in the country have to provide services to a total population of about 48,5 million.

Library services at national level Meta-information

The Subdirectorate: Meta-Information of the Department of Arts and Culture is the national focal point within national government that handles certain policy matters pertaining to LIS at national level. Meta-information means information about information.

The subdirectorate is located within the Chief Directorate: National Archives, Records, Meta-Information, and Heraldic Services of the Department of Arts and Culture, and reports to the National Archivist.

The vision of the subdirectorate is to create and maintain an effective meta-information system that promotes access to information, ensuring that all communities participate in the information society, thereby contributing to the development of the country.

Its mission is to advise the Minister of Arts and Culture on the development, co-ordination and maintenance of the national meta-information policy and infrastructure.

The national meta-information system in South Africa consists of various types of library and other information organisations, and is enabled by a legislative framework. The subdirectorate's remit within this framework pertains specifically to:

- the National Council for Library and Information Services (NCLIS)

- the NLSA
- the South African Library for the Blind (Blindlib)
- the Legal Deposit Committee and those libraries and archives that function as places of legal deposit and/or official publication depositories
- Blind SA (formerly the South African Blind Workers' Organisation) and the Braille Services Trust, as well as the South African National Council for the Blind regarding Braille projects.

National Council for Library and Information Services

The NCLIS was established in terms of the NCLIS Act, 2001 (Act 6 of 2001), (Annexure A). The NCLIS advises the ministers of arts and culture and of education on matters relating to LIS in order to support and stimulate the socio-economic, educational, cultural, recreational, scientific research, technological and information development of all communities in the country. The functions of the council are to develop and co-ordinate LIS in the country.

National Library of South Africa

The NLSA was established on 1 November 1999 through the NLSA Act, 1998 (Act 92 of 1998), with the amalgamation of the State Library in Pretoria and the South African Library in Cape Town.

The functions of the NLSA are to build a complete collection of published documents emanating from or relating to South Africa; to maintain and preserve the collections, and to provide access to them through bibliographic, reference, information and interlibrary-lending services; and to promote information awareness and literacy.

The Centre for the Book in Cape Town, a specialised unit, promotes the culture of reading, writing and publishing in all South Africa's official languages.

In terms of the Legal Deposit Act, 1997 (Act 54 of 1997), the NLSA, as one of five legal deposit libraries, receives two copies of each book, periodical, newspaper, map, manuscript material or other publication that is published in South Africa in any medium, print or electronic, for its campuses in Pretoria and Cape Town.

The Pretoria campus of the new library was expected to be completed in November 2007. The estimated cost is R374 million and the NLSA was expected to move into the building in early 2008.

The NLSA has been tasked with republishing out-of-print African-language publications.

South African Library for the Blind

Blindlib is a statutory organisation located in Grahamstown. Its aim is to provide, free of charge as far as is reasonably possible, a national LIS to serve blind and print-handicapped readers in South Africa. It is partly state-funded and depends for the remainder of its financial needs on soliciting funds from the private sector and the general public.

Blindlib also produces documents in special media such as Braille and audio formats. It develops standards for the production of such documents and researches production methods and technology in the appropriate fields. It also acquires, manufactures and disseminates the technology people with visual disabilities need to read.

The vision of Blindlib is based on five broad objectives, namely, to significantly contribute to:

- helping build a nation of readers
- assisting the organised blind community
- improving the lives of individuals with print disabilities by meeting their information needs
- helping the State to discharge its cultural mandate and its obligations to blind people
- Africa's development by providing advice, expertise and documents in accessible formats for blind persons and the institutions that serve their information needs.

In 2007, R39 million was set aside for the upgrading of public entities and Blindlib.

The Department of Arts and Culture's allocation to Blindlib increased by 45% in 2007/08.

Blind SA

Blind SA is an organisation of the blind, governed by the blind, and is located in Johannesburg. One of its prime objectives is to provide services for blind and partially sighted individuals to uplift and empower them by publishing books, magazines and other documents in Braille. Blind SA provides:

- study bursaries for blind and partially sighted students
- interest-free loans (for adaptive equipment)
- information (free Braille magazines)
- assistance in finding sustainable employment
- advocacy (to act as a pressure group for disability rights)
- Braille publications at affordable prices in all official languages.

Legal Deposit Act, 1997

The purpose of the Legal Deposit Act, 1997 is, among other things, to:

- provide for the preservation of the national documentary heritage through legal deposit of published documents
- ensure the preservation and cataloguing of, and access to, published documents emanating from, or adapted for, South Africa
- provide for access to government information
- provide for a legal deposit committee.

The places of legal deposit are: NLSA, Pretoria Campus; NLSA, Cape Town component; Mangaung Library Services; Msunduzi Municipal Library; Library of Parliament; and the National Film, Video and Sound Archives of South Africa. (See Chapter 7: *Education*.)

Acknowledgements

BuaNews
 Department of Arts and Culture
Estimates of National Expenditure 2007, published by National Treasury
 Film and Publication Board
 FNB Dance Umbrella
Sunday Times
www.artsculturetrust.co.za
www.basa.co.za
www.businessday.co.za
www.capetownbookfair.com
www.createsa.org.za
www.gov.za
www.nac.org.za
www.sahra.org.za
www.sapa.org.za
www.southafrica.info
www.tonight.co.za

Suggested reading

180° – New Fiction by South African Women Writers, edited by H Moffat and C Morris. Cape Town: Oshun Books, 2005.

African Compass: New Writing from Southern Africa. Compiled by JM Coetzee. Kenilworth: Spearhead, 2005.

African Posters: A Catalogue of the Basler Afrika Bibliographien. Compiled by G Miescher and D Henrichsen. Basel: Basler Afrika Bibliographien, 2004.

African Road: New Writing from Southern Africa, Edited by R Malan. Cape Town: Spearhead, 2006.

Ansell, G. *Soweto Blues: Jazz, Popular Music and Politics in South Africa*. New York: Continuum, 2004.

Attwell, D. *Rewriting Modernity: Studies in Black South African Literary History*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2005.

At the Fireside Vol 3: True Southern African Stories. Edited by R Webster. Cape Town: Spearhead, 2005.

Bank, A. *Bushmen in a Victorian World: The Remarkable Story of the Bleek Lloyd Collection of Bushman Folklore*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2006.

Bedford, E. ed. *Decade of Democracy: South African Art 1994 – 2004*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2004.

Brown, D. *Voicing the Text: South African Oral Poetry and Performance*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.

Carman, J. *Uplifting the Colonial Philistine: Florence Phillips and the Making of the Johannesburg Art Gallery*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2006.

Chapman, M. *Southern African Literatures*. Pietermaritzburg: University of Natal Press, 2003.

Chapman, M. *Art Talk, Politics Talk*. Pietermaritzburg: KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2006.

Cole, M. *Collectables*. Johannesburg: South African Antique Dealers Association and BDFM Publishers, 2003.

Daymond, MJ. et al. eds. *Women Writing Africa: The Southern Region*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2004.

Deckler, TA, Graupner, A and Rasmuss, H. *Contemporary South African Architecture in a Landscape of Transition*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2006.

Deacon, H. et al. *The Subtle Power of Intangible Heritage: Legal and Financial Instruments for Safeguarding Intangible Heritage*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC), 2004.

- Dissel, P. *Zebra Register of South African Artists and Galleries, Vol. 3*. Clarens: Derrick Dissel, 2003.
- Duncan, P. *Down South: Home Interiors in South Africa*. Cape Town: Sunbird (Jonathan Ball Publishers) Part 1: 2004. Part 2: 2006.
- Du Preez, M. *Of Warriors, Lovers and Poets: Unusual Stories From South Africa's Past*. Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2004.
- Fransen, H. *The Old Buildings of the Cape*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2004.
- Fransen, H. *A Cape Camera: The Architectural Beauty of the Old Cape*. Cape Town: Sunbird (Jonathan Ball Publishers), 2005.
- Gaylaard, G. *After Colonialism: African Postmodernism and Magical Realism*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2006.
- Gray, S. *Indaba: Interviews with African Writers*. Pretoria: Protea Book House, 2005.
- Helgesson, S. *Writing in Crisis: Ethics and History in Gordimer, Ndebele and Coetzee*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2004.
- Inheriting the Flame: New Writing on Community Arts in South Africa*, edited by G Falken. Cape Town: Arts and Media Access Centre, 2005.
- Jamal, A. *Predicaments of Culture in South Africa*. Pretoria: University of South Africa (Unisa) Press, 2005.
- Kearney, JA. *Representing Dissension: Riot, Rebellion and Resistance in the South African English Novel*. Pretoria, Unisa, 2004.
- Levine, L. *The Drum Café's Traditional Music of South Africa*. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2005.
- Lewis-Williams, D. *Images of Mystery: Rock Art of the Drakensberg*. Cape Town: Double Storey Books, 2003.
- Mangu, X, ed. *The Meaning of Mandela: A Literary and Intellectual Celebration*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
- Masekela, H and Cheers, M. *Still Grazing: The Musical Journey of Hugh Masekela*. New York: Crown Publishers, 2004.
- Mbatha, A. *Within Loving Memory of the Century*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2005.
- Meiring, H. *My Country in Line and Colour*. Cape Town: Fernwood Press, 2004.
- Ndebele, NS. *Rediscovery of the Ordinary: Essays on South African Literature and Culture*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2006.
- New Century of South African Short Stories*. Compiled by M Chapman. Johannesburg: Donker, 2004.
- Nuttall, S. *Beautiful Ugly: African Diaspora Aesthetics*. Cape Town: Kwela, 2006.
- Omnibus of a Century of South African Short Stories*. Edited by M Chapman. Johannesburg: Ad Donker Publishers, 2007.
- Opland, J. *The Dassie and the Hunter: A South African Meeting*. Pietermaritzburg: University of Natal Press, 2005.
- Phelps, A. ed. *Sunshine and Shadows: A Collection of South African Short Stories*. Empangeni: Echoing Green Press, 2004.
- Rasebotsa, N. et al. eds. *Nobody Ever Said AIDS: Stories and Poems from Southern Africa*. Cape Town: Kwela, 2004.
- Rudd, R. *South African Timber Buildings: A Craft Revived*. Cape Town: Clifton Publications, 2006.
- San Tales from Africa*, edited by R Delle Donne and illustrated by M van Heerden. Cape Town: Struik, 2006.
- Seventh Street Alchemy: A Selection of Writings from the Caine Prize for African Writing*. Edited by N Elam. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2005.
- South Africa's Visual Culture*. Edited by J van Eeden and A du Preez. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2005.
- Stephanou, I and Henriques L. *The World in an Orange: Creating Theatre with Barney Simon*. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2005.
- Tales from Southern Africa*. Translated and retold by AC Jordan; foreword by ZP Jordan; introduction and commentaries by H Scheub. Johannesburg: Ad Donker, 2004.
- Telschow, M. *Townships and the Spirit of Ubuntu*. Cape Town: Clifton Publications, 2003.

- Thamm, M. *The Fairlady Collection: 40 Years of Fine Writing*. Cape Town: Sunbird (Jonathan Ball), 2005.
- Urban 03: Collected New South African Short Stories*, edited by D Chislett. Cape Town: Spearhead, 2003.
- Wasserman, H and Jacobs, S eds. *Shifting Selves: Post-Apartheid Essays on Mass Media, Culture and Identity*. Cape Town: Kwela Books, 2004.
- Wisdom of Africa: A Collection of Proverbs*, compiled by D Stewart. Cape Town: Struik, 2005.
- Woodhouse, HC. *Bushman Art of Southern Africa*. Durban: Art Publishers, 2003.
- Zegeye, A and Kriger, R. *Culture in the New South Africa – After Apartheid*. Cape Town: Kwela Books, 2003.
- 10 Years 100 Artists: Art in a Democratic South Africa*; edited by S Perryer. Cape Town: Bell Roberts, 2004.





SA YEARBOOK 2007/08 | COMMUNICATIONS



The aim of the Department of Communications is to develop information communications technology (ICT) policies and legislation that stimulate and improve the sustainable economic development of South Africa.

The department also oversees state-owned entities, such as the South African Broadcasting Corporation (SABC) and the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa (Icasa).

South Africa is committed to the global vision of building an information society, and gathered with the rest of the world in November 2005, in Tunis, Tunisia, to reaffirm its support for the Geneva Declaration of Principles and Plan of Action.

Telecommunications

South Africa is a leader in ICT development in Africa, and the 20th-largest consumer of information technology (IT) products and services in the world.

The country has a network that is 99% digital and includes the latest in fixed-line, wireless and satellite communications. As such, it has the most developed telecommunications network on the continent.

Several international corporates, recognised as leaders in the IT sector, operate subsidiaries from South Africa.

South Africa's ICT and electronics sectors are expected to continue strong growth in the future.

Policy

The Department of Communications' mandate is to create a favourable environment, ensuring that South Africa has the capacity to advance its socio-economic development goals and support the renewal of Africa and the building of a better world. This mandate puts the department at the forefront of government initiatives to bridge the digital divide and provide universal access to ICTs for all South Africans.

The core functions of the department are to:

- evaluate the economic, social and political effects of implementing relevant policies
- exercise oversight of state-owned enterprises (SOEs)
- fulfil South Africa's continental and international responsibilities in the ICT field.

The department's strategic direction is based on five key focus areas:

- achieving higher rates of investment in the economy
- increasing the competitiveness of the South African economy

- broadening participation in the economy
- improving the State's capacity to deliver
- contributing to creating a better world.

In February 2007, Cabinet approved the National Information Society and Development (ISAD) Plan. According to the ISAD Plan, different departments will initiate programmes according to their mandate. The Department of Communications will launch a programme that supports a strategy and plan to bring initiatives that contribute to building an information society in South Africa under one banner - *ICT for All*.

The department has identified the following strategic objectives to achieve its mandate:

- **Broadband Strategy:** Pivotal to achieving the aims of the department is the availability of a reliable, cost-effective and easily accessible ICT broadband infrastructure. To this end, the department participated in the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) ICT Broadband Infrastructure Network for Africa, which includes the Eastern Africa Submarine Cable System (EASSy) project. The EASSy cable will link South Africa to Sudan, and provide for landing stations in countries along the coast of eastern Africa. The cable will be connected to adjacent landlocked countries through terrestrial fibre optic links. The EASSy cable will be 9 900 km long with an expected lifespan of 25 years. In July 2007, government announced that it would be building a West Coast marine cable to link South Africa to Europe, and another cable to the Americas.
- **Broadcasting Digital Migration Strategy:** South Africa has been actively participating in the radio-communications sector activities of the International Telecommunications Union (ITU), as per the World Summit on Information Society. In particular, it has advanced the process of migrating from analogue to digital broadcasting. The Cabinet announced that the first terrestrial digital signal would be switched on on 1 November 2008, and the analogue signal switched off on the same date in 2011, giving the country a dual illumination period of three years.
- **Universal Service and Access Policy and Strategy:** The Universal Service and Access Agency of South Africa (Usaasa) was established in terms of

Section 58 of the Telecommunications Act 1996 (Act 103 of 1996). The agency promotes universal service and access to ICTs and services for all South Africans. It also facilitates and offers guidance in evaluating, monitoring and implementing schemes, to improve universal access and service. In addition, it is involved in setting up telecentres, which provide ICT services, especially in rural areas, on a cost-recovery basis.

The agency manages the Universal Service Fund. The fund, with monies appropriated by Parliament, is used to provide infrastructure for the universal service-area licensees (USALs). It also provides telecentres and school cyberlabs (computer laboratories) with ICT equipment, which enables access to the Internet and multimedia services.

- Department of Communications 2010 Strategy: In relation to the 2010 FIFA World Cup™, South Africa will be one of the few countries where every game will be shown using DVB-H technology. South Africa, with Finland, Germany, Italy and France, are all in the trial stage of this cutting-edge technology, which has yet to be commercially launched anywhere in the world.
- Stakeholder Management Policy Framework: The strategy facilitates the attainment of the department's vision and its strategic objectives. This strategy has been developed to enhance economic growth and employment creation. It is based on a review of best practices locally and globally and the involvement of stakeholders in the work of the Department of Communications to improve service delivery.
- E-Cadre Strategy: In terms of the E-Cadre Strategy, the South African Post Office (Sapo) launched an e-cadre pilot programme that aims to use IT graduates as volunteers in educating the public, and where necessary, Sapo staff, on the use of these technologies, particularly in Sapo outlets.
- Spectrum Management Policy: According to the Broadband Digital Migration Strategy, government will prioritise the introduction, development and licensing of both digital television and radio in the country. The current Icasa Spectrum Plan provides a commitment to adequate frequency allocations for digital television and radio transmissions. The Electronic Communications Act (ECA), 2005 (Act 36 of 2005), creates a technological neutral-licensing framework, and provides a range of licensable sector services that are related to broadcasting

digital migration. The strategy does not preclude the introduction of new licensed operators to provide novel and enhanced services. Therefore, government will initially focus on establishing two national frequency networks in relation to the ITU Regional Radiocommunication Conference (RRC) 06 Plan.

- ICT Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) Charter: In terms of the charter, several BEE and job-creation initiatives are planned by companies in the sector. These includes empowerment initiatives by Naspers and MultiChoice.
- Additional community radio stations: The department has paid for the signal-distribution cost on behalf of 14 community radio stations for four years. An additional five licensed community radio stations have been included in the four-year subsidy.
- National Emergency Communications Framework: By mid-2007, the department's pilot project on the national emergency number 112 was being implemented in the Western Cape. About 90% of the Western Cape emergency calls were routed via the centre to the relevant authorities. The 112 centre also forms part of the Western Cape disaster-management agenda. The department has completed a public-private partnership (PPP) feasibility study for a private entity to run the centre and establish a second 112 centre in Gauteng. The results of the final outcome of the PPP were expected to be announced in 2007/08.
- Active participation in the World Radio Communication Conference (WRCC): South Africa participates in international organisations such as the ITU, African Telecommunications Union, African Union, Universal Postal Union (UPU) and the Pan-African Postal Union. The WRCC is held every three to four years. One of the main focuses is to ensure the harmonised and effective use of the frequency spectrum. The next conference was to be held in October 2007.
- Nepad projects: The Department of Communications has placed itself as a strategic partner on the continent, taking part in various forums in support of the African Agenda. The department has an engagement model for strengthening relations with countries in the region. The department continues to be involved in various Nepad ICT projects, such as the E-Schools Project, as well as implementing policies aimed at building an Africa that is part of an inclusive global information society.

South Africa is participating in and co-initiating the Nepad-led effort to build an affordable broadband network. As part of this initiative, South Africa is working with 22 countries in southern and eastern Africa to build a terrestrial and submarine broadband network. The E-Africa Commission is leading the project, which involves 30 African companies.

With the Protocol on the Nepad ICT Broadband Infrastructure Network signed, the focus in the coming years will be to ensure that the continent reaps the benefits of an established broadband infrastructure. The purpose of the Nepad ICT programme is to accelerate the development of ICT infrastructure and skills. It is also intended to bridge the digital divide in Africa, and between Africa and the rest of the world.

Public entities and agencies reporting to the Minister of Communications

The following public entities and agencies report to the Minister of Communications. These include the following companies in which government has a major shareholding: Icasa, Sapo, Sentech, the SABC, the National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa (Nemisa), Usaasa, .za Domain Name Authority and Telkom South Africa Ltd.

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa

Icasa is responsible for regulating the telecommunications and broadcasting industries to ensure affordable services of a high quality for all South Africans.

Icasa also issues licences to telecommunications and broadcasting service-providers, enforces compliance with rules and regulations, protects consumers from unfair business practices and poor-quality services, decides on disputes and complaints brought against licensees, and controls and manages the frequency spectrum. In terms of Section 2(bA) of the Icasa Amendment Act, (Act 3 of 2006), Icasa now also regulates postal matters.

In complying with the ECA, 2005, Icasa has had to issue new regulations on commercial, public, community and subscription television and radio to guide licensing.

The Icasa Amendment Act, 2006 requires the authority to do research on all matters relating to

broadcasting and communications in order to perform its functions.

Over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period, Icasa will focus on licensing new players in the telecommunications and broadcasting industry, including local access telecoms operators and community sound broadcasters in nodal areas, and the conversion of 70% of existing licences into new ECA, 2005-compliant licences by March 2008.

Universal Services and Access Agency of South Africa

Usaasa operates under the regulatory and policy framework enshrined in the Telecommunications Act, 1996, as amended in 2001, and the ministerial policy directions issued in the same year.

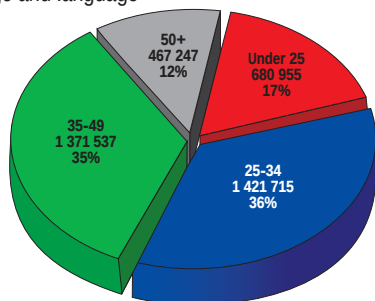
These mandate Usaasa to promote, facilitate and monitor the achievement of universal service and access in underserved areas. In addition, the agency is required to:

- manage the Universal Service and Access Fund and use it to implement the mandates as stipulated in the Act
- survey and evaluate the impact of the various initiatives undertaken by all stakeholders, and the extent to which universal service and access has been achieved
- create an enabling environment by stimulating public awareness of the benefits of ICT services and building capacity to access these services
- encourage, facilitate and offer guidance in respect of any scheme to provide universal access or universal service
- make the necessary interventions to enable underserved communities to access ICT services
- conduct research into and keep abreast of developments in telecommunications services and IT.

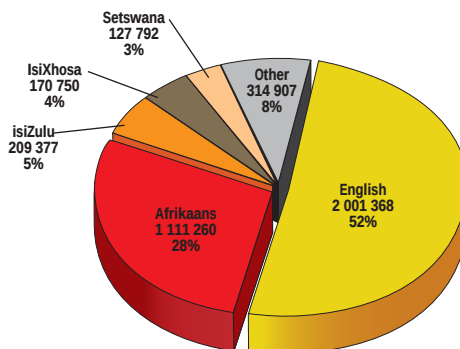
The subsidies to USALs contribute to the development of much-needed telecommunications infrastructure and business activity in the most marginalised parts of South Africa.

By mid-2007, seven USALs were receiving subsidies of R15 million each over three years, payable in annual instalments of R5 million.

Composition of South African Internet population by age and language



Source: Nielsen//NetRatings



Presidential National Commission on Information Society and Development (PNC on ISAD)

In an effort to establish a more systematic and consistent approach across different traditionally disparate areas of policy-making and implementation, the PNC on ISAD was formed in 2001.

The commission comprises government, industry and civil-society leaders. During its deliberations, important recommendations are made regarding the need for planning and foresight, co-ordination and integration, and evaluation and impact assessment in the building of the information society. The ISAD Plan and the institutional mechanisms followed from these recommendations.

A corresponding body is the Presidential International Advisory Council on ISAD.

Internet

South Africa's online audience has grown 121% over the past two years, as high broadband prices have slowly started to decrease. According to Internet market research company Nielsen//NetRatings, this type of growth has been seen across all markets as the Internet has taken hold and started moving away from being a niche activity, to become a mainstream form of media and an integral part of modern life.

In May 2007, some 3,9 million active unique browsers were registered in South Africa, representing a 121% increase on the number in May 2005. Page impressions grew by 129%, from 91 million in May 2005 to 207 million in May 2007.

In 2005, the monthly rental on a 512 kilobit/second fixed-line broadband Asymmetric Digital Subscriber Line cost about R600 per month. By May 2007, the line-rental price had dropped to R362 per month.

Men comprise the majority of Internet users, at 54% (2,15 million people) of the Internet population.

In age terms, the most dominant group is 25- to 34-year-olds. At 1,42 million users, this group accounts for 36% of the online population. This is closely followed by 35- to 49-year-olds who account for a further 35% (1,37 million people) of the Internet population in South Africa.

The majority of the Internet population speaks English and the vast majority of online content is English.

Telkom

Telkom has operated as a commercial company since October 1991 and has become the largest provider of communications services in Africa, based on operating revenue and assets. The Telkom Group comprises the fixed-line company Telkom and a 50% shareholding in mobile telecommunications operator Vodacom. It was listed on the JSE Limited and the New York Stock Exchange in March 2003.

Telkom's listing created meaningful value for BEE shareholders. Over 100 000 South African retail investors subscribed during Telkom's initial public offering, specifically targeted at historically disadvantaged individuals. In its first year as a listed company, the estimated value created for retail shareholders amounted to some R560 million.

In 2006/07, the Telkom Group posted strong financial results. It declared a higher ordinary annual dividend of 600 cents (c) per share and a special dividend of 500 c per share in June 2007. The group's operating revenue increased by 8,4% to R51,619 million.

The fixed-line business remains the major contributor to the group, with this segment contributing 63% (versus 37% from the mobile

sector) towards operating revenue, 68% (versus 32% from mobile) towards operating profit, and 72% (versus mobile 28%) towards profit attributable to equity holders after intersegmental eliminations.

Telkom has until 1 November 2011 to unbundle the local loop that links the national telecommunications network to individual homes and businesses.

Telkom Foundation

The Telkom Foundation, founded in 1998, enables Telkom to play an active role in South Africa's socio-economic development.

It focuses on:

- education and training
- empowering women, children and people with disabilities
- ICT planning and infrastructure roll-out.

Economic empowerment

Telkom demonstrated its commitment to delivering meaningful and real BEE to the majority of South Africa's people, by spending R8,8 billion on empowered or significantly empowered suppliers for the year ended 31 May 2007.

Training and development

Telkom spent R425,9 million on training and developing its employees for the year ended 31 March 2007.

Centres of excellence (CoEs)

This is a collaborative programme between Telkom, the telecommunications industry and the Department of Trade and Industry to promote postgraduate research in ICT and allied social sciences. It also provides facilities that encourage young scientists and engineers to pursue their interests in South Africa.

Launched in 1997, the programme improves local telecommunications and IT skills, yielding substantial benefits for the academic institutions involved. It has helped Telkom and its local technology partners to solve technical problems and cut costs.

Telkom's corporate partners are also reaping rewards, as the work undertaken at the CoEs is relevant to their areas of business.

By May 2007, there were 16 CoEs at tertiary institutions around the country.

Mobile communications

Over the years, South Africa has witnessed tremendous growth in the cellular phone industry. South Africa has four operators, namely Vodacom, MTN, Cell C and Virgin Mobile.

In July 2007, Telkom estimated the Sim card penetration of the cellular industry in South Africa at an estimated 89% of the population.

Cell C (Pty) Limited is wholly owned by 3C Telecommunications (Pty) Limited, which in turn is 60% owned by Oger; Telecom South Africa, a division of Saudi Oger; and 40% by CellSAF. It also brought in Verizon Communications, the biggest cellular operator in the United States of America (USA), as its operating partner.

In 2007, Cell C had six active roaming agreements in Namibia, Mozambique, Spain, the Ivory Coast, Mauritius and Swaziland, and had entered into roaming agreements with an additional 49 international operators.

Vodacom is a Pan-African cellular communications company, providing services to more than 28,2 million customers across its networks operating in South Africa, Tanzania, the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Lesotho and Mozambique. Vodacom's shareholders are Telkom (50%) and the Vodafone Group (50%).

In February 2007, Vodacom deployed more than 90 000 community-service telephones to South Africa's underserved areas. Vodacom's community phone services have become invaluable sources of entrepreneurial activity for hundreds of community phone-shop operators.

Since its launch in 1994, the Community Phone Shop concept has expanded into that of communication centres in which budding entrepreneurs, job seekers and schoolchildren access essential business communication services, such as faxes, e-mails and the Internet, daily.

Vodacom has retained its leadership in a highly competitive South African communications market, with an estimated market share of 57%.

Vodacom increased its total customer base by 7,5% to 32,4 million in the quarter to June 2007. The company's revenue in its financial first quarter



In January 2007, a team of South African students won a silver medal at the annual SiMagine Awards in Barcelona, for developing *Mobiraba*, an online cellphone version of the traditional African board game, *Morabaraba*.

They were David Vannucci, Teddy Mwakabaga and Rolan Christian from the University of the Witwatersrand's School of Electrical and Information Engineering.

Cellphone users can play *Mobiraba* online by logging on to a game server and choosing between two gaming options. A quick game allows the user to be automatically matched up against another quick game player of a similar skill level, while organised games allow the user to send a invitation to a chosen opponent.

The online server maintains the results of all the players, as well as rankings and a record of each game.

rose 18,6%, while its total customers increased by 28,4% from the same period a year before.

MTN International offers cellular network access and associated services through its subsidiaries and joint ventures in Nigeria, Cameroon, Uganda, Rwanda and Swaziland.

MTN has also recorded a very substantial growth in subscribers across all its operations, achieving a 22% growth in its subscriber base, which translates to a 36% market share.

Virgin Mobile launched in South Africa in June 2006 as a joint venture between Virgin Management and Cell C.

Liberalisation

The creation of an enabling policy and regulatory environment is important for increasing competition in the ICT sector, and reducing the cost of communications.

Following the signing of the Telecommunications Amendment Act, 2001 (Act 64 of 2001), the department has focused on policies that grow the economy, attract foreign direct investment, increase competition, encourage Broad-Based BEE, and develop and sustain small, medium and micro-enterprises.

The department also aims to improve service delivery and expand the provision of telecommunications services. The introduction of the USALs addresses this need.

The cost of communications will be brought down by increased competition in the sector and the removal of constraints to growth.

Section 40 of the Telecommunications Amendment Act, 2001 requires that USALs provide telecommunications services, including voice-over

Internet protocol, fixed mobile services and public pay telephones. Policies have also been implemented to, among other things, allow mobile operators to use fixed lines to provide both voice- and data-transmission services.

The postal sector Policy and legislation

The cornerstone of national policy for the postal sector is the provision of a universal service at an affordable price and an acceptable standard of service for all citizens. To ensure this, a universal service obligation (USO) has been placed on Sapo. To offset the cost of providing a basic service in low-density, rural or unviable areas, it has also been common practice to confer exclusive rights and privileges, i.e. a monopoly, on the provision of the basic letter service.

A USO is an obligation to provide specified services to the whole community, even though these services may not be commercially viable in their own right. The universal postal service implies that all citizens have equal access to a basic letter service:

- that is reasonably accessible to all people
- at a single uniform rate of postage
- at the lowest price consistent with meeting all its obligations, financial and otherwise
- to places outside the country
- at a standard of performance that reasonably meets the needs of the population.

According to the Postal Services Act, 1998 (Act 124 of 1998), Sapo enjoys certain exclusive rights and privileges, including a monopoly on letter mail up to 1 kg.

In addition, Sapo is obliged to operate under a 25-year licence, with explicit universal service targets, and other terms and conditions. The monopoly and compliance with the terms and conditions of the licence will be reviewed and monitored.

South African Post Office

The first post office in South Africa was opened in the Castle in Cape Town in 1792. Today, Sapo delivers almost six million letters per day to 10 million addresses in South Africa. It has 2 550 outlets covering the length and breadth of the country.

The principal function of the Post Office is to provide postal services inside and outside South Africa. As a preferred partner to government, Sapo pays out pension payments on behalf of the Department of Social Development.



The Post Office runs an annual art competition among schools countrywide. The theme is always topical, fosters the arts and promotes social awareness among the youth.

The Post Office also runs an annual letter-writing competition among South African learners with the Universal Postal Union and the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation.

Motor-vehicle licences can be paid at selected post offices, and the Post Office collects payments on behalf of more than 100 companies. These accounts can be paid at any post office outlet.

Postage stamps

Postage stamps are traditionally associated with the Post Office. Annually, the Post Office prints more than 384 million of these tiny works of art.

Business centres

The Post Office has established 25 business centres that provide a dedicated, specially designed one-stop shop inside existing post offices, in most rural areas.

They provide a bureau service with facilities such as photocopying, faxing and Internet access. South Africans who live in rural areas can now make new technology part of their everyday lives.

Internet facilities

Many isolated villages are already enjoying the benefits of the electronic age. The Post Office and Department of Communications have installed public Internet terminals at almost 700 post offices. Most of them are in settlements without Internet cafés or other access to the Internet.

Specialised products

Securemail

Securemail provides a swift and safe delivery method for high-security items such as shares and credit cards.

It handles more than 2,5 million credit cards a year, has significantly reduced credit-card theft and has won an award from the International Association of Financial Crime Investigators for its performance.

Parcelplus

Parcelplus is the most economical way to send a parcel. Available at any post office outlet, parcels can be delivered to all post office counters countrywide. Parcels are delivered within two to five days.

Insurance is available and the cash-on-delivery option provides for money to be collected for the contents of the parcel on behalf of mail-order businesses. All parcels can be tracked.

Postbank

Postbank services are available at more than 2 000 post office outlets countrywide and at all Saswitch-enabled automated teller machines of other financial institutions. The focus of Postbank is on the many South Africans who do not have access to other banking services.

Postbank is an option for pensioners whose pension money is paid out by the Post Office. Their pensions can be paid into a Postbank account where it can earn interest and be withdrawn at a convenient time.

Service options range from Flexicard, with a required minimum balance of only R10, to Smart Save, which offers interest rates that rise as the balance in the account rises, to Maxi Save, which offers very competitive interest rates.

Postbank has consistently been the leading provider of Mzansi accounts since their introduction in 2004.

A bank account for social pensioners

In the North West, social-grant beneficiaries can open a Postbank account within minutes. They receive a smartcard with a chip containing, in coded form, their photos, fingerprints and signatures.

When a social pension is paid into such an account, the receiver no longer has to queue on pay-out day.

All Postbank accounts function as debit cards and all post offices offer Postbank services.

Courier Freight Group (CFG)

CFG is a subsidiary of the Post Office, made up of the following companies:

- Speed Services Couriers
Speed Services Couriers provides the most extensive domestic overnight express courier



network in southern Africa and has SABS ISO 9002 certification. Options range from the most cost-effective counter-to-counter delivery to door-to-door delivery. Same-day delivery is also available. An international service is available to over 200 international destinations. All items are tracked to their destinations. Insurance and liability cover as well as proof of delivery are available.

- XPS Courier Services
XPS reaches 3 200 destinations daily with parcel tracking at every stage.
Options include:
 - collection and delivery of abnormal or incompatible consignments on the same day
 - a drop-box service for clients in main centres
 - after-hours service with delivery by 8 am
 - optional coverage against loss
 - proof of delivery.
- PX Courier Services
PX focuses on loads of up to three tons between larger centres in southern Africa. It provides courier services for bigger loads in tailor-made containers to destinations in South Africa and cross-border countries. The mini-container can carry loads of 1 400 kg to 3 000 kg. Options include containers for goods of a hazardous nature and insulated containers to distribute frozen goods. PX also offers priority delivery.
- Document Exchange (Docex)
Docex moves mail between Docex members and other relevant points. To become a Docex member, an organisation has to pay an entry fee and annual subscription. This enables free mail movement for the entire year. Docex concentrates on the legal and medical professions as well as the travel industry.

International and regional co-operation

South Africa is a member of the UPU. The country participates in technical-assistance programmes within the UPU, and uses its international accounting facility.

It also participates in other international bodies such as the Pan-African Postal Union, Council of Commonwealth Postal Administrations, and the Southern African Transport and Communications Commission.

South Africa, through the Department of Communications, is a signatory to international treaties, conventions and agreements.

It co-operates and works in partnership with other postal administrations, through either bilateral or multilateral agreements relating to letters, parcels and financial postal services.

The media

Media freedom

According to the Bill of Rights, as contained in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, everyone has the right to freedom of expression, which includes:

- freedom of the press and other media
- freedom to receive or impart information or ideas
- freedom of artistic creativity
- academic freedom and freedom of scientific research.

Several laws, policies and organisations act to protect and promote press freedom in South Africa.

In 2007, South Africa was ranked as the 59th most free country in terms of press freedom in the world, sharing that position with Nauru, and beating Italy (61st) and Brazil (90th).

Regarding press freedom in sub-Saharan Africa, South Africa ranked fourth, with only Mali, Ghana and Mauritius enjoying more press freedom.

Broadcasting

South Africa has an extremely diverse broadcast media sector catering for the unique demands of the local market.

Policy and legislation

The convergence of technologies has led the Department of Communications to pass the ECA, 2005, followed by the Icasa Amendment Act, 2006 to regulate and control all broadcasting and telecommunications activities in the country. The new acts will:

- contribute to democracy, nation-building, the provision of education and the strengthening of the moral fibre of society
 - encourage ownership and control of broadcasting services by people from historically disadvantaged communities
 - ensure fair competition in the sector
 - provide for a three-tier system of public, commercial and community broadcasting services
 - establish a strong and committed public broadcaster to service the needs of all South Africans.
- The Broadcasting Act, 1999 (Act 4 of 1999), defined the objectives of the South African broadcasting system, the structure of the SABC at the time and the role of the various sectors in meeting those objectives.

It also guaranteed the independence of the SABC as a public broadcaster. Within the present Act, the SABC is being corporatised and restructured to better fulfil its mandate of meeting its audience's needs as well as those of the developmental state.



Neotel is South Africa's first national infrastructure-based competitor in the fixed-line telecoms sector.

It was expected to roll out voice and data services by mid-2008, following the allocation of the 800-Mhz spectrum to Neotel by the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa.

Neotel has earmarked access to this key spectrum by rolling out cost-effective voice and Internet services for individual and small, medium and micro-enterprise customers across South Africa.

Service portfolios include basic voice and data services, high-speed Internet, virtual private networks, network management, and hosting services that can be assembled cost-effectively to meet the specific business and technology needs of each user.

These include broadcasting accurate and credible news and current affairs programmes; South African content programming in languages reflecting the country's cultural diversity; educational programming to advance lifelong learning; and programming targeted at children, women and people with disabilities.

The Act deals with the restructuring of the SABC to fit into the changing broadcasting environment. It requires that the SABC Board establishes two management boards to focus on public and commercial services. Under the new dispensation, the public broadcasting wing will execute and meet its public-service mandate free from commercial interests. The commercial wing will be allowed to generate profit to be self-sustainable.

In terms of the new Broadcasting Digital Migration Strategy, the SABC has been awarded five channels to allow for specialised services dedicated to the development needs of the country, in the areas of education, youth, health and enterprise development.

Broadcasting role-players

Radio

The first radio broadcasts in South Africa took place under the auspices of a broadcasting committee of South African Railways. The first experimental broadcast was undertaken in Johannesburg on 18 December 1923 by the Western Electric

Company. During 1924, the Associated Scientific and Technical Association of South Africa began regular broadcasts in Johannesburg.

The Cape Peninsula Publicity Broadcasting Association began a similar service, and the Durban Municipality followed suit with its own regular broadcasts.

The first radio station, JB Calling, went on air in July 1924. By 1926, all radio transmission and reception was placed under the control of the Postmaster-General, under the Radio Act, 1926 (Act 20 of 1926).

Following the contribution made by Sir John Reith, then Director-General of the British Broadcasting Corporation (BBC), the SABC was established on 1 August 1936.

The SABC is the country's public broadcaster. It introduced its own national news service on 17 July 1950, with daily news bulletins on the English service, the Afrikaans service and Springbok Radio. Radio Zulu, Radio Xhosa and Radio Sesotho were established on 1 June 1960.

In 2007, the SABC's national radio network comprised 15 public broadcast-service radio stations, and three commercial radio stations, broadcasting in 11 languages, as well as an external radio service in four languages that reached an average daily adult audience of 19 million.

SABC News provides news and current affairs services to both SABC radio and television. For its domestic coverage, SABC News has 13 editorial offices, while world news is provided by strategically placed news bureaus, foreign correspondents and international news agencies.

Copy supplied to radio news amounts to almost a million words a day, and is compiled around the clock into a weekly total of 1 568 bulletins and 190 current affairs programmes.

Programmes are produced weekly in 11 languages on the SABC's radio services. There is a public broadcasting-service radio station for each language group.

Channel Africa broadcasts live on three platforms: shortwave, satellite and the Internet. Its broadcasts are in Chinyanja, Silozi, Kiswahili, English, French and Portuguese. The shortwave broadcast covers south, east, central and west Africa.



The satellite broadcast covers the sub-Saharan region, although it can be picked up as far as London in the United Kingdom. The Internet broadcast is accessible from anywhere in the world.

Commercial radio stations

Icasa has granted licences to the following private radio stations:

- Radio Algoa (ex-SABC)
- Classic FM (greenfield)
- Kaya FM (greenfield)
- YFM (greenfield)
- Highveld Stereo (ex-SABC)
- Radio 702
- Radio Jacaranda (ex-SABC)
- Radio Oranje (ex-SABC)
- East Coast Radio (ex-SABC)
- P4 (greenfield)
- Cape Talk MW (greenfield)
- Radio KFM (ex-SABC).

Stations such as Radio Jacaranda, Highveld Stereo, Radio Oranje, Radio Algoa and East Coast Radio were initially SABC stations, but were sold to private owners to diversify radio ownership in South Africa as part of the transformation of the public broadcaster.

Satellite Communications Network

The Satellite Communications Network makes it possible for grassroots communities, through their community radio stations, to access parliamentary proceedings, general news, and government information and services.

The Department of Communications is responsible for rolling out infrastructure to these radio stations. Initially, 30 radio stations were linked up to the network. The network will, on completion, link some 90 stations.

Television

SABC

A one-channel television service was introduced on 5 January 1976.

Today, the SABC's national television network comprises three full-spectrum free-to-air channels and one satellite pay-TV channel aimed at audiences in Africa.

Combined, the free-to-air sound broadcasting stations reach a daily adult audience of almost 20 million people via the terrestrial signal distribution network and a satellite signal. South Africa has more than four million licensed television households.

Between 50% and 60% of all programmes transmitted are produced in South Africa. Locally produced television programmes are augmented by programmes purchased abroad, and by co-productions undertaken with other television programming organisations. Television news is fed by SABC news teams reporting from all parts of the country, using modern portable electronic cameras and line-feed equipment via more than 220 television transmitters. Ad hoc satellite feeds are arranged from wherever news events occur. News bulletins are broadcast in all 11 official languages.

The SABC's terrestrial television channels devote between 18% and 20% of their airtime during prime time to news and news-related programmes.

In April 2007, the SABC announced that it planned to set up a bureau in Harare by April 2008, to improve its coverage of events in Zimbabwe.

The SABC already has offices in several other African countries, including Nigeria, the DRC, Senegal and Kenya.

In July 2007, the SABC launched SABC News International, a 24-hour news channel aimed at providing in-depth coverage of African stories. The channel will be structured in a similar way to other international news-providers, such as the BBC.

M-Net

M-Net, South Africa's first private subscription television service, was launched in 1986. Today, M-Net broadcasts its array of general entertainment and niche channels to more than 50 countries across Africa and the adjacent Indian Ocean islands.

M-Net's television channels are delivered to subscribers through analogue terrestrial and digital satellite distribution.

The main M-Net channel, which is available as a terrestrial and satellite service, offers movies, sport, children's programmes, international and local series, and local reality shows.

The second terrestrial channel, CSN (Community Services Network), offers sport and programming aimed at a variety of South African communities. M-Net is also well represented on the DStv bouquet of satellite TV channels.

Development of the local film and TV industries is a priority for M-Net, and is supported by various projects such as EDiT, which gives final-year film and television students the opportunity to produce programmes for broadcast on M-Net. At the end of March 2007, 20 years of M-Net "open time" came to an end.



Sub-Saharan Africa's first international business news channel, CNBC Africa, started broadcasting from Johannesburg on 1 June 2007, with an hour-long interview with South African President Thabo Mbeki as its first programme.

The channel broadcasts nine hours of local business programming, while cutting across to its international affiliates throughout the day for market updates and breaking news.

The channel uses feeds from bureaus in Abuja, Cape Town, Lagos, London and Nairobi. The channel required about US\$20 million in start-up costs and has state-of-the-art equipment.

The channel's focus is on business and finance, but it also provides interactive debates as well as lifestyle programming looking at real estate, personal finance, business leaders, entertainment and sport.

CNBC Africa is a franchise of NBC Universal.

Satellite broadcasting

MultiChoice Africa (MCA) was formed in 1995 to manage the subscriber services of its sister company, M-Net. It became the first African company on the continent to offer digital satellite broadcasting.

Operations include subscriber-management services and digital satellite television platforms broadcasting more than 50 television and 40 audio channels, 24 hours a day.

MCA is owned by the MIH Group, which is listed on the JSE, the Nasdaq in New York, and AEX in Amsterdam.

By mid-2007, there were more than 1,2 million DStv subscribers in South Africa, compared with some 190 000 M-Net decoders.

Free-to-air television

Launched in 1998, e.tv is South Africa's first private free-to-air television channel, which broadcasts a full-spectrum programming service to 78% of South Africa's population. The station is owned by BEE group, Hosken Consolidated Investments Limited, and Venfin Limited, and employs some 500 people countrywide. E.tv has offices in Johannesburg, Cape Town, Durban, Port Elizabeth and Bloemfontein. Some 74% of e.tv's employees are black, 45% are women and 5% are people with disabilities.

As a free-to-air channel, e.tv's only source of income is advertising revenue. The station's most popular programmes are wrestling, news, movies and South African drama, with South African content comprising 45% of e.tv's daily programming. E.tv broadcasts 4,5 hours of prime-time South African drama each week.

E.tv is South Africa's second-biggest television channel (All Media Products Survey March to September 2005 combined with January to June 2006) with a viewership of 10 665 000. The audience profile is 54,1% male and 45,9% female, and appeals to viewers across all race, income and age groups.

E.tv was the first channel in South Africa to secure the rights to the Union of European Football Association's Champions League Football.

Signal distribution

Sentech Limited was established in terms of the Sentech Act, 1996 (Act 63 of 1996), as a common carrier to provide broadcasting signal distribution for broadcasting licensees. Over the medium term, Sentech will focus on the digitisation of its signal infrastructure and the roll-out of the ICT infrastructure required for the 2010 World Cup.

The Sentech product line is split into five product portfolios:

- signal distribution (regulated and unregulated)
- Very Small Aperture Terminal (VSAT)
- broadband wireless (MyWireless and Biznet)
- international voice
- value-adding networks.

Signal-distribution revenue is derived from both regulated and unregulated broadcast services. In the regulated market, there is very little room for growth, owing to the limited number of frequencies available. The announcement by Icasa to license new radio stations is expected to have a positive impact on the industry.

In March 2007, government approved the establishment of a new state-owned company that will provide long-distance connectivity to the country's telecommunications market on a cost basis. The new company, Infraco, will not be a fully fledged telecommunications company itself, but will act as a provider of broadband capacity through fibre-optic cables to other operators in the country.

Infraco will bring together fibre-optic cable networks, originally built by state companies Eskom and Transnet. The move forms part of South Africa's attempts to bring down the cost of telecommunications and Internet connectivity in the country.

Print

Technical handling of the print media in South Africa rates among the best in the world. This is one reason why newspapers, and especially magazines, have held their own in a volatile information era, identified by the vast development of various new forms of media-delivery platforms via the Internet through modern communications technology. This must be viewed against the general trend in the rest of the developed world that saw dropping circulations and the cutting back on costs or closing down of newspapers.

The roots of the print media in South Africa can be traced back to the 19th century, when the first issue of a government newspaper, the *Cape Town Gazette, African Advertiser/Kaapsche Stads Courant en Afrikaansche Berigter*, was published in 1800.

The first independent publication, *The South African Commercial Advertiser*, was published in 1824 by Thomas Pringle and John Fairbairn. It was banned 18 months later and reappeared only after various representations had been made to the authorities in London.

Official circulation figures issued by the Audit Bureau of Circulations (ABC) show that print media circulation grew from 19 million in 2000 to 26 million in 2005, indicating that South Africa's print media industry is flourishing.

The country's vibrant economy, the introduction of regional tabloid newspapers in recent years and

a glut of new magazine titles have helped feed the popularity of newspapers and magazines in Africa's largest economy.

High consumer spending has coincided with strong circulations in specific newspaper genres, particularly tabloids and free-sheets. The adoption of more efficient delivery and distribution systems has boosted the growth of tabloids, community newspapers and free-sheets, in particular.

Despite intense competition among both newspapers and magazines, circulation figures for July to December 2006 showed readership growth across almost all consumer segments. However, this hike in the market did not prevent the closure of three newspapers over the past few years.

The challenges facing newspapers and magazines have remained much the same in the past decade: improving the quality of journalism in increasingly younger newsrooms, and the threat posed to circulation and market share by the electronic media.

Most South African newspapers and magazines are organised into several major publishing houses: Media 24 (part of Naspers, the largest media group in Africa), the Irish-based Independent News & Media (Pty) Limited group, Caxton Publishers & Printers Limited, and Johnnic Communications and Associated Magazines.

Other important media players include M & G Media Limited; the Natal Witness Printing & Publishing Company (Pty) Limited; Primedia Publishing Limited; Ramsay, Son and Parker (Pty) Limited; and Kagiso Media.

The issue of BEE is being addressed by all companies, some of which have progressed further than others. Larger listed companies have tended to make faster progress with BEE than smaller ones.

Globally competitive IT systems, especially among the large media houses, have helped improve the overall technical quality of print media, and have also positively affected distribution and circulation reach.

Newspapers

Most South African newspapers are based on the British model. Management and editorial departments are controlled separately.

The size of the country – 1 400 km separate the main centres of Cape Town and Johannesburg – still precludes national dailies in the true sense of the word.

In the past few years, three newspapers, *Nova*, *ThisDay* and *Die Wêreld*, failed to break into the higher-income consumer segment. This has been ascribed to overtrading in this segment. Observers



State-owned signal-provider, Sentech, is on course to providing about 80% digital terrestrial transmission coverage by the start of the 2010 FIFA World Cup in South Africa.

Sentech intends to launch at least one high-definition television satellite channel in time for the World Cup.

The company will also build a second teleport to provide additional capacity needed for the satellite uplink.

In line with the Government's technology plan for 2010, the SABC also plans to have six more high-definition units in place by the end of 2009.

The Cabinet approved the move for the country's digital migration process to be switched on by 1 November 2008, with analogue signals set to be switched off on 1 November 2011.

have also suggested that many higher-income readers are now turning to the Internet for news.

Advertising spend on newspaper advertising remained slightly higher than the spend on TV, as was the case the year before. The dramatic success of populist tabloids and the wide distribution of community newspapers and free-sheets have been largely responsible for the recent success of newspapers.

The tabloid market is thriving, while circulation trends in dailies and weeklies remain largely static. By the end of 2006, urban dailies were selling an average of 1 605 million copies a day, which was slightly higher than the 1 501 million a day in 2004. The most dramatic growth in circulation is still the tabloid *Daily Sun*. Circulation figures of the country's oldest Sunday newspapers, *Sunday Times* and *Rapport*, have remained average, with the *Sunday Sun* and *City Press* growing incrementally.

Sunday papers such as *Sunday Times*, *City Press*, *Rapport*, *Sunday World* and *Sunday Tribune* have wide national distribution, because electronic printing presses have enabled the simultaneous publication of these newspapers in several cities.

By mid-2007, there were 22 dailies and nine Sunday papers in South Africa. In 2006, four of the daily newspapers had circulations of over 100 000 and accounted for almost 50% of the total circulation in this category.

They were *Beeld* (104 932), *Daily Sun* (467 681), *Sowetan* (133 195) and *The Star* (168 776) (ABC July to September 2006). The total circulation for these four grew by 3,3%, while the rest of the category only grew by 0,8%.

Almost 150 regional or country newspapers, most of which are weekly tabloids, serve particular towns or districts in the country by covering local affairs and carrying local advertising.

Most are published in English or Afrikaans, with many of them bilingual. The most popular publication day is Thursday, followed by Tuesday, and the bigger publications appear twice weekly.

Newspapers appearing only in certain neighbourhoods are also an important part of the newspaper scene and number in the hundreds. They are known as knock-and-drops, free-sheets or freebies, as they are distributed free of charge.

They have a guaranteed readership, with advertising being their only source of income. More than 4,5 million newspapers in this sector are distributed weekly. Press groups such as Media24, and especially CTP/Caxton, are major players in this field.

Since 1996, local newspapers, freebies and corporate newspapers have ventured into reporting in indigenous languages. In Durban, Independent Newspapers started the isiZulu newspaper *Isolezwe*, which is another success story. Since becoming a daily, the newspaper's circulation grew from 88 456 in 2005 to 96 485 at the end of 2006.

With 11 official languages, it can be expected that more home-language publications will emerge. Separate newspapers for different cultural groups are still preferred, with English being the popular language of choice. Johnnic Communications, the co-publisher of *Business Day*, started publishing the *Sunday Times* as a daily (*The Times*) in 2007.

The lucrative Afrikaans advertising market has led to the launch of another Sunday national, *Sondag*, published from May 2007 by Media24 in competition with their other Sunday publication, *Rapport*.

The establishment of the Media Development and Diversity Agency (MDDA) has stimulated the growth of new community titles, focusing on specific communities in areas where community media have not been established.

The community newspaper industry sector has seen the launch of a number of new titles, with the daily and weekend market remaining static.

More national newspapers are expanding their reach through regional editions, targeting specific communities.

Free newspapers have seen a 38% increase in their total circulation, as opposed to the 3% for its sold equivalent.

Tabloid newspapers have seen an increase in their circulation and readership, mainly attributed to the success of the *Daily Sun*, with 3 679 million readers and an audited circulation of 494 875 copies per day.

A number of national newspapers have expanded their reach into regional editions, contributing to the growth within this sector.

Soccer Laduma, South Africa's popular soccer newspaper, saw a significant increase in circulation, up from 280 933 in 2005 to 303 461 in 2006.

Mail & Guardian, known for top investigative journalism stories, witnessed a similar growth from 41 723 in 2005 to 48 292 in 2006. *Ilanga* saw a decline from 108 858 in 2005 to 100 906 in 2006.

Die Son, an Afrikaans Cape Town-based tabloid, witnessed a major decline in circulation from 172 612 in 2005 to 76 830 in 2006.

Weekend newspapers

In 2006/07, 71% of the larger-than-average weekend newspapers showed growth or were static.

Twenty-nine percent declined, with 54% of the smaller-than-average titles remaining static or showing a slight growth.

In total, weekend newspapers saw a 2% increase in total circulation.

Sunday Times remained South Africa's most read and sold weekly Sunday newspaper, with a circulation of 504 475 in 2006. This was down from 509 160 for the same quarter in 2005.

Rapport, the Afrikaans Sunday newspaper, remained in second position, witnessing a decline from 304 535 in 2005 to 300 338 in 2006.

Sunday Sun, *Sunday World* and *City Press* witnessed significant increases. *Sunday Sun* increased from 188 369 to 200 315, *Sunday World* from 155 997 to 184 772, and *City Press* from 175 125 to 183 101 in 2006.

Saturday-edition newspapers saw a similar trend, with the *Saturday Star* increasing its circulation from 136 557 to 137 196 in 2006.

Die Burger (Saturday-edition) witnessed a slight decline from 112 260 in 2005 to 103 862 in 2006.

Community newspapers

Community newspapers showed a 7% increase in total circulation, despite fierce competition and the fragmentation of this market.

Paid-for and free community newspapers saw either a significant increase or remained static within this market.

Free community newspapers remain the most popular medium, with 171 million copies distributed annually, or on average four million copies per week.

Magazine circulation and readership

The magazine industry in South Africa is a fiercely competitive environment in which new titles appear all the time, despite the worldwide competition

from electronic and interactive media. Considering the proliferation of titles on the shelves in supermarkets and bookstores, it seems that many readers are still attracted to print.

The trend to target certain niche markets with specialised publications is popular in the magazine industry and has led this section to grow by 40% more titles over the last 10 years. However, there is evidence to suggest that the overall reading population in South Africa is shrinking, which is a concern for the industry.

A positive development has been the segmentation of the market into niched publications that provide opportunities for advertisers to reach their target audiences. Another new thriving trend is twinned titles, i.e. titles produced in two languages.

All magazines did better in 2006 because of new titles, with free magazines increasing by 6%, customer magazines by 8% and consumer magazines by 9%, as compared with 2005.

Because of rising printing and paper costs, prices have increased accordingly and magazines have had to offer readers better value for their money to retain their loyalty.

Weeklies *Huisgenoot* and *You* are the two biggest money-making magazines in South Africa. Among the monthlies, women's magazines are still the most widely distributed, despite declining sales. *Sarie*, *Rooi Rose*, *Cosmopolitan*, *True Love*, *Move* and *Idees/Ideas* are all in the top-10.

Women's magazines

In the women's magazine sector, publications have had to market themselves aggressively to survive.

Overall, there was a decline in circulation in this sector, although certain publications showed growth.

For instance, *Cosmopolitan* increased from 125 427 to 126 317 in the period March 2006 to March 2007. *Glamour's* circulation decreased from 101 877 to 87 011 over the same period, while *Elle's* figures decreased from 39 012 to 35 489.

Essentials decreased from 61 931 to 43 805, and *Fairlady* decreased from 84 631 to 80 950. *Femina* dropped from 50 941 to 40 564, and *Marie Claire* increased slightly from 45 916 to 47 482, while *True Love* decreased from 122 600 to 106 441. *Oprah's* circulation declined from 75 396 to 62 953.

In the Afrikaans market, a similar trend was apparent. *Rooi Rose* decreased from 123 550 to 108 146, and the weekly *Vroue Keur* from 96 887 to 84 848. *Sarie* remains a leader in the sector, but its figures also decreased slightly from 131 968 to 123 396.

There were three new entrants in this category, namely *Mel*, *Real Simple* and *True Love Babe*.

General interest titles

This category showed quite a number of new magazines, namely *African Pilot*, *LIG*, *mense*, *NAG*, *SA Computer Magazine*, *Tribute*, *Garden Route Living*, *Sunshine Coast Living*, *Wishlist*, *Taalgenoot* and *Village Life*.

Even though the circulation of *Bona* decreased from 93 818 to 85 390, it is still one of the top-20 selling magazines. *Reader's Digest* decreased from 75 889 to 66 267. *Catslife* and *Rolling Inspiration* also decreased slightly.

People's and *TV Plus's* circulation also decreased, but still remained in the top-20.

Animaltalk, *Heat* and *HQ's* circulation figures increased. *Top Billing* increased quite significantly from 28 284 to 38 518.

Farmer's Weekly, *Landbouweekblad*, *Noseweek*, *The Big Issue*, *Dog Directory* and *Hype* remained stable. Although *Insig* remained stable, the last issue of the magazine appeared in June 2007.

Sales of the two top-selling weeklies, *You* and *Huisgenoot*, at 216 315 and 340 114 respectively, decreased by about 9 000 and 15 000 respectively.

Drum's figures decreased, and those of *Bona* declined from 103 543 to 98 689. *People's* figures also decreased and *TV Plus's* figures declined by more than 30 000.

Décor

Décor magazines, on the other hand, proved in general to be a growth area. *House* and *Garden*, *Visi*, *Plascon Colour* and *Habitat* remained stable.

House & Leisure's and *Tuis/Home's* figures increased slightly.

Elle Decoration's figures increased from 24 103 to 29 771. *SA Home Owner's* figures decreased from 55 699 to 51 464.

Parenting

In general, this category is also a growing market. The titles *Baba en Kleuter* and *Your Baby* remained fairly stable. *Healthy Pregnancy* gained readership, and *Living and Loving's* figures remained stable, as was *Parents*. This category also produced a new entrant, *Your Child*.

Youth

There has been a proliferation of magazines in the youth sector in the last few years and it clearly remains a significant, though volatile market. *Saltwater Girl* maintained its position as the top-selling female teen magazine in South Africa. Overall best seller was *National Geographic Kids* at 34 596, while *Barbie's* figures remained stable at just over 16 000.

Male interest

GQ's figures dropped from 33 023 to 30 220, as did *FHM*, from 114 494 to 92 361. *Men's Health* also showed a slight decline. Two new magazines were launched in this category, namely *Zoo* and the Afrikaans magazine, *Manwees*.

Motoring

Car's figures declined from 112 627 to 107 902, while *Speed and Sound* remained relatively stable. *Topcar's* figures also grew, while *Wiel's* figures remained stable.

Two new magazines, namely *Drive 2.0* and *Maxpower SA*, joined the category.

Lifestyle

Weg/Go continued to corner the Afrikaans outdoor lifestyle market with an increase from 79 431 to 114 169. *Getaway's* figures showed a steady decline from 76 319 to 68 840, although the Afrikaans version is growing steadily.

Woolworth's *Taste* increased from 27 456 to 38 503. *Country Life* and *Caravan and Outdoor Life* are extremely niched publications that have a consistent readership.

Sport

Amakhosi dropped from 31 142 to 28 020, while the figures of *Bicycling SA* increased slightly. *Bike SA* declined slightly. *Compleat Golfer* remained stable, while *Golf Digest* grew from 27 405 to 31 840.

Kick Off at 60 344 continued to attract loyal readers, while *Soccer Life's* sales figures reflected its popularity.

Runners' World remained steady at around 19 000, while *SA Sports Illustrated's* circulation increased from 38 184 to 42 135.



Over 1 600 delegates from 105 countries got together in Cape Town in June 2007 for Africa's inaugural hosting of the premier global meeting of the world's press: the World Association of Newspapers Congress, World Editors' Forum and Info Services Expo 2007.

The event saw publishers, chief editors, chief executive officers and other senior executives of the world's leading media companies sharing strategies, innovations and ideas for the future of their industry.

President Thabo Mbeki officially opened the congress.

Special interest

Finweek showed a healthy increase from 29 003 to 34 374. *Financial Mail* also increased from 28 538 to 32 114. The readership of *Wine* remained steady, while sales of *Popular Mechanics* increased from 34 374 to 37 367.

Distribution

In cities, newspapers rely heavily on street sales and door-to-door delivery. Cafés, spaza shops and general stores provide additional selling points. In rural areas, newspapers are distributed mainly by special truck deliveries, often covering hundreds of kilometres in a single run. The cost of bulk transport by air is high.

Newspaper Circulation Services and Magazine Circulation Services handle all Johnnic Communications' circulation.

The Afrikaans press group, Media24 (Nasionale Nuusdistribueerders – NND 24), handles most of its distribution in-house.

Allied Publishing handles the distribution for Independent Newspapers, and RNA Distributors handles distribution for Caxton/CTP.

Online media

South African websites attract close to 4,5 million highly educated users. Johannesburg has the largest audience with 30% of users, followed by Cape Town (20%), Pretoria (15%) and Durban (10%). The sites most visited are MWEB, News24, Independent Online, Ananzi en Fin24. (Online Press Association [OPA] 2006).

Media organisations and role-players

Print Media South Africa (PMSA), formed in 1996, administers individual bodies, namely the Newspaper Association of South Africa (the oldest communication organisation, established in 1882), Magazine Publishers Association of South Africa and the Association of Independent Publishers (AIP).

The purpose of the PMSA is to represent, promote, interact with and intervene in all matters concerning the collective industry and of common interest. It represents some 650 newspaper and magazine titles in South Africa.

PMSA is a member of a number of international bodies, such as the World Association of Newspapers (WAN) and the Federation of Periodical Press. It hosted the annual congress of the WAN in Cape Town in June 2007. Allied to PMSA, but not a constituent member, is the ABC, responsible for auditing and verifying print-media circulation figures.

The AIP was formed in September 2004 after the major publishing groups withdrew from the Community Press Association (CPA) to give independent publishers an opportunity to transform the CPA into an association that would serve their own specific needs. The AIP represents the interests of more than 250 independent publishers in southern Africa.

The South African National Editors' Forum (Sanef) was conceived at a meeting of the Black Editors' Forum, the Conference of Editors, and senior journalism educators and trainers, in October 1996.

Sanef membership includes editors and senior journalists from the print, broadcast and online/Internet media, as well as journalism educators from all the major training institutions in South Africa.

Sanef has facilitated the mobilisation of the media in the Partnership Against AIDS Campaign, and in campaigns to end violence against women and children.

Various seminars and debates are held around media freedom and transformation, especially in relation to gender and technology. Sanef is involved in training initiatives and in setting practical standards in journalism education.

Against the backdrop of positive political developments on the African continent, Sanef spearheaded the formation of the All Africa Editor's Conference.

The Southern African Editors' Forum was subsequently formed in 2003. The Central, Eastern, Western and Northern African Forum bodies are in various stages of being established.

The Forum of Black Journalists tackles issues that directly affect its members.

Members of the public who have complaints or concerns about reports in newspapers and magazines, can submit their grievances to the Office of the Press Ombudsman.

Winners of major annual press trophies

	Frewin*	McCall**	Cronwright***	Hultzer****	Joel Mervis*****
2003	Beeld	Business Day	South Coast Herald	Springs and Brakpan Advertiser	Mail & Guardian
2004	Beeld	Witness	Paarl Post	Eikestadnuus	Naweek-Beeld
2005	The Witness	The Witness	The Mirror	Eikestadnuus	Weekend Witness
2006	Die Burger	The Witness	District Mail	Potchefstroom Herald	Mail & Guardian
2007	Beeld	Mercury and Business Day (shared)	Paarl Post	Springs Advertiser	Mail & Guardian
*	Best daily newspaper with a circulation above 50 000				
**	Best daily with a circulation under 50 000				
***	Best community newspaper with a circulation exceeding 15 000				
****	Best community newspaper with a circulation below 15 000				
*****	Best urban weekly.				

Source: Print Media South Africa

Should they not be satisfied with the resultant ruling, they can lodge an appeal with an independent appeal panel. The Office of the Press Ombudsman was set up by the PMSA, Sanef, the Media Workers' Association of South Africa, and the South African Union of Journalists (SAUJ).

As self-regulating mechanisms of the media industry, the Press Ombudsman and the appeal panel act in accordance with the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 and embrace the spirit of transformation in South Africa.

The Freedom of Expression Institute (FXI) was established in 1994 to protect and foster the rights to freedom of expression and access to information, and to oppose censorship.

The FXI undertakes a wide range of activities in support of its objectives, including lobbying, educating, monitoring, research, publicity, litigation and the funding of legal cases that advance these rights.

In the process, it networks and collaborates with a wide range of local and international organisations.

Another body that protects freedom of speech is the Freedom of Commercial Speech Trust. Backed

by the marketing communication industry and supported by organised business and consumer organisations, the trust focuses on transparent negotiations with legislators.

In September 2004, the Forum of Community Journalists (FCJ) relaunched the organisation as an independent body, to serve the interests of all community-newspaper journalists in southern Africa. The FCJ was originally set up as a sub-structure of the CPA, and only represented journalists employed at member organisations.

The decision to become an independent body followed the restructuring of the CPA into the AIP.

The FCJ's launch as an independent body allows it to represent all journalists, including independent community-press journalists. It also assists in meeting its objective of becoming a more diverse and representative body for the community-press industry.

The Broadcasting Complaints Commission of South Africa is an independent self-regulatory body that serves as a voluntary watchdog, to adjudicate complaints from the public about programmes flighted by members who subscribe to its code of conduct. Members include, among others, the

SABC, M-Net, Radio 702 and Trinity Broadcasting Network. However, the commission does not deal with X-rated material, the broadcast of which, under criminal law, is prohibited.

The Broadcasting Monitoring Complaints Committee (BMCC) was established under sections 21 and 22 of the Independent Broadcasting Authority Act, 1993 (Act 153 of 1993).

It monitors broadcasting licensees for their compliance with, or adherence to, the terms, conditions and obligations of:

- their broadcasting licences
- the Code of Conduct for Broadcasting Services
- the Code of Advertising Practice.

The BMCC receives and adjudicates complaints from the public regarding licence conditions, and is also entitled to initiate its own investigations into suspected non-compliance by a broadcaster.

If a member of the public is concerned that a broadcaster is not observing its licence conditions, that person may lodge a complaint with Icasa. If a broadcaster is found to be guilty of contravening its licence conditions, then the BMCC makes recommendations to Icasa about action that should be taken.

Material that could be considered X-rated must be submitted to the Film and Publication Board prior to being shown. (See Chapter 4: *Arts and culture*.)

The mission of the National Association of Broadcasters is to protect the interests of broadcasting as a whole, and to liaise with Icasa on matters such as freedom of speech.

Other press organisations operating in the country are the Foreign Correspondents' Association of South Africa, the Printing Industries Federation of South Africa, the South African Typographical Union, the Specialist Press Association, the South African Guild of Motoring Journalists, Professional Photographers of South Africa, the Media Institute of Southern Africa, and press clubs in major centres.

The mission of the OPA is to provide a non-profit forum in which South African online publishers can address issues of common interest, and which can represent these publishers to advertising agencies and the advertising community, the press, government and the public.

The National Community Radio Forum (NCRF), launched in December 1993, lobbies for the airwaves in South Africa to be diversified, and for a dynamic broadcasting environment through the establishment of community radio stations.

The NCRF is a national, member-driven association of community-owned and -run radio stations and support-service organisations. Radio-

station members are independent, non-profit community-based organisations.

News agencies

The South African Press Association (Sapa), a national news agency, is a co-operative, non-profit news-gathering and distribution organisation operating in the interests of its members and the public. Sapa's foreign news is received from Associated Press (AP) and its representatives in London.

The main foreign news agencies operating in South Africa are *Agence France-Presse*, AP, *Deutsche Presse Agentur*, Reuters and United Press International.

Other agencies are the Eastern Cape News Agency and African Eye News Service in Mpumalanga.

Training centres

Over 40 institutions offer media training in South Africa. Tertiary institutions include various universities of technology such as Tshwane, Walter Sisulu, Nelson Mandela, the Cape Peninsula and Durban; and Rhodes, North-West, Stellenbosch and Witwatersrand universities.

Other organisations such as the Cape Town Film and Television School; the SABC's Television Training Centre; the Radio Freedom Institute; the Institute for the Advancement of Journalism; the Cross Media Training Centre; and Nemisa, a government-funded training institute, specialise in broadcasting, news-media and multimedia skills.

Nemisa is a non-profit organisation established in terms of the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973), which provides much-needed advanced skills training for the broadcasting industry. It has Council for Higher Education accreditation and offers diploma courses, short courses and internships in TV and radio production and creative multimedia.



In June 2007, a working session of the South African National Editors' Forum (Sanef) and government was held in Pretoria.

Representatives of government and media met to discuss matters impacting on their working relationships.

The government delegation was led by President Thabo Mbeki and Deputy President Phumzile Mlambo-Ngcuka. The Sanef delegation was led by the Sanef Management Committee and included editors and senior journalists from some 20 titles and analysts.

It was agreed that in future, such meetings should be held annually.

The Media, Advertising, Publishing, Printing and Packaging Sector Education and Training Authority (Mappp-Seta) was gazetted on 15 March 2000. It has six advisory committees, comprising representatives from labour, business and government that advise on:

- print media
- advertising
- publishing
- printing
- packaging
- film and electronic media.

The Mappp-Seta co-ordinates a sector-training plan across the media industry, and assesses the quality of training courses that are run by the industry.

Parallel to this, the South African Qualifications Authority has approved the establishment of several standards-generating bodies for the media industry.

Similar bodies were implemented for journalism training and communication studies. These bodies are substructures of the National Standards Body (language and communication) that co-ordinates standard-setting in the communication and language sectors.

Journalism awards

The most important awards include the:

- Mondi Shanduka Newspaper Awards
- Nat Nakasa Award for Courageous Journalism
- Sappi Magazine Publishers Association of South Africa PICA Awards
- Sanlam Community Press Awards
- Vodacom Awards for Journalism Across All Mediums
- South African Breweries (SAB) Journalism Awards
- Sanlam's Financial Journalist of the Year Award.

The Mondi Shanduka Journalist of the Year 2007 was Bruce Cameron for his investigative work in Independent Newspapers' *Personal Finance*.

Journalist and editor Raymond Louw was chosen as the recipient of the Mondi Shanduka Lifetime Achievement Award. Veteran journalist and executive producer of the investigative journalism programme, *Special Assignment*, on SABC3, Jacques Pauw, was awarded the 2007 Nat Nakasa award.

Trevor Cramer, sports journalist of South Africa's largest independent radio station, Jacaranda 94.2, received a merit award at the SAB Sports Journalist of the Year Awards.

Media diversity

Media diversity in any country is regarded as a measure of the depth of its democracy. Every citizen should have access to a diverse range of media. South Africa is on its way towards achieving this mission.

The Constitution provides for freedom of expression and access to information. To deepen media diversity, government, together with commercial media entities, have partnered to assist the MDDA, which is tasked with providing financial and other support to community and small commercial media projects.

Top 20 magazines based on net sales, October to December 2006

1	Huisgenoot
2	You
3	TV Plus
4	Ideas/Idees
5	Sarie
6	Weg/Go
7	Cosmopolitan
8	People
9	Rooi Rose
10	True Love
11	Woman and Home
12	Move
13	Car
14	FHM
15	Finesse
16	Men's Health
17	Tuis/Home
18	Bona
19	SA Garden and Home
20	Fairlady

Daily and weekly newspapers

Name and website	Publisher	Contact information	Frequency	Language	Total circulation (Oct – Dec 2006)
Beeld (Daily) <i>www.beeld.com</i>	Media 24	PO Box 333, Auckland Park, 2006 T. 011 713-9000 / F. 011 713-9956 E-mail: <i>nuus@beeld.com</i>	MD, M-F	A	99 162
Beeld (Saturday)	Media 24	PO Box 333, Auckland Park, 2006	W, Sat	A	84 305
Burger, Die (Daily)	Media 24	PO Box 692, Cape Town, 8000	MD, M-F	A	91 216
Burger, Die (Saturday) <i>www.dieburger.com</i>	Media 24	PO Box 692, Cape Town, 8000 T. 021 406-2121 / F. 021 406-3965 E-mail: <i>dbnred@dieburger.com</i>	W, Sat	A	103 862
Business Day <i>www.businessday.co.za</i>	BDFM Publishers (Pty) Ltd	PO Box 1746, Saxonwold, 2132 T. 011 280-5548 / F. 011 280-5505 E-mail: <i>busday@bdfm.co.za</i>	MD, M-F	E	41 914
Cape Argus, The <i>www.capeargus.co.za</i>	Independent Newspapers Cape Ltd	PO Box 56, Cape Town, 8000 T. 021 488-4911 / F. 021 488-4156 E-mail: <i>argusnews@ctn.independent.co.za</i>	MD, M-F	E	73 414
Cape Times <i>www.iol.co.za</i>	Independent Newspapers Cape Ltd	PO Box 11, Cape Town, 8000 T. 021 488-4911 / F. 021 488-4717 E-mail: <i>chriswh@independent.co.za</i>	MD, M-F	E	49 647
Citizen, The (Daily) <i>www.citizen.co.za</i>	Caxton Publishers & Printers Ltd	PO Box 43069, Industria, 2042 T. 011 248-6000 / F. 011 248-6213 E-mail: <i>citizen@citizen.co.za</i>	MD, M-F	E	71 432
Citizen, The (Saturday)	Caxton Publishers & Printers Ltd	PO Box 43069, Industria, 2042	W, Sat	E	52 217
City Press <i>www.citypress.co.za</i>	RCP Media Bpk	PO Box 3413, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 713-9001/ F. 011 713-9966 E-mail: <i>news@citypress.co.za</i>	W, Sun	E	183 101
Daily Dispatch <i>www.dispatch.co.za</i>	Dispatch Media (Pty) Ltd	PO Box 131, East London, 5200 T. 043 702-2000 / F. 043 743-5155 E-mail: <i>news@dispatch.co.za</i>	MD, M-F	E	31 666
Daily News, The <i>www.dailynews.co.za</i>	Independent Newspapers KZN	PO Box 46915, Greyville, 4023 T. 031 308-2911 / F. 013 308-2111 E-mail: <i>dennis.pather@inl.co.za</i>	MD, M-F	E	50 229
Daily Sun	Media 24	PO Box 121, Auckland Park, 2006 T. 011 877-6000 / F. 011 877-6046 E-mail: <i>news@dailysun.co.za</i>	M-F	E	494 875
Diamond Fields Advertiser	Independent Newspapers Gauteng Ltd	PO Box 610, Kimberley, 8300 T. 053 832-6261 / F. 053 832-8902 E-mail: <i>pbe@independent.co.za</i>	MD, M-F	E	9 364
Herald, The <i>www.theherald.co.za</i>	Johnnic Pub. Eastern Cape	P/Bag x6071, Port Elizabeth, 6000 T. 041 504-7911 / F. 041 585-4966 E-mail: <i>theherald@johnnic.ec.co.za</i>	MD, M-F	E	26 860
Ilanga <i>www.ilanganeews.co.za</i>	Mandla Matla Publishing Co (Pty) Ltd	PO Box 2159, Durban, 4000 T. 031 337-4000 / F. 031 337-9785 E-mail: <i>newsroom@ilanganeews.co.za</i>	BW, Mo ,Th	Z	100 906
Isolezwe	Independent Newspapers	PO Box 47549, Greyville, 4023 T. 031 308 2878 / F. 031 308 2885	MD, M-F	Z	96 485
Independent on Saturday, The <i>www.iol.co.za</i>	Independent Newspapers KZN	PO Box 4759, Greyville, 4023 T. 031 308-2934 / F. 013 308-2111 E-mail: <i>trevor.bruce@inl.co.za</i>	W, Sat	E	59 905
Mail and Guardian <i>www.mg.co.za</i>	M&G Media (Pty) Ltd	PO Box 91667, Auckland Park, 2006 T. 011 250-7300 / F. 011 250-7502 E-mail: <i>newsdesk@mg.co.za</i>	W, Fr	E	48 292
Mercury, The <i>www.themercury.co.za</i>	Independent Newspapers KZN	PO Box 47549, Greyville, 4023 T. 031 308-2911 / F. 031 308-2333 E-mail: <i>mercnews@inl.co.za</i>	MD, M-F	E	40 683
Post	Independent Newspapers KZN	PO Box 47549, Greyville, 4023 T. 031 308-2529 / F. 031 308-2555 E-mail: <i>khalil.aniff@inl.co.za</i>	W, Wed	E	47 151
Pretoria News <i>www.ptanews.co.za</i>	Independent Newspapers Gauteng Ltd	PO Box 439, Pretoria, 0001 T. 012 300-2000 / F. 012 328-7166 E-mail: <i>pta.news@inl.co.za</i>	MD, M-F	E	29 776

Daily and weekly newspapers

Name and website	Publisher	Contact information	Frequency	Language	Total circulation (Oct – Dec 2006)
Pretoria News (Saturday)	Independent Newspapers Gauteng Ltd	PO Box 439, Pretoria, 0001 T. 012 300-2000 / F. 012 328-7166 E-mail: pta.news@inl.co.za	W, Sat	E	19 761
Rapport www.rapport.co.za	RCP Media	PO Box 8422, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 713-9537 / F. 012 713-9977 E-mail: rapport@rapport.co.za	W, Sun	A	300 338
Saturday Dispatch	Dispatch Media (Pty) Ltd	PO Box 131, East London, 5200 T. 043 702-2000 / F. 043 743-2968	W, Sat	E	24 431
Saturday Star, The	Independent Newspapers Gauteng Ltd	PO Box 1014, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 633-2792 / F. 011 633-2794 E-mail: star@inl.co.za	W, Sat	E	137 196
Soccer-Laduma www.soccerladuma.co.za	CT Media Proprietor	PO Box 787, Sea Point, 8060 T. 021 425-1200 / F. 021 425-1247	W, Wed	E	303 461
Son, Die www.dieson.co.za	Media 24	PO Box 692, Cape Town, 8000 T. 021 406-2075 / F. 021 406-3221	MD, Mo - Fri	A	72 049
Southern Cross, The www.scross.co.za	Catholic Newspapers & Pub Co Ltd	PO Box 2372, Cape Town, 8000 T. 021 465-5007 / F. 021 465-3850 E-mail: editor@scross.co.za	W, Sun	E	11 171
Sowetan www.sowetan.co.za	New Africa Publications (NAP) Ltd	PO Box 6663, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 471-4000 / F. 011 474-8834 E-mail: editor@sowetan.co.za	M-F	E	134 818
Sunday World www.sundayworld.co.za	NAP Ltd	PO Box 6663, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 471-4200 / F. 011 471-4164 E-mail: newsed@sundayworld.co.za	W, Sun	E	155 997
Star, The www.iol.co.za	Independent Newspapers Gauteng Ltd	PO Box 1014, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 633-9111 / F. 011 836-6186 E-mail: starnews@star.co.za	MD, M-F	E	163 332
Sunday Independent www.iol.co.za	Independent Newspapers Gauteng, Ltd	PO Box 1014, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 633-9111 / F. 011 834-7520 E-mail: jovial.rantao@inl.co.za	W, Sun	E	42 617
Sunday Sun	RCP Media Ltd	PO Box 3413, Johannesburg, 2000 T. 011 713-9001 / F. 011 713-9731	W, Sun	E	200 315
Sunday Times www.sundaytimes.co.za	Johnnic Pub.	P/Bag x57, Saxonwold, 2132 T. 011 280-3000 / F. 011 280-5150 E-mail: suntimes@tml.co.za	W, Sun	E	504 475
Sunday Tribune	Independent Newspapers KZN	PO Box 47549, Greyville, 4023 T. 031 308-2711 / F. 011 308-2357 E-mail: tribunenews@inl.co.za	W, Sun	E	113 681
Volksblad, Die www.volksblad.com	Media24	PO Box 267, Bloemfontein, 9300 T. 051 404-7600 / F. 051 430-6949 E-mail: nuus@volksblad.com	MD, M-F	A	28 476
Volksblad, Die (Saturday)	Media24	PO Box 267, Bloemfontein, 9300 T. 051 404-7600 / F. 051 430-7034	W, Sat	A	23 877
Weekend Argus	Independent Newspapers Cape Ltd	PO Box 56, Cape Town, 8000 T. 021 488-4528 / F. 021 488-4597 E-mail: ryan.cresswell@inl.co.za	W, Sat & Sun	E	104 013
Weekend Post	Johnnic Pub. Eastern Cape	P/Bag x6071, Port Elizabeth, 6000 T. 041 504-7911 / F. 041 585-4966 E-mail: weekend@johnnic.co.za	Sat	E	28 788
Witness www.witness.co.za	Natal Witness Pr & Pub Co (Pty) Ltd	PO Box 362, Pietermaritzburg, 3200 T. 033 355-1111 / F. 033 355-1122 E-mail: newsed@witness.co.za	MD, M-F	E	23 089
Weekend Witness	Natal Witness Pr & Pub Co Pty Ltd	PO Box 362, Pietermaritzburg, 3200 T. 033 355-1111 / F. 033 355-1122 E-mail: johnc@witness.co.za	W, Sat	E	29 521

The abbreviations used are the following: MD (morning daily), BW (biweekly), M-F (Monday to Friday), Mo (Monday), Tu (Tuesday), W (Wednesday), Th (Thursday), Fri (Friday), Sat (Saturday), Sun (Sunday), A (Afrikaans), E (English), Z (isiZulu).

Media Development and Diversity Agency

The MDDA was established in terms of the MDDA Act, 2002 (Act 14 of 2002), which provides for the establishment of an independent, statutory body, jointly funded by government, the media industry and other donors.

The Electronic Communications Act, 2005 provides for a sustainable mechanism for funding the objects of the MDDA Act, 2002 through contributions from broadcasting service licensees.

The MDDA is tasked with creating an enabling environment for media diversity and development by providing support to media projects, and facilitating research into media development and diversity issues. The agency functions independently from and at arm's length of its funders, political-party and commercial interests. This arrangement enables government, the media industry and donors to work together in addressing the legacy of imbalances in access to the media.

The MDDA awarded its first grants to community and small commercial media projects in January 2004.

By the end of March 2007, the MDDA had provided support to some 135 different media and research projects. The MDDA provides support to existing grassroots media projects, and assists in establishing new media projects targeting neglected audiences. Over one third of the projects supported are new projects. The MDDA focuses on the goal to ensure that all citizens can access information in a language of their choice, and contributes to the transformation of media access,

ownership and control patterns in South Africa. The purpose is to strengthen the sector through the provision of resources, knowledge and skills in pursuit of promoting media development and diversity.

In addition, the MDDA has conducted workshops on resource mobilisation for media around the country, a community television summit and advertising and marketing round-table, and has provided bursaries for 41 grassroots media managers to attend media-management training.

The MDDA is also working with a range of media-sector and other related organisations to leverage resources for the sector to create an enabling environment for media development. The agency has established partnerships with advertising and marketing organisations to run workshops and mentoring programmes with small media projects.

In 2007/08, the agency received R12 million from government, R4,1 million from broadcasting partners and R3,6 million from print partners. The transfer from Government Communications was increased by R2,2 million for 2006/07 to expand the MDDA's operational activities, especially for additional personnel to monitor funded projects, and also for the anticipated challenges that the Electronic Communications Act, 2005 is likely to pose for the agency.

Advertising

The Loerie Awards are the best-known South African awards recognising excellence in advertising. The Association of Marketers established these awards in 1978 to coincide with the advent of commercial television in South Africa. The first ceremony took place in 1979.

The Loerie Awards ceremony is a self-liquidating event, with excess monies being ploughed back into the industry in the form of bursaries for underprivileged advertising and marketing students via the Loerie Education Trust Fund, and as a donation to the Advertising Benevolent Fund. The main objective of the Loerie Awards is to encourage creative advertising.

The 2007 Loerie Awards were held in July in Margate, KwaZulu-Natal. TBWA/HuntLascaris took the most loeries (61), including the Grand Prix Award. Ogilvy South Africa received 54 loeries, while Network BBDO took home 51 awards.

Other marketing communication awards

In academic circles, advertising is regarded as one of the core elements of any marketing communication



In June 2007, South Africa's creatives picked up gold, silver and bronze Lions at Cannes in the direct mail, media, outdoor, press, promo and radio categories.

Dean Blumberg of Freshwater Films and Grant de Sousa of Collective Energy shared second prize in the CFP-E/Shots Young Director Awards in the non-European broadcast category.

South Africa's 2007 Cannes Lions winners included:

- Cinevation – Bronze Media Lion
- FCB Johannesburg – Gold Direct Lion
- Grey Worldwide – Gold Radio Lion
- Ireland/Davenport – Bronze Press Lion
- Jupiter Drawing Room – Gold Radio Lion
- Lowe Bull Johannesburg – Gold Press Lions, Gold Radio Lion and Bronze Press Lion
- Network BBDO – Gold Outdoor Lion
- Ogilvy South Africa – Bronze Press Lions, Silver Outdoor Lion and Silver Radio Lion
- Tequila – Bronze Media Lion.

strategy. Marketers are increasingly integrating other core marketing-communication elements, such as direct marketing and sponsorship – two of the fastest-growing areas in marketing communication – into their overall campaigns.

The Assegai Awards were introduced in 1998 to honour excellence in direct marketing, strategic prowess and innovation, with an emphasis on results. These are the only South African marketing communication awards that recognise return on investment – measurable and accountable – talking directly to targeted prospects and existing customers by way of various integrated and actionable media. The awards are recognised as the industry benchmark, with a mandate to

promote growth, and to recognise and reward excellence in the direct marketing arena.

Advertising Standards Authority (ASA)

The ASA is the protector of the ethical standards of advertising in South Africa, and protects consumers against manipulative advertising and unfair claims. The ASA is an independent body established and funded by the marketing-communication industry to regulate advertising in the public interest by means of self-regulation. The ASA co-operates with government, statutory bodies, consumer organisations and industry to ensure that advertising content complies with the Code of Advertising Practice.

Adspend by medium – excluding self-promotion

	2005		2006		Rate inflation %
	Rm	Share %	Rm	Share %	
Print	6 804,1	39,7	8 018,8	39,9	6,9
TV	6 331,1	36,9	7 702,6	38,3	7,8
Radio	2 362,2	13,8	2 645,6	13,2	9,0
Outdoor	788,2	4,6	1 023,3	5,1	9,8
Cinema	591,2	3,4	393,3	2,0	137,3
Internet	140,7	0,9	174,1	0,9	n/a
Direct mail	121,5	0,7	136,3	0,7	n/a
Total	17 139	100	20 093,9	100	9,1

Source: Adex Nielsen Media Research/Media Inflation Watch.

South Africa's top 20 advertising agencies – January to December 2006

Ranking 2006	Ranking 2007	Agency name	Income Rm	% Annual growth	Number of staff	Staff to income R000s	Total number of clients	Equity ownership	Representivity
1	1	FCB SA (Johannesburg)	124,6	22,8	247	504	34	35,0%	40,9%
Five biggest accounts in 2006: Toyota, Vodacom, First National Bank, Uthingo, Tiger Brands									
2	2	Ogilvy Johannesburg	113,2	13,2	238	475	67	50,1%	45,8%
Five biggest accounts in 2006: KF, Multichoice, SAB Miller, Sun International, SAA									
4	3	Ogilvy Cape	108,8	17,0	230	473	33	50,1%	44,8%
Five biggest accounts in 2006: VW/Audi, BP/Castrol, BAT, Old Mutual, SAB Miller/Sun International									
3	4	TBWA/Hunt Lascaris Johannesburg	104,9	7,0	127	825	22	30,0%	44,9%
Five biggest accounts in 2006: Standard Bank, Nissan, MTN Retail, Tiger Brands, Motorola									
5	5	Network BBDO	97,0	25,0	95	102	39	40,0%	44,2%
Five biggest accounts in 2006: Nedbank, Cell C, Frito Lay, SAB/Chicken Licken									

Source: Adex Nielsen Media Research/Media Inflation Watch.

Acknowledgements

Adfocus, Financial Mail
 Audit Bureau of Circulation
 Department of Communications
 e.tv
Estimates of National Expenditure 2007, published by National Treasury
 Government Communications
 Independent Communications Authority of South Africa
 Mr P Diederichs, Department of Journalism, Tshwane University of Technology
 Magazine Publishers' Association of South Africa
 Media Development and Diversity Agency
 M-Net
 Print Media SA
 South African Broadcasting Corporation
South African National Editors' Forum
www.arivia.co.za
www.bizcommunity.com
www.etv.co.za
www.fx1.org.za
www.gov.za
www.icasa.org.za
www.mtn.co.za
www.mfsa.co.za
www.opa.co.za
www.orbicom.co.za
www.sabc.co.za
www.sapo.co.za
www.sentech.co.za
www.southafrica.info
www.telkom.co.za
www.theworx.biz
www.vodacom.co.za

Suggested reading

Comley, R. *et al.* eds. *Women by Women: 50 Years of Women's Photography in South Africa* Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2006.
 Du Plessis, F, Bothma, N, Jordaan, Y and Van Heerden, N. *Integrated Marketing Communication*. Cape Town. New Africa Books, 2003.
 Elion, B and Strigman, M. *Clues to Culture*. Camps Bay: One Life Media, 2006.
 Hadland, A. ed. *Changing the Fourth Estate: Essays on South African Journalism*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press, 2005.
 Hadland, A and Thorne, K. *The People's Voice: The Development and Current State of the South African Small Media Sector*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2004.
 Hadland, A, Cowling, L and Tabe, BFT. *Advertising in the News: Paid-for Content and the South African Print Media*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007.

- Hadland, A, Aldridge, M and Ogada, J. *Revisioning Television: Policy, Strategy and Models for the Sustainable Development of Community Television in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007.
- Maseko, L. ed. *Sowetan: Celebrating 25 years of The Soul Truth*. Johannesburg: *The Sowetan*, 2007.
- Nel, F. *Writing for the Media in South Africa*. 2nd ed. Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2003.
- Reynolds, H and Richard, N. *Women Today: A Celebration: Fifty Years of South African Women*. Cape Town: Kwela Books, 2003.
- Steyn-Barlow, C. *Publish and be Damned: Two Decades of Scandals*. Alberton: Galago, 2006.
- Thlabela, K et al. eds. *Mapping ICT Access in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
- Tleane, C and Duncan, J. *Public Broadcasting in the Era of Cost Recovery: A Critique of the South African Broadcasting Corporation's Accountability*. Johannesburg: FXI, 2003.
- Young, L. *The All Africa Internet Guide*. Johannesburg: M&G Books, 2002.



SA YEARBOOK 2007/08 | ECONOMY



South Africa's economy grew by 5% in 2006, representing the highest rate of economic growth in 25 years. After years of rising unemployment, the unemployment rate has declined for three years in a row, with over a million jobs created in this period.

The present economic boom represents one of the longest sustained increases in income in about 40 years.

This growth has been relatively broad-based with the share of income going to Africans rising to above 50% in 2005, from about 40% in 1996. The number of black people entering what is called "the middle class" increased by 30% in a single year to 2,6 million in 2006.

According to a study by the Department of Trade and Industry, the number of small businesses has grown by 150% since 1995 and 87% of these businesses are black-owned.

This economic performance is due to two main factors. Firstly, over the past decade, South Africa has pursued policies that have put the economy on a sound footing, where it is able to grow faster and more sustainably. Secondly, high commodity and a favourable international economic environment have benefited the South African economy, at a time when the economy has been opened up.

Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA)

AsgiSA is a government initiative aimed at ensuring that economic growth is accelerated to on average, at least 4,5% in the next few years, and to an average of 6% between 2010 and 2014. This acceleration of growth is what is required to achieve government's mandate of halving poverty and unemployment by 2014.

AsgiSA also includes infrastructure development to upgrade and build railway lines, harbours, ports and roads over the next five years.

With South Africa's unemployment rate at 25,6% by September 2006, the infrastructure programme is geared towards creating and sustaining employment.

Overall government expenditure for infrastructure spending will total some R410 billion between 2007 and 2010. Of this, about 40% will be spent by public enterprises, mainly Eskom (on energy generation, transmission and distribution) and Transnet (on harbours, ports, railways and petroleum pipelines).

Airports Company South Africa will spend R5,2 billion, which includes airport improvement

and the Dube Trade Port. Some R19,7 billion will go towards water infrastructure.

South Africa will be hosting the 2010 FIFA World Cup™. Existing stadiums are being upgraded and new ones built, and investment is being made in the environment around stadiums and on access to these venues.

There will also be investment in information and communications technology (ICT) to grow South Africa's broadband network rapidly and reduce telephony costs, which will benefit the call-centre sector that represented some 5 000 jobs by mid-2006. This sector has the potential to create 100 000 additional jobs, directly or indirectly, by 2009.

AsgiSA responds to binding constraints, such as the:

- relative volatility and level of the currency
- cost, efficiency and capacity of national logistics systems
- shortage of suitably skilled labour, amplified by the cost effects on labour, of apartheid spatial patterns
- barriers to entry, limits to competition and limited new investment opportunities
- regulatory environment and the burden on small and medium businesses
- deficiencies in state organisation, capacity and leadership.

AsgiSA has also identified particular sectors of the economy for accelerated growth, such as:

- chemicals
- metals beneficiation, including the capital-goods sector
- creative industries (crafts, film, content and music)
- clothing and textiles
- durable consumer goods
- wood, pulp and paper.

Joint Initiative for Priority Skills Acquisition (Jipsa)

On 27 March 2006, Deputy President Phumzile Mlambo-Ngcuka launched Jipsa, the skills-empowerment arm of AsgiSA.

AsgiSA has identified the shortage of skilled labour as one of the six factors that constrain economic growth.

It is a two-tier structure comprising a joint task team and technical working group. The former has the task of unblocking the acquisition of targeted skills, overseeing the work of Jipsa, and ensuring that it delivers on its mandate of acquiring scarce and priority skills in the shortest possible time, building partnerships with different institutions and ensuring that Jipsa initiatives are sustainable.

Based on the priorities of AsgiSA, Jipsa's identified work areas are:

- high-level world-class engineering and planning skills for the network industries, and the transport, communications and energy sectors
- city, urban and regional planning and engineering skills desperately needed by South African municipalities
- artisan and technical skills, with those needed for infrastructure development enjoying priority
- management and planning skills in education, health and municipalities
- teacher training for Mathematics, Science, ICT, and language competence in public education
- specific skills needed by priority AsgiSA sectors starting with tourism and business process outsourcing (BPO) and cross-cutting skills needed by all sectors, especially finance and project managers
- skills relevant to the local economic development needs of municipalities, especially developmental economists.

Jipsa is steadily reaching its objectives of identifying critical skills needed for faster and shared growth, which is demonstrated by the benefits of partnerships between government and social partners.

Successes of this initiative include the placement of 1 500 graduates in private companies and government departments; placement offers for 20 000 graduates; international placement of more than 700 mainly female graduates; and the

announcement by ICT companies to establish ICT training centres to support black-owned companies.

Jipsa's progress lays the foundation for mobilising participation of many other players locally and abroad in a national effort to ensure that the country reaches the AsgiSA targets.

Economic indicators

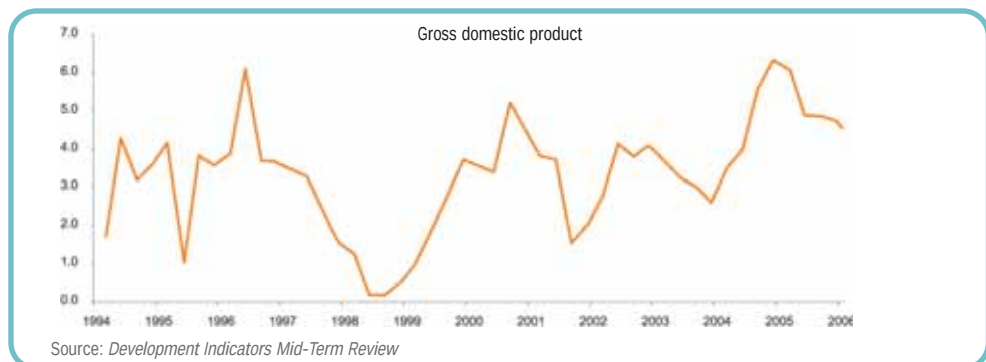
Domestic output

The South African economy registered a real growth rate of 5% in 2006. This solid performance followed the attainment of brisk rates of growth in the preceding two years of 4,8% in 2004 and 5,1% in 2005.

On a quarterly basis, real economic growth expanded further in the fourth quarter of 2006, from an annualised growth rate of 4,5% in the third quarter to 5,6% in the fourth quarter. The acceleration in aggregate economic growth in the fourth quarter of 2006 resulted from improved growth in the real value added by all the main sectors of the economy.

Real value added in the primary sector declined by 4,4% in 2006 after an increase of 2,9% was recorded in 2005. This reversal was mainly due to a sizeable contraction in the value added by the agricultural sector in 2006. On a quarterly basis, the real value added by the primary sector increased at a rate of 1,1% in the fourth quarter of 2006, after having declined at an annualised rate of 4% in the third quarter. This was the net result of an increase in the real value added by the mining sector, which offset the decline registered in the agricultural sector in the fourth quarter.

The rate of decline in the real value added by the agriculture sector slowed down from an annualised rate of 14,9% in the third quarter of 2006, to 8,4% in the fourth quarter. Consequently, the real value added by the agricultural sector, which increased by 4,1% in 2005, declined by 13,1% in 2006 as a whole, mainly on account of lower field-crop production.



The real value added by the mining sector accelerated from an annualised rate of 0,3% in the third quarter of 2006 to 4,6% in the fourth quarter. This was mainly the result of a strong increase of real value added by platinum mining and to a lesser extent, by diamond mining. Platinum mining benefited from the strong demand for both jewellery and industrial use, while diamond production rose along with a recovery of demand in international markets. For 2006 as a whole, real production of mining declined by 0,7%.

The growth in the real value added by the secondary sector increased further at a rate of 8,4% in the fourth quarter of 2006 from an annualised rate of 5,6% in the third quarter. The strong acceleration could mainly be attributed to strong growth in manufacturing output.

Growth in the real value added of the manufacturing sector accelerated from an annualised rate of 4,7% in the third quarter of 2006 to 8,3% in the fourth quarter. The majority of manufacturing subsectors registered positive growth in the fourth quarter of 2006. In particular, the output of the subsector that manufactures petroleum, chemical products, rubber and plastic rebounded strongly, following contractions in the preceding quarter.

The sustained increase in real value added by the manufacturing sector throughout 2006 reflected the high levels of business confidence and sustained high levels of domestic demand, while manufacturing exports also expanded somewhat.

As a result, manufacturing experienced an increase in the use of production capacity from an average of 85,5% in 2005 to 86% in 2006 and registered a record-high of 86,6% in the final quarter of 2006. For 2006 as a whole, the real value added by the manufacturing sector increased by 4,8%, just below the 5% recorded in 2005.

Following an increase of 0,8% in the third quarter of 2006, growth in the real value added by the sector supplying electricity, gas and water accelerated to an annualised rate of 1,5% in the fourth quarter. For the year as a whole, growth in the real value added by the sector supplying electricity, gas and water accelerated to 3,1% in 2006 compared with 2,6% in 2005.

The real value added by the construction sector remained brisk, recording an annualised rate of 14,3% in the third quarter and 14,2% in the fourth quarter of 2006. The firm performance reflected the continued buoyancy of residential and non-residential building activity. As a result of the sustained buoyant conditions of the construction sector, real value added by the sector increased by 13,3% in the year 2006 as a whole, following an increase of 11,9% in 2005.

The pace of growth in the real value added of the tertiary sector increased from an annualised rate of 4,8% in the third quarter to 5,3% in the fourth quarter. The higher growth was a reflection of marginally higher or unchanged growth rates posted by all the subsectors of the tertiary sector, with the exception of the trade sector.

Real gross domestic product

Percentage change at seasonally adjusted and annualised rates

	2006					2007
	1st qr	2nd qr	3rd qr	4th qr	Year	1st qr
Final consumption expenditure by households	8 ^{1/4}	8	7 ^{1/2}	7 ^{3/4}	7 ^{1/4}	7 ^{1/2}
Final consumption expenditure by general government	-3 ^{1/4}	15 ^{3/4}	-4 ^{1/2}	4 ^{3/4}	5 ^{1/2}	14
Gross fixed capital formation	14	12 ^{3/4}	14	16 ^{1/2}	12 ^{3/4}	21 ^{3/4}
Change in inventories (R billions)*	15,9	16,3	9,0	21,8	15,8	11,8
Gross domestic expenditure	15	9	1 ^{1/2}	12 ^{1/4}	8 ^{3/4}	5 ^{3/4}
* At constant 2000 prices						
Source: South African Reserve Bank, <i>Quarterly Bulletin</i> , June 2007						

Consequently, the growth in real production of the tertiary sector rose from 5,3% in 2005 to 6% in 2006. Within the tertiary sector, the finance sector registered the highest rate of increase in real value added, consistent with the increase in the real value added by banks, securities dealers and the business-services sector throughout 2006.

Growth in the real value added by the trade sector slowed from an annualised rate of 6,2% in the third quarter of 2005 to 5,6% in the fourth quarter, reflecting slower output growth in the wholesale and retail sectors. By contrast, growth in real value added of the motor-trade subsector accelerated over the period. In 2006 as a whole, the real value added by the trade sector increased by 6,7%, which was marginally higher than the rate of 6,5% attained in 2005.

The real value added by the transport, storage and communications sector increased further at an annualised rate of 5,5% in the third quarter of 2006 and 5,4% in the fourth quarter. In the communications subsector, the mainstay of activity remained cellular-phone communications, where increased competition and number portability probably supported real output. The strong quarter-to-quarter growth in the transport, storage and communications sector throughout the year culminated in an annual growth rate of 5,4% in 2006 as a whole, compared with the 5,5% increase recorded in 2005.

With quarter-to-quarter growth rates ranging between 5% and 14% in 2006, annual growth in the real value added by the finance, insurance, real-estate and business-services sector amounted to an annualised rate of 8,3% for the year 2006, a rate previously attained in 2004. The solid performance in the real value added in 2006 was underpinned by the lively activities of banks, securities dealers and the business-services sector.

Real value added by general government accelerated at an annualised rate of 3,2% for the year 2006 compared with 3,5% in 2005. The increase in the real output of general government mainly reflected an expansion of the staff complement of general government as it strived to meet its service-delivery obligations.

Real gross national income increased by 5,3% in 2005 and 6,3% in 2006. These increases could mainly be attributed to rising real output, but were augmented by an improvement in South Africa's terms of trade from 2005 to 2006, which more than offset an increase in net primary income payments to the rest of the world over the period.

Domestic expenditure

Growth in aggregate real gross domestic expenditure accelerated from an annualised rate of 1,4% in the third quarter of 2006 to 12,3% in the fourth quarter. All the expenditure components contributed to the acceleration, but it was especially due to a turnaround in real final consumption expenditure by general government and strong inventory accumulation, partly reflecting a surge in oil imports during the fourth quarter.

For the calendar year 2006, aggregate real gross domestic expenditure increased by 8,7% compared with an increase of 5,9% in 2005. Growth in real final consumption expenditure by households accelerated from 7,6% in the third quarter of 2006 to an annualised rate of 7,8% in the fourth quarter. The buoyancy in consumer spending was broadly based and proceeded at a roughly similar pace in all the spending categories. The annual growth in real final consumption expenditure by households amounted to 7,3% in 2006, compared with a growth rate of 6,6% recorded in 2005.

Growth in real household expenditure on durable goods accelerated from an annualised rate of 7% in the third quarter of 2006 to 8,4% in the fourth quarter, buoyed by spending on recreational and entertainment goods. Real outlays on furniture, household appliances and medical equipment, however, slowed in the fourth quarter.

Growth in real final consumption expenditure on semi-durable goods levelled off in the fourth quarter of 2005, decelerating from a brisk growth rate of 24% in the third quarter of 2005 to 7,9% in the fourth quarter. Slower growth was evident in all the spending categories of semi-durable goods.

Real household expenditure on non-durable goods and services picked up its growth rates, accelerating from 3,3% in the third quarter of 2006 to 6,4% in the fourth quarter. Slower growth in the subsector food, beverage and tobacco, and household consumer goods was offset by stronger



The 2010 FIFA World Cup™ is expected to contribute at least R51,1 billion to gross domestic product between 2006 and 2010. This is against the original estimate of R21,3 billion. Of this revised amount, R15,6 billion will come from foreign tourists. The revised estimates are from the World Cup's economic impact assessment study.

During the bidding phase, it was estimated that 2,7 million tickets would be sold, and total ticket revenue was expected to be R4,6 billion. According to the latest estimate, 3,2 million tickets will be sold.

spending on household fuel and power, medical and pharmaceutical products, and petroleum products.

Real disposable income of households increased in the fourth quarter of 2006, albeit at a slower rate than in the third quarter. The moderation in growth could partly be ascribed to lower farm income recorded over this period. The level of indebtedness of households also increased at a slower pace in the fourth quarter of 2006 due to a slowdown in mortgage advances during this period.

However, household debt as a percentage of household disposable income rose from 73% in the third quarter of 2006 to a new high of 73,8% in the fourth quarter. On an annual basis, the ratio increased from 63,5% in 2005 to 71,8% in 2006.

After an annualised decline of 4,3% in the third quarter of 2006, real final consumption expenditure by general government gained momentum in the fourth quarter of 2006, recording an annualised increase of 4,7%.

This was the result of an increase in real expenditure on goods and non-wage services. Consequently, real final consumption expenditure by general government as a ratio of gross domestic product (GDP) edged higher from 19,1% in the third quarter of 2006 to 19,3% in the fourth quarter.

Growth in real gross fixed capital formation rose at brisk annualised rates of 14,2% in the third quarter of 2006 and 16,6% in the fourth quarter. The acceleration reflected a solid expansion of real capital outlays across all institutional sectors – private business enterprises, public corporations and general government.

The year-on-year level of total real gross fixed capital formation rose by 12,8% in 2006, against the 9,6% increase attained in 2005. This lifted the ratio of gross fixed capital formation to GDP from 18,6% in the third quarter of 2006 to 19,2% in the fourth quarter.

Growth in real capital outlays by the private sector picked up from 13,1% in the third quarter of 2006 to 13,6% in the fourth quarter. The mining, manufacturing, construction and commerce sectors stepped up real gross fixed capital formation.

Projects to expand mining production continued, notably in the mining of iron ore. Real fixed

investment by manufacturing rose as manufacturers continued to expand capacity in response to domestic and global demand. The construction sector benefited from strong demand for offices, industrial buildings and retail shopping facilities.

Real gross fixed capital formation by public corporations picked up momentum from an annualised growth of 24,6% in the third quarter of 2006 to 40,8% in the fourth quarter. Public corporations stepped up spending on electricity and transport infrastructure.

Gross fixed capital formation by general government increased in the fourth quarter of 2006 at an annualised rate of 13%, compared with an increase of 11,5% recorded in the third quarter. All tiers of government increased capital investment in the fourth quarter of 2006, gearing up to address infrastructure backlogs.

Estimates indicate that annualised real inventory accumulation increased sharply from R9 billion in the third quarter of 2006 to R21,8 billion in the fourth quarter.

Most inventory investment occurred in the manufacturing sector, where imports of oil rose substantially to replenish low levels which had arisen due to maintenance work on refineries during the third quarter of 2006.

Accordingly, real inventories contributed 4,3 percentage points to growth in real gross domestic expenditure in the fourth quarter of 2006, which compared favourably with the 2,4 percentage points that the change in inventories subtracted from growth in the third quarter of 2006.

Price inflation

During recent years, remarkable progress has been made in lowering South Africa's inflation rate to levels more consistent with those of its main trading partners. This has been done through the consistent application of prudent fiscal and monetary policies, which have contributed to a progressive deceleration in inflation expectations.

Overall consumer price inflation decelerated markedly from a high of 9,2% in 2002; to 5,8% in 2003; and 1,4% in 2004; before it increased to 3,4% in 2005; and 4,7% in 2006.

Also, the year-on-year rate of increase in the consumer price index (CPI) for metropolitan and

other urban areas, less mortgage interest cost (CPIX), decelerated within the inflation target range of 3% to 6% in the 43 consecutive months to March 2007.

Year-on-year CPIX inflation rose from 3,7% in April 2006 to 5,3% in January 2007 and 5,5% in March 2007. Contributing components to the latest figure included annual increases in the price indices for transport, food, medical care and health expenses, and housing, excluding the interest rate on mortgage bonds.

The annual rate of increase in CPIX food prices stood at 8,6% in January 2007 compared with 4,4% in January 2006.

Year-on-year headline inflation or the CPI stood at 6,1% in March 2007. Statistics South Africa ascribed the higher rate partly to a rise in the year-on-year CPI for food from 4,4% in January 2006 to 8,3% in January 2007.

CPIX inflation remained comfortably within the inflation target range. Only two categories showed year-on-year rates of price increases in excess of the upper limit of the inflation target range by March 2007. However, some factors were still of concern, necessitating continued vigilance in the application of anti-inflationary policy. These included:

- high and volatile international crude oil prices
- high grain prices due to adverse weather conditions and hence food prices
- uncertainty concerning exchange-rate developments
- some salary and wage settlements being significantly in excess of the inflation target range
- possible second-round effects of the abovementioned factors
- fairly high rates of money supply and private credit-extension growth alongside continued buoyancy in domestic demand conditions
- increases in certain administered prices in excess of the inflation target range.

Exchange rates

On balance, the nominal effective exchange rate of the Rand declined by 4,4% during the first quarter of 2007, compared with a 7,7% increase in the fourth quarter of 2006.

The domestic market for foreign exchange experienced some volatility in the first quarter of 2007, following a reassessment of risk towards emerging-market economies, movements in commodity prices, periodic nervousness regarding the size of the current-account deficit, a sharp

correction in the Chinese stock exchange and a report of a proposed windfall tax on the entire South African resources industry.

The exchange value of the Rand recovered somewhat during April 2007, partly as a result of further United States (US) dollar weakness following weaker-than-expected US GDP data for the first quarter of 2007, and expectations of a further domestic interest-rate increase in response to higher-than-expected South African inflation data.

Positive sentiment resulting from the shareholder approval of the proposed foreign acquisition of a large South African retail group and stronger commodity prices also supported the exchange rate of the Rand.

The average daily turnover in the domestic market for foreign exchange increased from US\$14,6 billion in the fourth quarter of 2006 to US\$15,3 billion in the first quarter of 2007, mainly as a result of non-resident investors' participation in the South African securities markets. The value of transactions in which non-residents participated accordingly increased from US\$10,6 billion per day to US\$11,9 billion over the period.

The real effective exchange rate of the Rand declined by 14,4% in the 12 months to March 2007, leading to a substantial increase in the competitiveness of South African exporters in international markets.

Foreign trade and payments

A substantial decline in crude oil imports more than compensated for a decrease in mining exports in the first quarter of 2007. South Africa's trade deficit subsequently narrowed from R65,6 billion in the fourth quarter of 2006 to R50,9 billion in the first quarter of 2007.

While the improvement in the trade deficit was partly countered by a further widening of the deficit on the country's services and income account with the rest of the world, the current-account deficit nevertheless shrank from R143 billion in the fourth quarter of 2006 to R131 billion in the first quarter of 2007. As a ratio of GDP, the deficit shrank from 7,8% to 7% over the period.

The value of merchandise exports lost some vigour in the first quarter of 2007 and contracted by 1% to R466,8 billion. The decline in export values could mainly be attributed to a reduction of 3% in the physical quantity of merchandise exports.

Mining and mineral exports in particular were negatively affected, as the South African mining industry faced various challenges in the opening

months of 2007. These ranged from a loss of production due to scheduled maintenance on aluminium smelters and strikes at certain platinum mines, to logistical problems related to the transportation of coal to South African harbours.

These setbacks were, however, partly offset by an increase in the volume of manufactured exports, in turn probably encouraged by the sustained growth in the world economy and the more competitive level of the exchange rate of the Rand from around mid-2006. The volume of exported agricultural products, especially vegetable products, also increased somewhat in the first quarter of 2007.

The impact of the decline in the volume of exported goods was partly offset by an increase of about 2% in the Rand prices of such goods, as the Dollar price of international commodities rebounded in the first quarter of 2007. In US dollar terms, international commodity prices rose by 6,5% from the fourth quarter of 2006 to the first quarter of 2007.

Having remained broadly unchanged in the third and fourth quarters of 2006, the physical quantity of net gold exports shrank by 9,5% in the first quarter of 2007.

This decline in production was partly offset by a 4,5% increase in the average realised price of gold. The value of net gold exports accordingly fell by 5,5% over the period. On the London market, the fixing price of gold rose by 6% to a new all-time-high quarterly average of US\$650 per fine ounce in the first quarter of 2007 before rising further to US\$673 per fine ounce in April and May.

From an exceptionally high base in the fourth quarter of 2006, a decline in the volume of imported goods together with a marginal drop in import prices caused the value of merchandise imports to decrease by 4% to R555 billion in the first quarter of 2007.

The lower value of merchandise imports in the first quarter of 2007 reflected a decline in crude oil imports, which was partly countered by a further moderate increase in the value of machinery and electrical equipment, vehicles and transport equipment.

The volume of merchandise imports, which had grown unabatedly throughout 2006, receded by 3%

in the first quarter of 2007. This decline could be attributed to a decrease in the quantity of imported crude oil, which more than offset an increase of 1% in the volume of non-oil merchandise imports. Non-oil imports included the acquisition of a second submarine by government during the period.

Notwithstanding the decline in overall merchandise import volumes, the country's import penetration ratio remained on a relatively high level of 27,9% over the period. The marginal strengthening of the Rand, together with the lower international price of crude oil, caused the Rand prices of imported goods to decline by almost 1% in the first quarter of 2007.

The negative imbalance on the net service, income and current transfer account widened steadily from R77,4 billion in the fourth quarter of 2006 to R80,1 billion in the first quarter of 2007. As a ratio of GDP, the deficit on the services account amounted to 4,3%. The larger shortfall stemmed mainly from increased net income payments to non-resident investors in the first quarter of 2007. Interest payments, in particular, rose by 13,5% following a strong increase in loans and trade credit extended by foreign creditors to the domestic private sector and public corporations.

Interest payments were further affected by the acquisition of debt securities by non-resident investors during 2006. These payments were partially neutralised by lower net payments for freight and insurance services owing to the reduction in merchandise imports.

Higher commodity export prices alongside receding import prices gave rise to a moderate improvement in South Africa's terms of trade in the first quarter of 2007.

Department of Trade and Industry

The aim of the Department of Trade and Industry is to lead and facilitate access to sustainable economic activity and employment for all South Africans.

The department also aims to catalyse economic transformation and development, and to provide a predictable, competitive, equitable and socially responsible environment for investment, enterprise and trade for economic citizens. In this way, the department contributes to achieving government's

vision of an adaptive and restructured economy, characterised by accelerated economic growth, employment creation and greater equity by 2014.

To contribute to greater shared growth in the country, the department is pursuing the goals of:

- significantly progressing Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE)
- increasing the contribution of small enterprises to the economy
- contributing towards providing accessible, transparent and efficient access to redress
- contributing towards building skills, technology and infrastructure platforms from which enterprises can benefit
- increasing market-access opportunities for, and export of, South African goods and services
- increasing the overall level of direct investment, as well as investment in priority sectors
- repositioning the economy in higher value-added segments of value matrices in knowledge-driven manufacturing and services
- contributing towards the economic growth and development of the African continent within the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) framework
- building an efficient, effective and accessible organisation to achieve these outcomes.

These strategic objectives will be achieved through the collective effort of the department's divisions and agencies that generate public value for economic citizens, and deliver products and services for clients and stakeholders.

These products and services include policy, legislation and regulation, finance and incentives, information and advice, and partnerships. The department also achieves these objectives by pursuing a more targeted investment strategy, improved competitiveness of the economy, broadening the economic participation of historically disadvantaged individuals (HDIs) in the mainstream economy, and ensuring policy coherence.

As a key component of AsgiSA, the department has developed a national industrial policy framework that has been approved by Cabinet. The objectives of the framework are to promote diversification, facilitate progression up the value chain and foster growth in labour-intensive sectors of the economy. The policy aims to promote the growth of a strong local industrial and service economy. Implementing the policy will entail a range of incentives and interventions focused on job creation, investment and growth.

The July 2007 Cabinet Lekgotla approved the Industrial Policy Action Plan for the Economic

Cluster, to facilitate and support industrial development through the implementation of targeted programmes.

By August 2007, key action plans in four broad sectors – capital goods; transport equipment and metals, automotive assembly and components; chemicals, plastics and pharmaceuticals; and forestry, pulp and paper – had been finalised for immediate implementation.

An industrial upgrading programme was expected to be developed to address the issue of outdated equipment, including in sectors such as clothing and textiles. A review of selected import duties was expected to be undertaken as a means to drive down input costs and enhance the competitiveness of downstream industries that are more labour-intensive.

The Department of Trade and Industry introduced the national Industrial Policy Framework in August 2007.

Broadening economic participation

Several of the department's programmes aim at bridging the economic divide and broadening economic participation by HDIs.

These programmes include:

- the Apex Fund that provides microfinance to micro-enterprises
- the Small Enterprise Development Agency (Seda), which provides small enterprises around South Africa with a one-stop non-financial support service
- implementing new policy and legislation to promote the development of co-operative enterprises
- implementing the BBBEE Strategy, focusing on the codes of good practice, the sector charters and the establishment of the BEE Advisory Council
- introducing a specific strategy to empower women.

In line with promoting inclusivity and fulfilling its mandate as a promoter of long-term savings and investment opportunities to black people, the National Empowerment Fund (NEF) launched the NEF Asongse Share Scheme in 2007.

The share scheme allowed black individuals and black savings and investment groups such as stokvels, burial services, trusts, co-operatives, church groups and others, to invest in MTN shares at a 20% discount.

The shares retailed at a minimum subscription of R2 000, with a maximum of R50 000 for individuals and R100 000 for stokvels and other savings

groups. The offering was available from 23 July to 16 August 2007.

Targeted investment strategy

The Investment Promotion and Facilitation business unit within Trade and Investment South Africa (Tisa) is mandated to develop and implement a targeted investment promotion and facilitation strategy. The strategy covers a range of issues that are important to fulfilling the Department of Trade and Industry's mandate of increasing the value of inward foreign direct investment (FDI), and is designed to target and focus interventions in this arena. The strategy is also explicitly aligned with the National Industrial Policy Framework.

It focuses on identifying and promoting specific investment opportunities in particular sectors, regions and products, rather than taking the generic approach of marketing South Africa as an attractive investment destination.

This will require a more co-ordinated approach to investment promotion by national, provincial and local government. Achieving this will be a priority in the first year of the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period. The draft investment strategy was developed and presented to the department's executive board in February 2007.

The unit is dedicated to promoting investment opportunities, marketing investment projects, providing guidance with plant/site locations, especially in the industrial development zones (IDZs) and inputting into policy formulation by providing investment information. In 2006/07, the unit undertook 12 investment seminars, six investment pavilions, 21 sector-specific presentations, 46 sector-specific briefs and 29 inward/outward customised targeted investment presentations.

The facilitation of investments involves arranging investment missions, including travel itineraries; improving the platform for the introduction of investors to key stakeholders in private and public sectors; introducing investors to potential joint-venture partners and black economic partnerships; providing advice and guidance on the prevailing regulatory environment; offering assistance with work-permit applications; providing logistical support for relocation; and a dedicated aftercare

service. In 2006/07, six ministerial or presidential missions, two international investment councils and three international investment conferences were facilitated.

South Africa's global positioning and integration

International Trade and Economic Development (ITED)

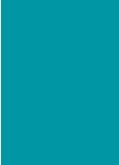
The ITED division of the Department of Trade and Industry aims to provide trade-policy leadership to contribute to South Africa's economic development. The ITED programme aims to strengthen trade and investment links with key economies, promote a strong and equitable multilateral trading system, and foster African economic integration and development in line with Nepad.

Policy and programme developments in international trade development include:

- implementing the new Southern African Customs Union (Sacu) – European Free Trade Area (EFTA) free trade agreement (FTA)
- concluding trade negotiations with Mercosur, a trading bloc consisting of Argentina, Brazil, Paraguay and Uruguay
- initiating preferential trade negotiations with India
- administering various binational commissions (BNCs) with other governments
- consolidating the Sacu arrangement under the new agreement, which entered into force in 2004
- advancing trade and economic development integration in the Southern African Development Community (SADC)
- ongoing participation in the Doha Round of trade multilateral negotiations in the World Trade Organisation (WTO)
- ongoing analysis of trade threats and opportunities
- offering policy oversight of the International Trade Administration.

African economic development

ITED has a strong developmental focus in its engagement with Africa. Partnerships with key countries on the continent are of strategic importance. South Africa's economy is inextricably



connected to the southern African region, and the region's economic prospects are linked to the economic recovery of the continent. Nepad is the internationally agreed framework for the socio-economic development of the continent.

Africa is an important market for South African exports. In 2006, about 23% of South Africa's exports were destined for the continent.

There has also been a large increase in imports from the continent. In 2003, only 4% of total imports came from Africa. However, this increased to 40% in 2004. The share of South Africa's trade for the year 2006 shows that exports to Africa totalled 14% of total exports and imports were 6% of total imports.

This trade imbalance has largely been offset by South Africa's investment on the continent, including those investments aimed at infrastructural projects designed to facilitate the productive capacities of African economies.

Through forging strong bilateral trade and economic relations, ITED is committed to increasing South Africa's involvement in large capital projects on the continent.

The following areas have been prioritised:

- infrastructure and logistics (roads, ports, etc.)
- energy
- ICT
- water and waste management
- transport
- construction
- oil and gas infrastructure
- agribusiness
- mining
- human-resource development (HRD).

During meetings of the World Economic Forum (WEF) for southern Africa, the formation of a business forum for southern Africa was announced to take advantage of investment opportunities in the region.

New Partnership for Africa's Development

The Department of Trade and Industry is among the key departments identified in South Africa to facilitate and implement the aims and objectives of Nepad. The department therefore acts as a catalyst for trade and economic development on the continent to alleviate poverty and further promote the development of the continent. Nepad recognises the need for infrastructure, industrial and skills development, and its impact on the continent's ability to become fully integrated into the global economy.

The department contributes to the Nepad agenda by mobilising the necessary support from relevant

stakeholders internally and externally, and providing leadership and strategic guidance on trade and economic issues. The South African Government assists African countries in export diversification by promoting investment in infrastructure and industrial projects.

The Department of Trade and Industry, through its engagement with continental structures such as the African Union Commission and the Nepad Secretariat, strongly advocates for finding African solutions to African problems and identifying partners to contribute to the continental development agenda.

One such programme is the African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM), which is a voluntary self-assessment tool that aims to encourage countries to adopt policies to promote good governance, democracy, and high economic growth. It also encourages countries to share experiences in terms of best practice.

The department also supports the AUC and the Nepad Secretariat in the area of regional economic integration, which is a vehicle to ensure economies of scale, effective allocation of resources and larger markets in the region and on the continent. The framework for regional economic integration is contained in the Abuja Treaty.

The Abuja Treaty calls for the establishment of an African Economic Community to take place over a period of 34 years. Member states of the AU should work towards eliminating overlapping memberships of regional economic communities; harmonising business laws, and industrial and tax policies; and establishing common standards and customs procedures.

Other important vehicles through which the continental developmental agenda is advanced are through south-south co-operation initiatives such as the China-Africa Forum and the New Asian African Strategic Partnership.

The acceleration of south-south trade and investment is one of the most significant features of recent developments in the global economy. South-south co-operation is premised on the concept that developing countries can capitalise on each other's strengths because of the alignment in their development goals.

This, however, does not preclude north-south co-operation, where developed and developing countries work in partnership to address Africa's developmental needs.

These include discussions and initiatives from the G8 and the European Union (EU)-Africa partnership.

Southern African Development Community

The SADC comprises Angola, Botswana, the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Lesotho, Malawi, Madagascar, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, South Africa, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

Since attaining democracy in 1994, South Africa has put regional integration by SADC member states at the top of its foreign economic agenda. South Africa has pursued a policy combining sectoral co-operation, policy co-ordination and trade integration to forge a dynamic regional economy capable of competing effectively in the global economy.

The SADC Protocol on Trade was signed in 1996 in Maseru, Lesotho, and came into force on 25 January 2000. Negotiations on operationalising the protocol have centred on tariff-reduction schedules, rules of origin, dispute-settlement mechanisms, a special trade agreement on sugar, eliminating non-tariff barriers and harmonising customs and trade documentation.

Agreement was generally achieved on all these issues. The protocol was implemented on 1 September 2000. The objective of the protocol is to achieve an FTA by 2008 when at least 85% of intra-SADC trade will be duty-free.

All SADC countries, with the exception of Angola, the DRC and Madagascar, are implementing the protocol.

Southern African Customs Union

The revised Sacu agreement came into force on 15 July 2004. New institutional features included:

- the Council of Ministers, which is the highest decision-making body on all matters pertaining to the Sacu agreement
- a Sacu tariff board to make recommendations on tariff and trade remedies to the council
- a small Sacu secretariat to render administrative and support services to Sacu structures
- a dispute-settlement mechanism similar to the one in place in the SADC.

Sacu members agreed to establish national bodies responsible for receiving tariff applications from each member state. Consensus was also reached on a new revenue-sharing formula. The agreement also provides for member states to develop

common policies and strategies with respect to industrial development.

Members agreed to co-operate on agricultural issues to ensure the co-ordinated development of the agricultural sector and fair competition, and to address unfair trade practices.

Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia, Swaziland (the BLNS countries) and South Africa have organised themselves into Sacu, which shares a common tariff regime without any internal barriers. Customs revenues are shared according to an agreed formula.

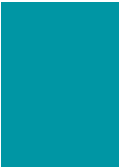
To complement the SADC and the Sacu processes, South Africa pursues a bilateral strategy for engagement with countries in the southern African region. This strategy is underpinned by the objective of achieving economic growth and development in the region through outward investment, infrastructure development and trade liberalisation.

Two-way trade between South Africa and other SADC member states is characterised by a trade imbalance in South Africa's favour. South Africa's exports to SADC countries, excluding BLNS, were estimated at over R35,849 billion at the end of 2006, while imports from the region in the same period were valued at R10,440 billion, resulting in an overall trade ratio of 3:1. South Africa's main trading partners in the region in terms of both imports and exports are Zimbabwe and Mozambique.

Trade with Europe

Trade relations with Europe, particularly with the EU, are pivotal to South Africa's economic development. The Trade, Development and Co-operation Agreement (TDCA) with the EU forms a substantial element of South Africa's reconstruction and development.

Europe remains South Africa's largest trading region and source of investment. In 2006, Europe accounted for 38,8% (R139,574 billion) of South Africa's total exports, and 36,4% (R168,198 billion) of its total imports. During the same year, the EU accounted for the bulk of this trade, with exports to the EU reaching R126,373 billion (up from R106,465 billion in 2005), and imports reaching R161,053 billion in 2005 (up from R128,360 billion in 2005).



Six European countries, namely the United Kingdom (UK), Germany, Netherlands, Spain, Belgium and Italy are among South Africa's top-10 export destinations. Germany, the UK, Italy and France are among the top-10 countries from which South Africa's imports originate.

Since 2001, Germany has been South Africa's largest source of imports. In 2006, South Africa's imports from Germany totalled R57,844 billion. The UK remains South Africa's largest export destination in Europe with South Africa's exports to that country amounting to R41,316 billion in 2006.

European Union

The TDCA, which was provisionally implemented on 1 January 2000 and came fully into force on 1 May 2004, provides for the establishment of an FTA between South Africa and the EU. The TDCA commits South Africa to grant duty-free access to 86% of EU imports over a period of 12 years, while the EU will liberalise 95% of South Africa's imports over a 10-year period.

This agreement is expected to contribute towards the restructuring of the South African economy and its long-term economic growth. It covers trade and trade-related issues, development and economic co-operation, and political dialogue.

It also provides a legal framework for ongoing EU financial assistance on grants and loans for development co-operation, amounting to R900 million per year. Statistics compiled by the South African Revenue Service (Sars) show that the tariff preferences in the agreement are being used increasingly.

The wines and spirits agreements were signed in January 2002 and are under provisional implementation. They are part of the framework of agreements under the TDCA, and established the basis for trade in wines and spirits between South Africa and the EU. Negotiations on areas related to geographical indications, intellectual property and trademark protection are ongoing.

In August 2005, South Africa and the EU signed the Enlargement Protocol, which provides for South Africa to extend the TDCA preferences to the 10 new member states and vice versa. By August 2006, the TDCA was under review and both parties had exchanged their respective levels of ambitions regarding the review of the TDCA.

The TDCA-review clauses provide for the two parties to assess whether they would like to improve the TDCA in areas in which they already have commitments, and whether to extend it to areas that the TDCA covers partially or not at all.

South Africa seeks to use the TDCA review processes to correct the anomalies in South Africa's and the SADC's trade policy towards the EU, and to ensure that the ongoing economic partnership agreements between the SADC and the EU are aligned with a revised TDCA. South Africa also negotiated that the EU's Generalised System of Preferences (GSP) be transposed to the TDCA, as products with GSP-status enjoy preference over those under the TDCA.

European Free Trade Area

In August 2005, Sacu concluded an FTA with EFTA states, including Liechtenstein, Switzerland, Norway and Iceland. The Sacu's offer to the EFTA was the same as that to the EU in terms of the South Africa-EU TDCA on both agriculture and industrial products with some marginal adjustments (taking into account BLNS countries' sensitivities).

The EFTA offered Sacu full duty- and quota-free access for industrial products with rules of origin equivalent to or better than those contained in the TDCA. The EFTA's industrial markets in most products are open to Sacu through low tariffs (Most Favoured Nation [MFN] and GSP), but the agreement provides preferential access that is "locked in" for items such as textiles and clothing. The EFTA has provided limited access to basic agricultural products.

The Americas

North America

The United States of America (USA) is one of South Africa's leading trading partners. The country ranks second after Japan as a destination of South African exports and is third – below Germany and China – as a source of imports.

Exports to the USA increased in nominal terms from R30 billion in 2004 to R41 billion in 2006, while imports recorded an increase from R26 billion to R35 billion for the same period. Since 2000, the trade balance has been in South Africa's favour with the trade surplus increasing in nominal terms from R3,5 billion to R6 billion between 2000 and 2006.

South Africa is a beneficiary of the USA's GSP, which grants duty-free treatment to over 4 650 products. At the same time, South Africa is one of 38 beneficiaries of the Africa Growth and Opportunity Act (AGOA), which was promulgated in May 2000. In terms of the AGOA, 1 783 more products were added to the existing GSP products for duty-free treatment.

Although the AGOA was initially due to lapse in 2008, the US Government consented to requests by African countries, and extended the measure to 2015 under what is called the AGOA III amendments. Along with other member states of Sacu, South Africa has begun negotiations with the USA to enter into a trade investment development co-operation agreement, intended to provide a framework for deepening Sacu's trade and investment relations with that country.

Another significant trading partner in the Americas is Canada. Since the lifting of sanctions in 1994, bilateral trade between South Africa and Canada increased from R904 million in 1993 to R6,6 billion in 2006. South Africa is a beneficiary of Canada's General Preferential Tariff (GPT). GPT rates range from duty-free to reductions in the MFN rates.

Furthermore, South Africa and Canada have a memorandum of understanding (MoU) relating to the export of clothing and textile products to that country. The MoU allows a certain amount of clothing and textile products from South Africa to enter the Canadian market at a better-than-MFN tariff rate.

Additionally, over the past three years, an annual consultation forum was established to discuss matters of mutual interest in South Africa's relations with Canada. It has also become an important basis for strengthening trade relations.

Latin America

South Africa's major trading partners in Latin America are Brazil, Argentina, Chile, Mexico, Colombia and Peru. Most trade is with Brazil and Argentina, which are members of the Mercusur trade bloc. A framework agreement committing South Africa and Mercusur to an FTA was signed in 2000.

However, as a first step towards achieving this goal, the parties – with South Africa participating as part of Sacu – signed the Preferential Trade Agreement (PTA) in December 2004. However, it was decided that the ratification process be undertaken only once negotiations on certain outstanding issues had been finalised. By mid-2007, negotiations on these issues were near conclusion and it was expected that a ratification process could begin before the end of 2007.

Trade between South Africa and Mercusur grew substantially from R2,7 billion in 1994 to R20,7 billion in 2006. South Africa recorded a trade deficit of about R12,8 billion against the bloc for 2006. Within Mercosur, Brazil is by far the leading trading partner, accounting for 56% of South Africa's trade with the group in 2006.

The second-most important trading partner is Argentina. Total trade between South Africa and Mexico increased from R1,4 billion in 2000 to R3,4 billion in 2006. The trade balance was in South Africa's favour for a number of years, but became negative for the first time in 2005. It continued to favour Mexico in 2006. Bilateral trade between South Africa and the Andean Community (Peru, Ecuador, Bolivia, Colombia and Venezuela) has been growing relatively slowly since 1994. The Andean Community, specifically Colombia and Peru, offers great potential for South African companies participating in the mining industry.

Asia

South-east Asia and Australasia

Bilateral trade with south-east Asia, particularly the Association of South-east Asian Nations (Asean) members, increased rapidly from a low base in 1990. Asean presents South Africa with a potential market in excess of 520 million people.

South Africa's total trade with Asean totalled R34,8 billion in 2006, and is set for continued growth. Within the region, key partners for South Africa include Singapore, Thailand, Indonesia, Malaysia, Vietnam and the Philippines.

In an effort to further expand engagement with the region, the Department of Trade and Industry is undertaking a number of joint trade committees with key Asean partners to expand trade and investment relations with the region.

Australia has always featured as a well known partner for South Africa in the region, but the Joint Ministerial Commission, held in 2006, set the tone for a renewed focus on the relationship. Total trade between Australia and South Africa reached R18,6 billion in 2006.

North-east Asia

The People's Republic of China (PRC) is a key partner for South Africa in north-east Asia. The

PRC's influence in the global economy has changed significantly in the last few decades as its share of international trade has increased, with China becoming a pillar of global economic growth.

Economic and trade relations between South Africa and the PRC have grown rapidly since the formal establishment of diplomatic relations in 1998, with total trade growing from R5,3 billion in 1998 to R60,7 billion in 2006.

The two countries engage regularly on economic issues through mechanisms such as the Joint Economic and Trade Committee. Research and discussions among key stakeholders domestically and within Sacu are continuing towards assessing the possibility of preferential negotiations with China.

In 2006, South Africa and China concluded an MoU on Promoting Bilateral Trade and Economic Co-operation. The MoU included an annex limiting clothing and textile imports in 31 product categories until December 2008, in an effort to allow a window of opportunity for industry to restructure.

Co-operation on the further implementation of the broader MoU continued in 2007. Beyond bilateral and regional initiatives, South Africa and the PRC also co-operate in multilateral forums, including in the WTO, in the G20 and Non-Agricultural Market Access 11 groupings (Nama-11), based on shared developmental perspectives.

Japan is South Africa's largest trading partner in Asia and is among South Africa's top overall trading partners. Total trade reached R71,6 billion in 2006. The South Africa-Japan Partnership Forum is designed to strengthen bilateral ties between the two countries. The forum meets regularly and explores new initiatives aimed at expanding relations.

South Asia

India is a key partner for South Africa in South Asia, and total trade has been increasing rapidly since 1994. Two-way trade between the two countries reached R16,5 billion in 2006.

South Africa and India enjoy strong historical ties, which have translated into a firm political commitment. In light of these shared historical links, closer economic ties are being fostered using initiatives such as the Joint Ministerial Commission and through business engagements.

Developments in building economic relations with India are also expanding to include partners in Sacu, as reflected in Sacu ministers' undertaking to pursue PTA negotiations with India.

South Africa and India work closely in the India-Brazil-South Africa (IBSA) Forum. IBSA is not solely an economic initiative, but rather an undertaking by countries with shared interests in a multilateral system to address equitably political, social and economic matters.

This trilateral economic co-operation is informed by the reality that trade between the three countries is still relatively low, while further analysis reveals that there is considerable scope to increase trade volumes and expand the range of traded products between the three markets. In essence a more fundamental aim than the development of a giant trading bloc, the trade and investment undertakings under IBSA seek to cultivate and unleash the host of missed opportunities that exist.

South Africa also co-operates with India in the multilateral arena in areas of common interest in the WTO, most notably the G20 and Nama-11, as well as in other forums.

In 2006, South Africa's economic engagement with the South Asian region started to expand as the Department of Trade and Industry participated in preparations for the South Africa-Pakistan Joint Commission that was held early in 2007.

The joint commission serves as the platform from which trade and investment initiatives with Pakistan can be launched.

It is envisaged that this new level of engagement with Pakistan will be part of a systematic expansion of economic relations with other markets in South Asia.

Multilateral economic relations

The WTO, in partnership with the Bretton-Woods Institutions, the World Bank and the International Monetary Fund, has been setting the parameters for and directing the economic-development policies of governments around the world.

This has had serious implications for the content, evolution and trajectory of economic-development strategies being pursued by developing countries, including South Africa.

It is imperative for South Africa to influence and shape the configurations of the emerging system of global governance to address the needs and concerns of the developing world.

This is best done by participating actively and effectively in all multilateral forums, to ensure that South Africa's particular economic interests and developmental goals and objectives, as well as those of the African continent, are taken into account.

United Nations Conference on Trade and Development (Unctad)

Unctad is an important resource organisation for South Africa and the African continent. The main goals of the organisation are to:

- Maximise the trade, investment and development opportunities of developing countries.
- Help developing countries face challenges arising from globalisation and integration into the world economy equitably. This is pursued through research and policy analyses, intergovernmental deliberations, technical co-operation and interaction with civil society and the business sector.

Unctad focuses much of its energy on assisting developing countries to prepare for mandated and possible future negotiations in the WTO.

Unctad holds a conference every four years to set its priorities and guidelines, and to provide an opportunity to debate key economic and development issues.

Member states gathered in São Paulo, Brazil, in June 2004 for Unctad's 11th Ministerial Conference, which closed with the adoption of the Spirit of São Paulo Declaration and the São Paulo Consensus. These provide more detail on the role of Unctad in a globalising world.

The Spirit of São Paulo Declaration recognises that most developing countries, especially African and other least-developed countries, have remained on the margins of the globalisation process, and that there is a need to focus on the ability of international trade to contribute to poverty alleviation.

The São Paulo Consensus focuses on:

- development strategies in a globalising world
- building productive capacities and international competitiveness
- assuring development gains from the international trading system and trade negotiations
- fostering partnerships for development.

World Trade Organisation

South Africa regards its membership of the WTO as very important because of the enhanced security and certainty in the multilateral trading system that WTO rules provide.

The country is an active participant and contributor towards a strengthened multilateral trading system, whose benefits are equitably distributed across the world community. South Africa wants to participate in shaping global governance to ensure beneficial and full integration of its economy, as well as those of other developing nations, into the global trading system.

South Africa's efforts to build an alliance of developing countries within the WTO, based on a common approach and consensus on key issues, bore fruit late in 2001, when an agreement was reached to launch a new round of trade negotiations, this time with a developmental agenda.

The WTO Doha Development Agenda continued to set the work programme of the WTO in 2003/04. However, the work slowed down considerably after the fifth WTO Ministerial Conference held in Cancun, Mexico, in September 2003, when WTO members failed to reach agreement on key developmental issues due to irreconcilable positions between developed and developing countries.

A positive outcome of the Cancun meeting was the formation of a grouping of developing countries known as the G20, which succeeded in pushing for significant reforms in agricultural trade which the developed world strongly opposed. The failure to reach agreement in Cancun showed that developing countries are now participating more effectively in the WTO to ensure they also benefit from the rule-based trading system and globalisation. The G20 has become an important player in the Doha Development Agenda to ensure that the needs and concerns of the developing world are addressed.

After the failure of Cancun to agree on a work programme for continued Doha Development Agenda negotiations, the G20 highlighted agricultural reform as an important development tool. The group was also trying to narrow the differences between developed and developing countries to put the Doha negotiations back on track.

In July 2004, the WTO General Council adopted a work programme to accelerate progress in the negotiations. This programme, known as the July

Package, focuses on a specific set of issues, namely agriculture, non-agricultural market access, services, trade facilitation and rules.

The G20 comprises Argentina, Bolivia, Brazil, Chile, China, Cuba, Egypt, Guatemala, India, Indonesia, Mexico, Nigeria, Pakistan, Paraguay, Philippines, South Africa, Tanzania, Thailand, Uruguay, Venezuela and Zimbabwe.

South Africa continues to favour the speedy conclusion of a developmental outcome to the Doha Round, to advance the interests of developing countries.

World Economic Forum

The WEF is a global investment forum and is held in different parts of the world. The WEF engages global leaders in business, and leaders of various countries in partnerships to shape global, regional and industry agendas. The forum discusses pertinent and relevant international issues, which include promoting Africa's growth, the impact of China and India's growth on other emerging economies, and climate change and its impact.

South Africa is well represented at the forum, and actively participates in discussions to address economic development and globalisation. South Africa hosted the WEF on Africa in Cape Town in June 2006. The forum focused on ways of boosting growth on the African continent. The theme for the forum was *Going for Growth*.

The forum highlighted improvements on the continent, as many African countries are experiencing positive growth. The major outcome of the WEF was the establishment of the Investment Climate Facility, which is an innovative public-private partnership aimed at making Africa a better place in which to do business.

The initiative focuses on property rights and contract enforcement; reducing red tape; taxation and customs reform; developing financial markets; infrastructure facilitation; labour-market restructuring; promoting competition; and eliminating corruption and crime.

In January 2007, President Thabo Mbeki, accompanied by the Minister of Finance, Mr Trevor Manuel, and the Minister of Trade and Industry, Mr Mandisi Mpahlwa, attended the annual WEF in Davos, Switzerland. They participated in the forum within the context of South Africa's priority to promote north-south co-operation in support of the African agenda. President Mbeki addressed the opening session of the WEF: Africa Summit in Cape Town on 13 June 2007. The theme was *Raising the Bar*.

Trade and Investment South Africa

A central task of the Department of Trade and Industry is to promote value-added exports and attract investment. The vision is one of a restructured and adaptive South African economy, characterised by growth, employment and equity (regional, spatial, gender and racial).

Tisa is a division of the Department of Trade and Industry and has a national mandate to develop the South African economy, focusing on facilitating and promoting investment and exports.

Tisa's mission is to provide strategic vision and direction so as to increase the level of direct investment flow, and to develop South Africa's capacity to export into various targeted markets.

Customised Sector Programme (CSP)

Early in 2002/03, Tisa was assigned responsibility for priority-sector development, which is a crucial part of government's Micro-Economic Reform Strategy and the Integrated Manufacturing Strategy (IMS). Both strategies centre on the accelerated development of priority sectors selected by government for their potential contribution to South Africa's economy, in terms of growth, equity and employment creation.

Tisa's aim is to develop strategies for all priority sectors and to enhance their growth and competitiveness. The CSP methodology provides a strong and intellectually vigorous platform for optimal sector development.

A key characteristic of the methodology is that it supports a high level of stakeholder interaction. It also includes interventions to promote and develop investment and exports, and to provide input related to policy development.

Export development and promotion

Tisa is responsible for developing and promoting South African goods and services. It contributes directly towards the objectives of the Department of Trade and Industry by:

- identifying, researching and promoting market-access opportunities for South African exporters
- facilitating exports by matching potential exporters with foreign buyers
- developing and helping South African exporters to promote their products by providing non-financial support.

Promoting and facilitating investment

Tisa is responsible for attracting FDI, and developing and promoting investment by domestic and foreign investors. It offers:

- information on investing and the business environment in South Africa
- detailed sector information
- direct government support in the form of investment incentives
- investment facilitation and aftercare.

International Investment Council (IIC)

The council meets twice a year to advise the President on investment promotion and other economic issues.

President Mbeki met members of the IIC in the Eastern Cape from 11 to 13 May 2007. The 12th meeting of the IIC discussed, among other things, economic developments in South Africa, AsgiSA, Jipsa, the 2010 World Cup and job creation.

Export promotion and development

This area of the economy remains a challenge that is being addressed by the implementation of the Export Strategy that was approved in 2006. The aim of the strategy is to ensure that South African exports maintain their market share in traditional markets, and substantially increase their market share in prioritised, new high-growth markets through aggressive marketing and a larger exporter community.

To accomplish this, the focus has been on developing and expanding the local export community and culture, while also promoting South African products abroad through missions, pavilions and the use of the network of foreign offices.

During 2006/07, 31 national pavilions, which included six local pavilions and three international trade initiatives across 11 sectors of the economy, were organised at trade fairs, where 338 companies exhibited.

Preliminary reports indicated that these firms reported actual sales to a value of about R323 million. Estimated sales for the following 12 months as a result of their participation at these events totalled R2,049 billion.

Coupled with that, 20 inward-buying missions were facilitated from 36 countries across seven sectors, and 30 outward-bound trade missions were facilitated, which considerably increased market access for about 239 companies.

In conjunction with using national pavilions and missions as a tool, 32 export-promotion projects were managed and supported in 2006/07. Of these, nine were identified and initiated by the Directorate: Export Promotion and 23 ad-hoc projects by export councils, foreign offices and other departmental divisions. A total of 21 projects, including three international trade initiatives, were completed by the end of March 2007, while 11 projects were expected to be executed during 2007/08.

In the drive to educate companies, provincial trade and investment-promotion agencies and customers on exporting and the Export Market and Investment Assistance Scheme and its offerings, workshops and training sessions were held and attended by about 390 firms. This initiative is aimed at assisting businesses to grow exports and to build a stronger exporting culture.

Under the Export Strategy, exporter development has been given added focus and the work undertaken by the unit has expanded to include streams of work that are considered to be global best practice.

Some R6,5 million was equitably distributed through the sector-specific assistance schemes. Trade information was distributed using a network of 115 members made up of provincial and local governments, export councils and industry associations.

More than 460 trade leads were received, which were distributed to the subscriber list and media on 12 trade-lead bulletins. An additional publication in the *Trade Secrets* series, i.e. the *E-Commerce Guide for Small, Medium and Micro-Enterprises* (SMMEs) was also distributed to small and potential exporters.

A successful regional services-sector conference and networking event was arranged in co-operation with the International Trade Centre (Geneva-based Unctad/WTO), which was attended by 150 delegates representing 13 southern African countries and about 150 delegates from the South African private sector.

The Department of Trade and Industry's focus on small-exporter development was also targeted as part of the Export Strategy. Five export-readiness seminars were conducted where 410 non-export

ready companies were accommodated. Seventy-eight small and medium enterprises (SMEs) received pre-exhibition assistance and 85 SMEs received export training courses.

International operations

The Foreign Services Management Unit focuses on management, business planning, procurement and reporting of foreign economic representatives based at foreign missions, while the International Operations Unit focuses on managing incoming and outgoing delegations.

The Department of Trade and Industry has 43 foreign offices comprising about 100 staff members.

Foreign economic representatives are tasked with delivering on the strategic objectives related to exports, investment and market access, by:

- marketing South African goods for export
- recruiting FDI
- establishing and maintaining intergovernmental relations.

Enterprise and industry development

The Department of Trade and Industry's Enterprise and Industry Development Division's (EIDD) purpose is to provide leadership in the development of policies and strategies that create an enabling environment for competitiveness, equity and enterprise development.

EIDD will contribute to realising the department's strategic objectives by:

- creating an enabling environment for all enterprise forms, including co-operatives, to prosper
- providing a framework to enable participation of women and black people in the economic mainstream
- identifying new geographic areas for greater economic stimulation
- providing a framework for industry norms and standards, including sustainable production methods
- influencing policy developments in skills building, technology and infrastructure
- providing policy direction in emerging sectors and also the repositioning of the economy in higher-value segments to achieve competitiveness.

The EIDD has three business units, namely:

- Competitiveness and Industrial Development
- Enterprise Development
- Equity and Empowerment.

Incentives include the:

- Small Medium Enterprise Development Programme (SMEDP)
- Skills Support Programme
- Critical Infrastructure Programme (CIP)
- IDZs
- Foreign Investment Grant (FIG)
- Strategic Investment Programme.

One of South Africa's key industrial policies remains its commitment to fostering sustainable industrial development in areas where poverty and unemployment are at their highest. This objective is implemented through spatial development initiatives (SDIs), which focus high-level support on areas where socio-economic conditions require concentrated government assistance, and where inherent economic potential exists.

The SDI programme consists of 11 local SDIs and four IDZs that were at varying stages of delivery by September 2007. The SDIs are the Maputo Development Corridor; Lubombo SDI; Richards Bay SDI, including the Durban and Pietermaritzburg nodes; Wild Coast SDI; Fish River SDI; West Coast Investment Initiative; Platinum SDI; Phalaborwa SDI; and the Coast-2-Coast Corridor. The IDZs are in Gauteng, Coega/Ngqura, East London, Saldanha and Richards Bay.

The SDI concept focuses on:

- industry by means of the KwaZulu-Natal and Fish River SDIs
- agritourism, as in the Lubombo and Wild Coast SDIs
- a sectoral mix, for example the Maputo Development Corridor
- IDZs such as those in Coega/Ngqura, Saldanha and East London.

IDZs are located near major transport nodes such as ports or airports. The benefits of IDZs include support to investing companies, especially for greenfields development projects; access to transport for export purposes; waiver of import duties for products that are produced for export; and subsidies for providing skills training to employees.

In 2006/07, some R850 million was spent on infrastructure development in the Coega IDZ, including water, sewers, electricity, facilities and services. Some 11 796 people were employed and three investors were to be involved in the textiles, chemicals and automotive sectors with a total combined investment value of R3,2 billion.

The R2-billion phased development project, which comprises 11 500 ha of land being developed for industrial purposes to complement

the deep-water Port of Ngqura, will be the first fully integrated industrial zone in the southern hemisphere.

The Canadian aluminium company Alcan announced a R700-million engineering, procurement and construction management contract for the development of the R20-billion Coega aluminium smelter project.

Construction of the smelter is expected to begin in 2008, with metal production anticipated around 2010. The project is expected to create an estimated 30 000 employment opportunities.

It will be the largest single greenfield project in South Africa since 1994.

Straits Chemicals will invest R5,8 billion in a chlorine-manufacturing and water-desalination plant.

Dynamic Commodities has set up a fruit processing factory in the IDZ and by mid-2007, was supplying frozen sorbets to the USA, Europe, Middle East and Far East markets.

Eastern Cape Biomass Fuel Pellets has invested R70 million in the zone. Cerebos was expanding and relocating its operations to the IDZ in a R85-million project, which will use new technology to produce pure vacuum-dried salt, a first for sub-Saharan Africa.

Other projects planned for the IDZ include a 1 500-seat contact centre for BPO. By July 2007, construction of the call centre, which will be the biggest in the country, was under way. The project was expected to be completed in 2008. Facilities for a paving-bricks firm, a container depot and a cold-storage facility were nearing completion.

In 2006/07, some 19 infrastructure projects were undertaken with a combined value of R220 million in the East London IDZ, including internal stormwater systems, electrical power lines, underground electrical cables, fencing and walling, and water and sewerage systems. The project created 380 jobs. The East London IDZ received R188,2 million in 2006/07, which will increase to R251,1 million in 2009/10; an average annual increase of 10,1%.

In 2006/07, basic infrastructure such as water and sewerage systems, telecoms and power lines existed in the Richard's Bay IDZ. One foreign investor had signed up and the first custom-

controlled area investor was to locate to the IDZ (a ferrochrome smelter). The value of the investment is R650 million. Richards Bay IDZ received R29,2 million in 2007/08, increasing over the MTEF period to R68,9 million in 2009/10.

The Enterprise Organisation (TEO)

The Department of Trade and Industry's TEO provides incentives to stimulate or catalyse investment in infrastructure, HRD, integrated manufacturing and related activities, small-business development, specific regions, and technology and innovation.

A number of incentives are provided to both large and small businesses to improve their competitiveness. These include incentives under the SMEDP, the Competitiveness Fund, the Sector Partnership Fund and the Black Business Supplier Development Programme (BBSDP).



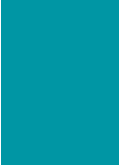
In July 2007, President Thabo Mbeki met with the Joint Presidential Working Group on big business, black business, labour and Business Unity South Africa.

The meeting considered a detailed progress report on the implementation of the Growth and Development Summit (GDS) agreements and discussed the alignment of the GDS and the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa.

The GDS progress report noted a 90% success rate in the implementation of agreed undertakings, with 4,2% outstanding and 5,8% work in progress.

Successes noted in the report included:

- about R4 billion in loans already advanced to small black business by banks
- at least 459 840 cumulative work opportunities created through the Expanded Public Works Programme since inception to December 2006
- some 167 073 new work opportunities in community-based care, of which 24 000 will be long-term employees
- at least 37 238 jobs created through the Labour Job Creation Trust
- the recruitment of about 5 130 young people nationally in 2006/07 through the National Youth Service
- 2,9 million learners attended no-fee schools in 2006
- by 30 September 2006, R2,3 billion had been spent on municipal roads, 206 318 households had benefited from water projects and 90 790 households had benefited from sanitation projects
- Gautrain will create about 58 800 direct jobs and substantial indirect income.



Since the inception of the SMEDP in October 2000, 9 126 enterprises had received assistance and by November 2006, 1 913 new applications had been approved. The value of investment in new and expansion projects was R9,4 billion, and the incentives committed to these projects amounted to R1,9 billion. The projected number of jobs to be created is 38 786.

Some 537 applications to the BBSDP were approved by November 2006, with an incentive value of R27,1 million.

Some 286 firms with a value of R12,6 million were approved by November 2006 under the export market and investment assistance individual participation project, of which 69% were SMMEs, 5% black-owned, and 13,2% women-owned.

One project valued at R5 million was approved by the South African capital goods feasibility study. Some 19 projects valued at R8 million were approved by the sector-specific assistance scheme.

Workplace Challenge Programme

This supply-side programme of the Department of Trade and Industry (administered by the National Productivity Institute [NPI]) assists enterprises and industries to improve their productivity and competitiveness.

The programme focuses on improving workplace collaboration, adopting world-class manufacturing practices and disseminating best practices.

National Industrial Participation Programme (NIPP)

There are two elements to the NIPP in South Africa, namely a national non-defence and a defence element. The Department of Trade and Industry manages the NIPP, which becomes obligatory when the foreign content of the procurement, purchase or lease contracts of government departments and parastatals exceeds US\$10 million, in which case an NIPP obligation of 30% on the foreign content will be attracted.

The NIPP focuses on national objectives, mainly in the commercial environment. The objectives of the NIPP include fast-tracking investment, fostering partnerships in technology transfer and creating market opportunities for locally manufactured goods abroad.

By mid-2007, the total value of NIPP obligations being monitored was estimated at US\$15 billion. The programme has benefited South Africans to the tune of US\$3,5 billion over the last eight years as a consequence of the country's Strategic Defence Procurement and other government purchases.

This includes investment credits estimated at US\$1 billion, with export and local sales, technology transfer, BEE and SMME promotion making up the balance. The benefits cover the areas of BEE, partnerships between participating entities, and skills development.

NIPP investments have allowed major new injections of technology and skills transfer into South Africa. The vision of the department regarding stimulating innovation and high growth sectors, and integrating South Africa as a vital part of high-value global supply chains is being realised. Leather is being turned into car seats. Platinum is used to produce catalytic converters. South Africans have taken raw materials and moved them up the value-chain. The NIPP has opened entirely new markets, sometimes with unique new products.

At the same time, the NIPP has become a major point of leverage for government's wider vision of growth with equity, as expressed in the AsgiSA.

Concerted efforts have been made to maximise job creation, involve SMMEs, build BEE-owned enterprises and spread the benefits wherever possible to neglected regions and towns. Partnership projects arising out of the NIPP range from the local manufacture of galleys for the Airbus A319 and A320 to the production of cockpit modules for the BMW 3 Series for export purposes.

The BEE component has seen a South African company being awarded the contract to print the owner-manuals for the Mercedes Benz C-Class right-hand drive models assembled in South Africa. These manuals will be distributed internationally as the vehicles are exported to countries that use such vehicles. By mid-2007, 8 000 new work opportunities had been directly created and 134 new projects approved across the country, as a consequence of the NIPP.

Manufacturing

South Africa has developed an established and diversified manufacturing base that has demonstrated resilience and the potential to compete in a global economy. The manufacturing sector provides a locus for stimulating the growth of other activities, such as services, and achieving specific outcomes, such as value addition, employment creation and economic empowerment. This platform of manufacturing presents an opportunity to significantly accelerate growth and development.

The Department of Trade and Industry's main functions regarding the manufacturing sector include:

- supporting increased investment in the sector

- enhancing the establishment of new manufacturing entities
- supporting new sustainable and profitable manufacturing entities.

Primary aspects of the IMS involve:

- improving market access for South African products in key markets
- promoting beneficiation and value addition
- finding ways to harness the skills and expertise in South Africa so that they can be sold to other countries.

The IMS identifies the need to capture local knowledge, encourages large corporations and companies to make greater use of small businesses, and promotes greater integration between the different sectors of the economy so that they add value to each other.

The IMS also promotes BEE, small-business development, increased use of ICT, job creation, and a more equitable geographic spread of investment and economic activities.

The automotive industry is one of the key growth sectors that has contributed to the overall economic growth of South Africa. It contributed 7,53% to the country's GDP in 2006.

Growth in this industry can largely be attributed to the Motor Industry Development Programme (MIDP).

Government has, since 2005, been reviewing the MIDP. One of the objectives of the review is to evaluate the performance objectives of the industry against the MIDP's stated objectives of, among other things, making vehicles more affordable, growing exports, rationalising production platforms, and stabilising and growing employment.

Competition policy

The Competition Act, 1998 (Act 89 of 1998), promotes competition in South Africa to:

- enhance the efficiency, adaptability and development of the economy
- provide consumers with competitive prices and product choices
- promote employment and advance the social and economic welfare of South Africans
- expand opportunities for South African participation in world markets and recognise the role of foreign competition in the country

- ensure that SMEs have an equitable opportunity to participate in the economy
- promote a greater spread of ownership, in particular by increasing the ownership stakes of HDIs.

The functions of the Competition Commission include investigating anti-competitive conduct in contravention of the Act, assessing the impact of mergers and acquisitions on competition and taking appropriate action, monitoring competition levels and market transparency in the economy, identifying impediments to competition, and playing an advocacy role in addressing them.

The Competition Commission is independent but its decisions may be appealed to the Competition Tribunal and the Competition Appeal Court.

By August 2007, the Department of Trade and Industry had completed a review of competition policy and consulted with economic cluster departments.

Proposed amendments were to be forwarded to Cabinet for consideration.

Small, medium and micro-enterprises

By August 2007, the department had developed the Small Business Strategy and roll-out plan. A total of 155 transactional linkages had been created, with a net value of R117 million.

The Department of Trade and Industry hosted the national Annual Small Business Summit in Bela Bela, Limpopo, from 30 to 31 August 2007. More than 500 entrepreneurs, small-business financiers, educators, consultants and experts, as well as government, attended.

Institutional support framework

National Small Business Advisory Council (NSBAC)

The NSBAC, which was appointed by Minister Mpahlwa in August 2006, will advise him on issues affecting owner-managed businesses.

The 15-member council comprises business owners, academics and international entrepreneurial experts.

Small Enterprise Development Agency (Seda)

Seda aims to:

- improve geographic outreach
- achieve the desired impact on small enterprises

- provide a single access point for small enterprises
- be inclusive of all relevant stakeholders
- leverage resources in service delivery
- optimise resource usage
- align government's strategy of service delivery in a coherent manner.

At Seda offices, entrepreneurs are able to get help with business plans, technical advice and marketing, as well as information on export support, tenders and incentives.

By July 2007, Seda had eight provincial offices, 39 branches and 102 enterprise-information centres.

South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund (Samaf)

The Department of Trade and Industry launched Samaf to provide affordable and sustainable access to financial services for the poor. The goal of the fund is to:

- develop sustainable micro-finance institutions that can reach the very poor
- facilitate training for micro-entrepreneurs and financial co-operative clients
- provide back-office services through a centralised information platform
- provide mentoring, monitoring and regulating to partner organisations.

Between May 2006 and May 2007, Samaf disbursed funds to 9 000 savers and 1 700 SMEs. During 2006/07, 39 partner organisations were approved by Samaf with funding commitments of R69 million.

Khula Enterprise Finance

Khula Enterprise Finance Limited was established in 1996 as a specialised agency in the Department of Trade and Industry to promote the development of South African SMEs.

It is also registered as an insurer under the Insurance Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 17 of 2003), and is governed by the regulations of the Financial Services Board. It is an independent, limited liability company with its own board of directors.

Khula's primary role is to facilitate access to finance by small entrepreneurs. It has developed various delivery mechanisms in the public and private sectors. It has strong relationships with commercial banks, the public and corporate sectors through which it delivers a variety of financial products. In addition to facilitating access to finance, Khula provides mentorship services through Khula Institutional Support Services, which provides counselling and practical support to entrepreneurs in establishing and managing businesses.

Over the last three years, Khula has grown its disbursements and approvals to SMMEs by 60%. Loans and advances increased from R34 million in 2002 to R137 million in 2006.

Three new funds were launched and capitalised at close to R300 million to reach the SMME target market.

Khula's budget allocations over the MTEF period increased from R34,1 million in 2006/07 to R66,4 million in 2009/10. The Khula Credit Indemnity Scheme has also been successfully revised with commercial banks, to emphasise developmental imperatives associated with small business support.

Khula has also successfully launched the first-ever South African Start-Up Fund, with an initial capital amount of R150 million, specifically for the benefit of new black entrepreneurs.

Technology for Women in Business (Twib)

Twib was established in 1998 (the Year of Science and Technology [S&T]), by the Department of Trade and Industry, to support the advancement of women in business, through the application of S&T.

Twib's mandate is to accelerate women's empowerment and women-owned enterprise development by facilitating S&T-based business applications and systems, and to unlock constraints to enterprise innovation and growth. The programme is championed by the department's Gender and Women's Empowerment Unit.

The Council for Scientific and Industrial Research administers the Twib programme and provides leadership in identifying technological innovations for various Twib initiatives.

South African Women Entrepreneurs Network (Sawen)

Sawen assists aspiring and existing business women with their business enterprises.

The network advocates policy changes, builds capacity and facilitates women's access to business resources and information.

Sawen is responsible for:

- organising networking forums at regional, national and international level
- lobbying and advocating for enabling and supportive policies
- gathering and updating a database of women-owned enterprises and the services rendered by these companies
- facilitating access to pertinent business information
- facilitating capacity-building and training

- providing business mentorship and counselling
- facilitating access to decision-makers.

Industrial Development Corporation (IDC)

The IDC is a self-financing, South African state-owned development-finance institution that provides financing to entrepreneurs engaged in competitive industries.

The IDC received the top Development Financier for BEE Award for 2003, 2005 and 2006 from the Business Map Foundation. In 2006/07, the IDC made a record profit of R4 345 billion. The IDC contributed significantly to the equitable distribution of economic growth by supporting BEE companies.

In 2006/07, BEE accounted for 160 approvals, more than half the total approvals, with more than R3,4 billion in financing for BEE start-ups or in the form of expansions of existing BEE enterprises.

Business Partners Limited

Business Partners Ltd is a specialised investment company that provides customised and integrated investment, technical assistance, mentorship and property services to SMEs in South Africa and, by May 2007, also Kenya and Madagascar.

It is an unlisted public company whose major shareholders include Khula Enterprise Finance Ltd, Remgro Ltd, Sanlam Ltd, Billiton SA Ltd, Absa Group Ltd, Nedcor Ltd, Firstrand Limited, Old Mutual Life Assurance Co of South Africa, Standard Bank Investment Corporation Ltd, Anglo Corporate Enterprises (Pty) Ltd and De Beers Holdings (Pty) Ltd.

Several specialist funds are owned and managed by Business Partners: three geographical business units, the Business Partners Empowerment Fund and the Business Partners Tourism Fund.

Two funds are managed by Business Partners in a joint venture with government – the Business Partners Umsobomvu Franchise Fund and the Business Partners-Khula Start-Up Fund.

During May 2007, Business Partners launched the Women's Fund. Business Partners is committed to investing capital, skills and knowledge in entrepreneurs.

Consumer and corporate regulation

The Consumer and Corporate Regulation Division of the Department of Trade and Industry provides

coherent, predictable and transparent regulatory solutions. This is achieved by developing and reviewing regulatory systems, including policies and legislation in the areas of competition; consumer, company and intellectual property regulation; as well as public-interest regulation relating to the liquor, credit, national lotteries and gambling sectors.

Corporate and consumer regulation has become a creative endeavour that seeks to serve the interests of both business and consumers, and to create a modern and globally competitive national economy.

In an endeavour to create a regulatory environment conducive to investment and enterprise, Cabinet approved the publication of the Companies Bill for public comment in 2006/07.

The Bill aims at, among other things, promoting the development of entrepreneurship and enterprise efficiency; creating flexibility and simplicity in the formation and maintenance of companies; encouraging transparency and high standards of corporate governance; and recognising the broader social role of enterprise.

The Bill proposes the establishment of the Companies and Intellectual Property Commission to administer and enforce the legislation.

A revised Consumer Protection Bill was expected to be resubmitted to Cabinet for approval to introduce it to Parliament during 2007/08. The Bill aims to build strong consumers, competitiveness and innovation in the economy.

It also aims to ensure that consumers are able to make well-informed buying decisions, are able to access a wide range of products and services based on honest and fair marketing and selling practices, have access to efficient and effective redress, and are educated about their rights and obligations.

The enforcement of the Bill will be ensured through the proposed National Consumer Commission.

The Companies and Intellectual Property Registration Office registers businesses and intellectual property rights, maintains related registries, and develops information for disclosure to stakeholders.

Black Economic Empowerment Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Strategy

BBBEE is a government policy aimed at redressing past economic imbalances. Moreover, BEE is an important policy instrument aimed at broadening the economic base of the country, further stimulating economic growth and creating jobs while eradicating poverty.

The Codes of Good Practice for BBBEE were gazetted on 9 February 2007.

These codes are the culmination of the development of the BBBEE Strategy that seeks to enhance the economic participation of black people by growing the economy and reducing income inequality.

The Codes of Good Practice on BBBEE assist and advise both public and private sectors on their implementation of the objectives of the BBBEE Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003). The codes provide definitions, interpretation and principles of BBBEE; different categories of BEE entities; and qualification criteria for preferential procurement purposes and other economic activities.

The Codes of Good Practice also provide the weightings, indicators, targets and guidelines for stakeholders in the relevant sectors of the economy to draw up transformation charters for their sectors.

By mid-2007, the BBBEE Strategy had entered its implementation phase, which was a major step in the transformation of the economy. This phase will include aligning different pieces of legislation with the BEE Act, 2003; marketing and communicating BEE to the entire economy; and monitoring and evaluating BEE.

BEE will enhance HR, skills development and investment in enterprises that are owned or managed by black people, contributing towards the improvement of productivity, efficiencies and competitiveness of South African enterprises.

Black Business Supplier Development Programme

The BBSDP is a 20:80 cost-sharing cash-grant incentive scheme, offering support to black-owned enterprises in South Africa.

The scheme provides such enterprises with access to business development services, assisting them to improve their core competencies, upgrade managerial capabilities and restructure to become more competitive.

It aims to foster links between growing, black-owned enterprises, and corporate and public-sector enterprises.

Any enterprise that is majority black-owned (50 plus one share), has a significant number of black managers, and a minimum trading history of one year, qualifies for the programme.

Business process outsourcing and offshoring (BPO & O)

BPO & O is a major global trend, with a significant positive impact on developing countries possessing the required skills, cost advantage and infrastructure.

Over the next few years, the global BPO & O industry is forecast to grow at approximately 50% per year, and as a result, a window of opportunity exists for South Africa to realise significant value by developing this sector.

The sector has been forecast to create 100 000 new indirect jobs in South Africa and contribute up to R7,95 billion to the national economy in 2009. In 2006/07, the BPO support programme enabled the public and private sectors to work together to implement the plan to enhance South Africa's competitiveness in this sector.

The plan focused on:

- Marketing: A broad-based marketing strategy and plan were produced together with relevant value propositions and a lead management system in conjunction with the sector-support programme. Marketing missions to the UK and the USA were conducted.
- Incentives: In December 2006, Cabinet approved the Government Assistance and Support Programme for BPO. The investment grant and training-support grant was officially launched in March 2007.
- A developmental pricing framework for telecommunications, which is an ongoing process.
- Talent development: An agreement was signed with the Department of Labour to train 1 000 unemployed youth to participate in the BPO sector.
- Second-economy linkages, with the focus on attracting BPO operations to designated areas

State-owned enterprises (SOEs)

The Department of Public Enterprises is the shareholder representative for government, with oversight responsibility for the following SOEs: Alexkor, Broadband Infraco, Denel, Eskom and the Pebble-Bed Modular Reactor (PBMR), South African Airways (SAA), South African Express Airways (SAX), South African Forestry Company (Safcol) and Transnet.

SOEs have a critical role to play in advancing economic growth, since they are responsible for developing key infrastructure and manufacturing capacity. Infrastructure investments are a core part of AsgiSA, and SOEs are implementing comprehensive investment programmes to ensure that significant and sustained opportunities for investment are created in supplier industries.

Eskom and the Pebble-Bed Modular Reactor

The State's key objective is to secure long-term, environmentally sustainable electricity for the country, and Eskom's R150-billion investment programme, which will be rolled out over the next five years.

An important component of Eskom's capacity-generation programme is the introduction of independent power producers, who will diversify the revenue sources for the build programme and protect Eskom's balance sheet.

Nuclear power is also expected to make a larger contribution to the primary source for electricity, in the interests of supply security. This will be done through conventional nuclear technology and the new fourth-generation high-temperature reactors offered by the PBMR.

South African Airways

SAA is in the process of a comprehensive and fundamental restructuring plan to bring the airline back into profitability, following significant losses in recent years.

State ownership of the airline will allow for greater control in advancing national objectives, such as promoting air links with South Africa's main trading partners, contributing to the growth of the tourism industry and strengthening air-transport capacity on the continent.

South African Express Airways

The SAX is a regional airline that was established in 1994 as a feeder to SAA. The SAX was removed from Transnet's books in 2007/08 and converted into a stand-alone SOE.

The airline operates on secondary routes and provides the necessary links on thinner routes, to smaller cities and towns such as Kimberley, Richards Bay and George.

The SAX has also been successful in opening up routes into Africa with services to regional destinations such as Walvis Bay in Namibia and Lubumbashi in DRC.

Denel

The South African Government considers Denel a strategic asset for its role as custodian of the country's technological capabilities, and a driver for skills development in the engineering and high-technology disciplines. The restructuring of the company and the disposal of non-core assets are expected to streamline the company's focus and allow it to pay more attention to core capabilities.

Denel will drive the establishment of manufacturing clusters that will be a catalyst for the transfer of advanced manufacturing know-how and technologies to the broader manufacturing sector, which is the economy's second-largest sector, accounting for just over 16% of GDP.

Alexkor

The core business of Alexkor is diamond mining. The State has decided to use the company to promote the beneficiation of diamonds in the country.

In 2003, the Constitutional Court returned the land and mineral rights owned by Alexkor to the Richtersveld community following a land claim.

In 2007, government and the Richtersveld community signed a settlement agreement, which is expected to unlock any unnecessary delays in restoring rights and the payment of compensation to the community. In October 2007, the Deed of Settlements was made effective by the Land Claims Court.

Broadband Infraco

Broadband is viewed as a key driver of economic growth and wealth generation, and it is essential for South Africa to gain access to universally available, reliable and affordable broadband.

Affordable national long-distance and international connectivity would have a favourable impact on pricing and the availability of broadband.

Infraco will provide and own the long-distance Full Service Network deployed by Eskom and Transnet. The company is expected to become a stand-alone SOE.

Transnet

Transnet is uniquely positioned to provide integrated, seamless transport solutions for its customers in the bulk and manufacturing sectors as part of its drive to improve the efficiency and competitiveness of the South African economy.

Transnet will spend billions over the next five years on an investment programme that is aimed at revitalising and extending its infrastructure and addressing the maintenance backlog. Transnet's investment programme is expected to be sustained well beyond the five years to meet the needs of a growing economy.

South African Forestry Company

The State is in the process of disposing of the last remaining package of Safcol, Komatiland Forests. The disposal process is expected to be concluded by the end of March 2009.

Public works programmes

The Department of Public Works provides and manages the accommodation, housing, land and infrastructure needs of national departments; co-ordinates the national Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP); and optimises growth, employment and transformation in the construction and property industries.

Expanded Public Works Programme

The EPWP aims to facilitate and create employment opportunities for the poor and vulnerable through integrated and co-ordinated labour-intensive approaches to government infrastructure delivery and service provision.

By December 2006, the EPWP had delivered 573 269 net job opportunities ahead of the target for the same period, exceeding its targets for women and youth. The EPWP is expected to scale up to achieve 1 500 learnerships over the next two years. A committee made up of the national departments of public works and of transport and their provincial counterparts, The Presidency and National Treasury will co-ordinate the implementation of the additional R3 billion allocated under the Provincial Infrastructure Grant for the construction and maintenance of provincial infrastructure, including rural access roads, contributing to the further expansion of the EPWP.

Construction and Property Industry Development Programme

Both industries have been identified as indispensable to economic growth and social

development. Government's socio-economic objectives such as BEE, entrepreneurship and HRD can be further advanced by the transformed industries in line with the reconstruction and development agenda.

The Department of Public Works continued implementing BEE programmes in the construction sector, including the Emerging Contractor Development Programme, EPWP Vuk'uphile and venture learnership programmes, and the Incubator Programme. It was expected to establish similar programmes in the property industry to contribute to its transformation.

In March 2006, the construction and property charters were signed. The Property Charter proposes a range of targets, including transferring 25% of sector assets into black hands in five years' time, and setting aside 10% of private corporations' annual development investments for underdeveloped areas.

Through the charter, the property sector has committed to achieving 40% black representation at board level, of which 20% will be women.

Through the Construction Charter, stakeholders in the construction industry have set a black ownership target of 30% and proposed 40% black representation at board level, with 20% of members being women.

The charter proposes a procurement target of 70% to ensure that the economic benefits of current and planned infrastructure accrue to all sectors of the community. Both charters advocate the importance of developing skills through mentorship, learnerships and bursaries.

Between 2005 and 2006, government's Infrastructure Delivery Improvement Programme had improved provincial infrastructure spend by 29%.

Over 2 000 officials and built-environment professionals were trained in 2006. By mid-2007, over 30 000 contractors had been registered in all provinces. They receive cellphone and e-mail notification of all public-sector tenders.

Construction Industry Development Board (CIDB)

The CIDB was established by the Construction Industry Development Act, 2000 (Act 38 of 2000), as a statutory body (schedule 3A public entity) to provide leadership to stakeholders; stimulate sustainable growth, reform and improvements in the construction sector; and improve its role in the economy. The CIDB is responsible to the Minister of Public Works, and comprises individuals appointed from the private and public sector.

Council for the Built Environment (CBE)

The CBE promotes the uniform application of policy and improves co-ordination between the building profession and government. It drives the transformation and improved performance of the building profession.

Employment and skills development

The Employment and Skills Development Services (ESDS) and HRD Branch of the Department of Labour is responsible for achieving the strategic objectives and equity targets of the National Skills Development Strategy (NSDS) and contributing to the achievement of the objectives of the HRD Strategy.

Legislation

The Department of Labour's Legislation Branch ensures the implementation of the following laws:

- Skills Development Act, 1998 (Act 97 of 1998), as amended.
- Manpower Training Act, 1981 (Act 56 of 1981), of provisions that are still in force.
- Skills Development Levies Act, 1999 (Act 9 of 1999), as amended, and the Income Tax Act, 1994 (Act 21 of 1994). In some aspects, the ESDS works closely with National Treasury and Sars.
- South African Qualifications Authority (Saq) Act, 1995 (Act 58 of 1995), working closely with the Department of Education.

National Skills Development Strategy

The ESDS and HRD Branch oversees and supports all institutions associated with the Skills Development Act, 1998 and implements and achieves the objectives and targets of the NSDS. The first NSDS (2001 – 2005) ended on 31 March 2005.

The Minister of Labour, Mr Membathisi Mdladlana, launched the adjusted NSDS (2005 – 2010) on 3 March 2005. The adjusted strategy has five strategic objectives and 20 success indicators.

The second phase of the NSDS (2005 – 2010) ended on 31 March 2007.

Between 2001, when the first phase of the NSDS (2001 – 2005) was launched, and the end of September 2006, a total of 325 247 learners were

registered on accredited occupational-based learning programmes.

From 2001 to December 2006, some 47 618 artisans were registered.

The strategy for 2005 – 2010 seeks to support economic growth for employment creation and poverty eradication, promote productive and equitable citizenship by aligning skills development with national strategies for growth and development, and accelerate BEE.

The strategy is critical to realising government's goal of halving South Africa's unemployment by 2014, by providing the skills the economy requires.

Better alignment between the Further Education and Training sector, business and the sector education and training authorities (Setas) has resulted in a more demand-driven strategy. The NSDS' learnership apprenticeships and internship programmes target unemployed youth, because 75% of the unemployed are between 15 and 34 years old.

A special project by the Department of Education aims to meet the challenges of having 800 000 learners in Adult Basic Education and Training (Abet) by March 2010. Abet enhances the basic skills of people beyond their school-going years and tackles long-term unemployment. The NSDS is closely aligned with the EPWP, which targets people with low skills levels and the unemployed, by providing them with work experience and equipping them with skills.

Sector education and training authorities

In response to Jipsa's call to increase the number of artisans to 12 500 a year to meet the 50 000 target by 2010, the department has embarked on a number of interventions.

These include the allocation of R316 million under the National Skills Fund (NSF) to 13 Setas to support their interventions in the scarce and critical priority areas that include artisans.

By mid-2007, the department was repositioning the Institute for National Development of Learnerships, Employment and Labour Assessment (Indlela) to play a major role in the assessment standard, moderation of assessment and training of artisan trainers to maintain or surpass international standards.

Sector Education and Training Authority Co-ordination Programme

The Seta Co-ordination Programme is responsible for implementing the NSDS at sectoral level.

It aims to:

- ensure alignment with the Saqa framework and other education and training policies
- oversee and co-ordinate activities of the Department of Labour's Chief Directorate: Seta Co-ordination
- design and implement systems and processes to monitor the use of skills-development levy grants, and evaluate the impact and contribution of skills development in enhancing productivity and employment and the number of skilled workers in South Africa
- oversee Seta contributions towards the objectives and targets of the NSDS and the HRD Strategy
- facilitate the working relationship between Setas, Indlela, and provincial offices
- provide relevant analysis to enable the National Skills Authority (NSA), the director-general and the minister to make strategic policy decisions about implementing skills development
- facilitate the collection of financial skills-development levies, transfers to Setas, disbursements to employers, and accountability of all stakeholders in the use of funds
- ensure increased access to and relevance of work-based learning and qualifications
- provide support and moderation to learning and assessment initiatives, and delivery of training services by the restructured Indlela sub-programme.

National Skills Authority

The NSA is an advisory body, established in terms of the Skills Development Act, 1998, to advise the minister on the NSDS, its implementation and other relevant matters. Its membership consists of organised business, labour and community organisations, government departments, and representatives from the education- and training-provider community.

National Skills Fund

The NSF, a statutory advisory body to the Minister of Labour on the NSDS, was established in 1999 as legislated by the Skills Development Act, 1998. The Minister of Labour, on advice from the NSA, allocates subsidies from the NSF. The Director-General of Labour is the accounting officer of the fund.

The NSF is funded by 20% of the skills-development levies collected by Sars (of which 2% is paid to Sars as collection fees and 2% is allocated for administrative costs).

In 2007/08, the NSF was allocated R6,5 billion, of which 80% will be managed by the Setas.

Unemployment Insurance Fund (UIF)

The main tasks of the UIF are to:

- maintain an employer/employee database
- process claims and pay benefits
- invest excess funds
- reduce opportunities for fraud
- collect contributions.

By mid-2007, the UIF boasted a comprehensive database of more than 7,2 million workers with individual accounts.

The UIF had, since April 2006, assisted more than 546 968 unemployed workers and approved 526 097 or 96% of these claims. All benefits are paid electronically into the bank accounts of unemployed workers.

By mid-2007, the UIF had an operating surplus and reserves of R19,8 billion, which was up 40% on the previous year.

The Unemployment Insurance Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 32 of 2003), is part of the successful turnaround strategy being implemented by the UIF, based on four main pillars. These are legislative reform, IT, HR and institutional restructuring.

The Act deals with the administration of the fund and the payment of benefits. It also provides for the commissioner to maintain a database to pay benefits to beneficiaries. Sars continues to administer the Unemployment Insurance Contributions Act, 2002 (Act 4 of 2002).

Sars collects contributions from all employers whose workers pay employees' tax. The collection



The National Economic Development and Labour Council (Nedlac) aims to build consensus through tripartite participation in decision-making on labour and socio-economic matters.

Nedlac comprises the labour market, trade and industry, public finance and monetary policy, and development chambers, with representatives from organised business, organised labour, community and development organisations, and government.

Nedlac considers all proposed labour legislation and significant changes to social and economic policy before these are presented to Parliament. Nedlac also monitors the progress and implementation of the Growth and Development Summit's agreements.

of contributions from all other employers is delegated to the Unemployment Insurance Commissioner.

Occupational Health and Safety (OHS)

The OHS legislative framework consists of the OHS Act, 1993 (Act 85 of 1993), and 20 sets of regulations. Compliance is achieved by conducting inspections and investigations, and providing advocacy and statutory services. Responsibility for OHS and workers' compensation in South Africa resides in three government departments.

The Department of Labour is responsible for workers' compensation in terms of the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993 (Act 130 of 1993), and for OHS in terms of the OHS Act, 1993. The Department of Minerals and Energy is responsible for OHS in mines and mining areas, in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act 29 of 1996). The Department of Health is responsible for the compensation of mineworkers in terms of the Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act, 1993 (Act 208 of 1993).

Compensation Fund

The Compensation Fund is a public entity of the Department of Labour. The fund's main objective is to compensate workers for occupational injuries sustained and diseases contracted in the course of, and as a result of, their employment, and to compensate the dependants of workers in fatal cases.

The fund generates revenue for all its operations from contributions paid by registered employers. The Compensation Fund administers the Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993, as amended by Act 61 of 1997. The fund has, since December 2004, improved from the settlement rate of about 48% to 58% in 2007.

In 2007/08, the fund was expected to register pharmacists, medical orthotics and prosthetics practitioners to control rising medical and rehabilitation costs.

Directorate: Collective Bargaining

The Directorate: Collective Bargaining has to:

- extend the collective bargaining system to cover more vulnerable workers

- ensure that the implementation and impact of the Labour Relations Act (LRA), 1995 (Act 66 of 1995), is optimised
- effectively monitor dispute resolution.

The directorate:

- registers trade unions, employers' organisations and bargaining and statutory councils
- publishes bargaining council agreements for the extension thereof to non-parties
- promotes and monitors collective bargaining.

Collective agreements

In 2006, 38 collective agreements at bargaining councils were extended to non-parties. Forty-four labour organisations (trade unions and employers' organisations) who failed to submit audited financial statements and those who were considered not genuine were cancelled, leaving the 355 trade unions, 226 employers' organisations and 58 bargaining councils on the register.

Dispute resolution

The Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration (CCMA) is an independent dispute-resolution body created in 1996 in terms of the LRA, 1995. It does not belong to, nor is it controlled by, any political party, trade union or business.

Between November 1996 and 31 January 2007, the CCMA processed 1 069 400 labour disputes. The number of working days lost due to industrial action decreased by 68% since the LRA, 1995 came into operation. Although the CCMA receives about 120 000 referrals a year, it manages to settle an average of 70% of those cases.

Labour-market policy

The Labour-Market Policy Programme consists of three directorates, namely, Research Policy and Planning (RPP), Labour-Market Information and Statistics (LMIS), and International Relations (IR).

The RPP Directorate is responsible for:

- analysing labour-market information and conditions
- identifying relevant labour-market interventions
- formulating labour-market policies
- researching, monitoring and evaluating policies affecting the labour market.



The LMIS Directorate is responsible for:

- creating and maintaining capacity to monitor, analyse and disseminate labour-market information and statistics pertaining to trends in the labour market and the impact of labour-market policies
- creating and maintaining linkages with other producers and users of labour-market information and statistics, with the aim of avoiding duplication and promoting clear use of concepts
- developing the departmental library as an expanded resource centre on labour issues
- assisting other departmental directorates with statistical procedures to develop and monitor departmental activities.

The IR Directorate is responsible for:

- developing strategies that will consolidate South Africa's presence in international forums
- monitoring developments in the African region and southern African subregion
- facilitating the department's participation in bilateral and multilateral organisations in the region

- discharging South Africa's obligations to international organisations of which the country is a member
- developing strategies to encourage conformity with international labour standards in the region.

Employment equity

To support and accelerate the implementation of the Employment Equity Act, 1998 (Act 55 of 1998), the Directorate: Employment Equity focused mainly on developing an employment-equity system aimed at strengthening the implementation and enforcement mechanisms of the Act. An online employment-equity reporting service was developed and implemented from 1 September 2005.

In addition, the Director-General Review System was developed to assess employers' substantive compliance with the Employment Equity Act, 1998. The programme continued to support capacity-building in trade-union organisations by means of the Strengthening of Civil Society Fund.

Acknowledgements

Business Day

Business Map

Business Partners Limited

Department of Public Enterprises

Department of Trade and Industry

Development Indicators

Estimates of National Expenditure 2007, published by National Treasury

Quarterly Bulletin, published by the South African Reserve Bank

South African Reserve Bank

Statistics South Africa

Sunday Times

Towards a Ten-Year Review

www.dpe.gov.za

www.dti.gov.za

www.godisa.net

www.gov.za

www.idc.co.za

www.southafrica.info

www.twib.co.za

Suggested reading

Adendorff, SA and de Wit, PWC. eds. *Production and Operations Management: A South African Perspective*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press, 2004.

African Development Indicators. Washington: World Bank, 2005.

Aliber, M. et al. *Trends and Policy Changes in the Rural Economy: Four Provincial Case Studies*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC), 2005.

Allen, VL. *History of Black Mineworkers in South Africa*. Keighley (UK): Moor Press, 2003. 2v.

Barker, F. *South African Labour Market*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2003.

Bertelsmann-Scott, T and Draper, P. *Regional Integration and Economic Partnership Agreements: Southern Africa at the Crossroads*. Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs, 2006.

Beyond the Apartheid Workplace: Studies in Transition. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2005.

Bhorat, H and Kanbur, R. *Poverty and Policy in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Black, Calitz, Steenkamp and Associates. *Public Economics for South African Students*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press South Africa, 2003.

Blankley, W. et al. eds. *Measuring Innovation in Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development (OECD) and non-OECD countries*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Bond, P. *Talk Left Walk Right: South Africa's Frustrated Global Reforms*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal, 2004.

Bruggemans, C. *Change of Pace: South Africa's Economic Revival*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2004.

Crotty, A and Bonorchis, R. *Executive Pay in South Africa: Who Gets What and Why*. Cape Town: Double Storey Books, 2006.

Dauids, I. et al. eds. *Participatory Development in South Africa: A Development Management Perspective*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2005.

- Dorrien, P. *The Making of South Africa Inc. Unlocking South Africa's Global Potential*. Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2005.
- Ehlers, T and Lazenby, K. *Strategic Management: Southern African Concepts and Cases*, Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2003.
- Erasmus, BJ and van Dyk, PS. *Training Management in South Africa*. 3rd ed. Cape Town: Oxford University Press, 2004.
- Fisher, J. *et al. South Africa at Work: Applying Psychology to the Workplace*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2003.
- Flanagan, N and Finger, J. *Just About Everything a Manager Needs to Know in South Africa*. Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2006.
- Hartley, P. ed. *E-Business Handbook: The 2003 Review of Innovation at Work in South African Business*. Cape Town: Trialogue, 2003.
- Globalisation and New Identities: A View from the Middle*, edited by P Alexander, MC Dawson and M Ichharam. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2006.
- Graham, P, ed. *Inheriting Poverty? The Link Between Children's Well-Being and Unemployment in South Africa*. Cape Town: Institute for a Democratic South Africa (Idasa), c.2007.
- Herselman, S. *Dynamics of Diversity in an Organisational Environment*. Pretoria: University of South Africa (Unisa) Press, 2004.
- Hirsch, A. *Season of Hope: Economic Reform under Mandela and Mbeki*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2005.
- Hugon, P. *The Economy of Africa*. Pretoria: Protea Book House, 2004.
- Kahn, M. *et al. Flights of the Flamingoes: A Study on the Mobility of R&D Workers*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2004.
- Kareithi, P and Nixon, K. *Untold Stories: Economics and Business Journalism in African Media*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2005.
- Khoza, RJ and Mohammed A. *The Power of Governance: Enhancing the Performance of State-Owned Enterprises*. Johannesburg: Pan Macmillan, 2005.
- Labour Relations in South Africa*, edited by R Venter, rev. ed. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.
- Linking Migration, HIV/AIDS and Urban Food Security in Southern and Eastern Africa*. Cape Town: Idasa, 2007. (African Migration and Development Series, 3).
- Mangcu, X. *et al. eds. Visions of Black Economic Empowerment*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007.
- McGrath, S. *et al. eds. Shifting Understanding of Skills in South Africa: Overcoming the Historical Imprint of Low Skills Regime*. Pretoria: HSRC, 2004.
- Migration and Development in Africa: An Overview*. Cape Town: Idasa, 2006. (African Migration and Development Series, 1)
- Migration, Remittances and Development in Southern Africa*. Cape Town: Idasa, 2007. (Migration Policy Series, 44).
- Naidoo, R. *Corporate Governance: Essential Guide for SA Companies*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2003.
- Nel, P.S. *et al. Training Management: A Multidisciplinary Approach to Human Resources Development in Southern Africa*. 3rd ed. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.
- Nieman, G. *et al. eds. Entrepreneurship: A South African Perspective*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2003.
- Opperman, I, ed. *Buy Right: Consumer Guide for South Africa*. Pretoria: Protea Book House, 2006.
- Padayachee, V, ed. *The Development Decade: Economic and Social Change in South Africa, 1994 – 2004*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
- Parker, E and Illetschko, K. *Franchising in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Front Runner Publishing, 2007.

- Schutz, H, ed. *Organisational Behaviour – A Contemporary South African Perspective*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2003.
- Shelley, S. *Doing Business in Africa: A Practical Guide for Investors, Entrepreneurs and Expatriate Managers*. Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2004.
- Stanley, J. *Just About Everything a Retail Manager Needs to Know about South Africa*. Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2006.
- States of Vulnerability: The Future Brain Drain of Talent to South Africa*. Cape Town: Idasa, 2006. (*Migration Policy Series*, 42).
- Van Seventer, DE. *Employment and Skills in South African Exports*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
- Van Zyl, C. *et al. Understanding South African Financial Markets*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2003.
- Vass, J and Phakathi, S. *Managing HIV in the Workplace*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
- Von Holdt, K. *Transition from Below: Forging Trade Union and Workplace Change in South Africa*. Pietermaritzburg: University of Natal Press, 2003.
- Visser, W and Sunter, C. *Beyond Reasonable Greed: Why Sustainable Business is a Much Better Idea*. Cape Town: Human & Rousseau, 2003.
- White, L, ed. *Is There An Economic Orthodoxy? Growth and Reform in Africa, Asia and Latin America*. Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs, 2006.
- Woolard, I and Woolard, C. *Earnings Inequality in South Africa 1995 – 2003*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
- Zegeye, A and Maxted, J. *Our Dream Deferred: The Poor in South Africa*. Pretoria: South Africa History Online and University of South Africa, 2003.



SA YEARBOOK 2007/08 | EDUCATION



The Bill of Rights, contained in the Constitution, 1996, stipulates that everyone has the right to a basic education, including adult basic education and further education, which the State, through reasonable measures, must progressively make available and accessible.

Formal education in South Africa is categorised according to three levels – General Education and Training (GET), Further Education and Training (FET) and Higher Education (HE).

The GET band consists of the Reception Year (Grade R) and learners up to Grade 9, as well as an equivalent Adult Basic Education and Training (Abet) qualification. The FET band consists of grades 10 to 12 in schools and all education and training from the National Qualifications Framework (NQF) levels 2 to 4 (equivalent to grades 10 to 12 in schools), and the N1 to N6 in FET colleges. The HE band consists of a range of degrees, diplomas and certificates up to and including postdoctoral degrees. These levels are integrated within the NQF provided by the South African Qualifications Authority (Saqa) Act, 1995 (Act 58 of 1995).

By mid-2007, the South African public-education system had 12,3 million learners, 387 000 educators, 26 592 schools, 2 278 Abet centres, 50 public FET institutions, 4 800 Early Childhood Development (ECD) centres and 23 HE institutions. Of the 26 592 schools, 1 000 were independent schools, 400 were special-needs schools and the remainder were ordinary schools. Of all schools, 6 000 were secondary and the rest primary.

Learners attend school for 13 years; the first year of education, Grade R, and the last three are not compulsory. Many primary schools offer Grade R, which can also be completed at nursery school.

The matric exam pass rate in 2006 was 67%. Although this represented a slight decrease compared with 2005, the number of learners writing and passing the Senior Certificate increased substantially. Some 20 000 more candidates wrote the 2006 examination than in 2005. A total of 351 503 learners passed the Senior Certificate in 2006, amounting to 4 419 more than in 2005.

In 2006, 85 830 candidates achieved university exemption. A total of 25 217 learners passed Mathematics on the Higher Grade (HG) and 29 781 passed Physical Science HG.

The FET and HE sectors have undergone a major rationalisation process that has reduced the overall number of institutions through mergers.

FET institutions were reduced from 152 to 50, and the new institutional landscape for HE consists of eight separate and incorporated universities,

three merged universities, five universities of technology and six comprehensive institutions.

Education structures Ministry of Education

The National Education Policy Act, 1996 (Act 27 of 1996), empowers the Minister of Education to determine national norms and standards for education planning, provision, governance, monitoring and evaluation. The principle of democratic decision-making must be exercised within the context of overall policy goals. In determining policy, the minister must take into account the competence of provincial legislatures and the relevant provisions of any provincial law relating to education.

South Africa has one of the highest rates of government investment in education in the world. Education was allocated R105,5 billion in 2007/08.

National and provincial departments of education

The Constitution has vested substantial power in the provincial legislatures and governments to run educational affairs (other than universities and universities of technology), subject to a national policy framework. The national Department of Education is responsible for formulating policy, setting norms and standards, and monitoring and evaluating all levels of education. It also funds HE institutions through subsidies and by providing financial support to students through the National Student Financial Aid Scheme (NSFAS).

The national department shares a concurrent role with the provincial departments of education for school education, Abet, ECD and FET colleges. The South African Schools Act, 1996 (Act 84 of 1996), further devolves responsibility to school level by delegating the governance of public schools to democratically elected school-governing bodies (SGBs), consisting of parents, educators, non-educator staff and (secondary school) learners.

Relations with provincial departments of education are guided by national policy, within which the provincial departments have to set their own priorities and implementation programmes. The National Education Policy Act, 1996 formalised

relations between national and provincial authorities, and established the Council of Education Ministers (CEM) and the Heads of Education Departments Committee (Hedcom) as intergovernmental forums to collaborate in developing the education system.

The role of the national department is to translate the education and training policies of government and the provisions of the Constitution into a national education policy and legislative framework.

The department must ensure that:

- all levels of the system adhere to these policies and laws
- mechanisms are in place to monitor and enhance quality in the system
- the system is on par with international developments.

The core activities of the department are to:

- provide research and policy review
- provide planning and policy development
- provide support to the provinces and HE institutions in their implementation of national policy, norms and standards
- monitor the implementation of policy, norms and standards to assess their impact on the quality of the educational process, and identify policy gaps.

The Department of Education has seven branches:

- Administration
- Auxilliary and Associated Services
- System Planning and Monitoring
- Quality Promotion and Development
- GET
- FET
- HE

Administration

This branch provides administrative support for the overall management of the corporate functions performed for the department.

Auxilliary and Associated Services

This branch co-ordinates and promotes effective international relations, and gives support and advisory services to provincial education departments.

Systems Planning and Monitoring

The Systems Planning and Monitoring Branch provides strategic direction in the development, implementation and monitoring of education policies, programmes and projects.

Quality Promotion and Development

The Quality Promotion and Development Branch provides strategic direction for the development of policies and education programmes to ensure continuous improvement in the quality of learning.

General Education and Training

The GET Branch provides leadership by managing and evaluating programmes for ECD, school education, learners with special needs, education management and governance programmes, district development and human resources (HR) in education.

Key priorities of the branch include expanding programmes; providing Grade R to all children; further developing a truly inclusive system of education, including the consolidation of special schools; ensuring that there are no underqualified educators; co-ordinating the implementation and provision of education to children up to the age of four; and successfully implementing the Revised National Curriculum Statement (RNCS).

The department will develop the capacity of school and district managers to support and ensure quality teaching and learning in schools through its district-development programme and targeted programmes for aspirant and serving principals.

The department aims to remove all barriers to learning so that children with special needs, including the most vulnerable, are able to participate fully.

By May 2007, there were 385 special schools serving 87 865 learners, with 7 294 educators.

Learner access to Grade R is increasing, and the department expects to meet its target of implementing Grade R in all public primary schools by 2010. The department will focus on improving the outcomes of education in the early years of schooling and beyond.

The *White Paper on Building an Inclusive Education and Training System* is being implemented.

Further Education and Training

The FET Branch is responsible for developing policy for grades 10 to 12 in public and independent schools, as well as in public and private FET colleges.

It oversees the integrity of assessment in schools and colleges, and offers an academic curriculum as well as a range of vocational subjects. FET colleges cater for out-of-school youth and adults.

The branch oversees, co-ordinates and monitors the system's response to improved learner partici-

pation and performance in Mathematics, Science and Technology (MST). It devises strategies aimed at the use of information and communications technology (ICT), and supports curriculum implementation through the national educational portal, Thutong (www.thutong.org.za).

In 2006/07, the branch's main achievements included:

- preparing for implementation of vocational education levels 2, 3 and 4 in 2007, 2008 and 2009
- preparing for the implementation of the new curriculum in Grade 11 in 2007 and of Level 2 national certificates in FET colleges in 2007
- monitoring the first year of FET colleges
- preparing for the registration of private FET colleges
- preparing national examinations for Abet Level 4, FET colleges and 11 subjects of the Senior Certificate.

In 2007/08, government allocated R1,8 billion to FET colleges. Over 25 000 students registered in newly developed technical and service skills-related programmes.

Some R600 million was provided for bursaries to FET college students.

Higher Education

HE is central to the social, cultural and economic development of modern societies. The HE Branch provides strategic direction and institutional support for the development of a single co-ordinated system.

The branch provides leadership by:

- developing legislation
- developing policy support to the HE system
- liaising with constituencies in HE
- registering private HE institutions
- overseeing the NSFAS
- implementing the National Plan for HE
- allocating and transferring subsidies to public HE institutions.

Total government funding of the HE system has more than doubled since 1996. More than R2 billion has been allocated to support infrastructure improvement on many campuses, improve academic salaries, and focus attention on academic support over the next three years.

Earmarked funds have been allocated to individual universities for particular initiatives, including refurbishing existing and building new academic and support buildings and student residences, and improving teaching and learning equipment and library facilities, particularly at newly merged historically disadvantaged institutions.

Statutory bodies

Council of Education Ministers

The CEM, consisting of the Minister of Education, the Deputy Minister of Education and the nine provincial members of the executive councils for education, meets regularly to discuss the promotion of national education policy, share information and views on all aspects of education in South Africa, and co-ordinate action on matters of mutual interest.

Heads of Education Departments Committee

Hedcom consists of the Director-General of the Department of Education, the deputy directors-general of the department, and the heads of provincial departments of education. The functions of the committee include facilitating the development of a national education system, sharing information and views on national education, co-ordinating administrative action on matters of mutual interest, and advising the department on a range of specified matters related to the proper functioning of the national education system.

General and Further Education and Training Quality Assurance Council (Umalusi)

Umalusi assures the quality of GET and FET. The council monitors and moderates learner achievements and issues certificates at key points.

It also evaluates the capacity of education- and training-providers to deliver and assess qualifications and learning programmes according to expected standards of quality. Umalusi is guided by the GET and FET Quality Assurance Act, 2001 (Act 58 of 2001).

To ensure that the final results awarded to learners for the purpose of certification are valid, reliable, fair and credible, Umalusi has adopted the following quality-assurance measures:

- moderating question papers of the various public and private examining bodies

- monitoring conduct in the examinations
- moderating the marking of scripts
- moderating continuous assessment
- standardising learners' marks in accordance with agreed statistical and educational principles.

Through monitoring private providers, Umalusi initiates a full evaluation and accreditation process with institutions that meet the following descriptions:

- institutions that offer NQF-registered programmes that lead to the General Education and Training Certificate (GETC) and the Further Education and Training Certificate (FETC)
- private assessment bodies that assess/moderate the exit points for GETC and FETC, and any other qualifications Umalusi may certify.

Umalusi monitors provincial departments of education and reports on their performance to the Minister of Education. It evaluates provincial departments on their capacity and the quality of their management of provision in districts and learning sites. Public learning sites include:

- public schools (primary and secondary schools)
- FET colleges
- public adult learning centres
- public assessment bodies.

The newly established Quality Assurance of Qualifications and Curriculum Unit is responsible for establishing criteria and procedures within which Umalusi will conduct its function of monitoring the adequacy and suitability of qualifications and the curriculum. This involves guiding the development of qualifications and the curriculum, and the assessment and certification of qualifications.

The Research and Development Unit conducts and commissions research in strategic areas in education. Umalusi also works with partner organisations in conducting research in identified areas. Umalusi has established a research forum, consisting of a selection of leading educational researchers in South Africa, which provides guidance in terms of conceptualising the research agenda, strengthening the research function, assisting with the design of research projects and evaluating the outcomes of research conducted.

Umalusi also offers a certificate-verification service to employers and learning institutions.

South African Qualifications Authority

The Saqa is a statutory body of 29 members appointed by the ministers of labour and of education. The Saqa, through the NQF, ensures that South African qualifications are of excellent quality,

and internationally comparable. The authority oversees the:

- development of the NQF by formulating and publishing policies and criteria for the registration of bodies responsible for establishing education and training standards or qualifications
- accreditation of bodies responsible for monitoring and auditing achievements in terms of such standards and qualifications
- implementation of the NQF by ensuring the registration, accreditation and assignment of functions to the referred bodies
- registration of national standards and qualifications on the NQF.

The NQF is a set of principles and guidelines on which records of learner achievement are registered. This enables national recognition of acquired skills and knowledge, thereby ensuring an integrated system that encourages lifelong learning. The NQF also attempts to move the measurement of achievement in education and training away from input, towards outcomes.

The Saqa's Centre for the Evaluation of Educational Qualifications determines the equivalence between foreign and South African qualifications in the South African context.

The Saqa has registered qualifications and unit standards that continue to support the national imperative to attain quality education and training for all. Some 95 new qualifications, including the National Certificate (Vocational), levels 2, 3 and 4 and 1 023 unit standards, were approved for registration on the NQF in 2006.

Some 6 860 qualifications and 1 231 unit standards were re-registered by the Saqa's qualifications and standards committee in 2006. The Saqa planned to generate qualifications and standards, as required by the various sectors, in response to national skills needs, and to register 189 additional qualifications by March 2007.

The Saqa has established the state of quality assurance, ensured that most of the quality-assurance bodies closed all the quality gaps, and was starting a process to move from compliance to performance auditing.

To ensure that all the accredited providers of registered qualifications are monitored and audited by accredited education and training quality-assurance bodies (ETQAs), a targeted monitoring process was undertaken and the performance audit model was refined with all inputs.

The National Learners' Records Database (NLRD) is the key national source of information for human

resource development (HRD) in South Africa in terms of education, training and labour-market supply, and is also the management-information system of the NQF.

It includes information on learner achievements and accredited providers uploaded from ETQAs, as well as the full contents of all qualifications and unit standards registered on the NQF. The NLRD is the first system in the world to contain all of these elements in one relational database.

Council on Higher Education (CHE)

The CHE was established in terms of the HE Act, 1997 (Act 101 of 1997), and is responsible for:

- advising the minister on all policy matters related to HE
- executing responsibility for quality assurance in HE and training
- monitoring and evaluating the achievement of policy goals and objectives, including reporting on the state of South African HE
- promoting students' access to HE.

The CHE also publishes an annual report on the state of HE for submission to Parliament, and convenes an annual summit of HE stakeholders. In addition, the council accredits private providers and programmes for quality assurance.

South African Council for Educators (SACE)

The SACE is a professional council that aims to enhance the status of the teaching profession and promote the development of educators and their professional conduct. The SACE was established in terms of the SACE Act, 2000 (Act 31 of 2000).

The council has three core functions:

- registering educators
- promoting the professional development of educators
- setting, maintaining and protecting ethical and professional standards.

Educators are required to register with SACE before they are employed by any authority. The SACE has a register of about 495 000 educators, of which 19 000 are registered provisionally.

The council has a number of programmes that promote the development of educators and enhance the status and image of the teaching profession. These include, among other things, the

Professional Development Portfolio Project that aims to encourage educators to reflect on their practice and to take responsibility for their own professional development; teacher education and development research activities for purposes of advising the council and the Minister of Education; co-ordinating and managing various professional development activities in the country; and celebrating World Teachers' Day to acknowledge the work of educators.

The ethics function ensures that educators adhere to the SACE Code of Professional Ethics.

On 28 March 2006, SACE passed the resolution on the registration of non-national (foreign) educators. This had been on the agenda of the council since 2002. The resolution emphasises the need for proof of legal entry into South Africa and good ethical/professional standing prior to registration.

National Board for Further Education and Training (NBFET)

The NBFET was launched in June 1999 in terms of the National Education Policy Act, 1996. It provides the minister with independent and strategic advice on matters relating to the transformation of FET. The board may, on its own initiative, advise the minister on any aspect of FET, as well as:

- national FET policy, goals and priorities

In June 2007, the Minister of Education, Ms Naledi Pandor, launched the second *Trends in Public Higher Education* report, which analysed the South African Qualifications Authority's National Learners' Record Database.

The database informs governmental research and decision-making in terms of the labour market, and education and training. It enables individual learners to verify their own achievements, or to request their verification by potential/current employers and/or employment agencies. It also provides unemployed graduates with a portal through which they can access and disseminate their own achievements in a regulated manner.

The database is expected to eventually contain a complete record of the formal learning achievements of all South Africans. By mid-2007, the database contained information on 20 million learning achievements of 7,5 million students, and a register of about 8 000 qualifications and 10 000 unit standards.

- norms and standards, including those regarding funding
- norms and the terms, purposes and conditions of earmarked grants
- reports on FET from provincial advisory bodies.

Education Labour Relations Council (ELRC)

The ELRC is a bargaining council for the education sector. The council consists of equal representation of the employer (the national and provincial departments of education) and employees (trade unions representing educators and other employees in the sector).

The ELRC aims to create effective and constructive labour relations in the education sector, and to ensure the promotion and transformation of education at all levels within society.

Since its inception, the ELRC has concluded many collective agreements that have improved the quality of teaching and learning in South Africa.

National Student Financial Aid Scheme

The NSFAS is responsible for:

- allocating loans and bursaries to eligible students in public HE
- developing criteria and conditions for the granting of loans and bursaries to eligible students, in consultation with the minister
- raising funds, recovering loans, maintaining and analysing a database, and undertaking research for the better use of financial resources
- advising the minister on related matters.

In 2006, the NSFAS made over R1,3 billion available for loans and bursaries to 107 586 students. Between 1991 and 2007, the NSFAS allocated over a million loan awards.

In 2006/07, the NSFAS announced details of plans to increase the number of new teachers trained in HE institutions. Some R700 million would be allocated over the next three years to the Fundza

Lushaka Bursary Scheme, which the NSFAS administers.

The NSFAS will assist in developing a system to monitor bursary recipients, to ensure that they either work back or pay back the bursaries in line with the criteria set by the department.

The NSFAS will also administer social-work bursaries in a similar manner to that of teacher bursaries.

In line with the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA) and Joint Initiative for Priority Skills Acquisition objectives, R600 million has been set aside over the next three years to fund FET-college students. This is not a loan scheme but a bursary scheme, and bursaries will be non-repayable.

Equity in education expenditure

Equity between and within provinces is achieved through the equitable division of national revenue between provinces, making use of the Equitable Shares Formula (ESF), the national norms and standards for school funding, and the national post-provisioning norms.

The Government's ESF promotes financial equity between provinces, through the distribution of national revenue to provinces on the basis of relative need and backlogs. In the area of education, the size of the school-age population and the number of learners enrolled in public ordinary schools are taken into account, as well as capital-investment needs.

The national norms and standards for school funding, which became national policy in 1999, aim to achieve equality and redress poverty at schools in terms of non-personnel expenditure within a province. The norms are clearly progressive, with 60% of a province's non-personnel expenditure going to the poorest 40% of learners in public schools. The poorest 20% of learners receive 35% of non-personnel resources, while the richest 20% receive 5%.

To enhance the attainment of equity in funding ordinary public schools, the school-funding norms provide for full, partial and conditional exemption for parents who cannot afford to pay school fees, thus ensuring that learners with financial difficulties cannot be denied access to education.

Considering that about 88% of provincial education expenditure goes towards personnel costs, the distribution of personnel, in particular educators, is a key driver of equity within provinces. Equity in this regard is promoted by the national post-provisioning norms. These norms

In April 2007, the Minister of Education, Ms Naledi Pandor, announced the release of the National Policy Framework for Teacher Education and Development.

The framework provides a clear and coherent policy for the recruitment, professional preparation and continuing professional development of teachers.

It also provides for initial professional education for teachers and continuing professional teacher development.

The professional development of teachers enables them to develop further expertise in subject content, teaching strategies, uses of technologies and other essential elements of teaching.

have contributed to the narrowing of inequalities regarding educator:learner ratios, and the availability of more educator posts in historically disadvantaged areas.

Education policy Legislative framework

Education policy is informed by the following legislation:

- The National Education Policy Act, 1996 identifies the policy, legislative and monitoring responsibilities of the Minister of Education and formalises relations between national and provincial authorities. The Act embodies the principle of co-operative governance.
- The South African Schools Act, 1996 promotes access, quality and democratic governance in the schooling system. It makes schooling compulsory for children aged seven to 15 years, or learners reaching Grade 9, whichever occurs first. It also provides for two types of schools – independent schools and public schools. The Act's provision for democratic school governance through SGBs is in place in public schools countrywide.
- The FET Act, 1998 (Act 98 of 1998), has been repealed and replaced with the FET Colleges Act, 2006 (Act 16 of 2006). This Act provides for the establishment, governance and funding of public FET colleges, the employment of staff (excluding the principal and deputy principal) at public FET colleges, the registration of private FET colleges, and general provisions for the running of such colleges. The new Act is in line with the *Education White Paper 4 on FET* (1998).
- The HE Act, 1997 provides for a unified and national system of HE and for the establishment, governance and funding of public HE institutions, the registration of private HE institutions, and general provisions regarding such institutions. This Act, together with the *Education White Paper 3 on HE* (1997) and the National Plan for HE, forms the basis for the transformation of the HE sector.
- The Employment of Educators Act (EEA), 1998 (Act 76 of 1998), regulates the professional, moral and ethical responsibilities and competencies of educators. The EEA, 1998 also

stipulates who the employer of educators is, how educators are employed, and who determines their conditions of service. Furthermore, it provides for, among other things, an incapacity code and procedures for poor work performance and a disciplinary code and procedures (for dealing with misconduct).

- The Abet Act, 2000 (Act 52 of 2000), provides for the establishment of public and private adult-learning centres, funding for Abet provisioning, the governance of public centres and quality-assurance mechanisms for the sector.

Quality Improvement and Development Strategy

To improve and develop education by means of a programme that will concentrate on addressing apartheid's legacy in education, government intends to invest some R12,5 billion over the next five years.

Five thousand schools that perform poorly and that are located in the worst-resourced districts will be identified and provided with resources such as libraries, laboratories and teaching material. Their educators will get support in the form of high-quality school-based education-development programmes, and better district-development teams.

Teaching and learning will focus on the acquisition of important content and academic skills and on equipping learners with literacy and numeracy skills.

Progress made by learners and their schools will be assessed regularly. A total of 15 500 poorly resourced schools have been identified through the Quality Improvement and Development Programme for adequate resourcing to improve learning, especially in literacy and numeracy.

By the end of 2006, some 5 233 of these schools had received 100 reading books per school to improve learners' reading competencies in the Foundation Phase (grades R to 3).

Policy developments Improving access to free and quality basic education

School fees are set at annual public meetings of SGBs where parents vote on the amount to be paid.

Parents who cannot afford to pay, or who can only afford a lesser amount, are granted an exemption or reduction in fees.

The 2005 Education Amendment Bill became law in January 2006, providing the legal foundation for introducing no-fee schools in 2007.

In 2007, there were five million learners in 13 912 no-fee schools.

Education

Targets set by the *e-Education White Paper* are to:

- build an education and training system to support ICT integration in teaching and learning and improved management and administration
- build educators' and managers' confidence in the use of ICTs
- build a framework for competencies for teacher development in the integration of ICTs into the curriculum
- establish an ICT presence in schools
- ensure that schools use education content of high quality
- ensure that schools are connected, have access to the Internet and are able to communicate electronically
- ensure that communities use and support ICT facilities.

A number of initiatives that government has embarked on to ensure that school communities are ICT capable by 2013 include:

- adopting a framework for teacher development in ICT, including school principals and subject advisors
- expanding the Thutong portal functionalities so that teachers and learners can have equal access to high-quality and diverse learning and teaching support materials
- establishing an educational network to effect collaboration, communication and the sharing of good practices among teachers
- training school management in the use of ICT.

The National Education Information Management System is, for the first time, expected to facilitate access to information on each individual school, with aerial and actual photographs, and data on water, sanitation, energy provision, laboratories and libraries.

General Education and Training

General school education is structured according to three phases, namely the Foundation Phase, Intermediate Phase and Senior Phase, and constitutes the compulsory component of the education system. The progressive provision of

Grade R prior to Grade 1 started in 2002 and will be available to all children by 2010.

Curriculum

The National Curriculum Statement (NCS) aims to develop the full potential of all learners as citizens of a democratic South Africa. It seeks to create a lifelong learner who is confident and independent; literate, numerate and multiskilled; and compassionate, with respect for the environment and the ability to participate in society as a critical and active citizen.

The NCS requires extensive reading and writing in all subjects. It requires that learners think carefully about what they learn; that they have strong conceptual knowledge and are able to apply this in a variety of situations; that they are critical and curious learners; and that they are aware of the social, moral, economic and ethical issues which face South Africans and citizens around the world.

The NCS builds on the vision and values of the Constitution and the NCS for grades R to 12. These principles include:

- social justice, a healthy environment, human rights and inclusivity
- outcomes-based education
- a high level of skills and knowledge for all
- clarity and accessibility
- progression and integration.

The NCS (grades R to 9) has been implemented in the Foundation Phase (grades R to 3) since 2004, the Intermediate Phase (grades 4 to 6) since 2005, and in grades 7 and 10 since 2006. Grades 8 and 9 were implemented in 2007.

When a new curriculum was introduced in grades 7 and 10 in 2006, Mathematics became compulsory for the first time. By 2008, pupils will be expected to write the National Senior Certificate examination, offering seven subjects from a choice of 29. Examination papers will be set nationally and benchmarked against international papers.

In terms of the curriculum, focus schools can be created and learners offered opportunities for gaining new skills.

At provincial level, schools suitable for conversion into focus schools will be identified and, to meet the demand for new and responsive skills, focus schools of technology will be set up in each province.

The NCS is available in all 11 official languages and in Braille, in keeping with the Constitution, which grants parity of esteem to all languages. Teacher guides for each learning area have been developed and distributed to all schools.

Each educator in the GET band has been provided with a copy of the NCS and a set of teacher guides.

The Policy on Religion and Education gives directives on how schools should address the issues relating to religious observance, instruction and education, which are curriculum matters. It recognises diversity among learners and aims to foster tolerance, respect and understanding among learners of different backgrounds.

The National Protocol on Assessment, which regulates the recording and reporting of learner achievement of learning outcomes for grades R to 12, has been finalised and gazetted.

The national guidelines on school uniforms have also been gazetted.

School-admission policy

The age of admission to Grade 1 is five years if the child turns six on or before 30 June in their Grade 1 year.

However, if parents have reason to believe that their child is not school-ready at age five turning six, then they can choose to send the child to Grade 1 at age six turning seven.

The Education Laws Amendment Act, 2002 (Act 50 of 2002), set the age of admission to Grade 1 as the year in which the child turns seven. However, a Constitutional Court challenge to the Bill in 2003 resulted in the school-going age of Grade 1 being changed to age five if children turn six on or before 30 June in their Grade 1 year. This was implemented with effect from the 2004 school year.

When applying for admission, parents must present the school with an official birth certificate and proof that the child has been immunised against communicable diseases.

For non-South African citizens, a study permit, temporary or permanent residence permit, or evidence of application for permission to stay in South Africa, is also required.

National School Nutrition Programme

In 2006/07, the National School Nutrition Programme, formerly known as the Primary School Nutrition Programme, provided meals to 5,9 million learners in 18 039 schools nationally. The total budget allocated was R1 098 billion.

National Treasury provided R200 million in additional funding to provinces to improve infrastructure at schools, such as kitchen equipment, garden tools, and eating and serving utensils. Some 1 222 workshops on food safety and hygiene were conducted across all provinces, targeting food handlers and educators.

Food-production projects were initiated in 4 000 schools, coupled with 237 capacity-building workshops to develop technical skills in food production. The workshops were of benefit to 3 685 educators, 1 125 parents and 1 811 learners.

The department developed a draft guideline document for parents and educators on promoting good nutrition and healthy lifestyles among learners. To support educators in teaching nutrition in the classroom, 84 000 foundation and intermediate phase readers and 42 000 health and hygiene playing cards were distributed to all provinces.

National Strategy for Mathematics, Science and Technology Education

In 2007, the CEM approved the expansion of Dinaledi schools from 400 to 476.

The National Strategy for MST Education was launched in 2001. As part of this strategy, government identified 102 dedicated Mathematics and Physical Science schools (Dinaledi schools).

The Dinaledi schools are mainly located in historically disadvantaged communities. The aim is to double the number of learners passing HG Mathematics and Science in Grade 12 by 2008 to 5 000. The Dinaledi initiative is part of AsgiSA.

In 2006/07, the curriculum for 11 vocational programmes and four fundamentals of the National Certificate (Vocational) were finalised and implemented. Some 1 800 lecturers were trained to teach the new programmes.

In the 2007 academic year, 25 000 students enrolled for the National Certificate with subjects in the engineering, business, tourism/hospitality, information technology and agriculture sectors.

More than 12 500 students benefited from R100 million allocated for bursaries at further education and training colleges. The National Student Financial Aid Scheme is responsible for administering the bursaries.

By 2010, all secondary schools are expected to offer Science and Mathematics, taught by qualified, competent educators.

By mid-2007, the new bursary programme for educator trainees, Fundza Lushaka, had attracted over 3 000 future educators of MST and languages.

The Club 100 Project, which aims to increase the number of learners who write and pass Mathematics on HG, was introduced in 2007. Schools that produce 100 or more matriculants with HG Mathematics at the end of an academic year receive a sum of R50 000.

Further education and training colleges

Major transformation of the FET college sector took place during 2002/03, in which the existing 152 technical colleges were merged to form 50 multisite-campus FET colleges.

Each new college operates under a single governing council appointed to oversee effective and accountable management across and within the various FET college campuses and sites.

The recorded increase in student intake, the development of new programmes, and increased participation in learnerships bear testimony to the potential for growth in this sector.

From 2007, public FET colleges are offering new, exciting, modern and relevant programmes of study in a variety of vocational fields. The new programmes are intended to respond directly to the priority skills demands of the South African economy.

The National Certificate (Vocational) is a new qualification at each of levels 2, 3 and 4 of the NQF. The qualification is designed to provide both the theory and practical experience in a particular vocational field.

The practical component of the study may be offered in a real workplace environment or in a simulated workplace environment. Students will have the opportunity to experience work situations during the period of study. The qualification will also provide an opportunity to enter HE studies, subject to students taking the appropriate subject combinations. To facilitate access to this qualification, the Department of Education has set aside R600 million over three years for bursaries.

The FET College Financial Aid Scheme has already commenced for students at Level 2 of the National Certificate (Vocational) and will be extended to students on levels 3 and 4 in 2008 and 2009 respectively. These bursaries are administered by the NSFAS on behalf of the Department of Education.

Higher Education

The new HE landscape consists of the following institutions:

- University of the Witwatersrand
- University of Cape Town
- Rhodes University
- Stellenbosch University
- University of the Western Cape (incorporating the Dental Faculty of Stellenbosch University)
- University of Zululand
- University of Venda
- University of the Free State (incorporating the QwaQwa Campus of the University of the North and the Bloemfontein Campus of Vista)
- North West University (from the merger of the universities of Potchefstroom, which incorporated Vista Sebokeng Campus with North West)
- University of Pretoria (incorporating the Mamelodi Campus of Vista University)
- University of KwaZulu-Natal (from the merger of the University of Natal and the University of Durban-Westville)
- University of South Africa (Unisa) (after the merger of Unisa, which incorporated the Vista University Distance Education Campus with Technikon SA)
- Tshwane University of Technology (from the merger of Pretoria, North West and Northern Gauteng technikons)
- Durban Institute of Technology (from the merger of Natal Technikon and Technikon ML Sultan)
- Central University of Technology, Free State (formerly Technikon Free State)
- Mangosuthu Technikon
- University of Johannesburg (from the merger of Rand Afrikaans University, which incorporated the Soweto and East Rand campuses of Vista University with Technikon Witwatersrand)
- University of Limpopo (from the merger of the Medical University of South Africa and the University of the North)
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University (from the merger of the University of Port Elizabeth, which incorporated the Port Elizabeth Campus of Vista University with Port Elizabeth Technikon)
- Walter Sisulu University in the Eastern Cape (from the merger of the University of Transkei, Border Technikon and Eastern Cape Technikon)
- University of Fort Hare (which incorporated the East London Campus of Rhodes University)
- Cape Peninsula University of Technology (from the merger of the Cape and Peninsula technikons)

- Northern Cape Institute of HE
- Mpumalanga Institute of HE, which was launched in October 2006
- Vaal University of Technology.

HE and Training is also referred to as tertiary education. The HE band provides the highest level of education. Entry into HE is through a Grade 12 pass or a Grade 12 pass with exemption.

Private institutions offering HE must register with the department in accordance with the HE Act, 1997. The role of HE in the South African education system is threefold:

- HRD: mobilising human talent and potential through lifelong learning to contribute to the social, economic, cultural and intellectual life of a rapidly changing society.
- High-level skills training: training and providing person-power to strengthen the country's enterprises, services and infrastructure. This requires the development of professionals with globally equivalent skills, but who are socially responsible and conscious of their role in contributing to the national development effort and social transformation.
- Producing, acquiring and applying new knowledge: national growth and competitiveness depend on continuous technological improvement and innovation, driven by a well-organised and vibrant research and development system that integrates the research and training capacity of HE with the needs of industry and of social reconstruction.

National Plan for Higher Education

The National Plan for HE establishes indicative targets for the size and shape of the HE system, including overall growth and participation rates, institutional and programme mixes, and equity and efficiency goals.

It provides a framework and outlines the process for the restructuring of the system. It also provides signposts for the development of institutional plans.

The key proposals of the plan are that:

- the participation rate in HE will be increased from 15% to 20% in the long term, i.e. 10 to 15 years
- there will be a shift in the balance of enrolments over the next five to 10 years between the Humanities; Business and Commerce; and

Science, Engineering and Technology, from the current ratio of 49:26:25 to 40:30:30

- institutions will establish student-equity targets, with the emphasis on programmes in which black and female students are under-represented; and develop strategies to ensure equity of outcomes
- institutions will develop employment-equity plans with clear targets for rectifying race and gender inequities
- institutional diversity will be achieved through the approval of a distinct mission and academic-programme profile for each institution
- the academic programme mix at each institution will be determined on the basis of its existing programme profile, and on its demonstrated capacity to add new programmes
- redress for historically black institutions will be linked to agreed missions and programme profiles, including developmental strategies to build capacity
- research will be funded through a separate formula based on research output, including, at a minimum, master's and doctoral graduates and research publications
- earmarked funds will be allocated to build research capacity, including scholarships to promote postgraduate enrolments
- the institutional landscape will be restructured through collaboration at regional level, in programme development, delivery and rationalisation, particularly of small and costly programmes.

Values

The Department of Education's Values in Education Initiative promotes greater social cohesion in the education system by promoting 10 key constitutional values.

These are: respect, non-racism and non-sexism, the rule of law, ubuntu, accountability, democracy, equality, social justice and equity, an open society and reconciliation.

The Values in Education Initiative aims to build a new national identity within a broader continental awareness. To this end, the Department of Education produced the book, *My Country South Africa*.

The department also initiated, in partnership with the Department of Arts and Culture, the Flag in Every School Project, which aims to ensure that all schools fly the national flag with pride.

Adult Basic Education and Training

South African has about 4,7 million illiterate people (who have never been to school) and another 4,9 million adults who are functionally illiterate to varying degrees (having dropped out of school before Grade 7), according to Statistics South Africa's Census 2001.

Provinces with the largest number of illiterate people are KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo and the Eastern Cape, followed by Gauteng, Mpumalanga and North West. The lowest numbers occur in the Free State, the Northern Cape and the Western Cape.

While KwaZulu-Natal has the largest number of illiterate people with no education at all and Limpopo has the highest proportion, the highest concentration is in the Eastern Cape. The language groups most affected are isiZulu, isiXhosa and Sesotho sa Leboa.

The Abet Act, 2000 provides a legislative framework for the establishment, governance and funding of Abet centres.

In 2006, formal Abet programmes reached more than 200 000 adult learners. A further 300 000 learners were reached through other programmes, such as the expanded and skills-based Abet programmes implemented by the public and private sector, non-governmental organisations (NGOs) and sector education and training authorities (Setas). About 15 000 of the targeted 25 000 new adult learners in Abet programmes were reached.

The Department of Education is expected to launch a mass literacy campaign in 2008, aimed at reducing adult illiteracy by:

- mobilising potential learners, educators and other support personnel to participate in the proposed mass literacy campaign, targeting 4,7 million learners between 2008 and 2012
- developing learner and educator-support material
- setting up relevant systems at national, provincial and district level to facilitate implementation of the campaign nationally
- establishing and maintaining a database of 4,7 million learners and 40 000 educators over the campaign period.

Advocacy initiatives such as National Adult Learners' Week and International Literacy Day, in September, continue to be celebrated, recognising

and honouring the achievements of learners and their educators.

The Bridges to the Future Initiative is being developed as a pilot programme in Limpopo. Partners include the national Department of Education, Limpopo Department of Education, the International Literacy Institute, Nedbank, Kellogg Foundation (United States of America) and the Molteno Project.

The number of Abet and literacy service-providers and NGOs has grown dramatically, with an increasing number of emerging organisations being accredited by both Umalusi and the Education, Training, Development Practices (ETDP) Seta.

Masifunde Sonke is another project set up by the Ministry of Education to address the challenges of illiteracy and to promote a love of reading.

The Democracy in the Classroom Project was launched in August 2003. It is the result of a partnership between the United Kingdom's (UK) Department for International Development (DFID), the Independent Electoral Commission of South Africa and the Abet Institute of Unisa, in collaboration with the South African National Literacy Initiative (Sanli).

Readathon 2007 included the first-ever award ceremony for those schools that won the competition.

The Department of Education has developed an early-grade reading assessment instrument, which will be piloted in selected districts in Sesotho sa Leboa, Xitsonga, Tshivenda, isiXhosa, isiZulu and English to help educators monitor reading progress in their classrooms.

The remaining languages were expected to be developed in 2007.

Education of learners with special education needs

The national and provincial departments of education provide a wide range of education services to learners who, owing to a range of

In January 2007, the Minister of Education, Ms Naledi Pandor, launched Drop-All-And-Read, a national campaign created to promote the importance and value of reading in schools and beyond.

The campaign, which is planned over five years, will be used to provide Grade R and Grade 1 learners with books during the first year in school. It will also encourage schools to set aside time for learners, educators and school management to read.

factors, experience barriers to learning and participation.

These include:

- autism
- behavioural problems
- visual impairment
- tuberculosis
- children in conflict with the law
- physical disability
- neurological and specific learning disabilities
- multidisability
- intellectual disability
- hearing impairment
- communication disorders
- epilepsy
- over-aged learners.

These services are provided in ordinary and special schools through a range of service-providers such as district curriculum, institutional and special-needs specialists, as well as specially trained educators.

The *Education White Paper 6* acknowledges that many children experience barriers to learning. Some of these barriers lie within the learners themselves (intrinsic), while some barriers are systemic, socio-economic and cultural.

In its quest to accommodate learners who experience barriers to learning, the Department of Education is field-testing inclusive education in 30 districts in the nodal areas. Between 2005 and 2009, some 30 selected ordinary primary schools are being made fully accessible and are being supplied with specialised equipment and training to become inclusive to all learners in the area who have additional support needs.

These “full-service” schools will be seen as models of inclusive education to be replicated in all districts of the country. Learning conditions in identified special schools will be improved to ensure that all learners in the country receive quality education.

Educators will be trained and empowered to teach children with diverse learning needs. District-based support teams will be developed to provide support mainly to educators in these full-service schools.

This will enable children, the majority of whom could not access education in the past because

of the unavailability of specialised services and support in rural and previously disadvantaged areas, to gain access to education.

Once the first phase of implementing inclusive education is completed, the lessons learnt will be applied to the wider education sector incrementally.

Meanwhile, existing special schools will be strengthened so that some of them can serve as resource centres for full-service schools and ordinary schools in their areas.

Early Childhood Development

ECD is a comprehensive approach to programmes and policies for children from birth to nine years of age with the active participation of their parents and caregivers. Its purpose is to protect the rights of children to develop their full cognitive, emotional, social and physical potential.

The Department of Education is responsible for children in grades 1 to 3 as part of compulsory schooling. One of the priorities of the department is to increase access to ECD provisioning through an accredited reception year programme as proposed in *Education White Paper 5*.

This policy focuses on expanding ECD provision, correcting the imbalances of the past, ensuring equitable access to, and improving the quality and delivery of ECD programmes. It also proposes expanding the provision of services to children from birth to four years by developing and implementing intersectoral programmes.

The non-profit sector plays a major role in ECD. Most of the early learning sites across South Africa have been initiated by the non-profit sector in partnership with communities. Nevertheless, for many poor children, quality ECD is still beyond reach.

The medium-term goal of the department is for all children entering Grade 1 to have participated in an accredited Grade R programme by 2010.

Regarding the birth-to-age-four cohort, the Department of Education is leading the ECD Interdepartmental Committee (including the departments of health and of social development), which has developed the Birth-to-Four Integrated Plan.

The plan is closely linked to government's Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP).

In ECD, the EPWP will create employment and training opportunities by providing education and care services to young children.

The registration of sites is the responsibility of the Department of Social Development in terms of the Child Care Act, 1983 (Act 74 of 1983). Municipalities/local governments also have constitutional power to provide child-care facilities and grants to associations. These regulations are applicable to both public and independent ECD sites.

In 2006, provincial ECD budgets increased by more than 40%, with a further increase of more than 40% in 2007. Since the release of the *Education White Paper on ECD* in 2001, access to Grade R has increased, particularly in the poorest communities.

By mid-2007, 450 000 children were registered in Grade R classes. A total of 5 300 ECD teaching practitioners were undergoing training across the various provinces with strong monitoring support from the Department of Education.

According to an SACE resolution signed in 2004, all ECD practitioners with a Level 4 qualification should be recognised and registered as educators and participate in all professional development programmes.

The *Education White Paper 5* proposes and encourages an integrated cross-sectoral approach to child development. This includes health, nutrition, education and psychosocial factors.

School enrichment

The Department of Education is committed to ensuring learner participation in sport, arts, culture and music activities. The Department of Education is collaborating with Sport and Recreation South Africa in programmes that promote mass participation and competitive school sport.

The department's School Enrichment Unit co-ordinates and strengthens the delivery of national extramural/extracurricular school-enrichment programmes, not only to promote mass participation in sport by young people, but also to promote social transformation and cohesion.

Some of the arts, culture and music flagship programmes the department co-ordinates in collaboration with the Department of Arts and Culture include the South African Schools Choral Eisteddfod, the National Indigenous Games, the Music and Movement Festival, as well as the National Language Festival and Concert.

Through these initiatives, learners are not only given the opportunity to showcase their talents, but

also to develop a love for and appreciation of many forms of music, dance and culture.

Education management and governance development

The Department of Education has developed the Education-Management Policy Framework and the South African Standard for Principalship for school managers, along with a new ladder of education-management qualifications.

These include a practice-based qualification for principals and aspirant principals, which will assist in professionalising the management of schools. The qualification was expected to be tested from mid-2006 and to be fully implemented in 2007.

Educator development

The department considers the development of educators, school managers and SGBs a high priority. The medium-term goals are to ensure that all educators are qualified, and to improve the overall quality of teaching and management.

The department continues reducing the number of unqualified and underqualified educators by introducing capacity-building programmes. The following programmes contribute towards educators' development:

- The implementation of the NCS began in 2004. It has been successfully introduced in the foundation and intermediate phases and Grade 7. An orientation programme was conducted for about 2 100 provincial officials and 200 000 foundation and intermediate phase educators and Grade 7 educators across all provinces.
- An MST advanced certificate in education was introduced to reskill and train educators so that the NCS could be introduced.

British Telecom and the United Nations Children's Fund are working together on a three-year development partnership to invest about R21 million to bring education, technology and communication skills to children from poor backgrounds in South Africa, Brazil and China.

Rural schools in the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal will be equipped with computer centres.

Apart from installing 250 computers, the sponsorship will help renovate schools, build additional classrooms and provide state-of-the-art computer laboratories.

To make best use of the new facilities being provided, 150 head educators and administrators will be trained in effective school management and leadership skills.

The two organisations believe the new facilities will provide students with practical technological skills that will help them gain economic independence. The primary focus of the partnership will be to create a secure and productive environment, especially for girls.

- By 2007, more than 22 000 teachers had been trained to use ICT in education. A principal's guide to implement and use ICT in schools had also been developed and distributed.
- The National Framework for Teacher Education aims to address historical backlogs in levels of teacher performance, as well as to improve the necessary initial and continuing professional development and support mechanisms. The policy has been approved and the implementation plan is underway.
- The first phase of the development of a professional development system was expected to be completed in 2007.
- The English second-language short course aims to equip intermediate phase teachers with the skills and knowledge to mediate content knowledge through the medium of English. With the increase in budget, 1 800 teachers were expected to be targeted in 2006/07.
- The MST Project aims to improve the qualifications and skills of educators in these subjects. An external evaluation of the MST Project and the process was conducted. Ongoing monitoring of the project will deal with the findings of the evaluation report.
- The National Professional Diploma in Education Programme aims to upgrade the qualifications of those teachers who do not meet the minimum professional-qualification requirements.
- The eighth National Teaching Awards (NTAs) were presented in 2007, with more than 20 000 teachers participating in this initiative. The department intended linking the NTAs with the existing international teacher-exchange-and-visit programmes.
- The Education Information Policy has been instituted. The policy caters for the setting of standard requirements for the administration of national surveys to be conducted by all educational institutions in South Africa.
- By mid-2007, the department was drafting a framework to resuscitate Physical Education in schools. Part of the framework was to incorporate Physical Education as part of the educator-development strategy.

This will encourage more learners to register for Physical Education with HE institutions. The

framework also provides for accredited development programmes to equip life-orientation educators with coaching, sport-management and facilitation skills.

Learner Unit Record Information and Tracking System

The Department of Education has identified the need to design and develop the Learner Unit Record Information and Tracking System. The envisaged system will house unit record level data on individual learners per school at national level and will therefore be capable of answering complex questions on learner movement, learner drop-out and retention rates.

It will be flexible enough to adapt to changing education information needs by examining different relationships between unit record variables. The system's development was expected to commence in 2007 and be implemented in provinces during 2008.

Education infrastructure

In September 2007, Cabinet received the report on the National Education Infrastructure Management System (NEIMS), which is an update on the School Register of Needs. The report highlights the progress the country was making in addressing the school infrastructure backlogs and the challenges that still lay ahead.

Progress between 1996 and 2006 include the following: the number of overcrowded schools dropped from 51% to 24%; the number of schools with electricity increased from 11 174 to 20 713; schools without access to water decreased from 8 823 to 3 152 in 2006; and schools without toilets decreased from 3 265 to 1 532.

Cabinet resolved that innovative ways of accelerating service delivery, such as the establishment of a dedicated agency or public entity; increased use of public-private partnerships; and community participation in provision, should be explored.

The report concludes that some 74% of schools are in a good or excellent condition. However, it is also evident that substantial backlogs still remain in relation to the provision of facilities, and the standard of these.

A capital-investment plan is under development, using the NEIMS data. In implementation, the Department of Education will investigate innovative approaches to the delivery of infrastructure, including greater community involvement, as well as with regard to its financing. The determination of minimum norms and standards for infrastructure, as proposed in the Education Laws Amendment Bill, will assist in this process.

School safety measures

Regulations for safety measures at public schools focus on the safety of learners within schools' premises.

The measures also accommodate school tours and sporting activities. The regulations will, among other things, ensure the following:

- Public schools must take reasonable measures to ensure the safety of learners during tours and sporting activities, including insuring against accidents.
- Learners and educators who undertake a school tour are not allowed to carry drugs, alcohol or weapons.
- Upon return from a tour or sporting activity, the supervising educator must submit a report to the principal, who in turn will submit it to the departmental official who approved the tour.
- A public school must obtain written consent from parents of learners who will be undertaking the tour.
- Public-school vehicles for transporting learners must have insurance and roadworthy certificates, and drivers of such vehicles must be in possession of valid driver's licences and professional driving permits.

The regulations will be published for public comment before being gazetted into legislation.

The Department of Education, in collaboration with provincial school safety co-ordinators, identified 585 schools with high levels of crime and violence.

As part of a ministerial intervention project, nine schools (one in each province) have been identified. A minimum package regarding infrastructural changes has been compiled for schools to address incidents of crime and violence. The minimum package consisted of hand-held metal detectors, the appointment of security officers and installation of a security fence and appropriate lighting.

The impact of the department's intervention will be monitored over six months at each of the nine schools. The remainder of the 576 schools with high levels of crime and violence will be targeted in collaboration with provincial departments, with

focused developmental programmes to curb incidents of crime and violence.

An early warning system, Be Aware – Take Care, has been developed and piloted in three provinces (Eastern Cape, Limpopo and the Western Cape) in partnership with the Centre for Justice and Crime Prevention.

Partnerships have been strengthened with the departments of safety and security and of social development, Business Against Crime and the Centre for Justice and Crime Prevention to focus on eliminating crime and violence in schools.

Human Resource Development Strategy

In April 2001, the ministries of education and of labour jointly launched the HRD Strategy for South Africa, entitled *A Nation at Work for a Better Life for All*. The strategy is underpinned by a set of institutional arrangements, including Setas, and the general reshaping of FET and HE to meet the HRD needs of the country.

The strategy ensures that integrated HRD planning and implementation is monitored at national, regional and sectoral level. Progress is measured against approved indicators.

The key mission of the strategy is to maximise the potential of people in South Africa through the acquisition of knowledge and skills. It also seeks to introduce an operational plan and the necessary arrangements to ensure that everyone is productive and works competitively to improve their quality of life.

The goals of the strategy include improving the social infrastructure of the country, reducing disparities in wealth and poverty, developing a more inclusive society, and improving South Africa's position on the International Competitiveness Table over the next 10 years.

HIV and AIDS

The Ministry of Education collaborates with the Ministry of Health to ensure that the national education system plays its part in stemming the spread of HIV and AIDS, and ensuring that the rights of all those infected and affected are fully protected.

This priority has been operationalised into three objectives. Each is linked to anticipated outcomes and performance indicators. The three programmes are:

- awareness, information and advocacy
- HIV and AIDS within the curriculum
- planning for HIV and AIDS in the education system.

The ministry's policy on HIV and AIDS for learners and educators has been converted into an accessible booklet for educators, SGBs and district officials.

Educational portal

The educational portal, www.thutong.org.za, offers a range of curriculum and learner-support material, professional development programmes for educators, and administration and management resources for schools.

Thutong – meaning “place of learning” in Setswana – features a searchable database of web-based curriculum resources for various education sectors, grades and subjects.

It also carries news and information on the latest developments in education in South Africa, and gives users the chance to interact with experts from the education community, as well as with their peers throughout the country and abroad.

The portal is a free service to registered users, who must go through a one-off, no-cost registration process. The portal is a partnership venture between the Department of Education and various role-players in the field.

Partnerships, international relations and funding

Central to the education policy framework is the contention that a high-quality education sector cannot be built by government alone. It depends on creative and dynamic partnerships between the public sector, civil society and international partners.

The Department of Education, educator unions, SACE, ELRC and the ETDP Seta signed a historic declaration at the National Education Convention in November 2002, in which they committed themselves to working together to achieve education-transformation goals.

The success of key national initiatives (including Sanli) relies largely on partnerships with the private sector and NGOs.

Several partnerships have been consolidated, providing working models of educational transformation through public-private partnerships. The Business Trust, a partnership between business and government, works in education

through three NGOs, namely the Read Educational Trust, the Joint Education Trust and the National Business Initiative Colleges Collaboration.

Educator unions

The majority of educators are organised into four educator unions, namely the National Professional Teachers' Organisation of South Africa, the National Teachers' Union, the South African Teachers' Union and the South African Democratic Teachers' Union.

A labour-relations framework has been agreed to jointly by the Ministry of Education and the unions. This encompasses both traditional areas of negotiation, and issues of professional concern, including pedagogy and quality-improvement strategies.

In 2003, an agreement was reached on the Integrated Quality Management System (IQMS). This agreement provided the Department of Education with a tool to measure the performance of its educators, in order to provide support and development where it was needed. This agreement led to the conclusion of another agreement on the accelerated pay progression for teachers. Through the IQMS, the Department of Education was able to recognise seniority and good performance, and introduce measures to reward these two key principles.

In line with the latter agreement, educators who perform well are able to progress along the notches to higher positions.

An educator who stays longer in the system, and who performs well, is able to progress higher to become a senior educator, and ultimately a master educator. In these positions, such educators are able to use their experience and expertise to guide and mentor new, young and upcoming educators in the system.

Non-governmental organisations

NGOs are emerging as important partners in educational transformation and are often a source of creativity and innovation. The Department of Education is working with NGOs and the private sector to expand relationships, particularly in the areas of educator training, school improvement, Abet, ECD and FET, as well as evaluation, research and monitoring. The private sector, in particular, is

engaging increasingly in the provision of basic education by funding FET initiatives, building schools in needy communities, and supporting the provision of teaching and learning equipment.

Gender equity

The Girls Education Movement (GEM), launched in 2003, is one of the key gender focus programmes of the department, implemented in partnership with the United Nations' (UN) Children's Fund.

This programme aims to ensure that girl learners not only access education but that their retention and achievement rate increases. It is founded on three pillars, namely career mentorship, skills development and advocacy.

Girls are placed in partner companies during the easter, winter and spring school breaks to discover first-hand how skills acquired in school and the skills-development programme relate to the workplace.

They are exposed to a structured job-shadowing programme, and to new and exciting career paths in the fields of Mathematics, Science and Commerce. The GEM Skills Development Programme aims to address gender disparities through education and advocacy.

The international community

The international community's contribution to the transformation of education is important. The department co-operates with UN agencies and numerous donors to improve access to basic education, FET and HE.

Development co-operation with partners such as Flanders, France, Germany, Italy, Japan International Co-operation Agency, Norway, the Danish Agency for Development Assistance, United States Agency for Development, the Sweden International Development Agency, the UK's DFID, the Netherlands, the Irish Agency for International Development, the Finnish Government and the European Union have been instrumental in the provision of technical and financial assistance to the national and provincial departments of education.

In 2005, the Netherlands gave the Department of Education a grant of R213 million over a four-year period to help empower educators.

The grant was also expected to be spent on the NTAs, the development of the National Framework for Teacher Education, as well as support material for educators to implement the NCS.

The UK government provided R226 million to the Limpopo Department of Education. The assistance, which is spread over six years (2003 to 2009), is

known as the Khanyisa Education Support Programme.

The programme aims to improve learning achievement, support and service delivery across the whole education system.

The Ministry of Education also played a leading role in developing the Southern African Development Community Protocol on Education and Training, which aims to achieve equivalence, harmonisation and standardisation of education in the region.

International partnerships and South-South exchanges are fostered, particularly within the African continent.

The department has a strong collaborative relationship with the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation. A key initiative of the collaboration is the development of national Education for All (EFA) action plans.

As part of regional consultations on implementation, the department participates in assessing progress in the elaboration of the EFA plans of countries in sub-Saharan Africa, and exchanges information on best practices in the development of these plans.

Libraries

Library and information services (LIS) sector

South Africa's growing LIS sector includes a national library, public/community libraries, special libraries, government libraries and HE libraries.

By mid-2003, South Africa had more than 11 373 libraries, with 77 HE libraries, 9 416 school libraries, 79 government departmental libraries, one national library with two branches, and 1 800 public libraries provided by provincial and local government (library services and metro libraries).

The nine provincial library authorities provide, in partnership with local governments, extensive public-library services. Public libraries, among other things, increasingly render community and general information services, and provide study material and facilities for school and tertiary students.

The approximately 1 800 public libraries in the country have to provide services to a total population of about 48,5 million.

National Council for Library and Information Services (NCLIS)

The NCLIS was established by the NCLIS Act, 2001 (Act 6 of 2001). The object of the council is to advise the ministers of arts and culture and of education on LIS matters.

To this end, the council advises the ministers on the development, co-ordination and promotion of LIS, on legislation and policies, on the allocation of public funds, on LIS education and training, on the promotion of literacy and a culture of reading, and on the use of ICT to improve the quality of LIS.

National Library of South Africa (NLSA)

The NLSA was constituted in 1999, in terms of the NLSA Act, 1998 (Act 92 of 1998). This new institution emerged after the merger of the former State Library in Pretoria and the former South African Library in Cape Town, and includes a specialist unit, the Centre for the Book.

The NLSA is a custodian and provider of the nation's key knowledge resources. It is mandated by the NLSA Act, 1998 to collect and preserve intellectual documentary heritage material, and to make it accessible worldwide. It ensures that knowledge and information are not lost to posterity and are available for future research.

The National Library's collections contain a wealth of information sources, including rare manuscripts, books, periodicals, government publications, foreign official publications, maps, technical reports, and books on special interest, including Africana material and newspapers. These may also be available on CD, microfilm, in digital format or on the web.

The functions of the NLSA are to build a complete collection of published documents emanating from or relating to South Africa; to maintain and preserve these collections, and to provide access to them through bibliographic, reference, information and interlibrary-lending services; as well as to promote information awareness and information literacy.

The Centre for the Book in Cape Town is a specialised unit and promotes the culture of reading, writing and publishing in all official languages of South Africa.

In terms of the Legal Deposit Act, 1997 (Act 54 of 1997), the NLSA receives two copies of each book, periodical, newspaper, map, manuscript material or other publication that is published in South Africa in any medium, whether print or electronic. The other legal deposit libraries are the Library of Parliament in Cape Town, the Mangaung Public Library in Bloemfontein and the Msunduzi Municipal Library, formerly the Natal Society Library, in Pietermaritzburg.

The Legal Deposit Act, 1997 also provides for the establishment of official publications depositories (OPDs). The first OPD is at the Constitutional Court Library and the second one is at the Phuthaditjhaba Public Library in the Free State.

Libraries in the Higher Education sector

The HE libraries hold the bulk of South Africa's scientific and scholarly information resources and fulfil more than half of all interlibrary loan requests. Pressures on HE libraries include redistribution of educational resources, rising prices and declining student numbers.

These libraries have responded by forming consortia, looking at access and exploring digital resources.

Special libraries are libraries that consist of subject-specialised collections, including private organisations' libraries and libraries of government departments. (See also Chapter 4: *Arts and culture*.)

Acknowledgements

BuaNews

Department of Arts and Culture

Department of Education

Estimates of National Expenditure 2007, published by National Treasury

Library and Information Association of South Africa

National Library of South Africa

South African Qualifications Authority

www.gov.za

www.southafrica.info

www.umalusi.org.za

Suggested reading

Chatry-Komarek, M. *Literacy at Stake: Teaching, Reading and Writing in South African Schools*. Windhoek: Gamsberg Macmillan, 2003.

Chaya, H. *Prophets and Profits: Managerialism and the Restructuring of Jewish Schools in South Africa*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC), 2005.

Chisana, O. *et al. Health of our Educators: A Focus on HIV/AIDS in South African Public Schools*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2005.

Chisholm, L. ed. *Changing Class: Education and Social Change in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2004.

Chisholm, L and September, J. eds. *Gender Equity in South African Education 1994 – 2004. Perspectives from Research, Government and Unions: Conference Proceedings*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2005.

Closser, M. *et al. Settling for Less: Student Aspirations and Higher Education Realities*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2004.

Emerging Voices: Report on Education in South African Rural Communities. Cape Town: HSRC, 2005.

Every Step of the Way: The Journey to Freedom in South Africa. Cape Town: HSRC, 2004.

Fiske, E and Ladd, H. *Elusive Equity: Education Reform in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2005.

Graaf, J. *et al. Teaching in the Gap: Implementing Education Policy in South Africa in the Nineties*. Hatfield: Via Afrika, n.d.

Gravett, S and Geyser, H. *Teaching and Learning in Higher Education*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2003.

Heystek, J, Roos, C and Middlewood, D. *Human Resource Management in Education*. Johannesburg: Heinemann, 2005.

Hemson, C. *Teacher Education and the Challenge of Diversity in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Hutton, B. ed. *Adult Basic Education in South Africa*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.

Koen, C. *Higher Education and Work: Setting A New Research Agenda*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Kruss, G. ed. *Creating Knowledge Networks*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Mabizela, M. *The Business of Higher Education: A Study of Public-Private Partnerships in the Provision of Higher Education in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2005.

Maree, K and Ebersohn, L. *Life Skills and Career Counselling*. Johannesburg: Heinemann, 2004.

McKinney, C. *Textbooks for Diverse Learners: A Critical Analysis of Learning Materials used in South African Schools*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2005.

Morrow, W. *Learning to Teach in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007.

Mqota, V. *Education and Democracy: A View from Soweto*. New York: Mqota Publishers, 2004.

Mwamwenda, TS. *Educational Psychology: An African Perspective*. 3rd rev ed. Johannesburg: Heinemann, 2004.

- Nelson, D. ed. *A - Z of Careers: The South African Career Encyclopaedia*. Cape Town, 2004.
- Nieman, MM and Monyai, RB. eds. *Educator as a Mediator of Learning*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2006.
- Nkomo, M. ed. *Reflections on School Integration: Colloquium Proceedings*. Pretoria: HSRC, 2004.
- Nkomo, M. ed. *et al. Within The Realm of Possibility: From Disadvantage To Development at the University of Fort Hare and the University of the North*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
- Phurkutse, MC. *Factors Affecting Teaching and Learning in South African Public Schools*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2005.
- Potterton, M. *et al. Together Now: Implementing Inclusive Education*. Johannesburg: CIE, 2005.
- Roussouw, JP. *Labour Relations in Education: A South African Perspective*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2004.
- Seepe, S. ed. *Towards an African Identity of Higher Education*. Pretoria: Vista University, 2004.
- Simbayi, L. ed. *et al. Workplace Policies in Public Education: A Review Focusing on HIV/AIDS*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2005.
- Simkins, C and Paterson A. *Learner Performance in South Africa: Social and Economic Determinants of Success in Language and Mathematics*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2005.
- Taylor, N. *Getting Schools Working: Research and Systemic School Reform in South Africa*. Cape Town: Maskew Miller Longman, 2003.
- Wolhuter, C. *et al. eds. Comparative Education: Education Systems and Contemporary Issues*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2007.
- Young, M and Gamble, J, eds. *Knowledge, Curriculum and Qualifications for South African Further Education*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.



SA YEARBOOK 2007/08 | ENVIRONMENTAL MANAGEMENT



In terms of its biological heritage, South Africa is recognised as one of the richest nations in the world.

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism's mission is to lead the sustainable development of South Africa's environment by:

- conserving the country's natural resources
- protecting and improving the quality and safety of the environment
- promoting a global sustainable-development agenda.

The provincial conservation agencies are major role-players, and independent statutory organisations such as South African National Parks (SANParks) and the South African National Biodiversity Institute (Sanbi) are valuable partners in the country's total conservation effort.

South Africa has made significant progress in the area of environmental management in the last decade. Laws and strategies have been developed that focus on key environmental areas such as biodiversity, air quality, protected areas, urban and rural development, and waste and disaster management.

Improved environmental conditions include certain fish stocks, which have recovered due to good management measures and a slowing of habitat loss in some areas of the country.

Programmes to rehabilitate ecosystems while creating jobs have received increased budgets.

Policy and legislation

The National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004 (Act 10 of 2004), provides a regulatory framework to protect South Africa's valuable species, ecosystems and its biological wealth. It implements the *White Paper on the Conservation and Sustainable Use of South Africa's Biological Diversity*, and multilateral agreements such as the Convention on Biological Diversity (CBD).

South Africa is a signatory to the CBD, which provides the framework, norms and standards for the conservation, sustainable use and equitable benefit-sharing of South Africa's biological resources.

The Act facilitated the transformation of the National Botanical Institute (NBI) into Sanbi.

The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act, 2003 (Act 57 of 2003), provides for the protection and conservation of

ecologically viable areas that are representative of South Africa's biological diversity, its natural landscapes and seascapes, and the management thereof. The Act envisages a national register of protected areas, with a simplified classification system of special nature reserves, national parks, nature reserves and protected environments.

It also introduces the concept of biological-diversity protection and ecosystem management. Biodiversity, conservation and ecosystem management are noted as important aims in policy and legislation that govern marine and coastal resources, fresh water and natural forests.

The Act also proposes a new system of protected areas, linking various kinds of protected environments to replace the existing fragmented system.

In addition, the Act enables the Minister of Environmental Affairs and Tourism to acquire private land by purchasing land rights for the creation of protected areas.

Based on experience with biosphere reserves, and informed by the new bioregional approach to conservation (linking the protected-area network along mountains, rivers, wetlands, the coastline and other areas of natural vegetation), the Act will result in an interlocking system of protected areas that explicitly encourages the inclusion of private land.

It recognises that people are the custodians of the land, that they need to be involved in the management of the protected land and that they should benefit from it.

The Act caters for concurrent competence in the management of protected land. For example, an area with national-park status can now be managed by another agency, for example, a provincial parks authority. Steps have been taken to ensure that standards are upheld.

Regulations in terms of the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 31 of 2004), provide for the proper administration of specific nature reserves, national parks and world heritage sites.

South Africa is one of only two countries in the world to have promulgated legislation specifically related to the World Heritage Convention (the other being Australia). The country's World Heritage Convention Act, 1999 (Act 49 of 1999), stipulates that all world

heritage sites must have an integrated management plan in place to ensure cultural and environmental protection and sustainable development of the site.

In February 2007, the Minister of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, Mr Marthinus van Schalkwyk, announced regulations pertaining to threatened and protected species.

The regulations were expected to come into effect on 1 February 2008.

The regulations will introduce a uniform national system for the registration of captive breeding operations, commercial exhibition facilities, game farms, nurseries, scientific institutions, sanctuaries and rehabilitation facilities.

These institutions will be required to meet strict criteria. For the first time, provision will be made for the recognition of hunting organisations, and the application of codes of ethical conduct and good practice.

The introduction of game-farm hunting and nursery-possession permits is aimed at streamlining the permit-issuing process. It will also compel permit holders to provide critical information to the authorities, which will assist in assessing the status of biodiversity in the country.

To meet South Africa's commitments to the Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species (Cites), a new national scientific authority will enable uniform implementation and provide access to scientific information beyond just Cites species.

The regulations specifically prohibit hunting large predators and rhinoceros that are "put and take" animals, in other words a captive-bred animal that is released on a property for the purpose of being hunted within 24 months.

The regulations include prohibitions and restrictions on certain activities and methods of hunting. For example, hunting thick-skinned animals and large predators with a bow and arrow will be prohibited, and hunting from vehicles will no longer be allowed.

State of the environment

South Africa's second *National State of Environment Report*, released in June 2007, includes a number of new components, namely a section on human vulnerability to environmental change, alternative environmental futures and recommendations for action.

Specialist studies focusing on a number of themes include atmosphere and climate, land, waste, biodiversity, inland water, marine and coastal ecosystems, human settlements, energy,

environmental governance, and human vulnerability to environmental change.

While the report outlined a general decline in the state of the environment, government is confident that its response strategies will continue to ensure that South Africa is a leader in sound management and sustainable resource use.

World Summit on Sustainable Development (WSSD)

Johannesburg hosted the WSSD in September 2002. The agreements reached in Johannesburg are a guide to action that will take forward the United Nations (UN) Millennium Summit Declaration's goal of halving world poverty by 2015, and will incorporate decisions taken by world bodies since the Rio Earth Summit in 1992.

Among the victories of the WSSD was the launch of over 300 partnerships, including 32 energy initiatives, 21 water programmes and 32 programmes for biodiversity and ecosystem management.

The biggest success was getting the world to turn the UN Millennium Declaration into a concrete set of programmes and to mobilise funds for these programmes. The WSSD focused on the most marginalised sectors of society, including women, the youth, indigenous people and people with disabilities. The Implementation Plan includes programmes to deliver water, energy, healthcare, agricultural development and a better environment for the world's poor. It also incorporates targets for the reduction of poverty and the protection of the environment.

Targets set at the summit will have an enormous impact, including the following:

- the number of people without basic sanitation and access to safe drinking water will be halved by 2015
- biodiversity loss is to be reversed by 2010, and collapsed fish stocks restored by 2015
- chemicals with a detrimental health impact will be phased out by 2020
- energy services will be extended to 35% of African households over the next 10 years.

National Strategy for Sustainable Development (NSSD)

South Africa is committed to meeting the agreements reached at the WSSD, including the development of the NSSD.

The NSSD is intended to be a powerful tool for addressing important issues such as water quality and quantity, climate change, waste management, soil loss and pollution, food production and

strategic biodiversity management, while attending to development priorities associated with tackling poverty and basic human needs.

Biological diversity

South Africa enjoys the third-highest level of biodiversity in the world. The country's rich natural heritage is vast and staggering in its proportions.

Although the country covers only 2% of the world's land area, nearly 10% of the world's plants and 7% of its reptiles, birds and mammals are found here.

The three internationally recognised biodiversity hotspots in South Africa are the Cape Floral Region in the south, the Succulent Karoo that the country shares with Namibia, and that of Maputoland-Pondoland in the east, which extends into Swaziland and Mozambique.

South Africa's marine life is similarly diverse, partly as a result of the extreme contrast between the water masses on the east and west coasts. Three water masses – the cold Benguela current, the warm Agulhas current, and oceanic water – make the region one of the most oceanographically heterogeneous in the world. According to the *White Paper on the Conservation and Sustainable Use of South Africa's Biological Diversity*, over 10 000 plant and animal species – almost 15% of the coastal species known worldwide – are found in South African waters, with about 12% of these occurring nowhere else.



World Wetlands Day: 2 February
National Water Week: 19 to 25 March
Earth Day: 20 March
World Water Day: 22 March
World Meteorological Day: 23 March
World Environment Day: 5 June
World Oceans Day: 8 June
World Desertification Day: 17 June
National Harbour Week: 1 to 7 September
International Day for the Protection of the Ozone Layer: 16 September
World Tourism Day: 27 September
World Habitat Day: 4 October
National Marine Day: 20 October.

The country's natural heritage is best described according to a systematic classification of regions, or biomes. A biome is a broad ecological unit representing a major life zone, which extends over a large area, and contains relatively uniform plant and animal life closely connected with environmental conditions, especially climate.

The White Paper states that South Africa is one of six countries in the world with an entire plant kingdom within its national confines. The Cape Floral Kingdom has the highest-recorded species diversity for any similar-sized temperate or tropical region in the world.

Other biomes in the country are also of global conservation significance. For example, one-third of the world's succulent plant species are found in South Africa.

There are eight major terrestrial biomes, or habitat types, in South Africa, which can, in turn, be divided into 70 veld types.

The degree to which each of these biomes is threatened varies, depending on the fertility of the soil, the economic value derived from use of the area, human population pressures and the extent to which the biome is conserved in protected areas.

Savanna biome

This biome is an area of mixed grassland and trees, and is generally known as bushveld.

In the Northern Cape and Kalahari sections of this biome, the most distinctive trees are the camel thorn (*Acacia erioloba*) and the camphor bush (*Tarchonanthus camphoratus*). In Limpopo, the portly baobab (*Adansonia digitata*) and the candelabra tree (*Euphorbia ingens*) dominate. The central bushveld is home to species such as the knob thorn (*Acacia nigrescens*), bushwillow (*Combretum spp.*), monkey thorn (*Acacia galpinii*), mopani (*Colophospermum mopane*) and wild fig (*Ficus spp.*). In the valley bushveld of the south, euphorbias and spekboom trees (*Portulacaria afra*) dominate.

Abundant wild fruit trees provide food for many birds and animals in the savanna biome. Grey loeries, hornbills, shrikes, flycatchers and rollers are birds typical of the northern regions. The subtropical and coastal areas are home to Knysna loeries, purple-crested loeries and green pigeons.

Raptors occur throughout the biome. The larger mammals include lion, leopard, cheetah, elephant, buffalo, zebra, rhinoceros, giraffe, kudu, oryx, waterbuck, hippopotamus and many others.

About 8,5% of the biome is protected. The Kruger National Park, Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park, Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Park, Isimangaliso Wetlands Park (formerly Greater St Lucia Wetlands Park) and other reserves are located in the savanna biome.

Nama-Karoo biome

This biome includes the Namaland area of Namibia, and the Karoo area of South Africa.

Because of low rainfall, rivers are non-perennial. Cold and frost in winter and high temperatures in summer demand special adaptations from plants. The vegetation of this biome is mainly low shrubland and grass, with trees limited to water courses.

The bat-eared fox, black-backed jackal, ostrich, suricate and ground squirrel are typical of the area.

Only 1% of the Nama-Karoo biome falls within officially protected areas, of which the Karoo and Augrabies national parks are the largest.

Overgrazing and easily eroded soil surfaces are causing this semi-desert to creep slowly in on the neighbouring savanna and grassland biomes.

Grassland biome

This biome is a summer-rainfall area with heavy thunderstorms and hail in summer, and frost in winter.

A number of perennial rivers such as the Orange, Vaal, Pongola, Kei and Umzimvubu originate in, and flow through, the area.

Trees are scarce and are found mainly on hills and along riverbeds.

Karee (*Rhus lancea*), wild currant (*Rhus pyroides*), white stinkwood (*Celtis africana*) and several acacia species are the most common.

The grassland biome has the third-largest number of indigenous plant species in the country.

Eight mammal species endemic to South Africa occur in a wild state in this biome. Two of these, namely the black wildebeest and the blesbok, occur mainly in the grassland biome.

The area is internationally recognised as an area of high species endemism as far as birds are concerned. Birds commonly found in the area include the black korhaan, blue crane, guinea-fowl and other grassland birds.

Only 1,1% of the grassland biome is officially protected. The wilderness areas of the KwaZulu-Natal Drakensberg are the most significant.

Succulent Karoo biome

One of the natural wonders of South Africa is the annual blossoming of the Namaqualand wild flowers (mainly of the family *Asteraceae*), which transforms the semi-desert of the Northern Cape into a fairyland. After rain, the drab landscape is suddenly covered from horizon to horizon with a multicoloured carpet (from August to October, depending on the rainfall).

This is a winter-rainfall area with extremely dry and hot summers. Succulents with thick, fleshy leaves are plentiful. Most trees have white trunks to reflect the heat.

The quiver tree (*Aloe dichotoma*) and the human-like elephant's trunk (*Pachypodium namaquanum*) are prominent in the Richtersveld. Grass is scarce.

The animal life is similar to that of neighbouring biomes (fynbos and Nama-Karoo).

The Richtersveld, Tankwa Karoo and Namaqua national parks have improved the conservation status of this biome considerably.

Fynbos biome

The fynbos biome is one of the six accepted floral kingdoms of the world. This region covers only 0,04% of the land surface of the globe.

Fynbos is found mainly in the Western Cape. This is a winter-rainfall area and the fynbos vegetation is similar to that of mediterranean regions.

Fynbos is the name given to a group of ever-green plants with small, hard leaves (such as those in the Erica family). It is made up mainly of the protea, heathers and restio, and incorporates a diversity of plant species (more than 8 500 kinds, over 6 000 of which are endemic).

The fynbos biome is famous for the protea, for which South Africa is renowned. The biome also



The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, in partnership with its stakeholders, observed National Environment Week, from 4 to 8 June 2007, with a series of environmental-awareness activities. These included the global celebration of World Environment Day on 5 June.

World Environment Day was established by the United Nations (UN) General Assembly in 1972, making it the 35th anniversary to mark the opening of the Stockholm Conference on the Human Environment. This ground-breaking conference gave rise to the UN Environment Programme, which has provided a crucial platform for the expression of environmental concerns internationally.

The event was celebrated under two overarching themes of climate change, *Today's Actions – Shaping Tomorrow's Environment and Strengthening the Partnership for Shared Growth Through Environment and Tourism*.

contains flowering plants, now regarded as garden plants, such as freesia, tritonia, sparaxis and many others.

Protected areas cover 13,6% of the fynbos biome and include the Table Mountain and Agulhas national parks.

This biome is not very rich in bird and mammal life, but does include the endemic Cape grysbok, the geometric tortoise, Cape sugarbird and the protea seed-eater. The mountains are the habitat of the leopard, baboon, honey-badger, caracal, rheebuck and several types of eagle and dassies.

Forest biome

South Africa's only significant forests are those of Knysna and Tsitsikamma in the Western and Eastern Cape, respectively.

Other reasonably large forest patches that are officially protected are in the high-rainfall areas of the eastern escarpment, and on the eastern seaboard. Forest giants such as yellowwood (*Podocarpus spp.*), ironwood (*Olea capensis*) and lemonwood (*Xymalos monospora*) dominate.

The indigenous forests are a magical world of ferns, lichens, and colourful forest birds such as the Knysna loerie, the endangered Cape parrot and the rameron pigeon. Mammals include the endangered samango monkey, bushpig, bushbuck and the delicate blue duiker.

Thicket biome

Subtropical thicket ranges from closed shrubland to low forest, dominated by evergreen succulent trees, shrubs and vines.

It is often impenetrable and has little herbaceous cover. Roughly 20% of the species in the thicket biome are endemic to it.

Desert biome

True desert is found under very harsh environmental conditions, which are even more extreme than those found in the succulent Karoo and the Nama-Karoo biomes. The climate is characterised by summer rainfall, but also by high levels of summer aridity. Rainfall is highly variable from year to year. Desert is found mostly in Namibia, although it does occur in South Africa in the lower Orange River Valley.

The vegetation of the desert biome is characterised by the dominance of annual plants (often annual grasses). This means that after a rare season of abundant rain, the desert plains can be covered with a sea of short annual grass, whereas in drier years, the plains appear bare with the annual plants persisting in the form of seeds.

Perennial plants are usually encountered in specialised habitats associated with local concentrations of water. Common examples of such habitats are broad drainage lines or washes. Nearer the coast, the role of coastal fog also governs the distribution of certain species commonly associated with the desert.

The desert biome incorporates an abundant insect fauna, which includes many tenebrionid beetles, some of which can use fog water. There are also various vertebrates, including reptiles, springbok, ostrich, gemsbok, snakes and geckos.

Some areas in the desert biome are formally protected in the Richtersveld National Park.

Preserving biodiversity

Biodiversity plays a crucial role in sustainable development and poverty eradication. Fundamental changes to the legislative, policy and institutional framework for natural resource management have resulted in a shift in focus from an elitist conservation approach to a management approach based on South Africa's recognition of the contribution of biological resources to food security, science, economy, cultural integrity and well-being.

The country's conservation areas contribute to job creation and socio-economic upliftment, and continue to serve as a foundation of the tourism industry.

South Africa is a very popular tourist destination. The main attractions are nature-based tourism facilities such as national parks and private game reserves. There are some 9 000 privately owned game ranches in South Africa, covering about 13% of the country's total land area. The contribution of these areas towards maintaining South Africa's unique biodiversity is incalculable.

The publication in 2006 of the *National Spatial Biodiversity Assessment* by the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism and Sanbi, revealed that 34% of South Africa's ecosystems are

threatened, with 5% critically endangered; while 82% of the 120 main rivers are threatened and 44% critically endangered. Of the 13 groups of estuarine biodiversity, three are in critical danger and 12% of marine biozones are under serious threat.

Because of the geographic spread and diversity of South Africa's plant and animal species – up to 80% of significant biodiversity lies outside existing protected areas – a traditional approach to conservation is inadequate. Biodiversity priorities have to be integrated with all policies, plans and programmes.

Minister van Schalkwyk launched South Africa's National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan (NBSAP) in June 2006. It aims to guide conservation and the management of biodiversity to ensure sustainable and equitable benefits for all communities.

The NBSAP highlights five strategic objectives, such as the need for a network of protected areas that conserve a sample of all South Africa's biodiversity; specifies how these are to be realised; and sets five- and 15-year targets for each.

The NBSAP also provides for the entrenchment of biodiversity concerns in production sectors, such as mining and forestry, by focusing on the inclusion of biodiversity priorities in guidelines and codes of best practice, and on measures to encourage sustainable production practices.

The NBSAP informs the creation, in law, of the National Biodiversity Framework to ensure an integrated, co-ordinated and consistent approach to biodiversity management by organs of state in all spheres of government, non-governmental organisations (NGOs), the private sector, local communities, other stakeholders and the public.

South African Biodiversity Information Facility (Sabif)

The Global Biodiversity Information Facility (GBIF) is a mega-science facility which was established in 2001, through collaborations among countries and international organisations. It aims to make the world's biodiversity data freely and openly available on the Internet.

South Africa became a voting participant of the GBIF in April 2003, thereby committing itself to establishing national nodes that are linked to the GBIF.

Launched in June 2005, Sabif represents a partnership of more than four South African data-providers, including other role-players such as the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, South

African Integrated Spatial Information System, South African Society for Systematic Biology, Endangered Wildlife Trust, Biobank South Africa or Wildlife Biodiversity Resources, the Biomap initiative and museums.

Through Sabif, South Africa will be able to respond to pertinent biodiversity challenges through innovative applications of information technology.

Sabif intends to create an enabling platform for end users to discover and put to use vast quantities of global biodiversity data to:

- advance scientific research in many disciplines
- promote technological and sustainable development
- facilitate the equitable sharing of the benefits of biodiversity
- enhance the quality of life of members of society.

South African Biosystematics Initiative (Sabi)

Sabi, which was established in 2002, aims to take a leading role in the application of innovative approaches to systematics and taxonomy as fundamental sciences underpinning biological research.

In this way, it plans to unlock the full potential of South Africa's biological and human resources through the enhanced practice of biosystematic science, and to use modern technology to build on an existing rich historical scientific legacy, including indigenous knowledge systems.

Some of Sabi's primary objectives include establishing a framework and strategy to:

- address the diminishing national capacity in biological systematics and taxonomy
- provide leadership and co-ordination to promote innovative research in the field of biosystematics
- empower South African biosystematics to employ and develop modern scientific technologies and approaches regarding the documentation and use of biological resources
- enhance the ability of South African biosystematics to contribute to the National System of Innovation and the information society, and thus respond to national priorities in agriculture, health, sustainable development and conservation.

South African Environmental Observation Network (SAEON)

The SAEON is a facility of the National Research Foundation (NRF). Its main aim is to establish and maintain environmental observatories, field

stations and sites, linked by an information-management network, to serve as research and education platforms for the long-term study of ecosystems. It provides for incremental advances in understanding ecosystems and the ability to detect, predict and react to environmental changes.

The SAEON satisfies the need for public-decision support by generating long-term information relevant to the sustainable management of natural resources and habitats over a spectrum of eco-regions and land uses, ranging from pristine to urbanisation-transformed landscapes.

Wildlife Biodiversity Resources or Biobank South Africa

With the growing global market in biomaterial and biodiversity informatics, developing countries such as South Africa face the enormous challenge of setting up systems for governing access to biodiversity and the sustainable use of their biodiversity heritage.

The biosciences field is recognised as the driving force behind the next revolutionary wave of scientific and technological advancement.

Biobank facilities (genebanks) are increasingly becoming a key strategic research infrastructure for countries worldwide. Their importance in the conservation and sustainable use of biodiversity has, among other things, been emphasised in the Consolidated Plan of Action for Science and Technology.

This has led to the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism collaborating with Wildlife Biodiversity Resources or Biobank South Africa to help facilitate, through its member organisations, an integrated and co-ordinated drive to access, collect, enhance and bank a representative range of biomaterial from key South African and African wildlife and indigenous livestock species for conservation, research and biotechnology development purposes.

This facility also provides general custodianship to South Africa's wildlife biomaterial and/or genetic resources.

Genebanks

The Department of Science and Technology and the Agricultural Research Council (ARC) support the maintenance, management and development of

national public assets for the benefit of the broader science community.

They are national repositories of genetic information and terrestrial data related to the environment, and include the specimens of and facilities that house all insects, support arachnids, nematodes, fungi and various other genebanks.

South Africa has international obligations that compel it to keep reference collections of all agricultural specimens regarding the import and export of agricultural produce.

The national collections and genebanks house these reference collections and make an important contribution to scientific studies, biodiversity replenishment, sustainable development and production, food security and invader-pest identification.

South African National Biodiversity Institute

Sanbi was established on 1 September 2004 with the renaming of the NBI in terms of the National Environmental Management: Biodiversity Act, 2004.

Sanbi, with its head office based at the Pretoria National Botanical Garden, is an autonomous state-aided institute whose vision is to be the leading institution in biodiversity science in Africa, facilitating conservation and the sustainable development of living resources and human well-being. In addition to new biodiversity-related initiatives linked to the Act, traditional activities undertaken by Sanbi include:

- collecting, displaying and cultivating plants indigenous to South Africa
- undertaking and promoting research into indigenous plants and related matters
- studying, researching and cultivating threatened plant species
- promoting the economic potential of indigenous plants
- running environmental-education programmes.

Sanbi manages nine national botanical gardens in five of South Africa's nine provinces. The gardens collectively attract over 1,25 million visitors a year, are signatories to the International Agenda for Botanic Gardens in Conservation, and are founding members of the African Botanic Gardens Network.



The largest garden is Kirstenbosch, situated on the eastern slopes of Table Mountain in Cape Town. It displays 5 300 indigenous plant species, and was voted one of the top-seven botanical gardens in the world at the International Botanical Congress held at Missouri Botanical Garden, United States of America, in 1999.

Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden, as part of the Table Mountain National Park (TMNP), was included in the Cape Floral Region World Heritage Site in 2004, becoming the first botanical garden in the world to be included within a natural world heritage site.

Kirstenbosch receives more than 750 000 visitors annually. The Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden houses the Kirstenbosch Research Centre, the Rufford Maurice Laing Centre for Biodiversity Conservation, Gold Fields Environmental Education Centre, the Botanical Society Conservatory, two restaurants, a conference venue, gift shops, a coffee bar, concert venues, sculpture exhibits and the Centre for Home Gardening, which includes an indigenous plant retail nursery.

The other gardens in the national network are the Karoo Desert in Worcester, Harold Porter in Betty's Bay, Free State in Bloemfontein, KwaZulu-Natal in Pietermaritzburg, Lowveld in Nelspruit, Walter Sisulu in Roodepoort/Mogale City, and the Pretoria National Botanical Garden.

The Pretoria National Botanical Garden houses the National Herbarium of South Africa, the largest herbarium in the southern hemisphere.

The Harold Porter National Botanical Garden boasts *Disa uniflora* in its natural habitat (flowering from mid-December to the end of January), and South Africa's national flower, the king protea (*Protea cynaroides*).

The Walter Sisulu National Botanical Garden accommodates more than 600 naturally occurring plant species, over 230 bird species, and a number of reptiles and small mammals. These include jackal and antelope, which occur in the natural areas of the garden.

This garden receives some 180 000 visitors annually and is the fastest-growing of the Sanbi-managed gardens. It covers over 275 hectares (ha) and consists of landscaped and natural areas. All the garden's plants are indigenous to Southern Africa.

South Africa's ninth national botanical garden, the Nieuwoudtville National Botanical Garden, was unveiled in August 2007.

The garden covers 6 300 ha of land on the Bokkeveld Plateau, which is famous for its range

and density of bulbous plants, to the extent that Nieuwoudtville is often referred to as the "bulb of the world".

Some 40% of the local flora consist of bulbs that create spectacular displays every autumn and spring. The garden also incorporates large natural patches of renosterveld fynbos and succulent Karoo vegetation. Almost a third of the species endemic to the Bokkeveld Plateau are threatened with extinction.

Sanbi operates environmental-education programmes within its national botanical gardens, and outreach greening programmes focused on promoting indigenous gardening at disadvantaged schools in surrounding areas.

Herbaria and taxonomic research

Sanbi researches the evolution, diversity, distribution and relationships of southern Africa's 24 000 species of plants, based on the Sanbi collection of over 1,8 million specimens in its three herbaria. There are also regional herbaria in Durban (KwaZulu-Natal Herbarium) and at the Kirstenbosch Research Centre (Compton Herbarium).

Recent products of plant taxonomic research within Sanbi have included a national plant checklist and the first-ever flowering plant checklist for sub-Saharan Africa. There are 50 136 plant taxa recorded for sub-Saharan Africa and some 19 581 indigenous plant species recorded for South Africa. South Africa, with its 11 700 endemic plant species, has the richest temperate flora in the world.

Biodiversity research

In addition to herbarium and taxonomic research, the Kirstenbosch Research Centre in Cape Town is a centre of excellence for biodiversity research.

The research programme focuses on the impact of climate change, invasive alien species and land-use on biodiversity, and the development of conservation plans for threatened ecosystems and species.

The centre has developed a new vegetation map for South Africa and maintains the Protea Atlas Database, one of the most comprehensive plant databases in the world.

The Leslie Hill Molecular Systematics Laboratory is one of the facilities at the Kirstenbosch Research Centre. A DNA bank has been established at the laboratory, in collaboration with the Royal Botanic Gardens, Kew, in the United Kingdom (UK).

The objectives of the bank, which is funded by the UK-based Darwin Initiative, are to archive the

DNA of at least one species of all 2 200 genera of South Africa's flowering plants, to train South African researchers and students in high-profile biotechnologies and to produce a tree of life of South African plants.

Millennium Seed Bank

The Millennium Seed Bank Project in South Africa is part of a 10-year international programme that aims to collect and conserve 10% of the world's seed-bearing plant species (some 24 000 species) in the Millennium Seed Bank facility of the Royal Botanic Gardens in Kew by 2010.

Sanbi joined the Millennium Seed Bank International Programme in 2000. The South African collaboration aims to contribute by collecting the seed of about 2 500 plant species indigenous to the region for storage in this long-term conservation facility.

Greening of the Nation

The Greening of the Nation Project, managed by Sanbi, is a new government-funded programme that has been initiated in various provinces for community and school greening projects. Its activities include the greening of towns (road islands and entrances), schools, crèches, day-care centres, community parks, cemeteries, police stations, and cultural villages, and the development of community nurseries.

Many projects include the development of indigenous and vegetable gardens. The programme works closely with Food and Trees for Africa, the first national non-governmental, non-profit, greening organisation in South Africa, established in 1990.

Working for Wetlands

Sanbi also manages the Working for Wetlands Programme, with its offices based at the Pretoria National Botanical Garden.

Biodiversity planning and assessment

Sanbi has assessed the contribution of municipal nature reserves to meeting national biodiversity targets, which highlighted the crucial role that municipal nature reserves play in conserving biodiversity, and the need for supporting the

development of municipal capacity to manage them effectively.

Sanbi supported the initiation of provincial biodiversity plans in the Eastern Cape and North West. These plans will form the basis for publishing bioregional plans in terms of the Biodiversity Act, 2004. North West and the Eastern Cape join Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga as provinces that have systematic spatial biodiversity plans that identify priority areas for biodiversity, using the best available science.

Policy support

In 2006/07, Sanbi provided support to the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism on policy development and implementation, including developing the National Biodiversity Framework, preparing for the listing of threatened or protected ecosystems in terms of the Biodiversity Act, 2004 and developing guidelines for publishing bioregional plans in terms of the Act.

New tools in the Biodiversity Act, 2004, such as listed ecosystems and published bioregional plans, will enable integrated management of priority terrestrial and aquatic ecosystems, many of which fall outside the protected area network, and will help to streamline environmental authorisations, ensuring outcomes that support both conservation and development.

Bioregional programmes

Sanbi co-ordinates a suite of bioregional programmes that focus on partnership projects to mainstream biodiversity in socio-economic development.

The most recent addition to the suite is the Marine Biodiversity Programme, initiated in partnership with the World Wide Fund for Nature South Africa (WWF-SA) and Marine and Coastal Management. The programme focuses on facilitating the establishment of a network of offshore marine protected areas (MPAs) in South Africa's waters, and engaging with the fisheries and mining sector.

The Grasslands Programme focuses on mainstreaming biodiversity in production sectors. Demonstration projects underway include rehabilitating river ecosystems in the Free State, wetland mitigation banking with the coal-mining

industry in Mpumalanga, securing priority biodiversity sites within urban areas in Gauteng, biodiversity stewardship on farms in the Wakkerstroom area in Mpumalanga, working with the forestry industry to secure 35 000 ha of high biodiversity priority forestry-owned land and ensuring that expansion of small-grower plantation forestry is underpinned by biodiversity considerations.

The Succulent Karoo Ecosystem Programme (Skep) has established innovative partnerships with De Beers on the Namaqualand coast and with Anglo American Base Metals as part of the Bushmanland Conservation Initiative in the Northern Cape, securing mine-owned land in conservation agreements that contribute to national biodiversity targets.

In partnership with the Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA), Conservation International and the Critical Ecosystem Partnership Fund, Skep has established Skeppies, the first-ever small grant fund enabling synergy between conservation and local economic development activities.

The Subtropical Thicket Ecosystem Programme (Step) focuses on integrating maps of biodiversity priorities into municipal planning and land-use decision-making in the Eastern Cape, including publishing a fully revised Step handbook and mapbook.

Step has initiated four biodiversity-related integrated development plan (IDP) projects in municipalities in the Fish River valley.

Cape Action for People and the Environment (Cape) closed off its US\$6-million investment from the Critical Ecosystem Partnership Fund, having funded 65 civil society-led projects in the Cape Floral Region over the five-year investment period. Cape continues to roll out the Biodiversity Conservation and Sustainable Development Project with an investment of US\$11 million from the Global Environment Facility (GEF), with a key focus on strengthening co-operative governance for improved biodiversity management in this global biodiversity hotspot.

Sanbi gave extensive input into the development of the Woolworths Biodiversity Strategy, through the Cape, Skep, Step and Grasslands programmes.

Assessing and monitoring indigenous fauna and flora

Since 2004, Sanbi has responded to its new mandate through the initiation of a suite of projects that will assess and monitor the status of South Africa's indigenous fauna. As part of its Threatened

Species Programme, Sanbi co-ordinates several atlas projects, which capture records of species occurrences across the country through the participation of hundreds of volunteer members of the public. Highlights include the following:

- The South African Reptile Conservation Assessment received much public attention in 2006/07. More than 20 volunteers joined the field team on various outings and 2 200 photographic records from more than 100 amateur photographers have been submitted to the burgeoning online virtual museum (see www.reptiles.sanbi.org).
- The launch of the *South African National Survey of Arachnida* took place in September 2006. This collaboration between the ARC and Sanbi is progressing well and has garnered much attention and support from the public and conservation and scientific communities.
- Sanbi's Custodians of Rare and Endangered Wildflowers has been so successful in its aim to involve local communities in monitoring and conserving their rare and threatened plants that it has now established offices in Pretoria and Pietermaritzburg.
- Sanbi's Birds and Environmental Change in South Africa Programme has progressed with its aim of using birds as indicators of ecosystem change and human well-being.

Knowledge and information management

Sanbi's strategic objectives include being the preferred source for biodiversity knowledge and information management in South Africa. Sanbi is actively consolidating its information resources and services, with the aim of supporting research, planning, implementation and monitoring by a range of partners and stakeholders.



In June 2007, the Minister of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, Mr Marthinus van Schalkwyk, announced that South African National Parks (SANParks) had been allocated R574,9 million for infrastructure development and to improve facilities in the country's nature reserves, in preparation for the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ and beyond.

Coupled with the R600 million that is being spent on the infrastructure component of the Expanded Public Works Programme, total expenditure on upgrading, as well as new rest camps, roads, fences and other infrastructure, will have exceeded R1 billion by 2010.

SANParks has signed an agreement with the FIFA accommodation and ticketing company, Match, providing football fans with the chance to have a truly unique South African experience during the World Cup.

In 2006, Sabif was transferred from the NRF to Sanbi with support from the Department of Science and Technology.

Sanbi's Biodiversity Geographical Information System (BGIS) Unit is expanding its services to provide easy access to biodiversity planning and related information for all South Africa's biomes. In 2006/07, the amount of freely available spatial biodiversity information on the BGIS website (www.bgis.sanbi.org) had increased substantially. Some 1:30 000 satellite imagery for southern Africa, together with a species-mapping tool, has been added to the site.

Conservation areas

South Africa is committed to meeting the World Conservation Union (IUCN) target of 10% of land area under protection.

There are a number of management categories of protected areas in South Africa, which conform to the accepted categories of the IUCN.

Scientific reserves

Scientific reserves are sensitive and undisturbed areas managed for research, monitoring and maintenance of genetic sources. Access is limited to researchers and staff. Examples of such areas are Marion Island and the Prince Edward islands near Antarctica.

Wilderness areas

These areas are extensive in size, uninhabited and underdeveloped, and access is strictly controlled with no vehicles allowed. The highest management priority is the maintenance of the intrinsic wilderness character.

Examples of wilderness areas are the Cederberg Wilderness Area and Dassen Island in the Western Cape, and the Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area in the Eastern Cape.

Marine protected areas

South Africa has 23 MPA's, which cover almost 19% of the coastline.

The World Parks Congress recommended that by 2012 a global system of effectively managed MPAs be implemented. The accepted target is to protect 20% of each habitat.

MPAs conserve natural environments and assist in the management of fisheries by protecting and rebuilding economically important stocks. Many of the new MPAs will be used to further develop and regulate coastal ecotourism opportunities.

National parks and equivalent reserves

SANParks manages several national parks throughout South Africa, excluding in Gauteng, North West and KwaZulu-Natal. The system of national parks is representative of the country's important ecosystems and unique natural features.

Commercial and tourism-conservation development and the involvement of local communities are regarded as performance indicators. These areas include national parks proclaimed in terms of the National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Act, 2003, provincial parks, nature reserves and indigenous state forests.

Some of these natural and scenic areas are extensive and include large representative areas of at least one of the country's biomes. Since 1994, five new national parks have been established and 379 000 ha have been added to the parks system. South Africa's national parks are:

- Addo Elephant National Park
- Agulhas National Park
- Augrabies Falls National Park
- Bontebok National Park
- Blyde River National Park
- Camdeboo National Park
- Golden Gate Highlands National Park
- Groenkloof National Park
- Kalahari Gemsbok National Park (part of the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park)
- Karoo National Park
- Knysna National Lake Area
- Kruger National Park, which celebrated its 109th birthday on 1 June 2007
- Marakele National Park
- Mapungubwe National Park
- Mokala National Park
- Mountain Zebra National Park
- Namaqua National Park
- Richtersveld National Park
- TMNP (which incorporates the Cape of Good Hope, Table Mountain and Silvermine nature reserves)

- Tankwa Karoo National Park
- Tsitsikamma National Park
- Wilderness National Park
- West Coast National Park
- Wild Coast National Park.

The new Mokala National Park, which was proclaimed in June 2007, boasts 19 611 ha and is situated south-west of Kimberley.

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism has invested about R120 million in social responsibility funding for infrastructure development in the Mapungubwe National Park, and a further R30 million has been spent on land acquisition.

During 2006/07, portions of the new Wild Coast National Park, located in a globally recognised biodiversity hotspot with more than 1 500 plant species alone, were declared. It is expected to draw more than 245 000 tourists by 2008, and 270 000 by 2013, creating some 3 260 direct and indirect jobs. The new Blyde River National Park was declared on Heritage Day, 24 September 2006. It lies in an area with over 2 000 plant species (of which 163 are Red Data plants), which is more than in the entire Kruger National Park.

The park is in the Blyde River Canyon, which has one of the richest troves of plants and animals in southern Africa. Some R18 million has been allocated for infrastructure for the park over the next three years, starting with a R10-million luxury hiking trail. The park is expected to boost the local economy by R500 million over the next decade.

Transfrontier conservation areas (TFCAs)

A TFCA is a cross-border region. The conservation status of the areas within it ranges from national parks, private game reserves and communal natural-resource management areas to hunting-concession areas.

Although fences, highways, railway lines or other barriers separate the constituent areas, they are managed jointly for long-term sustainable use of natural resources. Unlike in transfrontier parks, free movement of animals between the components of a TFCA is not always possible.

TFCAs aim to facilitate and promote regional peace, co-operation and socio-economic development. The success of TFCAs depends on community involvement. In turn, TFCAs are likely to provide local communities with opportunities to generate revenue.

TFCAs are expected to allow tourists easy movement across international boundaries into adjoining conservation areas.

The six identified TFCAs are as follows:

- Ai-Ais/Richtersveld TFCA
- Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park
- Limpopo/Shashe TFCA
- Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park
- Lubombo Transfrontier Conservation and Resource Area
- Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier Conservation and Development Area

In June 2006, a memorandum of understanding (MoU) between South Africa, Botswana and Zimbabwe was signed for the establishment of the Limpopo/Shashe TFCA. The proposed Limpopo/Shashe TFCA is 1 950 km² in extent, of which 270 km² are in South Africa, 720 km² are in Botswana and 960 km² are in Zimbabwe.

Biosphere reserves

The National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment Act, 2004 protects South Africa's biosphere reserves, which are generally formed around existing core conservation areas.

Biosphere reserves include outstanding natural beauty and biological diversity, exist in partnership with a range of interested landowners, and can incorporate development, as long as it is sustainable, while still protecting terrestrial or coastal ecosystems.

South Africa's four biospheres are the:

- Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve, which was registered with the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation (Unesco) in 1998.
- Cape West Coast Biosphere Reserve, which was listed in 2000. It covers 376 900 ha that include a number of threatened vegetation types and important bird-breeding sites.



In July 2007, Cabinet approved the Integrated Coastal Management Bill for tabling in Parliament. The purpose of the Bill is to:

- provide a legal and administrative framework that will promote co-operative, co-ordinated and integrated coastal development
- preserve, protect and enhance the status of the coastal environment as the heritage of all
- ensure coastal resources are managed in the interests of the whole community
- ensure there is equitable access to the opportunities and benefits derived from the coast
- give effect to certain of South Africa's international law obligations.
- ensure that existing access points to the coastal area are reinstated and properly maintained
- allow for the demarcation of access land.



Through the Kids in Parks Programme, the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism makes South Africa's cultural and biodiversity assets more accessible to the leaders of tomorrow.

Over the past three years, approximately 8 000 learners and 330 teachers were introduced to 14 of South Africa's national parks.

- Waterberg Biosphere Reserve in Limpopo, which was listed in 2001. It covers 1,4 million ha that include the Marakele National Park and the Nylsvlei Ramsar Site.
- Kruger-to-Canyons Biosphere Reserve, which was also listed in 2001, and covers more than 3,3 million ha that span the boundary between Limpopo and Mpumalanga. The core areas comprise 13 declared protected areas, with a major portion of the Kruger National Park as the largest core area.

National and cultural monuments

These are natural or cultural features, or both, and may include botanical gardens, zoological gardens, natural heritage sites and sites of conservation significance.

World heritage sites

By September 2007, there were 851 world heritage sites in 141 countries. Africa had 77 sites. A total of 166 were natural sites, 660 were cultural sites and 25 were mixed sites.

In May 1997, South Africa ratified the World Heritage Convention. The South Africa World Heritage Convention Committee is responsible for identifying possible world heritage sites in South Africa and co-ordinating the convention. The World Heritage Convention Act, 1999 (Act 49 of 1999), allows for cultural and natural sites in South Africa to be granted world heritage status. The convention obliges the South African Government to guarantee its implementation, ensure legal protection, and develop management plans and institutional structures for periodic monitoring.

The Act makes the principles of the convention applicable to South Africa's world heritage sites, and further provides for the adequate protection and conservation of these sites to promote tourism in a culturally and environmentally responsible way.

South Africa has eight world heritage sites proclaimed by Unesco, namely Robben Island; the Isimangaliso Wetlands Park; the hominid sites at Swartkrans, Sterkfontein and Kromdraai (known as the Cradle of Humankind); the Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park (a mixed natural and cultural site); the Mapungubwe Heritage Site; the Cape Floral Kingdom; the Vredefort Dome; and the Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape.

The Vredefort Dome is an ancient extraterrestrial impact site spanning the Free State and North West provinces. Formed two billion years ago, it is the world's most ancient meteorite impact site and the third-largest, measuring 140 km wide.

The world heritage status of Sterkfontein's fossil hominid sites was extended in July 2005 to include the Taung skull fossil site in North West and the Mokopane Valley in Limpopo.

The Cradle of Humankind has one of the world's richest concentrations of hominid fossils, evidence of human evolution over the past 3,5 million years.

Found in Gauteng and North West, the fossil sites cover an area of 47 000 ha. The remains of ancient forms of animals, plants and hominids are captured in a bed of dolomite deposited around 2,5 billion years ago.

Although other sites in south and east Africa have similar remains, the cradle has produced more than 950 hominid fossil specimens. The R347-million Cradle of Humankind development, initiated by the Gauteng Provincial Government, is the first public-private partnership of its kind in South Africa. The aim is to develop and manage the World Heritage Site as a premier tourist destination.

Other partners include the University of the Witwatersrand, which owns the Sterkfontein caves and is the major excavator of the cradle site.

In June 2007, the Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape was declared a world heritage site. It covers an area of 160 000 ha of dramatic mountainous desert in the north-west part of South Africa. It is the only area where the Nama still construct portable rush-covered domed houses, or *lharu oms*.

Habitat- and wildlife-management areas

These areas are subject to human intervention, based on research into the requirements of specific species for survival. They include conservancies;

provincial, regional or private reserves created for the conservation of species habitats or biotic communities; marshes; lakes; and nesting and feeding areas.

Protected land and seascapes

These areas are products of the harmonious interaction of people and nature, and include natural environments protected in terms of the Environment Conservation Act, 1989 (Act 73 of 1989), scenic landscapes and historical urban landscapes.

Sustainable-use areas

These areas emphasise the sustainable use of protected areas such as the Kosi Bay Lake System in KwaZulu-Natal.

Nature areas in private ownership are proclaimed and are managed to curtail undesirable development in areas with high aesthetic or conservation potential.

Conservancies are formed to involve the ordinary landowner in conservation. Landowners can establish a conservancy where conservation principles are integrated with normal farming activities.



In September 2007, South African National Parks (SANParks) announced the launch of the first South African National Parks Week.

This inaugural event, which was held from 18 to 24 September, and annually henceforth, is supported by First National Bank (funding patron).

The theme for the event was *Know your National Parks* and the main objectives of the week were to create awareness; instil a sense of pride in South Africa's natural, cultural and historical heritage; educate the public on the importance of nature and biodiversity; and give the public a broader understanding of the custodianship role played by SANParks in conservation issues. This initiative is in line with the organisation's efforts to bring national parks closer to the people. Some of the preceding initiatives are the Kids in Parks, Kruger to Kasi and Imbewu programmes, which are all aimed at developing a strong stakeholder base for national parks through awareness and education.

The public had free access to all national parks during the National Parks Week. Events included career-guidance exhibitions, hiking trails, photography competitions, exhibitions on various activities around the parks, game drives, evening boma braais, storytelling sessions and sports activities.

The highlight of the week's activities was the 75th anniversary celebration of the former Kalahari Gemsbok National Park, which now forms part of the Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park with Botswana.

Wetlands

Wetlands include a wide range of inland and coastal habitats – from mountain bogs and fens to midland marshes, swamp forests and estuaries, linked by green corridors of streambank wetlands.

South Africa became a contracting party to the Ramsar Convention in 1975. The country's Ramsar sites include Nylsvlei Nature Reserve, Blesbokspruit, Barberspan, Seekoeivlei, Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park, Ndumo Game Reserve, the Kosi Bay System, Lake Sibaya, the turtle beaches and coral reefs of Tongaland, the St Lucia System, Wilderness lakes, De Hoop Vlei, De Mond State Forest, Langebaan, Verlorenvlei, the Orange River Mouth Wetland and the Makuleke Wetland.

The Directorate: Biodiversity Management of the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism is responsible for the South African Wetlands Conservation Programme. The programme ensures that South Africa's obligations in terms of the Ramsar Convention are met.

The programme aims to protect wetlands in South Africa against degradation and destruction, while striving for the ideal of wise and sustainable use of resources, to ensure that the ecological and socio-economic functions of wetlands are sustained for the future.

South Africa is a member of Wetlands International, an international body dedicated to conserving the world's wetlands.

The Working for Wetlands Programme focuses on wetland restoration, while maximising employment creation; support for small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs); and transfer of skills to the beneficiaries of the programme's projects.

The programme contributes directly to the objectives of the Expanded Public Works Programme and is a partnership between the departments of environmental affairs and tourism, of water affairs and forestry, and of agriculture. It is managed by Sanbi.

World Wetlands Day marks the date of the signing of the Convention of Wetlands on 2 February 1971 in the Iranian city of Ramsar. The theme for World Wetlands Day 2007 was *Wetlands and Fisheries*.

Zoological gardens

Founded in 1899, the National Zoological Gardens (NZG) of South Africa in Pretoria is the only zoo in South Africa with national status and membership of the World Association of Zoos and Aquariums, the African Association of Zoological Gardens, the International Union of Zooculturists and the International Association of Zoo Educators.



The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism has secured an investment of R500 million over the next three years, to ensure that all South Africa's national parks are exemplary energy-efficient showcases.

The NZG, considered one of the 10 best in the world, extends over an area of about 85 ha. In 2006, the zoo attracted more than 600 000 visitors.

On 1 April 2006, the zoo's collection included 2 889 specimens of 213 mammal species, 1 418 specimens of 221 bird species, 4 639 specimens of 217 fish species, 118 specimens of 12 invertebrate species, 529 specimens of 113 reptile species, and 88 specimens of five amphibian species.

These figures comprised the animals housed at the NZG in Pretoria, the two biodiversity conservation centres in Lichtenburg and Mokopane, and the satellite zoo and game park at the Emerald Animal World in Vanderbijlpark.

In April 2004, the NZG was declared a national research facility, subject to the provisions of the NRF.

The NRF is a government agency responsible for supporting and promoting research, and providing research facilities to encourage the creation of knowledge, innovation and development in all fields of science and technology. (See Chapter 17: *Science and technology*.)

In 2001, the NZG established the 203 ha Emerald Animal World housed at the Emerald Casino in Vanderbijlpark. The facility comprises a 189 ha game park and a 14 ha zoo.

The Emerald Animal World facility houses more than 760 animals representing 127 species of mammals, birds and reptiles. Animals that can be viewed there include white rhinoceros, hippopotamus, lion, cheetah, giraffe, various antelope and reptile species, and Cape fur seals. Most of the animals were provided by the national zoo's biodiversity conservation centres in Lichtenburg and Mokopane.

The Johannesburg Zoological Gardens, or Johannesburg Zoo, celebrated its centenary in 2004. The core business of Johannesburg Zoo, which is registered as a non-profit company, is the

accommodation, enrichment, husbandry and medical care of wild animals.

It is also renowned for its successful breeding programmes involving several endangered South African bird species such as the wattled crane and ground hornbill. The zoo covers 54 ha and houses 2 070 animals of 365 species.

Breeding centres

There are a number of game-breeding centres in South Africa. The NZG of South Africa is responsible for the management of the Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre, which covers an area of some 6 000 ha, and the Makopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre, covering an area of 1 333 ha.

The two centres supplement the zoo's breeding programme for various endangered animals, and the zoo's own animal collection.

The Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre houses, among other animals, Père David's deer, pygmy hippopotamus, white rhinoceros, the endangered addax, and scimitar-horned and Arabian oryx. Large herds of impala, springbok, zebra, blesbok and red hartebeest also roam the area.

About 32 ha of the wetland area at the centre have been developed into a system of dams and pans, which serve as a natural haven for waterbirds such as spoonbills, kingfishers, ibises and herons.

The Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre is home to an abundance of exotic and indigenous fauna such as lemur, the rare tsessebe, roan antelope and black rhino.

De Wildt Cheetah-Breeding and Research Centre, situated near Pretoria, is best known for its highly successful captive-breeding programme that contributed to the cheetah being removed from the endangered list of the *South African Red Data Book – Terrestrial Mammals* in 1986.

De Wildt also breeds a number of rare and endangered African species. The most spectacular of these is the magnificent king cheetah, which is a true cheetah, but with a variation of coat patterns and colouring. De Wildt also plays a major role in breeding and releasing wild dogs. It has donated breeding nucleuses of the highly endangered riverine rabbit and suni antelope to the Kruger National Park.



In May 2007, South Africa's first world heritage site, the Greater St Lucia Wetland Park, was renamed Isimangaliso Wetland Park.

The new name, meaning "wonder", became effective on 1 November 2007. The 220 000-hectare wetland park's consolidated boundaries now include a third of the length of the KwaZulu-Natal coastline and destinations such as Kosi Bay, Lake Sibaya, Sodwana Bay, uMkhuze Game Reserve, False Bay, Fannies Island, Charters Creek, Lake St Lucia, Cape Vidal and Mapelane.

The De Wildt Vulture Unit is a rehabilitation and holding facility for injured, poisoned and disabled vultures. The Hoedspruit Endangered Species Centre in Mpumalanga was initially established as a breeding programme for the then endangered cheetah. Following the success of the cheetah-breeding programme, it has evolved into a breeding programme for other endangered African animal species. The centre caters for, among other things, five species of vulture: Cape griffins, and white-backed, hooded, whiteheaded and lappetfaced vultures. The centre is also known for its wild-dog-breeding programme.

The Hoedspruit Research and Breeding Programme also includes the rare black-footed cat, the vulnerable African wild cat, ground hornbills (in co-operation with the NZG in Pretoria), bald ibis and the endangered blue crane. Elephant, white rhino, buffalo, caracal. Sable antelope, bushbuck and tsessebe have also been cared for and rehabilitated there.

Aquaria

There are well-known aquaria in Pretoria, Port Elizabeth, Cape Town and Durban.

The Aquarium and Reptile Park of the NZG is the largest inland aquarium in Africa, with the largest collection of freshwater fish. It is also the only aquarium in South Africa that exhibits a large variety of marine fish in artificial sea water.

The Port Elizabeth Oceanarium is one of the city's major attractions. Exhibits include an underwater observation area, a dolphin-research centre, various smaller tanks of 40 different species of bony fish and two larger tanks that display sharks and stingrays. East London has a smaller aquarium.

At the Two Oceans Aquarium situated at the Victoria and Alfred Waterfront, Cape Town, more than 3 000 specimens represent some 300 species of fish, invertebrates, mammals, birds and plants supported by the waters in and around the Cape coast.

USHaka Marine World in Durban incorporates both fresh and sea water, and is the fifth-largest aquarium in the world by water volume. It comprises Sea World, Dolphin World, Beach World, and Wet and Wild World.

Sea World incorporates a unique shipwreck-themed aquarium, a penguin rookery and a 1 200-seater dolphin stadium (the largest dolphinarium in Africa).

It also offers edutainment tours and special interactive activities such as snorkelling and scuba diving. In addition, it features a rocky touch-pool, where visitors can touch a starfish or sea cucumber with the help of specially trained guides.

Snake parks

The Transvaal Snake Park in Midrand, between Pretoria and Johannesburg, houses up to 150 species of snakes and other reptiles and amphibians from southern Africa and elsewhere. The emphasis is on the development of breeding programmes for animals in captivity.

The Fitzsimons Snake Park in Durban houses about 250 snakes, including the world's longest (reticulated python), most venomous (boomslang, puff adder and black mamba) and rarest (long-nose tree snake and Madagascar tree boa) snakes.

Up to 500 snakes hatch at the park each year. The Adventure Walk enables visitors to view a large variety of snakes that are kept in secure glass-viewing enclosures. The park also offers educational, interactive snake demonstrations, and junior and advanced herpetology (study of reptiles) classes.

The Port Elizabeth Snake Park at Bayworld has a wide variety of South African and foreign reptiles, including tortoises, boa constrictors, pythons, crocodiles, lizards and deadly venomous snakes such as cobras, mambas and rattlers.

Rare and threatened species, including the Madagascar ground boa, are housed safely in realistically landscaped glass enclosures.

The Aquarium and Reptile Park situated at the NZG in Pretoria houses 80 reptile species from all over the world.

The Hartbeespoort Dam Snake and Animal Park near Pretoria features one of the finest reptile collections in southern Africa. It offers seal shows and snake-handling demonstrations.

Marine resources

The South African coastline covers more than 3 200 km, linking the east and west coasts of Africa. South Africa's shores are particularly rich in biodiversity with some 10 000 species of marine plants and animals having been recorded.

The productive waters of the west coast support a variety of commercially exploited marine life, including hake, anchovy, sardine, horse mackerel, tuna, snoek, rock lobster and abalone.

On the east coast, squid, linefish and a wide range of intertidal resources provide an important source of food and livelihood for coastal communities. Marine life that is not harvested, such as whales, dolphins and seabirds, is increasingly recognised as a valuable resource for nature-based tourism.

The South African fishing industry, which was once concentrated in the hands of a few, largely white-owned companies, has undergone intensive transformation over the past 10 years.

New fisheries

Partnerships with industry and communities have enabled the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism to make major progress with the allocation of fishing rights.

Following the 2001 allocation of medium-term fishing rights of two to four years, in 2006/07 the department allocated long-term commercial fishing rights of eight to 15 years in 20 fishing sectors.

The biggest challenge in the rights-allocation process was to balance declining and migrating marine living resources with the high demand for access to these resources.

A total of 2 542 long-term commercial fishing rights were allocated, significantly improving the transformation profile of the industry. The estimated wholesale value of production in the fishing industry was approximately R4,5 billion in 2006/07.

Aquaculture

Marine aquaculture is an integral part of the department's strategy to diversify the fishing industry. In 2007, the department published the first-

ever marine aquaculture policy for South Africa. The policy aims to create an enabling environment that includes transforming and broadening participation in the industry through SMME initiatives and facilitating finance and skills development.

The policies are also intended to improve the management and control of environmental impacts and increase the resource base to include a more diverse suite of species. Four marine aquaculture projects were expected to be initiated in each coastal province in 2007/08.

Aquaculture production in South Africa is in the region of 4 000 tons (t) a year, of which much is attri-butable to abalone and mussel production.

Abalone-farming was initiated in South Africa in the early 1990s, and by 1996, a number of small operators had entered the industry. The first 10 t were produced in 1997, and by 2003, production had increased to 515 t.

In 2006, some 900 t were produced and by April 2007, there were 15 commercial farms in operation. The industry continues to grow, and during 2006, the department issued 23 permits to culture the species.

While most of the farms are located in the Western Cape, most notably along the South Coast between Hermanus and Danger Point, and around the Saldanha Bay/St Helena Bay area on the West Coast, farms are also located as far north as Port Nolloth in the Northern Cape, and as far east as Haga-Haga in the Eastern Cape.

Abalone-farming has the highest economic value when compared with other farmed products and is the highest employer within the marine aquaculture sector.

The sector employs more than 800 people, constituting more than 80% of total marine-aquaculture employment. During 2006, the economic value of abalone was just above R141 million, while the total value of the sector was around R150 million.

This sector continues to grow while the wild abalone stocks continue to diminish. For example, the total allowable catch for abalone during 2006 was 223 t and was reduced to 125 t for 2007.

In October 2007, Cabinet supported a recommendation by the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism to suspend commercial wild abalone fishing from February 2008.



In September 2007, the Minister of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, Mr Marthinus van Schalkwyk, published the *Policy for the Development of a Sustainable Marine Aquaculture Sector In South Africa*, following the completion of a two-year intensive stakeholder engagement process. The main purpose of the policy is to accelerate the development of the marine aquaculture industry.

4x4 regulations

Following the successful implementation of the 4x4 regulations that provide for the controlled use of off-road vehicles in coastal zones, the monitoring of certain stretches of coast has indicated that the banning of off-road vehicles has enabled several shore-breeding birds, especially Damara tern and African black oystercatcher, to breed successfully on beaches once again.

According to conservationists from Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife, the number of loggerhead and leatherback turtles hatching successfully on the beaches of northern KwaZulu-Natal has also increased since the ban was enforced.

Following the release in February 2007 of a report on the ecological and socio-economic impact of the beach-driving ban, Minister van Schalkwyk declared that for ecological reasons, South African beaches would not be re-opened to public recreational vehicles.

Interpretive and Informative Marine and Coastal Signage Programme

As part of its education and training programme, the department seeks to raise awareness in coastal areas. Following extensive consultation, more than 90 different themed interpretive and informative boards were developed and erected at beaches all along the coastline after the reproduction of more than 1 000 copies. These are valuable tools for increasing coastal and marine-environment awareness among beach visitors.

Adopt-a-Beach

The Adopt-a-Beach Programme was initiated to encourage groups of people to adopt or help look after a piece of coast in their region and link with others as part of a national project. Adopt-a-Beach is part of the overall Coastcare Programme and contributes towards the implementation of the awareness, education and training goals of the *White Paper for Sustainable Coastal Development in South Africa*. More than 250 groups have been registered and are being supported by the department.

Blue Flag Programme

Blue Flag is an international annual award given to beaches that meet excellence in the areas of safety, amenities, cleanliness and environmental standards.

South Africa is the first country outside Europe to win Blue Flag accreditation for its beaches. Since the inception of the programme in South Africa, a

75% growth rate in full status and pilot Blue Flag beaches has been achieved.

The Blue Flag beaches for 2007/08 were:

- Bronze Beach, Umhlanga
- Umhlanga Rocks Main Beach
- North Beach, Durban
- Bay of Plenty, Durban
- Westbrook Beach, north of Durban
- Addington Beach, Durban
- Margate Beach, south of Durban
- Ramsgate Main Beach, south of Durban
- Marina Beach, Southbroom
- Kelly's Beach, Port Alfred
- Wells Estate, Port Elizabeth
- Humewood Beach, Port Elizabeth
- King's Beach, Port Elizabeth
- Dolphin Beach, Jeffrey's Bay
- Lappiesbaai Beach, Stilbaai
- Grotto Beach, Hermanus
- Kleinmond Beach, near Hermanus
- Hawston Beach, near Hermanus
- Bikini Beach, Gordon's Bay
- Mnandi Beach, Strandfontein
- Clifton Fourth Beach, Cape Town.

Conservation challenges

South Africa faces many of the problems experienced by developing countries, in which rapid industrialisation, population growth and urbanisation pose a threat to the quality of the environment. The department is reforming environmental law to introduce reform in biodiversity conservation, pollution, waste management and environmental planning.

Urban environmental management

South Africa is an urbanised economy with 58% of the population living in cities and towns. By 2015, it is expected that 68% of the population will live in urban areas due to continued migration from rural areas mainly to the larger cities, which will lead to many environmental challenges in South Africa's cities.

The launch of the five-year Danish-funded Urban Environmental Management Programme (UEMP) in June 2006 marked a milestone in environmental co-operation between Denmark and South Africa. With their latest donation of R275 million, Denmark passed the R1-billion mark in donations made towards improving environmental quality in South Africa. Five key municipalities have been chosen as pilots for this programme, namely Cape Town, Durban, Ekurhuleni, Johannesburg and Sedibeng

(Vaal Triangle). The three provincial partners are Gauteng, Western Cape and KwaZulu-Natal.

Some R85 million has been earmarked for direct support to these cities with a reserve for other "hotspots" in future. People living in air-pollution hotspots such as the Vaal Triangle and South Durban can expect noticeable improvements over the next five years.

It is expected that the UEMP will lead to an improvement in the quality of life of nearly two million poor households in these five municipalities, whose health is affected by inadequate waste removal, and poor air quality and planning. It will contribute to economic growth by assisting cities to develop energy strategies and IDPs. The professional development of environmental health officers will also receive special attention.

Climatic and atmospheric change

In South Africa, climate change is evident and will continue, even if greenhouse gas (GHG) concentrations are stabilised. As such, it will continue to undermine sustainable development.

Expanded desertification in the semi-arid areas of the country is already a feature of the South African landscape. Climate-change modelling suggests a reduction of the area covered by the current biomes in South Africa by 35% to 55% in the next 50 years.

The Energy Research Centre at the University of Cape Town has estimated that the yearly cost to South Africa of not acting to adapt to the effects of climate change now will be about 1,5% of gross domestic product (GDP) by 2050.

Achieving the 2013 additional renewable energy target of 10 000 giga watt hours could have a positive impact on GDP of more than R1 billion, lead to additional government revenue of almost R300 million, provide additional income to low-income households of R128 million, and produce water savings of up to 16,5 million kilolitres per year, while creating just over 20 000 new jobs.

Over the longer term, climate change will exacerbate environmental degradation, desertification, biodiversity loss and resource scarcity. These are all sources of potential instability and conflict.

Africa is at risk from increasing water stress, especially in southern Africa. By 2020, between 75 million and 250 million people are likely to experience water shortages as a result of climate change.

In combination with increased demand, this will adversely affect livelihoods, freshwater fish resources and agricultural production. In some countries, yields from rain-fed agriculture could be reduced by up to 50% by 2020.

National Climate-Change Response Strategy

The strategy provides a comprehensive framework for dealing with climate-change issues in South Africa. The approach used in developing this strategy ensures, as far as possible, that climate-change response actions in South Africa facilitate sustainable development.

Government approved accession to the Kyoto Protocol of the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC) in March 2002, demonstrating South Africa's commitment to further enhancing the effectiveness of environmental legislation. The Kyoto Protocol, which entered into force on 16 February 2005, is a legally binding instrument whereby developed countries undertake to reduce GHG emissions by at least 5% of their 1990 levels.

One of the protocol's features is the incorporation of market-based mechanisms designed to allow developed countries to achieve their required emission reductions at the lowest possible cost.

The Climate Change Summit was held on 8 June 2007 at the Cape Town International Convention Centre. The South African roadmap for a national climate policy recognises that the solution to the critical challenges the country faces should be addressed through integrated government planning, in collaboration with stakeholders through the National Climate Change Committee and a strengthened multilateral regime. To this end, the Inter-Ministerial Committee on Climate Change, led by the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, initiated the Long-Term Mitigation Scenario process. This process will outline the range of ambitious but realistic scenarios of future climate action, notably long-term emission scenarios and their cost implications.



In addition, various national departments, provinces and cities are refining their sector plans in line with the National Climate Change Response Strategy. Working closely with industry, the department will also be finalising the updated GHG Inventory. All this will inform the first-ever Long-Term National Climate Policy, planned to be published during 2008/09.

South Africa is introducing the first carbon-development mechanism projects that use cleaner development to generate revenue from developed nations, to support the country's actions in response to climate change. Government also intends implementing the agreement it has with Business Unity South Africa on emissions, and using the National Environment Management: Air Quality Act, 2004 (Act 39 of 2004), to regulate the reporting of GHG gas emissions, and encourage cleaner production.

Erosion and desertification

Most South African soil is unstable. The country loses an estimated 500 mt of topsoil annually through erosion caused by water and wind.

About 81% of the total land area of South Africa is farmed. However, only 70% of this area is suitable for grazing. Overgrazing and erosion diminish the carrying capacity of the veld and lead to land degradation. This process has already claimed more than 250 000 ha of land in South Africa. The Department of Agriculture administers the Conservation of Agricultural Resources Act, 1983 (Act 43 of 1983), in terms of which various measures are being implemented to prevent or contain soil erosion.

In January 1995, South Africa signed the Convention to Combat Desertification, which was ratified on 30 September 1997. The main objectives of the convention include co-operation between governments, organisations and communities to accomplish sustainable development, especially where water resources are scarce.

The convention aims to support member countries in Africa to prevent desertification and its consequences. These countries support one another at technical and scientific level, as they share similar climatic conditions.

South Africa also acts as co-ordinator for the Valdivia Group for Desertification. The group consists of countries in the southern hemisphere, namely Australia, New Zealand, Argentina, Chile, Uruguay, South Africa and Brazil, whose aim it is, among other things, to foster scientific and technological co-operation.

The country has introduced legislation such as the Biodiversity Act, 2004 to promote the conservation of biodiversity, and fight desertification and land degradation.

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism has also initiated projects to care for and protect the environment such as the Community-Based Natural Resources Management (CBNRM). The CBNRM has already led to the Machubeni Catchments Management Project. Other similar projects exist in Madibaneng, in Sekhukhune in Limpopo, and Mkhuzi in KwaZulu-Natal. These projects have been funded to the tune of R40 million and further projects are expected to be rolled out throughout the country.

By mid-2007, the department was finalising a partnership agreement with the DBSA for increased funding for CBNRM projects.

Waste management

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism has prioritised four projects within the framework of the National Waste Management Strategy. They are:

- recycling
- a waste information system
- healthcare waste
- capacity-building.

Central to these are pilot projects that are being set up countrywide. The department welcomes partnerships with business to ensure that these projects are successful and become a core of better waste management in South Africa.

The National Environment Management: Waste Bill was approved by Cabinet in July 2007.

Government aims to reduce the amount of "big five" wastes – plastics, cans, paper, glass and tyres – that reach landfills, by 70% by 2022, and has plans for minimising and treating the remaining 30%. National initiatives embarked on to realise the goal of zero waste include agreements signed by government and members of priority waste-stream sectors such as the manufacturers of plastic bags and the waste-glass industry, and an MoU with the waste-tyre sector.

An agreement containing regulations governing plastic shopping bags was signed in September 2002 by the Minister of Environmental Affairs and Tourism and representatives from various labour and business organisations.

The agreement, which came into effect on 9 May 2003, stipulates that the thickness of plastic bags be 30 microns. However, manufacturers were allowed to continue using their existing machinery

to make bags of 24-micron thickness for the following five years before having to comply with the 30-micron standard.

The agreement states that printing will only be allowed on 25% of the surface area of plastic bags if the ink is not environmentally friendly. In situations where the ink is acceptable, this area can be increased to 50%. The department has a toll-free line to deal with queries about plastic bags.

The plastic bags agreement and supporting regulations have dramatically decreased the environmental impact of this highly visible waste stream, with a 50% reduction in the consumption of plastic bags since the introduction of the regulations.

As part of the implementation of the plastic bag regulations, Buyisa-e-Bag, a non-profit company was set up to promote waste minimisation and awareness initiatives in the plastics industry. The company is expected to expand collector networks and to create jobs, as well as to kick-start rural collection SMMEs and create additional capacity in NGOs.

Work is in progress to follow this success with targeted and customised agreements in respect of other problem waste streams, including tyres and glass. The compliance and enforcement of the regulations have been assigned to the South African Bureau of Standards.

The Radioactive Waste Management Policy, which assures citizens that there is a nuclear waste-management plan and strategy, is being implemented, starting with the creation of the National Committee on Radioactive Waste Management.

Water-quality management

The Directorate: Water-Quality Management of the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry is responsible for the quality management of national water resources in South Africa.

Water-quality management involves maintaining water resources for use on a sustained basis, by achieving a balance between socio-economic development and environmental protection. From a regulatory point of view, water-quality management entails the ongoing process of planning, developing, implementing and administering water-

quality management policy; authorising water-uses that have, or potentially have, an impact on water quality; as well as the monitoring and auditing of the aforementioned.

The National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998), further enables the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry to manage water quality through source-directed and resource-directed measures. Source-directed measures include the issuing of licences to water users with a potential impact on the resource.

The Act requires that all significant water resources be classified in accordance with the prescribed classification system. (See Chapter 22: *Water affairs and forestry*.)

Air pollution

The National Environment Management: Air Quality Act, 2004 was promulgated in 2005. The Act, which repealed the Atmospheric Pollution Prevention Act, 1965 (Act 45 of 1965), gives effect to the integrated pollution and waste-management policy to ensure that all South Africans have access to clean air.

In 2007, as part of implementing the Air Quality Act, 2004, registration certificates issued in terms of the Atmospheric Pollution Prevention Act, 1965 were reviewed.

To this effect, it has prioritised the key sectors whose permits require review. These include the petrochemical sector (seven operations); primary steel manufacture (nine operations); primary aluminium production (two operations); ferro-alloy industries, specifically chromium, vanadium and manganese (ferro-silicon) production (27 to 30 operations); pulp and paper industries (nine operations); and coal-fired power stations (national grid) (20 operations).

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism has made significant strides in addressing air-pollution problems. In addition to the Durban Multipoint Plan for Air Quality Management, it has declared the Vaal Triangle air-shed as a priority area requiring urgent intervention by government and all stakeholders. It has established an air-quality monitoring system in the area, and six air-quality monitoring stations have been procured and installed to generate data. In addition, it has gazetted its intention to declare the Highveld the second national priority area in the near future.

Marine pollution, poaching and sustainability

South Africa has one of world's busiest shipping routes and has experienced many oil spills over the years. It is estimated that 80% of the world's tanker traffic passes South Africa's coast.

The department developed the National Contingency Plan for the Prevention and Combating of Pollution from Ships, in consultation with the South African Maritime Safety Authority and the Department of Transport. This includes disposing, recovering or stabilising the spilt oil and rehabilitating the environment.

The department successfully responded to several pollution incidents, which included, among other things, spills from the *Sea Elegance*, *Sealander Express*, *Cape Africa* and *BBC China*.

The department established the National Ballast Water-Management Task Group to develop measures aimed at regulating discharges of ballast water in South Africa's marine and coastal waters.

Sustainable Coastal Livelihoods Programme (SCLP)

The SCLP seeks alternative livelihood options for communities along the South African coast to minimise pressure on marine resources.

Subsistence fishing

The implementation of the Marine Living Resources Act, 1998 (Act 18 of 1998), has facilitated the allocation of formal rights to fishers in this sector for the first time.

It is an important part of the overall transformation of fisheries in South Africa. A primary goal is to allow subsistence fishers to obtain their food, or food security, through the harvesting of local resources. Consequently, the need to ensure that exploitation is sustainable is vital.

Identifying and working with fisher communities to promote orderly access has been emphasised. Implementation involves co-operation between all spheres of government and civil society.

Protecting South Africa's seas

To counter illegal activities along the 3 000-km coastline, as well as the country's 1 155 000-km² Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ), the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism has boosted its compliance unit with the appointment of more than 80 fishery-control officers (FCOs) and 100 honorary FCOs, after the implementation of the Honorary Fishery Control Officers Policy. The department has also taken delivery of four new environmental-

protection vessels as part of measures to protect marine and coastal resources.

Three of the four new protection vessels, *Lillian Ngoyi*, *Ruth First* and *Victoria Mxenge*, have been built to patrol up to the 200 nautical-mile limit from the shore. A fourth vessel, *Sarah Baartman*, patrols the most remote reaches of the EEZ and around the Prince Edward islands in the Southern Ocean. The vessels also conduct multilateral patrols in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) coastal states.

International co-operation

International alliances are essential for encouraging regional and international compliance with marine fisheries legislation.

South Africa has played a positive role in responding to international requests to help when dealing with alleged illegal, unreported and unregulated vessels. The request at the end of 2003, from Australia, to assist in the pursuit of the *Viarsa I* is the most prominent example of this kind. The vessel was alleged to have been involved with illegal harvesting of Patagonian toothfish in Australia before she fled to the high seas in the direction of South Africa.

Vessel monitoring

The department is making it obligatory for fishing vessels to have satellite technology on board so that it can monitor their movements. Five coastal nations in the SADC have taken the innovative step of linking their vessel-monitoring systems. South Africa, Namibia, Angola, Mozambique and Tanzania have signed an MoU that will allow them to share information about the movement of licensed boats along the Southern African coast.

Partnerships

To further counter illegal fishing and corruption, the department entered into partnerships with a broad spectrum of agencies, including national, provincial and local government, as well as NGOs.

Co-operation ensures that resources are used more effectively, resulting in a number of high-profile prosecutions and convictions.



In 2006/07, social-responsibility and poverty-relief programmes run by the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism created 13 887 job opportunities, exceeding the target of 12 500. The permanent job-creation target was also exceeded by almost 15%.

Other important partnerships have been forged with specialised units of the South African Police Service. In addition, SANParks and a number of provincial nature-conservation agencies conduct monitoring, control and surveillance activities within the MPAs.

Ecosystem Approach to Fisheries Management (EAFM)

In line with the Johannesburg Plan of Implementation, the department has begun to explore implementation of the EAFM.

The purpose of the EAFM is to plan, develop and manage fisheries in a manner that addresses the multiplicity of societal needs and desires, without jeopardising the options for future generations to benefit from the full range of goods and services (including fisheries and recreational opportunities) provided by marine ecosystems.

Good progress has been made through national and regional initiatives in implementing practical measures to mitigate the negative effects of fisheries on the ecosystem.

Transboundary research collaborations

The department has launched a project (as part of a regional initiative) to investigate the feasibility of an EAFM in the Benguela Current Large Marine Ecosystem (BCLME) region, by examining the existing issues, problems and needs related to EAFM, and developing different management options to achieve sustainable management of resources at an ecosystem level.

The BCLME Programme is a management-orientated programme aimed at boosting the infrastructure necessary to address cross-boundary problems associated with fishing, mining, oil exploration, coastal development, biodiversity and pollution.

Another programme implemented by the department is the scientific arm of BCLME, the Benguela Fisheries Interaction Training (Benefit) Programme.

Benefit is a joint initiative between South Africa, Namibia and Angola to address fisheries and other marine scientific investigations of important living-marine resources and their interactions with the environment. Training staff to undertake research and to achieve the levels of expertise necessary to

provide advice to fisheries' management is also an important objective of Benefit.

Both the BCLME and the Benefit programmes are seen as New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) initiatives, and are supported by SADC as regional projects.

West Indian Ocean Land-Based Activities Project (WIO-LaB)

WIO-LaB was launched at Robben Island on 5 November 2004. The WIO-LaB Project deals with the protection, prevention and management of marine pollution from land-based activities.

The commitment given to this project by the main donors, the United Nations Environmental Programme (UNEP) and the GEF, resulted in the appointment of a regional project manager in February 2000.

The department is assessing the effect that litter from rivers has on the oceans, is raising awareness of and educating communities about the importance of protecting the marine environment from pollution resulting from land-based activities, and has created task teams to deal with municipal water and the physical alteration and destruction of habitats.

National Policy for Seals and Seabirds

The National Policy for Seals and Seabirds in South Africa, and the National Plan of Action for Seabirds, aimed at reducing the incidental catch of seabirds in longline fisheries, have been finalised.

This follows growing concern over the numbers of seabirds, especially albatrosses, being killed by longline vessels in southern Africa. The plan sets out the required mitigation measures to reduce mortality of seabirds to below an interim target level of 0,05 birds/thousand hooks by South Africa's longline fisheries for hake, tuna, swordfish, Patagonian toothfish and sharks.

South Africa ratified the Agreement on the Conservation of Albatrosses and Petrels (ACAP) in November 2003. It is a multilateral agreement that seeks to conserve albatrosses and petrels by co-ordinating international activity to mitigate known threats to albatross and petrel populations. South Africa played a key role in negotiating the ACAP, and is home to many important populations of these

seabirds, including those on the sub-Antarctic Prince Edward islands.

Research observer scheme

The department introduced a formal research observer scheme for the following fisheries: deep sea hake trawl; inshore hake trawl; hake longline; pelagic purse seine; South Coast rock lobster; KwaZulu-Natal prawn trawl; large pelagics (experimental); horse mackerel midwater trawl; and deep sea experimental fisheries. This observer scheme provides valuable research data on, among other things, these fisheries' influence on the ecosystem.

Chemicals

Although relatively small by international standards, the chemical industry is a significant player in the South African economy, contributing about 5% to GDP and providing employment to about 200 000 people. The industry produces 1 301 t of primary and secondary process chemicals annually, making it the largest of its kind in Africa.

Several steps have been taken to align current legislation with the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, as well as with global chemicals management:

- A special unit has been set up in the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism to implement a system aimed at preventing major industrial accidents, as well as systems for emergency preparedness and response.
- The minister has initiated an integrated safety, health and environment approach for the management of chemicals in South Africa. This government-level initiative, funded by the UN Institute for Training and Research, will involve a multistakeholder forum, including labour representatives, aimed at integrating legislation.

South Africa has signed the Stockholm Convention on Persistent Organic Pollutants and the Rotterdam Convention on Prior Informed Consent Procedure for Certain Hazardous Chemicals and Pesticides in International Trade. It also played a part in the process of developing guidelines for the implementation of the Globally Harmonised System of Classification and Labelling of Chemicals.

At the Reduce, Reuse and Recycle Ministerial Conference in 2005, South Africa agreed to manage waste in a holistic manner, and became one of seven countries to sign a grant agreement on the African Stockpile Programme (ASP) with the World Bank, worth US\$1,7 million. The country is also developing guidelines for the implementation of the Globally Harmonised System of Classification

and Labelling of Chemicals. The funding was for the disposal of obsolete pesticides as part of the ASP. The department has begun implementing this programme throughout the country. Further work on training workers to handle chemicals was expected to be undertaken in 2007. By mid-2007, a pilot project for the collection of all obsolete pesticides possessed by farmers in Limpopo had begun. This pilot project is expected to serve as a benchmark for the roll-out of projects in other provinces.

Recycling

Since 1993, Collect-a-Can has been driving the recovery of used beer and cold drink cans in Southern Africa. About 750 000 t of used beverage cans have since been recovered for recycling. Collectors have earned R375 million in the process and the living environment has improved. The recovery rate of cans has increased from a mere 18% in 1993 to 67,5% in 2006 – placing southern Africa among the top can recyclers in the world. Collect-a-Can's unique schools competition has been running uninterrupted since 1993, contributing to continued environmental education. The efforts of Collect-a-Can have motivated many individuals, companies, NGOs and other organisations to become more environmentally conscious.

Environmental injustices

The negative effect of asbestos on the environment and other environmental-injustice issues are a priority for the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism. Efforts being undertaken by the South African Government to deal with the asbestos problem include:

- eradicating mine-dumps
- developing occupational health and safety regulations on asbestos
- developing safety standards and establishing a single compensation office
- formulating a code of best practice for the maintenance, demolition and disposal of asbestos-containing material
- abolishing the use of asbestos in road construction
- gradually phasing out asbestos-use in housing.



In September 2007, a new state-of-the-art marine research vessel, the *Ellen Khuzwayo*, was officially named. The vessel will play a key role in gathering scientific research on inshore marine resources and the marine environment.

In September 2007, proposed regulations for the prohibition of the use, manufacturing, import and export of asbestos were published for comment.

International co-operation

The department promotes South Africa's interests by participating in a number of international commissions, such as the International Commission for the Conservation of Atlantic Tunas, the Commission for the Conservation of Antarctic Marine Living Resources, and the International Whaling Commission.

The following important instruments have been acceded to, or ratified:

- Agreement for the Implementation of the Provisions of the UN Convention on the Law of the Sea on 10 December 1982 relating to the Conservation and Management of Straddling Fish Stocks and Highly Migratory Fish Stocks (Straddling Stocks Agreement)
- ACAP
- Convention for the Protection, Management and Development of the Marine and Coastal Environment of the East African Region and Related Protocols (Nairobi Convention)
- Convention for Co-operation in the Protection and Development of the Marine and Coastal Environment of the West and Central African Region and Related Protocol (Abidjan Convention)
- SADC Protocol on Fisheries.

South Africa, as the vice-chair for both the Abidjan and Nairobi conventions, accepted UNEP's request to host a joint meeting for these conventions in September 2007.

The ultimate goal of this joint meeting was to develop a long-term vision for coastal and marine management in sub-saharan Africa, and promote programmes that strengthen the implementation of these conventions.

One of the key programmes in this regard is the WIO-Lab, which South Africa will continue to implement in coastal areas to combat pollution from land-based activities.

United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change

South Africa ratified the UNFCCC in 1997. The convention is a global commitment to take

collective responsibility for climate change, and is a mandate for action to address the problem.

The convention was signed at the Rio Earth Summit in 1992 by heads of state and other senior representatives from 154 countries (and the European Community), and came into effect on 21 March 1994.

Since mid-1998, some 175 states have ratified or acceded to the convention.

The objective of the convention is to stabilise GHG concentrations in the atmosphere at a level that will not have an adverse effect on the climate.

The convention aims to control this level over a period of time, to:

- allow ecosystems to adapt naturally to climate change
- ensure that food production is not threatened
- enable economic development to proceed in a sustainable manner.

All countries that have ratified the convention are required to:

- develop, update and publish national inventories of anthropogenic emissions by sources, and removals by sinks of GHG (the GHG excludes those listed in the Montreal Protocol)
- formulate, implement and update national and regional programmes containing measures to mitigate climate change
- promote and co-operate in the development and transfer of technology that controls, reduces or prevents anthropogenic emissions of GHG
- promote sustainable management, conservation and enhancement of sinks and reservoirs of GHG
- co-operate in preparing for the adaptation to the impact of climate change
- take climate-change considerations into account where feasible, in relevant social, economic and environmental policies and actions, to minimise the adverse effects on the economy, on public health and on the quality of the environment
- promote and co-operate in the timeous and transparent exchange of information, including scientific, technological, socio-economic and legal information and research
- promote and co-operate in education, training and public awareness
- report to the Conference of the Parties.

Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species

Cites, also known as the Washington Convention, was negotiated in 1973 when it was realised that international trade in wildlife and wildlife products could lead to the overexploitation of certain species, thereby threatening them with extinction.

Cites came into force in South Africa on 13 October 1975. South Africa, together with the other 149 member countries, acts by regulating and monitoring international trade in species which are, or may be, affected by this trade.

Montreal Protocol

South Africa, as a signatory to the Montreal Protocol, has a national obligation to safeguard the ozone layer from depletion. South Africa has phased out chlorofluorocarbons (CFCs), halons, methyl chloroform and carbon tetrachloride - making it the only developing country in the world that has achieved so much in line with the phase-out schedule for developed countries. Although South Africa is classified as a developing country, its consumption of these substances is equal to that of some developed countries.

To demonstrate the country's commitment towards the phasing out of ozone-depleting substances (ODS), the following control measures constitute the overall position of South Africa on the Montreal Protocol:

- working groups were constituted to assist government in implementing the protocol
- regulated ODS can only be imported or exported after applying for an import/export permit through the Department of Trade and Industry under the Import and Export Control Act, 1963 (Act 45 of 1963)
- ODS can only be imported after an environmental levy of R5 per kg of CFC has been paid
- information is disseminated to interested and affected parties
- Africa network meetings, as arranged by the UNEP, are attended, where views, experiences and problems are shared to improve co-operation within the region and as per Nepad requirements.

Obligations include:

- ensuring that South Africa, as a party to the protocol, protects human health and the environment against harm from human activities

that modify or are likely to modify the ozone layer

- ensuring the protection of the ozone layer by taking precautionary measures to equitably control total global emissions of substances that deplete the ozone layer, with the ultimate objective of totally eliminating them
- reporting and sending to the Ozone Secretariat data on production, imports, exports and consumption of regulated ODS as collected from dealers and relevant departments.

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism has embarked on a national project to establish methyl bromide consumption trends, and a database of suitable, feasible and economically viable alternatives to methyl bromide.

This document will form the basis for an intensive research/evaluation project to phase out, in the short term, 20% of methyl bromide usage, mainly in the agricultural sector. As of 1 January 2005, all developing countries were to have reduce their respective methyl bromide consumption by 20%, as per the phase-out timetable.

Private-sector involvement

Numerous private bodies are involved in conservation activities. There are more than 400 organisations in the country concentrating on conservation, wildlife and the general environment, as well as more than 30 botanical and horticultural organisations.

Among these are:

- BirdLife South Africa
- Botanical Society of South Africa
- Centre for Rehabilitation of Wildlife
- Conservation International
- Delta Environmental Centre
- Dolphin Action Protection Group
- EcoLink
- Endangered Wildlife Trust
- Green Trust
- Keep South Africa Beautiful
- National Conservancy Association of South Africa
- Peace Parks Foundation
- South African National Foundation for the Conservation of Coastal Birds
- Trees and Food for Africa
- Wildlife and Environment Society of South Africa
- WWF-SA.

Acknowledgements

BuaNews

Beeld

Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism

Estimates of National Expenditure 2007, published by National Treasury

National Zoological Gardens of South Africa

South African National Biodiversity Institute

South African National Parks

www.southafrica.info

www.collectacan.co.za

www.gov.za

Suggested reading

Hauf, T. *Essence of a Land: South African and its World Heritage Sites*. Pretoria: Green Vision Foundation, 2006.

Hinz, M. *Without Chiefs There Would Be No Game: Customary Law and Nature Conservation*. Windhoek: Out of Africa Publishers, 2003.

Hugo, M.L. *Environmental Management: An Ecological Guide to Sustainable Living in South Africa*. Pretoria: Ecoplan, 2004.

Joubert, L. *Scorched: South Africa's Changing Climate*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2006.

Karoo Veld: Ecology and Management, edited by K Esler *et al.* Pretoria: Briza, 2006.

Le Grange, M. *The Capture, Care and Management of Wildlife*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2006.

Spence, C. ed. *Ten Days in Johannesburg: A Negotiation of Hope*. Pretoria: Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, and the United Nations Development Programme, 2004.

Van Wyk, B and Gericke, N. *People's Plants: A Guide to Useful Plants of Southern Africa*. Pretoria: Briza, 1999.

Weinberg, P. ed. and photographer. *Once We Were Hunters: A Journey with Indigenous People*. Cape Town: David Philip, 2000.



SA YEARBOOK 2007/08 | FINANCE



JSE Market									
Index	Value	Change	% CHG	High	Low	Open	Close	Volume	Value
FTSE 100	10,000	+100	+1.00%	10,100	9,900	10,000	10,000	10,000	10,000
ANGLO PLATINUM	420,000	+10,000	+2.40%	430,000	410,000	420,000	420,000	10,000	4,200,000
ANGLO AMER PL	131,200	+1,200	+0.90%	132,400	130,000	131,200	131,200	10,000	1,312,000
HARMONY GOLD	80,000	+1,000	+1.25%	81,000	79,000	80,000	80,000	10,000	800,000
INVESTEC PLC	34,000	+1,000	+2.94%	35,000	33,000	34,000	34,000	10,000	340,000
INVESTEC LTD	70,000	+1,000	+1.43%	71,000	69,000	70,000	70,000	10,000	700,000

National Treasury aims to promote economic development, good governance, social progress and rising living standards through accountable, economic, efficient, equitable and sustainable public finances.

In support of government's Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA), National Treasury's work on fiscal policy and budget reform focuses on strengthening infrastructure investment and maintenance, broadening participation in the economy and improving the quality of social services.

Improved budget planning, better documentation and greater transparency in public finances continue to be key priorities. National Treasury is expanding its capacity to provide technical support, particularly for infrastructure planning and project management.

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, lays down a framework for the division of responsibilities between national, provincial and local government. It prescribes an equitable division of revenue between the spheres of government, taking into account their respective functions. It also creates an independent auditor-general (AG) and an independent central bank, and sets out the principles governing financial accountability to Parliament, as well as the annual budget process.

Planning and budgeting challenges associated with the 2010 FIFA World Cup™ are being addressed through a dedicated unit, working closely with the Organising Committee and the Deputy Minister of Finance. Spending on stadium construction and transport systems for the 2010 World Cup will occur during the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period.

Fiscal policy framework

The Minister of Finance, Mr Trevor Manuel, presented the national Budget for 2007/08 in February 2007.

Spending changes for the next three years included:

- an additional R13,3 billion for the 2010 World Cup, bringing the total contribution from national government to R17,4 billion – R8,4 billion for stadiums and R9 billion for transport infrastructure
- the provincial equitable share was increased by R24,6 billion to improve the quality of and access to health, school education, welfare and economic services

- an additional R5 billion to the local government equitable share provides further support to municipalities for the delivery of free basic services
- an additional R4,6 billion for teacher bursaries and curriculum development and an increase in higher-education subsidies
- R11,6 billion for housing and community development
- R3,7 billion for the HIV and AIDS and STI Strategic Plan for South Africa and modernising hospitals and health facilities
- R2,4 billion for industrial development, science and technology
- R6,8 billion for justice and crime prevention, and improved access to justice services
- R4,7 billion for international relations and defence.

The main tax proposals included:

- net tax relief of R12,4 billion, replacing the secondary tax on companies with a dividend tax, and reducing the rate from 12,5% to 10%
- personal income tax relief for individuals amounting to R8,4 billion
- abolishing the tax on retirement funds
- reducing the withholding of tax on lump-sum pension and providend fund payments to zero for persons earning below R43 000 per year
- increases in excise duties on tobacco products and alcoholic beverages.

Debt management

Twelve years of prudent macroeconomic policy have contributed to a robust economy capable of both sustaining and accelerating the growth trajectory. The uniqueness of South Africa's economic landscape is reflected in the fact that government is increasing capital and socio-economic expenditure, even as it continues to enjoy a positive fiscal balance, and is reducing the amount of money it needs to borrow. As a result, government's net loan debt as a percentage of gross domestic product (GDP) decreased, from 48,1% in 1996/97 to 27,1% in 2006/07.

South Africa's public finances do not centre on servicing debt, but on the essential pillars of human development – poverty reduction, health, education and job creation. Interest costs measured as a

percentage of revenue and GDP have fallen to historically low levels, as a result of a favourable interest-rate outlook and lower debt stock. A decade ago, government spent 18 cent of every rand on servicing debt. This decreased to 11 cent in 2007, and by 2009 the figure is expected to be around eight cent. Consequently, the debt burden on future generations continues to decline, releasing additional resources for economic development and poverty relief.

Government's debt-management strategy seeks to enhance liquidity in an environment of declining borrowing requirements. During 2007/08, liquidity was expected to be enhanced through continued issuance in existing benchmark bonds and the further diversification of the debt portfolio, by issuing a new inflation-linked bond and inflation-linked retail bonds. The foreign-debt-management strategy will focus on active debt management.

To reduce external vulnerability, government continues to work with the South African Reserve Bank (SARB) to improve the level of official reserves. Financial stability has contributed to the cost of capital remaining at historically low levels, and the sovereign risk premium continues to fall. As a result, the country's international credit ratings are improving, enabling government to borrow at more competitive rates in the global markets.

In December 2006, Rating and Investment Information of Japan upgraded South Africa's long-term sovereign debt credit rating from BBB+ to A-. Moody's Investors Service, Standard and Poor's and Fitch Ratings reaffirmed the country's BBB+ credit rating for 2006.

Government's initiatives to improve the financial performance and corporate governance of state-owned enterprises (SOEs) are paying off through increased infrastructure investment, contributing to further economic development. The major public entities plan to invest about R152 billion in infrastructure development over the three-year expenditure period. A lower borrowing requirement reduces government debt issuance in the market, providing the opportunity for SOEs and other companies to finance their operations at lower cost.

Risk management continues to focus on government-wide risk management, which includes identifying and quantifying risks to the fiscus.

Fitch Ratings has revised the outlook on South Africa's sovereign ratings from stable to positive, attributing the change to improved growth performance, increased investments and sound public finances.

South Africa's long- and short-term foreign currency issuer default ratings (IDRs) were affirmed at BBB+ and F3 respectively. The country's long-term local currency IDR was affirmed at A, as was the country ceiling.

Increased government savings and the use of fiscal surpluses to increase reserves have also reduced South Africa's external vulnerability.

South Africa's growth rate of 5% was sustained between 2004 and 2006 by strong consumer demand, while more recently, acceleration of capital investment reflected a massive infrastructure investment by the country's public corporations – both as part of the Government's general infrastructure programme and for infrastructure related to hosting the 2010 World Cup.

The agency said it expected consumer demand to remain firm despite rising interest rates, thanks to structural changes in the economy and a rise in employment and real income.

Fitch expected the country's growth rate to remain close to 5% in 2007 and predicted that potential growth would increase in the medium term. The agency also expected South Africa's current account deficit to remain between 6% and 7% of GDP.

Legislation

National Treasury tables a significant amount of legislation in Parliament annually. Legislation passed in 2006/07 included the:

- Appropriation Act, 2006 (Act 7 of 2006)
- Small Business Tax Amnesty and Amendment of Taxation Laws Act, 2006 (Act 9 of 2006)
- Second Small Business Tax Amnesty and Amendment of Taxation Laws Act, 2006 (Act 10 of 2006)
- Adjustments Appropriation Act, 2006 (Act 14 of 2006)
- Revenue Laws Amendment Act, 2006 (Act 20 of 2006)
- Revenue Laws Second Amendment Act, 2006 (Act 21 of 2006)
- Division of Revenue Act, 2007 (Act 1 of 2007)
- Finance Act, 2007 (Act 2 of 2007).

Legislation expected to be tabled in 2007/08 included the:

- Appropriation Bill
- Taxation Laws Amendment Bill
- Taxation Laws Second Amendment Bill
- Adjustments Appropriation Bill
- Revenue Laws Amendment Bill
- Second Revenue Laws Amendment Bill

Consolidated national, provincial and social-security fund expenditure: Functional classification¹

	2006/07		2007/08		2008/09	
	Revised estimate	% of total	Budget estimate	% of total	Budget estimate	% of total
General government services and unallocable expenditure²	29 077,3	6,6%	34 796,1	6,9	38 076,9	6,8
Protection services:	77 638,3	17,6	86 993,4	17,3	94 202,8	16,9
Defence and intelligence	26 561,5	6,0	29 054,0	5,8	31 271,3	5,6
Police	34 256,7	7,8	37 969,7	7,6	41 309,7	7,4
Prisons	9 525,5	2,2	11 086,5	2,2	11 742,0	2,1
Justice	7 294,7	1,7	8 883,3	1,8	9 879,7	1,8
Social services:	264 925,5	59,9	296 630,8	59,0	331 833,2	59,8
Education	94 979,1	21,5	104 672,0	20,8	117 176,7	21,0
Health	54 527,2	12,3	60 264,2	12,0	66 066,5	11,8
Social security and welfare	81 359,2	18,4	89 509,3	17,8	98 420,4	17,6
Housing	9 088,0	2,1	11 912,2	2,4	14 672,0	2,6
Community development ³	24 972,0	5,6	30 273,0	6,0	35 497,6	6,4
Economic services:	70 344,9	15,9	84 029,1	16,7	93 958,0	16,8
Water schemes and related services	6 806,6	1,5	9 066,4	1,8	10 632,6	1,9
Fuel and energy	3 909,0	0,9	2 996,4	0,6	3 418,7	0,6
Agriculture, forestry and fishing	10 240,6	2,3	12 621,9	2,5	13 568,6	2,4
Mining, manufacturing and construction	3 027,9	0,7	3 504,1	0,7	2 460,3	0,4
Transport and communications	28 524,1	6,5	34 530,9	6,9	40 173,5	7,2
Other economic services ⁴	17 836,7	4,0	21 309,4	4,2	23 704,4	4,2
Subtotal:						
Votes and statutory amounts	441 986,0	100,0	502 449,5	100,0	558 071,0	100,0
Plus contingency reserves	—	—	3 000,0	—	8 000,0	—
Total non-interest expenditure	441 986,0	—	505 449,5	—	566 071,0	—
Interest	52 178,0	—	52 916,0	—	52 967,0	—
Total consolidated expenditure	494 164,0	—	558 365,5	—	619 038,0	—

1) These figures were estimated by National Treasury and may differ from data published by Statistics South Africa. The numbers in this table are not strictly comparable to those published in previous years, due to the allocation of some of the unallocable expenditure for previous years. Data for the previous years have been adjusted accordingly.

2) Mainly general administration, cost of raising loans and allocable capital expenditure.

3) Including cultural, recreational and sport services.

4) Including tourism, labour and multipurpose projects.

Source: 2007 Budget Review

- Municipal Fiscal Powers and Functions Bill
- Pension Funds Amendment Bill
- Banks Amendment Bill
- Diamonds Export Levy Bill
- General Finance Laws Amendment Bill
- Mineral and Petroleum Royalty Bill
- Western Cape Fuel Levy Bill
- Co-operative Banks Bill
- Financial Intelligence Centre (FIC) Amendment Bill
- Financial Institutions Amendment Bill.

A number of other pieces of draft legislation were under consideration and expected to be tabled in the short and medium term, pending the outcome of policy, drafting and consultation processes. These included the:

- Public Finance Management Amendment Bill, which will amend the Public Finance Management Act (PFMA), 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), to address, among other things:
 - practical difficulties encountered in implementing the PFMA, 1999
 - the incorporation of recent and intended budget-reform initiatives
 - improved financial regulation of public entities
 - the Direct Charges Bill, which will authorise certain withdrawals and payments from the National Revenue Fund as direct charges
- Regulation of Tax Practitioners Bill.

Public Finance Management Act, 1999

Transforming public-sector financial management is one of National Treasury's key objectives.

To this end, National Treasury has been implementing the PFMA, 1999 since 1 April 2000.

Since then, there have been measurable improvements in financial management in both the national and provincial spheres of government, which include, among other things:

- an improved linkage between planning and budgeting, whereby departments are required to

compile and table strategic plans that are consistent with their budget envelope

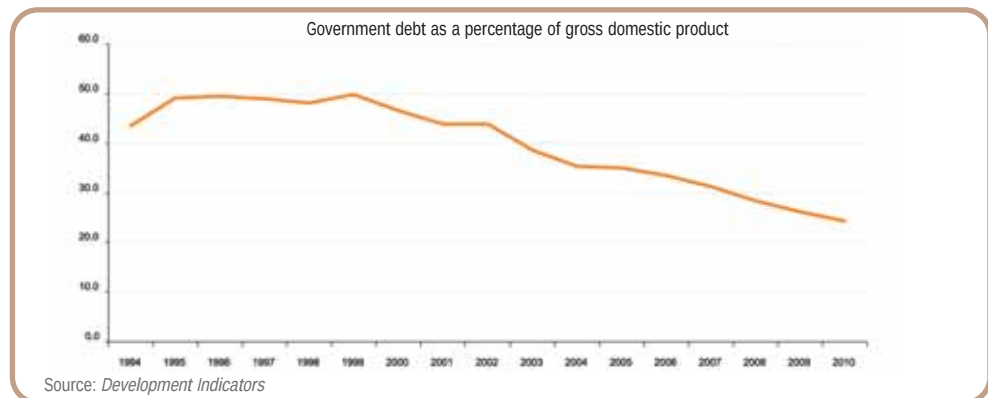
- strategic plans and budget documentation containing improved information on measurable objectives expressed in terms of quantity, quality and timeliness
- departments submitting monthly expenditure reports on actual expenditure incurred, and on projected expenditure for the remainder of the financial year
- risk-management processes, which are now being implemented by institutions
- establishing internal-audit functions and audit committees in all departments
- setting accounting standards in accordance with best accounting practices, both locally and internationally
- finalising and submitting financial statements to the AG within two months of the end of the financial year
- tabling annual reports in the legislature within six months of the end of the financial year.

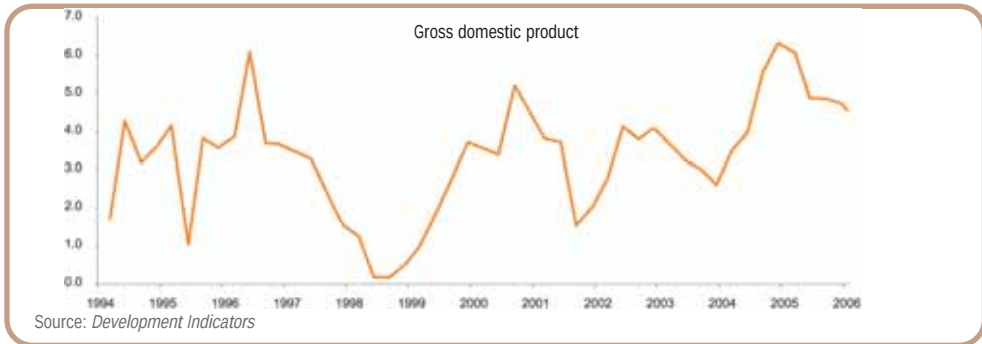
To further improve the financial-management skills of public-sector finance practitioners, the South African Management Development Institute has, in association with the National Treasury, developed the Financial Management Training Strategy.

Municipal Finance Management Act (MFMA), 2003 (Act 56 of 2003)

The MFMA, 2003 became effective on 1 July 2004. The Act aims to modernise budget and financial management by placing local-government finances on a sustainable footing to maximise capacity in municipalities to deliver services to all residents, customers, users and investors.

It also aims to implement a sound financial-governance framework, by clarifying and separating the roles and responsibilities of the





mayor, executive and non-executive councillors, and officials.

The objective of the Act is to secure sound and sustainable management of the fiscal and financial affairs of municipalities and municipal entities by establishing norms, standards and other requirements for:

- ensuring transparency, accountability and appropriate lines of responsibility in the fiscal and financial affairs of municipalities and municipal entities
- managing their revenues, expenditures, assets and liabilities, and handling their financial dealings
- budgetary and financial-planning processes and co-ordinating processes of organs of state
- borrowing
- handling financial problems and other financial matters in municipalities.

The Act applies to all municipalities and municipal entities, and national and provincial organs of state, to the extent of their financial dealings with municipalities.

Financial Sector Charter

The Financial Sector Charter was signed in November 2003, signalling a key milestone in the transformation of the financial sector.

The charter seeks to ensure the broad-based transformation of the sector, based on the following elements: human-resource development (HRD), procurement and enterprise development, access to financial services, empowerment financing, ownership, control and corporate social investment.

National Treasury Financial expenditure

National Treasury plays a pivotal role in managing government expenditure.

It determines financial-management norms and standards, and sets reporting policy that guides the AG's performance. It also assists Parliament, through the Standing Committee on Public Accounts (Scopa), with its recommendations and the formulation of corrective actions. National Treasury closely monitors the performance of state departments and is obliged to report any deviations to the AG.

National Treasury furthermore maintains transparent and fair bidding processes, as well as accounting, logistic and personnel systems. It sets and maintains standards and norms for treasury and logistics, acts as a banker for national departments, and oversees logistical control of stocks and assets.

Exchange-control reforms

Further reforms were announced in the February 2007 Budget Speech. Two of the reforms dealt with simplifying customer foreign-currency accounts and lowering the outward foreign direct investment (FDI) threshold for investments by South African entities outside of Africa, from controlling interest to at least 25%.

The JSE Securities Exchange Limited (JSE) was also, for the first time, given approval to establish a rand-currency futures market. A new framework, regulating authorised dealers in foreign exchange with limited authority, was approved by the Minister of Finance in 2007.

Amnesty Unit

A final audit in late 2006 confirmed that the Amnesty Unit had adjudicated all of the 42 679 applications it received since the announcement of the tax amnesty nearly three years earlier. Of this number, 42 178 applications were approved. Of the total received applications (43 135, including duplicates), 937 applications were withdrawn, deleted or voided, with 20 applications declined. The amnesty process raised at least R2,9 billion in levies.

The sanitisation of more than 41 000 applications, as required by law, was completed by May 2006. These files are in the safe custody of the National Treasury, the SARB and the South African Revenue Service (Sars), as per legislative requirements.

Retirement fund reform

On 23 February 2007, the Minister of Finance released a document titled *Social Security and Pension Reform: A Second Discussion Paper*. The document contains high-level proposals for the reform of the social-security system, including the establishment of a mandatory earnings-related contribution to a national fund. This attempts to bridge the gap between the pay-as-you-go social assistance and grant system, and tax-incentivised retirement savings. For very low-income earners, the introduction of a wage subsidy will seek to offset the social-security contribution for these workers, while simultaneously stimulating employment.

An inter-ministerial committee has been established, chaired by the Minister of Finance, which is tasked with further developing details around the proposals contained in the document.

Treasury norms and standards

In terms of Section 216(1)(c) of the Constitution, National Treasury must prescribe measures to ensure both transparency and expenditure control in each sphere of government, by introducing uniform treasury norms and standards. These treasury norms and standards aim at deregulating financial controls, by granting accounting officers of spending agencies more autonomy in financial decision-making within the ambits of impending financial legislation.

Budget evaluation

National Treasury plays an important role in supporting the economic policy to which government has committed itself. It determines the

macrolimit on expenditure, which is then matched with requests from departments, in line with the affordability and sustainability of services.

Based on this limit, all national departments are requested to submit budget proposals annually to National Treasury for the following financial year.

Early Warning System

The Early Warning System was first established in 1997. Any likely under- or overexpenditure is brought to the attention of the Cabinet, so that the relevant minister can ensure that appropriate action is taken.

Introducing the system has also assisted in the monthly monitoring of provincial departments' expenditure trends, by having provincial treasuries report to National Treasury in a prescribed format. The information derived from early warning reports is used for advising the Budget Council and the Cabinet. The Minister of Finance is also informed of the early warning report results.

Financial policies, systems and skills development

National Treasury is responsible for financial-management systems and the financial training of government officials.

It delivers services that support the following areas:

- financial systems, which consist of the Personnel and Salary System, Logistical Information System, Financial Management System, Basic Accounting System and Management Information System
- banking services and financial reporting for government
- developing financial management in national and provincial governments.

Procurement

The preferential procurement regulations give substance to the content of the Preferential Procurement Policy Framework Act, 2000 (Act 5 of 2000). This Act and its regulations apply to all three spheres of government.

Bids are evaluated according to a preference point system. A bidder can score a maximum of 80 or 90 points for price, while 10 to 20 points can be scored for contracting or subcontracting historically disadvantaged individuals (HDIs), and promoting or achieving specified Reconstruction and Development Programme (RDP) goals. A contract is awarded to the bidder who scores the highest total number of points.

The implementation of the regulations enhances the involvement of HDIs in the public bidding system and contributes to achieving RDP goals, including the promotion of small and medium enterprises (SMEs).

The Supply-Chain Management Framework replaces outdated procurement and provisioning systems in government with an integrated supply-chain management system, and an international best-practice process for appointing consultants.

Financial Intelligence Centre

Government has adopted a strong stance on eradicating money laundering and financing terrorism, in keeping with United Nations (UN) conventions and international standards.

South Africa's system of combating money laundering and the financing of terrorism is based on the interaction of three separate laws. In 1998, the Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998 (Act 121 of 1998), was passed, which criminalised money laundering. This was followed by the FIC Act (FICA), 2001 (Act 38 of 2001), which enabled the establishment of the FIC, and imposed reporting and administrative obligations on financial and other institutions.

The Protection of Constitutional Democracy Against Terrorist and Related Activities Act, 2004 (Act 33 of 2004), provides for the reporting of terrorism-financing activities.

The FIC started functioning in February 2003 as an autonomous government agency reporting to the Minister of Finance.

The centre is mandated to:

- identify the proceeds of crime and the financing of terrorism
- formulate and lead the implementation of policy regarding money laundering and the financing of terrorism
- advise the Minister of Finance about issues aimed at anti-money laundering and combating the financing of terrorism (AML/CFT)
- monitor the compliance of accountable institutions and supervisory bodies regarding their AML/CFT obligations
- prevent and reduce money laundering and terrorist-financing activities
- meet and uphold the international obligations

and commitments required of the FIC and South Africa as a country.

The FICA, 2001 identifies a range of 19 different business sectors, which it defines as being accountable institutions and most vulnerable to abuse by criminals. These include banks, *bureaux de change*, life-insurance companies, stockbrokers, money remitters, casinos, lawyers, accountants, investment advisers, estate agents and motor dealers. These accountable institutions have certain reporting and administrative obligations, including record-keeping, appointing compliance officers and the training of staff.

The FIC analyses and stores reports made by the accountable institutions. It then makes disclosures or information packages available to law-enforcement agencies for investigation. It may also make this information available to similar bodies in other countries.

By May 2007, the centre had received in excess of 65 400 suspicious-transaction reports, of which 21 466 were made during 2006/07. In the first five months of 2007, the centre referred 549 reports of transactions totalling over R1 billion to law-enforcement agencies for investigation.

In 2002, South Africa joined the 14-member Eastern and Southern Africa AML Group. South Africa also became a member of the Financial Action Task Force, which is the international standards-setting body.

The FIC is a member of the Egmont Group of financial intelligence units, which facilitates the exchange of information, skills and technical assistance between financial intelligence units worldwide.

Financial and Fiscal Commission (FFC)

The FFC is a constitutional body established to give advice to Parliament, legislatures and organs of state on matters of intergovernmental finance. The commission, which came into operation in April 1994, is a statutory institution and permanent expert commission dealing with intergovernmental fiscal relations.

The FFC submits recommendations and advice to all spheres of government based on research and consultations on a range of intergovernmental fiscal issues.

The research includes:

- developing principles for intergovernmental fiscal relations, which are based on analysis of international best practice
- analysing local, provincial, and national government budgets to understand revenue and expenditure trends
- identifying and measuring factors influencing provincial and local revenues and expenditures; and assessing fiscal policy instruments, such as conditional grants, equitable share transfers and taxes.

Government is required by the Constitution and other legislation to consult with the FFC on issues such as:

- provincial and local government revenue sources
- provincial and municipal loans
- the fiscal implications of the assignment of functions from one sphere of government to another.

Budget Council

The Budget Council consists of the Minister of Finance and the nine provincial members of the executive committees responsible for finance, while the Budget Forum is the Budget Council extended to include representatives of organised local government. The mission of the two forums is to ensure that there is cohesion between national policy priorities, the division of nationally raised revenues, and planning and budgeting at provincial and local spheres of government.

The forums also allow the leadership of the three spheres of government to evaluate the performance of government on key national programmes, and where deemed necessary, to agree on support initiatives that will ensure the attainment of national goals.

Public Investment Corporation (PIC)

The PIC, a corporate body governed in terms of the PIC Act, 2004 (Act 23 of 2004), was officially launched in April 2005, before which it was known as the Public Investment Commissioner. The PIC Act, 2004, which replaces the Public Investment Commissioners Act, 1984 (Act 45 of 1984), formalises the PIC as a legal entity and enables it to operate as a modern, professional and world-class investment manager.

The PIC invests funds on behalf of the South African public sector. By mid-2007, there were 40 entities or clients whose funds were being managed by the PIC. Assets managed by the PIC grew to over R719,8 billion in March 2007.

The PIC concluded the agreement for the establishment of a joint venture to create one of the largest socially responsible investment funds, the Community Property Fund. It is effectively self-funded and produces its own annual report, which is tabled in Parliament. The PIC reports to the Minister of Finance.

The PIC, a state-owned institution that manages public servants' pension funds, was corporatised under legislation that came into effect in April 2005. After its corporatisation, the PIC embarked on a gradual process of withdrawing funds placed with external portfolio managers.

The State remains the sole shareholder of the PIC, which reports to Parliament's Scopa, and whose controlling board is appointed by the Minister of Finance.

The biggest contributors to the PIC's assets are public servants through the Government Employees Pension Fund (92,3%). Other contributions come from the Compensation Commission, Associated Institution Pension Fund, Unemployment Insurance Fund, Guardian Fund and the Political Office Bearer's Pension Fund.

The PIC funds Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) borrowers. Since 2006, the PIC has exhibited keen interest in property investment.

Macroeconomic strategy

The economy continued to expand at a robust pace of 4,9% in 2006, generating new jobs, broadening the consumer base and providing the impetus for rapid growth in investment. Economic growth is projected to average just over 5% a year over the next three years. In 2007, a somewhat weaker growth in the world economy and the interest rate increases of the past year were expected to result in a growth rate of 4,8%.

In 2004, government set out the objectives of halving poverty and unemployment by 2014. A growth rate exceeding 5% a year on average between 2004 and 2014 is necessary to achieve these targets. In February 2006, government introduced AsgiSA with the objectives of growing the economy and improving the labour-absorbing capacity of the economy, leading to shared growth.

The methodology employed involves identifying the "binding constraints" to achieving growth objectives. AsgiSA has identified the following binding constraints:

- the relative volatility and level of the currency
- the cost, efficiency and capacity of the national logistics system
- the shortage of suitably skilled labour amplified

by the cost effects on labour of apartheid spatial patterns

- barriers to entry, limits to competition and limited new investment opportunities
- the regulatory environment and the burden on small and medium businesses
- deficiencies in state organisation, capacity and leadership.

A number of decisive interventions aimed at addressing these constraints and at allowing government to achieve its objectives more effectively include:

- Macroeconomic issues, including reducing the volatility of the Rand, improved estimation of revenue collections in the budgeting process and improved expenditure management.
- The rapid increase in infrastructure spending to improve the availability and reliability of infrastructure and to reduce the cost of doing business.
- Sector-investment strategies (or industrial strategies) to promote private-sector investment. The focus will be on rapidly growing labour-intensive sectors and sectors with BEE opportunities such as business-process outsourcing, tourism and biofuels.
- Skills and education initiatives to alleviate the pressing shortage of skills, including initiatives to improve skills in areas such as Science, Mathematics, engineering, management and information technology (IT).
- Second-economy interventions to bridge the gap between the First and Second Economy, including increased participation and broader access to opportunities and education.
- Public-administration issues, including the reduction of costly institutional interventions.

Government is committed to achieving the objectives set out in AsgiSA. Higher and shared economic growth will allow South Africa to achieve its social objectives of reducing inequality and virtually eliminating poverty.

South African Revenue Service

In accordance with the Sars Act, 1997 (Act 34 of 1997), the revenue service is an administratively autonomous organ of state. It aims to provide a world-class, transparent and client-orientated

service, ensuring optimum and equitable revenue collection. Its main functions are to:

- collect and administer all national taxes, duties and levies
- collect revenue that may be imposed under any other legislation, as agreed upon between Sars and an organ of state or institution entitled to the revenue
- facilitate trade
- provide protection against the illegal importation and exportation of goods
- advise the Minister of Trade and Industry on matters concerning control over the import, export, manufacture, movement, and storage or use of certain goods.

Tax system

National Treasury is responsible for advising the Minister of Finance on tax-policy issues that arise in local, provincial and national government spheres. As part of this role, National Treasury must design tax instruments that can optimally fulfil their revenue-raising function, and are aligned to the goals of the Government's economic and social policy. National Treasury and Sars co-operate in compiling tax policies.

In 2001, South Africa's source-based income tax system was replaced with a residence-based system. Residents are now taxed (subject to certain exclusions) on their worldwide income, irrespective of where their income was earned. Foreign taxes are credited against South African tax payable on foreign income. Foreign income and taxes are translated into the South African monetary unit, the Rand.

International tax agreements for the avoidance of double taxation

International tax agreements are important for encouraging investment and trade flows between nations, by providing certainty about the tax framework. By reaching agreement on the allocation of taxing rights between residence and source countries of international investors, double-taxation agreements provide a solid platform for growth in international trade and investment. South Africa has tax agreements with a wide range of countries.

Sources of revenue

Income tax

Income tax is government's main source of income and is levied in terms of the Income Tax Act, 1962 (Act 58 of 1962).

In South Africa, income tax is levied on South African residents' worldwide income, with appropriate relief to avoid double taxation. Non-residents are taxed on their income from a South African source. Tax is levied on taxable income, which, in essence, consists of gross income less allowable deductions as per the Act.

The income threshold below which no tax is payable by individuals under 65 years was raised to R43 000 for the tax year beginning March 2007, and for taxpayers over the age of 65 to R69 000 a year. The maximum marginal rate of tax remains at 40%, while the threshold was raised from R400 000 to R450 000.

The domestic interest and dividend exemption for taxpayers under the age of 65 was raised from R16 500 to R18 000. For senior citizens, the threshold increased from R24 500 to R26 000. The proportion of the exemption applicable to foreign-interest income and dividends was raised from R2 500 to R 3 000.

A revised tax regime for medical-scheme contributions and medical expenses was introduced in the 2005 Budget. It had the effect of raising the tax benefit for middle- and lower-income earners, while restricting the tax allowance for more expensive medical schemes.

Taxpayers under 65 are not taxed on, or may deduct, contributions to medical schemes up to R530 for each of the first two persons covered under a medical scheme (taxpayer and one dependant), and R320 for each additional dependant. In addition, they can claim a deduction for medical-scheme contributions above the caps and any other medical expenses, to the extent that the total exceeds 7,5% of taxable income. Taxpayers under 65 may claim all qualifying medical expenses where the taxpayer or the taxpayer's spouse or child is a handicapped person. Taxpayers who are 65 years and older continue to enjoy a full deduction of all medical expenses. These changes took effect on 1 March 2007.

Income-tax returns are issued annually to registered taxpayers after the end of each year of assessment. The year of assessment for individuals covers a period of 12 months, which generally commences on 1 March of a specific year, and ends on the last day of February the following year. Companies are permitted to have a tax year ending

on a date that coincides with their financial year. Tax returns must be submitted to Sars within the specified period.

People who owe Sars tax are charged interest at a rate as published in the *Government Gazette* that is linked to the rate specified in accordance with the PFMA, 1999. Persons who derive income from sources other than remuneration, such as trade, profession or investments, and companies, are required to make two provisional tax payments during the course of the tax year and may opt for a third "topping-up" payment, six months after the end of the tax year.

Capital gains tax was introduced on 1 October 2001. It forms part of the income-tax system. Capital gains made upon the disposal of assets are included in taxable income.

Local governments levy rates on the value of fixed property to finance the cost of municipal services.

Value-added tax (VAT)

VAT is levied on the supply of all goods and services rendered by registered vendors throughout the business cycle. Effectively, VAT is levied on the value added by an enterprise.

Vendors levy and pay over the tax included in their prices, resulting in VAT being paid by the final consumer. VAT is also levied on the importation of goods and services into South Africa. It is levied at the standard rate of 14% but certain supplies are zero-rated or are exempt from VAT.

The prices of goods and services must be quoted or displayed on an inclusive basis, which means that VAT has to be included in prices on all products, price lists, advertisements and quotations.

Customs duty

South Africa is a signatory to the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu) Agreement, together with Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Swaziland (the BLNS countries).

The five member countries of Sacu apply the same customs and excise legislation, the same rates of customs and excise duties on imported and locally manufactured goods, and the same import duties on imported goods. The uniform application of tariffs and the standardisation of procedures simplify trade within the Sacu common-customs area.

Import duties, including anti-dumping and countervailing duties, are used as mechanisms to protect local industry.

The renegotiated Sacu Agreement is now in force and provides a new dispensation for calculating and affecting transfers based on customs, excise and a development component.

South Africa has entered into agreements on mutual administrative assistance with a wide range of customs administrations. These agreements cover all aspects of assistance, including the exchange of information, technical assistance, surveillance, investigations and visits by officials. Efforts continue to improve the effectiveness of custom control and trade facilitation.

Excise duty

Excise duty is levied on certain locally manufactured goods and their imported equivalents. This duty is levied as a specific duty on tobacco, liquor, and as an *ad valorem* duty on cosmetics, audio-visual equipment and motor cars.

Relief from excise duty is available where excisable products are exported. In addition, relief is also available for specific farming and forestry, and certain manufacturing activities.

Excise duties are imposed both as a means to generate revenue for the fiscus and to change consumer behaviour.

Transfer duty

Transfer duty is payable on the acquisition of property by individuals at progressive marginal rates between 0% and 8%. With effect from 1 March 2006, houses costing less than R500 000 attract no duty. A 5% rate applies at between R500 000 and R1 million, after which 8% applies. The 10% flat rate for companies and trusts was also reduced to 8%.

All transactions relating to a taxable supply of goods that are subject to VAT are exempt from transfer duty.

Estate duty

An estate consists of all property, including deemed property (e.g. life-insurance policies, payments from pension funds, etc.) of the deceased. The exempt threshold was increased to R3,5 million in 2007. The duty, at a rate of 20%, is calculated on the dutiable amount of the estate. Certain admissible deductions from the total value of the estate are allowed.

Stamp duty

Stamp duty is levied on instruments such as leases of immovable property and unlisted marketable securities at different rates. It is also payable on leases' fixed property at a fixed rate of 0,5% on the quantifiable amount of the lease. It is proposed that the stamp duties on short-term leases (less than five years) should be abolished.

Uncertificated securities tax (UST)

UST at a rate of 0,25% is payable for the issue of, and change in beneficial ownership in, any securities which are listed on the JSE. In the case of unlisted securities, stamp duty is levied at the same rate of 0,25%. UST on the issue of securities was eliminated from 1 January 2006.

Skills-development levy

A skills-development levy was introduced on 1 April 2000. This is a compulsory levy scheme for the funding of education and training. Sars administers the collection thereof. The rate, as from 1 August 2005, is 1% for employers with an annual payroll in excess of R500 000.

Company Name	Value 1	Value 2	Value 3	Value 4	Value 5
ANGLO AMER. PL.	139 250	4 700	1 000	10 100	10 100
ANGLO AMER. PL.	37 400	1 000	1 000	10 100	10 100
HARMONY GOLD	32 000	1 000	1 000	10 100	10 100
INVESTEC PLC	34 300	1 000	1 000	10 100	10 100
INVESTEC LTD	70 100	1 000	1 000	10 100	10 100
LIBERTY INTL. PL.	21 100	1 000	1 000	10 100	10 100

In 2007, the South African Revenue Service (Sars) launched a simpler income tax return and filing process for individual and business taxpayers.

Individuals now receive their returns by mid-July and have until 31 October to submit them, while companies receive returns in September and have six to 12 months after the end of their financial year to submit the returns. Previously, the deadline for the submission of completed tax returns was early July.

Sars now pays money electronically into taxpayers' bank accounts and no longer issues cheques, unless taxpayers request otherwise.

The changes are, among other things, intended to ensure improved efficiency and faster turnaround times of Sars' internal processes.

Some of the benefits of the new system include e-filing, which allows taxpayers to file their tax returns via the Internet.

The system also allows Sars to use new statistical methods to identify risks, provide automated risk-profiling and validation, and enhance the ability to identify errant taxpayers.

Air-passenger departure tax

A tax of R120 per fee-paying passenger departing on international flights, and R60 per passenger departing to BLNS countries is payable.

Organisational performance

Sars collected R497,197 billion in taxes during the 2006/07 financial year, exceeding its revised target of R489,7 billion.

Sars continues to implement improvements in revenue collection to benefit the South African people, by enabling the fiscus to fund government's social-delivery programmes.

E-Filing

E-Filing (www.efiling.gov.za) is a secure service, enabling taxpayers to submit their tax returns online. It removes the risks and inconvenience of manual tax returns. Not only can returns be submitted via the Internet, but users can also make secure tax payments online. There is also a facility to apply for tax directives, which can be obtained within 24 hours.

E-Filing in South Africa has been growing significantly since its inception, and has been delivering real benefits to both taxpayers and Sars.

Filing of Tax Returns Season

Filing Season is an extensive marketing and publicity venture to remind taxpayers of their responsibilities to submit their tax returns on time with the correct details.

The Taxpayer Education Campaign focuses on helping all eligible taxpayers to complete their tax returns correctly. The Filing Season Campaign has helped to increase the number of registered

taxpayers from 4,8 million in 2003 to almost seven million in 2007.

Gambling

The National Gambling Board (NGB) was established in terms of the National Gambling Act, 1996 (Act 33 of 1996), which was repealed on 1 November 2004 by the National Gambling Act, 2004 (Act 7 of 2004). The Act provides for oversight of matters relating to casinos, gambling, betting and wagering, and promotes uniform norms and standards in relation to gambling throughout South Africa.

The vision of the board is to be a world-class organisation, providing a national regulatory framework in the gambling industry. The mission is to ensure uniformity, harmonisation and integrity of the gambling industry in South Africa, by enforcing compliance with the National Gambling Act, 2004 and ensuring compliance with other relevant legislation, such as the FICA, 2001, PFMA, 1999 and provincial gambling acts.

The NGB achieves this by:

- creating and establishing uniform norms and standards
- creating and establishing uniform rules and regulations
- conducting oversight evaluations of the performance of provincial licensing authorities (PLAs)
- evaluating the issuance of national licences by licensing authorities
- evaluating the compliance monitoring of licensees by PLAs
- assisting PLAs in ensuring that unlicensed gambling activities are detected

Main Budget: revenue

R million	2006/07 Revised estimate	2007/08 Before tax proposals	% change
Taxes on income and profits	274 300,0	326 500,0	13,8
Taxes on payroll and workforce	5 850,0	6 500,0	11,1
Taxes on property	10 345,0	11 000,0	6,3
Domestic taxes on goods and services	174 667,0	196 865,0	14,1
Taxes on international trade and transactions	23 900,0	27 485,0	15,0
Stamp duties and fees	600,0	612,0	-63,0
Total tax revenue (gross)	489 662,0	568 962,0	13,7

Source: 2007 Budget Review

- monitoring socio-economic patterns of gambling activity
- conducting research on addictive or compulsive gambling and the socio-economic impact thereof.

Compliance

In December 2006, Cabinet approved the publication of the draft National Gambling Amendment Bill for broader consultation. The Bill established the legislative basis for gambling in South Africa. Owing to the borderless nature of interactive gambling, the board will provide licensing, monitoring and enforcement functions.

The Central Electronic Monitoring System was established in terms of the National Gambling Act, 2004 to:

- detect and monitor significant events associated with any gambling machines outside casinos, called limited-payout machines, which are made available for play
- analyse and report data in accordance with the prescribed requirements, as outlined in the service-level contract that the board had signed with the service-provider Zonke Monitoring Systems (Pty) Ltd.

The ongoing campaign against illegal gambling, spearheaded by the board, continues nationally with the collaboration and assistance of provinces.

In 2006/07, the NGB, as a supervisory body, conducted 33 compliance inspections at licensed casinos to ensure compliance with the FICA, 2001. The South African National Accreditation Standards (Sanas) ensures that all gambling laboratories that test gambling machines and devices are accredited to comply with the International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO)/IEC 17025 and ISO 9000, and technical competency in line with Sanas.

National gambling statistics

In an effort to provide comprehensive and user-friendly information about the gambling industry, the board developed the National Gambling Statistics Database, which focuses mainly on primary statistics such as turnover, gross gambling revenue (GGR) and gambling tax. PLAs are required to submit quarterly statistics to the board for analysis.

Based on the primary statistics received, the NGB then calculates the return-to-player percentage per gambling mode. The database comprises comparative statistics for the period 1 April 1999 to 31 March 2007. This information is vital for keeping the public and stakeholders informed of financial and operational gambling data in the country.

The results for 2006/07 continued to show a steady increase in gambling activities around the country. This is indicated mainly by the GGR, which increased by 18,6% as compared with 2005/06. In terms of gambling taxes and levies, an increase of 21,7% was recorded.

Responsible gambling

The National Responsible Gambling Programme (NRGP) integrates research and monitoring, public education and awareness, training, treatment and counselling. It is the only programme of its kind to be jointly controlled by a public/private-sector partnership, involving government regulators and the industry. The NRGP is supervised by the South African Responsible Gambling Trust, which was created by the South African Advisory Council on Responsible Gambling, an initiative of the board.

In 2006/07, the NRGP Counselling Line referred an average of 139 problem gamblers for treatment each month, and handled a further 180 problem gamblers per month who phoned the service in distress, but did not require referral.

On average, 10 problem gamblers per day benefited from the NRGP counselling services, which is consistent with the pattern of previous years.

Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) developments in the gambling industry

The NGB and other provincial gambling authorities have identified and advocated a need for an industry-specific BBBEE gambling charter. The aim is to uniformly and coherently achieve and implement the BBBEE objectives as set out in the BBBEE Act, 2003 (Act 53 of 2003), and gazetted Codes of Good Practice.

Regulators will enforce and implement the specific gambling charter.

National Lotteries Board (NLB)

The NLB was established in October 1998 in terms of the Lotteries Act, 1997 (Act 57 of 1997).

The board's main activities are, among other things, to:

- advise the Minister of Trade and Industry on the issuing of the licence to conduct the National Lottery
- ensure that the National Lottery and sports pools are conducted with all due propriety
- ensure that the interests of every participant in the National Lottery are adequately protected
- ensure that the net proceeds of the National Lottery are as large as possible
- administer the National Lottery Distribution Trust Fund and hold it in trust
- advise the minister on percentages of money to be allocated in terms of Section 26(3) of the Lotteries Act, 1997
- advise the minister on establishing and implementing a social-responsibility programme in respect of lotteries
- administer and invest the money paid to the board in accordance with the Lotteries Act, 1997.

In September 2007, empowerment consortium Gidani was awarded the licence to operate the National Lottery. The lottery was suspended in March 2007 when the previous licence-holder's licence expired. It resumed in October 2007.

Auditor-General

The AG is South Africa's supreme audit institution. It was established in terms of Chapter 9 of the Constitution, and exists to strengthen the country's democracy, by enabling better accountability and governance in the public sector. Through the Constitution and the Public Audit Act, 2004 (Act 25 of 2004), the AG's mandate is to promote accountability and good governance within government.

The AG does this by providing world-class audits and reports on the accounts, financial statements and financial management of:

- all national and provincial state departments and administrations
- all municipalities
- any other institution or accounting entity required by national or provincial legislation to be audited by the AG.

The AG may also audit and report on the accounts, financial statements and financial management of:

- any institution funded from the national or a provincial revenue fund, or by a municipality
- any institution that is authorised in terms of any law to receive money for a public purpose.

Public-sector auditing involves investigating and evaluating government and related institutions' financial-management practices, performance and compliance with legal requirements.

Various business units provide auditing services, corporate services and specialised audit work, such as forensic and computer auditing, and audit research and development. The AG also boasts an international auditing complement.

Financial sector South African Reserve Bank

The SARB and the Ministry of Finance form the monetary authority in South Africa. The SARB has been given a significant degree of autonomy in terms of the Constitution and must perform its functions independently.

However, the SARB must hold regular consultations with the Minister of Finance. Its management, powers and functions are governed by the SARB Act, 1989 (Act 90 of 1989).

The SARB formulates and implements monetary policy and regulates the supply of money by influencing its cost. Monetary policy is guided by the objectives of the SARB, which are formulated to ensure financial stability. Consistently combating inflation is the cornerstone of the bank's policy.

A formal inflation-targeting monetary-policy framework has been adopted since 2000. Monetary policy is set by the bank's Monetary Policy Committee (MPC).

The committee, consisting of the SARB's governors and other senior officials, usually meets every two months, after which the bank issues a statement indicating its assessment of the economy and policy changes, if any.

The SARB is responsible for:

- assisting government in formulating and implementing macroeconomic policy
- formulating and implementing monetary policy to achieve its primary goal in the interest of the community it serves
- ensuring that the South African money and banking system as a whole is sound, meets the community's requirements and keeps abreast of international finance developments
- informing the South African community, and all interested parties abroad about monetary policy, and the South African economic situation in general.

The SARB is managed by a board of 14 directors, seven of whom are elected by the shareholders of the bank and who represent commerce, finance, industry and agriculture. The President of South

Instrument	Rate	Change	Rate	Change
REPO RATE	9.00%	0.00%	9.00%	0.00%
PRIME LENDING RATE	13.50%	0.00%	13.50%	0.00%
3-MONTH BILLS	8.00%	0.00%	8.00%	0.00%
6-MONTH BILLS	8.00%	0.00%	8.00%	0.00%
12-MONTH BILLS	8.00%	0.00%	8.00%	0.00%
3-MONTH TREASURY	8.00%	0.00%	8.00%	0.00%
6-MONTH TREASURY	8.00%	0.00%	8.00%	0.00%
12-MONTH TREASURY	8.00%	0.00%	8.00%	0.00%

The repo rate was left unchanged at 9% by the South African Reserve Bank's Monetary Policy Committee (MPC) in April 2007. In June 2007, the MPC decided to increase the repo rate by 50 basis points to 9.5% per year. In August 2007, the MPC increased the key repo rate by 50 basis points to 10%. The prime lending rate rose by 0.5 percentage points to 13.5%. October 2007 saw another increase of the repo rate to 10.5%. In December it rose to 11%.

Africa appoints the governor, three deputy governors and three directors.

The SARB acts as the central bank of South Africa and as a banker to other banking institutions. It provides accommodation to banks and is the custodian of the statutory cash reserves that all registered banks are required to maintain. It also provides facilities for clearing and settling interbank obligations.

The main instrument for managing liquidity in the money market is the repurchase transactions (repo) rate, which is the price at which the central bank lends cash to the banking system. The repo rate has become the most important indicator for short-term interest rates.

The repurchase agreements entered into between the SARB and other banks are conducted on the basis of an outright buy-and-sell transaction, with a full transfer of ownership of the underlying assets. The system also provides for a marginal lending facility, which replaces the previous discount window. This facility is available to banks at their initiative, to bridge overnight liquidity needs. The marginal lending facility forms an integrated part of the South African Multiple Option Settlement (Samos) System, which came into operation in March 1998.

This enables banks to electronically make payments to, and receive payments from, the SARB, through their settlement accounts held in the books of the Reserve Bank. Daily settlements of interbank exposures are effected through the Samos System.

Payments through the system can only be made if a bank has sufficient funds in its settlement account. Such funds can be obtained through interbank transfers, repurchase transactions, other

types of liquidity-creating instruments of the SARB, or the marginal lending facility. The Samos System, however, allows banks to receive funds obtained in the interbank market directly in their settlement accounts in the SARB's books.

The SARB uses various instruments to achieve its objectives. These include changes in the repo-rate marginal-lending facility; open-market transactions, including selling its own debentures; changes in requirements regarding banking institutions' cash reserves; and controlling liquidity in the money market through repurchase transactions. The bank undertakes national and international transactions on behalf of the State, and acts for government in transactions with the International Monetary Fund.

The SARB is the custodian of the greater part of South Africa's gold and other foreign-exchange reserves. The SARB issues banknotes (printed by the South African Bank Note Company, a wholly owned subsidiary of the Reserve Bank) and controls the South African Mint Company.

Monetary policy

Growth in broad money supply (M3) continued to increase at a high rate throughout 2006 and early 2007, and fluctuated between a peak of 27.3% in March 2006 and 23% in February 2007. Banks' loans and advances to the domestic private sector remained relatively strong during 2006 and early 2007, registering average growth rates of 25% to 27%. Asset-backed credit (mortgage advances, leasing finance and instalment sale credit) constituted the bulk of the increase in banks' total loans and advances throughout 2006 and early 2007.

Growth in M3 and banks' total loans and advances was consistent with firm increases in nominal income, expenditure and wealth.

The banking industry

At the end of December 2006, 34 banks, including 14 branches of foreign banks and two mutual banks, were registered with the Office of the Registrar of Banks. Furthermore, 43 foreign banks had authorised representative offices in South Africa. By the end of December 2006, the banking institutions collectively employed 129 161 workers.

During 2006, the South African banking system remained stable and, in general, banks were sound. Banks continued to benefit from the favourable economic conditions that prevailed during 2006.

The banks were well capitalised above the minimum requirement of 10%, and the average risk-weighted capital-adequacy ratio for the banking sector was 12,3% at the end of December 2006 (December 2005: 12,7%).

The aggregated balance sheet of the banking sector continued to show strong growth during 2006. By the end of December 2006, the total assets of banks – comprising, among other things, money, loans and advances, investment and trading position and non-financial assets – had increased by 23,7% (measured over 12 months) to a level of R2 075,1 billion (December 2005: R1 677,5 billion). The five largest banks constituted 89,7% of the total banking sector's assets by the end of December 2006 (December 2005: 89,6%).

The profitability ratios improved throughout 2006. By the end of December 2006, an after-tax return of 18,3% on net qualifying capital and reserves (12-month smoothed average) was reported, compared with 15,2% in December 2005.

An after-tax return of 1,4% on assets (12-month smoothed average) was reported in December 2006 (December 2005: 1,2%). The efficiency ratio of the banking sector displayed a steady improvement throughout 2006, and by the end of December 2006, an efficiency ratio of 58,9% was reported (December 2005: 66,3%).

South African banks are regulated in terms of international best practice, for example, adherence to the Core Principles for Effective Banking Supervision and the planned transition to the Basel Capital Accord (Basel II) in January 2008.

The microlending industry

The Department of Trade and Industry introduced the National Credit Act (NCA), 2005 (Act 34 of 2005), to allow the credit market to function in a robust and effective manner. The NCA, 2005 replaced the Usury Act, 1968 (Act 73 of 1968), and the Credit Agreements Act, 1980 (Act 75 of 1980).

The NCA, 2005, which became effective on 1 June 2007, aims to regulate the granting of consumer credit by all credit-providers, including microlenders, banks and retailers.

It created the National Credit Regulator (NCR) and the National Consumer Tribunal, which play a vital role in ensuring enforcement, promoting access to redress and adjudicating contraventions of the Act.

The NCR is responsible for regulating the South African credit industry. It carries out education, research and policy development; registers industry participants; investigates complaints; and ensures that the Act is enforced.

In terms of the Act, the NCR has to promote the development of an accessible credit market to meet the needs of people who were previously disadvantaged, earn a low income or live in remote, isolated or low-density communities.

The National Consumer Tribunal adjudicates various applications and hears cases against those who contravene the Act.

The Act provides for the registration of debt counsellors to assist overindebted consumers. Debt counsellors are required to undergo training approved by the NCR through approved training service-providers appointed by the NCR.

The Micro-Finance Regulator Council, mandated to regulate the microlending industry prior to the establishment of the NCR, had 2 056 registered entities with a gross loan book of R22,9 billion by February 2006.

Financial Services Board (FSB)

The FSB is an independent statutory body financed by levies imposed on regulated institutions and persons.

The FSB supervises institutions and services, in terms of several parliamentary Acts that entrust regulatory functions to the registrars of long-term insurance, short-term insurance, friendly societies, pension funds, collective investment schemes, financial services providers (FSPs), exchanges and financial markets.

The FSB also promotes programmes and initiatives by financial institutions and bodies representing the financial-services industry to inform and educate users of financial products and services.

Included in such functions is regulatory control over central securities depositories and depository institutions responsible for the safe custody of securities.

The FSB is also responsible for the financial supervision of the Road Accident Fund. Excluded from the FSB's responsibilities are certain areas involving listing requirements or public issues, take-overs and mergers.

The executive officer has the power to impose regulatory sanctions, including the cancellation of authorisation to supply financial services.

The executive officer has formal powers of investigation to which criminal sanctions attach in the event of obstruction.

The executive officer can, in certain circumstances, also petition for the winding up, or placing under judicial management or curatorship, of certain financial institutions such as insurers and pension funds.

Furthermore, the Inspection of Financial Institutions Act, 1998 (Act 80 of 1998), allows the FSB to obtain warrants for searching and questioning third parties who might have information about unregistered financial institutions, such as those providing insurance or investment services.

The FSB is assisted by an advisory board on financial markets, and by advisory committees on FSPs, long- and short-term insurance, pension funds and collective investment schemes. The Financial Services Consumer Advisory Panel advises the FSB and Registrar of Banks on consumer-protection issues falling within the regulators' jurisdiction.

The FSB maintains a close relationship with all existing industry associations. It liaises with overseas regulatory organisations, and is a member of the International Organisation of Security Commissions, the International Association of Insurance Supervisors, the African Association of Insurance Supervisors and the International Network of Pension Regulators and Supervisors.

Domestically, the FSB liaises with bodies such as the Independent Regulatory Board for Auditors, Consumer Affairs Committee and various government departments, as well as with prosecuting authorities such as the South African

Police Service, the Directorate of Special Operations and the National Director of Public Prosecutions.

Insurance companies

Short-term (non-life) insurance is concerned primarily with risk management against the risk of a contingency loss in the short term. The contracts usually run from year to year and can be cancelled by either party.

These contracts apply to engineering, guarantee, liability, motor, business, accident and health, property, transportation and miscellaneous insurance. By 31 December 2007, 106 short-term insurers were registered with the FSB, of which 93 represented primary insurers and the remainder reinsurers. The total gross premiums of primary insurers grew by 12% between 2005 and 2006.

Long-term insurance business consists of life, assistance, sinking fund, health and disability insurance. By March 2007, the number of long-term insurers registered with the FSB totalled 81, of which 74 were insurers and the remainder were reinsurers. Net premium income for primary insurers increased from R165,1 billion in 2005 to R220,3 billion in 2006.

According to class of policies, life-insurance business forms the bulk of premiums of primary insurers and accounts for almost 50% of net premiums. Total assets of the long-term industry in South Africa increased by 19,9% to R1 302,1 billion as at December 2006.

Exchange rate of the Rand – percentage changes

	30 Sept 2006 to 29 Dec 2006	29 Dec 2006 to 31 March 2007	31 March 2007 to 29 June 2007	29 June 2007 to 31 Aug 2007
Weighted average*	7,7	- 4,4	1,8	- 1,5
Euro	6,2	- 50	1,3	- 1,6
US dollar	10,5	- 4,0	2,4	- 1,8
British pound	5,2	- 3,7	0,1	- 0,8
Japanese yen	11,3	- 4,7	7,0	- 6,0

*Against a basket of 13 currencies

Source: *Quarterly Bulletin*, South African Reserve Bank

Other financial institutions

Development Bank of Southern Africa (DBSA)

The DBSA Act, 1997 (Act 13 of 1997), stipulates that the main role of this development-finance institution (DFI) is to promote economic development and growth, HRD and institutional capacity-building. The bank achieves this by mobilising financial and other resources from the private and public sectors, both nationally and internationally, for sustainable development projects and programmes.

The bank operates within South Africa, in the other Southern African Development Community (SADC) countries, and increasingly as a development agent and knowledge partner in the wider region of Africa south of the Sahara. The mandate of the bank is mainly infrastructure development in the wider sense of the term.

Historically, the bank has covered economic, social and institutional development. This has been done both via loans of its own funds, and by acting as a catalyst for investments in partnership with the private sector and other DFIs, locally and internationally.

Funding and development impact

The bank is a self-funded institution and raises funding from domestic and international capital markets, bilateral and multilateral institutions, and internally generated resources. Credit lines have been established with reputable and highly rated international institutions, such as the African Development Bank, the European Investment Bank, bilateral sources such as the German *Kreditanstalt für Wiederaufbau* (KfW), the Japanese Overseas Economic Co-operation Fund and the *Agence Française de Développement*. The DBSA's capital and reserves at 31 March 2007 totalled R14 billion, including a callable capital facility of R4,8 billion from National Treasury.

The DBSA estimates the scale of the impact of its funding operations by using economic modelling techniques. Based on these, DBSA loan approvals in South Africa and the SADC – which are projected to be growing at a level of at least R6 billion per year by 2014 – will, when disbursed, have significant development impact.

Calculated from 2005 to 2014 in South Africa alone, a total of 127 000 jobs should be created; 2,4 million households connected to one or more basic services; and R22 billion contributed to the local economy. Over the period, the bank plans to invest over R46 billion (loans and equity finance) in infrastructure development, and well over R1 billion

in technical assistance, capacity-building, knowledge development and development networking.

Strategy

The DBSA's strategy addresses five main themes:

- co-delivering social and economic infrastructure, with a focus on the public sector
- building human and institutional capacity, with a focus on municipalities
- promoting broad-based economic growth, job creation, co-operation, integration and prosperity, with a focus on identified sectors, geographical areas and projects
- serving as a centre of excellence for development financing and effectiveness
- engendering sustainability, both internally and externally.

Vision 2014

Vision 2014, which is guided by the bank's mandate, focuses on the following key goals within the Government's development agenda:

- reducing poverty by half through economic development, comprehensive social security, land reform and improved household and community assets
- reducing unemployment by half through new jobs, skills development, assistance to small businesses, opportunities for self-employment and sustainable community livelihoods
- massively reducing the incidence of tuberculosis, malaria, diabetes, malnutrition and maternal deaths, turning the tide against HIV and AIDS, and improving services to achieve a better national health profile and reduce preventable causes of death
- positioning South Africa strategically as an effective force in global relations, with vibrant and balanced trade with countries of both the South and the North
- providing the skills required by the economy, building capacity and providing resources across society to encourage self-employment.

Strategic initiatives

Key initiatives include leading Siyenza Manje, the municipal task force of engineers and project managers being implemented jointly with National Treasury, the Department of Provincial and Local Government, the South African Local Government Association and other government departments.

The Sustainable Communities Programme is also under way to turn dormitory townships and informal settlements into viable towns, with

community centres, clinics, shops, sports facilities, etc. The Local Investment Agency has been established in the Eastern Cape to fast-track private-sector economic development in areas with natural potential. The bank is also heavily involved in supporting the host cities in their development of infrastructure for the 2010 World Cup.

The bank has positioned itself to provide strategic and financial support to the South African Football Association in its planning and co-ordination of infrastructure development around South Africa's hosting of the World Cup.

Vulindlela Academy

The bank has launched the Vulindlela Academy, a new specialised institutional training facility, dedicated to creating and upgrading the skills required for increased economic growth.

The DBSA Vulindlela Academy is supported by a local government resource centre and a wide area local government computer network, to connect municipalities to a wide range of resources and facilities.

Land and Agricultural Development Bank (Land Bank)

The Land Bank operates as a DFI within the agricultural and agribusiness sectors, and is regulated by the Land and Agricultural Development Bank Act, 2002 (Act 15 of 2002). The Land Bank provides a range of financing products to a broad spectrum of clients within the agricultural industry.

Financing products include wholesale and retail financing to commercial and developing farmers, co-operatives and other agriculture-related businesses.

The Land Bank's objectives are defined within its mandate, which requires that it should achieve:

- growth in the commercial market
- growth in the development market
- business efficiency
 - service delivery
 - resource management
- sustainability.

(See Chapter 3: *Agriculture and land affairs*.)

The Land Bank is the sole shareholder in the Suid-Afrikaanse Verbandversekeringsmaatskappy

Beperk, which provides insurance to people indebted to the bank through mortgage loans.

In recent years, the Land Bank's performance has been negatively affected by numerous factors.

Also key to new entrants in farming is access to finance and advisory support. Efforts are being made by the Land Bank to ensure it delivers on its mandate and remains sustainable.

Government has already injected R700 million and extended a R1,5-billion guarantee. The bank is also engaged with National Treasury to find an optimum funding model.

Collective investment schemes (CIS)

CIS in securities, property and participation bonds are supervised in terms of the Collective Investment Schemes Control Act, 2002 (Act 45 of 2002).

South African collective investment schemes in securities

There was a net increase of 136 funds during the 2005/06 financial year, driven mainly by the demand for third-party funds. By 31 March 2006, there were 33 managers with 718 FSB-approved funds available to the public for investment.

There was a net increase after fund closures of 121 funds during the year, which is slightly lower than the 136 experienced during the previous year. The increase remains attributable to the demand for third-party funds. By 31 March 2007, there were 34 managers with 765 FSB-approved funds available to the public for investment.

For the fourth consecutive year, the industry attracted record inflows. Net inflows in CIS portfolios reached a record R27,6 billion during the quarter ended 31 March 2007, as both retail and institutional unit-trust investment inflows soared.

At the end of the financial year, total assets under management stood at a record R596 billion (March 2006: R458 billion). In general, the industry produced excellent returns.

Foreign collective-investment schemes (FCIS) in securities

A healthy investor appetite for offshore collective-investment products saw net inflows of R34,7 billion into FCIS at year-end (2006), with the

total assets under management standing at R105 billion at 31 March 2007. This represented a notable 49% increase, compared with the 33% increase recorded during the previous year. It also represented a doubling of the size of assets under management over a period of three years.

There has not been any significant change in movement in respect of foreign operators in the South African markets, as evidenced by the net decrease of two schemes and one portfolio during the year.

At year-end, 71 schemes were licensed to market 382 portfolios in South Africa.

Collective investment schemes in property

This sector continues to deliver positive returns, but not as spectacular as those recorded in the previous period. However, on a relative basis, the total return for the previous period was abnormal as a result of a re-rating of the sector.

This involved a reduction in yields during that period as a result of the decline in interest rates in the capital market. The reduction in yields in turn resulted in capital values appreciating. The total return for the 12-month period to March 2007 was 11,2%, constituted by an income return of 6,9% and capital growth of 4,3%.

This was achieved despite a significant downward correction in markets in general during the middle and second half of 2006, which resulted in a decline in stock market prices. Since then, CIS in the property market have substantially regained much of their losses.

It should be noted that the returns for 2006/07 were realistic when compared to long-term trends. Total participatory interests in issue at year-end stood at R2,7 billion, with a market capitalisation of R19,4 billion.

Collective investment schemes in participation bonds

The aggregate amount owing to 29 540 (2006: 35 542) participants at 31 March 2007 was R3,3 billion (March 2006: R3,4 billion). There were seven schemes in operation and 1 611 (2006: 1 671) registered participation bonds. It is evident that there is a steady decline of investment in this industry.

Regulatory developments

The FSB has performed compliance reviews on all the registered open-ended unit trust schemes. The reviews, designed to assess the key control areas in management companies, have been highly successful in the early identification of potential

problem areas. Management companies have also expressed their approval of the process.

To ensure a smooth transition to risk-based supervision, the department created a separate supervision section, which is staffed by a manager and two analysts, with a specific mandate to develop and implement a risk-based supervisory model. It was envisaged that risk-based supervision would be in place by the second quarter of the 2007/08 financial year.

Stokvels

Stokvels are co-operative rotating saving schemes that mobilise funds among mostly black communities for a variety of purposes. Rotating saving schemes similar to stokvels are also found in countries such as South Korea, Jamaica, Egypt and Japan.

Estimates are that the total investment in stokvels and burial societies in South Africa has reached the R20-billion mark. According to a University of Cape Town Unilever Institute of Strategic Marketing research study, this sector touches every industry, either directly or indirectly.

The study shows that the average membership size of burial societies is 88, and that 29% of South African adults are members. This suggests a total of 89 000 burial societies. Figures gathered by the institute show that 2,5 million South African adults (9%) belong to eight million stokvels and that 14% of bank-account holders are stokvel members.

Stokvels and burial societies, according to the study, are based on group affinity and network marketing – selling to a group rather than to an individual.

Financial intermediaries and advisers

The purpose of the Financial Advisory and Intermediary Services (FAIS) Act, 2002 (Act 37 of 2002), is to regulate, in pursuance of consumer protection, the provision of advice and intermediary services to certain clients in respect of a range of financial products and services.

The FAIS at the FSB is responsible for the oversight and supervision of the industry, captured under the FAIS Act, 2002.

Recognised representative bodies

Section 6(3)(iii) of the Act provides for the Registrar of FSPs to delegate any of their powers in terms of the Act to anybody recognised by the Act. Two such functions, the consideration of applications for licences under Section 8 and the consideration of applications for approval of compliance officers

under Section 17(2) of the Act were delegated to 11 recognised representative bodies.

Advisory Committee on Financial Services Providers

The Advisory Committee on FSPs was appointed by the Minister of Finance to investigate and report or advise on any matter relating to FSPs. With the exception of the registrar, who is an *ex officio* member, committee members hold office for a period determined by the minister.

The second term of the committee ended on 30 November 2006. A new committee, which includes many of the previous committee members, was appointed in December 2006.

Licensing of financial service providers

In terms of the FAIS Act, 2002, the FSB approves and renders the ongoing supervision of three categories.

Category I consists of financial advisers and those intermediaries without discretionary mandates. Category II consists of individuals or entities that are involved in discretionary management of securities, loan stock and derivatives on behalf of both individual and institutional clients.

Category III represents investment managers specialising mainly in the bulking of collective investments on behalf of clients (linked investment services providers).

The total number of approved Category I, II and III FSPs at 31 March 2007 was 13 444, 511 and 23, respectively. Total assets under management by Category I and II exceeded R2 613 billion at 30 June 2006.

During the 2006/07 reporting period, the registrar authorised 1 377 FAIS licence applications as FSPs, bringing the total of approved FSPs to 113 978 on 31 March 2007.

Since 2004, 1 089 applications had been declined, 17 authorisations withdrawn and two had been suspended.

Intensified supervision

The FSB's FAIS has developed a customised risk-based supervision framework, which is vitally important for the successful supervision of FSPs. The diversity of the financial-services industry

requires the department to concentrate its efforts on FSPs that call for greater supervisory oversight. It will also ensure a smooth transition from the previous compliance-based supervisory approach. For this purpose, a change-management process will be implemented to support the framework.

Inspections

Nine formal inspections were requested during the reporting period, mainly in respect of alleged contraventions of the provisions of the FAIS Act, 2002.

Retirement funds and friendly societies

By 31 March 2007, the FSB had supervised 13 020 registered retirement funds and by 31 December 2005, 98 registered friendly societies.

These funds exclude the official State funds, such as Transnet, Telkom and some bargaining-council funds, which are not registered in terms of the Pension Funds Act, 1956 (Act 24 of 1956).

The total membership of all retirement funds at the end of 2005 was 9 264 148, of which 8 119 860 were active members, and 1 144 288 were pensioners, deferred pensioners or dependants. These figures do not reflect the total number of individuals who were members of funds, because some were members of more than one fund.

The total contributions received increased by 3,2% from R72 826 million in 2004 to R75 131 million in 2005. Total contributions to the State, Transnet, Telkom and South African Post Office funds increased by 8,2%, while total contributions to self-administered, underwritten and bargaining funds in the private sector increased by 1,3%.

Benefits paid decreased by 0,3% from R86 195 million in 2004 to R85 937 million in 2005. Amounts paid in respect of pensions, lump sums on retirement or death and resignations were included. Total assets of the retirement-fund industry in South Africa increased by 17,1%, from R1 092 billion in 2004 to R1 284 billion in 2005.

The net assets of self-administered funds increased by 24,7% from R466 billion in 2004 to R581 billion in 2005.

To contribute to the build-up of retirement savings, the tax on retirement funds was abolished with effect from 1 March 2007.

Financial markets

Primary capital-market activity

Government bonds

Net redemption of fixed-interest securities by the national Government in the domestic primary bond market amounted to R0,3 billion in 2006/07, compared with R21,8 billion raised in 2005/06.

Strong tax revenue made it possible for the authorities to reduce the weekly supply of government paper made available on auction from an average of R750 million per week in 2005/06, to R650 million in 2006/07.

Two new fixed-income bonds were launched in 2006/07, namely the R208 and R209 bonds. The R209 bond was issued in July 2006 with a coupon rate of 6,25%, maturing in 2036. By March 2007, R5,0 billion had been issued. The R208 bond was launched in September 2006, carrying a coupon of 6,75% and maturing in 2021, and over R2 billion was raised in 2006/07.

The R007 – the first of the three tranches of the R194 government bond to be repaid – was redeemed on 28 February 2007. The capital redemption value of the bond amounted to R24,1 billion, and coupon payments on these and other outstanding government bonds put a further R10,1 billion in cash in the hands of investors. The remaining two tranches of the R194 bond, namely the R195 and the R196, mature in 2008 and 2009, respectively. The South African Government retail bonds were launched in May 2004 with maturities of two, three and five years.

Since inception to February 2007, government had raised a total of R2,2 billion through these bond issues. Priced off the yield curve, the interest rates on government retail bonds were 8,5% for the two-year bond, 8,75% for the three-year bond and 8% for the five-year bond in April 2007.

Private-sector bond issuance

The outstanding nominal value of private-sector bonds listed on the Bond Exchange of South Africa (Besa) increased by R77 billion in 2006, compared with an increase of R42,4 billion in 2005.

This included funds raised through asset-backed securities, collateral debt obligations and short-term commercial paper. Total issuance related to these securities amounted to R36 billion in 2006.

Contrary to the lower supply of government bonds, the issuance of private-sector bonds, whether through private corporate bonds, securitisations or private placements, has grown significantly in the past few years.

This can be attributed to more diverse instruments being used, declining interest rates, narrowing credit spreads indicating investor low-risk tolerance amid the search for high yield, and credit upgrades for a number of corporate institutions.

The South African private corporate bond market is expected to grow as new asset classes emerge and new issuers continue to enter the market.

Exchange control rulings were amended in October 2006 to provide for inward listings by foreign issuers on Besa. This allows foreign entities to raise capital in South Africa on the condition that only non-derivative debt instruments, denominated in rands, may be listed.

South African institutional investors may invest in these instruments within their permissible foreign portfolio investment allowances, while an additional 5% of total retail assets may be used for investing in African inward-listed instruments. Individuals are allowed to invest without restriction.

On 30 October 2006, a Mauritian bank became the first African entity outside the Common Monetary Area to issue rand-denominated debt on Besa.

Eurorand bonds

Abundant liquidity in the global financial markets led to increased activity in the Eurorand bond market. The Eurorand bond market expanded in 2005 and 2006 with gross issuance of R9,1 billion in 2006, which is 9% less than the R10,1 billion issued in 2005, excluding a R1-billion issue not regarded as a pure eurorand transaction. In 2006, R4,1 billion worth of eurorand bonds matured, resulting in a net issuance of R5 billion.

The interest in this market can also be attributed to positive sentiment towards the Rand and an overall positive performance in global fixed-income markets in 2005.

In the first three months of 2007, gross issuance amounted to R3,7 billion, while R1 billion matured, bringing net issues to R2,7 billion.

During 2006, Germany's KfW and the European Investment Bank dominated issuance in the Eurorand bond market, comprising 3,2% and 26% of total issuance respectively.

Other issuers include Rentenbank (9%), the Province of Ontario (7%), Rabobank Nederland (5%) and Eurofirma (5%). The rest were issued by new issuers such as *Caisse d'Amortissement de la Dette Sociale*, Toyota Motor Credit Corporation,

Inter-American Development Bank and General Electric Capital Corporation.

The type of credit issued remained predominantly AAA-rated, and the maturity structure is concentrated in bonds maturing in nine years or less.

Uridashi bonds

In addition to the issuance of euroand bonds, rand-denominated bonds were first issued by foreign borrowers in the Japanese uridashi market in July 2004 and sold by non-Japanese issuers to Japanese retail investors.

They generally offer a more attractive yield than those offered on similar bonds issued in Japanese yen. The total nominal value of issues amounted to R8,8 billion in 2005, followed by R4,8 billion in 2006 and R2,1 billion in the first three months of 2007.

Secondary capital-market activity

Domestic bonds

South African government bond yields increased considerably from the 36-year lows in February 2006 to September 2006, in response to the weaker exchange value of the Rand, the increases in the repurchase rate from June, and an upward movement in bond yields in the major international financial centres.

From the high in September 2006, bond yields reverted back to a declining trend up to February 2007, coinciding with, among other things, the strengthening in the exchange value of the Rand, the projections of lower supply of government bonds, and record-high net purchases of bonds by non-residents in November 2006. Thereafter, bond yields increased to March 2007.

Non-resident investors showed keen interest in the South African secondary bond market in 2006, after they had been predominantly net sellers of bonds since 2000. Non-residents' net sales of bonds of R10,7 billion in 2005 reverted to the highest-ever recorded annual net purchases of R34,1 billion in 2006, and included record-high monthly net purchases of R11,8 billion in July and R12,8 billion in November 2006. In the first quarter of 2007, net purchases of bonds amounted to R0,6 billion.

The value of trading activity in the domestic secondary bond market valued at consideration amounted to R13,6 trillion in 2006, which was 39% higher than the R9,8 trillion in 2005. In the first three months of 2007, the value of turnover on the bond exchange amounted to R4,1 trillion. The daily average turnover reached R67 billion in June 2006, before declining to R45 billion in December, but accelerated further to a high of R69 billion in February 2007.

Money-market activity

The South African money market is an over-the-counter market in which a fairly large number of banks and other institutions actively participate. The SARB implements its monetary policy in terms of a system based on creating a shortage in the money market. The bank refinances this shortage through weekly repurchase transactions with seven-day maturities at its policy rate, the repo rate. Thus, the bank influences other market interest rates. The daily liquidity requirement in the money market was maintained at close to R13 billion throughout 2005/06.

The SARB uses mainly four types of open-market operations to drain surplus liquidity from the money market, namely, issuing SARB debentures, conducting longer-term reverse repo transactions, foreign-exchange swaps, and outright sales or switches of government bonds. Furthermore, with the redemption of the R152 bond and coupon payments made to the SARB on various bonds during February 2005, the bank was able to permanently drain R3,1 billion worth of liquidity from the market.

Equity market

The total value of equity capital raised by companies listed on the JSE amounted to R82,2 billion in 2005 and subsequently increased to R87,8 billion in 2006. The amount raised was almost equally distributed between companies with primary listings on the JSE and companies with primary listings on foreign bourses and secondary listings on the JSE.

Equity financing amounted to R38,8 billion in the first quarter of 2007, mainly raised by companies with primary listings on the JSE. The number of

new listings increased from 19 in 2005 to 37 in 2006, while the number of delistings declined from 35 in 2005 to 24 in 2006.

Seven new listings were recorded in the first three months of 2007. Some 1 047 securities were listed on the JSE at the end of 2006, compared with 984 at the end of 2005, increasing to 1 073 at the end of the first quarter of 2007.

Domestic share prices, as measured by the All Share Index (Alsi), increased to new highs during 2006 and the first months of 2007. From a low on 13 June 2006, the Alsi rose by 47% to 26 February 2007. The strong increase in share prices was led by the increase of 51% in industrial shares and 46% in resources shares (with platinum-mining shares increasing by 91% and gold-mining shares by 23%), while financial shares improved by 40% over the same period.

Factors that influenced the market during this period were the robust economic growth, prudent fiscal and monetary policies, higher commodity prices, expectations of continued higher corporate earnings, general optimism in global equity markets and strong demand from foreign and local investors.

However, this upward momentum was interrupted as share prices corrected and international commodity prices and share markets deteriorated, resulting in a decline of 7% recorded to 5 March 2007. Subsequently, the Alsi continued its upward trend, increasing by 14% to an all-time high of 28 507 on 17 April 2007 alongside renewed increases in commodity and global equity prices.

Turnover on the JSE, as measured in terms of the value of shares traded, reached R1 279 billion in 2005, and increased to a record-high of R2 122 billion in 2006. In the first quarter of 2007, turnover amounted to R657 billion. Annualised liquidity, measured as turnover as a percentage of market capitalisation, increased from 36% in 2005 to 42% in 2006, with market capitalisation increasing from R3 586,1 billion to R5 041,5 billion over the same period. Market capitalisation in US dollar terms increased by 29% from US\$549,3 billion in 2005 to US\$711,2 billion in 2006.

According to the World Federation of Exchanges, South Africa was in 20th position in the world league at the end of January 2007 in terms of market capitalisation, and in US dollar terms. Non-residents bought a record-high net amount of R73,7 billion worth of shares during 2006 and increased their holdings of domestic shares by a net amount of R20,6 billion during the first quarter of 2007.

The JSE's new interest-rate exchange, Yield-X, commenced trading on 28 February 2005. This interest-rate exchange is the JSE's fourth electronic clearing and settlement platform, alongside equities, financial futures and agricultural products. Yield-X aims to open up the interest-rate market to new players and new products, encouraging liquidity and market diversification.

In addition, Yield-X seeks to ensure proper price discovery for interest-rate products in South Africa. At the heart of the new exchange is an anonymous central order book, allowing for trading via a single platform with automated trade matching and guaranteed settlement.

The JSE expects Yield-X to emulate the success of its equities and futures trading systems over time, establishing a sophisticated interest-rate derivatives market for the country.

A major benefit of Yield-X is the elimination of bilateral counter-party risk. The JSE, through clearing-house Safcom, guarantees all trades and offer a cradle-to-grave audit trail. Yield-X operates in a fully regulated environment overseen by the JSE and the FSB.

Yield-X is targeting a range of investors, from large institutional investors, banks, corporate treasuries and intermediaries, to smaller financial institutions and retail investors who may have been previously excluded from the interest-rate market. The number of contracts traded on Yield-X totalled 21 413 in 2006, and 52% more than the 14 087 contracts traded in 2005. In the first three months of 2007, the number of contracts amounted to 4 423. In value terms, turnover of R32,1 billion in 2006 was 189% higher than the value of R11,1 billion recorded in 2005. Turnover amounted to R7,5 billion in the first three months of 2007.

Domestic currency market

The South African Rand appreciated by almost 20% against the US Dollar during 2004. Although part of this appreciation was due to general US dollar weakness over this period, which caused most emerging-market currencies to appreciate, the Rand was also supported by domestic economic conditions such as the decline in the inflation rate, positive economic growth, improved sentiment and an increase in official foreign-exchange reserves.

South Africa's official gross reserves increased from US\$8,1 billion at the end of January 2004 to US\$15,9 billion at the end of March 2005. Demand for the Rand was also fuelled by foreign portfolio

investment, particularly during the last quarter of 2004. According to Bloomberg's annual ranking report, the Rand was the second-best performing currency against the US Dollar during 2004.

The analysis comprised 60 currencies from developed as well as emerging-market countries. The only currency to marginally outperform the Rand was the Polish Zloty. The Rand also appreciated against other major currencies. Against both the Euro and the Pound, the Rand appreciated by almost 10% and compared with the Yen, the Rand appreciated by 13%.

Volatility conditions, as reflected by the implied and historical volatility indicators, rose to as high as 25,6% and 28,4%, respectively, in January 2004, but declined significantly during the rest of the year. At the end of December 2004, the implied and historical volatility indicators were at 14,9% and 13,4% respectively, indicating that volatility in the Rand exchange rate had subsided.

The average turnover in the domestic currency market increased from US\$92,9 billion for the 2003 year as a whole, to US\$98,0 billion for 2004. The average net daily turnover increased from US\$7,7 billion to US\$8,2 billion over the same period. These increases occurred mainly in the foreign-exchange swap market, and were not out of line with global trends observed in the 2004 Bank for International Settlements survey of global foreign-exchange activity.

Domestic rand turnover comprises 0,42% of the global foreign exchange market. During the first quarter of 2005, the Rand depreciated by almost 10% against the US Dollar, mainly as a result of developments in international currency markets.

The main reason was the appreciation in the exchange rate of the US Dollar, which began early in January, caused by expectations that the Fed could increase interest rates at a faster pace than previously expected. This affected most emerging-market currencies. In addition, commodity prices declined to lower levels during 2005 with a subsequent effect on the Rand, given that it is a commodity currency.

Exchange control

Exchange control is administered by the SARB on behalf of the Minister of Finance. The bank is

assisted in this task by a number of banking institutions that have been appointed by the Minister of Finance as authorised dealers in foreign exchange.

These institutions undertake foreign-exchange transactions for their own account with their clients, within limits, and subject to conditions laid down by the SARB.

The Government is committed to an open capital market and the gradual relaxation of exchange controls.

The following dispensations regarding exchange control are allowed:

Institutional investors

Part of the process of gradual exchange-control liberalisation and financial-sector strengthening is the shift to a system of prudential regulation governing the foreign portfolio investment of institutional investors, such as long-term insurers and pension funds.

Prudential regulations are applied internationally to protect policy-holders and pensioners from excessive risk, and typically include restrictions on foreign-asset holdings, set at a certain percentage of an institution's total assets or liabilities.

As an interim step towards prudential regulation, retirement funds, long-term insurers, collective investment-scheme management companies and investment managers are allowed to transfer funds from South Africa for investment abroad:

- Institutional investors will be allowed to invest, on approval, up to existing foreign-asset limits. These foreign-asset limits are 15% of total retail assets for retirement funds and long-term insurers. Investment managers registered as institutional investors for exchange-control purposes and CIS management companies are restricted to 25% of total assets under management.
- Institutional investors will, on application, be allowed to invest an additional 5% of their total retail assets by acquiring foreign-currency transfers from South Africa or by acquiring approved inward-listed instruments based on foreign reference assets or issued by foreign entities listed on the Besa, respectively.

- Foreign companies, governments and institutions may list instruments, including derivative instruments, based on foreign reference assets, on South Africa's bond and securities exchanges.
- Institutional investors will be required to submit additional information when making an application for a foreign-investment allowance. The shift to prudential regulation requires improved data reporting on individual institutions' foreign investments and the foreign-diversification levels of the industry as a whole. The new regulation became operational on 1 May 2003, after National Treasury and the Exchange-Control Department of the SARB, in consultation with the FSB, reached agreement with the respective institutional investors.

South African corporates

The global expansion of South African firms holds significant benefits for the economy, including expanded access to markets, increased exports and improved competitiveness.

With effect from 26 October 2004, limits on FDI by South African corporates were abolished. Exchange-control approval is, however, required. Requests by corporations are considered in light of national interest, such as the benefit to South Africa's foreign reserves by, for example, generating exports of goods and services, etc.

The Exchange-Control Department of the SARB reserves the right to stagger capital outflows relating to very large foreign investments, to manage any potential impact on the foreign-exchange market.

Interest payments on loans raised abroad to finance or partly finance new approved foreign investments must be repaid from offshore resources.

As a further alternative mechanism of financing offshore investments or to repay existing offshore debt, applications by corporates to engage in corporate asset or share-swap transactions and requests for share placements offshore by locally listed companies will be considered.

The corporates that have existing approved subsidiaries abroad are allowed to expand such activities without prior approval, subject to certain conditions. Dividends declared by the offshore subsidiaries of South African corporates may, after 26 October 2004, be retained offshore and used for any purpose, without recourse to South Africa.

Authorised dealers may also extend foreign currency-denominated facilities to South African corporates for financing approved FDI.

Emigrants' blocked assets

A system of exchange-control allowances for the export of blocked assets when persons emigrate, has been in place in South Africa for a number of decades.

Emigrants' blocked assets in excess of the emigration allowance were placed in emigrants' blocked accounts to preserve foreign reserves. Reflecting the improved strength and resilience of the South African economy, these blocked assets are now being unwound.

The imminent elimination of the net open forward position, and an increasingly diversified and growing export sector, create an environment that is conducive to dealing with the foreign reserve problems of the past. As such, the following applies:

- Emigrants qualify for a foreign capital allowance of R2 million per individual or R4 million in respect of family units emigrating.
- Emigrant-blocked assets are being unwound. Amounts of up to R2 million, inclusive of amounts already exited, are eligible for exit without the 10% exit levy. Holders of blocked assets wishing to exit more than R2 million, inclusive of amounts already exited, must apply to the Exchange-Control Department of the SARB to do so. Approval is subject to an exiting schedule and an exit levy of 10% of the amount requested.
- New emigrants wishing to exit more than R2 million, inclusive of amounts already exited, can similarly apply to the Exchange-Control Department to do so, with approval subject to an exiting schedule and an exit levy of 10% of such additional amount.

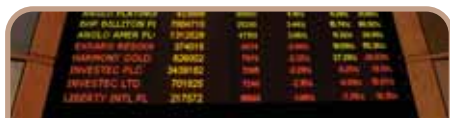
Private individuals resident in South Africa

Private individuals resident in South Africa qualify for a foreign-capital allowance of R2 million per private individual who is a taxpayer in good standing and over the age of 18 years, for investment purposes outside the common monetary area (i.e. Swaziland, Lesotho, Namibia and South Africa).

Local financial assistance to affected persons and non-residents

To improve access to domestic credit in financing FDI in South Africa or for domestic working-capital requirements, foreign companies or foreign-owned South African companies are permitted to make greater use of local finance.

With effect from 18 February 2004, foreign companies or foreign wholly owned subsidiaries



Symbol	Price	Volume	High	Low	Open
AMP BULLION FI	7900718	10000	1.400	0.700	0.800
ARABCO AFRIC PL	232500	4700	1.000	0.700	0.800
EXXARO AFRIC	374018	4000	1.000	0.700	0.800
IMPERY GOLD	300000	1000	1.000	0.700	0.800
INVESTEC PLC	340000	1000	1.000	0.700	0.800
INVESTEC LTD	700000	1000	1.000	0.700	0.800
LIBERTY INTL PLC	200000	1000	1.000	0.700	0.800

The JSE Securities Exchange Limited (JSE) recorded the highest number of trades and highest value of trades in its 120-year existence in August 2007.

In total, 80 268 equity trades were recorded to the value of R20,4 billion.

The records came on the heels of strong revenue growth recorded by the JSE for the interim six months to 30 June 2007, in which record volumes were recorded in the exchange's main three markets.

The previous record for volume was some 78 000 trades at the June 2007 futures close-out, and the previous record for value was achieved during June 2006.

can borrow locally up to 300% of the total shareholders' investment.

This ratio does not apply to emigrants, the acquisition of residential properties by non-residents or affected persons, and certain other financial transactions, such as portfolio investments by non-residents, securities lending, hedging, repurchase agreements, etc. In these cases, the 100% ratio still applies.

JSE Limited

Founded on 8 November 1887, the JSE is the sole licensed securities exchange in South Africa.

On 6 August 2001, the JSE acquired the business and assets of the South African Futures Exchange (Safex). Safex is now incorporated into the JSE in two divisions: the Financial Derivatives Division, which covers the equity and interest-rate futures and options markets; and the Agricultural Products Division, which covers commodities futures and options on maize, sunflower, soya beans and wheat.

In July 2005, after 118 years as a mutual association, the JSE celebrated its demutualisation and subsequently listed itself as a public company on 5 June 2006. The management and control of the JSE vests in the board, which has powers conferred to it by the Securities Services Act, 2004 (Act 36 of 2004), rules and the Constitution.

Regulation

As the frontline regulator of its primary and secondary markets, an independent regulatory

authority, the FSB, supervises the exchange. The Issuer Services Division of the JSE, together with two independent bodies – the Generally Accepted Accounting Practice (GAAP) Monitoring Panel and the Securities Regulation Panel – enforces compliance with GAAP and the protection of minority shareholders, respectively.

The Insider Trading Directorate of the FSB operates a stringent enforcement programme, with the support of the JSE, in respect of the secondary market. In turn, the JSE regulates its listed companies and broking members by extensive rules and directives in line with the Securities Services Act, 2004.

In November 1995, the JSE permitted ownership by foreign and corporate members for the first time. The move, part of a broader deregulation package designed to entice local and international investors, parallels the London stock market's "Big Bang" of 1986, although changes were phased in over time. These included closing the open-outcry market floor in favour of automated electronic trading, the introduction of fully negotiable commission, and dual-trading capacity.

International involvement

The JSE is the largest securities exchange in Africa and has a market capitalisation of several times that of all the other African markets combined. It has the third-largest market for single stock futures in the world, the ninth-largest market for options and futures in the world, it accounts for over 75% of the equities market in Africa, and its reserves grew from US\$31 million in 1999 to US\$83 million in 2006.

The JSE is committed to promoting South Africa, both regionally and internationally. In this regard, it has led the process of harmonising the listings requirements of the members of the Committee of SADC Stock Exchanges (COSSE). The COSSE envisages an integrated real-time national network of securities markets in the region.

The JSE has offered its trading platform to these members, and the Namibian Stock Exchange has been trading on the JSE's trading platform for the past eight years.

In addition, the JSE has played an instrumental role in creating the globally prominent Code of



Corporate Practices and Conduct (referred to as King II), which is a follow-up to the King I Code. The listings requirements of the JSE now require that all companies provide a report in their annual financial statement on their level of compliance with King II, including progress on the novel stakeholder aspects of the code.

Consistent with the objectives of the New Partnership for Africa's Development and by virtue of the JSE's position in the southern African region, the JSE remains committed to the concept of a Pan-African board, and is involved in trying to raise money to assist neighbouring countries to participate in this initiative.

Foreign investors

Since 1994, South Africa has restructured its economic policies to attract foreign investment. The transition has led to a significant improvement in the quality and inclusiveness of institutions. Prudent social reform has been coupled with accountable political institutions and sound macroeconomic management.

The economic rating agencies' reports confirm the presence of high levels of political stability. The JSE Limited plays a vital role in the South African economy by putting capital-providers in touch with capital-seekers. Thus, cash resources are channelled into productive economic activity, building the economy while enhancing job opportunities and wealth creation.

Listing on the JSE enables capital to be raised for the financing of new and expanding business and creating new employment opportunities. In addition, it provides a secondary market for dealing in securities by bringing together buyers and sellers in a manner that ensures transparent price discovery.

In this way, new investment opportunities are created in the country.

During the February 2004 Budget Speech, the Minister of Finance announced the further relaxation of exchange controls by approving foreign companies seeking to issue securities on the JSE and Besa. In line with the approval, international investors have unfettered access to securities listed on the JSE:

- No exchange controls of any kind are imposed on foreign investors or any non-resident parties.
- There are no limits on the repatriation of capital or income on foreign shareholders.
- There are no withholding taxes or other penalties applied to the repatriation of capital, interest or dividends by foreign investors.

- There are no foreign-ownership limits on South African securities.
- There is no separate registration process for foreign investors. All shareholders are reflected in the dematerialised register. Purchases or sales of shares by foreign shareholders are reflected in its electronic share registry by insertion of a flag.
- South Africa has a free-floating exchange rate traded in all global financial centres. The currency is one of the most liquid among upper-middle-income countries, with currency equivalent to 24% of South Africa's annual GDP traded every day.

The currency is backed by an extremely liquid and deep sovereign bond exchange (not affiliated to the JSE) to which foreign investors similarly have unfettered access.

JSE member firms and central securities depository participants offer custodian services to foreign investors.

Product developments

The JSE launched the Social Responsibility Index (SRI) in May 2004 to focus on corporate social responsibility and sustainable business practices, and to encourage socially responsible investment in South Africa. The SRI measures the triple bottom line performance, in terms of environmental, economic and social sustainability of companies listed on the FTSE/JSE Alsi.

The SRI criteria are customised to the South African and African context, and could be an aspirational benchmark for all organisations, regarding best practice in the triple bottom line.

Driven by the quest to demystify the market and the desire to broaden the national retail investor base by encouraging a wider spread of knowledge of the financial market and the growth of an investment culture in South Africa, the JSE introduced the University Investment Challenge at the beginning of 2005.

This concept is rooted in the JSE/Liberty Investment Challenge, which is a simulated trading experience designed to encourage secondary-school learners to learn about the market by trading phantom portfolios. The challenge has been running for over 35 years.

New listing requirements became effective in September 2003. These stipulate that when listed entities wish to delist, they must make an offer to minorities and obtain a fair and reasonable statement.

Listed companies are required to comply with international financial reporting standards for all financial years, starting in 2005. The Alternative

Exchange, better known as AltX, was launched in October 2003 as a parallel market or alternative exchange for small-to-medium and growing companies. It is Africa's first alternative market for innovative companies and investors. AltX provides an attractive investment area for investors interested in the growth potential of smaller stocks. It is the sum of a partnership between the JSE and government through the Department of Trade and Industry.

In July 2006, the JSE launched the first Can-Do Options on the equity derivatives market. Hard on the heels of the launch of Can-o Options, the first structured transaction on Yield-X was listed in September. Yield-X is a single platform for the trading of interest-rate products on a yield basis. It is a single point of access and a one-stop shop.

The JSE Limited continually strives to run a low-cost, highly efficient market that offers a wide range of financial products to an ever-broadening investor community.

Bond Exchange of South Africa

Besa is an independent financial exchange operating under a licence granted annually by the country's securities-market regulator, the FSB. Besa is responsible for regulating the debt securities market in South Africa.

Operational developments

Government bonds are the backbone of the South African bond market. Some 85% of Besa turnover is in Republic of South Africa bonds, of which 22% is in standard trades, and 67% in repurchase agreements.

About 27% of Besa trade is concluded with non-residents and another 5% is traded offshore and settled through the South African settlement system. While bank lending remains the main source of corporate finance in most mature and emerging markets, the volume of corporate debt listed on Besa had steadily increased and topped 28,7% of listed debt as at 30 December 2006.

At the same time, Besa granted a listing to 725 debt securities issued by 91 borrowers with a total market nominal value of R725 billion (US\$103 billion). More than 60% of this debt was issued by central government (corporate issues account for 29%). SOEs and local authorities account for 11%.

A number of other trade associations are being formed to facilitate trading, clearing and settlement of their product types.

Regulatory developments

Besa has been approved by the Exchange-Control Department of the SARB for the listing of foreign registered entities wanting to list their debt securities on Besa. The Bond Exchange Actuarial Society of South Africa's total return indices consist of an all-bond index made of 20 different bonds.

By 31 December 2006, some 95% nominal of listed debt securities had been immobilised or dematerialised in the Central Securities Depository.

The rules for derivative trading have been approved by the FSB and trading has commenced primarily in listed swaps and forward-rate agreements (FRAs) (currently unlisted and listed trading is reported to Besa).

Besa's listing disclosure requirements for high-yield bonds and exchange-traded funds have been formulated and approved by the Listings Technical Committee.

Besa continues to provide in-house training and education to foreign and local delegations, schools, and tertiary and postgraduate institutions.

Market performance

Bond turnover

Since market turnover reached its record level in 2002 at R11,7 trillion, annual bond turnover reported on Besa has ebbed, dropping to R8,1 trillion in 2005.

The R153 yield declined from 11,86% on 1 January 2002 to 7,31% as at 31 December 2005. At the beginning of 2006, Besa estimated that market turnover for the year ahead would be of the order of R7,8 trillion.

However, against all expectations, nominal turnover increased during 2006 by 41% to R11,4 trillion. The number of matched trades increased marginally by 4%, from 298 000 trades in 2005 to 311 000 in 2006.

Government bonds remained the most traded instruments, contributing 93% to the total nominal turnover. Monthly market turnover in 2006 was higher year on year, reaching a near-record level of R1,2 trillion in October 2006.

Where non-residents were net sellers (R5,5 billion) of South African bonds in 2005, they became net purchasers of bonds totalling R26,8 billion in 2006, while their participation in trading activity increased from 32% in 2005 to 38% of turnover during the year under review.

Listed and unlisted derivative trades reported on the Bond Exchange of South Africa

Besa launched a fixed income derivative platform (Intersec) in September 2005 to facilitate the capture and confirmation of plain vanilla FRAs and swaps traded over-the-counter (OTC).

Since 2005, OTC trades reported on Intersec had increased from a total of 627 trades with a value of R159 billion to 1 063 trades with a value of R589 billion in 2006.

Besa launched its FSB-approved listed fixed-income derivatives during the course of 2006 and established the Derivatives Traders' Association, which had 12 members by mid-2007. Listed derivative trading activity had been slower in uptake and at the end of 2006, swaps with a value of R2,5 billion were reported.

Listed bonds

The number of listings on Besa increased from a nominal value in issue of R637 billion at the end 2005 to R725 billion in 2006, with a market cap of R830 billion. The listed debt instruments totalled 725 issues by 91 issuers.

Most significant was the annual increase in corporate listings from 22% of the total nominal value in issue to 29% in 2006.

The nominal value of the corporate listings increased from R140 billion in 2005 to R208 billion in 2006.

In 2006, exchange-control regulations were relaxed, allowing foreign issuers to list ZAR-denominated bonds on Besa and allowing investment managers an increased investment allowance should these funds be deployed for development into Africa.

Besa listed its first such "inward listing" towards the end of 2006, when Mauritius Commercial Bank raised funding of R350 million in the South African market.

Strate Limited

Strate Limited, the central securities depository for equities, is responsible for equities and fixed-income securities. According to a report by Global Securities Consulting Services Benchmarks Limited, which is represented by 10 global participating custodians, Strate is rated sixth in the world in terms of settlement risk, and third in terms of custody risk. These benchmarks measure settlement, safekeeping and operational risk among central securities depositories in a range of major and emerging markets.

Financial-sector continuity planning

The South African financial sector collaborates extensively in contingency planning for systemic risks that may disrupt settlement, financial intermediation and possibly economic activity in general. The primary objective of this co-operative arrangement is to identify crisis events that may threaten the stability of the South African financial sector and to propose appropriate plans, mechanisms and structures to mitigate such threats.

This arrangement also facilitates co-operation between key financial-sector institutions and regulators in times of a significant catastrophic event, to have the best chance of protecting staff, facilitating recovery and sustaining both a stable financial market and consumer confidence.

Although individual firms are responsible for managing and mitigating risks to their respective operations, the broader collaborative effort is focused on risks that threaten the financial sector as a whole. Such risks range from the impact of global economic threats to potential causes of major operational disruption.

These risks are regularly analysed and appropriate response strategies devised. In 2006, a programme of financial-sector continuity testing was initiated to hone the responses of financial-sector authorities to systemic threats.

This programme of testing will be expanded as financial-sector authorities extend their co-operative relationships to promote greater vigilance, in an environment of growing complexity.

Acknowledgements

Bond Exchange of South Africa
Business Day
 Development Bank of Southern Africa
 Estimates of *National Expenditure 2007*, published by National Treasury
Financial Services Board Annual Report 2006/07
 JSE Limited
 National Gambling Board
 National Treasury
 Office of the Auditor-General
 South African Reserve Bank
 South African Revenue Service
www.bondexchange.co.za
www.dti.gov.za
www.ffc.co.za
www.gov.za
www.jse.co.za
www.landbank.co.za
www.news24.co.za
www.nlb.org.za
www.responsiblegambling.co.za
www.sagoodnews.co.za
www.samint.co.za
www.sars.gov.za
www.southafrica.info

Suggested reading

Chip, K and Zenobia, I. *E-Commerce: A Southern African Perspective*. Cape Town: New Africa Books, 2004.
 Claassens, M and Van Zyl, A. *Budget Transparency and Participation 2: Nine African Case Studies*. Cape Town: Institute for Democracy in South Africa (Idasa), 2005.
 Collins, G. *Manage Your Money: Starting on the Right Track*. Durban: Butterworths, 2002.
 Fölscher, A. *et al. Transparency and Participation in the Budget Process: South Africa: A Country Report*. Cape Town: Idasa, 2001.
 Kohn, M. *Financial Institutions and Markets*. 2nd ed. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.
 Levin, A. *The Art of African Shopping*. Cape Town: Struik, 2005.
 Manuel, *Markets and Money: Essays in Appraisal*, edited by R Parsons. Cape Town: Double Storey Books, 2004.
 Musava, C, ed. *Behind Closed Doors: Secrecy in International Financial Institutions*. Cape Town: Idasa, 2006.
 Porteous, D and Hazelhurst, E. *Banking on Change: Democratising Finance in South Africa 1994 – 2004 and Beyond*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2004.
 Standing, G and Samson, M. *A Basic Income Grant for South Africa*. Cape Town: University of Cape Town Press, 2003.
Student Guide to the South African Financial System, edited by IJ Fourie, HB Falkena and WJ Kok. 2nd ed. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.
 Swart, N. *Manage your Money: Basic Financial Skills for South Africans*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2004.
 Van Zyl, C. *et al. ed Understanding South African Financial Markets*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2006.



SA YEARBOOK 2007/08 | FOREIGN RELATIONS



The Department of Foreign Affairs formulates, co-ordinates, implements and manages South Africa's foreign-policy and international relations programmes throughout the world.

These are guided by a commitment to promoting:

- human rights and democracy
- justice and international law
- international peace and internationally agreed mechanisms for resolving conflicts
- Africa in world affairs
- economic development through regional and international co-operation.

The department continues to implement its strategic priorities in line with government's foreign-policy objectives, outlined in the programme of the International Relations, Peace and Security Cluster.

South Africa and Africa

South Africa's development is inextricably linked to the development of Africa and the southern African region. Africa faces the challenge of positioning itself to address the marginalisation of the continent by engaging global role-players on socio-economic development and facilitating a fair and just global order.

African Union (AU)

The AU is Africa's premier institution and principal organisation for the promotion of the continent's accelerated socio-economic integration, which will lead to greater unity and solidarity between African countries and peoples. South Africa was instrumental in establishing the AU and its organs, namely the:

- Assembly
- Executive Council
- specialised technical committees
- financial institutions
- Permanent Representative Council
- Peace and Security Council (PSC)
- Pan-African Parliament (PAP)
- Economic, Social and Cultural Council (Ecosocc)
- Court of Justice
- African Court on Human and People's Rights
- African Commission on Human and People's Rights.

The financial institutions, African Monetary Fund, African Central Bank and African Court of Justice, still have to be operationalised.

The 53-member AU was officially launched in Durban on 9 July 2002, following its inaugural summit.

It replaced the Organisation of African Unity (OAU), which was established on 25 May 1963 in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia. The AU's objectives include:

- achieving greater unity and solidarity between African countries and the peoples of Africa
- defending the sovereignty, territorial integrity and independence of its member states
- accelerating the political and socio-economic integration of the continent
- encouraging international co-operation
- promoting peace, security and stability on the continent
- promoting democratic principles and institutions, popular participation and good governance
- promoting and protecting people's rights
- establishing the necessary conditions to enable the continent to play its rightful role in the global economy and in international negotiations
- promoting sustainable development at economic, social and cultural level, and integrating African economies
- promoting co-operation in all fields of human activity to raise living standards
- promoting research in all fields
- eradicating preventable diseases and promoting good health on the continent.

The interim Ecosocc was launched on 29 March 2005 in Addis Ababa. The South African Chapter was launched with nine civil-society organisations elected as a secretariat from the following sectors: women, youth, religious groups, organised labour, non-governmental organisations (NGOs), lawyers, cultural groups and people with disabilities.

On 16 September 2004, the PAP was inaugurated at Gallagher Estate in Midrand, South Africa. The PAP's current premises are temporary until 2010. Preparations are under way to identify a suitable site and construct the permanent headquarters of the PAP in South Africa.

The PAP is fully functional, although decisions emanating from sessions are not yet binding on member states. The current status quo of the PAP as an advisory body will be reviewed in 2009. South Africa has ratified the Protocol on the African Court of Human and People's Rights. The Transvaal Judge President, Justice Bernard Ngoepe, has been appointed to an 11-member judiciary to serve on the court.

In May 2007, African ministers converged in Durban, KwaZulu-Natal, to debate Africa's political and economic integration at the AU Foreign Ministers' Retreat and Executive Council meeting.

The eight existing regional economic communities (RECs), which include the Southern African Development Community (SADC) and the Economic Community of West African States (Ecowas), have begun to determine time lines to achieve free trade agreements and customs unions.

Promoting peace, security and stability on the continent

The AU is responsible for the peaceful resolution of conflict among member states, through such appropriate means as may be decided upon by the AU Assembly.

The PSC Protocol took effect in December 2003 and comprises 15 member states. The PSC was launched in Addis Ababa in May 2004. As a collective security and early warning arrangement, the PSC allows for a timely and effective response to conflicts and crises in Africa.

In terms of PSC statutes, all African countries should establish their own early warning centres and there should be a continental early warning centre in place by 2008.

The AU PSC Protocol provides for the creation of the African Standby Force, to be operationalised over 10 years.

The second extraordinary session of the AU Assembly, held in Libya in February 2004, adopted the Common African Defence and Security Policy.

Socio-economic development and integration of the continent

The AU is the principal institution responsible for promoting sustainable development at economic, social and cultural level, as well as integrating African economies. RECs are recognised as the building blocks of the AU, necessitating the need for their close involvement in formulating and implementing all AU programmes.

To this end, the AU must co-ordinate and take decisions on policies in areas of common interest to member states, as well as co-ordinate and harmonise policies between existing and future RECs, for the gradual attainment of the AU's objectives.

Seven specialised technical committees are responsible for the actual implementation of the continental socio-economic integration process, together with the Permanent Representatives Committee.

New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad)

The adoption of Nepad as the socio-economic development programme of the AU is considered one of the most important developments of recent times, placing Africa at the apex of the global agenda by:

- creating an instrument for advancing people-centred and sustainable development in Africa, based on democratic values
- being premised on the recognition that Africa has an abundance of natural resources and people who have the capacity to be agents for change, thus holding the key to its own development
- providing the common African platform from which to engage the rest of the international community in a dynamic partnership that holds real prospects for creating a better life for all.

The expected outcomes are:

- economic growth and development, and increased employment
- a reduction in poverty and inequality
- diversification of productive activities
- enhanced international competitiveness and increased exports
- increased African integration.

A major effort of the AU-mandated Nepad is to continuously factor Nepad imperatives into the outcomes of international conferences to ensure its integration into the global multilateral system.

In a wider context, countries of the South subscribe to the priorities outlined by Nepad and have pledged their solidarity and moral support, as well as an appreciation for South Africa's positive role in Nepad.

To this end, the New Asia-Africa Strategic Partnership (NAASP) was inaugurated in Indonesia in April 2005.

Structures

Heads of State and Government Implementation Committee (HSGIC)

The Nepad HSGIC reports annually to the summit of the AU. The chairperson of the AU Commission is an ex-officio member of the Implementation Committee, and the AU Commission is expected to participate in steering committee meetings.

The Implementation Committee comprises 20 states (four per AU geographic region), including the five initiating states: South Africa, Nigeria, Algeria, Senegal and Egypt.

The main function of the Implementation Committee is to set policies, priorities and Nepad's programme of action.

Steering Committee

The Steering Committee comprises representatives of the 20 HSGIC members. It is tasked with developing the Terms of Reference for identified programmes and projects, and overseeing the Secretariat.

Secretariat

The Nepad Secretariat co-ordinates implementation of projects and programmes approved by the HSGIC. The full-time core staff of the Secretariat, located at the Development Bank of Southern Africa in Midrand, provides liaison, co-ordination, and administrative and logistical functions for Nepad.



South Africa is to establish and host the Permanent Court of Arbitration (PCA) for Africa, a branch of the PCA in The Hague, Netherlands, to help resolve interstate and non-state disputes on the continent.

This follows an agreement signed on 17 April 2007 between the Minister of Foreign Affairs, Dr Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma, and Mr Tjaco van den Hout, Secretary-General of the PCA.

The African PCA's mandate will mirror that of the international PCA, which was established in 1899 as the first global institution to promote the peaceful settlement of disputes between countries.

South Africa became a member of the PCA when it signed the Convention for the Pacific Settlement of International Disputes in 1997.

The establishment of a regional facility for Africa will offer an alternative means of settling disputes by bodies such as the African Court of Justice and the International Court of Justice.

The African PCA will also be more flexible and offer a greater degree of autonomy to the parties in dispute, as they will have the freedom to choose the arbitrators, rules and procedures to be applied in each case.

The facility will help countries with fact-finding missions, conciliation and arbitration through professional administration and expert guidance.

After an initial focus on interstate disputes, the International PCA now also assists in disputes between countries and foreign investors.

The PCA has, over the past decade, experienced a considerable increase in its caseload, which now includes disputes over investments and contracts, maritime delimitation, international boundaries, banking and finance, international humanitarian law and environmental law.

The PCA has also opened a regional facility in Costa Rica to service the Latin American region.

The AU's mechanisms for peer review and conflict resolution reflect commitment to human rights, democratisation, good governance, and peace and security.

The African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM) is the mutually agreed African instrument for self-monitoring by participating member states of the AU.

The APRM's primary purpose is to foster the adoption of policies, standards and practices that lead to political stability, high economic growth, sustainable development and accelerated subregional and continental economic integration, by sharing experience and reinforcing successful and best practice, including identifying deficiencies and assessing the need for capacity-building.

The APRM is a flagship programme that has received international acclaim. By mid-2007, reviews had been completed in Ghana, Rwanda, Kenya, Algeria and South Africa, and 26 countries had acceded to the APRM. The APRM process is addressing corruption, poor governance and inefficient delivery of public goods and services.

In July 2007, President Thabo Mbeki presented South Africa's response to the African Peer Review (APR) Panel's Country Review Report at the seventh Summit of the APR Review Forum in Accra, Ghana.

The review report identified 18 South African best practices worthy of emulation. They included co-operative governance, popular participatory governance practices, Batho Pele, Thusong Service Centres (formerly multipurpose community centres), the highly consultative Budget-formulation process, achievements of the South African Revenue Service, the Johannesburg Securities Exchange and triple bottom line reporting, the Mzansi account for the unbanked, the Financial Services Charter, the King Commission's reports, self-reliance in development funding, provision of basic needs and socio-economic rights, and the successful promotion of gender equality in the public sector.

In September 2007, government, civil society and business convened for the National Workshop of the Programme of Action (PoA) of the APRM. The workshop, chaired by the Minister for Public Service and Administration, Ms Geraldine Fraser-Moleketi, outlined features of the country review

report and the broad strategic thrust of the PoA. The key aims of the meeting were to map out how the PoA will be implemented and clarify the role of each stakeholder in the implementation phase.

Southern Africa

Angola

After the ceasefire of 2002 in Angola, following decades of war, peace still prevails in that country. The signing of the ceasefire agreement ended one of Africa's most protracted and devastating wars. The Memorandum of Commitment between the Angolan Government and the National Union for the Total Independence of Angola, which was signed on 26 August 2002, is regarded as a watershed in the road to peace and reconciliation. It was agreed then that elections would be held as soon as circumstances allowed it.

South Africa committed itself to assisting Angola with its post-conflict reconstruction projects and programmes. The first session of the Joint Commission of Co-operation (JCC) was held in Pretoria in February 2003. Subsequently, significant progress was made in identifying, negotiating and finalising numerous agreements.

Since the Angolan Government's announcement that it intends holding presidential and general elections in 2008 and 2009 respectively, the South African Government has offered to provide technical assistance, if and when needed.

In May 2006, South Africa and the United Nations (UN) launched the Voluntary Repatriation for Angolan Refugees Programme to assist South Africa-based Angolan refugees in returning home.

In May 2007, a South African delegation visited Angola to prepare for an upcoming JCC meeting.

Lesotho

The ruling Lesotho Congress for Democracy won the National Assembly elections held on 17 February 2007.

In June 2007, President Mbeki hosted Prime Minister Pakalitha Mosisili of Lesotho on an official visit to Cape Town.

The most significant and visible beacon reflecting South Africa's bilateral relations with Lesotho is the Lesotho Highlands Water Project (LHWP), which qualifies as a Nepad project.

The project was started in 1986 as a joint venture to supply water to South Africa, especially the rapidly growing urban population in Gauteng, and to meet Lesotho's electricity needs. The project delivers about 780 million m³ of water to South Africa per year. By mid-2007, a feasibility study on

Phase II of the LHWP was being undertaken to ascertain costs and benefits for the two countries.

South Africa and Lesotho agreed to engage in a strategic partnership to assist Lesotho in accelerating its economic development to raise its status from that of a least-developed country (LDC). For this purpose, South Africa and Lesotho signed the Joint Bilateral Commission of Co-operation (JBCC) agreement in April 2001.

The JBCC was renewed in April 2006. In addition to strategic areas of co-operation, the JBCC also promotes the process of consolidating relations between South Africa and Lesotho. Since 2001, there has been significant sectoral co-operation between the two countries.

Various projects have been identified and implemented, such as the hydrological project, whereby the South African Department of Water Affairs and Forestry is providing Lesotho with technical assistance and capacity-building to improve hydrological data's quality and quantity by modernising data-collection equipment and network design.

Formal bilateral meetings under the auspices of the JBCC are held on a regular basis.

Botswana

Botswana's relations with South Africa are cordial and the country is a close neighbour and ally of South Africa. Botswana's long-standing support of the liberation struggle in South Africa led to the establishment of deep and strong mutual bonds between the peoples of the two countries.

In September 2007, the Deputy Minister of Foreign Affairs, Ms Sue van der Merwe, attended the 41st anniversary of the independence of Botswana.

The South Africa-Botswana Joint Permanent Commission for Co-operation strengthens the bilateral relations between the two countries. It provides a legal and institutional framework for close co-operation in various fields between the countries. Many bilateral agreements exist between South Africa and Botswana.

Malawi

Malawi is one of South Africa's main trading partners in the southern African region, with the trade balance in South Africa's favour.

South Africa-based companies increasingly interested in linking up with and establishing a presence in Malawi, range from the finance, telecommunications and the retail sectors, to those in the construction industry.

By March 2007, the Department of Public Works had commenced with the design and construction of an embassy in Malawi. An agreement on bilateral co-operation between South Africa and Malawi was signed in May 2007 by the ministers of foreign affairs of the respective countries.

Indian Ocean islands

South Africa's political, economic and diplomatic relations with countries in the Indian Ocean islands remain strong.

South Africa, chair of the AU at the time, played a pivotal role in ensuring that peace prevailed in Madagascar, following political instability as a result of disputed election results in 2000.

It also played a meaningful role in accepting Madagascar's candidature to the SADC in August 2004.

South Africa, as co-ordinator of the countries of the region under the aegis of the AU, assisted in diffusing constitutional and political tension, resulting in the Fomboni Peace Agreement in 2000.

South Africa spearheaded the process of peace-building and reconciliation, and the return to constitutionalism. It continues to play an important role in the post-conflict reconstruction and development processes. These include assistance in building institutions of governance, macroeconomic planning and development, and capacity-building in the area of police training and public-service sectors.

South Africa is also involved in strengthening political and economic bilateral relations with

Mauritius and the Seychelles. Sectoral relations with these countries include arts and culture, tourism and environmental management, and poverty-alleviation programmes.

Comoros

On 19 June 2007, the Minister of Foreign Affairs, Dr Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma, as chairperson of the AU Committee of Countries of the Region on Comoros, hosted a meeting of ministers from the Comoros, Tanzania, Seychelles, Mauritius, Madagascar, Kenya and Mozambique to discuss the situation in the Comoros.

Minister Dlamini Zuma convened the meeting, which was also attended by the Vice President of the Comoros and the AU Commissioner for Peace and Security, Ambassador Said Djinnit, within the context of the AU's priority to consolidate peace, security and national reconciliation in the Comoros.

Discussions at the meeting focused on the current political situation in the Comoros, in addition to the organisation of the island's presidential elections.

The meeting requested the authorities of Anjouan to hold a free and fair presidential election, in compliance with the AU security plan.

Mozambique

South Africa and Mozambique share co-operative and friendly political and economic relations, both in a bilateral and multilateral context. Mozambique's economy continues to perform well and expectations are that the average growth rate of 7% that has been seen over the past 10 years will continue.

Mozambique remains South Africa's second-largest export market in southern Africa. South Africa and Mozambique's economic relationship is the strongest in the southern Africa region.

In May 2007, Cabinet approved the extension of the deployment of 70 South African National Defence Force (SANDF) members to Mozambique.

The deployment provided military assistance in the clearance and demolition of unexploded ordinance devices at the ammunition storage facility in Maputo, following an explosion at the facility in March 2007. The SANDF was expected to participate in the exercise until 15 July 2007.



In April 2007, South Africa launched the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) E-Schools Demonstration Project in Bushbuckridge, Mpumalanga.

Nepad approved the initiative in 2003, with roll-out in Egypt, Ghana, Kenya, Lesotho, Mauritius, Rwanda and Uganda. The programme was expected to be rolled out in another 12 countries in 2007.

The ultimate aim is to extend the programme to around 600 000 schools across the continent over the next 10 to 20 years.

Schools taking part in the project are equipped with a computer laboratory containing at least 20 personal computers, a server and network infrastructure, as well as peripherals such as scanners, printers and whiteboards.



In September 2007, President Mbeki and his counterpart, President Armondo Guebuza, co-chaired the South Africa-Mozambique Heads of State Economic Bilateral Commission in Pretoria.

The meeting and JPCC ensure the maintenance of sound political and economic relations between South Africa and Mozambique.

Forty agreements covering various spheres of co-operation have been entered into between the two countries. These include the Maputo Harbour, agricultural development, natural gas trade, demining, the Maputo Development Corridor, a joint water commission, promotion and reciprocal protection of investment, and custom administration.

Namibia

Co-operation in various areas marks the relationship between South Africa and Namibia.

The two governments often meet at high-level engagements such as the regular heads of state economic bilateral meetings. It focuses on joint economic co-operation projects such as spatial development initiatives, tourism, energy matters as well as matters related to the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu) and the SADC.

The Joint Commission on Defence and Security was established in terms of an agreement between South Africa and Namibia that was concluded in June 1997. The annual meeting aims to identify, discuss and promote co-operation regarding bilateral and regional issues of mutual interest in the fields of defence, state and public security.

In October 2007, President Mbeki co-chaired, together with his Namibian counterpart, President Hifikepunye Pohamba, the South Africa-Namibia Heads of State Economic Bilateral Meeting at the Presidential Guesthouse in Pretoria.

Swaziland

The Minister of Foreign Affairs, Dr Dlamini Zuma, and her former Swaziland counterpart, Senator Mabili Dlamini, established the JBCC on 20 December 2004 in Swaziland, which formalised bilateral relations between the two countries.

Tanzania

Bilateral relations with Tanzania are cordial and progress is being made in a wide range of fields of mutual interest. Both countries have experienced similar constitutional developments and challenges, and they share similar views on multilateral issues. Trade between South Africa and Tanzania is steadily increasing and a number of exchanges have taken place at official level to enhance co-operation. Close

co-operation takes place in a number of fields between the two countries, and memorandums of understanding (MoUs) and agreements on a wide variety of issues have been signed.

The Presidential Economic Commission provides the necessary co-operative framework to manage the development and implementation of bilateral projects.

On 5 April 2007, President Mbeki and his Tanzanian counterpart, President Jakaya Kikwete, co-chaired the South Africa-Tanzania Heads of State Economic Commission held in Dar-es-Salaam, Tanzania.

South Africa ranks as one of the top-10 countries investing in Tanzania and accounts for 10% of total investment in Tanzania. More than 100 South African companies are economically active in that country. The country rates as a premier investment destination with South African business.

According to the Tanzanian Investment Centre, as of December 2006, there were 111 South African companies investing in Tanzania. South African investments in Tanzania span a range of sectors.

Zambia

South Africa has established a deep mutual bond with Zambia, as evidenced by existing bilateral agreements and an annual increase in trade and investment flow between the two countries.

A senior officials meeting was held in February 2007 in Lusaka, Zambia, to lay the grounds for both ministerial and state visits.

In May 2007, South Africa, Zimbabwe, Zambia and Mozambique agreed on sharing the tourism spin-offs of the 2010 FIFA World Cup™, through “border free” tourism packages.

In September 2007, the Zambian Government entered into talks with South Africa’s Ministry of Environmental Affairs and Tourism to look at how best the two countries can promote tourism ahead of the 2010 World Cup.

Uganda

Official diplomatic relations between South Africa and Uganda were established in 1994. In July 2007, Cabinet approved the deployment of five SANDF members to be part of the AU mission in northern Uganda as military observers until March 2008.

Kenya

Kenya underwent the APRM process in 2006. In July 2007, Deputy President Phumzile Mlambo-Ngcuka addressed the Young Women Christian Association in Nairobi on the impact of HIV and

AIDS on African women. She was participating in her capacity as chairperson of the South African National AIDS Council, which promotes the vision of an HIV- and AIDS-free Africa.

While in Kenya, the deputy president officially launched the South African Broadcasting Corporation's East Africa Bureau.

Zimbabwe

Zimbabwe celebrated 27 years of independence on 18 April 2007.

Besides their geographical proximity, South Africa and Zimbabwe also have a common and long history of regional affiliation and cultural ties. The people of Zimbabwe also played an important role in supporting the liberation struggle against apartheid in South Africa.

Zimbabwe is experiencing political instability owing to the lack of progress in resolving political challenges between the Movement for Democratic Change and the ruling Zimbabwe African National Union Patriotic Front. Continuous isolation from Western countries is consistently exacerbating Zimbabwe's socio-economic and political challenges.

South Africa's engagement in Zimbabwe, within the AU and SADC context, is largely focused on encouraging an all-inclusive "party-to-party" dialogue between the main political role-players and encouraging them to find a home-grown solution as a basis for the challenges facing the country.

The relationship at government-to-government level between South Africa and Zimbabwe is cordial. At the close of the two-day extraordinary summit in Dar-Es-Salaam, Tanzania, in March 2007, the Heads of State and Government of the

SADC mandated President Mbeki to spearhead the promotion of dialogue among political parties in Zimbabwe.

Ethiopia

Bilateral economic relations with Ethiopia were revived in 1995 when South Africa opened an embassy in Addis Ababa. The SANDF has been deployed in Ethiopia in support of the AU PSC.

Development co-operation

South Africa is not a donor country, but development co-operation with countries in Africa is integral to the country's foreign policy. Assistance is wide-ranging and includes educational visits by agriculturists, establishing viable training centres, conserving the environment, rendering medical assistance, and technology-exchange programmes. Technical and financial assistance aimed at capacity-building, especially to SADC countries, is a major instrument for promoting economic development, peace and stability, democracy, and the African Renaissance on a regional basis.

South Africa and the Southern African Development Community

South Africa's vision for the southern African region involves the highest possible degree of economic co-operation, mutual assistance and joint planning consistent with socio-economic, environmental and political realities. Within the region, the SADC is the primary vehicle for South African policy and action to achieve regional economic development.

The SADC provides for regional peace and security, sectoral co-operation and an integrated regional economy. The SADC member states are Angola, Botswana, the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Lesotho, Malawi, Mauritius, Mozambique, Namibia, the Seychelles, South Africa, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia and Zimbabwe.

The SADC is a critical vehicle for developing the southern African region. South Africa has been engaged in restructuring the SADC to enable it to execute evolving AU mandates and to respond to changing development challenges. Considerable work has gone into establishing new institutions and reviewing existing ones.



By April 2007, South Africa was working with Mozambique, Swaziland and Zimbabwe in two separate cross-border malaria-control initiatives. The collaboration between Limpopo in South Africa and Matabeleland South in Zimbabwe, and the Lubombo Spatial Development Initiative involving South Africa, Swaziland and Mozambique, have contributed significantly to the decline in malaria cases in the region.



One of the organ's main functions is to ensure that regional peace and security arrangements are linked to continental arrangements.

The SADC is South Africa's major trading partner after the European Union (EU). The value of South Africa's agricultural trade has grown by 44% over the past six years since the implementation of the free trade area (FTA).

Southern African Development Community Trade Protocol

The SADC Protocol on Trade entered into force on 25 January 2000. Its objectives are to further liberalise intraregional trade in goods and services, on the basis of fair, mutually equitable and beneficial trade arrangements; to ensure efficient production within the SADC, reflecting the current and dynamic comparative advantages of its members; to contribute to the improvement of a climate for domestic, cross-border and foreign direct investment (FDI); to enhance the economic development, diversification and industrialisation of the region; and to establish an FTA in the SADC region.

At the core of this agreement is the reduction and ultimate elimination of tariff and non-tariff barriers, and the setting up of rules of origin by 2008.

Relations with central Africa

South Africa continued to strengthen its bilateral relations with the countries in the central African region during 2006/07. The embassies in Cameroon, Gabon, Congo and Equatorial Guinea are fully staffed and officials represent South Africa in Chad and São Tomé and Príncipe. An honorary consul has been appointed in the Central African Republic (CAR) to assist with South Africa's programmes in that country.

Gabon

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Gabon were established in 1992. A legal framework was created through the signing of a co-operation agreement, and further agreements were signed during the State Visit of President Mbeki to Gabon in August 2005.

A co-operation agreement on defence was signed in August 2006, bringing the number of bilateral agreements between the two countries to 10.

São Tomé and Príncipe

Diplomatic relations between São Tomé and Príncipe and South Africa were established in May

1994. By mid-2007, South Africa operated a satellite office in São Tomé and Príncipe under the accreditation of the embassy in Libreville, Gabon.

A general co-operation agreement between São Tomé and Príncipe and South Africa was signed in 2005 during the visit of Minister Dlamini Zuma to that country. Among other things, the agreement provides for the provision of technical assistance to members of the Public Service of that country.

Congo

South Africa opened an embassy in Brazzaville in Congo in 2005. President Mbeki visited Congo at the end of 2005, during which several agreements were signed.

Equatorial Guinea

Full diplomatic relations between Equatorial Guinea and South Africa were established in May 1993. The two countries have since signed three bilateral agreements. By mid-2007, plans were under way to establish a JCC. The South African oil company, Petro-SA, is involved in oil-exploration activities in that country.

Cameroon

During 2006, South Africa and Cameroon signed a general co-operation agreement, a trade agreement and an MoU on economic co-operation.

These agreements set the framework for the strengthening of relations and business activity between the two countries.

With its population of over 16 million, infrastructure, economy, strategic location on the Gulf of Guinea and its membership of both the Commonwealth and the Francophonie, Cameroon can be regarded as a stabilising factor in the central African region.

It exports agricultural products to its neighbours and plays a role as outlet to the sea to its landlocked neighbours of Chad and the CAR. Cameroon is an active participant in the PAP and Nepad and is an important member of the Central African Economic and Monetary Community.

In May 2007, South Africa sent a team of six pathologists to Douala, Cameroon, to help identify victims of a Kenya Airlines crash that killed 114 passengers and crew members. The pathologists assisted the Cameroonian and Kenyan authorities with victim verification.

Central African Republic

In April 2006, President Mbeki invited his counterpart from the CAR, President Francois

Bozize, on a working visit to South Africa. During the visit, a framework co-operation agreement was signed, providing the basis for future co-operation.

The Minister of Defence, Mr Mosiuoa Lekota, visited the CAR in May and December 2006 to further strengthen relations between the two countries. During a second working visit of President Bozize in February 2007, an MoU on defence co-operation was signed.

By mid-2007, the South African High Commissioner in Cameroon was responsible for relations with the CAR.

The economy of the CAR is in a poor state, after many years of internal political instability. The AU has appealed for assistance for the Multinational Force of the Central African Economic and Monetary Community in the CAR, and for the restructuring of the armed forces of the Central African Army.

Financial and economic assistance from bilateral and multilateral partners will also be necessary to ensure that stability is maintained.

In 2006/07, the SANDF provided support to the CAR in repelling attacks from northern rebels seeking to overthrow the democratically elected government.

In September 2007, South Africa's Cabinet approved the deployment of 85 SANDF members to assist with the capacity-building of that country's defence force.

Chad

The new South African Embassy in Chad was expected to become fully functional during the course of 2007. The Chadian Government is planning to open an embassy in Pretoria in the near future.

There is an increasing flow of businesspeople between South Africa and Chad, and a delegation of senior government officials travelled to Chad in 2006 to discuss the implementation of the General Co-operation Agreement between the two countries.

By mid-2007, there was interaction between the two governments on the volatile situation in the east of Chad, where more than 200 000 refugees from the Darfur region of Sudan were being sheltered.

Rwanda

Full diplomatic relations were established between South Africa and Rwanda in May 1995. The two countries maintain good political relations. Their co-operation focuses on the post-conflict reconstruction of Rwanda and has extended to the co-ordination of Nepad on the continent.

To further strengthen this bilateral structure, the Implementation Monitoring Committee has been established at director-general level to provide the necessary co-ordinating, planning and monitoring framework to manage effective implementation of approved programmes, and to ensure the delivery of cross-cutting training and human-resource (HR) capacity-building programmes.

In 2006, Rwanda underwent the APRM process.

Burundi

South Africa's good relations with Burundi are demonstrated by the leading role the Government played in the Arusha Peace and Reconciliation Agreement signed by representatives of the main Hutu and Tutsi political parties, the Government of Burundi, and the National Assembly on 28 August 2000.

The agreement provided the foundation for the transition to democracy, peace and development in that country. South African diplomacy efforts, under the leadership of former President Nelson Mandela, were central in facilitating the Arusha Agreement. The pivotal point of the agreement was the political power-sharing between the Tutsis and the Hutus.

Burundi held its first democratic election since 1993 on 4 July 2005. The 21-member South African observer mission concluded that the elections were executed in a transparent manner.

South Africa's contribution towards the establishment of peace and stability in Burundi included the deployment of SANDF troops, with an African peace mission in Burundi, now recapped as the UN Operation in Burundi.

South Africa supported the election process financially by providing election material for the 2005 referendum and election.

In September 2006, President Mbeki attended the signing of a cease-fire agreement between the Government of Burundi and the Palepehutu-FNL.



South Africa has committed itself to working with the regional leadership, the Government and the people of Burundi, including the leadership of the Palephutu-FNL, in finding a long-lasting solution to their current challenges.

Democratic Republic of Congo

The DRC has made remarkable progress and presents real opportunities for intraregional economic co-operation, foreign direct investment (FDI) and sustained growth and development. However, cycles of conflict have severely undermined both African and foreign-investor confidence, further weakened indigenous economic development, and increased dependence on foreign loans and assistance.

South Africa is fully committed to continued engagement with the DRC, and to assisting the new democratically elected government with its consolidation of democracy, in line with its foreign-policy objectives. South Africa has also committed to providing ongoing assistance to the new Government to reform the DRC's economy, and is supporting measures to encourage a predictable and stable economic environment to unlock investment and trade opportunities between the two countries.

During 2006, South Africa rendered extensive support for the election process. It deployed a 108-person election observer mission in the DRC during the general and presidential elections in July 2006, and for the second round of the presidential election in October 2006. The Department of Foreign Affairs is continuing with a comprehensive capacity-building project for the DRC's Ministry of Foreign Affairs and International Co-operation.

By mid-2007, the Department of Public Service and Administration had completed the Public Service census in Kinshasa and was proceeding with the capturing of data from the Bandundu and Bas-Congo provinces. The department also runs an anti-corruption project for the DRC's public officials.

The presidential BNC between South Africa and the DRC provides a legal framework to manage the numerous post-conflict reconstruction and development projects in that country.

In June 2007, President Mbeki hosted his counterpart from the DRC, President Joseph Kabila, for bilateral talks. Presidents Mbeki and Kabila co-chaired the fourth session of the South Africa-DRC BNC, held in Kinshasa on 21 August 2007.

Relations with North and West Africa and the Horn of Africa

During 2006/07, South Africa expanded and consolidated its bilateral relations with the region.

The following key performance areas were achieved in the region:

- promoting the African Agenda in North Africa
- strengthening AU structures in the region
- contributing towards peace, stability, security and democracy in North Africa
- consolidating and enhancing strategic and structured bilateral relationships with the countries of North Africa
- economic diplomacy and tourism promotion
- promoting public diplomacy
- promoting South-South and North-South agendas.

Algeria

Algeria remains South Africa's strategic partner in North Africa. Synergy at the executive level in terms of the AU and Nepad has resulted in a presidential BNC. Bilateral trade and economic links have developed steadily. South Africa's economic reach to Algeria includes possible involvement in the energy (hydrocarbons) sector.

South Africa has continued its co-operation with three important AU institutions based in Algiers, namely the Centre for the Study and Research on Terrorism, the African Energy Commission and the Pan-African Youth Union.

Bilateral trade between the two countries amounted to R1,1 billion in 2006. South African exports to Algeria totalled R1,1 billion, while imports from Algeria amounted to R7,9 million.

Since the establishment of the presidential BNC in 1998, 24 co-operation agreements have been signed. By mid-2007, a solid legal framework existed and additional agreements were being negotiated.

In 2006, Algeria underwent the APRM process. In July 2007, Algeria hosted the ninth All Africa Games.

The third meeting of the Algeria-South Africa Joint Committee on Science and Technology took place in February 2007.

During the visit, concrete progress was recorded in the co-operation areas of microsatellite applications, radiation sciences, laser technology, agriculture and poverty alleviation.

Côte d'Ivoire

South Africa established full diplomatic relations with Côte d'Ivoire in May 1992. Given its firm commitment to the African Renaissance and its attendant features of stability, democratisation and development on the continent, South Africa will continue to promote the restoration of peace and stability in Côte d'Ivoire.

In this regard, South Africa's mediation efforts, under the auspices of the AU, culminated in the signing of the Pretoria Agreement in April 2005.

South Africa continues to support peace efforts in Côte d'Ivoire. The South African Government welcomed the "flame of peace" ceremony, held in July 2007 to officially launch the disarmament process by setting fire to weapons handed over by rebels. A brigade of the 37th Battalion in Yamassoukro was named after President Mbeki, to mark the role played by South Africa in general, and the president in particular, in bringing about a resolution to the crisis in Côte d'Ivoire.

Egypt

South Africa and Egypt continue to enjoy cordial bilateral relations. In 2006/07, the following significant developments took place:

- Petro SA was awarded an oil-exploration permit in the Suez basin.
- The mid-term review by senior officials of the JBC was held in November 2006 in South Africa. This review confirmed the cordial bilateral relations between the two countries.
- South Africa and Egypt co-ordinated their positions in International Atomic Energy Agency meetings on non-proliferation in the Middle East.
- Regular sport and cultural exchanges.

Sudan

President Mbeki paid a working visit to Khartoum and Juba in Sudan in April 2007.

His discussions with his Sudanese counterpart, President Omar el-Bashir, and First Vice President, Mr Salva Kiir, took place within the context of South Africa's priority to encourage the full implementation of the AU-United Nations (UN) agreement on the hybrid force for Darfur and the Comprehensive Peace Agreement between the North and the South.

In August 2007, the UN and AU convened Darfur peace talks in Arusha, Tanzania.

Morocco

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Morocco remain cordial, but are influenced by South Africa's recognition of the Saharawi Arab Democratic Republic (SADR), which took place in 2004, as well as South Africa's principled stand on

the issues of decolonisation and self-determination in relation to the illegal occupation of Western Sahara.

Saharawi Arab Democratic Republic

The issue of the illegal occupation of Western Sahara remains a foreign-policy priority for South Africa, especially in terms of the sanctity of colonial borders and the recognition of the Saharawi people's right to self-determination. The following developments are relevant:

- To strengthen international co-operation, South Africa attended the International Conference of Solidarity with the Saharawi People on the occasion of the commemoration of the 31st anniversary of the proclamation of the SADR, held in Tifariti from 24 February to 1 March 2007. Officials also participated in the 32nd annual European Conference for Co-ordinating Support for the Saharawi People, held in Spain in November 2006.
- In July 2006, the South African Government hosted Aminatou Haidar, renowned Saharawi human-rights activist. In November 2006, the Department of Foreign Affairs also co-hosted a human-rights seminar on the situation in the illegally occupied territory of Western Sahara in co-operation with the South African Human Rights Commission.
- In July 2006, the department hosted the Saharawi Minister and Chief Negotiator, Mr Mohamed Khadad, and the Minister for International Co-operation, Mr Salek Baba. Mr Khadad again visited South Africa at the end of 2006 to conduct political consultations.
- The department facilitated and continued its humanitarian-assistance funding for the SADR through the African Renaissance Fund.

Mauritania

During 2006/07, South Africa expanded the bilateral legal framework between the two countries and supported the implementation of the democratic roadmap undertaken by the military transitional government following the coup d'état of August 2005.

South Africa also supported the lifting of the AU suspension of the country on 10 April 2007. In this



regard, South Africa participated in the constitutional referendum in June 2006, legislative and municipal elections in December 2006 and presidential elections in March 2007, as part of the AU Observer Mission for Mauritania.

The Islamic Republic of Mauritania opened a resident diplomatic mission in South Africa during 2006.

Liberia

Africa's first female head of state, Liberian President Ellen Johnson-Sirleaf, was inaugurated in Monrovia on 16 January 2006.

In March 2007, Cabinet approved a request from the African Development Bank (ADB) for South Africa to contribute to clearing Liberia's unpaid debt to the bank. The Liberian economy deteriorated following the civil war in 1989. However, since the election of President Johnson-Sirleaf, the economy has shown signs of recovery, with real gross domestic product (GDP) growth of 5,3% in 2005 and a projected growth of 7,7% in 2006/07.

South Africa was expected to provide US\$3,6 million (about R26,28 million), amounting to 6,25% of the amount requested from bilateral donors, as the country's contribution to the clearance of Liberia's unpaid debt to the ADB.

Nigeria

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Nigeria were established in 1994.

The two countries maintain good bilateral relations. The BNC, established in 1999, provides a framework through which these relations are solidified. The two countries have signed bilateral agreements in the following areas: trade, minerals and energy, agriculture, education, defence, police matters, arts and culture, science and technology, transport, sports and recreation, health, public enterprises, immigration, communications and justice.

Nigeria is one of South Africa's largest trading partners on the African continent. In May 2007, President Mbeki attended the inauguration of President Umaru Yar'Adua.

Ghana

Diplomatic relations were established between Ghana and South Africa in 1994.

South Africa and Ghana maintain good bilateral relations. President Mbeki visited Accra on 6 March 2007 to participate in celebrations marking Ghana's 50th anniversary of independence. This is of particular significance as Ghana was the first

sub-Saharan country on the continent to gain its independence.

South Africa and Ghana have agreements in the following areas: mining, defence, taxation, investment and aviation. A number of technical exchanges took place between South Africa and Ghana in 2006, including in the fields of defence and aviation.

In April 2007, Ghana's Vice-President, Mr Alhaji Aliu Mahama, visited South Africa on official business. He paid a courtesy visit to his South Africa counterpart, Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka.

In May 2007, Minister Dlamini Zuma and her counterpart, Ms Nana Addo Dakwa Akufo-Addo, co-chaired the inaugural session of the Permanent JCC in Pretoria. The meeting followed a bilateral meeting between presidents Mbeki and Kufuor in Pretoria in May 2007.

Burkina Faso

South Africa and Burkina Faso established non-resident diplomatic relations in May 1995. In 2006, South Africa established a diplomatic mission in Burkina Faso.

Although Burkina Faso has limited exploitable resources, opportunities exist for South African mining companies to mine gold, zinc and manganese. Since agriculture is the dominant industry, opportunities exist for the trade of various agricultural products. SpoorNet is one of the few large South African companies involved in Burkina Faso. Trade between the two countries is limited. In terms of total trade with South Africa, Burkina Faso is South Africa's 11th-largest partner in the West African region.

In April 2007, Dr Dlamini Zuma hosted the Minister of Foreign Affairs and Regional Co-operation, Mr Youssouf Ouedraogo, for bilateral political and economic discussions.

They signed the agreement to establish the South Africa-Burkina Faso JCC. They also welcomed the decision of both governments to open diplomatic missions in their respective capitals. Burkina Faso is the current chair of the Ecowas and helped broker the Ivorian Political Accord in Ouagadougou in March 2007.

Benin

Diplomatic relations were established between Benin and South Africa in May 1994. South Africa and Benin maintain good bilateral relations. The two countries signed a general co-operation agreement in October 2003. They have, among other things,

identified the following areas of co-operation: agriculture, arts and culture, and justice.

President Mbeki visited Benin in March 2007 to further consolidate relations. An embassy was opened in Cotonou in February 2007. Benin opened an embassy in Pretoria in 1999.

Republic of Togo

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Togo were established in 1997. South Africa and Togo maintain good bilateral relations.

By mid-2007, economic relations were still limited. Phosphates comprise the bulk of South African imports from Togo. The South African Ambassador to Abidjan, Côte d'Ivoire, is accredited on a non-residential basis to Togo.

Cape Verde

South Africa and Cape Verde established diplomatic relations in 1994. South Africa's ambassador to Senegal is also accredited as South Africa's non-resident ambassador to Cape Verde, while the Cape Verdean Ambassador to Angola is accredited to South Africa as non-resident ambassador.

The Gambia

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and The Gambia were established in August 1998. While South Africa's ambassador to Senegal is accredited to The Gambia as non-resident ambassador, the Gambian Ambassador to the AU in Addis Ababa is accredited to South Africa as this country's non-resident ambassador.

Guinea

Diplomatic relations were established with the Republic of Guinea in 1995. South Africa opened a diplomatic mission in Conakry in November 2005.

In March 2007, Minister Dlamini Zuma held bilateral political and economic discussions with her counterpart from Guinea, Mr Mamadou Conte.

Guinea-Bissau

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Guinea-Bissau were established in October 1994. The South African Ambassador to Senegal is accredited as South Africa's non-resident ambassador to Guinea-Bissau. In August 2007,

Prime Minister Martinho Dafa Cabi visited South Africa. South Africa has since decided to open an embassy in Guinea Bissau.

Mali

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and Mali were established in 1994. The latter established an embassy in Pretoria in December 1995. A South African embassy was established in Bamako in November 2002, and the first South African Ambassador to Mali was appointed in November 2003.

Mali is a strong supporter of the African Renaissance initiative and Nepad. In August 2002, the Agreement on the Preservation of the Ancient Manuscripts in the Ahmed Baba Institute of Higher Learning and Islamic Research in Timbuktu was concluded between the two countries.

South Africa is supporting a project aimed at improving the preservation of these ancient manuscripts. They vary in content from religious treatises and poems, to documentary letters dealing with legal and commercial matters, while others relate to slavery, mathematics, astronomy, medicine and history – all of them subjects of immense interest to scholars and the African population at large. Three major objectives of the project are to:

- implement a conservation programme to protect and improve environmental storage conditions for the manuscripts
- rebuild the Ahmed Baba Centre to one of international stature while ensuring its architectural harmony with ancient Timbuktu
- promote academic study and public awareness of the magnificent and ancient African and Islamic heritage at Timbuktu.

The two countries are committed to promoting democracy and good governance, and there is substantial South African involvement in the Malian gold-mining sector. AngloGold and Randgold run operations in Mali. The first session of the South Africa-Mali JCC took place in Pretoria in August 2004.

Senegal

Full diplomatic relations between South Africa and Senegal were established in May 1994 and the two



countries' representative offices were upgraded to embassy level. Bilateral relations between South Africa and Senegal are based mainly on the Senegalese Government's strong support for the African Renaissance initiative and Nepad, and its strong commitment to promoting democracy and good governance.

In March 2007, President Mbeki congratulated President Abdoulaye Wade on his successful re-election as the President of Senegal, during the presidential elections held in February 2007.

Tunisia

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Tunisia are characterised by a substantial reservoir of goodwill towards expanding relations, including closer economic and trade ties. During 2006/07, the following developments were noted:

- The inaugural Joint Military Committee between South Africa and Tunisia was conducted in Cape Town.
- A Tunisian ophthalmology team visited South Africa and rendered voluntary eye-care treatments to communities in the Eastern Cape.
- The fourth session of the South Africa-Tunisia Business Forum took place in Pretoria in May 2006. The Tunisian Minister of Trade and Handicrafts, Mr Slaheddine Makhoul, held discussions with the Minister of Trade and Industry, Mr Mandisi Mphahlele.
- In October 2006, South Africa's first lady, Mrs Zanele Mbeki, visited Tunisia to investigate the country's successful poverty-alleviation programmes.

Libya

Bilateral relations between Libya and South Africa remain cordial. During 2006/07, the following significant developments occurred:

- Libya's Foreign Affairs Minister, Mr Abd-al-Rahman Mohamed Shalgham, visited South Africa in November 2006. The JBC between the two countries has been elevated to the level of deputy president.
- President Mbeki received special envoys from Libya pertaining to African and AU issues.

Sierra Leone

South Africa and Sierra Leone established diplomatic relations in 1998. The South African Ambassador in Côte d'Ivoire was accredited to Sierra Leone in December 2002.

Although the country remains poor, various accomplishments towards promoting democracy

and development have been achieved. In September 2007, President Mbeki congratulated President Ernest Bai Koroma on his successful election as the President of Sierra Leone.

Niger

Diplomatic relations were established between Niger and South Africa in May 1994. South Africa and Niger maintain good bilateral relations.

In July 2006, President Mbeki paid a state visit to Niamey, during which various fields of co-operation were identified, such as agriculture, mining and transport. Priority projects will be in the fields of milk pasteurisation and meat production.

Ms Aichatou Mindaoudou, Niger's Minister of Foreign Affairs, Co-operation and African Integration, paid an official visit to South Africa in April 2007. During their discussions they reviewed the state of bilateral relations; and regional, African and international issues.

South Africa is represented in Niger on a non-residential basis by its ambassador in Côte d'Ivoire. Niger is represented in South Africa by its ambassador in Ethiopia.

Relations with Asia and the Middle East Asia and Australasia

East Asia

South Africa's bilateral relationship with Japan has expanded across a wide spectrum and is strengthened with regular interaction between the two countries under the auspices of the bilateral Partnership Forum.

The forum was upgraded to the level of ministers of foreign affairs at the end of 2006, when Minister Dlamini Zuma paid an official visit to Japan at the invitation of Japanese Foreign Affairs Minister, Mr Taro Aso.

The Partnership Forum provides a framework within which both countries are able to continuously work towards strengthening, developing and broadening relations to the mutual benefit of both countries. Discussions are held over a wide spectrum of areas.

The exchanges in the fields of science and technology constitute a priority bilateral sector and are aimed at extending such initiatives to the benefit of the region at large.

A first exploratory meeting between South African and Japanese universities was expected to be held in 2007 at the University of Hiroshima, with a view to formally establishing the Japan-South Africa University Forum in 2008.

The Government of Japan has provided substantial assistance to the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA) and the Joint Initiative for Priority Skills Acquisition (Jipsa). Japan established the Japanese Jipsa Working Group in Tokyo in December 2006, which mobilises Japanese stakeholders from across the spectrum (public, private and civil-society institutions) to assist with HR capacity-building.

Japan became South Africa's number-one export partner in 2005, followed by the United Kingdom (UK), United States of America (USA) and Germany. It is South Africa's fourth-largest import partner after Germany, the People's Republic of China (PRC) and the USA. In the past decade, South Africa has consolidated its position as Japan's most important trading partner in Africa. Exports to Japan increased since 1992 from R4 billion to about R41,3 billion by the end of 2006, while imports from Japan in same period increased from R5 billion to R30,2 billion.

South Africa exports primary products such as base metals, agricultural products and manufactured goods to Japan while importing technology-intensive goods from Japan.

Two of the major Japanese automotive assemblers produce selected models in South Africa for world supply. The increase in production of vehicle exports from South Africa has encouraged further opportunities for investment in the automotive component sector. The Japan-South Africa Business Forum was created to facilitate business relations between the respective countries and meets biannually.

The Koreans

Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka visited the Republic of Korea (South Korea) in May 2007 at the invitation of the Prime Minister, Mr Han Duck Soo. The visit aimed to enhance bilateral relations between the two countries and to engage the Republic of Korea on AgsiSA and Jipsa and the contribution they can make to these programmes.

An extradition agreement and an agreement on mutual legal assistance in criminal matters co-operation were signed. South Korea is South Africa's fourth-largest trading partner in Asia and South Africa is Korea's largest trading partner in Africa.

Cultural and tourism links between the two countries are also becoming stronger. The number of Koreans studying in South Africa has increased significantly in the past decade. Each year, many Korean students travel to South Africa as an alternative destination for English-language training.

Relations between South Africa and the Democratic People's Republic of Korea (North Korea) are cordial. In March 2007, the two countries celebrated five years of the establishment of diplomatic relations. By mid-2007, conclusion of agreements on sport and culture between the two countries was under consideration.

Greater China

South Africa's bilateral relations with the PRC aim at advancing South Africa's bilateral, regional, trilateral and multilateral agendas. South Africa and the PRC share many of the same social and developmental challenges, including those induced by globalisation and historic inequity.

South Africa adopted the "One China" Policy in December 1997 and full diplomatic relations with the PRC in January 1998. Emphasising the strategic importance of these relations was the signing of the Pretoria Declaration on Partnership in April 2000 and the Programme for Deepening Strategic Partnership in June 2006. A BNC was established in 2002, the third session of which was scheduled to be held in Beijing during 2007.

During November 2006, President Mbeki concluded a state visit to the PRC.

Premier Wen Jiabao and President Hu Jintao visited South Africa in June 2006 and February 2007, respectively. At the conclusion of his visit, President Hu Jintao announced support for South Africa's AgsiSA and Jipsa by donating funds for setting up a vocational and an agricultural technology co-operation centre.

On 20 May 2007, Minister Dlamini Zuma held a bilateral meeting with her Chinese counterpart, Minister Yang Jiechi, in Beijing.

In September 2007, Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka visited the PRC.

South Africa is China's key trade partner in Africa, accounting for nearly 21% of the total volume of China-Africa trade. In 2006, South



African exports amounted to nearly R14,02 billion, with imports reaching R46,72 billion. In 2006, China became South Africa's second-largest import trading partner, and sixth-largest export partner. Total trade between South Africa and the Greater China region (PRC, Hong Kong, Macau and Taiwan) reached a massive R80,52 billion during 2006. South African exports in 2006 amounted to R23,54 billion, while South African imports from the region amounted to R56,98 billion.

The Forum on China-Africa Co-operation (FOCAC) was initiated in October 2000 as the chief instrument of engagement between the PRC and Africa. In January 2006, the PRC released a policy document on Africa that clearly spelled out its policy of engagement with Africa. In the November 2006 FOCAC Beijing Declaration, the PRC and Africa committed themselves to handle issues and challenges that may arise in the course of co-operation through friendly consultation in keeping with the China-Africa friendship and the long-term interests of the two sides.

China and Africa adopted the sector-specific Beijing Action Plan (2007 – 2009), based on the shared imperative to “promote friendship, peace, co-operation and development”, and to “advance the new type of strategic partnership between China and Africa” in keeping with the FOCAC Beijing Declaration.

President Hu Jintao announced that the PRC would, among other things, in the next three years:

- double its 2006 development assistance to Africa
- provide preferential credit to Africa worth US\$5 billion over the next three years
- establish a US\$5-billion development fund to encourage Chinese companies to invest in Africa
- cancel all interest-free government debt owed to the PRC by Africa's highly indebted countries and LDCs that have diplomatic relations with China
- radically open up the Chinese market to products from Africa's LDCs by removing all tariffs on 440 products, helping to train at least 15 000 African professionals, providing general scholarships for 4 000 African students to study in China, building rural schools in Africa, deploying agricultural experts in Africa and opening special agricultural technology centres in Africa.

Trade between the PRC and Africa reached \$55,5 billion in 2006, representing an increase of 40% year on year.

The PRC exported US\$26,7 billion to Africa, an increase of 43% over the previous year, while the PRC imported goods worth US\$28,8 billion from Africa, up 37%.

According to trade analysts, trade between China and Africa could reach US\$110 billion in the near future. The PRC is now Africa's third-largest commercial partner after the USA and France, and second-largest exporter to Africa after France.

Despite the absence of diplomatic relations, South Africa and Taiwan maintain vibrant trade, scientific, cultural and other relations, with representative offices in the respective capitals. Taiwanese investors in South Africa continue to enjoy full protection under South African law, and all the other benefits extended to foreign investors. Taiwan has 600 companies active in the South African economy, employing about 45 000 people.

South Asia

South Africa and Afghanistan established diplomatic relations in September 1994. South Africa never recognised the former Taliban regime and has normalised relations with the current Government. The South Africa Liaison Office for Afghanistan was established in 2003, headed non-residentially by the South African High Commissioner to Pakistan.

South Africa and Sri Lanka established diplomatic relations in 1994. In April 2007, the Deputy Minister of Foreign Affairs, Mr Aziz Pahad, hosted a senior Sri Lankan delegation in Pretoria for discussions aimed at sharing South Africa's constitutional experiences. The Sri Lankan delegation comprised the Minister of Social Services and Social Welfare, Mr Douglas Devananda, and the leader of the Tamil United Liberation Front, Mr Veerasingham Anandasangaree.

Deputy Minister Pahad hosted this delegation within the framework of South Africa's Road Map of Engagement with the broad leadership of Sri Lanka, with a view to address conflict resolution in that country. The Road Map aims to support the Norwegian-led facilitation team to promote dialogue and seek ways to return to peace negotiations.

The India-Brazil-South Africa (IBSA) Dialogue Forum, established in 2004, remains of strategic importance to all three countries as a powerful global forum to drive South-South co-operation, the agenda of the South, and to champion the needs of the developing world.

The fourth meeting of the trilateral commission of the IBSA Dialogue Forum took place in July 2007 in New Delhi. Minister Dlamini Zuma also held bilateral talks with her Indian and Brazilian counterparts. The second IBSA Summit took place in October 2007.

In August 2007, President Mbeki addressed the India Calling 2007: India-South Africa Business Conclave in Johannesburg. The conclave aimed to promote the two countries as attractive investment destinations and highlight unlimited business opportunities in both countries.

India is among the top-10 investing countries in South Africa, with investment estimated at R10 billion.

Diplomatic relations between South Africa and Pakistan were established in April 1994. A letter of understanding, establishing a joint commission (JC) between the two countries, was signed in 1999. The lifting of the Commonwealth suspensions that had been imposed on Pakistan paved the way for the normalisation of South Africa's relations with that country, and created the opportunity to engage on issues of mutual interest.

The first session of the South Africa-Pakistan Bilateral JC was held in Islamabad in March 2007.

Several South African and Indian businesses belong to the Indo-South Africa CEOs Business Forum that was established in 2004 to help stimulate trade and investment between the two countries.

The existence of opportunities for closer co-operation between South Africa and India have been identified in the capital equipment; agro-processed products; autos and components; services; information and communications technology (ICT), science and technology; health; and small, medium and micro-enterprise (SMME) sectors.

South-east Asia

The Association of South-East Asian Nations (Asean) has emerged as one of the most important groupings within the Asia Pacific region. South Africa maintains embassies and high commissions in six of the 10 member states of Asean –

Indonesia, Malaysia, Singapore, Thailand, Vietnam and the Philippines. These Asean states and Myanmar (Burma) also maintain embassies and high commissions in South Africa.

In April 2007, President Mbeki hosted his Singaporean counterpart, President Sellapan Ramanathan, the first Singaporean Head of State on a state visit to South Africa.

Singapore is an important member of the Indian Ocean Rim (IOR) of which South Africa is a member. Singapore has also played a leading role in formulating the NAASP. This partnership mandated all Asian and African countries to give expression to their political relations by expanding trade and economic relations.

Vietnam plays an increasingly important role in south-east Asia and has vast economic potential and opportunities for mining, infrastructure development, and agricultural and manufacturing companies.

President Mbeki paid a state visit to Hanoi, Vietnam, in May 2007; the first since 1994.

South Africa believes that there is large potential for economic relations and especially for the private sector to take up business opportunities in Vietnam. There are many long-term trade and investment opportunities for South African companies in that country. Economic relations with Malaysia and Indonesia remain important, due to Malaysian investment in South Africa and the size of the Indonesian market.

Malaysia has indicated its support for Nepal and has sought to promote the Malaysian-initiated Langkawi International Dialogue aimed at expanding co-operation among countries of the South, including those in southern Africa.

Central Asia

The economies of Kazakhstan, Uzbekistan, Turkmenistan, Kyrgyzstan and Tajikistan are all at various stages of change and development. Furthermore, all five are developing states and, like South Africa, seek investment.

Economic opportunities for South Africa in the Central Asian states include infrastructure development, mining technology, energy exploitation and related mining and engineering technology, agroprocessing expertise and exports,



Ms Sonia Gandhi, President of the Indian National Congress and leader of the ruling Indian Congress Alliance, visited South Africa for a two-day working visit in August 2007. Ms Gandhi was accompanied by the Indian Minister of State, Mr Anand Sharma.

She visited South Africa as part of ongoing efforts to strengthen and consolidate political, economic, trade and cultural relations between the peoples of South Africa and India.

water-management expertise, and infrastructure for adventure and ecotourism.

Australasia and the Pacific islands

South Africa and Australia established diplomatic relations in 1947 and enjoy very close political and economic ties. As campaigns for international isolation of South Africa intensified in the 1970s and 1980s, successive Australian governments placed Australia firmly in the anti-apartheid camp, supporting UN resolutions against apartheid and implementing the oil, trade and arms embargo as well as a sports boycott against South Africa.

New Zealand maintains a high commission in Pretoria, while the High Commission in Canberra represents South Africa in New Zealand.

Since 1994, political, economic and social links between the two countries have improved significantly. In 1996, the Cape Town Communique was signed, seeking to strengthen co-operation between South Africa and New Zealand.

The political relationship has been further strengthened through visits by numerous high-level delegations to New Zealand to gain expertise in their different fields and to exchange knowledge to enhance capacity-building in central, provincial and local-government structures.

South Africa and New Zealand enjoy wide-ranging multilateral relations. Both are members of the Valdivia Group, which aims to promote southern hemisphere views in international environmental meetings and enhance scientific co-operation.

They enjoy a close working relationship within the context of the Antarctic Treaty and Indian Ocean fisheries, and also interact within the context of the World Trade Organisation (WTO) and the Cairns Group.

South Africa and New Zealand also work closely on Commonwealth issues, particularly those affecting Africa. The South African Government wants to strengthen relations with the Pacific islands. The roving Ambassador to the Pacific islands has been accredited to the Independent State of Papua New Guinea, the Fiji islands and the Solomon Islands.

The High Commissioner in Canberra, Australia, has been accredited to the Cook Islands, Federated States of Micronesia, the Republic of Marshall Islands, the Republic of Vanuatu and the Independent State of Samoa.

The Middle East

In the Middle East, the Department of Foreign Affairs distinguishes between two clearly

identifiable subregions. On the one hand, there is the Levant, which comprises Israel, Iraq, Jordan, Lebanon, Palestine and Syria; and on the other is the Arabian/Persian Gulf Region, comprising the member states of the Gulf Co-operation Council, namely Bahrain, Kuwait, Oman, Qatar, Saudi Arabia, the United Arab Emirates (UAE), Iran and Yemen.

The Middle East is an important economic region as it occupies a unique geopolitical position in the tricontinental hub of Europe, Asia and Africa.

It is the source of 67% of the world's petroleum reserves and commands two of the most strategically important waterways in the world, namely the Arabian/Persian Gulf and the Red Sea, giving access to the Asian hinterland via the Gulf of Aqaba. South Africa places strong emphasis on the expansion of diplomatic representation and activities in this region, where it was formerly underrepresented, particularly in the area of trade, which has grown significantly since 1994.

The South African Consulate General in Jeddah, in addition to performing important functions relating to the promotion of trade, also serves members of the South African Muslim community on their annual pilgrimage to Mecca. More than 7 000 South Africans embark on the Hajj pilgrimage each year.

South Africa supports a just, equitable and comprehensive peace process in the Middle East and an end to the illegal occupation of land that has led to conflict and violence between the peoples of the region. Peace and security for the Israelis and the Palestinians cannot be achieved without the fulfilment of the inalienable right of the Palestinian people to self-determination within their own sovereign state.

South Africa has continued to call on all parties to the conflict in Israel and Palestine to avoid actions that could add to an already volatile situation. The country has been consistent in calling for the immediate implementation of the Road Map, without preconditions, to achieve comprehensive and lasting peace between Israel and Palestine.

In January 2007, Deputy Minister Pahad hosted his Syrian counterpart, Vice Minister of Foreign Affairs, Dr Faisal Mikdad, in Pretoria for discussions.

In May 2007, Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka attended a meeting with ambassadors of the Gulf states.

The meeting discussed, among other things, second-economy interventions, AsgiSA, Jipsa, and related trade and investment opportunities.

In March 2007, Deputy Minister Pahad visited Qatar and Iran.

In Iran, Mr Pahad led a senior South African delegation to the seventh IOR Association for Regional Co-operation (IOR-ARC) Ministerial Meeting. The IOR-ARC is a multilateral organisation comprising countries that share a shoreline along the Indian Ocean. It was launched in March 1997 in Mauritius to focus mainly on trade-related issues. The shared identity of a common historical experience of colonialism and imperialism also contributed to bringing together the leaders of states in the Indian Ocean region.

South Africa was one of the founding members of the IOR-ARC. The organisation is based on the principle of open regionalism, which is a flexible arrangement that compares very favourably with other regional arrangements such as preferential trade agreements, FTAs, customs unions and common markets. With several IOR-ARC member states sharing participation in other regional initiatives, the IOR-ARC plays an important role as a building block for promoting south-south co-operation and complementing African-Asian regional integration.

IOR-ARC member states include Australia, Bangladesh, India, Indonesia, Iran, Kenya, Madagascar, Malaysia, Mauritius, Mozambique, Oman, Singapore, South Africa, Sri Lanka, Tanzania, Thailand, the UAE and Yemen.

The Dialogue Partners (China, Japan, France, Egypt and the International Tourist Organisation) committed themselves to supporting the implementation of the association's priority programmes. The meeting also agreed to set up a special trust from which funds will be disbursed to various approved projects as grants, to push back the frontiers of poverty and underdevelopment for the peoples of the member states.

In March 2007, President Mbeki visited Riyadh, the capital of the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia.

While in Riyadh, President Mbeki met King Abdullah Bin Abdulaziz Al Saud to discuss, among other things, the status of bilateral, political and economic relations between the two countries.

The Avoidance of Double Taxation and the Prevention of Tax Evasion Agreement was signed between South Africa and Saudi Arabia. Saudi Arabia is a major supplier of crude oil to South Africa and has indicated a keen interest to invest in this country.

Relations with the Americas United States of America

The USA has been the largest single foreign investor in the South African economy since 1994, one of the largest single country trading partners, and the largest donor of official development assistance.

South Africa has, in the past two years, been the top recipient of development assistance from among the 27 African countries supported by the USA Agency for International Development. Support for Nepal within the US Administration, Congress and the business sector, with particular focus on implementing infrastructure-development projects, remains a high priority.

Regarding military-to-military co-operation, South Africa and the USA continues bilateral interaction on the topic of military medicine research within the Phidisa Programme (a clinical research project focused on the management and treatment of HIV-infection in the uniformed members of the SANDF) and the African Contingency Operations Training Assistance Programme, which is aimed at enhancing South Africa's peacekeeping and humanitarian-assistance intervention capabilities.

In 2006/07, emphasis was placed on achieving enhanced capacity, and creating the necessary mechanisms to facilitate the implementation of such ability throughout Africa.

The Sacu/US FTA negotiations encourage US support for economic development and co-operation, and also support the implementation of Nepal. A trade deputies meeting held in April 2006 decided that the comprehensive FTA would remain an objective in the long term, but that both parties would develop a joint work programme to address a broad range of FTA and other trade- and investment-related issues. Potentially in the near term, it will seek to conclude concrete trade- and investment-enhancing agreements. Such a framework (Trade and Investment Co-operation Agreement [TICA]) will establish the basis and form the building blocks for pursuing the FTA over the longer term.

In 2006/07, local capacity-building for research and effective delivery in the continuing battle against communicable diseases through the US Presidential Emergency Programme for AIDS

(PEPFAR) received a boost. Under the PEPFAR, Africa received more than US\$1 billion to fight the disease, of which South Africa obtained more than US\$220 million in 2006.

Various high-level meetings took place, such as the meeting between presidents Mbeki and George W Bush in Washington in December 2006.

The two presidents discussed:

- the status of bilateral political and economic relations between both countries
- conflict resolution and peacekeeping in Africa
- multilateral co-operation, including developments in the WTO negotiations and South Africa's accession to the non-permanent seat in the United Nations Security Council (UNSC).

In January 2007, Minister Dlamini Zuma visited Washington where she held discussions with her counterpart, Secretary of State, Dr Condoleezza Rice.

Canada

In January 2006, a new minority Conservative government, under Prime Minister Stephen Harper, was elected to power. A priority for 2006/07 became engaging with Canada under this new leadership. Achievements were registered on various fronts.

In May 2006, the third annual consultations between South Africa and Canada took place at senior officials' level in Pretoria. It featured a broader agenda from previous interactions.

The year produced significant investment outcomes with the announcement of major Canadian direct investment in the Gautrain by McCain Plant and Alcan totalling R27 billion.

The two countries have signed a bilateral Overseas Development Assistance Treaty, facilitating the transfer of development assistance from Canada to South Africa.

Two project implementation plans are under way, releasing R50 million each to the South African Management Development Institute and the Department of Health for capacity-building programmes.

The Caribbean

South Africa's relations with the independent member states of the Caribbean community were further strengthened and expanded during 2006/07. South Africa opened a high commission in Port-of-Spain and Trinidad and Tobago in early 2007.

Together with the High Commission in Kingston, Jamaica, these two missions now maintain

responsibility for Antigua and Barbuda, the Bahamas, Barbados, Belize, Dominica, Grenada, Guyana, Haiti, St Kitts and Nevis, St Lucia, St Vincent and the Grenadines, and Suriname. The mission in Havana, Cuba, is also responsible for relations with the Dominican Republic.

In formulating South Africa's policy in relation to the emerging markets of the Caribbean, it is important to strengthen relations and develop common positions on global issues such as access to the markets of the industrial North, reform of international institutions and the promotion of the development agenda.

The South African Government will increase its focus on strengthening relations with the Caribbean region in future.

Trinidad and Tobago, Jamaica and Suriname have diplomatic missions in South Africa.

In August 2007, the Minister of Social Development, Dr Zola Skweyiya, represented South Africa at the African Diaspora Global Conference, held in Barbados. Among other things, the conference sought to strengthen bonds of friendship and affinity among and between the people of the African continent, the Caribbean region and the world.

The conference set the tone for the AU Global Diaspora Conference held in November 2007 and ultimately an AU Global Diaspora Summit to be held in early 2008.

South Africa signed a bilateral co-operation agreement with the Bahamas in May 2005, and the first JBC met in September 2005. It focused on co-operation in agriculture, arts and culture, education and health. The next JBC was expected to be held in South Africa in 2007. The fifth Joint Consultative Mechanism between Cuba and South Africa was held in Cuba in July 2007.

In October 2006, the Secretary for External Relations of the Dominican Republic, Minister Carlos Morales Troncoso, visited South Africa and held bilateral talks with his South African counterpart, Dr Dlamini Zuma.

They signed a declaration of intent in which they stated their intention to undertake consultations, joint actions and projections on issues of common interest. During the visit, Minister Morales Troncoso also announced his country's decision to open a diplomatic mission in South Africa in 2007.

In September 2007, South Africa and Cuba signed an agreement of co-operation in the areas of:

- training of social workers and community development workers

- expanded public works programmes, with an emphasis on youth-employment creation in the early childhood development and care sectors.

Latin America

The South American community of nations covers 17 million square kilometres, with 361 million inhabitants, a GDP of more than US\$973 billion and exports of more than US\$180 billion. The developing countries in Central America and the Andean Community are playing an increasingly important role in international political bodies and formations such as the Non-Aligned Movement (NAM) and the UN.

In November 2006, President Mbeki and a South African delegation participated in the first-ever Africa-South American Summit, which took place in Abuja, Nigeria. The summit provided an opportunity for the two continents to meet for the first time to discuss issues of mutual importance.

There is also significant potential for co-operation with the Mercosur (Southern Common Market) trading bloc, which consists of Argentina, Brazil, Paraguay, Uruguay and Venezuela as full members, and a steadily increasing number of associate members in the Latin American region. A partial preferential trade agreement with Mercosur was signed in December 2004. Negotiations towards a full FTA continue.

Brazil remains a significant player in the multilateral context, particularly regarding the interests of the South. With its like-minded approach to a number of significant issues affecting the developing world, it is a strategic partner for South Africa.

In the bilateral sphere, a broad range of contacts and exchanges exist between Brazil and South Africa. The IBSA Dialogue Forum also provides a multilateral mechanism for institutionalised engagement. In this context, South-South co-operation was boosted by President Mbeki's attendance of the IBSA Summit in Brasilia in July 2006.

South Africa attaches great importance to its relations with other like-minded countries of the Southern Cone of Latin America such as Chile, Uruguay and Argentina, and to pursuing increased co-operation in a number of fields.

A range of technical and commercial agreements are either in place or being negotiated with several of the countries in the region. In addition, the inaugural meeting of the South Africa-Argentina JC took place in Pretoria in February 2007, co-chaired by Minister Dlamini Zuma and her Argentine counterpart, Mr Jorge Taiana. The JC with Brazil was expected to take place during 2007, as was the JC Mechanism with Chile.

South Africa's first lady, Mrs Mbeki, led a delegation to Chile in 2006 to study poverty-reduction programmes. Official and study visits to countries of the Southern Cone by ministers and officials are ongoing. In the sphere of defence, the navies of several Southern Cone countries and South Africa also participated in the Atlasur joint naval exercises, contributing to closer institutional ties.

In June 2006, Colombia's former Foreign Affairs Minister, Ms Carolina Barco, visited South Africa for bilateral economic and political discussions with Dr Dlamini Zuma. Bilateral trade flow between Colombia and South Africa is constant with the balance in favour of South Africa. SABMiller, Anglo American, Anglo Coal and AngloGold Ashanti are among the South African companies operating in Colombia.

Following a visit from President Evo Morales from Bolivia to South Africa in January 2006, a high-level South African delegation visited that country in July 2006 to explore ways of furthering bilateral relations.

An MoU on the establishment of a consultative mechanism was also signed. The inaugural meeting of this mechanism was expected to take place in 2007, to coincide with the opening of a Bolivian diplomatic mission in South Africa. The Vice President of Bolivia, Prof Alvaro Garcia Linera, visited South Africa in April 2007.

On 11 April 2007, Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka hosted her Bolivian counterpart, Vice President Alvaro Garcia Linera, for bilateral political and economic discussions.

Bilateral relations between South Africa and Venezuela have also been placed on a stronger footing.

South Africa hosted a delegation of the *Movimiento al Socialismo*, the majority party in the Bolivian Assembly, in May 2007. The Bolivian



delegation's visit was in response to the South African Government's offer to Vice President Linera, during his visit in April 2007, to assist the Bolivians with institution-building and the process of drafting their Constitution.

In July 2007, Deputy Minister Pahad headed a South African delegation to Mexico for bilateral political, economic and trade discussions. They also visited Panama.

Relations with Europe European Union

The EU accounts for almost 40% of South Africa's imports and exports. In 2006 alone, the EU's FDI into South Africa amounted to R4,6 billion.

In October 2007, South Africa signed an agreement that will see it receiving almost R10 billion in development aid from the EU over the next seven years. The EU is the world's largest trading bloc – generating about 30% of global GDP and 20% of global trade flows – and is also the world's biggest donor to poor countries, contributing approximately half of global aid. The EU is also South Africa's largest development-aid partner, having allocated R1,5 billion since 1994.

The Trade, Development and Co-operation Agreement (TDCA), which was signed in 1999 and provisionally came into force in January 2000, governs South Africa's relations with the EU. The agreement would be reviewed within five years of entering into force, to address the possible implications of other arrangements or events that may affect the agreement.

The preliminary discussions on the review of the TDCA commenced in 2005 and a joint progress report was presented to the 2005 South Africa-EU Ministerial Joint Co-operation Council (JCC). The 2005 JCC gave the mandate for formal negotiations over the review of the TDCA to commence. By April 2007, working groups had not yet been established as the European Commission's (EC) mandate for the review was outstanding.

The TDCA was fully ratified on 1 May 2004, meaning that co-operation on the articles of the TDCA that were put in abeyance pending the completion of ratification procedures, could be activated.

The 2004 Ministerial JCC decided that full implementation of new areas of co-operation of the TDCA should be pursued. Consequently, the Department of Foreign Affairs held a series of interdepartmental meetings, after which the South African proposal for new areas for full implementation were communicated to the

delegation of the EC to South Africa. The delegation indicated that the EC was not yet in a position to enter into discussions on the proposed new areas of co-operation, pending a council mandate.

The second meeting of the South Africa-EU Ministerial JCC (also the sixth South Africa-EU JCC) was held on 7 November 2005. It cemented the strong and productive relationships in trade, development and political dialogue.

The political discussion at the council meeting took place in troika format, co-chaired by Dr Dlamini Zuma and Mr Jack Straw, Secretary of State for Foreign and Commonwealth Affairs of the UK.

The parties welcomed the Additional Protocol to the TDCA between South Africa and the EU that includes the 10 new partner countries in the institutional provisions of the TDCA. The parties re-emphasised their intention to further liberalise trade and give consideration to widening the scope and ambition of the agreement to extend into other areas of mutual importance.

South Africa and the EU asserted their commitment to an ambitious and balanced outcome of the Doha Development Agenda, which they considered a unique opportunity to further liberalise trade, while supporting development on the basis of stronger and fairer multilateral rules.

The strong relations between South Africa and the EU were further strengthened during the year by visits to South Africa of Mr José Manuel Barroso, President of the EC; Dr Javier Solana, High Representative for Common Foreign and Security Policy; as well as a visit by Mr Louis Michel, EU Commissioner for Development and Humanitarian Aid.

The EU's development-assistance programme in South Africa, the European Programme for Reconstruction and Development (EPRD), is the largest by a single foreign donor. The funded programmes and projects are informed by South Africa's national development policies that specifically target, among other things, improving social services, HR and economic growth and deepening democracy. Discussions for a new Country Strategic Paper (CSP) for 2006 to 2013 were held in 2006. The CSP provides the framework within which funding is provided through the EPRD.

The South Africa-EU Science and Technology Co-operation Agreement, which was signed in 1997, affords the opportunity for co-operation between South African and European researchers. The preparation campaign for the EU's seventh

Framework Programme (FP7) was launched in Pretoria. South Africa's participation in the FP7 is informed by its national policy priorities, including connecting South Africa to the global research and development agenda.

Negotiations between the SADC and the EC on the Economic Partnership Agreement (EPA), which picked up pace in 2005, continued in 2006. This followed the Sacu ministers' resolve, at their meeting of November 2004, that southern Africa's trade relations with the EU needed to be harmonised.

The Review of the TDCA and the SADC-EC EPA negotiations presented an ideal window of opportunity to initiate this process. To this end, in March 2006, SADC senior officials met with their EC counterparts to explore modalities on how to move towards this direction. The negotiations were expected to be concluded in December 2007, ahead of the expiry of the WTO waiver permitting the EU to give preferential market access to products from the African, Caribbean and Pacific (ACP) Group of countries till 31 December 2007.

African, Caribbean and Pacific States-European Union relations

South Africa assumed full membership of the ACP group of countries in 1996. It became a qualified member of the Lomé Convention in 1997 and of its successor, the Cotonou Partnership Agreement (CPA), signed in Cotonou in June 2000.

The CPA is a framework for co-operation between the 78 countries of the ACP group and the EU. The new EU members that acceded in May 2004 adopted the agreement as part of the EU's legislative infrastructure.

Qualified membership means that South Africa is excluded from the trade regime provided in the agreement and from the provisions on development assistance. South Africa can, however, tender for projects in all ACP countries and participate fully in all political instruments of the agreement. South Africa's economic relations with the EU are governed by the TDCA.

The CPA differs significantly from its predecessor in that its duration will be 20 years, with a revision clause every five years and a financial protocol for each five-year period. The agreement underscores the importance of regional economic co-operation.

The most far-reaching changes are to be introduced in the area of trade, through regional economic partnership agreements (EPAs), where non-reciprocal preferences will be gradually abolished and regional integration processes encouraged. The arrangements were to be maintained until December 2007 when the EPA was expected to be finalised.

The Heads of Mission on AU Summit noted the *Report on the Commission on the Status of EPAs* and the decision of the 85th session of the ACP Council of Ministers on EPAs, held in Brussels, Belgium, in May 2007. The EU was requested to consider putting in place transitional measures to safeguard the continued flow of African exports to the EU market beyond 2007.

One of the key aspects of South Africa's membership of the ACP is its active participation in the three ACP-EU joint political organs, namely the Council of Ministers, the Joint Parliamentary Assembly and the Committee of Ambassadors.

South Africa takes part in dialogue on important issues such as peace-building, conflict resolution, respect for human rights, democratic principles and the rule of law. South Africa regularly participates in ACP summits, Council of Ministers' meetings, trade ministers' meetings and the ACP Forum on Science and Technology.

The interest and commitment shown by the EU regarding the African continent and its development is encouraging. Within that context, the EC and the Nepad Secretariat are closely co-operating through established structures and regular dialogue and information-sharing. They have also agreed to increase coherence between EU member states and the EC in support of Nepad projects, the AU and its institutions, and the RECs.

Benelux countries

The Benelux countries remain important trade and investment partners of South Africa, and major tourist providers.

South Africa enjoys close political relations with the Netherlands, Belgium and Luxembourg and engages in substantial and fruitful co-operation partnerships with these countries.

The focus on establishing trilateral co-operation to promote peace, security and economic diplomacy

are continuing, with special emphasis on initiatives in support of Jipsa and AsgiSA.

The Belgian Government continues to take a keen interest in South and southern Africa, and the Great Lakes Region, particularly the DRC. There is a regular exchange of views between South Africa and Belgium on the issues and the complicated processes necessary to find durable solutions to the conflicts in the region.

In November 2006, the inaugural meeting of the Belgo-South Africa JC was held in Brussels, with the focus on bilateral political and economic relations, promotion of the African Agenda, development co-operation and co-operation within the context of the United Nations Security Council (UNSC), in view of Belgium's election at the same time as South Africa as a non-permanent member of the UNSC.

Co-operation with Flanders is strong on AsgiSA and Jipsa, especially in the areas of skills development and the development of SMMEs.

Since 1994, the Dutch Government has consistently supported South Africa in terms of bilateral and multilateral relations. A large number of bilateral agreements have been signed and high-level bilateral ministerial meetings are held frequently. The first South Africa-Netherlands JC was held in October 2006 in Pretoria. The agenda included co-operation on AsgiSA and Jipsa.

Luxembourg and South Africa enjoy good bilateral relations. High-level visits between the two states take place regularly.

German-speaking countries

Since 1994, the relationship between South Africa and Germany has developed into a strong socio-economic and political partnership that has shown considerable growth in many areas.

Germany has made substantial new investments into the South African economy since the 1994 democratic election and remains one of the country's most important trading partners. By 2007, German commitments towards development in South Africa amounted to about Euro 262 million for bilateral financial and technical assistance.

Since its inception in 1996, the South Africa-German BNC has become the most significant instrument through which bilateral relations are conducted. The extent of co-operation and joint initiatives is substantial.

South Africa ranks 30th as a source country for Germany's imports and 22nd as an export destination. Germany is South Africa's largest import partner and fourth-largest export partner after Japan, the UK and the USA.

Germany ranks with the UK and the USA among the three largest economic role-players in South Africa regarding trade, investment, finance and tourism. Major investments by German companies include BMW, DaimlerChrysler, Volkswagen, Siemens, Bayer and Ferrostaal.

In May 2007, Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka led a government delegation on an official visit to Germany.

In August 2007, Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka hosted the Minister-President from the federal state of Baden Wurttemberg, Mr Gunther Hoettinger, who was on a five-day working visit to South Africa.

In October 2007, President Mbeki hosted his German counterpart, Chancellor Angela Merkel, for political, economic and trade discussions in Pretoria.

Present-day relations between South Africa and Switzerland are sound and cordial. As a result of monumental democratic changes in South Africa, Switzerland decided to grant South Africa special status on the Swiss foreign-policy agenda as one of the important areas for Swiss interests outside Europe.

In addition to a number of high-level visits, annual senior official working group meetings between the two departments of foreign affairs have proved useful in strengthening bilateral relations and trilateral co-operation in technical areas such as demining, conflict management, human security and development co-operation in the rest of Africa.

At the working group meeting in February 2007, several trilateral co-operation projects were identified. Switzerland is actively involved in promoting peace dialogue and humanitarian issues on the African continent.

According to the South African Reserve Bank, the total of Swiss FDI in South Africa accounts for R6 398 billion, making Switzerland the seventh-biggest investor in South Africa.

Austria prides itself on having built up many years of experience in international peacekeeping and conflict resolution, and offers internationally recognised training courses at the Diplomatic Academy in co-operation with New York-based NGOs for South Africa's and other African governments.

Besides engaging the Austrian Government at national level in support of development programmes and increased economic involvement, provincial partnerships with key Austrian provinces have also resulted in development support.

Nordic countries

South Africa enjoys excellent relations with all the Nordic countries (Denmark, Finland, Iceland, Norway and Sweden). Flowing from the strong grassroots support in these countries for democratisation in South Africa, relations have been established in virtually every field at both public and official levels. The scope of Nordic development co-operation is broad and has benefited civil society and government.

Relations in the international arena have seen close co-operation on multilateral issues. The Nordic countries are strong supporters of Nepad. They are directly involved in conflict resolution and reconstruction projects in Africa, and have already entered into trilateral projects with South Africa such as in the DRC.

At the end of February 2007, Iceland's Foreign Affairs Minister, Ms Valgerdur Sverrisdottir, paid a working visit to South Africa. In March 2007, Minister Dlamini Zuma joined Nordic and African foreign affairs ministers at the sixth session of the Nordic-African Informal Ministerial Meeting in Oslo, Norway, against the background of South Africa's commitment to promoting North-South co-operation in support of the African Agenda. Among other things, they discussed the peace and security challenges in Africa, climate change and UN issues.

The South Africa-Sweden BNC took place in Pretoria in September 2007. Total trade between South Africa and Sweden amounts to R10 billion coming off a very low base in 1994. The biannual foreign ministry consultations between Norway and South Africa took place in Pretoria in January 2007.

United Kingdom and Ireland

The UK is the largest foreign direct investor into South Africa and consistently occupies the third position in terms of South African exports. With the number of tourists per year approaching half a million, the UK is also South Africa's most important overseas tourism market.

South Africa's many-faceted relations with the UK were further strengthened in 2006/07 by, among other things, President Mbeki's working visit to London in May 2006, and by the UK-South Africa Bilateral Forum, chaired by UK Foreign Secretary, Ms Margaret Beckett, and Minister Dlamini Zuma.

During his visit to London, President Mbeki had a one-on-one meeting with former Prime Minister Tony Blair, discussing, among other things, the then upcoming G8 Summit in Saint Petersburg and how to sustain the African Agenda at that forum, as well as the WTO Doha Round of negotiations. Co-operation in the promotion of the African Agenda remains a principal focus area in relations between South Africa and the UK, including trilateral co-operation in support of peace, stability and economic development.

Co-operation on AsgiSA and Jipsa was an important cross-cutting issue. A film co-production agreement was also signed during the Bilateral Forum, opening the way for meaningful and exciting co-operation in film-making between South Africa and the UK.

Numerous high-level visits both to and from the UK occurred in the course of 2006/07, further underlining the wide range of interests between South Africa and the UK.

Former UK Prime Minister, Mr Tony Blair, paid an official visit to South Africa from 31 May to 1 June 2007. This was his last official visit to South Africa before stepping down in June 2007. The first South Africa-Ireland Partnership Forum was held in Pretoria in June 2006 and covered a range of issues, including bilateral political and economic relations, co-operation to promote peace and security in Africa, development co-operation and co-operation on AsgiSA and Jipsa.

Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka led the highest-level South African visit ever to Ireland in November 2006 and met with President Mary McAleese, Prime Minister Bertie Ahern and various Irish cabinet ministers.

Mediterranean Europe

Relations between South Africa and the countries of Mediterranean Europe have undergone significant growth in recent years, and are manifested across the spectrum of bilateral relations.

Bilateral relations between South Africa and France are directed by institutionalised mechanisms such as the MoU on Political Dialogue, and joint commissions on trade and industry and education; arts, culture, science and technology; and sport.



Economic relations between France and South Africa continue to strengthen. South African Airways procured Airbus aircraft as part of its comprehensive fleet-modernisation programme.

In September 2006, South Africa and France signed a partnership agreement setting out joint development projects worth R3,1 billion. The Framework Charter Partnership covers the fields of service delivery, small business, job creation and energy efficiency. Prime Minister Francois de Villepin visited South Africa in December 2006 and held discussions with President Mbeki. Minister Dlamini Zuma represented President Mbeki at the France-Africa Summit in Cannes early in 2007.

On 12 April 2007, President Mbeki, accompanied by Deputy Minister Pahad, visited Paris, France, at the invitation of his French counterpart, President Jacques Chirac, for consultations and to bid farewell ahead of the presidential election in France on 22 April 2007.

In October 2007, Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka visited France where she held bilateral discussions with her counterpart, French Prime Minister Francois Fillon, and paid a courtesy call on President Nicolas Sarkozy.

She also visited the South African national rugby team ahead of its scheduled World Cup semi-final against Argentina.

Italy and South Africa have agreed to deepen the level of exchanges on a number of issues critical to development on the African continent, especially regarding peace and stability in the Horn of Africa and post-conflict reconstruction in the DRC and the Great Lakes region.

In July 2007, Italian Deputy Prime Minister and Minister of Foreign Affairs, Mr Massimo D'Alema, attended the South African-Italian Business Forum, held in Sandton, Johannesburg.

He also held bilateral meetings with senior government officials, including Minister Dlamini Zuma and Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka. Italy is among South Africa's 10 most important export market partners.

Total trade between South Africa and Italy amounted to about Euro 3,693 billion, with a positive trade surplus for South Africa, according to the Italian Central Institute of Statistics.

In November 2006, Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka paid an official visit to Portugal. She was accompanied by a large business delegation from South Africa seeking partnerships with Portuguese companies.

In April 2007, Minister Dlamini Zuma held bilateral political and economic discussions with

her Portuguese counterpart, Foreign Affairs Minister, Dr Luis Armado, in Pretoria.

In July 2007, Deputy Minister Pahad paid an official visit to Spain, at the invitation of Mr Bernardino Leon Gross, Spain's Secretary of State for Foreign Affairs.

Mr Pahad and Mr Leon co-chaired the plenary session of the fourth annual political consultations between South Africa and Spain.

In 2006, South Africa's exports to Spain totalled Euro 1,4 billion, representing an increase of 7,6% on 2005. Spain is South Africa's ninth most important export market. Spanish exports to South Africa grew by 16,8% in 2006.

South Africa and Greece also have strong cultural ties through the Hellenic community in South Africa, which plays a positive and constructive role in the reconstruction and development of South Africa.

Central Europe

The President of the Czech Republic, Prof. Václav Klaus, paid a state visit to South Africa in December 2006.

The visit was of historical importance as it was the first visit of a head of state from the Czech Republic since the Velvet Revolution and its separation from Slovakia in 1991. The visit was also the first visit of a head of state from Central Europe to sub-Saharan Africa. The visit provided an opportunity to concretise bilateral relations between the two countries.

The Czech Republic regards South Africa as its strategic partner in sub-Saharan Africa and this co-operation impacts on regional and continental relations between sub-Saharan Africa, Central Europe and the EU.

In June 2007, Minister Dlamini Zuma visited Slovakia for bilateral discussions with her counterpart, Mr Jan Kubis.

Eastern Europe

The strategic nature of South African-Russian relations was significantly consolidated in 2006/07 through continued high-level political dialogue with the Russian Federation.

The President of the Russian Federation, Mr Vladimir Putin, visited South Africa in September 2006. Bilateral relations also expanded significantly under the umbrella of the Intergovernmental Trade and Economic Committee (Itec) between the two countries.

Strategic direction and a structured and disciplined policy framework have resulted in

substantive action taken by the respective governments in the minerals and energy and the science and technology sectors. In this respect, good progress was made through the establishment of the Joint South Africa-Russia Business Council.

Progress in the field of science and technology relations, especially in terms of the presidential policy objective of establishing South Africa as a key player in international astronomy and deep-space research, also characterises the relationship.

The signing of the Co-operation in Space Agreement between the two countries remains indicative of the accelerated level of co-operation existing between the Russian Federation and South Africa.

The Treaty of Friendship and Partnership was also signed by the two presidents, further strengthening ties between the two nations.

In February 2007, Minister Dlamini Zuma and the Russian Minister of Natural Resources, Mr Yuri Petrovich Trutnev, co-chaired the sixth session of the South Africa-Russia Itec.

In March 2007, Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka met with her Russian counterpart, Prime Minister Mikhail Fradkov. The meeting was within the context of expanding South Africa's strategic partnership with the Russian Federation as a member of the G-8 and the UNSC.

In July 2007, Minister Dlamini Zuma visited the Russian Federation for the South Africa-Russia Itec, which she co-chaired with Minister Trutnev.

There has been substantial growth in relations between South Africa and the Republic of Belarus during 2006/07. Numerous high-level visits to and from the country occurred. The South Africa-Belarus Joint Intergovernmental Committee on Trade and Economic Co-operation was launched in July 2007 in Minsk, Belarus.

The visit by the Foreign Affairs Minister of Belarus, Mr Sergey Martynov, in August 2006, consolidated and promoted increased interaction between the two countries.

The two foreign affairs ministers held a bilateral meeting during which four agreements were signed. Bilateral relations between the two countries have continued to grow steadily,

providing mutual opportunities for investors to identify areas of co-operation in various fields.

The Minister of Public Enterprises, Mr Alec Erwin, a delegation from his department and representatives from the Department of Defence and Denel, visited Belarus in November 2006 to identify possible areas of co-operation and prospective projects. Similarly, representatives and counterparts from Belarus were invited to visit South Africa during the early part of 2007.

Minister Dlamini Zuma, accompanied by the Minister of Minerals and Energy, Ms Buyelwa Sonjica, and the Deputy Minister of Trade and Industry, Dr Rob Davies, participated in the opening session of the South Africa-Belarus Itec.

Turkish overseas development assistance designated for Africa amounts to US\$350 million, with the focus on joint partnerships and mainly targeting sub-Saharan Africa in the sectors of health (AIDS, polio, tuberculosis and malaria) and education (scholarships and HR development), with the objective of establishing sustainable projects.

Turkey has successfully participated in international peacekeeping operations under the auspices of the UN, including in Africa.

It hosts a peacekeeping academy and has firmly indicated its readiness to train and assist African peacekeeping capacity.

Turkey is supportive of Nepad and is willing to consider specific project proposals in line with Nepad and AU priorities in the form of joint ventures, such as in the construction and engineering sectors.

The further expansion of the economic, trade and investment relationship remains a primary focus of activities. South Africa is continuing its efforts to strengthen bilateral relations with Bosnia and Herzegovina, Serbia and Montenegro.

In this regard, South Africa recognised the independent Republic of Montenegro in July 2006 and concluded diplomatic relations with that country in October 2006.

South Africa continues to play a significant role, as non-permanent member of the UNSC, in the search for solutions for the conflicts in the region, with specific reference to the Kosovo and Cyprus issues.

On 15 June 2007, Deputy Minister Van der Merwe held bilateral political and economic discussions



with her Lithuanian counterpart, Dr Oskaras Jusys, in Cape Town. They discussed, among other things:

- the status of bilateral political and economic relations between both countries
- developments in Lithuania, including its membership of the EU
- developments in Africa and the SADC
- other issues of mutual global interest, including the comprehensive reform of the UN and the Middle East peace process.

Lithuania has a historical link with South Africa through the Jewish community. It is estimated that 80% of South African Jewry is of Litvak extraction.

Multilateral diplomacy

The adoption of the UN World Summit Outcome document in New York in 2005 by more than 150 heads of state and government marked one of the most prominent efforts to protect and strengthen multilateralism.

Expectations of wholesale change and reform of the UN, however, proved not to be realistically attainable.

The Review Summit nonetheless agreed on a number of reforms to address events and issues that continue to undermine global peace and security and the multilateral system of governance. South Africa remains an active participant in these ongoing efforts to implement the 2005 World Summit Outcome document to reform the UN.

It also believes that the multilateral system should be fully engaged in human development and poverty eradication, starting with the achievement of the millennium development goals (MDGs); the common struggle to address environmental degradation; the pursuit of an overarching human-rights agenda; the promotion of democracy and good governance; and all efforts to combat terrorism and the proliferation of weapons, both of mass destruction and small arms.

South Africa maintains that issues such as these pose major threats to world peace and security. Through participation in organisations and groups such as the UN, the AU, the NAM, the G77 and the Commonwealth, South Africa seeks to ensure that national interests and objectives, as well as those of the continent and developing countries generally, are taken on board in discussions in multilateral forums and reports.

United Nations General Assembly (UNGA)

South Africa's priorities for participation in the UNGA, its main committees and organs, include:

- pursuing an overarching human-rights agenda, including the right to development
 - promoting global peace and security
 - protecting and promoting multilateralism, international law and the centrality of the UN Charter
 - addressing human development, poverty eradication and environmental degradation
 - advancing the active follow-up and implementation of the MDGs, international development goals and the outcomes of major UN conferences
 - advancing South-South co-operation through active participation in the NAM and other South-South co-operation arrangements
 - promoting the reform of the UNSC General Assembly, Ecosoc and regional organisations, and generally revitalising the UN system
 - promoting the Common Africa Position on the reform of the UN, including the equitable representation of Africa on the UNSC
 - disarmament, arms control and non-proliferation of both weapons of mass destruction and conventional arms
 - implementing the Johannesburg Plan of Action of the World Summit on Sustainable Development (WSSD)
 - humanitarian assistance
 - promoting the AU and Nepad in the UN context
 - promoting gender mainstreaming
 - supporting the global campaign against terrorism.
- In September 2007, President Mbeki led a South African delegation to the 62nd session of the UNGA. During his visit to New York, President Mbeki addressed the UNGA whose focus was on climate change, progress towards the attainment of the MDGs, reform of the UN system, including the UNSC, and counter-terrorism.

He also addressed the UNSC meeting hosted by French President Nicholas Sarkozy on *Peace and Security in Africa*.

United Nations reform

The adoption of the 2005 World Summit Outcome by more than 150 heads of state and government did, however, set in motion a number of reforms in the UN system that include:

- establishing a peace-building commission
- establishing a human-rights council
- implementing management reforms in the UN Secretariat
- reviewing the mandates of UN activities and programmes
- finalising the comprehensive Convention against

Terrorism and developing a broader counter-terrorism strategy

- maintaining and strengthening political momentum for development.

South Africa supports and actively participates in all negotiations.

United Nations Security Council

The UNSC has primary responsibility for the maintenance of international peace and security. It is organised so as to be able to function continuously, and a representative of each of its members must be present at all times at the UN.

The comprehensive reform of the UNSC remains work in progress. South Africa has been elected as a non-permanent member of the UNSC. In March 2007, Minister Dlamini Zuma addressed the UNSC on the relationship between the UNSC and the AU's PSC in conflict resolution.

Minister Dlamini Zuma led these discussions within the context of South Africa's Presidency of the UNSC for the month of March 2007.

Science and technology

The South African Government has recognised the importance of harnessing science and technology as an integral part of a wider political and economic strategy to address national and regional development priorities.

A major vehicle to achieve this objective is South Africa's bid to host the proposed Square Kilometre Array as an extraordinary opportunity for advancing South Africa and its people through scientific and industrial development, developing regional scientific capacity, human capacity-development in the region, creating business opportunities and providing state-of-the-art infrastructure for South African scientists and engineers as well as those in the region.

In ensuring the implementation of the Tunis Commitment and Tunis Agenda for Information Society, as the outcome of the second phase of the World Summit on the Information Society, South Africa will remain involved in the ongoing discussions on Internet governance as well as bridging the digital divide between developed and developing countries.

Human rights

A commitment to promoting human rights is one of the central considerations in the implementation of South Africa's foreign policy.

South Africa is a major player in the development of international human-rights law at the UN, continually evaluating the effectiveness of existing human-rights treaties and proposing additional instruments.

South Africa played a critical role in the UN Commission on Human Rights. It also participated in initiatives leading up to the UN Millennium Review Summit in New York on UN reform in the area of human rights and the establishment of the UN Human-Rights Council (HRC).

South Africa co-sponsored an HRC resolution in March 2007, seeking to ensure that the HRC agenda promotes and advances sustainable development and the achievement of the MDGs.

It agreed on a programme of work that would lead to raising the right to development to the same level and on par with all other human rights and fundamental freedoms enshrined in the core human-rights instruments.

South Africa also sponsored an HRC resolution on the Rectification of the Legal Status of the Committee on Economic, Social and Cultural Rights, which was adopted by consensus in March 2007, and which will elevate the committee's status to be on par with all other treaty-monitoring bodies.

South Africa also supported the process towards the elaboration of an optional protocol to the international covenant on economic, social and cultural rights with a view to creating an individual complaints mechanism for the covenant, and supported the resolution on strengthening economic, social and cultural rights throughout the world.

The UN Ad Hoc Committee, tasked with drafting the International Convention on Rights of Persons with Disabilities, concluded its negotiations in December 2006. During the 61st session of the UNGA in December 2006, the convention and its optional protocol were adopted by consensus, and opened for signature on 30 March 2007.

South Africa signed both the convention and the optional protocol on 30 March 2007 and by

mid-2007, was preparing for ratification. South Africa complied with the Convention on the Rights of the Child's treaty obligations by submitting its second country report on the status of children's rights to the UN Committee on the Rights of the Child in 2007.

South Africa hosted the fourth World Congress on Rural Women in April 2007 to discuss universal and wide-ranging issues confronting rural women and to share concrete experiences of successes in addressing these worldwide.

Humanitarian issues

As a signatory to the 1951 Geneva Convention Relating to the Status of Refugees, its 1967 Protocol and the 1969 OAU Convention Governing the Specific Aspects of Refugee Problems in Africa, South Africa has committed itself to protecting refugees. These international treaties have been domesticated through the Refugee Act, 1998 (Act 130 of 1998).

Fulfilling its obligations under international and domestic law, South Africa played an active role in facilitating the voluntary repatriation of Angolan refugees from South Africa after peace was consolidated in Angola. Given the large number of refugees in Africa and the critical need for burden-sharing by countries, South Africa also contributed to various initiatives to address these needs, including a contribution of R1,5 million to the UN High Commission for Refugees Return and Reintegration Programme for Sudan.

South Africa's foreign-policy interventions on migration are guided by its adherence to the major international human-rights instruments, including the Universal Declaration on Human Rights, and the various refugee conventions and conventions related to the rights of women and children, among other things. This includes the understanding that migration, if properly managed, could contribute significantly to enhancing sustainable development in African countries.

South Africa's participation in humanitarian assistance is strongly embedded in the principles of UNGA Resolution 46/182 and its guiding principles of providing humanitarian assistance on a basis of neutrality, impartiality and humanity.

South Africa plays an active role in providing humanitarian assistance globally, with a particular focus on the Africa continent in conjunction with the UN and other international organisations, to alleviate the plight of thousands of victims of natural sudden-onset disasters and complex humanitarian emergencies.

During 2006/07, the Department of Foreign Affairs contributed more than R20 million in humanitarian assistance.

Environment

South Africa is committed to maintaining the political momentum gained in the sphere of sustainable development, through the outcomes of the WSSD and the Johannesburg Plan of Implementation.

Various UN conventions for the environment, such as the UN Convention to Combat Desertification, the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change and the Convention on Biological Diversity are used by South Africa to meaningfully reduce poverty, and in so doing, meet the aims of the MDGs.

Climate change is regarded as one of the major stumbling blocks to achieving sustainable development. International efforts are aimed at both the mitigation of climate changes by stabilising the concentration of greenhouse gases in the atmosphere and measures to enable countries to adapt to the adverse effects of climate change.

In terms of mitigation, the key negotiation issue is related to the future of the Kyoto carbon market. The current period of legally binding commitments of developed countries expires in 2012.

Developing countries have an interest in securing the Kyoto carbon market beyond 2012 as they benefit through participation in the Clean Development Mechanism.

To develop and negotiate a framework for the future international climate-change regime, a two-track process was set up in Montreal in 2005:

- an ad hoc working group to negotiate future (post-2012) legally binding Kyoto targets for developed countries
- a dialogue on long-term co-operative action under the convention, focused on future action by developing countries.



In August 2007, the statue of former South African President Nelson Mandela was unveiled at Parliament Square in London, United Kingdom, in honour of his contribution to the struggle against apartheid.

Dignitaries at the unveiling included British Prime Minister Gordon Brown, London Mayor Ken Livingstone, philanthropist Lord Richard Attenborough and anti-apartheid campaigner Wendy Woods.

The nine-foot statue has been placed among statues of other statesmen such as Winston Churchill and Abraham Lincoln.

South Africa is firmly committed to the protection of the oceans and the sustainable management of its marine resources.

It has ratified all the major treaties dealing with marine, maritime, fisheries and Antarctic matters, such as the UN Convention on the Law of the Sea and its related instruments, the International Maritime Convention, the UN Food and Agriculture Organisation Compliance Agreement, and the Antarctic Treaty.

Disarmament

South Africa continues to reinforce its position as an active and substantive role-player on disarmament, non-proliferation and arms-control issues at national, regional and international levels.

It actively participated in the various nuclear disarmament and non-proliferation forums, including the 2005 Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty (NPT) Review Conference.

The failure by some states to implement their obligations under the NPT (particularly on nuclear disarmament) and to roll back agreements made at previous conferences created a climate that made it difficult to make progress with key challenges facing the nuclear disarmament and non-proliferation regime.

Together with other role-players in the nuclear field, South Africa actively participated in the meetings of the policy-making organs of the International Atomic Energy Agency (IAEA). Important issues considered by the IAEA Board of Governors included the implementation of NPT safeguards in Iran and Korea.

South Africa actively participates in the structures of the Chemicals Weapons Convention, the Biological and Toxic Weapons Convention (BWC), and the Organisation for the Prohibition of Chemical Weapons.

South Africa continues to emphasise the importance of the BWC and the need to strengthen it to adequately address the threat posed by the possible use of biological and toxic weapons by terrorists and other non-state actors.

South Africa was admitted as the first African state to join the Wassenaar Arrangement (conventional arms and dual-use technology-control regime) in December 2005, and became a

full participating state in the arrangement on 28 February 2006.

In the context of South Africa's participation in various international arms-control bodies, such as the Nuclear Suppliers Group, the Zangger Committee and the Missile Technology Control Regime, South Africa continues to promote the principle of access to advanced technologies for peaceful purposes, thereby ensuring that non-proliferation controls do not become a means whereby developing countries are denied access to technologies required for their development.

Crime and crime prevention

Following its ratification of the UN Convention against Transnational Organised Crime and its three supplementary protocols: The Protocol Against Smuggling of Migrants by Land, Air and Sea; The Protocol to Prevent, Suppress and Punish Trafficking in Persons, especially Women and Children; and the Protocol Against the Illicit Manufacturing of and Trafficking in Firearms, their Parts and Components and Ammunition, South Africa participated in the Conference of the Parties (CoP) of the Convention against Transnational Organised Crime in October 2005.

Following its ratification of the UN Convention against Corruption, South Africa participated in the first CoP of the Convention against Corruption in 2006.

Kimberley Process Certification Scheme (KPCS)

The KPCS is a voluntary tripartite international forum, intent on preventing the use of diamonds in the promotion of conflict, while encouraging the contribution of diamonds to prosperity.

The KPCS forum comprises all major diamond-producing, -trading and -processing countries, as well as the diamond industry and civil society.

The department participates actively in the standing bodies of the KPCS.

One of the department's primary objectives in monitoring the KPCS and participating in the business of KPCS standing and ad hoc bodies is to support government's efforts to ensure that the collective interests of African diamond-producing countries are protected.

North-South co-operation

The Department of Foreign Affairs serves as the focal point for North-South dialogue, engaging key global economic institutions such as the WTO, the Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development and the World Intellectual Property Organisation.

To achieve this objective, South Africa ensures that the development agenda remains part of the focus of key economic forums, particularly the annual G8 (Group of Seven most industrialised nations plus Russia) Summit and World Economic Forum meetings.

South-South co-operation

In advancing the development agenda of the South and within the overall context of promoting multilateralism, South Africa participated in the second South Summit in June 2005 in Doha, Qatar.

Progressively, the importance of South-South co-operation is being acknowledged, especially in terms of global, regional and country-level efforts to achieve the MDGs. Rather than being a substitute for North-South co-operation, the modalities of South-South co-operation are complementary.

South African foreign policy seeks, among other things, to persuade the international community to support the efforts of developing countries to expand such co-operation.

Through active participation in other co-operation arrangements such as IBSA, South Africa seeks to contribute to strengthening South-South co-operation and the development of innovative co-operation programmes.

Global finance

The Department of Foreign Affairs has in its engagements solicited the international community to fulfil its Monterrey commitments. It recognises the need for increased and more predictable resources for development.

As such, it supports initiatives such as Action Against Hunger and Poverty to implement innovative financing mechanisms for development on a public, private, domestic or external basis, to complement official development assistance.

As one of the G20 countries within the Bretton Woods Institutions (BWIs), the department contributes to developing pragmatically the global partnership between developed and developing countries.

Within this context, South Africa is committed to the continuous review of the representivity,

operations and strategies of the BWIs and more effective participation by developing countries in these bodies.

Social development

Furthermore, South Africa continues to play a pivotal role in the international arena, particularly in the promotion of the global health agenda.

Having successfully chaired the G77 and China Group during the 44th session of the UN Commission for Social Development and the 39th session of the UN Commission on Population and Development (UNCPD) in 2006, South Africa further advanced the momentum created in both UN commissions.

South Africa delivered a keynote address, which set the tone for the entire session as well as the 46th session of the commission to take place in 2008. South Africa also participated at the 40th session of the UNCPD in April 2007.

At both commissions, South Africa reiterated the country's priority social and population-development issues as contained, respectively, in the WSSD (Copenhagen Declaration, 1995) and the International Conference on Population and Development Plan of Action, which include, among other things, the internationally agreed development goals.

Participation in United Nations budgetary and programmatic issues

Over the past five years, South Africa has played a prominent role in the context of UN budgetary and programmatic issues.

South Africa's Auditor-General served on the UN Board of Auditors from 2000 until the end of 2006. The Auditor-General was also re-elected in 2005 as the External Auditor for the UN Industrial Development Organisation for the period 2006 to 2008.

The Minister for Public Service and Administration, Ms Geraldine Fraser-Moleketi, was elected vice president of the second UN Committee of Experts on Public Administration and Finance for the period 2006 to 2009.

Another South African, Judge Mervyn King, who chaired the King Commission on Corporate Governance in South Africa, has been elected chairperson of a high-level steering panel to evaluate governance in the UN.

Active participation in administrative and budgetary issues is aimed at ensuring, to the fullest extent possible, that UN programmes as well as budgetary and administrative priorities adequately cater for development and poverty eradication. In

this regard, priority areas for South Africa include the funding of UN structures and programmes that focus on Africa and Nepad, and sufficient funding for peacekeeping operations on the continent.

South African representation on United Nations bodies and organs

South Africa strives to be active in all bodies and functional committees of the UN dealing with its foreign-policy priorities or objectives, and thus serves on the following:

- International Criminal Tribunal for Yugoslavia (2005 to 2009): Judge J Moloto.
- HRC, successor to the Commission on Human Rights (2006). The first election of the members of the HRC was held by the UNGA on 9 May 2006. South Africa was elected to the HRC by 179 votes from 191 countries.
- International Criminal Court (2003 to 2009): Judge M Pillay.
- International Tribunal for the Law of the Sea (2005 to 2014): Judge A Hoffmann.
- Committee on the Elimination of Racial Discrimination (2005 to 2008): Ambassador P January-Bardill.

South Africa currently serves on the following subsidiary bodies of the Ecosoc:

- Commission for Social Development (2006 to 2009)
- Statistical Commission (2006 to 2009)
- Committee for Programme Co-ordination (2006 to 2008)
- Intergovernmental Working Group of Experts on International Standards of Accountancy and Reporting (2006 to 2008)
- Commission on Sustainable Development (2007 to 2010)

- Commission on Population and Development (2007 to 2010)
- Commission on Crime Prevention and Criminal Justice (2007 to 2010).

United Nations Country Team (UNCT) in South Africa

The United Nations Development Programme (UNDP) seeks to implement programmes that are relevant to government's transformation and development imperatives.

The UNDP has a country office in Pretoria, which is headed by the resident representative, who is also the UN resident co-ordinator for all UN operational activities in South Africa.

The UN Development Assistance Framework (UNDAF) is a mechanism to establish an integrated framework for co-operation for development assistance between the UN system, represented through 16 UN funds, programmes and agencies present in South Africa and government. The UNDAF reflects the priorities conveyed to the UN by government and is based on the Common Country Assessment (CCA).

The previous UNDAF ended in December 2006. The department worked with the UNCT in South Africa and numerous other departments to prepare the new UNDAF, which will guide UN support in South Africa from 2007 to 2010. In this process, a CCA has been drafted by government and accepted by the UN and the new UNDAF.

Commonwealth

The Commonwealth comprises 53 member countries on every continent and with a combined population of 1,8 billion (one quarter of world population), making up one fifth of world trade. It is an important multilateral institution uniting countries with common historical backgrounds.

Members range from micro-states in Polynesia to members of the G8, the smallest and poorest to the richest and most populous, with cross-cutting affiliations straddling the North-South divide.

The Commonwealth is united by its shared ideals and common traditions manifested in similar structures of governance, public administration and law, a common working language, and commercial and business practices and



In July 2007, South Africa hosted the 38th Commonwealth Parliamentary Association's (CPA) Africa Region Conference in Cape Town. One of the main objectives of the CPA is to promote and maintain gender equality and respect for human rights and freedom.

President Thabo Mbeki addressed delegates at the conference under the theme *Parliamentarians Building Strong Democratic Institutions for Promoting Development in the 21st Century*.



understanding. It is an important multilateral institution, both uniting and serving its member countries and providing a lobby on global issues.

Its programmes of action, such as the Commonwealth Fund for Technical Co-operation, the Commonwealth Youth Programme and the Commonwealth Foundation, are focused on capacity-building, economic and social development, the removal of disparities in living standards across the world, and the alleviation of poverty and illiteracy.

These programmes are committed to the UN MDGs, Nepad and the plight of small and less-developed countries.

The Commonwealth Heads of Government Meeting (CHOGM) takes place biennially. Malta hosted the CHOGM in November 2005 under the theme *Networking the Commonwealth for Development*, also focusing on world trade, migration and terrorism.

Aside from the Final Communiqué, which addresses different issues of concern to the Commonwealth, heads of government also issued the Malta Declaration on Networking the Commonwealth for Development, the Valletta Statement on Multilateral Trade, and the Gozo Statement on Vulnerable Small States.

South Africa made numerous contributions to the Malta Communiqué, in particular on issues relating to the MDGs, the African Agenda and Nepad, and addressing health, education and debt relief. South Africa also supported strong positions on trade liberalisation, climate change and terrorism.

South Africa actively partakes in the various ministerial meetings and governing bodies of the Commonwealth. Meetings of ministers of finance have devoted resources in support of the Monterrey Consensus, justice ministers have drafted model anti-terrorism legislation and control measures over money laundering and ministers of education and of health have adopted codes of conduct in the recruitment of health workers and teachers.

Uganda hosted the 2007 CHOGM in November 2007 under the theme *Transforming Commonwealth Societies to Achieve Political, Economic and Human Development*.

Non-Aligned Movement

The NAM with its 114 member states is the largest political grouping of countries outside of the UN, making it an important lobby group of developing countries in global affairs.

South Africa formally joined the movement in 1994 and has played a leading role ever since.

Multilateral agreements signed or ratified between 1 January 2006 and 31 March 2007

Date signed	Title	Date
24 February 1985	Statute of the Centre for Science and Technology of the Non-Aligned and other Developing Countries	9 January 2006 (a) Entry into force: 6 February 2006
5 September 1997	Joint Convention on the Safety of Spent Fuel Management and on the Safety of Radioactive Waste Management	15 November 2006 (a) Entry into force: 13 February 2007
28 May 1999	Convention for the Unification of Certain Rules for International Carriage by Air	22 November 2006 (r) Entry into force: 21 January 2007
16 November 2001	Convention on International Interests in Mobile Equipment	18 January 2007 (r) Entry into force: 1 May 2007
16 November 2001	Protocol to the Convention on International Interests in Mobile Equipment on Matters Specific to Aircraft Equipment	18 January 2007 (r) Entry into force: 1 May 2007
18 October 2002	Marrakesh Instruments amending the Constitution and Convention of the International Telecommunication Union (Geneva, 1992)	18 October 2006 (r)
19 October 2005	International Convention Against Doping in Sport	30 November 2006 (r) Entry into force: 1 February 2007
20 October 2005	Convention on the Protection and Promotion of the Diversity of Cultural Expressions	21 December 2006 (r) Entry into force: 21 March 2007
22 June 2006	MoU to facilitate the Establishment of the Limpopo/Shashe Transfrontier Conservation Area	Entry into force: 22 June 2006
26 June 2006	Free Trade Agreement Sacu/EFTA	
13 September 2006	Action Plan on Trade Facilitation for Standards, Technical Regulations and Conformity Assessment (IBSA)	
13 September 2006	Framework for Co-operation on the Information Society (IBSA)	
13 September 2006	MoU on Establishing a Trilateral Task Team on Biofuels (IBSA)	
13 September 2006	MoU on Trilateral Co-operation in Agriculture and Allied Fields under the IBSA Dialogue Forum Initiative (IBSA)	
13 September 2006	Trilateral Agreement concerning Merchant Shipping and other Maritime Transport-Related Matters (IBSA)	

Source: Department of Foreign Affairs

r = Ratification

a = Accession

Bilateral agreements signed between 1 January 2006 and 31 March 2007

Date signed	Country/organisation	Title	Date
4 January 2006	India	Agreement on Co-operation in the Field of Health and Medicine	
6 February 2006	Germany	Supplementary Arrangement concerning the Provision of Support during Exercise Good Hope from 6 February 2006 to 20 March 2006	Entry into force: 6 February 2006
23 February 2006	DRC	MoU on Co-operation in the Field of Human Settlements	Entry into force: 23 February 2006
28 February 2006	EU	Financing Agreement concerning EPRD Audit/Evaluation Facility	Entry into force: 28 February 2006
28 February 2006	EU	Financing Agreement concerning Programme of Assistance to the Victim-Empowerment Programme of the Department of Social Development in the South African Government	Entry into force: 28 February 2006
28 February 2006	EU	Financing Agreement concerning Support to the Risk Capital Facility	Entry into force: 28 February 2006
28 February 2006	EU	Financing Agreement concerning Support to the Urban Renewal Programme in the Eastern Cape	Entry into force: 28 February 2006
8 March 2006	Food, Agriculture and Natural Resources Policy Analysis Network	The Establishment of a Regional Office in South Africa	Entry into force: 8 March 2006
13 March 2006	IAEA	MoU between the IAEA and the RSA concerning a Regional Training Course on the Physical Protection of Radioactive Sources, Cape Town, South Africa 13 - 17 March 2006	
16 March 2006	DRC	Agreement on Co-operation in the Field of Maritime Transport	Entry into force: 16 March 2006
16 March 2006	DRC	Agreement on Decentralisation	Entry into force: 16 March 2006
16 March 2006	DRC	MoU on Education Co-operation	Entry into force: 16 March 2006
18 March 2006	Niger	Agreement on a Framework for Co-operation	Entry into force: 18 March 2006
19 April 2006	UN Industrial Development Organisation	Agreement on Establishing a Sub-Regional Office in South Africa	Entry into force: 19 April 2006
25 April 2006	UAE	MoU on Police Co-operation	Entry into force: 25 April 2006
28 April 2006	CAR	Framework Co-operation Agreement	
9 May 2006	Vietnam	MoU concerning Defence Co-operation	Entry into force: 9 May 2006
16 May 2006	Argentina	Agreement for Scientific and Technological Co-operation	
21 May 2006	France	Programme for Co-operation for the Years 2006 - 2008	Entry into force: 21 May 2006

Bilateral agreements signed between 1 January 2006 and 31 March 2007

Date signed	Country/organisation	Title	Date
22 May 2006	UK	MoU concerning the Provision of Personnel of the UK Armed Forces and the UK Ministry of Defence to advise the Department of Defence of South Africa on Aspects of Democratic Defence Management and Peace Support Operations	Entry into force: 22 May 2006
22 May 2006	World Food Programme (WFP)	Agreement on Establishing the Regional Bureau for Southern Africa for the UN WFP	Entry into force: 22 May 2006
24 May 2006	UK	Agreement on Film Co-production	
25 May 2006	Mozambique	MoU on Co-operation in the Field of Sport and Recreation	Entry into force: 25 May 2006
30 May 2006	Sudan	Agreement regarding the Modalities for the Establishment of a JBC	
30 May 2006	UNDP	Standard Letter of Agreement for the Provision of Implementation Services within the Framework of the Project of "Support to Electoral Process in the DRC", regarding the Timely Printing of Appropriate Ballot Papers and Transportation to 14 Hubs for the First and Second Rounds of the Congolese Elections	Entry into force: 30 May 2006
8 June 2006	India	MoU concerning the Training of South African Navy Personnel by the Indian Navy	Entry into force: 8 June 2006
12 June 2006	India	MoU on Co-operation in the Field of Governance, Administration and other related Areas	Entry into force: 12 June 2006
15 June 2006	EU	Financing Agreement concerning Assistance to the South African Government to Prevent and React to Human Trafficking	Entry into force: 15 June 2006
15 June 2006	EU	Financing Agreement concerning Financial Management Support Programme Phase 2	
21 June 2006	PRC	Agreement on Co-operation in the Peaceful Uses of Atomic Energy	
21 June 2006	PRC	Implementation Programme under the Agreement on Co-operation in Arts and Culture for the years 2006 - 2009	
21 June 2006	PRC	Joint Declaration of Intent on Economic and Technical Co-operation	
21 June 2006	PRC	MoU on Co-operation in the Field of Forestry	Entry into force: 21 June 2006
21 June 2006	PRC	MoU on Public Health and Medical Sciences Co-operation	Entry into force: 21 June 2006
21 June 2006	PRC	MoU regarding Co-operation in the Field of Aquaculture	Entry into force: 21 June 2006
21 June 2006	PRC	Programme of Co-operation on Deepening the Strategic Partnership	
21 June 2006	PRC	Protocol of Phytosanitary Requirements for the Export of Citrus Fruit from South Africa to China	Entry into force: 21 June 2006

Bilateral agreements signed between 1 January 2006 and 31 March 2007

Date signed	Country	Title/organisation	Date
21 June 2006	PRC	Protocol on Sanitary Requirements of Inspection and Quarantine for Export and Import of Heat-Treated Pork	
21 June 2006	PRC	Protocol on Sanitary Requirements of Inspection and Quarantine for Export and Import of Heat-Treated Poultry Meat	
22 June 2006	Denmark	Agreement regarding the Support to Education and Skills Development Programme in South Africa Phase II	Entry into force: 22 June 2006
23 June 2006	Mozambique	Agreement in the Fields of Arts and Culture	
23 June 2006	Spain	Convention for the Avoidance of Double Taxation and the Prevention of Fiscal Evasion with Respect to Taxes on Income and on Capital	
28 June 2006	Denmark	Agreement on Project Consolidate: A Knowledge Management Project Implemented by the Department of Provincial and Local Government in all Provinces of the Republic of South Africa	Entry into force: 28 June 2006
3 July 2006	Guinea	Protocol on Diplomatic Consultations	Entry into force: 3 July 2006
3 July 2006	Guinea	Trade Agreement	
7 July 2006	Mozambique	Agreement on Scientific and Technological Co-operation	Entry into force: 7 July 2006
10 July 2006	Mali	Agreement on Scientific and Technological Co-operation	Entry into force: 10 July 2006
18 July 2006	Bolivia	MoU regarding the Establishment of a Mechanism for Consultations	Entry into force: 18 July 2006
2 August 2006	Orange-Senqu River Commission (Orasecom)	Agreement for the Hosting of the Secretariat of the Orasecom in the Republic of South Africa	Entry into force: 2 August 2006
18 August 2006	Botswana	MoU on the Development of the Mmamabula Coal-Fired Power Station	Entry into force: 18 August 2006
22 August 2006	Iran	Agreement regarding Mutual Assistance between their Customs Administrations	
22 August 2006	Iran	Joint Communiqué of the Ninth Joint Bilateral Commission (not an agreement)	
28 August 2006	Belarus	Agreement on Co-operation in the Fields of Arts and Culture	Entry into force: 28 August 2006
28 August 2006	Belarus	Agreement on the Establishment of a Committee on Trade and Economic Co-operation	
28 August 2006	Belarus	Agreement on the Waiver of Visa Requirements for Holders of Diplomatic and Service or Official Passports	
28 August 2006	PRC	MoU on Promoting Bilateral Trade and Economic Co-operation	Entry into force: 28 August 2006 Annexure 1 January 2007
30 August 2006	Rwanda	MoU regarding Economic Co-operation	
31 August 2006	Ethiopia	Joint Declaration of Intent	

Bilateral agreements signed between 1 January 2006 and 31 March 2007

Date signed	Country	Title/organisation	Date
31 August 2006	Seychelles	Agreement on Health Matters	
5 September 2006	Russian Federation	Agreement on Co-operation in the Field of Health and Medical Science	Entry into force: 5 September 2006
5 September 2006	Russian Federation	Agreement on Co-operation in the Field of the Exploration and Use of Outer Space for Peaceful Purposes	
5 September 2006	Russian Federation	Agreement on Reciprocal Protection of Intellectual Property Rights Used and Established in the Course of Bilateral Defence-Industrial Co-operation	Entry into force: 5 September 2006
5 September 2006	Russian Federation	Treaty of Friendship and Partnership	
8 September 2006	Argentina	Agreement for the Co-ordination of their Maritime and Aeronautical Search and Rescue Services	Entry into force: 8 September 2006
19 September 2006	IAEA	Revised Supplementary Agreement concerning the Provision of Technical Assistance	Entry into force: 19 September 2006
22 September 2006	Cameroon	General Co-operation Agreement	
22 September 2006	Cameroon	MoU regarding Economic Co-operation	
22 September 2006	Cameroon	Trade Agreement	
22 September 2006	PRC	Agreement on Mutual Administrative Assistance in Customs Matters	Entry into force: 1 February 2007
27 September 2006	Institute for Democracy and Electoral Assistance (IDEA)	Agreement regarding the Establishment of the IDEA Regional Office in South Africa	Entry into force: 27 September 2006
29 September 2006	Belarus	Agreement on Military Technical Co-operation	Entry into force: 5 September 2006
2 October 2006	India	Agreement on Co-operation in the Field of Education	Entry into force: 2 October 2006
2 October 2006	India	The Tshwane Declaration on Reaffirming the Strategic Partnership between South Africa and India	
3 October 2006	Dominican Republic	Declaration of Intent on Joint Activities	Entry into force: 3 October 2006
9 October 2006	PRC	MoU on Co-operation in the Fields of Human-Resource Development and Employment Creation	Entry into force: 9 October 2006
11 October 2006	Chile	MoU on Defence Co-operation	
11 October 2006	Montenegro	Joint Communiqué on the Establishment of Diplomatic Relations	
18 October 2006	Australia	Agreement on Scientific and Technological Co-operation	
30 October 2006	Greece	Agreement on Scientific and Technological Co-operation	
30 October 2006	Lesotho	MoU on Co-operation in the Field of Labour	Entry into force: 30 October 2006
1 November 2006	Gabon	MoU on Defence Co-operation	Entry into force: 1 November 2006
10 November 2006	Belgium	JC	Entry into force: 10 November 2006
13 November 2006	Portugal	Convention for the Avoidance of Double Taxation and the Prevention of Fiscal Evasion with Respect to Taxes on Income	
23 November 2006	DRC	MoU on Co-operation in the Area of Social Development	Entry into force: 23 November 2006
23 November 2006	Guinea	Agreement on the Establishment of a JCC	Entry into force: 23 November 2006

Bilateral agreements signed between 1 January 2006 and 31 March 2007

Date signed	Country	Title/organisation	Date
23 November 2006	Mauritius	MoU on Co-operation in the Field of Social Development	Entry into force: 23 November 2006
24 November 2006	Guinea	MoU on Basic English and French Language Training	Entry into force: 24 November 2006
30 November 2006	Belgium	Specific Agreement on Post-Settlement and Development Support to Restitution Beneficiaries for the Commission on Restitution of Land Affairs	Entry into force: 30 November 2006
30 November 2006	Mexico	Technical Co-operation Agreement	Entry into force: 30 November 2006
5 December 2006	Japan	Declaration of Intent between the Government of the Republic of South Africa and the Japan Bank for International Co-operation Establishing a Comprehensive Strategic Partnership	
30 January 2007	Seychelles	General Co-operation Agreement	Entry into force: 30 January 2007
6 February 2007	PRC	Agreement on Economic and Technical Co-operation	Entry into force: 6 February 2007
6 February 2007	PRC	Joint Declaration of Intent on Economic and Technical Co-operation	
6 February 2007	PRC	Protocol of Phytosanitary Requirements for the Export of Apple Fruit from China to South Africa	Entry into force: 6 February 2007
6 February 2007	PRC	Protocol of Phytosanitary Requirements for the Export of Pear Fruit from China to South Africa	Entry into force: 20070206
6 February 2007	PRC	Protocol of Phytosanitary Requirements for the Export of Table Grapes from South Africa to China	Entry into force: 6 February 2007
6 February 2007	PRC	Protocol of Phytosanitary Requirements for the Export of Tobacco Leaf from South Africa to China	Entry into force: 6 February 2007
6 February 2007	PRC	Protocol on Economic and Technical Co-operation	Entry into force: 6 February 2007
11 February 2007	CAR	MoU concerning Defence Co-operation	Entry into force: 11 February 2007
14 February 2007	Burundi	General Co-operation Agreement	Entry into force: 14 February 2007
28 February 2007	Argentina	Agreement on Bilateral Co-operation in the Fields of Sport and Recreation	Entry into force: 28 February 2007
28 February 2007	Argentina	Extradition Treaty	
28 February 2007	Argentina	Treaty on Mutual Legal Assistance in Criminal Matters	
5 March 2007	Benin	Joint Communiqué	
6 March 2007	Uganda	MoU regarding the Renovation of the OR Tambo School of Leadership	Entry into force: 6 March 2007
9 March 2007	AU	Agreement on the Material and Technical Organisation of the Third Ordinary Session of the AU Conference of Ministers of Health	Entry into force: 9 March 2007
12 March 2007	Oman	Agreement on Scientific and Technological Co-operation	
13 March 2007	Saudi Arabia	Convention for the Avoidance of Double Taxation and Prevention of Tax Evasion with Respect to Taxes on Income and on Capital	
30 March 2007	FAO	Agreement on Capacity-Building for South African Professional and Emerging Farmers in the Field of Agriculture and Food Security	Entry into force: 30 March 2007

Acknowledgements

BuaNews

Estimates of National Expenditure 2007, published by National Treasury

Department of Foreign Affairs

www.dfa.gov.za

www.gov.za

www.iol.co.za

www.tshwane.gov.za

Suggested reading

Adam, H and Moodley, K. *Seeking Mandela: Peacemaking between Israelis and Palestinians*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2005.

Adebajo, A and Scanlon, H. eds. *A Dialogue of the Deaf: Essays on Africa and the United Nations*. Johannesburg: Fanele (Jacana Media), 2006.

Adebajo, A, Adediji, A and Landsberg, C. eds. *South Africa in Africa: The Post-Apartheid Era*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2007.

Alden, C and Martin, G. eds. *France and South Africa: Towards a New Engagement with Africa*. Pretoria: Protea Book House, 2003.

Bond, P. *Talk Left, Walk Right: South Africa's Frustrated Global Reform*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2004.

Bond, P. *Talk Left, Walk Right: South Africa's Frustrated Global Reforms*. 2nd ed. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2006.

Clapham, C, Herbst, J and Mills, G. eds. *Big African States: Angola, Sudan, DRC, Ethiopia, Nigeria, South Africa*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2006.

Dorrian, P. *The Making of South Africa Inc: Unlocking South Africa's Global Potential*. Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2005.

Draper, P. ed. *Reconfiguring the Compass: South Africa's Trade Diplomacy*. Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs, 2005.

Hughes, T. *Composers, Conductors and Players: Harmony and Discord in South African Foreign Policy*. Johannesburg: Konrad-Adenauer-Stiftung, 2004.

Hussein, S. ed. *Towards Sustainable Peace: Reflections on Preventive Diplomacy in Africa*. Pretoria: Africa Institute of South Africa, 2003.

Landsberg, C. *The Quiet Diplomacy of Liberation: International Politics and South Africa's Transition*. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2004.

Mills, G. *Security Intersection: The Paradox of Power in an Age of Terror*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2004.

Mills, G and Sideropoulos, E. eds. *New Tools for Reform and Stability: Sanctions, Conditionalities and Conflict Resolution*. Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs, 2003.

Mills, G and Skidmore, N. eds. *Towards China Inc? Assessing the Implications for Africa*. Johannesburg: South African Institute of International Affairs, 2004.

Murray, R. *Human Rights in Africa: From the OAU to the African Union*. Cambridge: University of Cambridge Press, 2004.

Sall, A. ed. *Africa 2025: What Possible Futures for Sub-Saharan Africa*. Pretoria: Unisa Press, 2003.

Southall, R. ed. *South Africa's Role in Conflict Resolution and Peacemaking in Africa*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council Press, 2006.



SA YEARBOOK 2007/08 | GOVERNMENT SYSTEM



The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 was the result of remarkably detailed and inclusive negotiations that were carried out with an acute awareness of the injustices of the country's non-democratic past. It took effect on 4 February 1997.

The Constitution

The Constitution is the supreme law of the land. No other law or government action can supersede the provisions of the Constitution. South Africa's Constitution is one of the most progressive in the world and enjoys high acclaim internationally.

The Preamble

The Constitution's Preamble states that the Constitution aims to:

- heal the divisions of the past and establish a society based on democratic values, social justice and fundamental human rights
- improve the quality of life of all citizens and free the potential of each person
- lay the foundations for a democratic and open society in which government is based on the will of the people, and in which every citizen is equally protected by law
- build a united and democratic South Africa that is able to take its rightful place as a sovereign state in the family of nations.

Founding provisions

According to Chapter One of the Constitution, South Africa is a sovereign, democratic state founded on the following values:

- human dignity, the achievement of equality and the advancement of human rights and freedom
- non-racialism and non-sexism
- supremacy of the Constitution
- universal adult suffrage, a national common voters' roll, regular elections and a multiparty system of democratic government to ensure accountability, responsiveness and openness.

Fundamental rights

The fundamental rights contained in Chapter Two of the Constitution seek to protect the rights and freedom of individuals. The Constitutional Court (CC) guards these rights and determines whether actions by the State are in accordance with constitutional provisions.

Government

Government consists of national, provincial and local spheres, which are distinctive, interdependent and interrelated. The powers of the law-makers

(legislative authorities), governments (executive authorities) and courts (judicial authorities) are separate from one another.

Parliament

Parliament is the legislative authority of South Africa and has the power to make laws for the country in accordance with the Constitution. It consists of the National Assembly and the National Council of Provinces (NCOP). Parliamentary sittings are open to the public. Since the establishment of Parliament in 1994, a number of steps have been taken to make it more accessible and to motivate and facilitate public participation in the legislative process. The website www.parliament.gov.za encourages comment and feedback from the public.

National Assembly

The National Assembly consists of no fewer than 350 and no more than 400 members elected through a system of proportional representation. The National Assembly, which is elected for a term of five years, is presided over by the Speaker, assisted by the Deputy Speaker. The National Assembly is elected to represent the people and to ensure democratic governance as required by the Constitution. It does this by electing the President, providing a national forum for public consideration of issues, passing legislation, and scrutinising and overseeing executive action.

National Council of Provinces

The NCOP consists of 54 permanent members and 36 special delegates, and aims to represent provincial interests in the national sphere of government. Delegations consist of 10 representatives from each province. The NCOP must have a mandate from the provinces before it can make certain decisions. It cannot, however, initiate a Bill concerning money, which is the prerogative of the Minister of Finance. NCOP Online! (www.parliament.gov.za/ncop) links Parliament to the provincial legislatures and local-government associations. It provides information on draft legislation and allows the public to make electronic submissions. The NCOP, which celebrated its 10th anniversary on 11 April 2007, came into existence on 6 February 1997.

Law-making

Any Bill may be introduced in the National Assembly. A Bill passed by the National Assembly must be referred to the NCOP for consideration.

A Bill affecting the provinces may be introduced in the NCOP. After it has been passed by the council, it must be referred to the assembly.

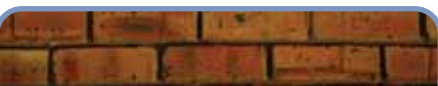
A Bill concerning money must be introduced in the assembly and referred to the NCOP for consideration and approval after being passed.

If the council rejects a Bill or passes it subject to amendments, the assembly must reconsider the Bill and pass it again with or without amendments. There are special conditions for the approval of laws dealing with provinces.

The President

The President is the Head of State and leads the Cabinet. He or she is elected by the National Assembly from among its members, and leads the country in the interest of national unity, in accordance with the Constitution and the law.

The President of South Africa is Mr Thabo Mbeki.



Parliament launched its new logo in Cape Town on 27 March 2007. The new emblem is an important step in creating the identity of Parliament, representing its values, vision and mission.

The new emblem was the result of a democratic process involving its members, officials and the people of South Africa. The new emblem centres around four key elements:

- Our Constitution lays the foundation for a democratic and open society based on democratic values, social justice and fundamental human rights. It is the supreme law of the country and ensures government by the people under the Constitution.
- Our People – A people's Parliament of freely elected representatives that builds on the foundation of a democratic and open society. Parliament acts as a voice of the people, providing a national forum for the public consideration of issues.
- Our Parliament – The drum calls the National Assembly and the National Council of Provinces to consider national and provincial issues, ensuring government by the people under the Constitution.
- Our South Africa – The sun represents the healing of the divisions of the past, improving the quality of life of all South Africans, freeing the potential of each person and building a united and democratic South Africa to take its rightful place as a sovereign state in the family of nations.



PARLIAMENT
OF THE REPUBLIC OF SOUTH AFRICA

The Deputy President

The President appoints the Deputy President from among the members of the National Assembly. The Deputy President assists the President in executing government functions.

The Deputy President of South Africa is Ms Phumzile Mlambo-Ngcuka.

Cabinet

The Cabinet consists of the President, as head of the Cabinet, the Deputy President and ministers. The President appoints the Deputy President and ministers, assigns their powers and functions and may dismiss them.

The President may select any number of ministers from among the members of the National Assembly, and may select no more than two ministers from outside the assembly.

The President appoints a member of the Cabinet to be the leader of government business in the National Assembly.

Deputy ministers

The President appoints deputy ministers from among the members of the National Assembly.

Traditional leadership

Chapter 12 of the Constitution states that the institution, status and roles of traditional leadership, according to customary law, are recognised, subject to the Constitution.

The Chief Directorate: Traditional Leadership and Institutions in the Department of Provincial and Local Government provides support to traditional leaders and institutions, and is responsible for the development of policy in this regard.

It renders an anthropological service, and provides advice and support regarding governance and development matters. It advises and supports the National House of Traditional Leaders and maintains a database of traditional leaders and institutions.

It is also responsible for developing and implementing a regulatory framework for the protection of the rights of cultural, religious and linguistic communities.

Traditional councils

The stipulations of Chapter 12 of the Constitution and the advent of democracy required the transformation of the composition of traditional councils. Therefore, legislation has transformed the composition of traditional councils to provide for elements of democracy (40% of members must be

elected) and gender representivity (one third of members must be women).

Legislation has also opened a window of opportunity for municipalities and traditional councils to achieve co-operative governance. Traditional councils have been given a strong voice in development matters and may now enter into partnerships and service-delivery agreements with government in all spheres.

Houses of traditional leaders

The Constitution mandates the establishment of houses of traditional leaders by means of either provincial or national legislation.

The National House of Traditional Leaders was established in terms of the National House of Traditional Leaders Act, 1997 (Act 10 of 1997). Its

objectives and functions promote the role of traditional leadership within a democratic constitutional dispensation, enhance unity and understanding among traditional communities and advise national government.

Provincial houses of traditional leaders were established in all six provinces that have traditional leaders, namely the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, the Free State, Mpumalanga, Limpopo and North West.

The Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, 2003 (Act 41 of 2003), provides for the establishment of local houses of traditional leaders.

The national and provincial houses of traditional leaders enhance the co-operative relationships within national and provincial government, while the establishment of local houses of traditional leaders will deepen and cement the relationship between municipalities and traditional leaders on customary law and development initiatives.

In May 2007, the National House of Traditional Leaders celebrated its 10th anniversary.

By July 2007, all provinces had adopted regulations that guide the drafting of provincial regulations for the transformation of traditional authorities into traditional councils and the establishment of local houses.

Eleven departments had agreed to participate in the process of allocating roles and functions to traditional leadership.

Commission on Traditional Leadership Disputes and Claims

The commission was established in terms of Section 22(1) of the Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, 2003.

The main objective of the commission is to investigate and make findings on traditional-leadership disputes and claims.

Department of Provincial and Local Government

The national department's mandate is derived from chapters 3 and 7 of the Constitution. Its functions are to develop national policies and legislation regarding provinces and local government, and to support and monitor the implementation of and



President Thabo Mbeki was born on 18 June 1942 in Idutywa, Queenstown, in the Eastern Cape. He joined the African National Congress (ANC) Youth League at the age of 14 and in 1961 was elected secretary of the African Students' Association.

He was involved in underground activities after the banning of the ANC in 1960, until he left South Africa in 1962. He continued his studies in the United Kingdom (UK) and obtained a Master of Arts (Economics) at the University of Sussex. While in the UK, he mobilised the international student community against apartheid and worked at the London office of the ANC for several years. He also underwent military training in what was then the Soviet Union.

From 1973, Mr Mbeki worked in Botswana, Swaziland, Nigeria and Zambia and became a member of the ANC's National Executive Committee in 1975. Between 1984 and 1989, he was director of the ANC's Department of Information. He led the organisation's delegations, which met groups from inside South Africa in Dakar, Senegal, and elsewhere. In 1989, he headed the delegation that held talks with the apartheid government, which led to agreements on the unbanning of political organisations and the release of political prisoners. He also participated in negotiations preceding the adoption of South Africa's Interim Constitution in 1993.

Following the first democratic election in 1994, Mr Mbeki was appointed Executive Deputy President. In 1997, he was elected President of the ANC, and in June 1999, after the country's second democratic election, he succeeded Mr Nelson Mandela as President of South Africa.

Mr Mbeki's inauguration as the country's third democratically elected President on 27 April 2004 coincided with the celebration of 10 Years of Freedom.

compliance with the following regulatory frameworks:

- White Paper on Local Government (1998)
- Local Government: Municipal Demarcation Act, 1998 (Act 27 of 1998)
- Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 1998 (Act 117 of 1998)
- Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act 32 of 2000)
- Disaster Management Act, 2002 (Act 57 of 2002)
- Traditional Leadership and Governance Framework Act, 2003

- Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act 27 of 2003)
- Municipal Property Rates Act, 2004 (Act 6 of 2004)
- Intergovernmental Relations (IGR) Framework Act, 2005 (Act 13 of 2005).

The department's vision is to create a capable and well-integrated system of government working together to achieve sustainable development and enhanced service delivery in a developmental state.

The department's mission is to provide professional and technical support to government by:

Cabinet ministers and deputy ministers, as on 1 December 2007

Portfolio	Minister	Deputy Minister
Agriculture and Land Affairs	Lulama Xingwana	Dirk du Toit
Arts and Culture	Pallo Jordan	Ntombazana Botha
Communications	Ivy Matsepe-Casaburri	Radhakrishna Padayachie
Correctional Services	Ngconde Balfour	Loretta Jacobus
Defence	Mosiua Lekota	Mluleki George
Education	Naledi Pandor	Enver Surty
Environmental Affairs and Tourism	Marthinus van Schalkwyk	Joyce Mabudafhasi
Finance	Trevor Manuel	Jabu Moleketi
Foreign Affairs	Nkosazana Dlamini Zuma	Aziz Pahad and Sue van der Merwe
Health	Manto Tshabalala-Msimang	—
Home Affairs	Nosiviwe Mapisa-Nqakula	Malusi Gigaba
Housing	Lindiwe Sisulu	—
Intelligence Services	Ronnie Kasrils	—
Justice and Constitutional Development	Brigitte Mabandla	Johnny de Lange
Labour	Membathisi Mdladlana	—
Minerals and Energy	Buyelwa Sonjica	—
Provincial and Local Government	Sydney Mufamadi	Nomatyala Hangana
The Presidency	Essop Pahad	—
Public Enterprises	Alec Erwin	—
Public Service and Administration	Geraldine Fraser-Moleketi	—
Public Works	Thoko Didiza	Ntopile Kganyago
Safety and Security	Charles Nqakula	Susan Shabangu
Science and Technology	Mosibudi Mangena	Derek Hanekom
Social Development	Zola Skweyiya	Jean Swanson-Jacobs
Sport and Recreation	Makhenkesi Stofile	Gert Oosthuizen
Trade and Industry	Mandisi Mpahlwa	Rob Davies and Elizabeth Thabethe
Transport	Jeff Radebe	—
Water Affairs and Forestry	Lindiwe Hendricks	—

- developing appropriate policies and legislation to promote integration in government's development programmes and service delivery
- providing strategic interventions, support and partnerships to facilitate policy implementation by the provinces and local government
- creating enabling mechanisms for communities to participate in governance.

The department has adopted a set of values that is informed by the Batho Pele (People First) principles and focuses on the following:

- dedication to professional development and service delivery
- professionalism in the conduct of all employees
- leading and participating in service delivery
- being goal-orientated in undertaking its mandate.

The activities of the Department of Provincial and Local Government are organised under the following seven branches:

- Corporate Services
- Governance, Policy and Research
- Urban and Rural Development
- Systems and Capacity-Building
- Free Basic Services and Infrastructure
- Monitoring and Evaluation.

Provincial government

In accordance with the Constitution, each of the nine provinces has its own legislature, consisting of between 30 and 80 members. The number of members is determined in terms of a formula set out in national legislation. The members are elected in terms of proportional representation.

The executive council of a province consists of a premier and a number of members (MECs). Premiers are appointed by the President of the country.

Decisions are taken by consensus, as is the case in the national Cabinet. Besides being able to make provincial laws, a provincial legislature may adopt a constitution for its province if two thirds of its members agree.

However, a provincial constitution must correspond with the national Constitution as confirmed by the CC.

According to the Constitution, provinces may have legislative and executive powers, concurrent with the national sphere, over:

- agriculture
- casinos, racing, gambling and wagering
- cultural affairs
- education at all levels, excluding university and university of technology education
- environment
- health services
- housing
- language policy
- nature conservation
- police services
- provincial public media
- public transport
- regional planning and development
- road-traffic regulation
- tourism
- trade and industrial promotion
- traditional authorities
- urban and rural development
- vehicle licensing
- welfare services.

These powers can be exercised to the extent that provinces have the administrative capacity to assume effective responsibilities.

Provinces also have exclusive competency over a number of areas, which include:

- abattoirs
- ambulance services
- liquor licences
- museums other than national museums
- provincial planning



The introduction of the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005 (Act 13 of 2005), is starting to demonstrate how intergovernmental relations can be improved. In most provinces, intergovernmental structures have begun to assume a strategic role in forging co-operation between the different spheres of government. These structures also seek to improve integrated development plans (IDPs) and enable government to deliver services effectively and closer to local communities.

The Department of Provincial and Local Government co-ordinates an intergovernmental process of engagements that is expected to achieve significant results through IDPs. This effort is starting to yield results with improvements in the adoption rate of municipal plans and budgets, and better integration between capital and operational budgets within these IDPs.

Members of the executive councils of provincial governments, as on 1 October 2007

Eastern Cape

Ms Nosimo Balindlela	Premier
Mr Gugile Nkwinti	Agriculture
Mr Johny Makgato	Education
Mr Mbulelo Sogoni	Economic Affairs, Environment and Tourism
Mr Billy Nel	Finance
Ms Nomsa Jajula	Provincial Treasury
Ms Thokozile Xasa	Housing, Local Government and Traditional Affairs
Mr Thobile Mhlahlo	Safety, Liaison and Transport
Mr Christian Martin	Roads and Public Works
Ms Noxolo Abrahams- Ntantiso	Sport, Recreation, Arts and Culture
Mr Sam Kwelita	Social Development

Free State

Ms Beatrice Marshoff	Premier
Ms Suzan Mnumzana	Agriculture
Mr Cusca Mokitlana	Education
Mr Neo Masithela	Tourism, and Environmental and Economic Affairs
Ms Zanele Dlungwana	Public Safety and Liaison
Mr Sakhiwo Belot	Health
Mr Joel Mafereka	Local Government and Housing
Mr Pule Makgoe	Provincial Treasury
Mr Seiso Mohai	Transport, Roads and Public Works
Ms Mantsheng Tsopo	Social Development
Mr Ace Magashule	Sport, Arts and Culture

Gauteng

Mr Mbhazima Shilowa	Premier
Mr Khabisi Mosunkutu	Agriculture, Conservation and Environment
Ms Dorothy Mahlangu	Local Government
Ms Angelina Motshekga	Education
Mr Paul Mashatile	Finance and Economic Affairs
Mr Brian Hlongwa	Health
Ms Nomvula Mokonyane	Housing
Mr Firoz Cachalia	Community Safety
Ms Barbara Creecy	Sport, Arts, Culture and Recreation
Mr Kgaogelo Lekgoro	Social Development
Mr Ignatius Jacobs	Public Transport, Roads and Works

KwaZulu-Natal

Mr Sibusiso Ndebele	Premier
Mr Mtholephi Mthimkhulu	Agriculture and Environmental Affairs
Ms Ina Cronjé	Education
Ms Weziwe Thusi	Arts, Culture and Tourism
Dr Zweli Mkhize	Finance and Economic Development
Ms Neliswa Nkonyeni	Health
Mr Mike Mabuyakhulu	Local Government, Housing and Traditional Affairs
Dr Meschack Hadebe	Social Welfare and Population Development
Ms Lydia Johnson	Public Works
Mr Bheki Cele	Transport, Community Safety and Liaison
Mr Amichand Rajbansi	Sport and Recreation

Limpopo

Mr Sello Moloto	Premier
Dr Aaron Motsoaledi	Education
Mr Saad Cachalia	Provincial Treasury
Mr Charles Sekoati	Health and Social Development
Ms Maite Nkoana- Mashabane	Local Government and Housing
Mr Collins Chabane	Economic Development, Environment and Tourism
Ms Dikeledi Magadzi	Agriculture
Dr Joyce Mashamba	Sport, Arts and Culture
Mr Justice Pitso	Roads and Transport
Ms Samson Ndou	Security and Liaison
Ms Machuene Semenya	Public Works

Mpumalanga

Mr Thabang Makwetla	Premier
Ms Dinah Pule	Agriculture, Conservation, Environment and Land Reform
Mr Craig Padayachee	Economic Development and Planning
Mr Siphosezwe Masango	Education
Mr William Lubisi	Health and Social Development
Ms Candith Mashego- Dlamini	Local Government and Housing
Mr Madala Masuku	Public Works
Ms Mmathulare Coleman	Finance
Mr Jabulani Mahlangu	Culture, Sport and Recreation
Mr David Mabuza	Roads and Transport
Mr Fish Mahlalela	Safety and Security

Northern Cape

Ms Dipuo Peters	Premier
Ms Tina Joemat-Pettersson	Agriculture and Land Reform
Mr Gomolelo Lucas	Education
Mr Pakes Dikgetsi	Finance
Ms Eunice Binase	Health
Mr Boeboe van Wyk	Housing and Local Government
Ms Thembi Madikane	Safety and Liaison
Mr Goolam Akhtarwary	Social Development
Mr Fred Wyngaardt	Sport, Arts and Culture
Mr Pieter Saaiman	Economic Affairs, Environmental Affairs and Tourism
Mr Kagisho Molusi	Public Works, Roads and Transport

North West

Ms Edna Molewa	Premier
Mr Ndleleni Duma	Arts, Culture and Sport
Mr Mandlenkosi Mayisela	Agriculture, Conservation and Environment
Mr Darkey Africa	Economic Development and Tourism
Ms Dineo Thapelo	Local Government and Housing
Rev. Johannes Tselapedi	Education
Ms Nomonde Rasmeni	Health
Ms Maureen Modiselle	Finance
Mr Frans Vilakazi	Transport, Roads and Community Safety
Mr Jerry Thibedi	Public Works
Ms Nikiwe Mangqo	Social Development

Western Cape

Mr Ebrahim Rasool	Premier
Mr Kobus Dowry	Agriculture
Mr Leonard Ramatlakane	Community Safety
Mr Cameron Dugmore	Education
Ms Tasneem Essop	Environment Planning and Economic Development
Ms Lynne Brown	Finance and Tourism
Mr Pierre Uys	Health
Mr Richard Dyantyi	Local Government and Housing
Mr Marius Fransman	Transport and Public Works
Ms Kholeka Mqulwana	Social Development
Mr Whitey Jacobs	Cultural Affairs, Sport and Recreation

- provincial cultural matters
- provincial recreation and activities
- provincial roads and traffic.

The President's Co-ordinating Council (PCC) is a consultative forum where the President discusses issues of national, provincial and local importance with the premiers.

The forum meets quarterly and addresses issues such as:

- enhancing the role of provincial executives regarding national policy decisions
- strengthening the capacity of provincial governments to implement government policies and programmes
- integrating provincial growth and development strategies (PGDS) within national development plans
- improving co-operation between national and provincial spheres of government
- improving co-operation on fiscal issues
- ensuring that there are co-ordinated implementation programmes and the necessary structures in place to address issues such as rural development, urban renewal, and safety and security.

Local government

There are 282 municipalities in South Africa. They are focused on growing local economies and providing infrastructure and services.

In accordance with the Constitution and the Organised Local Government Act, 1997 (Act 52 of 1997), (which formally recognises organised local-government associations), organised local government may designate up to 10 part-time representatives to represent municipalities and to participate in proceedings of the NCOP.

Municipal Demarcation Board

The board is a constitutional institution established by the Local Government: Municipal Demarcation Act, 1998.

The main function of the board is to determine municipal boundaries in accordance with the Act and other related legislation, and to advise on demarcation matters.

In addition, the board is tasked with delimiting wards into metropolitan and local municipalities.

South African Local Government Association (Salga)

Salga is a listed public entity, established in terms of Section 21 of the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973), and recognised by the Minister of Provincial and Local Government in terms of the Organised Local Government Act, 1997 (Act 52 of 1997).

Salga represents local government on numerous intergovernmental forums such as the PCC, Minister and MECs (MlnMec) forum, the Budget Forum, as well as the NCOP and on the Financial and Fiscal Commission.

Salga aims, among other things, to:

- transform local government to enable it to fulfil its developmental role
- enhance the role of provincial local-government associations as provincial representatives and consultative bodies on local government
- raise the profile of local government
- ensure full participation of women in local government
- act as the national employers' organisation for municipal and provincial member employers
- provide legal assistance to its members, using its discretion in connection with matters that affect employee relations.

Salga is funded through a combination of sources, including a national government grant, membership fees from provincial- and local-government associations that are voluntary members, and donations from the donor community for specific projects.

Local Government Strategic Agenda (2006 - 2011)

In 2006, the Department of Provincial and Local Government co-ordinated the implementation of the five-year Local Government Strategic Agenda.

The agenda aims to ensure that the three spheres of government focus on a systematic and co-ordinated local-development programme that can be monitored periodically.

Municipalities

The Constitution provides for three categories of municipalities.

As directed by the Constitution, the Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 1998 contains criteria for determining when an area must have a category-A municipality (metropolitan municipalities) and when municipalities fall into categories B (local municipalities) or C (district municipalities). The Act also determines that category-A municipalities can only be established in metropolitan areas.

Metropolitan councils have single metropolitan budgets, common property ratings and service-tariff systems, and single employer bodies.

South Africa has nine metropolitan municipalities, namely:

- Buffalo City (East London)
- City of Cape Town
- Ekurhuleni Metropolitan Municipality (East Rand)
- City of eThekweni (Durban)
- City of Johannesburg
- Mangaung Municipality (Bloemfontein)
- Msunduzi Municipality (Pietermaritzburg)
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Municipality (Port Elizabeth)
- City of Tshwane (Pretoria).

Metropolitan councils may decentralise powers and functions.

However, all original municipal, legislative and executive powers are vested in the metropolitan council.

In metropolitan areas, there is a choice of two types of executive system: the mayoral executive system where executive authority is vested in the mayor, and the collective executive committee system where these powers are vested in the executive committee.

Non-metropolitan areas consist of district councils and local councils.

District councils are primarily responsible for capacity-building and district-wide planning.

The Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 1998 provides for ward committees whose tasks, among other things, are to:

- prepare, implement and review integrated development plans (IDPs)
- establish, implement and review municipalities' performance-management systems
- monitor and review municipalities' performances
- prepare municipalities' budgets
- participate in decisions about the provision of municipal services
- communicate and disseminate information on governance matters.



Imbizo is a forum for enhancing dialogue and interaction between government and the people. It provides an opportunity for government to communicate its Programme of Action and the progress being made. It promotes participation of the public in the programmes to improve their lives. Imbizo also highlights people's concerns, grievances and advice about government's work.

Integrated development plans

In terms of the Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 2000, all municipalities are required to prepare IDPs. Integrated development planning is a process by which municipalities prepare five-year strategic plans that are reviewed annually in consultation with communities and stakeholders.

The aim is to achieve service-delivery and development goals in municipal areas in an effective and sustainable way. National and provincial-sector departments, development agencies, private-sector bodies, non-governmental organisations (NGOs) and communities all have a key role to play in preparing and implementing IDPs.

The Department of Provincial and Local Government advises role-players on how to co-ordinate and improve development planning, and provides platforms for knowledge-sharing. It has developed a supporting intergovernmental planning

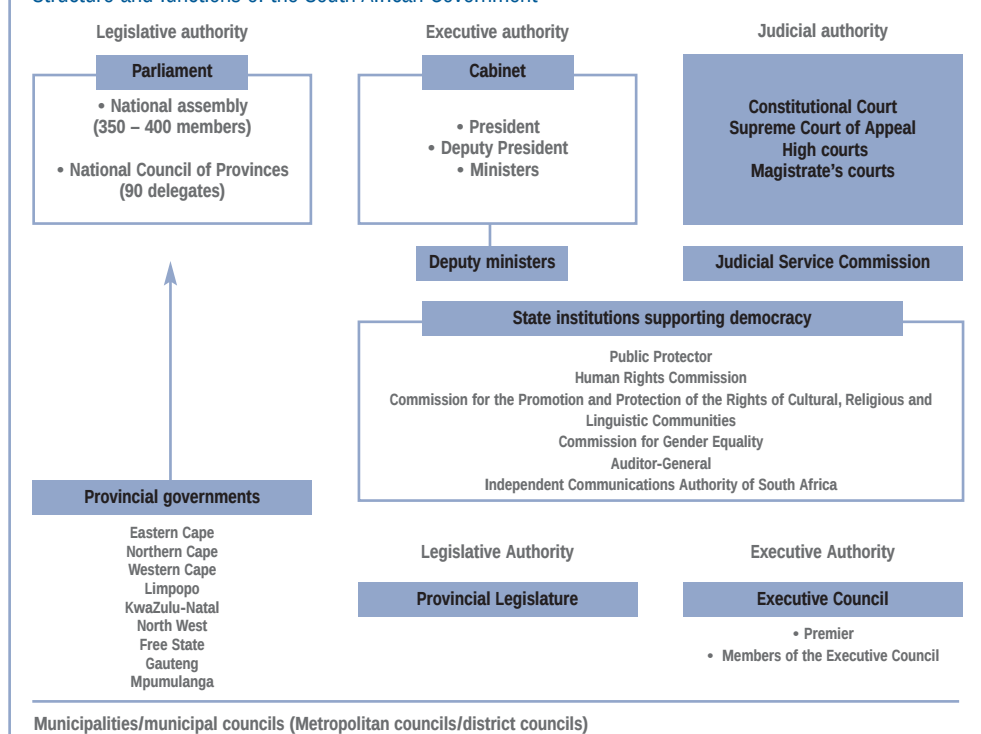
framework, which provides greater clarity as to the type and role of appropriate planning at each government level. The IDP Nerve Centre was established to provide an information-co-ordination service to strengthen intergovernmental planning.

A national engagement process of all IDPs was conducted in 2007. An IDP format guide was distributed to all municipalities.

The department initiated a national assessment process, looking at the IDPs of all municipalities. This intergovernmental effort resulted in the increased adoption rate of IDPs. The adoption rate in the 2006/07 financial year was 98%. These IDP engagement processes are contributing to inter-sphere co-ordination and integration.

By mid-2007, in addition to the 17 national intergovernmental structures which had been established since 1994, all the provincial governments had established their own premier's co-ordinating intergovernmental forums.

Structure and functions of the South African Government



These were constituted in terms of Section 16 of the IGR Framework Act, 2005.

All 46 district municipalities had established their district intergovernmental forums in terms of Section 24 of the IGR Framework Act, 2005. The process is an integral part of an institutionalised mechanism for monitoring the implementation of the government-wide five-year Local Government Strategic Agenda. Provinces have made progress towards establishing provincial monitoring and evaluation (M&E) units in the offices of the premiers and the provincial departments of local government.

By mid-2007, work had been completed in eight of the 13 pilot areas for the application of the National Spatial Development Perspective (NSDP) principles, and draft reports were being finalised. A draft communication plan for the NSDP had been prepared. Planning for extending the NSDP application to 10 districts/metros had been initiated.

Legislation

The Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 2000 established a framework for planning, performance-management systems, effective use of resources and organisational change in a business context.

The Act also established a system for municipalities to report on their performance, and provided residents with an opportunity to compare this performance with that of others.

It also regulates public-private partnerships. The Act allows municipalities significant powers to corporatise their services, to establish utilities for service delivery, or to enter into partnerships with other service-providers. The Act provides for the adoption of a credit-control policy for municipalities that will provide for the termination of services in the event of non-payment. Municipalities will have the power to pass bylaws to implement the policy.

The Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 is aimed at modernising municipal budgeting and financial management. It facilitates the development of a long-term municipal lending/bond market. It also introduces a governance framework for separate entities created by municipalities.

The Act is a critical element in the overall transformation of local government in South Africa. It fosters transparency at local-government level through budget and reporting requirements.

The Local Government: Municipal Property Rates Act, 2004 regulates the power of a municipality to impose property rates, excludes certain properties from rating in the national interest, provides fair and

equitable valuation methods of properties, and provides for municipalities to implement a transparent and fair system of exemptions, reductions and rebates through their rating policies. The Act will be implemented in phases. The Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG) is a key instrument for addressing municipal infrastructure and basic service backlogs.

Municipal Infrastructure Grant

A process of reallocating MIG funds between municipalities (as provided for in the Division of Revenue Act, 2006 [Act 2 of 2006]), has been adopted with the primary intention of using available funds in the most efficient manner to eradicate backlogs in municipalities that have demonstrated capacity to spend. At the same time, various measures to strengthen the ability of poor-spending municipalities to better spend their MIG funds are being instituted.

Local Economic Development (LED)

An LED framework was launched in August 2006, along with a practical toolkit supporting its implementation. By March 2007, 37 districts and all metros had adopted LED plans and assessments of the integration of LED plans and PGDS. The state of preparedness to implement LED had also been completed.

Project Consolidate

In 2004, Project Consolidate, a hands-on support and engagement programme focusing on targeted municipalities, was launched. This project was informed by a growing concern that although some municipalities were able to discharge their responsibilities, some required additional technical and institutional support.

Project Consolidate resulted in mobilising and deploying technical support, service-delivery facilitators, engineers and project managers to the



The Local Government Laws Amendment Bill seeks to refine and align policy provisions reflected in different laws, strengthen enforcement measures, and improve technical and legal provisions. The affected legislation will include the Local Government: Municipal Demarcation Act, 1998 (Act 27 of 1998); Local Government: Municipal Structures Act, 1998 (Act 117 of 1998); Local Government: Municipal Systems Act, 2000 (Act 32 of 2000); Local Government: Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003 (Act 56 of 2003); and the Local Government: Municipal Property Rates Act, 2004 (Act 6 of 2004).

identified municipalities. This initiative introduced a new culture and method of working by national departments, provinces, the private sector and NGOs to provide direct and sustained support to municipalities.

One area of concern is municipal financial viability and management. By mid-2007, 12 municipalities had been identified as pilot sites for efforts directed at improving municipal billing systems.

Since this intervention, revenue collection in these municipalities had increased by an average of 21,4%. This total increase in revenue amounted to R1,6 billion over a period of 12 months. The increased revenue allowed the municipalities to provide new services. It also improved the ability of municipalities to predict revenue flows.

By 30 November 2006, 42 Project Consolidate municipalities were being supported through this initiative. The aim was to reach 70 municipalities with 90 deployees by the end of June 2007. A total of 291 infrastructure projects, valued at R1,5 billion, were receiving implementation support.



The Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Programme (ISRDP) and the Urban Renewal Programme (URP), which run projects to improve service delivery and alleviate poverty, continue to focus on their key target groups – the poor, marginalised, underdeveloped and disadvantaged. The programmes aim to maximise the impact of all government resources and know-how in the 21 identified rural and urban nodes. Following a review of progress on the nodes, Cabinet approved the proposed financial interventions to support the nodes, within the framework of government's priority programmes.

A guide for national departments' participation in implementing the ISRDP and URP has been finalised.

Provincial and local government aim to increase the pace of implementing government programmes, which seek to cultivate conditions for sustainable economic development in geographic spaces that were previously neglected. The Urban Renewal Nodes Investment Atlas identified 25 investment opportunities, while its rural counterpart identified 88 investment opportunities, mainly in agriculture, tourism and mining.

A market-development approach to creating jobs, building capacity for economic development and reducing poverty in the nodes was being piloted by mid-2007 at the Maruleng and Bushbuckridge nodes. This pilot is a R30-million partnership between the Department of Provincial and Local Government and the Business Trust.

The infrastructure projects focus on among other things, water, sanitation and roads. By mid-2007, 51 retired engineers, 45 graduates and 99 students had been deployed at 75 municipalities. A total of 130 municipal employees had received hands-on training. Development and infrastructure implementation support was being given to R2,2 billion worth of projects.

Attention is also being given to improving internal controls, developing Municipal Finance Management Act, 2003-compliant asset registers, and developing tools and procedures to facilitate the compilation of annual financial statements. Following this intervention, all the backlogs of annual financial statements up to the 2004/05 financial year have been eliminated. Significant skills transfer has taken place, benefiting the lower-level finance staff in municipalities. Practical tools and guides to enable sustainability have been developed and provided to participating municipalities.

Government and communication

The vision of the Government Communication and Information System is to help meet the communication and information needs of government and the people to ensure a better life for all.

It consists of the following chief directorates:

- The Communication Service Agency aims to provide core communication services to Government Communications and other government departments, both in-house and through outsourcing. It also produces the *South Africa Yearbook* and *Pocket Guide to South Africa*.
- Government and Media Liaison aims to co-ordinate effective, integrated and comprehensive communication and media liaison services across government. It is also responsible for BuaNews, a government news service.
- Policy and Research conducts communication research to provide communication advice and monitors the development and implementation of government programmes from a communication perspective.
- Provincial and Local Liaison supports development communication and extends government's information infrastructure through



partnerships with provincial and local government. It facilitates the establishment of Thusong Service Centres (former multipurpose community centres) to make services and information more accessible to the public, particularly the disadvantaged.

- Corporate Services provides financial management, administrative services, and human-resource (HR) administration and development. The Project Desk implements project management and co-ordinates services to cross-cutting projects driven by Government Communications, on behalf of other departments.
- *Vuk'uzenzele*, which is published bimonthly, focuses on economic and other opportunities created by South Africa's democracy.

The chief executive officer of Government Communications is the official spokesperson for government.

Government Communications is central to developing communication strategies and programmes for government's transversal campaigns.

It also assists departments with specific campaigns and events, as well as in developing departmental communication structures.

Government Communications is responsible for maintaining the website, Government Online (www.gov.za), which includes an information portal for general information about government, and a services portal, which is a source of information about all the services rendered by national government.

Government Communications leads or is involved in various communication partnerships and joint processes, including the following:

- An intersectoral programme to set up Thusong Service Centres, providing information about how to access government services. By October 2007, 96 Thusong Service Centres were in place and more centres were being established. A strategy for setting up one Thusong Service Centre in each of the country's municipalities by 2014 has been approved.
- The transformation of the advertising and marketing industry.
- The Academy of Government Communication and Marketing, in collaboration with the University of the Witwatersrand School of Public and Development Management, Unilever and the Mandela-Rhodes Foundation.
- The Imbizo Campaign of direct interaction between government and the public.

The following entities report to Government Communications:

- the International Marketing Council (IMC)
 - the Media Development and Diversity Agency.
- (See chapters 4 and 5: *Arts and culture* and *Communications*.)

International Marketing Council

The IMC was established in 2000 to create a positive and united image for South Africa, and to give the country a strategic advantage in an increasingly competitive marketplace. Its mission is to:

- articulate a brand for South Africa, which positions the country to attract tourism, trade and investment
- realise international-relations objectives
- establish an integrated approach within government and the private sector towards the international marketing of South Africa
- build national support for Brand South Africa.

The IMC's main objective is the marketing of South Africa through the Brand South Africa Campaign.

The IMC has succeeded in changing perceptions by hosting branding and investment missions in important markets overseas, in partnership with the Department of Trade and Industry. This partnership will focus on profiling key economic sectors of South Africa's flourishing economy in markets that are relevant to their investment needs. The IMC's role in the exercise is primarily that of ensuring common and consistent messaging and ensuring a consistent look-and-feel during interactions with people abroad.

In 2007, the IMC launched a new television commercial to boost the growing confidence among South Africans about the future. Known as the "We've done it before" Campaign, it was built on the premise that South Africans continue to defy all odds. This campaign follows the successful and inspirational "Rhythm of the Nation" and "Today I Woke Up" advertising campaigns.

Other tools applied by the IMC to facilitate the enhancement of national pride include:

- The Communication Resource Centre, which is a state-of-the-art facility monitoring media coverage on South Africa anywhere in the world. Government communicators use the centre in formulating messaging concerning various issues relating to South Africa that are covered internationally.
- The Information Resource Centre, which collects, collates and makes accessible a vast spectrum of positive information about South Africa.

- The web portal *www.southafrica.info*, which is the official national gateway to the country for national and international Internet users, realising over 2,2 million page views a month, and containing over 25 000 pages of information.
- *The South African Story II*, which is the second version of the IMC booklet filled with facts, quotes and anecdotes that illustrate the extraordinary South African story and current challenges facing the country.
- The Brand Champion Programme, through which highly skilled professionals are tasked with positioning the brand among South Africans and weaving the values of the brand into the fabric of society. The Brand Champion Team engages organisations, corporates and individuals through workshops to ensure that everybody who is well positioned to interface with tourists, investors and traders is armed with an understanding of the Brand South Africa values, and is also an ambassador of the brand.
- The *Alive with Possibility* newsletter, which is a weekly online communication tool showcasing positive stories coming out of South Africa.
- The *Boundless Opportunities* newsletter, which is produced in partnership with the JSE Securities Exchange Limited (JSE), targets stakeholders of the JSE, including all international exchanges.

Co-operative governance

The importance of co-operative governance and intergovernmental relations in South Africa is reflected in Chapter 3 of the Constitution, which determines a number of principles.

A number of intergovernmental structures promote and facilitate co-operative governance and intergovernmental relations between the respective spheres of government.

These include:

- The PCC, comprising the President, the Minister of Provincial and Local Government and the nine premiers.
- Ministerial clusters, directors-general clusters, and the Forum of South African Directors-General (Fosad), which promote programme integration at national and provincial level.
- Ministerial forums between responsible line-function ministers at national level and their

respective counterparts at provincial-government level, which normally meet quarterly. These forums are supported by technical committees.

- A number of intergovernmental forums that facilitate co-operative governance and inter-governmental relations.

To improve integration among all spheres of government in both policy development and implementation, the IGR Framework Act, 2005 was promulgated in August 2005.

Elections

The Constitution of South Africa places all elections and referendums in the country in all three spheres of government under the control of the Independent Electoral Commission (IEC), established in terms of the IEC Act, 1996 (Act 51 of 1996).

In the 2004 elections, the African National Congress (ANC) clinched victory in all nine provinces, gaining 279 of the 400 seats in the National Assembly.

The Democratic Alliance (DA) followed with 50 parliamentary seats, the Inkatha Freedom Party (IFP) was third with 28 seats, the United Democratic Movement won nine seats, while the New National Party and the Independent Democrats (ID) secured seven seats each. The African Christian Democratic Party won six seats, the Freedom Front Plus four, and the Pan Africanist Congress (PAC) and the United Christian Democratic Party three each. The Minority Front and Azanian People's Organisation won two seats each.

The ANC also gained the highest number of votes in the provincial results and won 69,68% of the national votes.



The Minister in The Presidency, Dr Essop Pahad, announced in May 2007 that Brand South Africa's weight in the global marketplace was valued at over R500 billion.

This valuable imprint on popular consciousness coincides with a move by the International Marketing Council (IMC) to extend the South African country brand formula from the borders of the United Kingdom and the United States of America to India.

The IMC, now a registered public entity, has brought about enhanced international profiling of South Africa as a dynamic emerging market.

The third floor-crossing window period for municipal councils since the 2000 municipal elections expired on 15 September 2007 at midnight.

A total of 250 municipal councillors crossed the floor successfully in this period, affecting the composition of 128 municipalities.

By September 2007, 12 new political parties had registered since June 2007 – the Christian Democratic Alliance, Federal Congress, National Alliance, Social Democratic Party, National People's Party, People's Democratic Movement, African People's Convention, New Vision Party, Civic Alliance of South Africa, South African Political Party, Federal African Convention and the Eden Forum. All the parties are registered nationally, except for the Eden Forum which is registered municipally.

The three parties with the largest net gain were the:

- ANC with 53
- African People's Convention with 36
- National People's Party with 31.

In terms of loss, the three parties with the biggest net loss were the:

- PAC with 41
- ID with 27
- National Democratic Convention with 22.

In terms of the new parties that had been registered since June 2007, the following four gained the most members:

- African People's Convention with 36
- National People's Party with 31
- Federal African Congress with nine
- Federal Congress with nine.

Of the 128 municipalities affected by floor-crossing, the province that had the most affected municipalities was KwaZulu-Natal with 27, followed by the Western Cape with 22 and the Eastern Cape with 15.

Disaster management

The Disaster Management Act, 2002 provides for the establishment of the Intergovernmental Committee on Disaster Management and the Disaster Management Advisory Forum.

Since April 2003, the National Disaster Management Centre (NDMC), under the departments of provincial and local government and of agriculture, has issued a number of early warnings to notify all those affected about expected weather patterns.

The Government's Early Warning System allows the NDMC to forecast weather patterns.

The centre is developing an electronic database containing extensive information about disasters

that occur or that may occur in southern Africa, including information on early warning systems.

The Disaster Management Act, 2002 also provides for the establishment of national, provincial and municipal disaster-management centres.

The Public Service

The Department of Public Service and Administration leads the modernisation of the Public Service by assisting government departments to implement their management policies, systems and structural solutions within a generally applicable framework of norms and standards, to improve service delivery.

Size of the Public Service

By the end of March 2006, the Public Service had 1 045 412 employees (excluding members of the South African National Defence Force). Of these employees, 67% were attached to the social services sector (health, social development and education), followed by 20% in the criminal justice sector.

Statistics show that in 2006/07, 103 349 employees were recruited and retained. The highest proportions were college and school educators (26%), followed by professionals and managers (19%) and administrative staff (18%).

Restructuring of the Public Service

In 2006/07, a communication strategy for the Public Service skills database, namely project HR Connect, was implemented. Introductory workshops were held at 21 departments. Some 40 000 personal survey forms were distributed. Departments were requested to submit their forms by 20 June 2007. Departments also received training on aligning



The Independent Electoral Commission (IEC) is expected to intensify its preparations for the fourth general election in 2009. The IEC is not only responsible for South Africa's elections but it has also guided and supported the successful transition to democracy in a number of neighbouring countries, including the Democratic Republic of Congo.

Election-management bodies in east and southern Africa are sending their experts to South Africa to participate in a specialised training programme. Election administrators from nine east and southern African countries (Kenya, Lesotho, Malawi, Mozambique, South Africa, Tanzania, Zanzibar, Uganda and Zambia) took part in a Train the Trainer course in May 2007, conducted by the International Institute for Democracy and Electoral Assistance and the IEC, with funding from the Australian Government.

organograms with the Organising Framework of Occupations.

The local-government skills database will be developed once phase one of the skills audit has been completed and the skills-audit database has been set up. The project will take the Department of Public Service and Administration's approach to the skills audit for the national and provincial levels into account.

Cabinet has decided to make the use of competency assessments compulsory as part of the recruitment process for senior management service (SMS) posts. The assessment battery has been reviewed and refinements will be made. A leadership-development strategic framework for management was being developed. A centralised information system based on the assessment results is expected to assist in tracking skills gaps, targeting executive-development programmes, deploying scarce skills and headhunting.

The final draft of the Human Resource Development Strategy's (HRDS) implementation guide and plan has been completed. By mid-2007, a policy on the use of the 1% training budget was being developed, based on gaps and best practices in departments.

Management Policy and Procedure on Incapacity Leave and Ill-Health Retirement (PILIR) for the Public Service

In August 2005, Cabinet approved the roll-out of PILIR for the Public Service. The policy was implemented in 2006/07. A pilot exercise achieved excellent results, reducing the number of recommendations for ill-health retirement by half.

The objectives of PILIR are to:

- intervene and manage incapacity leave in the workplace to accommodate temporarily or permanently incapacitated employees
- facilitate the rehabilitation, reskilling, realignment and retirement of temporarily or permanently incapacitated employees, where appropriate.

PILIR adopts a holistic approach to health-risk management; prevents abuse of sick leave by managing incapacity or ill-health as far as possible; adopts a scientific approach to health-risk management based on sound medical, actuarial

and legal principles; and implements health-risk management that is consistent, fair, objective, cost-effective and financially sound.

Medical assistance

The Government Employees Medical Scheme (Gems) was registered in accordance with the Medical Schemes Act, 1998 (Act 131 of 1998), in January 2005, and public-service employees began enrolling in January 2006. Gems is a restricted scheme for public-service employees.

The scheme attracts both employees who have enjoyed medical cover on open medical schemes and those who were previously unable to afford medical cover.

By the end of July 2007, Gems had become the country's largest restricted medical scheme, covering more than 150 000 principal members and some 400 000 lives.

Macro-organisational issues

Creating the ability for government departments to co-ordinate their efforts is one of the perennial problems faced in public administration. As a means of achieving co-ordination and unified government, the Department of Public Service and Administration has been working towards creating a single public service.

A sound governance framework has been put in place for the management of the Single Public Service Project. Five work streams – service delivery, information and communications technology (ICT), HR management and development, anti-corruption and legislation – report regularly to the Government and Administration Task Team on the Single Public Service. Simultaneously, National Treasury and the Department of Public Service and Administration are developing legislation on public entities.

The Single Public Service is a massive undertaking designed to improve service delivery by integrating the front office, the back office and the institutions delivering services to the people. Critical preparatory work is being undertaken to develop common norms and standards in relation to HR practices.

By May 2007, the Single Public Service Bill had been drafted. A schedule of amendments to other

Acts was being drawn up. The project charter for the development of HR practices for the Single Public Service had been approved. Applicable legislation and available policy documents had been reviewed. A project to develop appropriate remuneration and conditions of service for the Single Public Service was under way.

Community Development Worker (CDW) programme

The CDW programme is one of the primary public-sector reform interventions to enhance development and the implementation of the Batho Pele principles, especially access. The CDWs are pivotal in bringing government closer to the people, and in ensuring that community members become directly involved in the delivery of state services.

Since the inception of the CDW Programme in 2003, 4 160 CDW learners had been recruited and deployed to municipalities. By February 2007, some 2 600 of these had been employed by provincial departments of local government. Recruitment of a further 1 000 learners was planned for 2006/07. In 2007, CDWs were to be trained to enable them to mobilise and train communities on co-operatives.

Batho Pele (People First)

A strategy has been formulated to revitalise Batho Pele (People First) in government, identifying new goals and targets in transforming the culture and ethos of the Public Service, thereby improving service delivery. The Batho Pele Campaign encourages a positive attitude in the Public Service.

The campaign focuses on taking services to the people. This involves developing a comprehensive, integrated 2014 access strategy for the Public Service.

The following measures have been implemented as part of the campaign:

- public servants dealing directly with the public can now be identified by name tags
- ministers and public-service commissioners pay unannounced visits to service-delivery centres
- senior managers, as part of Project Khaedu, spend time in service centres, assisting with service delivery and gaining first-hand experience.

The African Public Service Day (APSD) and Public Service Week (PSW) are organised and hosted annually. The PSW focuses on public servants, recognises their efforts and considers the way in which they serve communities. It specifically aims to benefit women, young people and people with disabilities. The PSW offers opportunities for public

servants to rededicate themselves to the roots of their profession by rendering service to the people.

The APSD celebrates the spirit of inter-governmental relations, with the express objective of rebuilding the continent through efficient and effective service delivery. As part of the roll-out of Batho Pele to local government, 138 municipalities were trained in the Batho Pele Change-Management Engagement Programme in 2006/07. The programme is modelled on the train-the-trainer approach and participants are encouraged to further cascade it in their municipalities.

Between 2005 and the end of 2006/07, more than 900 officials were trained in change management using the Batho Pele change-management toolkit. In terms of the Public Service Regulations, departments are required to adopt service-delivery improvement plans.

Research, learning and knowledge management

The Learning and Knowledge Management Programme has grown into a government-wide initiative to share knowledge and best practices, to learn from peers and to provide platforms for innovation.

A number of learning networks have grown into self-sustaining platforms for communities. These include the Batho Pele Network, the Extended Public Works Learning Network, the HR Forum and an M&E network. A forum for government researchers and policy analysts working within the governance and administration environment has also been established.

Some 12 000 copies of the learning journal, *Service Delivery Review*, are distributed to senior managers and practitioners across the Public Service annually. The Annual Service Delivery Academy has grown into an event where more than 500 practitioners come together to learn and share success stories.

Other deliverables in the area of research, learning and knowledge management include a sector-analysis programme to strengthen the understanding of service-delivery constraints across the sectors, especially in housing and health.



Employment practices and career management

HR management in the Public Service propagates a culture of performance, hence the emphasis on developing competency and HR planning linked to strategic plans and to service-delivery improvement.

In December 2005, the Minister for Public Service and Administration, Ms Geraldine Fraser-Moleketi, presented proposals to Cabinet to implement an accelerated development programme for middle managers. The objective of the Sustainable Pools Scheme is to prepare participants from designated groups, especially black women, to compete successfully for vacant senior-management positions.

The concept is one of talent development that takes the form of accelerated development training to create a sustainable pool of upwardly mobile managers. The South African Management Development Institute (Samdi) and the department are running the initiative.

Cabinet approved the first group of middle managers' enrolment in the programme in 2006. By July 2007, the first 103 middle managers had participated in the programme.

The minister submitted to Cabinet new numeric employment-equity targets in respect of women at senior management levels, and of people with disabilities at all levels. Cabinet approved a target of 50% gender representivity at senior management levels to be achieved by 31 March 2009, and a 2% target for persons with disabilities to be achieved by 2010. Cabinet also approved the implementation of programmes that will speed up and support the achievement of these targets in the Public Service.

By mid-2007, the Public Service Gender Equality Strategic Framework and implementation guidelines were being consulted upon with stakeholders through national and provincial roadshows. A project to implement the Job-Access Strategy for the employment of people with disabilities in the Public Service has commenced. The National Steering Committee on Diversity Management has been established. A draft social audit template has been designed.

The Department of Public Service and Administration has anticipated the need for

stronger performance-management systems across the public sector. Departments in this portfolio, together with others, have been providing critical support for the development of a government-wide M&E system (GWM&ES). The Public Management Watch has been developed to proactively identify departments facing governance challenges and take initiatives to support them. The Public Service Commission (PSC) drives the system of performance management for heads of departments (HoDs) and recommendations have been made on strengthening the system.

Effective from 1 April 2006, the Performance Management and Development System for SMS members was amended to improve the content and application of the system.

Fighting corruption

The fight against corruption remains extremely high on government's agenda. Government departments have been provided with a new guide to establishing minimum anti-corruption capacity. The revised guide provides practical examples of successful implementation.

The National Anti-Corruption Forum (NACF) has strengthened the country's partnership approach to promote ethical conduct. The work done to date shows that the NACF is yielding positive results. South Africa's anti-corruption drive has a strong public-participation dimension, whereby citizens are encouraged to actively play a role in reporting acts of corruption.

By 30 November 2006, 2 297 allegations of corruption relating to national and provincial departments had been reported through the National Anti-Corruption Hotline (NACH).

As part of the anti-corruption initiatives, South Africa hosted the Africa Forum on Fighting Corruption from 28 February to 2 March 2007, as a precursor to the Global Forum V on Fighting Corruption and Safeguarding Integrity, which was hosted by South Africa from 2 to 5 April 2007. The forum provided a platform to discuss societal values, national integrity systems and the role of leadership in promoting ethical values in all sectors of society.

The Africa Forum and Global Forum have established a new continental and global

understanding of, and debate on, corruption and its impact on development.

The forums gave South Africa the opportunity to shape global anti-corruption discourse. Previously, corruption had been narrowly defined, focusing only on the “bribe giver” and the “bribe taker”. The forums identified the need to address the root causes of corruption, which is a structural global phenomenon involving all sectors of society, and which affects both developed and developing countries.

The challenge is to develop plans of action emanating from the declarations of the forums and other bodies. The Africa Forum’s declaration will be implemented under the auspices of the African Union (AU). The Global Forum’s declaration will be taken forward in anticipation of the Conference of the States Parties in 2008.

An audit of local government’s anti-corruption capacity has been conducted in 164 local authorities. By mid-2007, Project Consolidate’s Anti-Corruption Programme was in its second phase of implementation in 22 municipalities.

Human-resource development

In 2006/07, the HRDS was prepared, which includes capacity-building steps such as the establishment of a national public-sector academy, (currently the South African Management Development Institute [Samdi]); partnerships with higher education (HE) institutions and further education and training colleges; e-learning for the Public Service; learnerships, internships and traineeships; a more strategic role for professional bodies; leadership and management-development strategies; and strengthened systems for workplace learning.

The capacity-building initiatives are supported by organisational initiatives (HR management [HRM] interventions) and governance initiatives, including M&E.

Employee health and wellness

The Public Service Regulations were amended in 2002 to include mandatory minimum standards for managing HIV and AIDS in the Public Service.

In terms of the amended regulations, the heads of all government departments are obliged to implement minimum standards that outline what programmes must be put in place to support infected and/or affected employees, and to prevent stigma and discrimination against such employees.

Despite some challenges, implementation of the minimum standards is proceeding well and the programme has been recognised and documented

as a best-practice model by the International Labour Organisation.

While the initial focus of the Public Service Workplace Programme was on managing HIV and AIDS, the Public Service Co-ordinating Bargaining Council (PSCBC) Resolution 8 of 2000 acknowledged the need for a comprehensive programme to deal with employee health and wellness.

The focus of the programme is being expanded to include all health- and wellness-related issues that might influence employees’ ability to perform. The Public Service Employee Health and Wellness Programme encompasses:

- the HIV and AIDS Programme
- the Employee Assistance Programme
- occupational health and safety
- disaster management
- health promotion and disease prevention.

The Local Government HIV and AIDS Framework was launched in April 2007 to assist municipalities in addressing the challenges of HIV and AIDS at local level.

Monitoring and evaluation

The GWM&ES is being established. The aim is to develop a dashboard reflecting public-sector performance and other statistical information. The GWM&ES processes information from a wide range of sources, including government’s transversal systems, such as the National Statistical System of Statistics South Africa. In 2007, The Presidency published the *Mid-Term Review*, providing analysis and trends gleaned from 72 macro-indicators. Samdi was designing capacity-building for M&E.

Government Information Technology Officers’ (Gito) Council

The Gito Council was created to serve as an information technology (IT) co-ordination and consolidation vehicle to assist in informing government when and how to intervene in the interest of enhanced service delivery through the use of ICT.

The council has a critical role to play in enhancing the delivery of state services.

It has been involved in investigating, formulating and developing an IT security-policy framework, e-government policy and strategy, and IT procurement guidelines. It also monitors government IT projects to eliminate duplication.

E-government projects

Two major catalytic projects are under way, namely the Citizen Relations Portal and the Track and Trace

System. The user requirements for the Citizen Relations Portal were expected to be completed in May 2007.

The Department of Home Affairs has introduced an identification document application track-and-trace system, which enables home affairs officials to respond to queries from the public regarding the progress of their applications received after 19 February 2007. Citizens can also verify their marital status records via the system. Citizens can obtain the information on the Internet (www.dha.gov.za), from the call centre (0800 601 190) or via short message service (SMS) (32551).

The Ministry for Public Service and Administration has embarked on various transformation initiatives to modernise its service-delivery model for the benefit of the people. These include, among other things, conducting citizen/business research; developing a next-generation e-government vision, strategy and roadmap; producing a next-generation State Information and Technology Agency (Sita) business, operating and technology model; conducting rapid prototyping of catalytic projects; developing a national digital inclusion plan for South Africa; and working towards the development of an enterprise architecture.

The Next-Generation Network Project is worth R454 million over five years and it represents the largest deployment of next-generation network services in sub-Saharan Africa.

The ministry developed a free and open source software strategy to decrease cost savings in licence fees in the medium- to long-term, and to facilitate interoperability through the increased use of open standards.

The Access Strategy focuses on developing infrastructure for integrated service delivery, including the construction programme for Thusong Service Centres and the development of ICT infrastructure at service-delivery institutions.

Batho Pele Portal

The Batho Pele Gateway Services Portal was launched at nine Thusong Service Centres countrywide on 3 August 2004.

The Department of Public Service and Administration has transferred responsibility for

providing the content for the Gateway Services Portal (accessed via South Africa Government Online [www.gov.za]) to Government Communications. It is supported by content managers in every department to ensure that services offered to the public are fully and accurately reflected.

The Gateway Call Centre (1020) is also operational.

Centre for Public Service Innovation (CPSI)

The CPSI has driven innovative service delivery in the Public Service for a number of years.

The CPSI strives to create opportunities for enhancing access to government services through innovative means. In partnership with Sita, Government Communications, the Universal Service and Access Agency and the Department of Public Service and Administration, the CPSI is rolling out the General Services Counter (GSC) in Thusong Service Centres. As part of the mandate to improve service delivery, the CPSI and Sita piloted the CDW-Gateway Project that provides satellite-enabled laptops to CDWs for citizens to access the Batho Pele Gateway Portal for information and services.

The annual CPSI Public-Sector Innovation Awards recognise individuals, projects and programmes directed at enhancing public-service delivery.

State Information Technology Agency

Sita was established in 1999 to consolidate and co-ordinate the State's IT resources to save costs through scale, to increase delivery capabilities and to improve interoperability. Sita was established in terms of the Sita Act, 1998 (Act 88 of 1998), as amended by the Sita Amendment Act, Act 38 of 2002. Sita is funded from providing services as stipulated in the service-level agreements referred to in the legislation.

International and African affairs

The Ministry for Public Service and Administration is active in global organisations involved in public-administration issues and challenges. The minister actively participates in the Commonwealth Association of Public Administration and Management, in the International Institute for Administrative Sciences, and in the activities of the



United Nations (UN) pertaining to public administration. In addition, the ministry continues to conclude various information-sharing and capacity-development bilateral co-operative agreements with similar ministries and departments across the globe.

South Africa plays an influential role in the international and African governance and public-administration community.

The ministry continues to play an active role in the Pan-African Conference for Ministers of Public or Civil Service. Events and processes taking the agenda of this conference forward include the All Africa Public Sector Innovation Awards, which were expected to culminate in the first quarter of 2008, and efforts to strengthen the implementation of the African Public Service Charter across the continent.

Samdi is hosting and financially supporting the Secretariat of the African Management Development Institutes (MDIs) Network, a network that has as its key objective reinstating African MDIs as centres of excellence and worthy players in the effort to build public-sector capacity on the African continent.

African Peer Review Mechanism (APRM)

South Africa is one of the signatory countries to the APRM. The Minister for Public Service and Administration was designated as the focal point for the South African process in September 2004, and she has the overall responsibility for leading the process, also chairing the APRM Governing Council. An interdepartmental committee and interim secretariat, which is located within the Department of Public Service and Administration, was established to assist Minister Fraser-Moleketi in setting up the necessary structures to implement the mechanism in South Africa.

President Thabo Mbeki met with his peers at the seventh Summit of the African Peer Review (APR) Forum in Accra, Ghana, in July 2007 to present South Africa's response to the APR Panel's *Country Review Report*.

The *Country Review Report* identified 18 South African best practices worthy of emulation. These included co-operative governance; popular participatory governance practices; Batho Pele; Thugong Service Centres; the highly consultative Budget Formulation Process; achievements of the South African Revenue Services (Sars); the JSE and Triple Bottom Line Reporting; the Mzansi Account for the unbanked; the Financial Service Charter; the King reports; self-reliance in development funding; provision of basic needs and socio-economic

rights; and the successful promotion of gender equality in the public sphere.

The APR member states strongly endorsed the process that South Africa undertook in completing the *Country Self-Assessment Report*. Member states agreed that South Africa's process was inclusive, participatory and innovative.

Governance and Administration (G&A) Cluster

A national cluster system comprising six Cabinet committees and five corresponding administrative structures of Fosad was introduced in 1999.

These structures are the G&A Cluster; Social Cluster; Economic Cluster; Justice, Crime Prevention and Security Cluster; and International Relations, Peace and Security Cluster.

The G&A Cluster is co-chaired by the directors-general of the Department of Public Service and Administration, the Department of Provincial and Local Government and Samdi.

The G&A Cluster strives to improve the quality of life of the people by improving governance, the capacity and organisation of the State and its underlying systems. The cluster's priorities derive from government's commitment to improve its service to the people.

Following the January 2007 Cabinet Lekgotla and the President's State of the Nation Address on 9 February 2007, the Cluster developed a Programme of Action.

The cluster has four priorities:

- promoting good governance
- strengthening the capacity of the State
- achieving and maintaining the optimal organisation of the State
- developing and enhancing the State's transversal systems.

Public Service Commission

The PSC derives its mandate from sections 195 and 196 of the Constitution. Section 195 sets out the following values and principles governing public administration that should be promoted by the commission, which are set out in the annual *State of the Public Service Report*:

- a high standard of professional ethics
- efficient, economic and effective use of resources
- a development-orientated public administration
- providing services in an impartial, fair and equitable way, without bias
- responding to people's needs and encouraging the public to participate in policy-making
- an accountable public administration

- fostering transparency
- cultivating good HRM and career-development practices
- a representative public administration with employment and personnel-management practices based on ability, objectivity, fairness and the need to redress the imbalances of the past.

In terms of Section 196(4) of the Constitution, the functions and powers of the commission are to:

- promote the values and principles, as set out in Section 195, throughout the Public Service
- investigate, monitor and evaluate the organisation, administration and personnel practices of the Public Service, and in particular, adherence to the values and principles set out in Section 195, and public-service procedures
- propose measures to ensure effective and efficient performance within the Public Service
- give directives aimed at ensuring that personnel procedures relating to recruitment, transfers, promotions and dismissals comply with the values and principles set out in Section 195
- report on its activities and the performance of its functions
- investigate and evaluate the application of personnel and public-administration practices, and report to the relevant executive authority and legislature
- investigate grievances of employees in the Public Service concerning official acts or omissions, and recommend appropriate remedies
- monitor and investigate adherence to applicable procedures in the Public Service
- advise national and provincial organs of state regarding personnel practices in the Public Service.

The PSC is supported by the Office of the Public Service Commission (OPSC), which implements the policy and programmes of the PSC. The commission comprises 14 commissioners and has regional offices in all nine provinces. The work of the PSC is structured around the following key performance areas:

Labour-relations improvement

During the 2006/07 financial year, the OPSC's Directorate: Labour Relations conducted a research project on the management of poor performance in

the Public Service and a study on annual grievance trends. During these processes, it became evident that departments, executing authorities and relevant stakeholders need to be sensitised about the reports on these activities.

To improve and enhance labour relations, the unit was expected to host round-table discussions on the issues that were raised and identified as being of concern by the delegates at the first biennial Labour Relations Conference for the Public Service held in March 2007. The conference was co-hosted by the PSC and the PSCBC.

The component continues to enhance sound labour-relations policies and good HRM to maximise human potential and ensure the effective use of all the resources necessary to promote an acceptable and transparent public administration.

The following are activities used by the OPSC's Labour Relations Improvement component to address these challenges:

- investigate grievances and complaints lodged with the PSC and make recommendations to executing authorities
- investigate, monitor and evaluate labour-relations policies and trends in the Public Service and make recommendations in that regard
- monitor and evaluate the capacity and ability of departments to implement recommendations made, and monitor compliance with grievance rules in general.

The number of grievances handled by the PSC increased from 486 in 2006 to 641 in the year until March 2007. This may be attributed to the fact that the grievance rules are now translated into all official languages and made available on the website (www.psc.gov.za). The PSC also enforces stringent time frames for departments to adhere to prescribed periods. Grievances should be lodged within 90 days from the date an employee became aware of the omission or act that caused the dissatisfaction.

The departments then have 30 days in which to deal with grievances (although this period may be extended if agreed to by the aggrieved party). If a grievance is not resolved to the satisfaction of the aggrieved party, he or she may request that it be referred to the PSC.

During 2007/08, the component envisaged undertaking an investigation aimed at determining the root causes of the top five natures of grievances in the Public Service. The unit also evaluated the consistency of sanctions imposed on public servants.

Public-administration investigations

In terms of its investigative tenet, the PSC has created the Chief Directorate: Public Administration Investigations as its chief steward for investigations relating to public-administration practices. Its main purpose is to undertake audits and investigations. The measurable objectives of the chief directorate are to:

- investigate public-administration practices and to make recommendations to departments
- undertake forensic audits and investigations into public-administration practices
- monitor and evaluate financial misconduct cases and maintain a database.

The unit also manages complaints emanating from the NACH, which relate to standards of service delivery, behaviour, competency and attitude of staff.

The chief directorate annually conducts research on general public-administration trends, and gives advice, makes recommendations and publishes reports, such as the *Report on Financial Misconduct*, on these trends.

Most of the investigations relate to anonymous complaints regarding maladministration and irregularities pertaining to HR and procurement practices. Furthermore, the unit undertakes cross-functional investigations in collaboration with other organs of state, such as the Public Protector.

Professional ethics and human-resource reviews

The approach of the PSC is to address corruption proactively and in an integrated manner, focusing on creating an ethics-management infrastructure.

The Anti-Corruption Co-ordinating Committee, which is chaired by the Department of Public Service and Administration, co-ordinates the implementation of the Anti-Corruption Strategy. Departments are individually tasked with implementing the projects identified in the strategy.

In recent years, the commission undertook several activities to implement the strategy and to build the capacity of the Public Service to prevent and fight corruption. These included:

- providing anti-corruption training
- providing secretariat services to the NACF
- launching a generic professional ethics statement to inculcate and maintain a culture of integrity and ethos within the Public Service

- implementing the National Anti-Corruption Programme (NACP) of the NACF
- establishing the toll-free, 24-hour NACH facility (0800 701 701) to which fraud and corruption can be reported.

The NACH is an important mechanism for the Public Service in its fight against corruption.

Up to the end of March 2007, the NACH had generated a total of 4 726 cases since its inception in September 2004. Of these, 2 689 related to corruption (bribery, embezzlement, fraud, favouritism and nepotism, conflict of interest, maladministration and abuse of government equipment).

A total of 168 cases fell outside the jurisdiction of the Public Service, while 515 were frivolous cases. A total of 155 calls related to additional information to the original report by whistle blowers, while 1 199 related to service delivery (i.e. cases, that on closer scrutiny turned out to be lack of service delivery). Service-delivery cases were not anticipated, resulting in a substantial increase in the number of investigations. The PSC's activities in respect of HRM and development mainly focus on:

- researching the latest trends relating to strategic HR issues
- providing professional advice on strategic HR practices and reviewing HR processes within the Public Service
- developing programmes to ensure the promotion of good HR strategies, practices and principles.

The PSC continuously conducts reviews to ensure that it promotes good HR strategies, practices and principles.

One of the pillars the PSC uses is the *White Paper on Transformation of the Public Service*, which states that each department at national and provincial level is required to draw up HR strategies designed to meet the specific needs of public servants.

Departments are expected to be in line with HR policy objectives or legislative frameworks as may be required by the PSC, the Department of Public Service and Administration and other stakeholders.

Gender mainstreaming

The PSC has completed research on gender-mainstreaming initiatives in the Public Service. The report aims to highlight strides that have been achieved, and to identify and make recommendations for areas which need attention to advance gender mainstreaming in the Public Service.

Evaluation of employee assistance

The PSC has completed the *Report on the Evaluation of Employee-Assistance Programmes in the Public Service*. The report identifies some of the best practices that can be used to strengthen ineffective employee-assistance programmes. This report is significant as there is a clear need to address the increasing number of employee problems and the mounting impact of HIV- and AIDS-related problems in the workplace.

Leadership and performance improvement

The OPSC's Directorate: Leadership and Performance Improvement is tasked with facilitating the performance management of heads of national and provincial departments, monitoring practices affecting public-service leadership, and assessing the performance of government departments.

In this regard, the PSC has developed a head of department (HoD) evaluation framework for assessing HoDs at the end of each financial year. Their performance agreements are filed with the commission for quality and compliance-control purposes.

A pilot project to measure the performance of departments through the Organisational Performance Assessment template was also initiated.

Service delivery and quality assurance

The Chief Directorate: Service Delivery and Quality Assurance promotes improved service delivery

through public participation and quality audits of a performance, management or regulatory nature. Through diagnostic assessments and recommendations, the chief directorate advises departments about improving their service processes, including their ability to comply with government prescripts such as the Promotion of Administrative Justice Act, 2000 (Act 3 of 2000).

During 2006/07, two evaluations on the implementation of the Batho Pele principles of value for money and consultation were undertaken.

A citizen satisfaction survey was conducted in the departments of home affairs and of trade and industry, and on the provincial transport services.

A framework of conducting inspections was developed and piloted at national and provincial level. Two national departments and two provincial departments were sampled during the pilot process.

Reports with findings and recommendations emanating from the pilot were compiled and sent to the respective ministers, MECs, directors-general and HoDs.

Governance monitoring

This unit promotes the constitutional values and principles underpinning good governance and, through the implementation of various strategic projects, contributes to improved governance practices in the Public Service.

A key priority of the commission is to ensure the implementation of the Public Service Monitoring and Evaluation System (PSM&ES), which focuses on the performance of individual public-service departments. The PSM&ES is based on the nine values and principles set out in Section 195 of the Constitution. In applying the system, problem areas are identified, priority areas communicated, good practice noted and departments given an opportunity to reflect on their own performance.

The unit is responsible for managing this system and for undertaking departmental assessments continuously.

The sixth annual edition of the *State of the Public Service Report* was published in May 2007. In this edition, the PSC provided an analysis of the role played by the Public Service in promoting growth and development.



Government launched a website (<http://sa2010.gov.za>) in June 2007 to provide information on government preparations for the World Cup. It provides information about the country and the continent in the context of the first African World Cup. This is one of government's initiatives to take advantage of the 2010 World Cup communication opportunity for the benefit of the country and continent.

The site provides comprehensive information on government's 2010-related programmes, including those related to economic opportunities.

It also provides information about South Africa, as millions of people focus on the country in the run-up to the tournament.

The PSC continues to contribute to M&E at an international level. In October 2006, the PSC participated in the Sussex Development Evaluation Seminar and the joint United Kingdom/European evaluation society conferences.

At a continental level, the PSC continues to play a crucial role and participated in the fourth African M&E Association Conference held in January 2007 in Niamey, Niger.

At national level, the commission co-hosted the inaugural conference of the South African M&E Association held in Johannesburg in March 2007. The theme of the conference was *Evaluation in Action*.

South African Management Development Institute

Samdi is responsible for:

- Creating a public sector that understands and encourages the concept of lifelong learning as an investment in human capital.
- Shaping a public-sector learning framework to address the needs of the two economies through sustained development in a wide range of skills, particularly in scarce skills areas such as financial and project management.
- Supporting the activities of the Governance and Administration Cluster by providing transversal HRD programmes aimed at enhancing the capacity of the State to deliver services to its citizens.
- Developing the potential of public-service officials through relevant, practical and targeted skills development and training interventions that are primarily aimed at reducing service-delivery blockages.
- Participating in a structure within which MDIs across the continent can contribute to the upliftment and growth of African nations, particularly those undertaking post-conflict reconstruction processes. Samdi has been working closely with the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC), Burundi and Sudan in strengthening their post-conflict development processes.

While reconstituting itself into an academy as per the mandate of Cabinet, Samdi is embarking on facilitating the provision of training interventions on a large scale, given the huge numbers of the public-sector staff complement (about 1,3 million).

In this massification drive, specific focus on rolling out the Induction Training Programme to junior, middle and senior management will be made. The massification strategy will further see

Samdi collaborating more closely with other of training providers, such as universities, private providers and individuals to ensure that comprehensive rather than selective training is offered in the public sector.

The Integrated Management Development Programme was established to ensure a comprehensive approach to developing public-service managers. It consists of the:

- Presidential Strategic Leadership Development Programme for senior managers on levels 13 to 16
- Advanced Management Development Programme for middle managers on levels 9 to 12
- Emerging Management Development Programme for junior managers on levels 6 to 8
- Foundation Management Development Programme for first-line supervisors on levels 3 to 5.

The first three programmes are accredited through tertiary institutions, while the fourth is a skills programme at National Qualifications Framework (NQF) Level 4.

Samdi introduced the Foundation Management Programme to ensure that there is a sustainable pool of potential management candidates upon which government can draw to implement its programmes and activities.

The institute provides capacity-building through Corporate Resource Management Training, which includes programmes such as Supply Chain Management Training and HRM Training to strengthen government's delivery systems.

Government priorities around gender mainstreaming, anti-corruption, and induction and reorientation programmes are also presented to public servants.



Government launched the *Business Survey Against Corruption* in June 2007. The survey forms part of the longitudinal study that focuses on corruption and anti-corruption measures within the private sector over time. The Country Corruption Assessment (CCA) was the first assessment of its kind in South Africa and represented the most comprehensive picture of the state of corruption and anti-corruption measures in the country. Similarly, the CCA provided a baseline against which progress would be assessed in the future.

The study was aimed at enhancing the understanding of corruption and corporate-governance measures within the private sector, and assessing compliance with legislative requirements under the Prevention and Combating of Corrupt Activities Act, 2004 (Act 12 of 2004).

Home affairs

The Department of Home Affairs provides individual status-determination services.

The department has a network of offices in all provinces. Mobile offices or units service areas on a regular pre-arranged basis where the establishment of fixed offices is not warranted.

The department is divided into five functional-support and two line-function divisions.

Statutory bodies falling under the department are the:

- Immigration Advisory Board
- Standing Committee for Refugee Affairs
- Refugee Appeal Board.

The Government Printing Works (GPW), a division of the Department of Home Affairs, provides printing, stationery and related services to all government departments, provincial governments and municipalities.

It also publishes, markets and distributes government publications. Based in Pretoria, the printing works provides a variety of related services to departments, the printing industry and other African countries, including manufacturing and supplying fingerprint ink to the South African Police Service (SAPS), and printing postage stamps for the DRC and Lesotho.

In 2006/07, government allocated R212 000 to the GPW, which has extended its services throughout the region and continent. Early in 2007, the GPW won the contract to provide the AU with diplomatic and service passports, which were delivered on Africa Day on 25 May 2007. In May, the GPW also printed examination papers for Malawi.

The GPW was expected to establish a forensic-laboratory capability to analyse passports, identity documents (IDs), visa labels or any other high-security face-value documents to complement other law-enforcement agencies in the fight against identity fraud.

Civic services

The Branch: Civic Services is mainly responsible for population registration and civic services. Population registration entails recording personal particulars in the Population Register with a view to issuing IDs; identification by means of fingerprints and photographs; and dealing with matters

pertaining to the status of persons, such as births, marriages and deaths.

Civic services entail issuing passports, registering foreign births, determining citizenship, and issuing certificates of naturalisation or resumption of South African citizenship.

Citizenship matters

South African citizenship is regulated by the South African Citizenship Act, 1995 (Act 88 of 1995), and regulations issued in terms thereof. South African citizenship may be granted by way of:

- birth or descent
- an application for naturalisation as a South African citizen
- an application for resumption of South African citizenship
- the registration of the birth of children born outside South Africa to South African fathers or mothers
- an application for exemption in terms of Section 26(4) of the Act.

Population Register

The current Population Register hosted by the Department of Home Affairs stores and provides citizenry-identification information, including unique identification numbers, addresses, birth dates and marriage status. Information on this system is used for various purposes, including identity validation. In essence, this system forms the core of citizenry-information systems within the department.

Evolving technology, modern government structures and the need for more secure systems led to the department embarking on a programme to re-engineer the Population Register. This will align its function with the current government dispensation and future needs of both the Government and third-party institutions. This project is closely aligned with the implementation of the Home Affairs National Identification System (Hanis), which was approved by government in January 1996.

The focus of the project is on providing a more scalable, adaptable, efficient, secure and interoperable database. Features will allow integration with the automated biometric

fingerprint system, information sourcing from the electronic document-management system, an electronic web-based query system, and interrogation from the different deconsole units.

By June 2007, the Hanis disaster-recovery site had been fully implemented.

Some R207 million was spent to create the disaster-recovery system at a secure location, which backs up all home affairs records every 15 minutes on a continual basis.

By June 2007, the digitisation of about 29 million sets of fingerprints had been completed, which were backed up as an essential part of the Hanis. Progress is also being made in digitally capturing the birth, marriage and death records of citizens under the Electronic Data-Management System, through which a total of 57 million records had been scanned. A further R167 million will be spent on expanding this project.

Immigration

The Branch: Immigration is responsible for control over the admission of foreigners for residence in and departure from South Africa. This entails:

- processing applications for visas, temporary residence permits and immigration permits
- maintaining a travellers' and foreigners' control system
- tracing and removing foreigners who are considered undesirable or who are in South Africa illegally.

The Refugees Act, 1998 (Act 130 of 1998), gives effect within South Africa to the relevant international legal instruments, principles and standards relating to refugees; provides for the reception into South Africa of asylum seekers; regulates applications for and recognition of refugee status; and provides for the rights and obligations flowing from such status, and related matters. The Act came into effect on 1 April 2000.

In recent years, the department has sought to control illegal immigration through a variety of measures:

- The Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002), provides for a stricter immigration policy. The implementation of administrative fines and other measures came into effect in 2003. The Immigration Act, 2002 was amended in 2006 to clarify and revise immigration and permit procedures to facilitate skills in line with the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa and the Joint Initiative for Priority Skills Acquisition.

- The department works closely with the South African Revenue Service and the SAPS to ensure effective border control.
- A computerised visa system was instituted to curb the forgery of South African visas and is being extended to all South African missions abroad.

The final immigration regulations came into effect on 1 July 2004. The release of these regulations followed the signing of the Immigration Amendment Act, 2004 (Act 19 of 2004), into law on 12 October 2004.

The immigration policy aims to:

- discourage illegal migration into South Africa by encouraging foreign nationals to apply for different permits to legalise their stay in the country
- create an enabling environment for foreign direct investment in South Africa
- attract scarce skills required by the economy in accordance with the 2014 vision of eradicating poverty and underdevelopment.

The final immigration regulations furthermore aim to establish a new system of immigration control to ensure that:

- temporary and permanent residence permits are issued as expeditiously as possible and according to simplified procedures
- security considerations are fully satisfied and the State regains control over the immigration of foreigners to South Africa
- economic growth is promoted through the employment of needed foreign labour, foreign investment is facilitated, the entry of exceptionally skilled or qualified people is enabled, skilled HR are increased, and academic exchange programmes in the Southern African Development Community (SADC) are facilitated
- tourism is promoted
- the contribution of foreigners to the South African labour market does not adversely affect existing labour standards and the rights and expectations of South African workers
- a policy connection is maintained between foreigners working in South Africa and the training of South African citizens
- a human rights-based culture of enforcement is promoted.

The Directorate: Refugee Affairs manages refugee services in South Africa. It has established the Asylum Seekers Unit and Country of Origin Information Unit.

These units advise refugee-reception offices on policy-related matters and on the background information of an applicant's country of origin. After

being recognised, refugees are issued with refugee IDs, which give them access to the basic services in South Africa, including basic healthcare, education and employment.

The South African Government, through the Department of Home Affairs, issues UN travel documents to refugees. Since May 2005, refugees have been issued with a refugee smart ID, which contains security features that are not forgeable.

This directorate seeks to professionalise the functioning of the refugee regime in preparation for mass influxes in the future, the main focus as a measurement point being the 2010 Soccer World Cup. The department also seeks to assist those who wish to return to their countries of origin after changes in the circumstances that led to their forced migration, by engaging in campaigns of voluntary repatriation jointly with the UN High Commissioner for Refugees, and later declaration and application of cessation clauses, e.g. the Angolan Repatriation Programme.

The Directorate: Information Co-ordination manages information on the National Immigration Branch to facilitate regional and national operations.

The directorate's main objectives are to:

- establish an information repository, which acts on risks and urgent immigration matters
- ensure dynamic real-time support on tactical and legal matters to immigration officers globally.

By mid-2007, a turnaround project for immigration control was being implemented. It includes:

- establishing an integrated refugee-information system
- developing a draft protocol on the smuggling of human beings
- ratifying an SADC protocol on free movement of people
- developing a new secure passport system
- capacitating the Department of Home Affairs' immigration branch, as part of the department's turnaround strategy.

Visas

Foreigners who wish to enter South Africa must be in possession of valid and acceptable travel documents. They must have valid visas, except in the

case of certain countries whose citizens are exempt from visa control. Such exemptions are normally limited to permits, which are issued for 90 days or less at the ports of entry. The visa system is aimed at facilitating the admission of acceptable foreigners at ports of entry. The visa becomes a permit upon entry, therefore no additional permit will be issued.

Control of travellers

The travel documents of persons entering or departing South Africa are examined by immigration officers at recognised ports of entry, to determine whether such persons comply with the requirements.

Control of sojourn

Foreigners who are in the country illegally and who are therefore guilty of an offence may be classified into three categories, namely those who:

- entered the country clandestinely
- failed to renew the temporary residence permits issued to them at ports of entry
- breached the conditions of their temporary residence permits without permission, e.g. holiday visitors who took up employment or started their own businesses.

Depending on the circumstances, persons who are in South Africa illegally are either prosecuted, removed, or their sojourn is legalised. Officers at the various regional and district offices of the department are in charge of tracing, prosecuting and removing illegal foreigners from the country. Employers of illegal foreigners may also be prosecuted.

Permanent residence

Government allows immigration on a selective basis. The Department of Home Affairs is responsible for:

- Processing applications for immigration permits for consideration.
- Admitting persons suitable for immigration, such as skilled workers in occupations in which there is a shortage in South Africa. The department particularly encourages applications by industrialists and other entrepreneurs who wish to relocate their existing concerns or to establish new concerns in South Africa.



The department is not directly involved in an active immigration drive. In categories where shortages exist, the normal procedure is for employers to recruit abroad independently, and in most cases, initially apply for temporary work permits.

The department considers the applications for immigration permits of prospective immigrants who wish to settle in the relevant provinces. In terms of new regulations, regions will be responsible for issuing permits previously issued by the regional committees in respect of permanent residence. They will also do so in respect of temporary residence. Enquiries in this regard may be made to the nearest office of the Department of Home Affairs in South Africa, to missions abroad, or to the Director-General of Home Affairs for the attention of the Directorate: Permitting in Pretoria.

Temporary residence

In terms of the Immigration Act, 2002, temporary residence permits are divided into the following categories:

- visitor's permits
- diplomatic permits
- study permits
- treaty permits
- business permits
- crew permits
- medical permits
- relative's permits
- work permits with the following categories:
 - quota work permits
 - general work permits
 - intra-company transfer work permits
 - exceptional skills work permits
 - corporate work permits
 - retired person permits
 - exchange permits
- asylum permits.

In terms of Section 11, a visitor's permit may be issued to a person who intends to enter South Africa for less than 90 days for the purpose of tourism, business, education or medical treatment.

Foreigners who are exempt from visa requirements, or who are citizens of countries that are exempt from visa requirements for 90 days, may therefore proceed to a port of entry where visitors' permits for the mentioned period will be issued, provided such persons can produce evidence to prove their bona fides.

Foreigners who are citizens of countries that are exempted from visa requirements for less than 90 days may likewise obtain visitors' permits at a

port of entry. Such foreigners enjoy exemption for the period only. Foreigners who require a visa prior to proceeding to South Africa, or who intend to enter South Africa for any period longer than the period for which they are exempt from the visa requirement, must apply for and obtain a visa prior to proceeding to the country.

Foreigners who intend to accept an offer of employment, start a business, take up studies or enter South Africa for any purpose for which a temporary residence permit is provided for in the Act, must apply for an appropriate temporary residence permit via the South African diplomatic representative in their countries of origin/residence. In countries where there are no representatives, applications must be submitted in the nearest country where there is a foreign representative.

The outcome must be awaited outside South Africa and applicants may only proceed to South Africa once the permit as applied for has been issued to them.

The overriding consideration when dealing with applications for work permits is whether the employment or task to be undertaken cannot be performed by a South African citizen or an approved permanent immigrant already residing in South Africa.

Applications for the extension of temporary residence permits must be submitted at least 30 days prior to the expiry date of the permit, to the nearest regional/district office of the Department of Home Affairs where the applicant is employed. Any enquiries related to temporary residence permits may be directed to the nearest district/regional office of the Department of Home Affairs in South Africa, to South African diplomatic representatives abroad, or to the Director-General of Home Affairs, for the attention of the Directorate: Permitting.

Removal of undesirable persons

In terms of legislation, the Minister of Home Affairs may order the deportation of any person who is declared undesirable or prohibited, other than an asylum seeker.

These are foreign nationals who are in South Africa illegally and should be deported to the countries of which they are citizens or territories where they have rights of domicile or residence.

Any person who has become a deportation subject may, pending his or her deportation, be detained in a manner and at a place determined by the Director-General of the Department of Home Affairs.

Acknowledgements

BuaNews

BuaBriefs

Department of Home Affairs

Department of Provincial and Local Government

Department of Public Service and Administration

Estimates of National Expenditure 2007, published by National Treasury

Government Communication and Information System

International Marketing Council

Office of the Public Service Commission

South African Management Development Institute

www.cpsi.co.za

www.dplg.gov.za

www.gcis.gov.za

www.gov.za

www.imc.org.za

www.salga.net

Suggested reading

Basedau, M, Erdman, G and Mehler, A, eds. *Votes, Money and Violence: Political Parties and Elections in sub-Saharan Africa*. Scottsville: University of Kwazulu-Natal Press, 2007.

Bond, P. *Elite Transition: From Apartheid to Neoliberalism in South Africa*. 2nd ed. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2005.

Bratton, M, Mattes, R and Gyiarnh-Boadi, E. *Public Opinion, Democracy and Market Reform in South Africa*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 2005.

Buhlungu, S. ed. *Trade Unions and Democracy: Cosatu Workers' Political Attitudes in South Africa*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press, 2006.

Calland, R and Graham, P. eds. *Democracy in the Time of Mbeki*. Cape Town: Institute for Democracy in South Africa (Idasa), 2005.

Calland, R. *Anatomy of South Africa. Who Holds the Power?* Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2006.

Chidester, D. *What Holds Us Together? Social Cohesion in South Africa*. Pretoria: HSRC, 2003.

Chipkin, I. *Do South Africans Exist? Nationalism, Democracy and the Identity of "The People"*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2007.

Constitution of the Republic of South Africa. Edited by Juta's Statutes Editors, reflecting the law as at October 2004. Lansdowne: Juta, 2004.

Cross, C. et al. eds. *Views on Migration in Sub-Saharan Africa: Proceedings of an African Migration Alliance Workshop*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Delivering the Dream: Designing and Implementing Strategy in the Public Sector. Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2006.

Daniel, J. et al. eds. *State of the Nation: South Africa*. Pretoria: HSRC, 2004.

Geisler, G. *Women and the Remaking of Politics in Southern Africa: Negotiating Autonomy, Incorporation and Representation*. Uppsala: Nordiska Afrikainstitutet, 2004.

Good, K. *Realising Democracy and Legitimacy in Southern Africa*. Pretoria: Africa Institute of South Africa (Aisa), 2004.

Kok, P. et al. eds. *Migration in South and Southern Africa: Dynamics and Determinants*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2005.

MacDonald, M. *Why Race Matters in South Africa*. Scottsville: University of Kwazulu-Natal Press, 2006.

- Manganyi, C. ed. *On Becoming a Democracy: Transition and Transformation in South African Society*. Pretoria: Unisa Press, 2004.
- Governance in the New South Africa: The Challenges of Globalisation*. Cape Town: University of Cape Town Press, 2003.
- Mills, G. *Poverty to Prosperity: Globalisation, Good Governance and African Recovery*. Cape Town: Tafelberg, 2004.
- Pillay, U. et al. *Democracy and Delivery: Urban Policy in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
- Piombo, J and Nijzink, L. *Electoral Politics in South Africa: Assessing the First Democratic Decade*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2005.
- Reddy, PS. et al. *Local Government Financing and Development in Southern Africa*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press, 2003.
- Salih, MA. ed. *African Parliaments: Between Governance and Government*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007.
- Saul, JS. *Development after Globalisation: Theory and Practice for the Embattled South in a New Imperial Age*. Scottsville: University of Kwazulu-Natal, 2006.
- Saul, J. *The Next Liberation Struggle*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal, c.2007.
- Seepe, S. *Speaking Truth to Power: Reflections on Post-1994 South Africa*. Pretoria: Vista University and Skotaville Publishers, 2004.
- Shain, M. ed. *Opposing Voices: Liberalism and Opposition in South Africa Today*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2006.
- Sicre, F and World Economic Forum. *South Africa at 10: Perspectives by Political, Business and Civil Leaders*. Cape Town: Human & Rousseau, 2004.
- Skjelten, S. *A People's Constitution: Public Participation in the South African Constitution-Making Process*. Midrand: Institute of Global Dialogue, 2006.
- Southall, R and Melber, H. *Legacies of Power: Leadership Change and Former Presidents in African Politics*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
- Sparks, A. *Beyond the Miracle: Inside the New South Africa*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2003.
- Strand, P. et al. *HIV/AIDS and Democratic Governance in South Africa: Illustrating the Impact on Electoral Processes*. Pretoria: Idasa, 2005.
- The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996*. Cape Town: Constitutional Assembly, 1997.





SA YEARBOOK 2007/08 | HEALTH



The Department of Health promotes the health of all South Africans through a caring and effective national health system (NHS) based on the primary healthcare (PHC) approach.

Statutory bodies

Statutory bodies for health-service professionals include the Health Professions Council of South Africa (HPCSA), the South African Dental Technicians' Council, the South African Nursing Council (SANC), the South African Pharmacy Council (SAPC) and the Allied Health Professions Council of South Africa (AHPCSA). Regulations in the private health sector are effected through the Council for Medical Schemes. The Medicines Control Council is charged with ensuring the safety, quality and effectiveness of medicines.

Health authorities

National

The Department of Health's broad aims are to combat communicable and non-communicable diseases, and to strengthen health promotion and health systems.

The department is responsible for:

- formulating health policy, legislation, norms and standards for healthcare
- ensuring appropriate use of health resources
- co-ordinating information systems and monitoring national health goals
- regulating the public and private healthcare sectors
- ensuring access to cost-effective and appropriate health commodities
- liaising with health departments in other international agencies and countries.

Provincial

The provincial health departments are responsible for:

- providing and/or rendering health services
- formulating and implementing provincial health policy, standards and legislation
- planning and managing a provincial health-information system
- researching health services to ensure efficiency and quality
- controlling quality of health services and facilities
- screening applications for licensing and inspecting private health facilities
- co-ordinating the funding and financial management of district health authorities

- consulting effectively on health matters at community level
 - ensuring that delegated functions are performed.
- With the assistance of the national department, provincial health departments have developed service-transformation plans to reshape and resize their health services and develop appropriate, adequately resourced and sustainable health service-delivery platforms which are responsive to needs.

Primary healthcare

The policy on universal access to PHC, introduced in 1994, forms the basis of healthcare delivery programmes and has had a major impact on the South African population.

Fifty-three health districts were established in line with the new metropolitan and district municipal boundaries.

Access to PHC increased from over 67 million visits in 1998/99 to just less than 102 million in 2005/06. The rates of people using PHC services increased nationally from 2,1 visits per person per year in 2004 to 2,2 visits per person per year in 2005/06.

Planning processes at district level were strengthened and 90% of health districts produced district health plans for 2006/07, based on district-health planning guidelines developed by the national Department of Health.

The department strives to consolidate and improve on gains made in 2005/06 and 2006/07. An audit of PHC services and infrastructure was expected to be conducted in 2007/08.

The services provided by PHC workers include immunisation, communicable and endemic disease prevention, maternity care, screening of children, Integrated Management of Childhood Illnesses (IMCI) and child healthcare, health promotion, youth health services, counselling services, taking care of chronic diseases and diseases of older persons, rehabilitation, accident and emergency services, family planning, and oral health services.

By September 2006, 60% of districts countrywide had included integrated mental health and substance abuse into their PHC services.

Patients visiting PHC clinics are treated mainly by PHC-trained nurses or, at some clinics, by doctors. Patients with complications that cannot be treated

at PHC level are referred to hospitals for higher levels of care. Beneficiaries of medical aid schemes are excluded from free services.

The National Drug Policy is, to a large extent, based on the essential drugs concept and is aimed at ensuring the availability of essential drugs of good quality, safety and efficacy to all South Africans.

The department has initiated healthy lifestyle campaigns, including Vuka South Africa and Move for your Health, in which thousands of South Africans participate. During 2006/07, 300 health promoters were trained to implement the global Strategy on Diet, Physical Activity and Health countrywide. About 1 500 primary schools across the country were identified as health-promoting schools. The mass media was used extensively to promote healthy lifestyles, with a primary focus on nutrition. A formal contract was entered into with the SABC and 13 radio scripts were submitted to the public broadcaster.

Community health

The Community Health Worker (CHW) Programme is an important element of the presidential initiatives aimed at addressing health issues and fighting poverty. The massive expansion of the CHW Programme is a vital part of the Social Cluster's contribution to the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP). The programme will result in the integration of health and social programmes.

The Department of Health sees this cadre of health workers as community-based generalist health workers. Their training combines competencies in health promotion, disease prevention, PHC and health-resource networking.

In May 2007, as part of enhancing the CHW Programme, a process was under way to accredit 300 non-governmental organisations (NGOs) to train ancillary health workers at National Qualification Framework (NQF) Level 1 by March 2008 and upgrade the current 26 accredited service-providers to train community caregivers at Level 3.

Health budget

Funding for the Department of Health grew from R7,7 billion in 2003/04 to R15,2 billion in 2009/10, representing a growth rate of 11,9% annually. The department's budget grew by 14,4% annually between 2004 and 2007. The largest growth areas were in the HIV and AIDS subprogramme and the Hospital Revitalisation Grant.

South Africa will spend an extra R5,3 billion over the next three years on improving the salaries of

doctors and nurses, and boosting recruitment levels in the public health sector.

Government plans to increase the number of healthcare workers in the country by about 30 000 over the next five years.

The Department of Health will also receive an additional R1,7 billion over the next three years for the treatment and care of people living with HIV and AIDS.

Health policy

By promoting a healthy lifestyle, the NHS aims to improve public health through disease prevention. It also strives to consistently improve the healthcare-delivery system by focusing on access, equity, efficiency, quality and sustainability.

The strategic priorities for the NHS between 2004 and 2009 are to:

- improve the governance and management of the NHS
- promote a healthy lifestyle
- contribute towards human dignity by improving the quality of care
- improve the management of communicable and non-communicable diseases
- strengthen PHC, emergency medical services (EMS) and hospital service-delivery systems
- strengthen support services
- plan, develop and manage human resources (HR)
- plan, budget, monitor and evaluate
- draft and implement health legislation
- strengthen international relations.

Telemedicine

The South African Government has identified telemedicine as a strategic tool for facilitating the delivery of equitable healthcare and educational services, irrespective of distance and the availability of specialised expertise, particularly in rural areas.

In 1998, the Department of Health adopted the National Telemedicine Project Strategy. The system facilitates frequent contact between doctors in underdeveloped and developed centres. It also provides the academic professionals from major South African medical academic institutions with the opportunity to extend their educational capabilities to healthcare professionals throughout the rural communities of South Africa, without having to provide facilities and teachers in every rural location.

The initial telemedicine evaluation done by the Medical Research Council (MRC) found that access to specialist radiologist reporting



Telemedicine uses information technology to provide and support healthcare, especially in rural clinics without doctors or specialist advice. Through telemedicine, patients get quicker and better diagnosis and have access to specialised care closer to their homes, thereby avoiding time off work and travel costs.

The Department of Science and Technology is supporting the Primary Healthcare Telemedicine Workstation project in Grabouw, Western Cape. This clinic is directly linked to the University of Stellenbosch and allows for consultation and diagnosis in various specialities.

About 10 telemedicine workstations are expected to be installed in KwaZulu-Natal over the next two years.

was possible within an hour, compared with five to seven days in the past. Telemedicine has improved medical practitioners' ability to diagnose and manage various medical conditions, particularly those related to trauma and chest diseases, and has reduced professional isolation.

Legislation

The National Health Act, 2003 (Act 61 of 2003), provides a framework for a single health system for South Africa. It highlights the rights and responsibilities of health-providers and -users, and ensures broader community participation in healthcare delivery from a health facility level up to national level.

The Act provides for the right to emergency medical treatment, to have full knowledge of one's condition, to exercise one's informed consent, to participate in decisions regarding one's health, to be informed when one is participating in research, to confidentiality and access to health records, the right to complain about service, and the right of health workers to be treated with respect.

It establishes provincial health services and outlines the general functions of provincial health departments.

The Nursing Act, 2005 (Act 33 of 2005), provides for the introduction of mandatory community service for nurses. This should contribute significantly to efforts to ensure equitable distribution of nurses to meet the health needs of communities.

The Act seeks to ensure that nursing-education programmes are registered with the NQF so that

nurses can gain recognised credits and retain them for future studies.

The main objectives of the Act are to:

- serve and protect the public in matters involving health services provided by the nursing profession
- ensure that the council serves the best interests of the public and does so in accordance with national health policy
- promote the provision of acceptable nursing care
- regulate the nursing profession and the way in which nurses conduct themselves
- promote the operations and functions of the council and the registrar
- promote liaison regarding health, nursing education and training standards
- ensure that the council advises the minister on matters affecting the profession
- provide for the registration of nurses and the keeping of registers.

The Mental Healthcare Act, 2002 (Act 17 of 2002), introduced a process to develop and redesign mental health services in line with the rights of mental-healthcare users, as guaranteed by the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996.

This legislation grants basic rights to people with mental illnesses, and prohibits various forms of exploitation, abuse and discrimination.

The Act provides for:

- empowering the users themselves so that they can engage service-providers and society
- allocating adequate resources
- commitment to the cause of mental health at all levels of society.

To achieve this, a series of innovative processes and procedures regarding the care, treatment and rehabilitation of mental-health users, as well as clear guidelines on good practice in relation to the role of mental-healthcare practitioners, will be introduced.

Although the Act reserves the right to involuntary hospitalisation, it also contains accompanying conditions for strict admission and reviewing processes and procedures before any decision on psychiatric referrals may be made.

All provinces have established independent mental-health review boards, charged in terms of the Mental Healthcare Act, 2002, to oversee the

care, treatment and rehabilitation of patients who were admitted without consent.

During 2007/08, the department aimed to process eight pieces of legislation through Parliament, namely the Tobacco Products Control Amendment Bill, Health Professions Amendment Bill, Medical Schemes Amendment Bill, MRC Amendment Bill, Allied Health Professionals Amendment Bill, Traditional Health Practitioners Bill, Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Amendment Bill and secondary legislation in terms of the National Health Act, 2003.

National School Health Policy

The National School Health Policy and Guidelines aim to ensure that all children, irrespective of race, colour and location, have equal access to school-health services.

The policy is in line with the United Nations (UN) Convention on the Rights of the Child, which affirms the State's obligation to ensure that all segments of society, in particular parents and children, are informed and have access to knowledge of child health and nutrition, hygiene, environmental sanitation and the prevention of accidents.

Department of Health officials will visit all provinces, especially those with a school health programme, to embark on a major training campaign of PHC nurses.

The nurses will be trained to:

- provide children with health education
- impart life skills
- screen children, especially those in Grade R and Grade 1, for specific health problems, and at puberty stage as children undergo physiological changes
- detect disabilities at an early age
- identify missed opportunities for immunisation and other interventions.

Progress has been made in the area of child and adolescent health. Most infants and a large percentage of the mothers who deliver at public

health facilities receive vitamin A supplementation. More than 40% of health districts implemented the Youth and Adolescent Health Policy guidelines, and 89% implemented phase one of school health services.

Social Health Insurance (SHI)

SHI is expected to facilitate access to contributory health cover for families of all employed people. SHI will embrace three major principles:

- risk-related cross subsidies
- income-related cross subsidies
- mandatory cover.

In 2005/06, Cabinet approved the establishment of the Risk Equalisation Fund (REF). A draft Bill that amends the Medical Schemes Act, 1998 (Act 131 of 1998), to give the Council for Medical Schemes the authority to implement the REF was also finalised.

The REF will be used to address the existing residual risk rating in the medical schemes industry, and will contribute to improving the efficiency of private healthcare centres by encouraging competition on the basis of quality of services.

Medicine administration

The Department of Health aims to establish a live database of medicine prices and publish a logistics fee during the Medium Term Expenditure Framework period. A project to benchmark medicine prices was expected to commence in 2007/08.

A survey on the use of hospital level, adult and paediatric standard treatment guidelines essential drug lists (EDLs) has been completed. By the end of September 2006, the department revised and disseminated the adult and paediatric EDLs.

In an effort to accelerate the registration of medicines, the department strengthened its in-house technical capacity to evaluate medicines. By September 2006, 100% of Good Manufacturing Practice and Good Practice Guideline inspections had been performed in-house. Furthermore, 80% of staff training had been completed. More than 50% of medicines had been evaluated in-house, which exceeded the 40% target for 2006/07.

2010 FIFA World Cup™

A total of R286 million is allocated for health and medical services for the 2010 World Cup, including the acceleration of government's programme for improving EMS. This includes modernising communication centres, modernising and expanding the ambulance fleet, expanding



aeromedical services, and enhancing emergency care training and emergency centres. The World Cup Health Unit is also working closely with the FIFA World Cup Organising Committee to ensure that stadiums have adequate medical facilities.

Health team

National Human Resource Plan (NHRP) for Health

Over the years, the health system has had to deal with the loss of experienced health professionals to mainly developed countries.

In April 2006, the Department of Health launched the NHRP, which aims to provide skilled HR for healthcare.

The National Health Act, 2003 requires that the National Health Council (NHC) formulates policy and guidelines for the development, distribution and effective use, as well as the management, of HR within the NHS.

It aims to address the problems of recruitment, training and retention of health professionals.

South Africa has played a significant role in ensuring that the issue of the migration of health personnel remains high on the global health agenda.

To regulate the recruitment of South African health professionals by other countries, the department assisted in developing a code of ethical recruitment for members of the Commonwealth.

Physicians

By April 2007, 33 220 doctors were registered with the HPCSA. These included doctors working for the State, those in private practice and specialists. The majority of doctors practise in the private sector. In selected communities, medical students supervised by medical practitioners provide health services at clinics.

In terms of the Continuing Professional Development (CPD) system, all doctors, irrespective of earlier qualifications, must obtain a specified number of points to retain their registration.

The system requires that doctors attend workshops, conferences, refresher courses, seminars, departmental meetings and journal clubs. Non-compliance with the requirements of the system could result in a doctor being deregistered.



Applications by foreign health professionals are subject to assessment by the Examinations Committee of the Medical and Dental Professions Board. Those admitted have to write an examination, after which they can be registered in the particular category for which they applied and were assessed.

Newly qualified interns are required to do remunerated compulsory community service at state hospitals. Only after completing this service are they allowed to register with the HPCSA and entitled to practise privately.

Community service for a range of professional groups, such as physiotherapists, occupational therapists and psychologists, aims to improve access to quality healthcare for all South Africans, especially in underserved areas. It also gives young professionals the opportunity to develop skills, and acquire knowledge and behaviour patterns that will help them in their professional development.

Oral health professionals

By 1 April 2006, 955 oral hygienists and 443 dental therapists were registered with the HPCSA. There were 4 799 registered dentists by 1 April 2006.

Dentists are subject to the CPD and community-service systems. Oral health workers render services in the private and public sectors.

Pharmacists

All pharmacists are obliged to perform one year of remunerated pharmaceutical community service in a public-health facility. Those who have not completed this year of service may not practise independently as pharmacists.

A section of the Pharmacy Amendment Act, 2000 (Act 1 of 2000), which allows non-pharmacists to

own pharmacies, came into effect during May 2003. It aims to improve access to medicine, make it more affordable, improve marketing and dispensing practices, and promote consumer interests. By August 2007, the SAPC had 10 948 registered pharmacists.

As of July 2005, every institutional pharmacy is required to have access to the services of a responsible pharmacist so that the public can enjoy the same standard of pharmaceutical service as that of the private sector.

Nurses

The SANC sets minimum standards for the education and training of nurses in South Africa. It accredits schools that meet the required standards and only grants professional registration to nurses who undergo nursing education and training at an accredited nursing school.

The key roles of the nursing council are to protect and promote public interest, and to ensure the delivery of quality healthcare by prescribing minimum requirements for the education and training of nurses and midwives, approving training schools, and registering or enrolling those who qualify in one or more of the basic or post-basic categories.

At the end of 2006, there were 196 914 registered and enrolled nurses and enrolled nursing auxiliaries registered with the council.

The nursing profession represents more than 50% of the total professional HR of health services.

Similarly, the council registered 27 924 persons as student and pupil nurses or pupil nursing auxiliaries by the end of 2006, up by 443 compared with 2005 figures.

In January 2007, 4 565 professionals from 10 health professional groups commenced with their internship and community-service placements. They comprised:

- dentists – 188
- pharmacists – 469
- clinical psychologists – 121
- dieticians – 140
- occupational therapists – 250
- physiotherapists – 340
- radiographers – 284
- speech, language and hearing therapists – 145
- doctors – 1 230
- medical interns – 1 398.

Nurses were expected to commence with community service in January 2008.

Allied health professions

By October 2007, the following practitioners were registered with the AHPCSA:

- Ayurveda 76
- Chinese medicine and acupuncture 152
- chiropractors 497
- homoeopaths 562
- naturopaths 93
- osteopaths 50
- phytotherapists 25
- therapeutic aromatherapists 636
- therapeutic massage therapists 248
- therapeutic reflexologists 1 188.

In September 2007, the Minister of Health, Dr Manto Tshabalala-Msimang, announced that in terms of Section 16 of the Allied Health Professions Act, 1982 (Act 63 of 1982), and in consultation with the AHPCSA, the provisions of the Act would be applied to the profession of Unani Tibb.

The Professional Board for Ayurveda, Chinese Medicine, and Accupuncture and Unani Tibb was also established in September 2007.

National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS)

The NHLS is the single largest diagnostic pathology service in South Africa with over 250 laboratories serving 80% of the country's population. All laboratories provide laboratory diagnostic services to the national and provincial departments of health, provincial hospitals, local authorities and medical practitioners.

The NHLS conducts health-related research, appropriate to the needs of the broader population, into HIV and AIDS, tuberculosis (TB), malaria, pneumococcal infections, occupational health, cancer and malnutrition, among other things.

The NHLS trains pathologists, medical scientists, occupational health practitioners, technologists and technicians in pathology disciplines, as well as occupational health practitioners.

Its specialised divisions comprise the:

- National Institute for Communicable Diseases (NICD), whose research expertise and sophisticated laboratories make it a testing centre and resource for the African continent,

Registered and enrolled nurses, 2007

	2007
Registered nurses and midwives	101 295
Enrolled nurses and midwives	39 305
Nursing auxiliaries	56 314
Students in training	27 924

Source: South African Nursing Council

particularly in relation to several of the rarer communicable diseases

- National Institute for Occupational Health, which investigates occupational disease and has laboratories for occupational environment analyses
- National Cancer Registry, which provides epidemiological information for cancer surveillance.

Medical Research Council

The MRC, the largest health research body in South Africa, was established in accordance with the MRC Act, 1991 (Act 58 of 1991). Its mandate is to promote the improvement of the health and quality of life of South Africans through research, development and technology transfer. It operates closely with linked university research units.

The MRC structures its research portfolio into six national programmes: Environment and Development, Health Systems and Policy, Infection and Immunity, Molecules to Disease, Non-Communicable Diseases, and Women and Child Health.

Tasks include co-ordinating the South African AIDS Vaccine Initiative (Saavi), and operating large malaria and TB research programmes.

Research priorities over the medium term include heart disease and strokes; violence and injury; nutrition; pneumonia; diabetes; women, maternal and child health; mental health; cancer; health promotion and behavioural science; health systems; and e-health.

The MRC also seeks to become a leader in biotechnology, natural medicines, the evaluation of indigenous knowledge systems and the development of drugs, vaccines and medical devices.

Provincial health departments

Provincial health departments provide and manage comprehensive health services at all levels of care. The basis for these services is a district-based PHC model.

The major emphasis in developing health services in South Africa at provincial level has been the shift from curative hospital-based healthcare to that provided in an integrated community-based manner.

Clinics

A network of clinics run by government forms the backbone of primary and preventive healthcare in South Africa. Between 1994 and July 2007, more than 1 600 clinics were built or upgraded.

Hospitals

Hospital management was strengthened in various ways in all nine provinces during 2006/07. In 2007/08, the Department of Health planned to ensure that at least 50% of hospital managers enrol in a formal hospital management-training programme.

In 2006/07, the department also assisted provinces to implement cost-centres in 27 hospitals, as part of the strategy to strengthen financial management and accountability. Four hospitals implemented electronic cost centres and 23 developed manual cost centres.

The Hospital Revitalisation Programme entered its fifth year in 2007, and continues to illustrate the importance of an integrated strategy for improving health-service delivery. The programme includes improving infrastructure, health technology (equipment), quality of care, management, and organisational development within targeted hospitals in the programme. Four new hospitals

Age distribution of nurses, December 2006

Age group	Registered nurses	Enrolled nurses	Nursing auxiliaries
< 25	63	782	1 754
25 – 29	3 090	4 215	7 694
30 – 34	9 298	5 137	8 274
35 – 39	13 810	6 189	7 909
40 – 44	17 438	6 949	7 751
45 – 49	18 953	6 221	7 592
50 – 54	15 071	4 674	6 003
55 – 59	10 299	2 573	4 241
60 – 64	7 225	1 329	2 521
65 – 69	3 765	589	817
> 69	1 888	183	214
Not reported	1 032	508	1 556
Total	101 932	39 949	56 326

Source: South African Nursing Council

were officially opened during 2006/07. A total of 43 hospital projects were active during 2006. In 2007/08, there were 39 active projects.

State-of-the-art tertiary hospitals in the form of the Inkosi Albert Luthuli, Nelson Mandela and Pretoria Academic hospitals, and 10 other hospitals have been completed since 2004/05. Forty-six revitalisation projects, with 30 already on site and 16 in the planning stages, are being implemented. The following hospitals were expected to be completed in 2007/08: Mamelodi in Gauteng, Worcester in the Western Cape, Rietvlei in KwaZulu-Natal and Barkley West in the Northern Cape.

Emergency medical services

Provincial departments of health are responsible for EMS, which include ambulance services. Emergency-care practitioners receive nationally standardised training through provincial colleges of emergency care.

Some universities of technology also offer diploma and degree programmes in emergency care. Personnel can receive training to the level of advanced life support. These services also include aeromedical and medical-rescue services.

Personnel working in this field are required to register with the HPCSA's Professional Board for Emergency Care.

The Department of Health plays a co-ordinating role in operating and formulating policy and guidelines, and in developing government EMS.

A longstanding and key objective during 2007/08 was to reduce the response times of EMS in both urban and rural areas. The department assisted provinces to implement EMS plans.

Private ambulance services provide services to the community. Some also provide aeromedical services to the private sector.

The South African Military Health Service of the South African National Defence Force plays a vital supporting role in emergencies and disasters. (See Chapter 16: *Safety, security and defence*.)

The role of local government

Local government is responsible for rendering the following:

- preventive and promotive healthcare, with some municipalities rendering curative care
- environmental health services, including the supply of safe and adequate drinking water, sewage disposal and refuse removal
- regulation of air pollution, municipal airports, fire-fighting services, licensing and abattoirs.



Many local authorities provide additional PHC services. In some instances, these are funded by provincial health authorities, but in major metropolitan areas the councils carry some of the costs.

Non-profit health sector

NGOs at various levels play an increasingly important role in healthcare, many of them co-operating with government to implement priority programmes.

They make an essential contribution in relation to HIV, AIDS and TB, and also participate significantly in the fields of mental health, cancer, disability and the development of PHC systems.

Through the Partnership for the Delivery of PHC Programme (PDPHCP), including the HIV and AIDS Programme, the department has strengthened its collaboration with NGOs. In 2006/07, the PDPHCP operated in 16 districts located in five provinces, namely Eastern Cape, Gauteng, KwaZulu-Natal, Limpopo and Western Cape.

By March 2006, the department had funded 325 NGOs to provide community-based health services, with most of them providing home-based care as their main service to communities. These NGOs provided care to more than 40 000 people.

The PDPHCP has empowered communities and NGOs working in the health sector by focusing on three key areas:

- providing skills to all NGOs in the rural nodes by using accredited service-providers
- reducing unemployment by ensuring that NGO workers are provided with stipends
- ensuring accountability by requiring NGOs to include community members in their administration structures.

The involvement of NGOs extends from national level, through provincial structures, to small local organisations rooted in individual communities. All are vitally important and bring different qualities to the healthcare network.

Costs and medical schemes

The Council for Medical Schemes regulates the private medical aid scheme industry in terms of the Medical Schemes Act, 1998. The council is funded mainly through levies on the industry in terms of the Council for Medical Schemes Levies Act, 2000 (Act 58 of 2000). There are about 124 medical schemes servicing about seven million people.

Medical schemes are the single largest financing intermediary, accounting for nearly 7% of all healthcare expenditure. This is followed by provincial health departments at 33%, and households (in terms of out-of-pocket payments directly to healthcare providers) at 14% of all healthcare expenditure.

Tariffs for admission to private and provincial hospitals differ. Cost differences also exist between various provincial hospitals, depending on the facilities offered. Provincial-hospital patients pay for examinations and treatment on a sliding scale in accordance with their income and number of dependants.

If families are unable to bear the cost in terms of the standard means test, patients are classified as hospital patients. Their treatment is then partly or entirely financed by the particular provincial government or the health authorities of the administration concerned.

Provincial hospitals offer treatment to patients with medical-aid cover, charging a tariff designed to recover the full cost of treatment. This private rate is generally lower than the rate charged by private hospitals.



In April 2007, South Africa hosted the third Ordinary Session of the African Union (AU) Conference of Ministers of Health. At this meeting, the Minister of Health, Dr Manto Tshabalala-Msimang, was elected chairperson for a two-year period. Together with the AU Commissioner for Social Affairs, South Africa will be responsible for providing leadership on health on the continent.

The meeting approved the African Health Strategy that updates the New Partnership for Africa's Development's health strategy.

The target of 2015 for the achievement of the goals in the African Health Strategy corresponds with the target date for achieving the millennium development goals.



Senior representatives of the Tunisian Agency for Technical Co-operation visited South Africa in May 2007 to inspect public health facilities, with the aim of assisting in recruiting Tunisian doctors to work in the underserved areas of South Africa.

South Africa and Tunisia have an existing co-operation agreement on health, which was signed in 1999. The week-long visit ended with the signing of the Protocol on the Recruitment of Tunisian Doctors.

Between 2000 and 2002, Tunisian ophthalmologists visited South Africa to perform eye operations. A total of 234 were performed in 2000, 260 in 2001 and 176 in 2002.

The two countries have revived the ophthalmologist programme and are looking into long-term plans to sustain the programme for the next three years. In January 2007, 171 eye operations were performed by Tunisian ophthalmologists at Butterworth Hospital in the Eastern Cape.

The Medical Schemes Amendment Act, 2001 (Act 55 of 2001), improves the regulatory capacity of the Registrar for Medical Schemes and regulates reinsurance. The Act:

- provides improved protection for members by addressing the problem area of medical insurance, revisiting the provision on waiting periods, and specifically protecting patients against discrimination on grounds of age
- promotes efficient administration and good governance of medical schemes by insisting on the independence of individuals in certain key positions
- introduced mechanisms to address problematic practices in the marketing of medical schemes and brokerage of services.

Minimum benefits are also prescribed. In 2004, several chronic conditions were added to the package of prescribed minimum benefits.

The Department of Health is redrafting the Medical Schemes Amendment Bill, which incorporates the introduction of the REF.

Community health

The most common communicable diseases in South Africa are HIV, AIDS, TB, malaria, measles and sexually transmitted infections (STIs).

The appropriate and timely immunisation of children against infectious diseases is one of the most cost-effective and beneficial preventive measures known.

The mission of the South African Expanded Programme on Immunisation (EPI) is to reduce death and disability from preventable diseases by making immunisation accessible to all children.

The key priorities moving into 2008 were to strengthen the EPI, specifically the implementation of the Reach Every District (Red) Strategy, which seeks to improve routine immunisation coverage in all districts countrywide. The Red Strategy will focus on districts and subdistricts with the lowest immunisation coverage.

The country continued to increase immunisation coverage of children younger than one year of age, from the nationally recorded 82% up to 2007, to 90% coverage in at least 70% of the health districts in 2008.

In South Africa, it is recommended that children under the age of five be immunised against the most common childhood diseases. Immunisation should be administered at birth, six weeks, 10 weeks, 14 weeks, nine months, 18 months and five years of age. Childhood immunisations are given to prevent polio, TB, diphtheria, pertussis, tetanus, haemophilus influenzae type B, hepatitis B and measles.

Polio and measles

In 2006, South Africa was declared free of the Wild Poliovirus by the Africa Regional Certification Commission, a subcommittee of the Global Certification Commission. This is an independent commission working closely with the World Health Organisation (WHO). During 2007/08, the department continued its surveillance of polio-free certification indicators, until the Global Certification Commission declares global eradication of polio.

There have been no confirmed measles deaths since 2000, as a direct result of the Measles Elimination Strategy.

According to the NICD, 6 620 blood specimens from suspected cases of measles and rubella were tested during 2006. Measles was confirmed in 82 specimens and rubella in 2 930. The 82 confirmed measles cases detected during 2006 reflected a marked decline from the 615 confirmed cases reported in 2005.

In May 2007, the Department of Health launched the nationwide Polio and Measles Immunisation Campaign, aimed at boosting the immunisation coverage to reach the required target of 90%.

The theme for the campaign is *Give our Children a Polio-and-Measles Free World. Have your Child Immunised against Polio and Measles.*

The campaign will give children under the age of five years booster doses of polio and measles immunisation that will provide them with additional protection against these life-threatening diseases.

In 2005, the routine immunisation coverage for children under one year was 81% and measles immunisation coverage 84%. Both figures are below the WHO target of 90%.

Integrated Management of Childhood Illnesses

The IMCI promotes child health and improves child survival as part of the National Plan of Action for Children.

It is being instituted as part of the Department of Health's policy on the NHS for Universal Primary Care.

South Africa's nurses and doctors are well trained to treat all diseases using the IMCI Strategy. Diseases such as pneumonia, malaria, meningitis, diarrhoea and malnutrition are easily managed. In South Africa, the IMCI Strategy has been adapted to include assessment and classification of HIV.

The strategy aims to integrate all interventions relating to children to ensure that a package of care is offered to each child.

During 2006, the department expanded the IMCI Strategy to health subdistricts and attained 100% saturation at health-district level in 2005. More than 60% of healthcare-providers managing children in 48% of the subdistricts were IMCI-trained. By June 2007, 60% of health facilities had at least one IMCI-trained healthcare-provider.

Another strategy to improve child health is to provide vitamin A supplementation.

Malaria

Malaria is endemic to the low-altitude areas of Limpopo, Mpumalanga and north-eastern KwaZulu-Natal. About 10% of the population lives in malaria-risk areas.

The department has strengthened the roll-back malaria strategy in these provinces. Efforts to control malaria continue to pay dividends. A total of 4 404 malaria cases were reported between June 2006 and April 2007, compared with 11 246 cases reported for June 2005 to April 2006. During the same reporting period, the number of deaths decreased from 88 to 31.

The main reasons for this decline include indoor residual spraying using DDT, which has now been accepted by the WHO as a significant tool in malaria control after many years of South Africa's engagement on this issue.



On 25 April 2007, South Africa joined the rest of the continent when it observed Africa Malaria Day under the slogan *Free Africa from Malaria Now!* According to the World Health Organisation, at least 300 million acute cases of malaria are reported each year globally, resulting in more than a million deaths. At least 90% of these deaths occur in Africa, mostly in young children.

There has been a significant decrease in the number of malaria cases and deaths reported in South Africa.

South Africa is a signatory to the Abuja Declaration, which undertakes to reduce malaria morbidity and mortality by 50% by 2010.

In February 2006, the Department of Science and Technology allocated R11 million to the South African Malaria Initiative (Sami).

Sami was initiated in 2005 by the African Centre for Gene Technologies, a joint venture between the universities of Pretoria and of the Witwatersrand, as well as the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research.

The aim is to encourage collaboration between various local malaria researchers and to establish networks with other key players on the African continent.

Sami's research will focus on:

- the pre-clinical development of novel potential anti-malarial compounds
- new and improved diagnostics
- molecular epidemiology and parasite-vector interactions.

To monitor the disease effectively, the MRC, together with the national and provincial departments of health, has developed a malaria-information system to obtain information about the disease and operational aspects pertaining to control programmes.

Through these public-private partnerships, malaria is being controlled effectively in southern Africa. However, to ensure that the incidence of malaria continues to decline, increased intercountry collaboration is essential.

Malaria-control teams of the provincial departments of health are responsible for measures such as education, patient treatment, residual spraying of all internal surfaces of dwellings situated in high-risk areas, and detection and treatment of all parasite carriers.

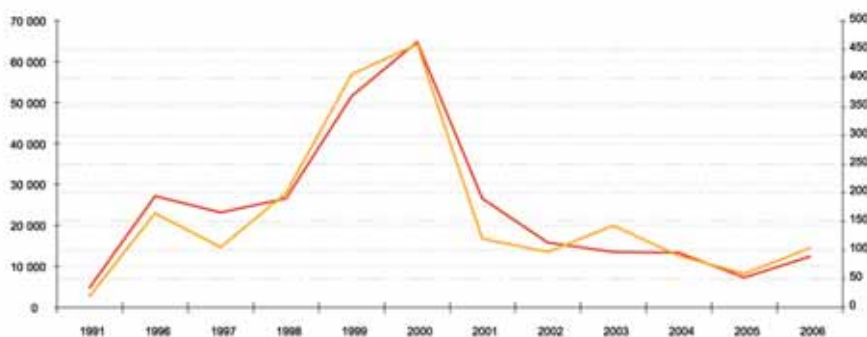
It was decided to continue with controlled and restricted use of DDT because of the growing resistance to pyrethroid insecticides.

The MRC's South African Traditional Medicines Research Group is investigating plants used by traditional healers for the treatment of malaria.

Two plants that are effective against malaria parasites *in vitro* have been identified, and the active compounds in one of the plants have been identified and isolated.

Insecticide-treated nets are another intervention that has had an impact, reducing the number of malaria deaths, particularly among children under the age of five years.

The number of reported deaths due to malaria divided by number of malaria reported cases



Department of Health's Malaria Notification System

Tuberculosis

In 2006, more than 300 000 people were suffering from TB, with at least 12% of TB patients defaulting on their treatment.

The worst-affected provinces are the Eastern Cape, Western Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and Gauteng, which contribute about 80% of the country's total TB burden.

Failure to complete TB treatment poses a major challenge. Government spends R400 on treating every patient with ordinary TB. When patients discontinue treatment and develop a multidrug-resistant form of TB, the cost of treatment dramatically increases to R24 000, including hospitalisation and more expensive drugs.

The Department of Health has implemented the Directly Observed Treatment Short-Course Strategy (Dots), advocated by the International Union Against TB and the WHO. The focus is on curing infectious patients at the first attempt, by ensuring that:

- they are identified by examining their sputum under a microscope for TB bacilli
- they are supported and monitored to ensure that they take their tablets correctly
- the treatment, laboratory results and outcome are documented
- appropriate drugs are provided for the correct period
- TB control receives special emphasis in terms of political priority, finances and good district-health management.

Treatment is free of charge at all public clinics and hospitals in South Africa. The TB-Control Programme is being strengthened by:

- appointing TB co-ordinators in each health district
- strengthening the laboratory system
- strengthening the implementation of Dots
- mobilising communities to ensure that patients complete their treatment.

The key elements of the plan focus on strengthening TB service-delivery systems and processes, and embarking on an intensive communication and social mobilisation campaign.

The aim is to increase the smear conversion rate in the short term, and the cure rates in the medium term in these districts and provinces. Each province will be responsible for addressing the following critical issues:

- making available adequate financial and HR responsible for TB at all levels
- ensuring access to laboratory services
- strengthening the TB reporting and recording system

- strengthening referral systems to ensure proper treatment and follow-up of transferred patients and patients requiring treatment for co-infections
- implementing a highly visible social-mobilisation and media campaign
- strengthening the supervision system to ensure facility and community-level health workers receive adequate mentoring and support.

As part of TB control, national infection control guidelines for health facilities were produced and distributed to provinces. Health workers were trained in infection control. Isolation guidelines were prepared, with input from the departments of correctional services and of health, and circulated to provinces for comment before finalisation and implementation.

During 2006/07, to further strengthen the National TB-Control Programme, the four identified districts that are part of the National TB Crisis-Management Plan, namely the Nelson Mandela Metro, Amatole District, eThekweni Metro and the City of Johannesburg, continued to be supported and monitored. By September 2006, the City of Johannesburg recorded TB cure rates that were higher than the baseline. However, the other three districts did not show improvement.

By May 2007, efforts were being made to combat TB, particularly the response to drug-resistant TB (XDR-TB). Infection-control measures have been strengthened in the multidrug-resistant TB (MDR-TB) hospitals in a bid to ensure the effective isolation of both MDR-TB and XDR-TB. The appropriate drugs for treating drug-resistant TB are available.

A surveillance system for XDR-TB has been developed. Healthcare workers (both nurses and doctors) are being trained on the management of XDR-TB and research is being conducted to determine its extent.

As part of the Department of Health's collaboration with various partners in addressing TB, the WHO has provided South Africa with technical advice to strengthen the country's response to XDR-TB.

HIV and AIDS

The Department of Health has developed the National Strategic Plan (NSP) for HIV and AIDS for 2007 to 2011, which builds on the gains of the Strategic Plan for 2000 to 2005.

The plan places new emphasis on treatment and prevention. It also spells out clear, quantified targets, and places a high priority on monitoring and evaluation.

The primary goal of the NSP is to reduce the rate of new HIV infections and to mitigate the impact of AIDS on individuals, families and communities.

The NSP aims to achieve a 50% reduction of new infections by 2011 and provides an appropriate package of treatment, care and support services.

The package includes counselling and testing services as an entry point; healthy-lifestyle interventions, including nutritional support; treatment of opportunistic infections; antiretroviral (ARV) therapy; and monitoring and evaluation to assess progress and share research.

The Government first announced South Africa's ARV treatment programme in 2006.

At that time, over 130 000 people were receiving ARV treatment through government programmes, on top of the more than 80 000 people receiving ARV treatment from the private healthcare sector.

By the end of June 2007, an estimated 300 000 patients were receiving ARVs. At least 342 public health facilities had been accredited to provide this service, including nine correctional service centres. More facilities were being accredited to further expand access.

In the 2007/08 Budget presented in February 2007, the Minister of Finance, Mr Trevor Manuel, announced an additional R1,65 billion for comprehensive treatment.

With this additional funding over a three-year period, the numbers of people receiving comprehensive treatment against HIV and AIDS is expected to double, according to the *2007 Budget Review*.

During 2006/07, the department published the *2005 National HIV and Syphilis Antenatal Sero-Prevalence Survey*, which reflected that HIV prevalence in South Africa was stabilising. Furthermore, HIV prevalence among women

younger than 20 years continued to decline, which suggested a decline in new cases.

The South African National Aids Council (SANAC) has served as an important platform for partnerships against AIDS. In 2005/06, the council reviewed its functioning and a new council structure was announced by Deputy President Phumzile Mlambo-Ngcuka in December 2006. SANAC aims to guide the multisectoral response to HIV and AIDS. It will also ensure effective monitoring and evaluation of the NSP.

HIV and AIDS vaccine research and development

Saavi was established in 1999 to develop and test an affordable, effective, and locally relevant HIV and AIDS vaccine for southern Africa.

Saavi works closely with many international organisations, including the African AIDS Vaccine Programme and the International AIDS Vaccine Initiative. It receives funding from various organisations, including the HIV Vaccine Trials Network of the United States' National Institute of Health, and the European Union.

Home- and community-based care

Home- and community-based care is a central tenet of the care component of the comprehensive response to HIV and AIDS. This service is provided mainly through NGOs and community-based organisations.

The objective of the Home- and Community-Based Care Programme is to ensure:

- access to care, and follow-up through a functional referral system
- that children and families who are affected and infected by HIV and AIDS have access to social-welfare services within their communities.

In 2006/07, the Department of Health supported home-and community-based programmes in 60% of subdistricts, and more than 493 000 patients with debilitating conditions received nutritional support. (See Chapter 19: *Social development*).

Reproductive health

Government has introduced a number of programmes to support women and men in making their reproductive choices. Among these are the



By October 2007, more than 80% of government clinics were providing prevention of mother-to-child transmission (PMTCT) of HIV services, and the target was to have these services available in all clinics by December 2007.

More than 4 000 sites provide voluntary counselling and testing, and about 90% of public health facilities provide services for the PMTCT of HIV.



Family Planning Programme, which provides for counselling; a range of choices of family-planning methods such as contraceptives, access to legal termination of pregnancy and sterilisation under specific conditions; as well as education on sexuality and healthy lifestyles. These services are provided free of charge at PHC facilities.

The Department of Health has developed a card for women's reproductive health to improve continued care and to promote a healthy lifestyle. The card is retained by the patient and facilitates communication between health services. Reproductive Health Month is held annually in February to educate women on their reproductive rights and related issues.

The contraception and the youth and adolescent health policy guidelines promote access to health services for vulnerable groups, by improving the capacity of health and other workers to care for women and children.

The guidelines are aimed at providing quality care, preventing and responding to the needs of young people, and promoting a healthy lifestyle among the youth. The promotion of a healthy lifestyle includes programmes or activities on issues such as:

- life skills
- prevention of substance and alcohol abuse
- provision of a smoke-free environment.

Eight critical areas within the youth and adolescent health policy guidelines have been identified, namely:

- sexual and reproductive health
- mental health
- substance abuse
- violence
- unintentional injuries
- birth defects and inherited disorders
- nutrition
- oral health.

Guidelines for maternity care deal with the prevention of opportunistic infections in HIV-positive women, and the provision of micronutrient supplements to help ensure the well-being of mothers.

Guidelines for the Cervical Cancer-Screening Programme aim to reduce the incidence of cervical cancer by detecting and treating the pre-invasive stages of the disease.

The programme aims to screen at least 70% of women in their early 30s within 10 years of initiating the programme. It allows for three free pap-smear tests with a 10-year interval between each test. Pilot sites for the screening of cervical

cancer have been set up in Limpopo, Gauteng and the Western Cape. The project will be rolled out to all provinces.

The Choice on Termination of Pregnancy Act, 1996 (Act 93 of 1996), allows abortion on request for all women in the first 12 weeks of pregnancy, and in the first 20 weeks in certain cases. The Act was amended to improve access and alleviate the pressure on existing termination services. The system of designating services will be changed to ensure that more public health facilities offer termination procedures.

During 2007, access to termination-of-pregnancy services continued to improve, with increasing numbers of community health centres (CHCs) authorised to provide this service. By September 2006, 60% of designated hospitals were providing termination-of-pregnancy services and 17% of CHCs had been authorised to provide this service.

The Department of Health supports training in abortion care and providing contraception.

Environmental health

In terms of the National Health Act, 2003, environmental health services are vested with local government. This shifted the responsibility for rendering environmental health services to metropolitan and district councils from 1 July 2004.

Traditional medicine

The National Reference Centre for African Traditional Medicines researches African herbs and evaluates their medicinal value, as part of government's campaign to fight HIV, AIDS, TB and other debilitating and chronic diseases and conditions.

In 2006, the MRC initiated toxicology studies to further study selected indigenous plants to assess their potential medicinal efficacy.

The launch of the centre was the result of a research programme initiated by the Department of Health and the MRC. It aims to test the effectiveness, safety and quality of traditional medicine, as well as to protect people from unscrupulous conduct and unproven medical claims within the traditional healing sector.

To protect the intellectual property rights of traditional peoples, the MRC will conduct biomedical research on medicinal plants. Traditional claims will also be channelled through this centre.

Government supports research by universities and science councils into the efficacy of many traditional medicines used for various conditions.

The WHO estimates that up to 80% of Africa's people use traditional medicine. In sub-Saharan Africa, the ratio of traditional health practitioners to the population is about 1:500, while the ratio of medical doctors is 1:40 000.

Traditional health practitioners have an important role to play and have the potential to serve as a critical component of a comprehensive healthcare strategy.

In South Africa alone, there are an estimated 200 000 traditional health practitioners. They are the first healthcare-providers to be consulted in up to 80% of cases, especially in rural areas, and are deeply embedded in the fabric of cultural and spiritual life.

Research also indicates that in many developing countries, a large proportion of the population relies heavily on traditional health practitioners and medicinal plants to meet PHC needs. Although modern medicine may be available in these countries, traditional medicines remain popular for historical and cultural reasons.

The department is undertaking various initiatives in this regard. These include:

- establishing the Presidential Task Team, which is working on the broad policy framework on African traditional medicine for South Africa
- the Ministerial Task Team, which is working together with the Medicine Regulatory Authority to facilitate the registration and regulation of African traditional medicines
- prioritising registration and the regulatory framework for African traditional medicine
- making funds available for the research and development of African traditional medicines to manage and control diseases
- establishing a fully staffed unit that manages the work related to traditional medicine within the Department of Health
- finalising the Traditional Health Practitioners Bill.

Tobacco control

An estimated 25 000 South Africans die each year from tobacco-related diseases.

South Africa continues with its tobacco-control efforts and has been selected as co-ordinator of the Africa group on health matters. It is part of the WHO

process of implementing the international Framework Convention on Tobacco Control (FCTC).

Regulations of the Tobacco Products Control Amendment Act, 1999 (Act 12 of 1999), include:

- a ban on all advertising for tobacco products from 23 April 2001
- all public places must be smoke-free, but employers and restaurateurs are permitted to set aside 25% of their space for smokers, which must be separated by a solid partition
- a fine of R10 000 for those who are caught selling or giving cigarettes to children.

To protect public health, the Tobacco Products Control Act, 1993 (Act 83 of 1993), was amended to provide for, among other things:

- prohibiting advertising and promotion of tobacco products
- prohibiting the free distribution of tobacco products and receiving gifts or cash prizes in contests, lotteries or games
- prescribing maximum permissible yields of tar, nicotine and other constituents in tobacco products.

The Act is in line with the provisions of the WHO's FCTC and makes it more effective by closing loopholes and increasing fines.

South Africa is a co-signatory with 74 other countries to the FCTC, which commits governments worldwide to take measures to reduce tobacco use. In 2005, South Africa became one of the few countries to have ratified the FCTC.

The Tobacco Products Control Amendment Bill seeks to improve the operation of the Tobacco Products Control Act, 1993 and to deal with new practices designed to circumvent the provisions of the Act.

The Act is also being amended to bring it into compliance with the WHO FCTC. The main provisions of the Bill are to:

- amend the current Act to strengthen the sections which prohibit advertising, promotion and sponsorship
- remove misleading package descriptors like "light" and "mild"
- control the ingredients in and emissions from tobacco products
- increase penalties for breaking the law.

People who want to stop smoking may contact the National Council Against Smoking's Quit Line on 011 720 3145.

Alcohol and substance abuse

According to a report by the MRC's Alcohol and Drug Abuse Research Group, released in May 2007, alcohol remains the dominant substance abused in South Africa, except in the Western Cape. Across the eight sites in the South African Community Epidemiology Network on Drug Use, between 42% (Cape Town) and 72% (KwaZulu-Natal) of patients in specialist substance-abuse treatment centres listed alcohol as their primary substance of abuse.

The Sacendu Project is an alcohol and other drug sentinel surveillance system operational in eight provinces in South Africa, namely Western Cape, KwaZulu-Natal, Eastern Cape, Mpumalanga, Gauteng, Free State, Northern Cape and North West. The system has, since 1996, been monitoring trends in alcohol and other drug use and associated consequences on a six-monthly basis, drawing data from specialist alcohol and other drug treatment programmes.

Between July and December 2006, between 29% and 45% of patients attending specialist-treatment centres listed cannabis as their primary or secondary drug of abuse, compared with between 2% and 17% for the cannabis/Mandrax combination.

Treatment admissions for cocaine-related problems have shown an increase. Between 12% and 29% of patients in treatment used cocaine as a primary or secondary drug of abuse.

Between 11% and 23% of patients in treatment used heroin as a primary drug of abuse.

Between 3% and 4% of patients in treatment used Ecstasy as a primary or secondary drug of abuse. Treatment admissions for Ecstasy, LSD or methamphetamine as primary drug of abuse were low, except in Cape Town.



As part of the Healthy Lifestyle Campaign, the departments of health and of education, and the South African Police Service, are running a programme for reducing substance abuse in schools, which also forms part of the Life Orientation content of outcomes-based education.

The Medical Research Council is piloting a tobacco-control programme for schools in the Western Cape and KwaZulu-Natal, as part of the school curriculum. By mid-2007, more than 860 schools had become tobacco-free environments since the launch of the Healthy Environments for Children Initiative in 2003.

In the reporting period, the abuse of over-the-counter and prescription medicines continued to be an issue.

Draft regulations on the labelling of alcoholic beverages were published in the *Government Gazette* in February 2005. The regulations define an alcoholic beverage as any drink for human consumption with an ethyl alcohol content of above 1%.

The regulations propose a number of messages that should be printed in black and white, covering at least 12,5% of the container label or promotional material of an alcohol product.

The health message can be in any of the South African official languages, but must be in the same language as that of the container label or promotional material. The regulations prohibit any claims of health benefits that may be derived from consuming alcoholic beverages.

Contravention of these regulations can lead to a fine or imprisonment of up to five years, or both.

Violence against women and children

The Department of Health has implemented a series of concrete measures to eliminate violence against women and children.

To raise awareness of this grave social problem, the 16 Days of Activism for No Violence Against Women and Children Campaign is held at the end of every year.

In March 2007, Deputy President Mlambo-Ngcuka launched the 365 Days Programme and National Action Plan to end Violence against Women and Children.

The plan is a follow-up to the May 2006 365 Days of Action to End Gender Violence Conference that adopted the Kopanong Declaration in which a cross-section of South Africans committed to supporting a joint campaign for eradicating this gross human-rights violation.

The Kopanong Declaration envisaged that each year, the 16 Days of No Violence against Women and Children on Gender Violence would become a platform to heighten awareness, and to take stock of gaps and achievements to ensure sustained and measurable efforts to end gender violence.

Violence prevention

The Department of Health plays an important role in preventing violence. PHC professionals are being trained in victim empowerment and trauma support. Healthcare professionals are also receiving advanced training in managing complicated cases of violence in secondary-level victim-empowerment centres, established by the

Department of Health in some provinces. There are also violence-prevention programmes in place in schools in some provinces.

The Crime, Violence and Injury Lead Programme, co-directed by the MRC and the University of South Africa's Institute for Social and Health Sciences, aims to improve the population's health status, safety and quality of life. This is achieved through public health-orientated research aimed at preventing death, disability and suffering arising from crime, violence and unintentional incidents of injury.

The programme's overall goal is to produce research on the extent, causes, consequences and costs of injuries, and on best practices for primary prevention and injury control.

Birth defects

It is estimated that 150 000 children born annually in South Africa are affected by a significant birth defect or genetic disorder.

The Department of Health's four priority conditions are albinism, Down's syndrome, foetal alcohol syndrome and neural tube defects. Implementation of policy guidelines for managing and preventing genetic disorders, birth defects and disabilities will reduce morbidity and mortality resulting from these conditions.

This will involve decentralising training, expanding the sentinel sites for birth-defect monitoring, and co-operating with NGOs in creating awareness.

South Africa, through the Birth-Defects Surveillance System, is a member of the International Clearing House for Birth-Defects Monitoring Systems. Links have been made with those sentinel sites reporting on perinatal mortality, as congenital anomalies have been shown to be among the top three causes of perinatal mortality at certain sentinel sites.

Oral health

The Department of Health's policy on promoting oral health has shifted from curative, hospital and urban-based oral healthcare to integrating oral healthcare in the Road to Health Chart for babies, as part of the Healthy Lifestyles Campaign.

Chronic diseases, disabilities and geriatrics

The Department of Health has identified the fight against chronic diseases such as cancer, hypertension, diabetes and osteoporosis as a priority area over the next few years.

The plan is premised on the development of meaningful strategies for preventing diseases such as cancer, with special emphasis on healthy lifestyles, including physical activity. The department has embarked on an outreach promotion programme – Healthy Lifestyles – that discourages tobacco consumption, and advocates physical activity, healthy nutrition, safe sex and safe alcohol usage.

During 2006/07, the department undertook various activities to reduce the burden of non-communicable diseases, including:

- a number of health-screening activities
- the Move for Health Programme to encourage physical activities
- nutrition programmes, including providing vitamins and establishing food gardens
- programmes to reduce risky behaviour such as smoking, and alcohol and drug abuse.

The department aims to reduce avoidable blindness by increasing the cataract-surgery rate. Some 1 030 cataract operations per million people were performed in 2005/06.

Government introduced free health services for people with disabilities in July 2003. Beneficiaries include people with permanent, moderate or severe disabilities, and those who have been diagnosed with chronic irreversible psychiatric disabilities.

Frail older people and long-term institutionalised state-subsidised patients also qualify for these free services.



In March 2007, the Minister in The Presidency, Dr Essop Pahad, attended the official ceremony on the opening for signature of the United Nations (UN) Convention on the Rights of Persons with Disabilities, in New York.

This convention is the first human-rights treaty to be adopted by the UN in the 21st century.

South Africa played an instrumental role in the negotiations that led to the adoption of the treaty, and strongly supported the promotion and adoption of the convention and its optional protocol.



People with temporary disabilities or a chronic illness that does not cause a substantial loss of functional ability, and people with disabilities who are employed and/or covered by relevant health insurance, are not entitled to these free services.

Beneficiaries receive all in- and outpatient hospital services free of charge. Specialist medical interventions for the prevention, cure, correction or rehabilitation of a disability are provided, subject to motivation from the treating specialist and to approval by a committee appointed by the Minister of Health.

All assistive devices for the prevention of complications, and cure or rehabilitation of a disability, are provided. These include orthotics and prosthetics, wheelchairs and walking aids, hearing aids, spectacles and intra-ocular lenses. The Department of Health is also responsible for maintaining and replacing these devices. A documented two-year backlog has been eliminated.

Public-sector hospitals have been made more accessible to people with disabilities. Guidelines on the implementation of the National Rehabilitation Policy have been finalised, and the revision of the price list for orthotic prosthetic devices completed.

In supporting the health needs of the elderly, the department's policy is to keep the elderly in the community with their families as long as possible.

The department continues to develop national policy guidelines on the management and control of priority diseases or conditions of older persons, to improve their quality of life and access to healthcare services.

These include the development of exercise posters and pamphlets, and guidelines that focus specifically on older persons, e.g. national guidelines on falls in older persons, guidelines on active ageing, guidelines on stroke and transient ischemic attacks, and national guidelines on osteoporosis.

The National Strategy on Elder Abuse, together with the national guidelines on the management of physical abuse of older persons, have been implemented in all provinces.

In partnership with the Department of Social Development, the Department of Health has implemented the integrated nutrition programme for vulnerable children alongside luncheon clubs for the elderly, to allow for interaction between senior citizens and children.

It was also involved in developing survey indicators for the WHO Study on Ageing. The study seeks to create a multicountry platform for data

collection, which results in a reliable source of health information about adult populations aged 50 years and older.

Occupational health

The introduction of legislation such as the Occupational Health and Safety Act, 1993 (Act 181 of 1993), and the Mines Health and Safety Act, 1996 (Act 29 of 1996), has done much to focus employers' and employees' attention on the prevention of work-related accidents and diseases. The Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases Act, 1993 (Act 30 of 1993), places the onus on medical practitioners, who diagnose conditions that they suspect might be a result of workplace exposure, to report these to the employer and relevant authority.

The Medical Bureau for Occupational Diseases has a statutory function under the Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works Act, 1973 (Act 78 of 1973), to monitor former mineworkers and to evaluate present miners for possible compensational occupational lung diseases either until they die or are compensated maximally.

The Compensation Commissioner for Occupational Diseases is responsible for paying benefits to miners and ex-miners who have been certified to be suffering from lung-related diseases contracted as a result of their working conditions.

Mental health

The promotion of mental health is one of the cornerstones of South Africa's health policy. The Mental Healthcare Act, 2002 provides for the care, treatment, rehabilitation and administration of mentally ill persons. It also sets out the different procedures to be followed in the admission of such persons.

The Mental Health Information Centre (MHIC) is situated at the Health Sciences Faculty of the University of Stellenbosch and has been in operation since 1995. It forms part of the MRC's Unit on Anxiety and Stress Disorders, and aims to promote mental health in South Africa.

The MHIC is also actively involved in research, and conducts academic and clinical research trials for conditions such as obsessive-compulsive, panic, post-traumatic stress and generalised anxiety disorders. Research is also undertaken into mood, psychotic, dementia and other major psychiatric disorders. A key focus area is mental-health literacy. The MHIC regularly conducts mental-health attitude and stigma surveys among various population and professional groups.

Quarantinable diseases

The Port Health Service is responsible for the prevention of quarantinable diseases in the country as determined by the International Health Regulations Act, 1974 (Act 28 of 1974). These services are rendered at sanitary airports (OR Tambo, Cape Town and Durban international airports) and approved ports.

An aircraft entering South Africa from an epidemic yellow-fever area must make its first landing at a sanitary airport. Passengers travelling from such areas must be in possession of valid yellow-fever vaccination certificates. Every aircraft or ship on an international voyage must also obtain a pratique from a port health officer upon entering South Africa.

Consumer goods

Another function of the Department of Health, in conjunction with municipalities and other authorities, is to prevent, control and reduce possible risks to public health from hazardous substances or harmful products present in foodstuffs, cosmetics, disinfectants and medicines; from the abuse of hazardous substances; or from various forms of pollution.

Food is controlled to safeguard the consumer against harmful, injurious or adulterated products, or misrepresentation as to their nature; as well as against unhygienic manufacturing practices, premises and equipment.

Integrated Nutrition Programme (INP) and food security

The INP aims to ensure optimum nutrition for all South Africans by preventing and managing malnutrition. A co-ordinated and intersectoral approach, focusing on the following areas, is fundamental to the success of the INP and includes:

- disease-specific nutrition support, treatment and counselling
- growth monitoring and promotion
- nutrition promotion
- micronutrient malnutrition control
- food-service management
- promotion, protection and support of breast-feeding
- contributions to household-food security.

The INP targets nutritionally vulnerable or at-risk communities, groups and individuals for nutrition interventions, and provides appropriate nutrition education to all.

The Department of Health has established a number of clinic, school and community gardens to assist in developing food security. More than 490 000 patients with debilitating illnesses received food supplementation in 2006.

The Food Fortification Programme was launched in April 2003. With effect from 7 October 2003, millers are compelled by law to fortify their white- and brown-bread flour and maize meal with specific micronutrients.

The regulations on food fortification stipulate mandatory fortification of all maize meal and wheat flour with six vitamins and two minerals, including Vitamin A, thiamine, riboflavin, niacin, folic acid, iron and zinc.

Environmental health practitioners at local-government level are responsible for monitoring compliance and for law enforcement. Fines of up to R125 000 can be imposed upon millers who fail to comply.

The National School Nutrition Programme is based on community participation and mobilises communities to develop food gardens. The primary goal of the programme is school feeding, while also using resources invested by government to create sustainable livelihoods for local communities.

The programme has been transferred from the Department of Health to the Department of Education. (See Chapter 7: *Education*.)



In July 2007, the Minister of Health, Dr Manto Tshabalala-Msimang, published new regulations regarding the labelling and advertising of foodstuffs, in an effort to increase awareness and promote a healthier lifestyle among South Africans, especially children.

The current regulations on the advertising and labelling of foodstuffs were promulgated in 1993 and have to be replaced to strengthen effectiveness, close all known loopholes and incorporate new developments in scientific research.

The draft regulations aim to improve public health through healthier food choices and improved nutrition through special food formulations. Allergens that have to be clearly labelled will also be increased from the current two to nine.

Acknowledgements

BuaNews

Department of Health

Estimates of National Expenditure 2007, published by National Treasury

National Health Laboratory Service

South African Nursing Council

South African Pharmacy Council

www.gov.za

www.hasa.co.za

www.lovelife.org.za

www.nhls.ac.za

www.mrc.co.za

www.soulcity.org.za

Suggested reading

AIDS and Governance in Southern Africa: Emerging Theories and Perspectives, compiled by K Chirambo and M Caesar. Pretoria: Institute for Democracy in South Africa (Idasa), 2003.

Barnett, T and Whiteside, A. *AIDS in the 21st Century: Disease and Globalisation*. Hampshire. 2nd ed: Palgrave Macmillan, 2006.

Barnett, T and Whiteside, A. *AIDS in the 21st Century: Disease and Globalisation*. 2nd ed. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan, 2006.

Bradshaw, D, Groenewald, P, Laubscher, R, Nannan, N, Nojilana, B, Norman, R, Pieterse, D and Schneider, M. *Initial Burden of Disease Estimates for South Africa, 2000*. Medical Research Council Technical Report. Cape Town, 2003.

Brain Drain of Health Professionals from Sub-Saharan Africa to Canada. Cape Town: Idasa, 2006.

Breier, M and Wildschut, A. *Doctors in a Divided Society: The Profession and Education of Medical Practitioners in South Africa*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council Press (HSRC), 2006.

Caesar-Katsenga, M and Myburgh, M. *Parliament, Politics and AIDS: A Comparative Study of Five African Countries*. Cape Town: Idasa, 2006.

Cameron, E. *Witness to AIDS*. Cape Town: Tafelberg, 2006.

Chirambo, K. *Democratisation in the Age of HIV/AIDS: Understanding the Political Implications*. Cape Town: Idasa, 2006.

Deacon, H. *et al. Understanding HIV/AIDS Stigma: A Theoretical and Methodological Analysis*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2005.

Deacon, H and Stephney, I. *HIV/AIDS Stigma and Children*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2007.

De Haan, M. *et al. The Health of Southern Africa*. 9th ed. Cape Town: Juta, 2005.

Dennill, K, King, L and Swanepoel, T. *Aspects of Primary Healthcare*. 2nd ed. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.

Evian, C. *Primary Health Care*. 4th rev ed. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2006.

Fertility: Current South African Issues of Poverty, HIV/AIDS and Youth: Seminar Proceedings. Cape Town: HSRC, 2003.

Green, A. *Introduction to Health Planning in Developing Countries*. London: Oxford University Press, 2004.

Guest, E. *Children of AIDS: Africa's Orphan Crisis*. 2nd ed. Pietermaritzburg: University of Natal, Press, 2003.

Guthrie, T and Hickey, A. eds. *Funding the Fight: Budgeting for HIV/AIDS in Developing Countries*. Cape Town: Idasa, 2004.

- Hassim, A, Heywood, M and Bergen, J. *Health and Democracy: A Guide to Human Rights, Health Law and Policy in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. Tokai, Cape: Siberlink, 2007.
- Health and Hope in our Hands: Addressing HIV and AIDS in the Aftermath of Rape and Woman Abuse*. Johannesburg: Jacana Media, 2004.
- Illiffe, J. *African AIDS Epidemic: A History*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2006.
- Impact of HIV/AIDS on the Health Sector: National Survey of Health Personnel, Ambulatory and Hospitalised Patients and Health Facilities 2002*. Pretoria: Department of Health, 2003.
- Izumi, K, ed. *Reclaiming our Lives: HIV and AIDS, Women's Land and Property Rights and Livelihoods in Southern and East Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
- Jamison, DJ. *et al. Priorities in Health*. Washington: World Bank, 2006.
- Katzenellenbogen, JM. *et al. Epidemiology: A Manual for Southern Africa*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.
- Kauffman, K and Lindauer, D. eds. *AIDS and South Africa: The Social Expression of a Pandemic*. Basingstoke: Palgrave Macmillan, 2004.
- Kleintjies, S. *et al. Gender Mainstreaming in HIV/AIDS: Seminar Proceedings*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2005.
- Labonde, R. *et al. Fatal Indifference: The G8, Africa and Global Health*. Cape Town: University of Cape Town Press, 2004.
- Levin, A. *AidSafari*. Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2006.
- Makhubele-Nkondo, ON. ed. *HIV/AIDS Dictionary*. Pretoria: Skotaville Media, 2004.
- Martin, HG. *A Comparative Analysis of the Financing of HIV/AIDS Programmes in Botswana, Lesotho, Mozambique, South Africa, Swaziland and Zimbabwe*. Cape Town: HSRC, 2003.
- Parry, C and Bennetts, A. *Alcohol Policy and Public Health in South Africa*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.
- Philpott, S. *Budgeting for Children with Disabilities in South Africa*. Cape Town: Idasa, 2004.
- Strode, A and Grant, KB. *Understanding the Institutional Dynamics of South Africa's Response to the HIV/AIDS Pandemic*. Cape Town: Idasa, 2004.
- Swartz, L. *Culture and Mental Health: A Southern African View*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.
- Uys, L. *Home-Based HIV/AIDS Care*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.
- Van Niekerk, A and Kopelman, LM. eds. *Ethics and AIDS in Africa: The Challenge of our Thinking*. Cape Town: David Philip, 2005.
- Walker, L, Reid, G and Cornell, M. *Waiting to Happen: HIV/AIDS in South Africa*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2004.
- Watermeyer, B. *et al. Disability and Social Change: A South African Agenda*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
- Wilson, D. *et al. eds. Handbook of HIV Medicine*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press Southern Africa, 2004.
- Winkler, G. *Courage to Care: A Workbook on HIV/AIDS for Schools*. Southdale: CIE, 2005.



SA YEARBOOK 2007/08 | HOUSING



Access to housing and secure accommodation is an integral part of government's commitment to reducing poverty and improving the quality of people's lives.

The Department of Housing determines, finances, promotes, co-ordinates, communicates and monitors the implementation of policy for housing and human settlement.

Between 2005 and June 2007, government produced 2,4 million houses, benefiting more than nine million people. The housing backlog was decreased from 2,4 million to 2,2 million. Annual production grew from 252 000 to 272 000 a year.

The department was allocated R45,3 billion in 2007/08.

Legislation and policy Comprehensive Housing Plan

The Minister of Housing, Dr Lindiwe Sisulu, announced the Comprehensive Housing Plan for the Development of Integrated Sustainable Human Settlements in September 2004.

Cabinet has approved the plan as a framework for housing programmes in the next five years, which aims to eradicate informal settlements in South Africa in the shortest possible time.

It provides for comprehensive oversight by government in promoting the residential property market. This includes the development of low-cost housing, medium-density accommodation and rental housing; stronger partnerships with the private sector; social infrastructure; and amenities.

The plan aims to change spatial settlement patterns by building multicultural communities in a non-racial society.

With the N2 Gateway Project in Cape Town, the biggest housing project ever undertaken, government is piloting the integration of communities and of different income groups; auditing and updating the database of housing needs to ensure the list and choice of beneficiaries is credible; building human settlements with basic economic and social amenities; and pursuing a new way of intergovernment relations.

The project will see the development of about 30 000 dignified dwellings at sites along a 30-kilometre stretch of the N2, from District Six to Joe Slovo, Netreg, New Rest and Boystown to Delft.

The Comprehensive Housing Plan is being implemented through a pilot project in each province that will improve the living conditions of

103 000 households in informal settlements. The informal-settlement upgrading projects provide for phased, area-based development, and fund community participation and project management as an integral part of housing projects. Eradicating or upgrading all informal settlements by 2014/15 is the prime target.

The plan's strategic focus includes ensuring the delivery of affordable housing in sustainable and habitable settlements. The plan's strategic priorities are to:

- accelerate housing delivery
- improve the quality of housing products and environments to ensure asset creation
- ensure a single, efficient formal housing market
- restructure and integrate human settlements.

Key focus areas identified by the comprehensive housing plan include:

- accelerating housing delivery as a key strategy for poverty alleviation
- using housing provision as a major job-creation strategy
- ensuring that property can be accessed by all as an asset for wealth creation and empowerment
- leveraging growth in the economy, combating crime and promoting social cohesion
- using housing development to break down barriers between the First Economy residential property boom and the Second Economy slump
- using housing as an instrument for the development of sustainable human settlements in support of spatial restructuring
- diversifying housing products by emphasising rental stock.

In September 2005, at the Housing Indaba in Cape Town, the Government and the private sector, including banks and property developers, agreed to accelerate housing delivery to address the housing backlog.

The Minister of Housing and key role-players in the housing industry have signed the Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery.

The contract binds signatories to work together to remove bottlenecks in housing delivery, invest more resources in low-cost housing and fast-track

delivery. This has brought on board players from the financial construction sectors, and many other stakeholders.

Inclusionary Housing Policy

By mid-2007, the Inclusionary Housing Policy had been finalised. The policy provides for the use of government-owned land, and proactive engagements between the private sector and government.

Private-sector developers, in collaboration with financial institutions, have undertaken several inclusionary housing initiatives.

These include housing projects in Bertrams, Johannesburg; Olievenhoutbosch, Pretoria; Cosmo City in Johannesburg; Hlanganani, Springs; and Blythedale, outside Durban.

Rental housing for the poor

About 1,8 million South African households in the middle- to lower-income groups live in rented accommodation, as opposed to about 5,2 million households that own property. At national level, 45% of households earn between R0 and R800 per month, while 45% of households at metropolitan level fall within the R801 to R3 200 income bracket.

Nationally, 71,14% of households rent accommodation, and 71,76% of people renting in metropolitan areas live in formal structures. Black households comprise the largest percentage of renters, followed by coloured households.

The demand for rental housing nationally is expected to increase substantially in the middle- to lower-income groups.

There is a dire need for public rental housing for the poor, which the Department of Housing aims to address by means of various options.

The department has formulated an affordable rental-housing programme for people in the low-income bracket who may live in housing stock arising out of:

- provision made by previous departments
- public-sector hostels for housing migratory labour in the previous dispensation
- municipal rental stock, which has not been transferred to the households who inhabit the units, and which will continue to be used as rental accommodation because of the low economic status of the households
- new high-rise housing stock that will be built for the specific purpose of accommodating low-income households in rental accommodation.

Policy now exists that will allow for the increased allocation of housing units to ex-combatants for Truth and Reconciliation Commission reparations,

on a preferential basis. Over the next five years, an average of 30 % of subsidised units are expected to be allocated to this target group.

Breaking New Ground (BNG) Programme

The BNG Programme is aimed at improving overall housing delivery.

A typical BNG starter house comprises a minimum of two bedrooms, a living area and inside bathroom.

Rental Housing Act, 1999 (Act 50 of 1999)

The Rental Housing Act, 1999, which came into operation on 1 August 2001, defines the responsibility of government in respect of the rental housing market.

It sets out the duties and responsibilities of both landlords and tenants, and provides for the establishment of rental-housing tribunals in the provinces, thus allowing for a speedy and cost-effective resolution of disputes between landlords and tenants.

Among other things, the Act prescribes that:

- Leases may be oral or in writing. Tenants can demand a written lease.
- The landlord must give the tenant a written receipt.
- The landlord may require that the tenant pay a deposit before moving in.
- The balance of deposit and interest must be refunded to the tenant by the landlord not later than 21 days after the expiry of the lease.

Three rental-housing tribunals were set up in Gauteng, the Western Cape and North West. Other provinces are in the process of establishing similar tribunals. The Act gives these tribunals the power to make rulings in line with those of a magistrate's court.

The Rental Housing Amendment Bill was approved by Cabinet in June 2007 to, among other things, amend the Rental Housing Act, 1999, so as to substitute a definition; to make further provision for rulings by rental-housing tribunals; to expand the provisions pertaining to leases; and to extend the period allowed for the filling of vacancies in rental-housing tribunals.

Home Loan and Mortgage Disclosure Act, 2000 (Act 63 of 2000)

The Home Loan and Mortgage Disclosure Act, 2000 provides for the establishment of the Office of Disclosure and the monitoring of financial institutions serving the housing-credit needs of communities.

It requires financial institutions to disclose information, and identifies discriminatory lending

patterns. The Act aims to promote equity and fairness in lending and disclosure by financial institutions, and will be implemented as soon as the regulations of the Act have been promulgated.

The Act also aims to eradicate discrimination and unfair practices, by encouraging banks and financial institutions to grant home loans to all its clients. It compels banks and financial institutions to disclose annual financial statements so that their lending practices in respect of home loans can be monitored.

In March 2005, the Department of Housing revived the Financial Services Charter by signing a memorandum of understanding with four major banks – Absa, First National Bank, Standard Bank and Nedcor. The banks pledged to release R42 billion into the affordable housing market by 2008.

By June 2007, the banks had lent R38 billion to the target market and were expected to report to the Charter Council on their activities.

As a second phase of this initiative, subject to possible risk-sharing mechanisms, the creation of mechanisms to raise funds in the market through an appropriate conduit, which would be guided in line with principles set by the Department of Housing and the intervention of the Ministry of Finance, the banks would increase their investment in the target market beyond R42 billion.

Engagements in the charter process are ongoing. The banks were expected to flight a generic consumer-education programme aimed at informing potential borrowers of their rights and obligations, and those of banks, through various media.

Another campaign was expected to raise awareness of the initiative and of the basis on which members of the target group could access affordable housing-finance products and subsidies from the Department of Housing. Government initiated a programme to bridge the gap as identified by the banks as a barrier to entry to affordable housing-finance products, and developed a programme of financial support for households with incomes ranging from R3 501 to R7 000.

Housing Consumer Protection Measures Act, 1998 (Act 95 of 1998)

In terms of the Housing Consumer Protection Measures Act, 1998, residential builders have to

register with the National Home-Builders Registration Council (NHBRC) and are obliged to enrol all new houses under the NHBRC's Defect Warranty Scheme.

The Act aims to protect home owners from inferior workmanship. Builders are responsible for design and material defects for three months, roof leaks for a year, and any structural failures of houses for five years. NHBRC inspectors may assess workmanship during and after the building process.

Banks are compelled by law to insist on home-builder registration and enrolment prior to granting a mortgage loan or finance.

All new government-subsidised housing units constructed as part of approved projects enjoy protection against shoddy workmanship by housing contractors.

Through the Act, properties that were built with funding from the Government's housing subsidy grant only, enjoy protection against structural defects and must comply with minimum technical norms and standards.

Previously, the properties of the poor did not qualify for such protection. The NHBRC ensures that registered builders deliver within the minimum housing standards.

The Housing Consumers Protection Measures Amendment Bill aims to amend the Housing Consumers Protection Measures Act, 1998, so as to, among other things, amend certain definitions and to define certain words or expressions; to clarify the scope of application of the Act; to provide for late enrolment and non-declared late enrolment; to enable owner-builders to apply for exemption; to extend claims to include roof leaks; to make further provision for the use of money in the funds contemplated in the Act; to extend the offences created under the Act; and to amend provisions pertaining to the granting of exemptions and to the lodging of appeals.

Prevention of Illegal Eviction and Unlawful Occupation of Land Act, 1998 (Act 19 of 1998)

The Prevention of Illegal Eviction and Unlawful Occupation of Land Act, 1998 prohibits unlawful eviction and sets out detailed procedures for the eviction of unlawful occupiers.



It also prohibits the receipt of payment as a fee for arranging the occupation of land without the consent of the owner, and repeals obsolete laws relating to illegal squatting.

The Act provides a process for fair eviction of unlawful occupiers, and distinguishes between occupiers who have been residing on land for less than six months and those who have been residing on land for more than six months.

Social housing

In June 2007, Cabinet approved the Social Housing Bill. The Bill is expected to assign the responsibilities of national, provincial and local government on matters pertaining to social housing.

It will also ensure that relevant institutional arrangements and capacities required by the Social Housing Programme are in place, including the establishment of the Social Housing Regulatory Authority.

The department is intensifying its working relationship with community-based organisations and various non-governmental organisations (NGOs), which include the Federation of Urban (and Rural) Poor, Built Environment Support Group, Kuyasa Fund, Utshani Fund and Rooftops, to build a strong and cohesive housing sector.

In September 2005, the department signed the Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery with 47 other key stakeholders.

Each signatory committed to becoming a member of the Plenary Assembly, aimed at reviewing and monitoring progress in achieving the ideals of the Social Contract for Rapid Housing Delivery. The first Plenary Assembly met in March 2006 to look at issues such as development planning, land and legal matters, delivery, consumer education, capacity-building and communication, development planning and the housing supply chain.

The social contract brings together all sectors in a mobilised and cohesive housing sector that seeks to help government achieve the goal of eradicating all informal settlements by 2014.

By mid-2007, the Social Housing Policy and its guidelines for implementation had been approved. About 52 776 social housing units had been provided in collaboration with the European Union.

Community Residential Unit Programme

The existing Public Sector Hostels Upgrading Programme, which was used to effect only cosmetic improvements to dilapidated hostels, has

been revised and is now called the Community Residential Unit Programme. The programme provides a holistic and integrated development approach towards residential units, as well as a more appropriate funding mechanism and tenure arrangements for turning around hostels.

Capacity-building

One of the major constraints in housing delivery is the lack of capacity, in terms of an efficient workforce and the installation of appropriate technology, equipment and systems for monitoring, evaluation and reporting purposes.

The Department of Housing continues to assist provinces in ensuring effective and efficient implementation of the National Housing Programme.

The strategy and guidelines for housing capacity-building, as well as guidelines for provincial housing-capacity business plans, have been developed.

The Department of Housing has undertaken several initiatives to support small enterprises within housing and to promote Black Economic Empowerment and gender mainstreaming.

Based on extensive consultation with stakeholders in the construction and housing industry, the department has developed a framework for emerging contractor support that has resulted in a support programme that focuses initially on training emerging contractors.

Emergency housing

The National Housing Programme for Housing Assistance in Emergency Housing Circumstances was instituted in terms of the Housing Act, 1997 (Act 170 of 1997).

The amendment relates to the provision of the Constitution that everyone has the right to access to adequate housing, and that the State must take reasonable legislative and other measures as permitted by available resources to achieve the progressive realisation of this right.

The main objective of this programme is to provide temporary housing relief to people in urban and rural areas who find themselves in emergency situations, such as when:

- their existing shelters have been destroyed or damaged
- their prevailing situation poses an immediate threat to their lives, health and safety
- they have been evicted or face the threat of eviction.

Assistance involves prioritising funds from the provincial housing allocations to municipalities to accelerate land development, and the provision of basic municipal engineering services and temporary shelter.

Housing subsidies

New housing-subsidy programmes are being developed and certain existing programmes have been enhanced, including rental and social-housing subsidies. The housing-subsidy programmes, including project-linked subsidies, are being revised to introduce a procurement-compliant regime, consolidation subsidies, the People's Housing Process (PHP), rural subsidies and institutional subsidies.

Project-linked subsidies

This housing-subsidy mechanism enables a qualifying household to access a complete residential unit which has been developed within an approved

project-linked housing subsidy project for ownership by the beneficiary.

Individual subsidies

An individual subsidy provides qualifying beneficiaries with access to housing subsidies to acquire ownership of serviced stands. It also allows the beneficiary to enter into house-building contracts, or to purchase existing, improved residential property which is not part of approved housing-subsidy projects.

This subsidy helps qualifying beneficiaries who wish to increase their subsidies by accessing credit, as well as beneficiaries who do not qualify for credit.

Consolidation subsidies

This subsidy mechanism affords former beneficiaries of serviced stands, financed by the previous housing dispensation (including the Independent Development Trust's site and service schemes), the opportunity to acquire houses.

The South African Housing Subsidy Scheme quantum amounts for the period 1 April 2007 to 31 March 2008 in respect of a 40 m² house.

Individual and project-linked subsidies	Top structure funding only	Own contribution	Product price
R0 – R1 500 R1 501 – R3 500	R38 984 R36 505	None R2 479	R38 984 R38 984
Indigent: aged, disabled and health-stricken R0 – R3 500	R38 984	None	R38 984
Institutional subsidies			
R0 – R3 500	R36 505	Institution must add capital	At least R38 984
Consolidation subsidies			
R0 – R1 500 R1 501 – R3 500	R38 984 R36 505	None R2 479	R46 484* R46 484*
Indigent: aged, disabled and health-stricken R0 – R3 500	R38 984	None	R46 484
Rural subsidies			
R0 – R3 500	R38 984	None	R38 984
People's Housing Process			
R0 – R3 500	R38 984	None	R38 984

* Product price = R38 984 and serviced stand previously acquired at R7 500 = R46 484
Municipal engineering services are to be funded from other government resources but, as a last resort, may also be funded from the annual housing funding allocations to provinces.

Source: Department of Housing

Institutional subsidies

Institutional subsidies are available to qualifying institutions to enable them to create affordable housing stock for persons eligible for housing subsidies. The subsidy is paid to approved institutions to provide subsidised housing on deed of sale, rental or rent-to-buy options, on condition that the beneficiaries may not be compelled to pay the full purchase price and to take transfer within the first four years of receiving the subsidy.

Institutions must also invest capital from their own resources in the project.

Relocation assistance

Relocation assistance provides an alternative option to defaulting borrowers who were three months in arrears on 31 August 1997, and where the option of rehabilitating these mortgage loans is not affordable. This alternative provides an opportunity to obtain affordable housing with the assistance of the housing subsidy. An eligible person must enter into a relocation agreement to relocate to affordable housing.

Finance-Linked Subsidy Programme (FLISP)

Government introduced the FLISP on 1 October 2005, to assist first-time home buyers who earn between R3 501 and R7 000 per month to obtain a home loan. The subsidy attaches to the beneficiary and not to the property. This will be used to decrease the mortgage bond and is only applicable to people who have never before been assisted by the State. It is disbursed as a once-off subsidy.

Subsidy for people with disabilities

People with disabilities who qualify for a housing subsidy will receive additional amounts to improve

their houses with special additions such as paving and ramps to their door, grab rails in bathrooms, and visible door bells for the deaf.

Discount Benefit Scheme

The Discount Benefit Scheme promotes home ownership among tenants of state-financed rental stock, including formal housing and serviced sites.

Beneficiaries who took occupation of these rented houses before 15 March 1991, can now apply for a discount on the selling of their houses up to R38 984.

In most cases, these houses are given to the people free of charge due to the fact that the discount is more than the selling price.

Rural subsidies

This housing subsidy is available to beneficiaries who enjoy only functional tenure rights to the land they occupy. This land belongs to the State and is governed by traditional authorities.

The subsidies are only available on a project basis and beneficiaries are supported by implementing agents.

Beneficiaries also have the right to decide on how to use their subsidies, either for service provision, for the building of houses, or for a combination thereof.

Peoples' Housing Process

This subsidy is available to people who want to build or manage the building of their own homes. Unlike the project-linked subsidy where a contractor builds houses for a number of people, the PHP allows people or beneficiaries to build or organise the building of their homes.

Approved projects per province, March 2007

Eastern Cape	480
Free State	724
Gauteng	1 188
KwaZulu-Natal	603
Limpopo	602
Mpumulanga	563
Northern Cape	277
North West	277
Western Cape	607
Total	5 321

Source: Department of Housing

Approved subsidies per province, March 2007

Eastern Cape	302 729
Free State	169 350
Gauteng	1 191 754
KwaZulu-Natal	387 297
Limpopo	208 081
Mpumulanga	185 712
Northern Cape	54 949
North West	212 049
Western Cape	331 979
Total	3 043 900

Source: Department of Housing

Housing institutions

The Department of Housing's support institutions play an important role in enhancing the norms and standards of housing, as well as making housing more accessible to all South Africans.

The institutions are the NHBRC, the National Housing Finance Corporation (NHFC), the National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency (Nurcha), Servcon Housing Solutions, Thubelisha Homes, the Social Housing Foundation (SHF), the South African Housing Fund, the PHP and the Rural Housing Loan Fund (RHLF).

National Home-Builders Registration Council

The NHBRC was established in terms of the Housing Consumer Protection Measures Act, 1998. The council protects the interests of consumers and regulates the home-building industry.

The NHBRC is a section 21 company established to provide for the protection of housing consumers through a home-warranty scheme, and to regulate the home-building industry through the registration of builders and the setting of ethical and technical standards for the residential building industry.

The Housing Consumer Protection Measures Act, 1998 extends the NHBRC home-warranty scheme to government housing-subsidy schemes.

The NHBRC raises revenue from fees charged for the registration of home builders and the enrolment of new houses under its warranty scheme.

National Housing Finance Corporation

The Department of Housing established the NHFC as a development-finance institution in 1996, to ensure that every low- and moderate-income household gains access to housing finance. The NHFC's revenue is derived from interest and service charges for its wholesale lending and financial services.

The NHFC's mandate has been expanded to enable it to directly lend to low- and medium-income end users. A new business model for the corporation has been developed and approved for implementation. By mid-2007, the process to operationalise all the components of the model was under way and had been piloted as from May 2007

through the Postbank, with a view to a full roll-out towards the end of 2007/08. The pilots were taking place in Johannesburg, Soweto and Pretoria Central.

By September 2006, the NHFC had achieved R24 million in revenue against a target of R33 million, with a profit of R22 million.

National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency

Nurcha was formed in May 1995 as a partnership between the South African Government and the Open Society Institute of New York, United States of America (USA) to arrange finance for housing construction.

Over the years, Nurcha has raised additional financing through Swedish, Norwegian and other agencies in the USA, and through the Futuregrowth Fund, Overseas Private Investors' Corporation and Rand Merchant Bank. It is a tax-exempt, non-profit-making company.

By September 2006, the institution had signed three rental-housing contracts with a loan value of R56 million, 24 credit-linked loan contracts with the loan value of R92 million, 11 infrastructure and community-facility contracts with a loan value of R80 million, and 51 subsidy housing loans with a value of R217 million.

In 2007/08, Nurcha was expected to continue financing contractors in the subsidy housing, credit-linked housing and community infrastructure subsectors.

Servcon Housing Solutions

Servcon Housing Solutions (Pty) Ltd is a private company established in terms of the Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973), as a product of the Record of Understanding between government (Department of Housing), the Banking Association of South Africa (Basa) and participating financial institutions. It was mandated to provide exclusive management services concerning the designated or ring-fenced portfolio comprising 33 306 properties in possession, and non-performing loans with a value of R1, 277 billion, for a period of eight years from 1 April 1998 to 31 March 2006.

The final one third of the properties in this portfolio were transferred to occupants after the

Department of Housing agreed to allocate relocation subsidies, and participating banks wrote off remaining debts.

The Basa shares and participating banks' claims in Servcon were sold to the national Department of Housing in May 2006.

Since then, the expertise, experience and capacity within Servcon have been engaged in the normalisation/regularisation programme through service-level agreements with four provincial housing departments, namely Gauteng, Western Cape, North West and KwaZulu-Natal.

This process intended to facilitate a clean-up of the housing database and establish the extent to which original owners of Reconstruction and Development Programme houses have been replaced by new occupants and regularisation, transfer title deeds, where these are still outstanding, and the rectification of major defects due to poor workmanship.

Social Housing Foundation

The SHF was established as a section 21 company by the Department of Housing in 1997. It is mandated to develop and build capacity for social housing institutions, and to develop a policy framework for the sector.

The strategic objectives of the organisation, based on its mandate, mission and vision, are to:

- provide strategic information to the social-housing sector
- mobilise resources for the social-housing sector
- facilitate the capacitation of sectoral participants
- facilitate sectoral stakeholder alignment
- achieve SHF business-service excellence.

It is expected that the SHF will be consolidated under the new Social Housing Regulatory Authority, as envisaged by the new social housing policy and Bill.

Peoples' Housing Partnership Trust (PHPT)

The Department of Housing established the PHPT in 1997 to create the capacity to facilitate subsidy support for the PHP, which is the process of owners literally building their own homes in terms of the National Housing Policy.

Supporting the PHP, the PHPT's mandate is to capacitate national, provincial and local government, and civil society, to participate in and support the PHP. The PHPT was expected to be integrated into the Department of Housing in 2007.

Rural Housing Loan Fund

The RHLF was established in 1996 by the South African Government following a grant of about R150 million from the German Government. The

national Minister of Housing appoints the RHLF board of directors. RHLF is incorporated as a non-profit (section 21) organisation.

The mandate of the RHLF is to facilitate access to housing finance for low-income earners who intend to improve their housing conditions largely in non-metropolitan areas, such as communal land, small and secondary towns, and rural nodes.

The RHLF operates as a wholesale finance institution and, to achieve its mandate, the RHLF lends to intermediary housing lenders who, in turn, lend to individual borrowers.

Since inception, the RHLF has proved that the market for rural-housing finance credit does exist. By the end of January 2007, the RHLF had provided in excess of 122 000 housing loans to the value of more than R475 million.

Increasingly, the RHLF is making access to housing finance possible for people in presidential rural nodes. In the period of 12 months to December 2006, the RHLF disbursed 3 620 loans valued at R13 million to people in rural nodes and four other rural-district municipalities.

Thubelisha Homes

Thubelisha provides specialised programmes and interventions that significantly accelerate affordable housing delivery and impact positively on the development of integrated sustainable human settlements.

With a track record of successfully completed projects and a national footprint in all nine provinces, Thubelisha's mandate has been expanded to include the project management of housing projects and integrated sustainable developments, as well as the construction of affordable housing and related services.

Thubelisha supports the Minister of Housing's BNG initiative through the following programmes:

- upgrading informal settlements
- unblocking projects through delivery-enhancing interventions
- fast-tracking housing solutions using the emergency housing circumstances programme for people living in areas of stress
- implementing mega projects.

Corporate social investment

The company's experiential programme provides graduates with a six-month practical training programme and exposure to the subsidised housing market and construction industry.

Training modules include New Business Development Management, Project Management,

Subsidy Administration and Stakeholder Management.

Through its partnership with Women For Housing, Thubelisha has initiated the Contractor Development Programme, which provides contractors with technical and business training. Successful contractors are listed on a database and provided with regular work. A significant portion of the programme targets female contractors, assisting them with career and business development.

Projects

Thubelisha has been appointed as the project manager and implementing agent of the N2 Gateway Project in Cape Town.

It also project-managed the upgrading of backyards in Orlando East. This is a pilot project to convert 750 backyard shacks being rented out by the home owners into two- or three-roomed outbuildings. Provision is made for communal ablutions, and all this is done free of charge to the home owner.

Acknowledgements

A Review of the UUDP's Support to the South African Housing Sector, published by the German Technical Co-operation

BuaNews

Estimates of National Expenditure 2007, published by National Treasury

Servcon

Thubelisha Homes

Rural Housing Loan Fund

www.gov.za

www.propertyscene.co.za

Suggested reading

Boraine, A. ed. *State of the Cities Report 2004*, Johannesburg: South African Cities Network, 2004.

Harrison, P. et al. eds. *Confronting Management: Housing and Urban Development in a Democratising Society*.

Cape Town: University of Cape Town Press, 2003.

Huchzermeyer, M and Karam, A. eds. *Informal Settlements: A Perpetual Challenge?*

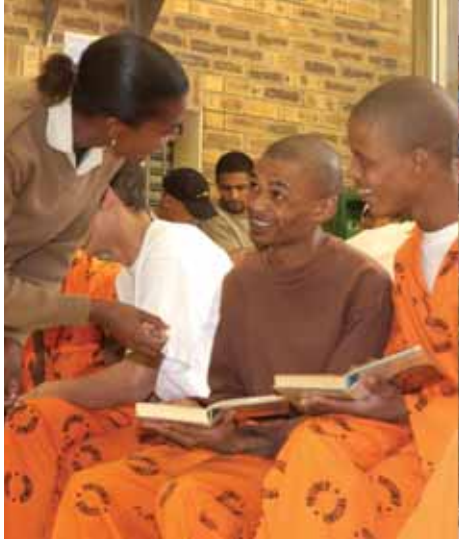
Cape Town: University of Cape Town Press, 2006.

James, W. ed. *Houses for Africa: An Inspirational Source Book for Building and Finishing Your Home*.

Johannesburg: Emden Publishing, n.d.

Khan, F and Thring, P. *Housing Policy and Practice in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. Johannesburg: Heinemann, 2003.





SA YEARBOOK 2007/08 | JUSTICE AND CORRECTIONAL SERVICES



The objective of the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development is to uphold and protect the Constitution, and the rule of law. It also aims to render accessible, fair, speedy and cost-effective administration of justice in the interest of a safer and more secure South Africa.

The department's four national core branches are Court Services, Master of the High Court, Legal Advisory Services, and Legislative and Constitutional Development.

The National Prosecuting Authority (NPA) forms a separate programme on the department's Budget Vote.

To ensure the efficiency of its services and to enhance accessibility, the NPA, Court Services and the Master of the High Court have established provincial and local structures linked to courts to co-ordinate the implementation of national policy. Legal Advisory Services has also established state-attorney offices in Pretoria, Johannesburg, Cape Town, Bloemfontein, Kimberley, Port Elizabeth, East London, Thohoyandou and Durban to provide decentralised services.

The following constitutional institutions, among other things, were established to strengthen constitutional democracy:

- the South African Human Rights Commission (SAHRC) promotes and monitors the observance of human rights in South Africa
- the Commission on Gender Equality (CGE) aims to create a society free from gender discrimination and any other forms of oppression
- the Public Protector investigates any alleged improper, unlawful or prejudicial conduct in state affairs or in public administration in any sphere of government.

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development administers the following public entities:

- the Special Investigating Unit (SIU) provides professional forensic investigating and litigating services to all state institutions at national, provincial and local level to combat maladministration, corruption and fraud, and to protect state assets and public money
- the Legal Aid Board (LAB) provides legal aid and representation to indigent people at the State's expense.

The department has received a further R1,9 billion to, among other things, increase court capacity, reduce case backlogs, modernise the integrated justice sector, and increase the statutory provisions for judges and magistrates' salaries over the next three years.

Between 2003/04 and 2009/10, the department's budget is expected to increase at an average annual rate of 13,6%, from R5 billion to R10,6 billion.

The department's total budget for the 2007/08 financial year was R8,5 billion. Some R2,9 billion was allocated to the Court Services branch, including R467 million to improve infrastructure. Some R1,8 billion was allocated to the NPA and R925 million went to the institutions.

Judicial system

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, is the supreme law of the country and binds all legislative, executive and judicial organs of the State at all levels of government.

In terms of Section 165 of the Constitution, the judicial authority in South Africa is vested in the courts, which are independent and subject only to the Constitution and the law.

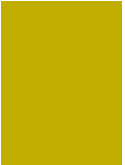
No person or organ of state may interfere with the functioning of the courts, and an order or decision of a court binds all organs of state and persons to whom it applies.

Chapter Eight of the Constitution provides for the following courts:

- Constitutional Court
- Supreme Court of Appeal (SCA)
- high courts, including any high court of appeal that may be established by an Act of Parliament to hear appeals from high courts
- magistrates' courts
- any other court established or recognised in terms of an Act of Parliament, including any court of a status similar to either high courts or magistrates' courts.

In line with this, Parliament has also established special income tax courts, the Labour Court and the Labour Appeal Court, the Land Claims Court, the Competition Appeal Court, the Electoral Court, divorce courts, "military courts" and equality courts.

The Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development, Ms Brigitte Mabandla, is leading a process to rationalise high courts. The Superior Courts Bill, which was introduced in Parliament in 2005, will abolish the last remnants of the homeland-based supreme courts, and will



introduce new provincial divisions of the High Court in each province. Their jurisdiction and capacity will be determined in accordance with people's needs. This will result in the opening of high courts in Mpumalanga and Limpopo, which the Pretoria High Court currently services.

There are 218 permanent judges and at any given time and also a fluctuating number of acting judges.

Constitutional Court

The Constitutional Court, situated in Johannesburg, is the highest court in all constitutional matters. It is the only court that may adjudicate disputes between organs of state in the national or provincial sphere concerning the constitutional status, powers or functions of any of those organs of state, or that may decide on the constitutionality of any amendment to the Constitution or any parliamentary or provincial Bill. The Constitutional Court makes the final decision on whether an Act of Parliament, a provincial Act or the conduct of the President is constitutional. It consists of the Chief Justice of South Africa, the Deputy Chief Justice and nine Constitutional Court judges. Justice Pius Langa is Chief Justice of South Africa and Justice Dikgang Moseneke is Deputy Chief Justice. There are 11 constitutional judges.

Supreme Court of Appeal

The SCA, situated in Bloemfontein in the Free State, is the highest court in respect of all other matters. It consists of the President and Deputy President of the SCA, and a number of judges of appeal determined by an Act of Parliament. The SCA has jurisdiction to hear and determine an appeal against any decision of a high court.

Decisions of the SCA are binding on all courts of a lower order, and the decisions of high courts are binding on magistrates' courts within the respective areas of jurisdiction of the divisions. The SCA comprises 23 judges, including its president.

High courts

There are 10 high court divisions: Cape of Good Hope (with its seat in Cape Town), Eastern Cape (Grahamstown), Northern Cape (Kimberley), Orange Free State (Bloemfontein), Natal (Pietermaritzburg), Transvaal (Pretoria), Transkei (Mthatha), Ciskei (Bhisho), Venda (Sibasa), and Bophuthatswana (Mmabatho). Each of these divisions, with the exception of Venda, has a judge president and, if the Judge President so determines, one or more deputy judge presidents, and as many judges as the Judge President may determine from time to time.

There are also three local divisions: the Witwatersrand Local Division (Johannesburg), Durban and Coast Local Division (Durban) and South-Eastern Cape Local Division (Port Elizabeth). Judges in these courts preside over these divisions.

A provincial or local division has jurisdiction in its own area over all persons residing or present in that area. These divisions hear matters that are of such a serious nature that the lower courts would not be competent to make an appropriate judgment or to impose a penalty. Except where minimum or maximum sentences are prescribed by law, their penal jurisdiction is unlimited and includes handing down a sentence of life imprisonment in certain specified cases.

Circuit local divisions

These itinerant courts, each presided over by a judge of the provincial division, periodically visit areas designated by the Judge President of the provincial division concerned.

Other high courts

The Land Claims Court and the Labour Court have the same status as the High Court. The Land Claims Court hears matters on the restitution of land rights that people lost after 1913 as a result of racially discriminatory land laws. The Labour Court adjudicates matters relating to labour disputes. Appeals are made to the Labour Appeal Court.

Decisions of the Constitutional Court, the SCA and the high courts are an important source of law. These courts are required to uphold and to enforce the Constitution, which has an extensive Bill of Rights binding all state organs and all persons. The courts are also required to declare any law or conduct that is inconsistent with the Constitution to be invalid, and to develop common law that is consistent with the values of the Constitution, and the spirit and purpose of the Bill of Rights.

Regional courts

The Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development may divide the country into magisterial districts and create regional divisions consisting of districts. Regional courts are then established per province at one or more places in each regional division to hear matters within their jurisdiction. Unlike the High Court, at present, legislation limits the penal jurisdiction of the regional courts to serious criminal matters. By mid-2007, legislation was being considered to give regional courts civil jurisdiction as well. There are nine court presidents and 307 regional court magistrates.

Magistrates' courts

Magisterial districts have been grouped into 13 clusters headed by chief magistrates. This system has streamlined, simplified and provided uniform court-management systems applicable throughout South Africa, in terms of judicial provincial boundaries.

It has also facilitated the separation of functions pertaining to the judiciary, prosecution and administration; enhanced and developed the skills and training of judicial officers; optimised the use of limited resources in an equitable manner; and addressed imbalances in the former homeland regions.

In terms of the Magistrates' Act, 1993 (Act 90 of 1993), all magistrates in South Africa fall outside the ambit of the Public Service. The aim is to strengthen the independence of the judiciary. Although regional courts have a higher penal jurisdiction than magistrates' courts (district courts), an accused cannot appeal to a regional court against the decision of a district court; only to the High Court.

By mid-2007, there were 366 magisterial districts and main magistrates' offices, 104 branch courts and 230 periodical courts in South Africa.

There were 1 912 magistrates in the country, including regional court magistrates.

In addition, full jurisdiction was conferred to courts in rural areas and former black townships that exercise limited jurisdiction and depend entirely on the main courts in urban areas to deliver essential justice services. Because this compels

the poor to travel to main cities for judicial services, 24 of the 90 branch courts countrywide were to be converted during 2007/08 to hear, among other things, maintenance, domestic violence, deceased estates and children's court cases. An estimated seven million people will benefit from these courts.

Criminal jurisdiction

Apart from specific provisions of the Magistrates' Courts Act, 1944 (Act 32 of 1944), or any other Act, jurisdiction regarding sentences imposed by district courts is limited to an imprisonment of not more than three years or a fine not exceeding R60 000. A regional court can impose a sentence of not more than 15 years' imprisonment or a fine not exceeding R300 000.

Any person charged with any offence committed within any district or regional division may be tried either by the court of that district or by the court of that regional division.

Where it is uncertain in which of several jurisdictions an offence has been committed, it may be tried in any of such jurisdictions.

Where, by any special provision of law, a magistrate's court has jurisdiction over an offence committed beyond the limits of the district or regional division, the court will not be deprived of such jurisdiction.

A magistrate's court has jurisdiction over all offences except treason, murder and rape. A regional court has jurisdiction over all offences except treason. However, the High Court may try all offences. Depending on the gravity of the offence and the circumstances pertaining to the offender, the Directorate of Public Prosecutions (DPP) decides in which court a matter will be heard and may even decide on a summary trial in the High Court.

Prosecutions are usually summarily disposed of in magistrates' courts, and judgment and sentence passed.

The following sentences may, where provided for by law, be passed upon a convicted person:

- imprisonment
- periodical imprisonment
- declaration as a habitual criminal (regional courts and high courts)
- committal to an institution established by law
- a fine with or without imprisonment as an



Chapter nine institutions are organisations established by Chapter Nine of the South African Constitution. These independent organisations have as their general mandate the strengthening of constitutional democracy in South Africa.

They are subject only to the Constitution and the law. They must be impartial and must exercise their powers and perform their functions without fear, favour or prejudice.

The chapter nine institutions are the Public Protector; South African Human Rights Commission; Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities; Commission on Gender Equality; Auditor-General; and the Independent Electoral Commission.

alternative, correctional supervision or a suspended sentence

- declaration as a dangerous criminal (regional courts and high courts)
- a warning or caution
- discharge.

The sentencing of “petty” offenders to do community service as a condition of suspension, correctional supervision or postponement in appropriate circumstances, has become part of an alternative sentence to imprisonment. Where a court convicts a person of any offence other than one for which any law prescribes a minimum punishment, the court may, at its discretion, postpone the passing of sentence for a period not exceeding five years, and release the convicted person on one or more conditions; or pass sentence, but suspend it on certain conditions.

If the conditions of suspension or postponement are violated, the offender may be arrested and made to serve the sentence. This is done provided that the court may grant an order further suspending the operation of the sentence if offenders prove that circumstances beyond their control, or that any other good and sufficient reason, prevented them from complying with the conditions of suspension.

Other criminal courts

In terms of statutory law, jurisdiction may be conferred upon a chief or headman or his deputy to punish an African person who has committed an offence under common law or indigenous law and custom, with the exception of certain serious offences specified in the relevant legislation. The procedure at such trials is in accordance with indigenous law and custom. The jurisdiction conferred upon a chief and a magistrate does not affect the jurisdiction of other courts competent to try criminal cases.

Community courts

Community courts, like the Hatfield Community Court in Pretoria, are normal district magistrates’ courts that assist in dealing with matters in partnership with the local community and businesses. These courts focus on restorative justice processes, such as diverting young offenders into suitable programmes.

The business community and other civil-society formations contribute significantly to the establishment and sustainability of these courts.

Thirteen community courts have been established. By mid-2007, four were fully

operational and had been formally launched in Hatfield, Fezeka (Gugulethu), Mitchell’s Plain and Cape Town.

Another nine pilot sites commenced in Durban (Point), KwaMashu, Mthatha, Bloemfontein, Thohoyandou, Kimberley, Phuthaditjaba, Hillbrow and Protea (Lenasia).

Courts for income tax offenders

In October 1999, the South African Revenue Service (Sars) opened a criminal courtroom at the Johannesburg Magistrate’s Office, dedicated to the prosecution of tax offenders.

The court deals only with cases concerning failure to submit tax returns or to provide information requested by Sars officials. It does not deal with bigger cases such as tax fraud.

Another Sars court operates twice a week at the Roodepoort Magistrate’s Office. In 2005, a new tax court facility was opened in Megawatt Park, Sunninghill, Gauteng.

Family courts

A family-court structure and extended family-advocate services are priority areas for the department. The establishment of family courts in South Africa is motivated by three broad aims, namely to:

- provide integrated and specialised services to the family as the fundamental unit in society
- facilitate access to justice for all in family disputes
- improve the quality and effectiveness of service delivery to citizens who have family-law disputes.

To ensure the proper and efficient functioning of maintenance courts, government has introduced initiatives that include appointing and training 171 maintenance investigators, creating 569 maintenance clerk and 83 legal intern positions, appointing 87 legally qualified maintenance officers to improve service delivery, and facilitating the development of Magistrates’ Guidelines for the Implementation of Maintenance and Operation Isondlo.

Operation Isondlo, which the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development initiated in 2006/07, has led to many children’s maintenance defaulters being traced, appearing in court and paying maintenance.

Many new applications have been received countrywide and the number of children receiving maintenance has increased.

Between January and February 2007 alone, 865 beneficiaries and defaulters were traced.

Equality courts

The role of equality courts is to enforce the provisions of the Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination Act, 2000 (Act 4 of 2000). The Act outlaws unfair discrimination and allows for the creation of equality courts within magistrates' and high courts, each to be presided over by trained magistrates or judges appointed as presiding officers.

The Act also authorises the Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development to appoint the Equality Review Committee to monitor the implementation of the Act's provisions.

By the end of 2006/07, 220 magisterial courts had designated equality courts and the remaining 146 magisterial districts were expected to be designated in the first quarter of 2007/08. Section 16(1)(a) of the Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Discrimination Act, 2000 provides that every high court acts as an equality court for its area of jurisdiction. To support the effective functioning of equality courts, 139 permanent equality clerk posts were created and over 1 290 magistrates and 300 clerks of court were trained in equality matters.

Civil jurisdiction

Except when otherwise provided by law, the area of civil jurisdiction of a magistrate's court is the district, subdistrict or area for which the court has been established. South African law, as applied in the Western Cape, is in force on Prince Edward and Marion islands which, for the purpose of the administration of justice, are deemed to be part of the Cape Town magisterial district.

On 1 May 1995, the civil jurisdictional limits of magistrates' courts were increased for both liquid and illiquid claims, from R50 000 and R20 000 respectively, to R100 000.

In addition to the considerable increase, the previous distinction between jurisdictional limits regarding the different causes of action was abolished.

Unless all the parties in a case consent to higher jurisdiction, the jurisdiction of a magistrate's court is limited to cases in which the claim value does not exceed R100 000 where the action arises out of a liquid document or credit agreement, or R50 000 in all other cases.

Small claims courts

The limit of cases involving civil claims is R7 000. By July 2006, there were 156 small claims courts throughout the country. The Commissioner of Small Claims is usually a practising advocate or attorney, a legal academic or other competent person, who offers his/her services free of charge.

An average of 120 commissioners are appointed for small claims courts annually.

Neither the plaintiff nor the defendant may be represented or assisted by counsel at the hearing. The commissioner's decision is final and there is no appeal to a higher court.

A national programme aims to strengthen and roll out small claims courts to rural and peri-urban areas by pursuing the strategic objectives of:

- providing access for all, especially the poor and the vulnerable
- establishing systems and rules of court that are accessible and easy to understand
- providing trained administrative support staff
- attracting and retaining commissioners.

Funding from the Swiss Development Agency has enabled the Small Claims Court Project Office to be set up to manage the National Plan of Action aimed at re-engineering small claims courts and specifically addressing issues of training for commissioners and clerks.

Other civil courts

An authorised African headman or his deputy may hear and determine civil claims arising from indigenous law and custom, brought before him by an African against another African within his area of jurisdiction.

Courts constituted in this way are commonly known as chiefs' courts. Litigants have the right to choose whether to institute an action in the chief's court or in a magistrate's court. Proceedings in a chief's court are informal. An appeal against a judgment of a chief's court is heard in a magistrate's court.

Towards transforming partnerships

A key aspect of the transformation of the justice system concerns the department's key strategic partners and stakeholders. The considerable effort put into transforming prosecution and allied

services into a prestigious professional force, in accordance with the Constitution, is paying off.

By mid-2007, of the 218 judges, 53% (115) were white, 31% (68) were African, 3% (16) were coloured and 9% (19) were Indian. Overall, 16% were female and 84% male. In terms of the lower-court judiciary, of the 1 912 magistrates, 47% were white, 38% African, 7% coloured and 8% Indian. Overall, 31% were female and 69% male.

The transformation of the judiciary is closely linked with the transformation of the legal profession and of legal scholarship. The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development has worked in partnership with law schools in transforming the curriculum of the basic law degree to bring it in line with modern best practices. In addition to encouraging law schools to widen access to students from previously disadvantaged communities, these institutions will further be encouraged to forge linkages with leading law firms, with prominent practitioners and with relevant international organisations. This will:

- ensure the relevance of the training they offer to the practical demands of the profession
- expose students, especially those from previously disadvantaged communities, to the profession and vice versa to facilitate professional training prospects
- engage the legal profession in the evolution of a new legal system that fully expresses the constitutional and cultural aspirations of the new dispensation.

The department assists law graduates through its internship programme, which also provides research training to give much-needed assistance to state legal officers, prosecutors, public defenders, the judiciary and the magistracy.

To boost youth development, by mid-2007 the department had employed 134 young interns and placed 69 of them in Court Services, 35 candidate attorneys with the State Attorney on two-year contracts, while 15 were employed as legal secretaries and two as state law advisers. The department planned to employ 100 law graduates at the law clinics of various universities in 2007/08, to grow the pool of potential recruits and offer them a chance to gain invaluable experience.

Transformation of the legal profession includes making judicial services accessible to the poor, the uneducated and the vulnerable. This entails establishing a physical presence in rural areas and in townships, as well as offering affordable fees and providing speedy and empathetic services. It also entails facilitating access of all aspects and levels of

the profession to aspirant lawyers, especially to those from previously marginalised backgrounds.

The provision of alternative dispute-resolution mechanisms is another key aspect of transforming justice services, thus making justice more accessible and more affordable.

The department gives prominence to integrating and modernising justice services through technology. It seeks to evolve simplified, cheaper and faster processes geared for the poor and vulnerable in townships and rural areas. It seeks to achieve this in partnership with its customers, with other government departments and with stakeholders.

By mid-2007, the Judicial Service Commission (JSC) Amendment Bill and the Judicial Education Institute Bill were served before Parliament.

The proposed South African Judicial Education Institute Bill will, for the first time in history, introduce a state-sponsored judicial education programme for judges. The proposed Judicial Education Institute will provide training for both judges and magistrates.

The JSC Amendment Bill will enhance the accountability of judicial officers.

Other bills identified for priority introduction in 2007/08 included the Child Justice Bill, 13th Constitutional Amendment Bill, the Reform of Customary Law of Succession Bill and the National Prosecution Amendment Bill.

The department was also finalising a consolidated policy framework document to address other outstanding aspects relating to the transformation of the judicial system. These include rationalising high courts, harmonising the appointment procedures for judges and magistrates, and addressing aspects relating to language usage in courts.

By mid-2007, the special project of selecting aspirant female judges had been completed. Twenty-three women were selected from the legal profession to undergo a specially designed judicial education programme, which commenced in June 2007.

Transforming the judicial system also includes transforming traditional courts. Traditional leaders are conferred criminal and civil jurisdiction to exercise judicial authority in respect of certain offences and claims. The conferment is by virtue of sections 10 and 20 of the Black Administration Act, 1927 (Act 38 of 1927).

Since the Act is not consistent with the current constitutional dispensation, it was repealed in November 2005.

Only sections 12 and 20, which deal with the establishment and functioning of traditional courts, were kept in operation until 30 September 2007. The extension allowed the department to formulate policy on the role of traditional leaders under a democratic dispensation, which would be followed by appropriate legislation to replace the repealed sections.

An interdepartmental task team, comprising officials of the departments of justice, of provincial and local government and of land affairs, was appointed to draft the required policy in conjunction with the national and provincial houses of traditional leadership.

The legislation was expected to be finalised in 2007/08.

Capacitating courts and restructuring the court system

Through its courts-turnaround strategy, such as the Re Aga Boswa (We Are Rebuilding) Project, the department seeks to enhance court efficiency. The project capacitates courts and institutionalises a new customer-focused court-management model ensuring that court managers are entrusted with managing courts, and that judges and magistrates invest more time in their judicial work. This will result in increased court hours and better-quality judgments.

Re Aga Boswa seeks to affirm the principle of the separation of powers as enshrined in the Constitution, to relieve magistrates and judges, who

are also heads of courts, of administrative functions. This will enable them to concentrate on their judicial work, which is expected to lead to increased court productivity and improved quality of judgments.

By February 2007, 288 court managers had been appointed.

The roll-out of Re Aga Boswa integrated the implementation plan of the Justice, Crime Prevention and Security (JCPS) Service Charter for Victims of Crime, to ensure sufficient capacity to implement the charter. A dedicated telephone line was launched in 2005/06 to provide crime victims with direct access to the courts.

The Court Process Project (CPP) was initiated in 2000 to pilot business process re-engineering and electronic filing of documents and dockets. Lessons learned through the project about court scheduling, case management and general court-administration processes were incorporated into the Re Aga Boswa Project.

The National Anti-Rape Strategy was expected to be finalised in 2007 to deal with the management of gender-based violence.

The strategy will provide impetus to the work being done to reduce gender-based violence, improve reaction in cases of gender-based violence, and improve support for victims and witnesses in cases of gender-based violence.

Rationalising high courts and redemarcating magisterial districts form part of the restructuring programme.

By mid-2007, a process to redemarcate magisterial boundaries to align them with municipal boundaries was under way.

The department is responsible for developing and monitoring processes and systems, which include case-flow management (CFM) that facilitate efficient and effective court and case management.

It has developed and facilitated the implementation of a court-management policy framework and uniform performance standards to enhance institutional performance. It is also responsible for providing effective and responsive management and administrative support for the judicial decision-making process within the court environment.



From 30 July to 3 August 2007, ordinary South Africans were given free access to legal services by hundreds of female lawyers countrywide, as part of the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development's and the South African Women Lawyers' Association's "Access to Justice Week" initiative.

The initiative aimed to provide free legal advice and services to the people, especially those who could not afford to pay for such services at private law firms.

Services included drafting wills, securing maintenance, administering estates, child custody and rights in marriage, foster parenting and guardianship, domestic violence and providing information regarding the National Credit Act, 2005 (Act 35 of 2005).

As a service-delivery improvement programme, the CFM project seeks to introduce institutional arrangements for integrated CFM in the court system. Given the broad and large sector of the justice system, this will be done incrementally over several years. The project supports the institutional arrangements by:

- Establishing judicial leadership through CFM. In this regard, integrated CFM guidelines were developed and implemented.
- Re-engineering CFM support structures in the courts to respond adequately to the CFM system.

The following projects are linked to the integrated CFM project:

- E-Scheduler

By March 2007, E-Scheduler – a case-management system providing case-management information to enhance case planning and scheduling – had been implemented in more than 200 courts and was being rolled out to all district courts in the country. The target date for completion of the roll-out was July 2007.

The system seeks to modernise the court system through greater use of information technology (IT). It allows the user to generate information on the courts that indicates at which stage the case is, including the case number, first appearance, last postponement date and the number of days per case.

Through the system, the courts can now identify and address backlogs and blockages. The Justice Deposit Account System helps to improve the management of all cash payments into and from the courts. This includes managing maintenance and bail monies.

- Video-remand system

By mid-2007, the pilot was still in place in KwaZulu-Natal and over 15 months, 4 899 remands were concluded without the detainee leaving the correctional facility. The system adds tremendous value to the process of conducting remands and ensuring that cases using the system are turned around faster. The video-remand system will be implemented in the top 40 courts, and will be aligned to the 169 contact crime priority police stations and linked to the correctional centres housing the remand inmates.

- Remand Detention Project

This system is meant to reduce risks imposed by awaiting-trial detainees (ATDs) on public safety while improving compliance with constitutional imperatives in terms of access to basic services like education, health and other social services for those regarded as innocent until proven guilty.

- Digital Court Recording System (DCRS)

The DCRS replaced the analogue system in all 164 high-court rooms. By mid-2007, 1 058 machines had been installed.

- Document Management System

By mid-2007, the analysis of the process flow of documents to support an automated process of filing, archiving and retrieving files in the court environment had been finalised in five courts. The recommendations were expected to conclude the development of the system.

- Scanning solution

A scanning solution is linked to the E-scheduler system and provides for scanning all incoming cases, case dockets and charge sheets. Some 300 scanners have been procured and installed in various courts throughout all provinces.

- Transcription services

New transcription service-providers have been appointed per province to enhance transcription services.

Each province's regional office will facilitate actual implementation of these new systems. This will see cases being managed better and the clients of the court getting quicker results.

- The National Backlog Project was implemented to reduce the high volume of backlog cases on court rolls, and to improve the efficient and effective functioning of the courts. Additional courts were established to assist in decreasing the backlog of cases. Various new regional-court posts were created and filled, which helped decrease case backlogs.

National Prosecuting Authority of South Africa

Section 179(1) of the Constitution established a single NPA, which consists of the National Director of Public Prosecutions (NDPP), who is the head of the NPA, the DPP and prosecutors as determined by an Act of Parliament.

The NPA structure includes the National Prosecutions Service (NPS), the Directorate: Special Operations (DSO), the Witness-Protection Programme, the Asset Forfeiture Unit (AFU) and specialised units such as the Sexual Offences and Community Affairs (Soca) Unit, the Specialised Commercial Crime Unit (SCCU), the Priority Crimes Litigation Unit (PCLU) and the Integrity Management Unit.

In terms of the NPA Act, 1998 (Act 32 of 1998), the DSO is a distinct and autonomous directorate.

In May 2005, President Thabo Mbeki appointed the Khampepe Commission of Inquiry into the Mandate and Location of the DSO.

By September 2006, the commission had completed its report after receiving written and oral submissions from various parties. Most of its hearings were held in public.

The commission recommended that the DSO be retained within the NPA, but that political oversight and responsibility for the law-enforcement component of the DSO be conferred on the Minister of Safety and Security. Prosecutors working for the DSO would continue to receive instructions from the NDPP, which would remain accountable to the Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development.

Office of the National Director of Public Prosecutions

The Office of the NDPP is the head office of the NPA. The prosecuting authority vests in the NDPP and the DPP. This authority has been delegated to other members of the NPA. They have the power to:

- institute and conduct criminal proceedings on behalf of the State
- carry out any necessary functions incidental to instituting and conducting such criminal proceedings
- discontinue criminal proceedings.

Directorate: Special Operations

The DSO pursues its objectives and complies with its legislative mandate through the application of numerous legislative tools. In addition to the NPA Act, 1998, other statutes include the Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998 (Act 121 of 1998), International Co-operation in Criminal Matters Amendment Act, 1996 (Act 75 of 1996), and the Extradition Amendment Act, 1996 (Act 77 of 1996).



By January 2007, 37 225 cases had been diverted away from the criminal justice system into suitable programmes, compared with the total of 29 935 diversions during 2005/06. By diverting cases, the incarceration of people on trivial matters, such as being unable to pay a fine, is also prevented. The diversion process is deemed an effective method to deal with first-time offenders in less serious matters. As it is closely linked with the concept of restorative justice, it aims for people to rejoin the law-abiding community and prevent re-offending.

The objective of the DSO is to prioritise, investigate and prosecute serious and organised crime that threaten the South African democracy and economy.

This includes complex financial crime, syndicated organised crime and high-level corruption affecting business integrity and state administration. The core business of the DSO has been layered by a selection of investigations, where racketeering, money laundering and the forfeiture of the proceeds of crime form the main activities.

The primary client of the DSO is government, which has a fundamental interest in combating and suppressing insidious (and apparently victimless) organised crime.

Equally, complainants from the private sector and regulatory bodies for example Sars, the Financial Services Board and the South African Reserve Bank base their expectations on how the DSO deals with financial crimes.

Rare individual complainants form part of the DSO's client base, when they are affected by large-scale money rackets or organised violence.

The DSO renders services that include the determination, investigation and prosecution of crime to restore justice, to enhance public confidence in governance and to reduce crime through deterrence.

Products are realised through accurate assessments of crime threats, impact-driven and opportune investigations, successful prosecutions, confiscation of contraband, and forfeiture of ill-gotten gains and compensations, where warranted.

Asset Forfeiture Unit

The AFU was created in 1999 in terms of the Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998. The AFU can seize and forfeit property that was bought with the proceeds of crime, or property that has been used to commit a crime.

The AFU has two major strategic objectives, namely to:

- develop the law by taking test cases to court and creating the legal precedents necessary to allow for the effective use of the law
- build capacity to ensure that asset forfeiture is used as widely as possible to have a real effect in the fight against crime.

The use of asset forfeiture to fight crime has been one of government's most important innovations.

In 2007, the AFU deposited some R120 million in the special account for fighting crime, with R77 million paid out in 2006 towards centres for battered women and to boost the capacity of the South African Police Service (SAPS), the NPA and Sars to deal with crime.

Special Investigating Unit

The SIU is an independent statutory body that is accountable to Parliament and the President. It was established to conduct investigations at the President's request, and to report to him on the outcomes thereof. It receives its budget through the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development.

The SIU was created in terms of the SIU and Special Tribunals Act, 1996 (Act 74 of 1996). The SIU was initially headed by former Judge Willem Heath, who resigned in June 2001 after the Constitutional Court ruled that a judge could not head the SIU.

The SIU then formally ceased to exist. A new SIU was established in July 2001 through a presidential proclamation.

The SIU functions in a manner similar to a commission of inquiry, in that the President refers cases to it by way of a proclamation. It may investigate any matter set out in Section 2 of the SIU and Special Tribunals Act, 1996, regarding:

- serious maladministration concerning the affairs of any state institution
- improper or unlawful conduct by employees of any state institution
- unlawful appropriation or expenditure of public money or property
- any unlawful, irregular or unapproved acquisitive act, transaction, measure or practice that has a bearing on state property
- intentional or negligent loss of public money or damage to public property
- corruption in connection with the affairs of any state institution
- unlawful or improper conduct by any person who has caused to or may cause, serious harm to the interest of the public or any category thereof.

The SIU can also take civil action to correct any wrongdoing it uncovers during an investigation.

The SIU can, for example, obtain a court order to:

- compel a person to pay back any wrongful benefit received
- cancel contracts when the proper procedures were not followed

- stop transactions or other actions that were not properly authorised.

The SIU conducts civil litigation through the Special Tribunal, a specialised court that deals specifically with its cases. This avoids some of the delays usually associated with civil litigation in the ordinary civil courts.

The focus of the SIU is the public sector, but it also deals with private-sector accomplices. It investigates private-sector matters that cause substantial harm to the interest of the public.

As the focus of the SIU is on civil litigation, it does not have the power to arrest or prosecute suspects. When it uncovers evidence of criminal activity, it hands a court-ready docket to the SAPS and/or the DSO (Scorpions).

The SIU also works closely with the NPS, the core prosecuting division of the NPA, and other attached divisions, such as the SCCU in the case of fraud and other related matters, and the AFU in cases where the powers of this unit are more suitable for recovering the proceeds of crime.

Generally, the SIU works closely with other relevant enforcement agencies, ensuring greater effectiveness in dealing with corruption cases.

Sexual Offences and Community Affairs Unit

The Soca Unit was established in September 1999 through a presidential proclamation and with a specific mandate that includes:

- formulating policy regarding capacity-building,



Efforts to transform the legal sector have led to the completion of the draft Legal Services Charter, with a second draft expected to have been finalised by the third quarter of 2007.

This is expected to lay the foundation for the introduction of the Legal Practice Bill.

The draft Legal Services Charter seeks to address:

- access to justice by poor, uneducated communities
- quality and affordable delivery of legal services to citizens
- accessibility of legal services to communities
- entry requirements to the legal profession
- equal opportunities of legal services among legal practitioners
- access to legal work, including state and parastatal contracts by black practitioners
- the role of the legal profession in promoting equality in the judiciary
- transforming the legal profession's governance structures
- a unified regulatory framework for the legal profession
- empowering historically disadvantaged black legal practitioners
- skills development, employment equity, ownership and management within the legal profession.

sensitising and scientific functional training in respect of the prosecution of sexual offences and gender-based violence

- co-ordinating the establishment of special courts for the adjudication of sexual offences and gender-based violence
- facilitating and/or formulating research techniques for the prosecution of sexual offences, gender-based violence, maintenance and child justice
- developing and implementing community-awareness programmes and plans for the participation of non-governmental organisations (NGOs) in processes and procedures aimed at preventing or containing sexual offences
- developing training, plans and mechanisms regarding the prosecution of sexual offences, gender-based violence, maintenance and child justice.

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development, together with the SAPS and the departments of social development and of health, has established several Thuthuzela care centres for victims of sexual offences.

The Thuthuzela care centres are 24-hour one-stop service centres where victims have access to services that include police, counselling, doctors, court preparation and prosecutors.

The main objectives of these centres are to eliminate secondary victimisation, to reduce case-cycle time and to increase convictions. Specially trained police investigators, medical personnel, community volunteers, social workers and prosecutors work together.

They ensure that the victim is not further traumatised in the process of reporting the incident, and that the information needed to secure a prosecution and conviction is passed seamlessly from one person to another.

These multipurpose centres render the services of these departments to communities where these services either do not exist, or do exist but are not easily accessible (especially in rural areas). By June 2007, there were 10 such centres.

Through Project Ndebazitha, Soca successfully trained 104 traditional leaders from five provinces on managing domestic violence in rural areas.

Priority Crimes Litigation Unit

The PCLU manages and directs investigations and prosecutions of priority crimes, including contraventions of nuclear, chemical, biological and conventional-arms control legislation; and tracing missing persons arising from the Truth and Reconciliation Commission (TRC).

Regarding missing persons, by mid-2007, 36 exhumations and 20 reburials had been conducted.

The unit has also been engaged with various cases dealing with mercenary activities and nuclear proliferation.

Sexual offences courts

The fight against sexual offences is a national priority. The department is providing facilities at courts where child witnesses, especially in child-abuse cases, can testify in a friendly and secure environment without the risk of being intimidated.

New child-witness rooms are fitted with one-way glass partitions adjacent to the courtrooms. Where it is impossible to provide such rooms in existing buildings, other rooms away from the courts are used by providing a closed-circuit television (CCTV) link.

Intermediaries act as buffers against hostile and potentially protracted cross-examinations of child witnesses in an open court, especially in cases of sexual victimisation. Most intermediaries are social workers by profession, and fulfil their intermediary functions part-time or as volunteers.

The Draft Criminal Law (Sexual Offences) Amendment Bill aims to provide intermediaries to all vulnerable witnesses in sexual-offence cases, where appropriate.

The Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Bill reached an advanced stage of promotion in the parliamentary process during 2006. The Bill aims, among other things, to comprehensively and extensively review and amend all aspects of the law relating to sexual offences, and to deal with all legal aspects of or relating to sexual offences in a single statute. The provisions of the Compulsory HIV-Testing of Alleged Sexual Offenders Bill, 2003 were also incorporated into the Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment Bill. These provisions aim to provide a speedy and uncomplicated mechanism

whereby a victim of a sexual offence can apply to have the alleged sex offender tested for HIV and have the test results disclosed to him or her.

National Prosecutions Service

The NPS performs the core function of the NPA, namely, instituting criminal proceedings on behalf of the State, and carrying out any necessary functions incidental to instituting and conducting criminal proceedings.

The mission of the NPS is to raise the levels of productivity in the NPA and to make it efficient and credible.

It has to ensure the proper planning of court rolls, prioritisation, and proper preparation and arrangement for all cases to be heard, as well as the avoidance of unreasonable delays.

Specialised Commercial Crime Unit

The Pretoria-based SCCU was established in 1999 as a pilot project to bring specialisation to the investigation and prosecution of commercial crimes emanating from the commercial branches of the SAPS in Pretoria and Johannesburg.

Three new courts and offices were established in the Johannesburg and Pretoria central business districts for specialised commercial-crime cases. Similar courts were established during 2004/05 in Durban and Port Elizabeth. The SCCU continues to achieve an above-average conviction rate.

In 2006, the number of offenders sentenced for economic crimes reached the lowest number in six years, with a 34% decline to 21% of the total offender population.

Witness-Protection Programme

The Office for Witness Protection falls under the auspices of the NPA. The office is responsible for the protection of witnesses in terms of the Witness Protection Act, 1998 (Act 112 of 1998), and its regulations.

The office aims to:

- combat and reduce crime
- create a culture of civil morality
- enhance public confidence in the office and in the criminal justice system (CJS)
- enhance prosecutions through the evidence of vulnerable and intimidated witnesses.

It also provides for placing a person related to the witness under protection at the request of the witness, prospective witness or a person who has given evidence or is required to give evidence in criminal proceedings or before a commission of inquiry.

The programme does not offer incentives such as those offered by the SAPS to witnesses of serious crimes.

Instead, it offers sustenance in the form of a food allowance; replacement of salary if employment has been lost; free accommodation, including all municipal services; a clothing allowance; transport; a housing allowance for school-going children; medical expenses; etc.

By mid-July 2007, the Witness Protection Unit (WPU) had completed the review of the draft United Nations (UN) guidelines on the matter of witness protection. Officials of the International Criminal Court (ICC) received training in witness-protection best practices. South Africa assisted Kenya in establishing a WPU structure following their introduction of witness-protection law. Cabinet is considering requests for similar assistance from other African countries.

Legal practitioners

The legal profession is divided into two branches – advocates and attorneys – who are subject to strict ethical codes.

Advocates are organised into Bar associations or societies, one each at the seat of the various divisions of the High Court. The General Council of the Bar of South Africa is the co-ordinating body of the various Bar associations. There is a law society for attorneys in each of the provinces. A practising attorney is *ipso jure* a member of at least one of these societies, which seek to promote the interests of the profession.

The Law Society of South Africa is the co-ordinating body of the various independent law societies.

In terms of the Right of Appearance in Courts Act, 1995 (Act 62 of 1995), advocates can appear in any court, while attorneys may be heard in all of the country's lower courts and can also acquire the right of appearance in the superior courts. Attorneys who wish to represent their clients in the High Court are required to apply to the registrar of a provincial division of the High Court. Such an attorney may also appear in the Constitutional Court. All attorneys who hold an LLB or equivalent degree, or who have at least three years' experience, may acquire the right of audience in the High Court.

The Attorneys Amendment Act, 1993 (Act 115 of 1993), provides for alternative routes for admission as an attorney. One of these is that persons who intend to be admitted as attorneys and who have satisfied certain degree requirements prescribed in

the Act, are exempted from service under articles or clerkship. However, such persons must satisfy the society concerned that they have at least five years' appropriate legal experience.

State law advisers give legal advice to ministers, government departments, provincial administrations and a number of statutory bodies. In addition, they draft Bills and assist the minister concerned with the passage of Bills through Parliament. They also assist in criminal and constitutional matters.

Other legal practitioners

In terms of the NPA Act, 1998, state advocates and prosecutors are separated from the Public Service in certain respects, notably by the determination of salaries.

State attorneys derive their power from the State Attorney Act, 1957 (Act 56 of 1957), and protect the interests of the State in the most cost-effective manner possible. They do this by acting on behalf of the State in legal matters covering a wide spectrum of the law.

State attorneys draft contracts for the State and also act on behalf of elected and appointed officials in the performance of their duties, e.g. civil and criminal actions instituted against ministers and government officials in their official capacities.

Human rights

Human rights, in terms of Chapter Two (Bill of Rights) of the Constitution, bind all legislative and executive bodies of state at all levels of government.

They apply to all laws, administrative decisions taken and acts performed during the period in which the Constitution is in force. In terms of the Constitution, every person has basic human rights such as:

- freedom from unfair discrimination
- the right to life.

Since 1994, and in keeping with the cultivation of a human-rights culture, the focus is gradually shifting from an adversarial and retributive CJS to that of a restorative justice system.

The Service Charter for Victims of Crime, approved by Cabinet, seeks to consolidate the present legal framework in South Africa relating to the rights of and services provided to victims of

crime, and to eliminate secondary victimisation in the criminal justice process.

The ultimate goal is victim empowerment by meeting victims' material or emotional needs.

Crime prevention

The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development is one of the five core departments in the JCPS Cluster that has been tasked with implementing the National Crime Prevention Strategy (NCPS). This is government's official strategy to combat, control and prevent crime. (See Chapter 16: *Safety, security and defence*.)

The main responsibilities of the department in implementing the NCPS are to:

- promote legislation to create an effective CJS
- create an effective prosecution system
- create an effective court system for the adjudication of cases
- co-ordinate and integrate the departmental activities of all role-players involved in crime prevention.

Integrated justice system (IJS)

Following government's approval of the NCPS in 1996, the IJS Board was formed in 1997 to integrate the activities of departments in the JCPS Cluster in a co-ordinated manner.

The IJS, approved in 2002, aims to increase the efficiency and effectiveness of the entire criminal justice process by increasing the probability of successful investigation, prosecution, punishment for priority crimes and ultimately rehabilitation of offenders. A second version of the IJS was published in May 2003.

Issues receiving specific attention include overcrowding in prisons and awaiting-trial prisoner problems, as well as bail, sentencing and plea-bargaining.

Government wants to eliminate duplication of services and programmes at all levels. The need for strategic alignment of cluster activities has also been raised at a series of other governmental meetings and forums.

Benefits of proper alignment include:

- less duplication of services
- effective use of scarce and limited resources and skills

- joint strategic planning and a planned approach instead of simply reacting to problems.

The JCPS has structured itself to focus on two main areas of responsibility, namely operational and developmental issues relating to the justice system, and improving the safety and security of citizens.

Modernising the justice system

This includes establishing proper governance structures, effective monitoring mechanisms based on proper review findings, and the integration and automation of the justice system.

Key projects already receiving attention include the following:

Criminal Justice Review Commission

By September 2005, the Cabinet had endorsed proposals by the JCPS Cluster to review the CJS.

Integrating the criminal justice system

While each department within the JCPS Cluster must have its own IT plan to achieve its specific vision, mission and objectives, the IJS Board co-ordinates the broader and shared duty to integrate information flow throughout the CJS.

Child justice

The department continues to prioritise access to justice for vulnerable groups, including:

- Implementing relevant legislation and enabling policy, for example, accelerating the finalisation of the Child Justice Bill. The Sexual Offences Bill, which among other things, broadens the definition of sexual assault, was passed by Parliament in May 2007.
- Ensuring assistance from prosecutors and public defenders for child maintenance.
- Enforcing the right of children to receive support from earning parents.
- Prioritising child justice and all cases involving children, especially those children in prison awaiting trial.

Victim-Empowerment Programme

This programme aims to improve services rendered to crime victims.

The NPA has court-preparation officials on contract who provide support to crime victims, especially abused children, in preparing them for court proceedings.

The Service Charter for Victims of Crime is expected to go a long way towards assisting crime victims.

Integrated justice case-flow management centres

CFM centres provide an integrated solution to managing cases through the court system, facilitated by IT that allows the monitoring of aspects such as case-cycle time and court rolls.

Contributing to interdepartmental and cluster co-ordination and co-operation

The Development Committee is mandated to align and co-ordinate cluster activities across the various departments, with the ultimate aim of improving service delivery, policy co-ordination and planning.

It consists of senior representatives from each of the partner departments participating in the IJS, and is chaired by the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development. National Treasury, the judiciary and the Department of Home Affairs are also represented on the committee.

Children awaiting trial

National and provincial action plans to fast-track all children awaiting trial in prisons and police cells, have led to a reduction in children awaiting trial, from over 1 775 in January 2005 to 1 243 in January 2006 and 1 089 in January 2007.

Specific interventions to address the backlog of cases pending trial include moving away from placing children who are in trouble with the law in correctional detention centres. Children awaiting trial will be placed under home-based supervision, in places of safety or in the care of parents or caregivers. Three child-justice centres have been established in Port Elizabeth, Bloemfontein and Port Nolloth.

The National Inter-Sectoral Committee on Child Justice monitors and evaluates all child-justice issues and reports to the JCPS Cluster. This forum has also been established at regional level.

E-Justice Programme

The E-Justice Programme supports the fundamental reforms necessary to establish a more fair, accessible and efficient justice system in South Africa.

The programme aims to reform and modernise the administration and delivery of justice through re-engineering work processes by using technologies, strengthening strategic planning and management capacity, organisational development and human resource interventions.

The E-Justice Programme has evolved into the Information and Systems Management Programme, which has 25 projects in addition to the three main ones, i.e. CPP, Digital Nervous System (DNS) Project

and Financial Administration System Project. The E-Justice Programme is funded mainly by the Justice Vote and supplemented with donor funding from the European Union Commission, the Royal Netherlands Embassy and the Irish Embassy.

With the completion of the DNS III Project in March 2007, 554 sites were deployed and 14 000 users trained. This is expected to substantially enhance service delivery at suboffice level.

Legislative and constitutional development

The Legislative and Constitutional Development Branch of the department administers the Constitution and over 160 principal Acts. The branch is also responsible for researching, developing and promoting supporting legislation, reflecting the basic constitutional ideals which facilitate a justice system that is simple, fair, inexpensive and responsive to the needs of the diverse communities in South Africa.

The branch consists of four main components, namely, the research activities of the South African Law Reform Commission (SALRC), the Secretariat for the Rules Board for Courts of Law, a legislative-development component and one for constitutional development.

The branch's Legislative-Development Component researches, develops and promotes appropriate legislation affecting the department's line functions.

It is also responsible for promoting, implementing, maintaining and developing the Constitution and its values.

The component is also responsible for assisting and protecting certain chapter nine institutions such as the Public Protector, the SAHRC and the CGE to ensure their independence, impartiality, dignity and effectiveness.

In 2006, the department, among other things, promoted the Repeal of the Black Administration Act and Amendment of Certain Laws Amendment Act, 2006 (Act 8 of 2006), which extended the statutory deadline contained in the Repeal of the Black Administration Act and Amendment of Certain Laws Act, 2005 (Act 28 of 2005).

The Repeal of the Black Administration Act and Amendment of Certain Laws Act, 2005 brings

about an incremental repeal of the Black Administration Act, 1927 and further amends the Administration of Estates Act, 1965 (Act 66 of 1965), so as to give the Masters of the High Court jurisdiction over the property of all minors, including those who are governed by the principles of customary law.

The Civil Unions Act, 2006 (Act 17 of 2006), which is transformative and promotes access to justice, was implemented in November 2006 and provides for same-sex marriages.

The Regulation of Interception of Communications and Provision of Communications-Related Information Amendment Bill, 2006 was introduced into Parliament during 2006.

The Bill aims to provide for the electronic capturing of the personal particulars of cellphone and SIM-card holders, replacing the current paper-based system. The Bill will contribute to the fight against crime and enhance organisational efficiency.

State Legal Services

State Legal Services provides government with legal services and facilitates constitutional amendments through three subprogrammes.

State Legal Services provides for the work of the State Attorney and state law advisers. The former acts as attorney, notary and conveyancer for government.

State law advisers provide legal opinions for all organs of state, scrutinise and amend international agreements, draft legislation and subordinate legislation and attend relevant parliamentary portfolio committees as legal advisers for all national departments.

In the past 10 years, state law advisers certified 610 Bills, passed by Parliament. These Bills have dealt with complex social, political and economic issues. During the same period, they provided the executive with 6 679 opinions, international agreements and subordinate legislation.

Research conducted in the Office of the Chief State Law Adviser suggests that the division saved the State about R92 million in private legal fees in 2006.

The component hosts the National Forum Against Racism and facilitates South Africa's participation in the International Court for Criminal Justice.

International legal relations

The main functions of the Chief Directorate: International Legal Relations in the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development are to identify and research legal questions that relate to matters pertaining to the administration of justice between South Africa and other states/bodies/institutions.

The chief directorate is involved in direct liaison and negotiations at administrative and technical level with foreign states to promote international legal co-operation, and for the possible conclusion of extradition and mutual legal-assistance agreements.

The chief directorate also aims to establish greater uniformity between the legal systems of southern African states, especially the Southern African Development Community (SADC).

The chief directorate co-ordinates human-rights issues at international level under the auspices of the UN and the African Union (AU).

The functions of the chief directorate are divided into the following broad categories:

- regular liaison with SADC states
- co-ordinating all Commonwealth matters pertaining to the administration of justice
- interacting with other international bodies, such as the UN, the Hague Conference and the International Institute for the Unification of Private Law
- interacting with foreign states outside the SADC region
- negotiating extradition and mutual legal-assistance agreements with other countries/international bodies
- preparing Cabinet and Parliament documentation for the ratification of human-rights treaties, including report writing
- processing requests for extradition, mutual legal assistance in criminal matters, interrogatory commissions and service of process
- processing requests for maintenance in terms of the Reciprocal Enforcement of Maintenance Orders Act, 1963 (Act 80 of 1963).

International Criminal Court

As required by the Rome Statute of the ICC, South Africa promulgated the Implementation of the Rome Statute of the ICC Act, 2002 (Act 27 of 2002).

This Act provides a framework to:

- ensure the effective implementation of the Rome Statute of the ICC in South Africa
- ensure that South Africa conforms with the obligations set out in the statute

- address the crime of genocide, crimes against humanity, and war crimes
- address the prosecution in South African courts of persons accused of having committed said crimes in South Africa and beyond the borders of the country in certain circumstances
- deal with the arrest of certain persons accused of having committed said crimes and their surrender to the ICC in certain circumstances
- enhance co-operation by South Africa with the ICC.

Legal structures

Master of the High Court

The Master of the High Court is involved with the administration of justice in estates of deceased persons and those declared insolvent, the liquidation of companies and close corporations, and the registration of trusts.

Each year, the value of estates under the supervision of the masters' offices amounts to about R18 billion. This includes about R4 billion in the Guardians' Fund.

The key statutory functions of the masters' offices are to:

- control the administration of deceased and curatorship estates
- control the administration of insolvent estates and the liquidation of companies and close corporations
- control the registration and administration of both testamentary and *inter vivos* trusts
- manage the Guardian's Fund
- assess estate duty and certain functions with regard thereto
- accept and take custodianship of wills in deceased estates
- act as an office of record.

Deceased estates

On 15 October 2004, the Constitutional Court declared Section 23 and regulations of the Black Administration Act, 1927 unconstitutional.

In 2005, legislation to repeal the Black Administration Act, 1927 was finalised. This decision implied that the Master of the High Court takes over the powers of supervision in all deceased estates, and that all estates have to be administered in terms of the Administration of Estates Act, 1965, as amended.

All intestate estates must be administered in terms of the Intestate Succession Act, 1987 (Act 81 of 1987), as amended. This will ensure that all South Africans are treated equally, and that the dignity of each person is respected.

The institutional structures are the following:

- The Chief Master heads the national office and is responsible for co-ordinating all the activities of the masters' offices.
- There are masters' offices in Bhisho, Bloemfontein, Cape Town, Durban, Grahamstown, Johannesburg, Kimberley, Mafikeng, Polokwane, Port Elizabeth, Pietermaritzburg, Pretoria, Thohoyandou and Mthatha.
- Suboffices are located in places where the High Court does not have a seat, but where workloads require the presence of at least one assistant master.
- At service points, officials attached to the Branch: Court Services deliver services on behalf of, and under the direction of, the Master. Each magistrate's court is a service point. Each service point has at least one designated official who is the office manager or a person of equal rank. They only appoint masters' representatives in intestate estates of R50 000 or less, in terms of Section 18(3) of the Administration of Estates Amendment Act, 2002 (Act 47 of 2002).

Curatorships

On 26 December 2004, the Mental Healthcare Act, 2002 (Act 17 of 2002), came into operation, repealing the Mental Health Act, 1973 (Act 18 of 1973).

The new Act provides that where a person falls within the ambit of this Act, the Master can appoint an administrator to handle the affairs of the person. The administrator, in this instance, replaces the appointment of a curator, as was done in the past.

In terms of the Prevention of Organised Crime Act, 1998, the Master also appoints curators in these estates to administer the assets of persons and legal entities attached by the AFU, in terms of a court order.

Guardian's Fund

The fund holds and administers funds which are paid to the Master on behalf of various persons, known or unknown.

These include minors, persons incapable of managing their own affairs, unborn heirs, missing or absent persons, or persons having an interest in

the money of an usufructuary, fiduciary or fideicommissary nature.

The money in the Guardian's Fund is invested with the Public Investment Commission and is audited annually. Interest is calculated monthly at a rate per year determined from time to time by the Minister of Finance. The interest is compounded annually at 31 March. Interest is paid for a period from a month after receipt up to five years after it has become claimable, unless it is legally claimed before such expiration.

Five years after the money has become claimable, the Master pays the unclaimed money to the Receiver of Revenue Payment Register. This does not mean that the owner of the money cannot claim the money from the Guardian's Fund. However, 30 years after the money has become claimable, the money is forfeited to the State. Every September, the master advertises unclaimed amounts in the *Government Gazette*.

In the past 10 years, there has been a dramatic increase in the size of the fund, which grew by more than R2 billion over that period.

Rules Board for Courts of Law

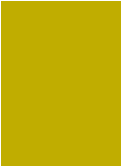
The Rules Board for Courts of Law was established by the Rules Board for Courts of Law Act, 1985 (Act 107 of 1985), to review the rules of court and to make, amend or repeal rules, subject to the approval of the Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development.

The Rules Board Secretariat provides secretarial and administrative support to the board. The secretariat also conducts research into the rules of court.

Justice College

The Justice College provides vocational training to all officials of the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development. It also presents training to autonomous professions such as magistrates and prosecutors.

Training is integral to the department's efforts to widen and improve citizens' access to justice, enable the department to meet its strategic objectives and empower employees to heighten their performance. The Justice College is being



transformed by reviewing governance structures, processes and systems, and revamping the curriculum to ensure that the college serves the training and development needs of all its stakeholders.

The transformed college will extend training to all professionals and officials of the department, including state attorneys, masters, family advocates, registrars, court managers and interpreters.

Training interpreters is a departmental priority. The college continues presenting courses that focus on complex concepts including, but not limited to, environmental crimes; cyber crimes; the National Credit Act, 2005 (Act 35 of 2005); and developing terminology in indigenous languages. The college is developing curricula on cross-cutting, non-legal, but essential training programmes, such as management and leadership, project management, service excellence and general administrative training.

Office of the Family Advocate

The role of the Family Advocate is to assist the courts in establishing the best interest of minor children in civil legal disputes involving such children.

The Family Advocate derives its duties and obligations from the Mediation in Certain Divorce Matters Act, 1987 (Act 24 of 1987), and other related legislation. In certain instances, the Family Advocate also assists the courts in matters involving domestic violence and maintenance.

The Office of the Chief Family Advocate is the designated central authority regarding the implementation of the Hague Convention on the Civil Aspects of International Child Abduction, to which South Africa became a signatory in 1996.

Under this Act, the Chief Family Advocate assists in securing the return of, or access to, children abducted or unlawfully retained by their parents or caregivers.

Legal Aid Board

By mid-2007, the LAB had completed the roll-out of a national infrastructure of four regional offices, 58 justice centres, 35 satellite offices and 13 high-court units. It employs more than 1 700 staff of whom more than 1 300 are legal professionals.

The LAB continues to provide legal assistance to the indigent, in accordance with the Constitution and other legislative requirements. This is done through a system of in-house outsourcing to private lawyers (a system of *judicare*) and co-operation partners.

With its national infrastructure in place, the LAB focuses on improving access to clients and communities, and on improving the quality of delivery of legal services.

The LAB and SAPS are working on systems that will allow legal-aid applications to be submitted electronically from police stations, to facilitate access to legal representation and ensure that arrested people have legal representation when they first appear in court. This is expected to reduce delays caused by accused people having to find attorneys.

As a public defender in criminal matters, the LAB is important in defending indigent accused people and protecting children's rights. In 2006/07, the LAB defended and protected the interests of indigent and vulnerable people in some 400 000 cases, which was 15% more than the case load handled in 2005/06.

In 2007/08, R574 million was granted to the LAB to continue providing public defender services in courts across South Africa. This represented an additional R20 million allocated to the LAB for 2007/08, which will enable improvements in service delivery and increases to the legal services' capacity for service delivery at LAB centres countrywide.

Public Protector

The Public Protector was established in terms of Chapter Nine of the Constitution to strengthen constitutional democracy. The Public Protector investigates any conduct in state affairs or public administration (including national, provincial and municipal administrations, or government entities such as Eskom and Transnet) that is suspected to be improper or that results in impropriety or prejudice. The Public Protector may not investigate court decisions.

Despite the high-profile cases involving politicians that have been investigated, most of the office's work involves complaints from people in townships, shack dwellers and those in rural areas who are struggling to access services to which they are entitled.

Some of the cases investigated include long delays in pension payouts from government and parastatals; the adverse impact of a decision or policy on individuals, institutions or groups; denial of access to information, and insufficient reasons provided for a decision taken.

With a staff complement of about 200, the Public Protector resolves about 17 000 cases per year. The bulk of the cases are resolved within three months.

The Public Protector's services are free and available to anyone who has a complaint. Complainants' names are kept confidential as far as possible.

The President appoints the Public Protector on recommendation of the National Assembly and in terms of the Constitution for a non-renewable period of seven years. The Public Protector is subject only to the Constitution and the law, and functions independently from government or any political party. No person or organ of state may interfere with the functions of the Public Protector.

The Public Protector has the power to report a matter to Parliament, which will debate it and ensure that the Public Protector's recommendations are followed.

Magistrates' Commission

The Magistrates' Commission ensures that the appointment, promotion, transfer or discharge of, or disciplinary steps against judicial officers in the lower courts take place without favour or prejudice, and that the applicable laws and administrative directions in connection with such actions are applied uniformly and correctly.

The commission also attends to grievances, complaints and misconduct investigations against magistrates.

It advises the Minister of Justice and Constitutional Development on matters such as the appointment of magistrates, promotions, salaries and legislation.

The commission has established committees to deal with appointments and promotions; misconduct, disciplinary inquiries and incapacity; grievances; salary and service conditions; and the training of magistrates.

South African Law Reform Commission

The SALRC is an independent statutory body, established by the SALRC Act, 1973 (Act 19 of 1973). The SALRC and its secretariat are responsible for research in respect of the law of South Africa with a view to advising government on the development, improvement, modernisation and reform of the law of South Africa in all its facets, by performing, among other things, the following functions:

- executing the law-reform programme of the SALRC by conducting legal research, including legal comparative research, by developing proposals for law reform and, where appropriate, by promoting uniformity in the law
- preparing legislative proposals
- establishing a permanent, simplified, coherent and generally accessible statute book, complying with the principles of the Constitution
- consolidating or codifying any branch of the law
- assisting parliamentary committees during the deliberation of draft legislation emanating from the SALRC
- advising ministers and state departments on proposed legislation and recommendations.

The commission's investigation into statutory law revision is one of considerable magnitude that Cabinet has endorsed. It requires scrutiny of all post-1910 legislation for purposes of identifying unconstitutional, redundant and obsolete provisions.

As part of the investigation, the *Discussion Paper on the Review of the Interpretation Act, 1957 (Act 33 of 1957)* was published for general information and comment in October 2006.

An investigation into Hindu marriages from a constitutional viewpoint is also conducted as part of statutory law revision.

Another crucial issue that the commission is investigating is human trafficking. The commission's investigation aims to develop legislative measures to counter trafficking in persons.

Judicial Service Commission

In terms of the Constitution, the President, in consultation with the JSC, appoints the Chief Justice and the Deputy Chief Justice, and the President and Deputy President of the SCA. The President appoints other judges on the advice of the JSC.

In the case of the Chief Justice and the Deputy Chief Justice, the leaders of parties represented in the National Assembly are also consulted.

The JSC was established in terms of Section 178 of the Constitution to perform this function. It also advises government on any matters relating to the judiciary or to the administration of justice.

When appointments have to be made, the commission gives public notice of the vacancies that exist and calls for nominations.

The JSC shortlists suitable candidates and invites them for interviews. Professional bodies and members of the public have the opportunity to comment prior to the interviews or to make representations concerning the candidates to the commission.

The JSC has determined criteria and guidelines for appointments, which have been made public.

The interviews are conducted as public hearings and may be attended by anyone who wishes to do so. Following the interviews, the JSC deliberates and makes its decisions in private. Its recommendations are communicated to the President, who then makes the appointments.

South African Human Rights Commission

In terms of Section 184(1) of the Constitution, the SAHRC must:

- promote respect for human rights and a culture of human rights
- promote the protection, development and attainment of human rights
- monitor and assess the observance of human rights in South Africa.

The operations of the SAHRC consist of the following programmes:

- Strategic Management and Support Services
- Commissioners
- Education, Training and Public Awareness
- Legal Services
- Research and Documentation
- Parliamentary Liaison and Legislation and Treaty Body Monitoring
- Information and Communication
- Special Programmes
- Co-ordinators
- Civil-Society Advocacy Project.

Structure

The SAHRC is made up of two sections: the commission, which sets out policy; and a secretariat, which implements policy. The Chairperson is overall head, and the Chief Executive Officer is head of the Secretariat, accountable for the finances of the SAHRC and responsible for the employment of staff.

As set out in Section Five of the Human Rights Commission Act, 1994 (Act 54 of 1994), the SAHRC has established standing committees to advise and assist it in its work. The SAHRC appoints the members of the standing committees, each of which is chaired by a commissioner.

The SAHRC has also established provincial offices to ensure its services are widely accessible.

Education and training

The objectives of the Education and Training Subprogramme are to conduct training workshops, seminars, presentations, and capacity-building programmes on equality, economic and social rights, promotion of access to information and other focus areas of the SAHRC. The SAHRC continues its collaboration with the SADC region.

Advocacy, public awareness and community outreach

The SAHRC has developed the community-outreach initiative, "Omnibus". The Omnibus encompasses a range of educational interventions ranging from workshops, seminars, presentations, site visits and walkabouts to widespread campaigns, events and advocacy initiatives. The annual Human Rights Week Campaign, built around Human Rights Day on 21 March, continues to be convened and organised under this subprogramme.

Legal Services

This subprogramme implements the commission's protection mandate and deals primarily with complaints of human-rights violations in pursuance of redress, monitoring the agencies of the justice system and submitting recommendations, and conducting hearings and public inquiries.

Research and Documentation

This subprogramme implements the commission's monitoring and assessment of the observance of the human-rights mandate. It has three components: the Equality Unit, the Economic and Social Rights Unit and the Library.

Commission on Gender Equality

Chapter Nine of the Constitution provides for the establishment of the CGE. Section 187 of the Constitution specifically grants the CGE powers to promote respect for, and to protect, develop and attain gender equality.

The composition, functions and objectives of the CGE are outlined in the CGE Act, 1996 (Act 39 of 1996).

The CGE has the following powers and functions:

- developing, conducting or managing information and education programmes to foster public understanding of matters pertaining to the promotion of gender equality and the role and activities of the commission

- monitoring and evaluating the policies and practices of state organs, statutory and public bodies, as well as the private sector, to promote gender equality
- investigating any gender-related complaints received or on its own initiative
- liaising with institutions, bodies or authorities with similar objectives
- conducting research to further the objectives of the CGE.

Complaints are received from the public at large and dealt with either through personal consultations, telephonically or in writing, including electronically.

In cases where the complaint does not fall within the CGE's mandate, it may be referred to a relevant institution or forum.

Truth and Reconciliation Commission Unit

The TRC was dissolved in March 2002 by way of proclamation in the *Government Gazette*. The TRC handed its final report to the President in March 2003.

The TRC made recommendations to government in respect of reparations to victims and measures to prevent the future violation of human rights. In keeping with the presidential mandate given on 15 April 2003 in Parliament, the TRC Unit was established in the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development in September 2005, with a view to audit, monitor and co-ordinate the implementation of the TRC's recommendations and render victim-support services.

The TRC Unit works closely with the President's Fund, which is located in the Office of the Chief Financial Officer in the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development. The President's Fund has been giving effect to the payment of both urgent interim reparations and the once-off individual grants of R30 000 each to the 16 837 victims who applied for reparations and were approved by the TRC.

By March 2007, 15 610 beneficiaries had received reparations. Of the 1 227 still to be paid, 357 were deceased and 260 were in the process of being paid.

By March 2007, R50 million had been paid in respect of urgent interim reparations and

R469 million in respect of once-off individual grants, amounting to a total of R519 million.

The TRC Unit's activities also include the engagement of TRC-identified victims and organisations representing victims, as well as the drafting of an exhumation policy in respect of missing-person cases reported to the TRC. In respect of the exhumation process, the TRC Unit has rendered assistance to affected families regarding applications for reparations and special pensions (where relevant) and obtaining death certificates. The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development has also made *ex gratia* payments of R15 000 each to contribute towards reburial costs.

Efforts in this regard have included awareness campaigns via the print and electronic media. The Government Communication and Information System is also conducting door-to-door campaigns via its regional structures.

The unit was facilitating the drafting of regulations to enable access to the monies in the President's Fund, in accordance with the Promotion of National Unity and Reconciliation Act, 1995 (Act 34 of 1995). The remaining monies in the fund will be used to implement broader reparation programmes, including community rehabilitation.

Correctional services

The Department of Correctional Services contributes towards maintaining and protecting a just, peaceful and safe society by enforcing court-imposed sentences and detaining inmates in safe custody while maintaining their human dignity.

The department facilitates the correcting of offending behaviour and is responsible for the general development of all offenders as part of their rehabilitation, including those subject to community corrections.

In pursuing these objectives, the department launched the *White Paper on Corrections* in 2005 that embodies its long-term strategic policy and operational framework.

The White Paper promotes corrections as a societal responsibility and it puts rehabilitation at the centre of all its activities.

The six service-delivery areas the department has identified in relation to offenders are security,

facilities, correction, development, well-being and social reintegration.

The department received R10,74 billion in 2007/08 and increased its staff complement from 36 311 in 2005/06 to 41 406 in 2006/07, with a target of reaching 45 674 by the end of 2009/10. This represents a 25,79% increase and the provision of 9 363 more jobs within five years.

Several milestones attained by the department in 2006/07 included:

- Surpassing its employment target of 8 311 additional employees as part of it implementing the seven-day working week scheduled to kick off in April 2008. In addition to the thousands of new recruits, 752 new positions were created as part of the ongoing alignment of the department's structures with the *White Paper on Corrections*.
- A standardised framework for providing comprehensive care programmes in the department's 36 centres of excellence (CoEs) was implemented by training six master trainers, 27 chaplains, 100 spiritual-care workers and 40 external service-providers.
- The department implemented the National Curriculum Statement for Grade 10 in its CoEs in 2006/07, as part of rehabilitation. By mid-2006, the department was registering all its youth centres as full-time schools to ensure the transformation of CoEs into rehabilitation centres providing education, knowledge and information.
- The department's partnerships with the SIU and the DSO delivered good results in its fight against corruption and fraud. Twenty-seven medical practitioners were investigated and 16 appeared in court, resulting in one conviction and over R316 million recovered, together with savings in medical-aid claims of more than half a billion rand. The Code Enforcement Unit of the department concluded 60 hearings and registered a 92% conviction rate.
- In 2006, the department developed the Compliance Improvement Plan aimed at enhancing compliance with internal controls, policies and procedures.
- The department is accelerating access to antiretroviral (ARV) treatment by offenders. Eight correctional centres were accredited as ARV sites in 2006 and the ninth in early 2007.
- The department is reducing the number of children in custody by transferring them to secure-care facilities and emphasising alternative sentencing options. At the end of 2006/07, there were 1 149 children in

correctional centres. This number was reduced by 187 during 2007.

- Altogether, 1 804 youth offenders in four regions are involved in the President's Awards Programme. The programme focuses on developing leadership skills, self-awareness, self-discipline, entrepreneurship and community service among young offenders, as part of the department's rehabilitation aims.
 - The department has aligned itself with the aims of the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa's procurement programmes, thereby engaging more local small and medium-sized producers and suppliers.
 - The Electronic Management Information System for offender-skills development was developed and tested. The system was expected to be implemented in 2007/08.
 - In mid-2006, the department developed a social reintegration framework that seeks to optimise stakeholder participation and strengthen family relations, while improving the management of rehabilitation programmes outside correctional centres. The Social Reintegration Programme is expected to improve the implementation of diversion programmes, non-custodial sanctions for offenders who pose limited danger to society, and the role of society in preventing crime and in correcting offending behaviour. The budget for social reintegration increased by 9,15% (from R313,3 million in 2005) to R342 million in 2006.
- The Offender Rehabilitation Path (ORP) is a nine-phase programme that seeks to re-engineer the department's offender-management approach to become needs-based and informed by an offender's life cycle. Each stage demands different interventions by the department and other players in government and society.

The nine phases of the ORP include:

- admissions to correctional facilities
- assessments, which include orientation and profiling
- allocation to an incarceration unit in line with one's risk profile and classification
- interventions that are informed by a sentence plan
- monitoring and evaluating of progress made in implementing the sentence plan
- a placement phase, including considering placement on parole or correctional supervision
- allocation to a pre-release unit for training or last interventions before placement in communities
- admission to a community corrections office with a clear plan for implementation

- focusing on the management of probationers, who are directly placed under community corrections by courts.

The Correctional Sentence Plan and its revision framework were finalised in 2006/07 in consultation with offenders to establish their needs. The sentence plan will include the implementation of six programmes aimed at addressing offence-specific crimes resulting from aggressive behaviour, sexual offences and substance abuse.

In addition, all offenders due for release will be progressively compelled to undergo the pre-release programme designed to prepare them for social reintegration.

For the roll-out of care programmes aimed at the personal well-being of offenders, inclusive of healthcare; social-work services; and spiritual, moral and psychological services; the department has been allocated an annualised increase of 8,7% over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF), reaching R1,5 billion by 2009/10. Part of the increase is the additional allocation of R17 million aimed at improving health professionals' salaries following extensive discussions with the departments of public service and administration, and of health.

The allocation will be increased to R19 million and R47 million in 2008/09 and 2009/10 respectively.

Offender accommodation

The department strives to provide adequate prison accommodation that complies with accepted standards. By the end of March 2007, offenders were housed in 238 active correctional centres countrywide, including:

- eight correctional centres for female offenders only
- 13 youth correctional facilities
- 131 correctional centres for male offenders only
- 86 correctional centres for both male and female offenders.

In centres where men, women and juvenile offenders are accommodated, women and juvenile offenders are housed in separate designated sections.

Overcrowding in prisons

Over the past six years, the department has reduced overcrowding by an average rate of 4,77% per year.

With mandatory sentences, the category of offenders serving 10 to 15 years increased by over 12% from 45% in 2000 to 57% of the total offender population in 2006.

By March 2007, South Africa's correctional centres, which collectively have an accommodation capacity of 115 327 inmates, housed 161 023 inmates.

Overcrowding was about 40% (45 696 people), meaning that the country's correctional centres were 140% full. Of the total offender population, 48 228 inmates were awaiting trial. The average cost of incarceration is estimated at R123,37 a day.

The department is implementing an eight-pronged strategy to address overcrowding.

The strategy consists of the following dimensions:

- managing levels of ATDs through the IJS Case Management Task Team and Intersectoral Committee on Child Justice
- managing levels of sentenced inmates by improving effective and appropriate use of conversion of sentence to community correctional supervision, release on parole and transfers between correctional centres to establish some degree of evenness of overcrowding in all centres
- ensuring progress on the capital-works programme to upgrade its facilities and to build new centres that are both cost-effective and rehabilitation-oriented
- encouraging debate in South Africa about reasons for incarceration as a sentence, and encouraging appropriate sentencing that is focused on rehabilitation
- strengthening community correctional supervision so that it is better used as an appropriate sentence for less serious crimes
- improving correction and development programmes
- encouraging the correction of offending behaviour in family and social structures and encouraging economic-sector engagement to decrease the rate of entry into the CJS
- encouraging community involvement in the social reintegration of offenders back into their communities to assist in reducing levels of repeat offending.

These measures have started to pay off, resulting in overcrowding being reduced consistently by 4, 77% a year, reaching 15,72% and 10% reduction rates respectively in the past two years. The amount of bed space has increased through renovations, limited expansions and recommissioning, while ATDs have been reduced by 22% through the integration of the CJS as a whole.

The construction of one of three new-generation correctional centres in Kimberley is under way and due for completion in November 2008. By mid-2007, construction at Klerksdorp and Nigel was due to start. Similar facilities are to be built in the Eastern Cape, Western Cape and KwaZulu-Natal. Construction of another three new-generation correctional centres in Paarl, East London and Port Shepstone respectively, announced in 2006, is expected to start in 2008. The five new-generation correctional centres will have 3 000 beds each.

Managing awaiting-trial detainees

In 2006, Cabinet mandated the department to lead a project of re-engineering the Management of Awaiting-Trial Detention (MATD) system in South Africa.

The scope goes beyond addressing the congestion of facilities and includes ensuring that all provisions of the Constitution, legislation and international protocols applicable to unsentenced inmates are applied.

The task team members are from the departments of justice and constitutional development, of home affairs, of social development and the SAPS.

As a result, the Department of Correctional Services has established a directorate to drive the development of appropriate policies and procedures, identification of correctional centres for use as pilot remand-detention facilities in each region, as well as the development and implementation of a synchronised cluster programme of action aimed at meeting short- to long-term strategic needs in managing ATDs.

Of the 158 859 inmates in June 2007, 44 507 were ATDs, which put significant strain on already congested facilities. Those who were awaiting trial represented almost 30% of the total offender population.

The MATD system aims to reduce risks imposed by ATDs on public safety while improving compliance with constitutional imperatives in terms of access to basic services such as education, health and other social services for those regarded as innocent until proven guilty.

By March 2007, the MATD Project Team was focusing on:

- developing policies, appropriate legislation and procedures for consideration and approval during 2007/08
- identifying suitable facilities for conversion or dedicated use as remand-detention facilities across the country
- optimising the use of technology, including the tracking and electronic monitoring of the accused so that, where appropriate, non-custodial options are also used to reduce overcrowding
- ensuring an integrated information-management system across the CJS to assist with decision-making.

Safety and security

One of the core objectives of the department is to ensure that every correctional centre has a secure environment with a correcting influence. This refers not only to the prevention of escapes from custody, but also to creating and maintaining an environment characterised by a significantly low prevalence or absence of inmate abuse, violence, corruption and negligence.

The department has implemented various measures aimed at combating escapes. These include:

- the optimal use of existing security aids and equipment
- continued evaluation of security directives
- upgrading personnel training
- taking disciplinary action against negligent personnel
- rewarding offenders who report or warn of planned escapes
- installing electronic fences and X-ray scanners in high-risk prisons.

By implementing national and regional escape-prevention strategies, the department succeeded in reducing the number of escapes from 113 in 2005/06 to 93 in 2006/07. The number of escapes decreased by 67% between 2002/03 (281 escapes) and 2006/07.

The department has created a culture of security awareness among its staff. All managers are involved in monitoring and ensuring adherence to security policies and procedures, through strict supervision, control mechanisms and disciplinary action against negligent officials.

The department is rolling out a biometric security system and state-of-the-art fencing with CCTV monitors. The system includes a biometric

Inmates per security category as at 31 August 2007

Sentence categories	Women	Men	Total
Maximum security	184	28 052	28 236
Medium security	1 474	60 314	61 788
Minimum security	52	2 134	2 186
Total	1 710	90 500	92 210

Source: Department of Correctional Services

fingerprinting system to manage inmate visitations. Some R300 million has been allocated over the MTEF.

The recently developed Minimum Security Policy and Standards outlines five integrated pillars, namely:

- personnel security and vetting
- security equipment
- security technology
- security information management
- operational security procedures.

Offender assessment and profiling

The department assesses and profiles offenders to determine the risk they pose to the public, and to identify their rehabilitation and reintegration needs. Offenders are assessed upon admission to identify

Sentence length breakdown as at 31 August 2007

Sentence length	Number
<6 months	4 572
6 – 12 months	4 046
12 – 24 months	4 012
2 – 3 years	13 081
3 – 5 years	10 975
5 – 7 years	7 614
7 – 10 years	15 278
10 – 15 years	23 117
15 – 20 years	11 731
>20 years	9 747
Life	7 640
Death	6
Other sentenced	977
Total sentenced	112 796

Source: Department of Correctional Services

immediate risks and needs that require urgent intervention.

They are each subjected to a comprehensive assessment by a multidisciplinary team to work out a sentence plan. The information from the comprehensive assessment is then analysed to compile a profile of the offender.

These interventions aim to determine risks of re-offending and to prepare offenders for reintegration into society. The department also profiles the national offender population biannually to identify different types of offenders in its facilities for planning purposes and to identify trends.

Classification and categorisation of offenders

Offenders undergo safe-custody classification upon admission to determine the level of security required to detain them. Offenders are classified according to high, medium and minimum security risk levels for placement in maximum-, medium- or minimum-security correctional centres or units.

Variables taken into account are the type of crime committed, the length of the sentence, previous convictions, current multiple offences (number), current multiple offences (categorisation), time lapse between current offence/s and previous convictions, history of violence (prior convictions) for violent offences within the last five years, escape history, age at admission on current sentence, motive/circumstances under which crime was committed, crime committed in gang-context/crime syndicate, and number of victims (human).

The safe-custody classification of all offenders is reviewed regularly, and if their behaviour or any other aspect affecting their security risk justifies it, reclassification takes place.

There are eight categories of offenders in South African prisons, namely:

- ATDs (mainly offenders standing trial on a charge and detained in prison pending the conclusion of the judicial process)
- short-term offenders (offenders serving a sentence of less than two years)
- long-term offenders (offenders serving sentences of two years and longer)
- children/juvenile and youth ATDs between the ages of 14 and 25

- sentenced children/juveniles and youths between the ages of 14 and 25
- women, including women with children
- foreign nationals
- offenders with disabilities.

Young offenders

In terms of the Constitution, a child is a person under the age of 18 years. The Department of Correctional Services regards a person between the ages of 14 and 25 years as a youth. The department is responsible for the detention, treatment and development of sentenced juveniles.

Section 7(2)(c) of the Correctional Services Act, 1998 (Act 111 of 1998), stipulates that children must be kept separate from adult offenders and in accommodation appropriate to their age, as young offenders are predisposed to negative influences.

The separation aims to provide distinctive custodial, development and treatment programmes, as well as spiritual care, in an environment conducive to the care, development and motivation of youths to participate and to develop their potential.

The nature of serious offences committed by ATDs and sentenced offenders under the age of 20 years is decreasing. A breakdown of the nature of the crimes of those in custody in March 2007 revealed that there were 4 042 offences of an economic nature, 6 160 aggression-related offences, 1 591 sexual offences, 154 drug-related offences and 445 for other crimes committed.

Of the crimes committed by 36 363 sentenced youths between the ages of 14 and 25, 19 848 were aggression-related, 9 858 of an economic nature, 4 704 sexual, 595 drug-related and 1 360 for other types of offences.

There are 13 youth correctional facilities in the country, namely Hawequa, Brandvlei, Drakenstein Medium B and Pollsmoor Medium A (Western Cape); Leeuwkop, Emthongeni and Boksborg (Gauteng); Rustenburg (North West); Durban and Ekuseni (KwaZulu-Natal); Groenpunt and Kroonstad (Free State) and Barberton Prison (Mpumalanga).

The development and support of youth offenders form an essential part of their incarceration. The aim of rendering professional services (education, lifeskills, learning a trade, moral and spiritual enlightenment and personal development) is to rehabilitate youth offenders, contribute towards their behavioural change and prepare them for reintegration into society. The focus is on promoting and developing leadership qualities. A holistic approach is followed in which:

- young offenders are motivated to actively participate in their own development and the realisation of their potential
- a culture and atmosphere where development prevails
- discipline and co-operation between officials and offenders, and among offenders, are fostered and maintained.

By May 2007, there were 1 149 children in correctional facilities, compared with 1 336 in 2006/07.

Mother-and-child units

The department has aligned its Infants and Mothers Policy with the Children's Act, 2006 (Act 25 of 2006).

Mother-and-child units have been established in eight female correctional centres countrywide. By March 2007, there were 154 infants under the age of five in these units, which was less than the previous year's figure.

Policy stipulates that mothers and children be kept in separate units in the correctional centre, where the surroundings and facilities are complementary to the sound physical, social and mental care, and development of children. Those of crèche-going age attend crèche either in the centres where there are such facilities or at external facilities.

Infants are allowed to stay with their mothers only if no other suitable accommodation and care are available at that stage. It should also be regarded as a temporary measure. The policy recognises the right of the mother to have her infant with her during admission because it promotes a positive relationship between mother and child. The policy emphasises that the mother should be taught sound childcare practices to build her own self-esteem and self-confidence, and for the benefit of the child.

The privilege system

The main objectives of the privilege system are to encourage offenders to display good behaviour, to engender a sense of responsibility in them and to ensure their interest and co-operation in treatment programmes. The system consists of primary and secondary privileges. Primary privileges are aimed at retaining, maintaining or furthering family ties to, among other things, facilitate reintegration into society. These privileges are divided into A, B and C groups.

The entry level for all new admissions is the B group and, depending on behaviour, an offender

may be promoted or demoted to either the A or the C privilege group. Secondary privileges are aimed at leisure-time activities such as participation in sport and watching television. No sentenced offenders are allowed to receive food from outside prison or to use private electrical appliances.

Healthcare services

The Department of Health views the healthcare of offenders as an important responsibility. It includes nutrition, personal care, environmental hygiene and pharmaceutical services.

The department endorses the fundamental rights and privileges of all offenders. In accordance with the Correctional Services Act, 1998, an independent judicial inspectorate regularly inspects all prisons and reports on their conditions and the treatment of offenders.

The policy and administrative framework for the maintenance of an adequate, affordable and comprehensive healthcare service is based on the principles of primary healthcare (PHC).

The service includes mental, dental and reproductive health, supplementary healthcare, health-promotion, and management of communicable diseases, including HIV, AIDS and sexually transmitted infections (STIs).

The approach to healthcare in South Africa's correctional facilities focuses on:

- adherence to ethical codes by health professionals
- regular health inspections
- compliance with rules of confidentiality and privacy regarding the medical records of offenders
- continuous evaluation and upgrading of emergency medical services.

The Department of Correctional Services provides a system in which offenders are treated in the same way as other patients in state facilities following PHC principles. Offenders in need of further healthcare are, as far as possible, treated in state hospitals.

The use of private hospitals for offenders is permitted in cases where public hospitals are unable to provide access to healthcare and only after approval by the Regional Commissioner of Correctional Services.

The department's objective is to maintain a high standard of personal hygiene by ensuring that the following are provided to offenders:

- toilet and bathing amenities with hot water
- suitable clothing and comfortable shoes
- adequate bedding
- a clean and healthy environment
- safe drinking water
- a smoke-free prison environment.

The Minister of Correctional Services approved the department's HIV and AIDS Policy in October 2002. In 2006, the department conducted a health-needs assessment based on government priority areas, as well as a survey on the prevalence of HIV and syphilis among inmates and staff. The results of the survey will inform the department's related programmes and policies.

The department is implementing the Comprehensive Plan on Prevention and Care of HIV and AIDS of the Department of Health, which includes providing ARV therapy to offenders who qualify for this treatment. Altogether, 47 438 HIV and AIDS awareness and health-education sessions were held with offenders in 2006/07.

The department is also collaborating with the Department of Health to assess identified correctional centres for accreditation as ARV therapy-providers. In March 2007, Kimberley Correctional Centre became the ninth accredited correctional location to roll out ARV treatment to offenders. The other eight ARV-accredited sites are Qalabusha, Durban-Westville, Pietermaritzburg, St Albans, Johannesburg, Grootvlei, Groenpunt and Kroonstad.

By the end of 2006, 2 323 offenders were receiving ARV therapy.

The department's HIV and AIDS Policy caters for:

- prevention, which involves the promotion of safe sexual practices, management and control of STIs, provision of condoms and access to voluntary counselling and testing
- treatment, care and support
- respect for human rights
- awareness campaigns and the commemoration of HIV and AIDS calendar events
- partnerships with other government departments, the private sector, NGOs and educational institutions

- peer-led education programmes to introduce behavioural changes among peers
- the appointment of employee-assistance practitioners to implement employee-wellness programmes.

Exceeding its target of 445 in 2006/07, the department trained 1 159 offenders and officials as peer educators to strengthen prevention initiatives.

Nutrition

The department is committed to maintaining the health and strength of those entrusted to its care by satisfying their nutritional needs according to the Recommended Daily Allowance for food intake.

The objective is to provide all offenders with three nutritious meals per day and to provide for therapeutic and special diets when they are prescribed by a medical doctor. The system also allows for religious and cultural diets.

To ensure compliance in this regard, a contract is negotiated with an external service-provider to provide balanced meals to offenders, and to train staff and offenders who work in the kitchens.

Rehabilitation

Rehabilitation aims to provide treatment and development programmes to offenders in partnership with the community. Participation in rehabilitation programmes enhances personal and social functioning, and prepares offenders for reintegration into society as productive, well-adapted and law-abiding citizens.

Multidisciplinary teams, consisting of social workers, psychologists, chaplains, educators, correctional officers and others (the external community), address the basic needs of offenders with comprehensive assessments and various needs-based programmes.

The development and rehabilitation processes, which enable offenders to improve their mental health, social functioning, competencies, knowledge, skills and spiritual well-being, focus on the following key strategies:

- raising the literacy rate within the prison environment
- engaging community organisations to assist with development programmes for offenders
- establishing training centres at large correctional centres, but also building capacity to deliver training programmes in smaller centres
- marketing rehabilitation programmes to offenders and the community
- promoting and implementing restorative justice principles to ensure the involvement of

offenders, victims and the community in the rehabilitation process.

Institutional committees

Institutional committees at each prison are responsible for ensuring a professional and co-ordinated approach towards the incarceration, treatment, training and development of all offenders.

This is implemented by means of a multidisciplinary approach in which all role-players are involved, i.e. those concerned with custodial, training, educational, psychological, religious-care and social-work functions, recreational sport and library projects, as well as self-sufficiency and life-skills programmes.

Education and training of offenders

All offenders have the right to basic education. The aim is to enhance the education level of offenders so that their reintegration into society can be strengthened.

All formal education programmes are outcomes-based, needs-driven and meet the requirements of the National Qualification Framework. Offenders are given access to the General Education and Training, Further Education and Training (FET) and Higher Education and Training (HET) bands. Services are provided to sentenced offenders and ATDs, in collaboration with external partners such as government institutions, training institutions and NGOs.

Education programmes include:

- Pre-Adult Basic Education and Training (Abet) and Abet levels 1 – 4
- 10 – 12 FET grades
- HET (FET degrees/diplomas)
- computer-based training
- life-skills training and development
- entrepreneurial skills training.

The main emphasis is on providing literacy and numeracy programmes, which include training in occupational, life and entrepreneurial skills. This should enhance the chances of the successful reintegration of the offender into society and labour market. During 2006/07, 102 000 offenders participated in sport, arts and culture programmes.

Participation in trade workshops and farming activities develops the employability of offenders and complements rehabilitation by providing offenders with skills.

The department uses the products and produce, sells to other departments (office furniture) and donates some to impoverished communities.

The department has 20 prison farms on about 40 000 hectares (ha) of which 6 386 ha are dry land, 2 040 ha are under irrigation, 20 885 ha are natural grazing and 9 937 ha are barren. In addition, the department has 116 vegetable gardens at smaller correctional centres.

The department produces a wide range of agricultural products that contribute to self-sufficiency. Milk, butter, broilers, eggs, beef, pork, venison, vegetables, fruit, maize-meal and fodder products (maize, silage, hay, etc.) for livestock are being produced.

Apart from the practical skills that an offender acquires while working on a farm, the department offers formal training with the assistance of instructors in the following courses, which are based on the syllabi of acknowledged external agricultural training centres: irrigation, vegetable cultivation, care for calves, operating milking machines, cattle care, operating tractors and maintaining fencing.

The department has 10 production workshops for wood and steel manufacturing. It also has 16 textile workshops for the manufacturing of clothing and bedding for offenders. Qualified production managers and technicians manage these workshops.

The workshops produce office furniture, benches, recreational equipment, student tables, broom handles, kitchen equipment, beds for offenders, cabinets, lockers, trailers, shirts, trousers and shoes.

Almost R3 million in revenue was generated in 2006 from selling products made in the workshops.

Qualified instructors give formal training and offenders receive accreditation from relevant training boards. The following courses are presented:

- fitting and machining
- metal work
- cabinet-making
- wood machining
- garment manufacturing
- technical drawing
- machines
- materials.

Every offender who completes the training is evaluated through an examination and is issued

with a certificate, which is acknowledged by the labour market and the relevant sector education and training authority.

Psychological services

Psychological services are provided for sentenced offenders to improve their mental health and emotional well-being. In areas where there are no departmental psychologists, the department uses the following procedures to address the emotional needs of offenders:

- External registered psychologists can be contracted if a medical practitioner referred the offender for psychological treatment.
- Offenders may see a private psychologist at their own expense.
- Students who are studying towards their MA degrees in clinical or counselling psychology provide services without remuneration under the supervision of their respective universities. Following an agreement with the Department of Health, the department offers places for psychologists who need to complete their one-year compulsory community service. This came into effect in January 2005 and has had a very positive effect on the psychological resources available in the department.

By May 2007, the department had 48 psychologists. It surpassed the 2006/07 targets of 15 500 by reaching 17 818 offenders.

Social-work services

Social-work services aim to provide professional services to help offenders cope more effectively with problems relating to their social functioning, and to prepare them for reintegration into society. Social workers employed by the department provide structured programmes on life skills, family care and marriage, alcohol and drug abuse, orientation, sexual offences, trauma, pre-release, and HIV and AIDS treatment.

In 2006/07, some 86 571 social-work sessions took place.

Spiritual care of offenders

Spiritual-care services are rendered to offenders through needs-based programmes within a multidisciplinary context. This is done in

partnership with churches or faith-based organisations (FBOs) to rehabilitate offenders and reintegrate them into society. It also aims to contribute to changing offenders' behaviour, based on a lifestyle which is in accordance with the acceptable values and norms of their faith.

Sentenced and unsentenced offenders, probationers, parolees and personnel (on an ad hoc basis) have access to spiritual-care services. The department employs full-time chaplains and part-time spiritual workers from various religious backgrounds.

The department is a member of the International Prison Chaplaincy Association. A working relationship also exists with FBOs like Prison Fellowship International, Alpha, New Life Behaviour Ministries and Kairos. Provision is made for offenders to observe the main religious festivals and holy days such as Ramadan, Passover, Good Friday and Christmas. Religious and spiritual literature, such as the *Bible* and the *Qur'an*, are supplied to offenders.

In 2006/07, 164 582 spiritual-care sessions took place against a target of 162 500.

Case-management committees (CMCs)

CMCs at each correctional centre are responsible for ensuring a professional and co-ordinated approach towards the incarceration, treatment, training and development of all offenders.

This is implemented by means of a multidisciplinary approach in which all role-players are involved, i.e. those concerned with custodial, training, educational, psychological, spiritual-care and social-work functions; recreational, sport and library projects; as well as self-sufficiency and life-skills programmes.

CMCs have statutory decision-making competencies regarding the safe custody of offenders, individual participation, subgroup and group programmes, as well as rewarding positive behaviour promptly.

In 2006/07, the department intensified the work of CMCs and the correctional supervision and parole boards (CSPBs) and reduced cases by 49,16% to 9 957.

Release of offenders

The Department of Correctional Services, as part of the Criminal Justice Cluster, is entrusted with dealing responsibly with all offenders in its charge, for the duration of their sentence. Part of this responsibility is ensuring that offenders are returned to society in a responsible manner and at

the most appropriate stage of their sentence or at the end thereof. This has to be done not only in the offender's own interest, but also in the interest of the State and society.

Although offenders have to serve their full sentences, the department realises that, in the interests of successfully reintegrating offenders, it is normally not appropriate for them to serve the full period of their sentences in a correctional centre.

In South Africa, parole is a form of conditional placement, which may be granted to offenders after they have served a certain period of the sentence imposed by a court. The remainder of the sentence is then served under supervision in the community, subject to specific conditions of the system of community corrections.

The majority of cases under consideration for parole are dealt with by the CSPBs, with some exceptions, e.g. those sentenced to less than 12 months, which the Head of the Correctional Centre deals with. Those sentenced to life imprisonment or who are declared dangerous criminals are considered by the Minister of Correctional Services and the courts.

The primary task of a parole board is to consider and approve/disapprove the placement of offenders under either correctional supervision, on day parole or parole on medical grounds. By mid-2007, there were 52 parole boards countrywide, which will be expanded during the next few years.

Crime victims can make representations to a parole board when the placement of an offender on parole or under correctional supervision is considered.

Although the Correctional Services Act, 1998 allows for a parole-board decision to be final, which means that members of the department cannot overrule the decision of a parole board, the legislator deemed it necessary to provide for a correctional supervision and parole review board empowered to review decisions of any parole board.

The Parole Review Board acts as the mechanism whereby the minister and the commissioner can ensure that parole boards do not abuse their powers.

Should reasons exist that a parole board might have failed in its decision, the minister or the commissioner may refer such a case to the Parole Review Board. The review board has the authority to either confirm the decision of the parole board or substitute the decision, which must be made known to the relevant parole board and also to

other parole boards to serve as future guidelines. The Parole Review Board, through the rule of law, gives guidance to other parole boards.

The board consists of members selected from the National Council on Correctional Services and is chaired by a judge of the SCA. Other members who serve on the board are a member of the NPA, two members of the community, a person with special knowledge of the correctional system and a member of the Department of Correctional Services.

At the end of the 2006, there were more than 60 000 parolees and probationers who were serving their sentences under community corrections.

Reintegration into society

The department aims to equip offenders with the skills needed for their effective reintegration into society after release. Offenders sentenced to longer than six months' imprisonment undergo a basic pre-release programme before release. Aspects receiving attention include how to secure employment and personal-finance management.

Specialists from the community are also involved in the reintegration process. Care and support for an offender are prerequisites for release. Before offenders are placed, they are assisted with obtaining employment and accommodation, or at least care and support. Community involvement in supporting offenders after release is encouraged. Offenders are provided with some financial and material assistance before they are released.

Four corrections programmes have been developed and endorsed, marking a real focus on root causes of crime in society, namely anger management, a sexual-offenders programme, substance abuse and a pre-release programme. Participation in rehabilitation programmes will soon be compulsory.

The *White Paper on Corrections* is based on the principle that the Department of Correctional Services should be an institution for rehabilitation, and that rehabilitation and social reintegration of offenders are the joint responsibility of society and the State.

The department has partnerships with NGOs, FBOs and community-based organisations in

rendering reconciliation and moral renewal programmes for offenders and communities, so that rehabilitated offenders may be released into a receptive environment to ensure that both offenders and their victims, or affected families and communities, are reconciled.

Community corrections

A position paper on the social reintegration of offenders was developed in alignment with the *White Paper on Corrections* and with due cognisance of African and other international policy instruments.

The paper focuses on the need to increase the involvement of communities and the capacity to efficiently rehabilitate offenders subject to correctional and parole supervision and other non-custodial measures.

Policies and supporting procedures were subsequently developed and changes made to the organisational structure. The judiciary and stakeholders were briefed accordingly during roadshows to promote co-operation and the use of non-custodial measures such as community service.

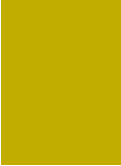
During February 2007, 1 706 officials at 194 community corrections offices managed a daily average of 46 558 active offenders (29 218 parolees and 17 340 probationers) as well as the tracing of 24 145 absconders (18 403 parolees and 5 742 probationers).

It is an offence for probationers or parolees to abscond from the system of community corrections and, if found guilty, they may be sentenced for up to 10 years' incarceration. Absconding from community service has decreased since the end of the 1990s, and a framework was drafted to further reduce absconding and to trace absconders.

Supervision of parolees

Parolees are subject to certain conditions and supervisory measures aimed at gradually re-integrating them into society.

To achieve these goals, parolees are allocated to a supervision official of the department, who ensures that they are monitored regularly and receive the necessary support and guidance to promote their reintegration.



Contravention of parole conditions leads to interventions such as correctional programmes, stricter conditions, increased supervision and revocation of parole. Based on their risk profile, there are five supervision phases for parolees. The conditions for parole usually include periods of house detention, restriction to a specific magisterial district, attendance of correctional programmes and performance of community service.

Monitoring includes visits to the parolee's home and workplace, telephonic liaison and consultations at the Community Corrections Office.

Correctional supervision

Correctional supervision refers to several alternative sentencing or placement options available to courts, and entails the sentencing or placement of offenders under correctional supervision for a certain period.

Some offenders may have to serve a short period of incarceration before their sentences can be converted to correctional supervision. Correctional supervision provides the opportunity to deal with some offenders outside the walls of correctional centres. Offenders who pose a real threat to the community and who have chosen crime as a career, however, do not qualify for correctional supervision.

Offenders under correctional supervision have to report to a supervision official who ensures compliance with conditions such as:

- house detention
- free community service
- victim's compensation
- restriction to a magisterial district
- prohibition of alcohol use or abuse
- participation in certain correctional programmes.

If the conditions are violated, offenders can be referred to the court for consideration of an alternative sentence or, in certain cases, correctional supervision can be revoked in which case they have to serve the remainder of their sentences in correctional centres.

Persons awaiting trial may also be placed under correctional supervision. Because little is known about their criminal record prior to conviction, they are classified under the supervision category. Persons accused of a crime can also, instead of bail or in addition to bail, be placed under the department's supervision while awaiting trial or sentencing.

Day parole

A small number of offenders are placed on day parole either because they are institutionalised or

they have a doubtful prognosis and pose a high security risk to the community. These offenders are gradually resettled into society as a bridging measure, instead of being released upon termination of sentence. Day parolees have to comply with certain conditions.

Contravention leads to withdrawal of privileges, stricter conditions or suspension of day parole.

Under certain circumstances, offenders whose parole has already been approved may be allowed to spend weekends at home for the consolidation of family ties, preparation for release or for reasons that involve the reintegration of the offender into society.

Offenders may also be granted compassionate leave, for them to attend close family members' funerals.

The offender has to observe strict conditions, which include abstaining from drugs and alcohol, being in the care of a specific person and at a specific address, personally accepting liability for any event that might result in expenses for the State, and not being found guilty of any misconduct.

Employee organisations

Employees of the Department of Correctional Services subscribe to the Labour Relations Act, 1995 (Act 66 of 1995).

Two labour unions are active in the department, namely the Police and Prisons' Civil Rights Union and the Public Servants' Association.

Because the department renders an essential service, its members are not allowed to strike.

Good governance

The department approved a three-pronged anti-corruption strategy in 2003 in line with the Public Service Anti-Corruption Strategy, which focuses on:

- preventing and investigating corruption, fraud, theft and serious maladministration
- sanctioning officials found guilty of corruption, fraud, theft or serious maladministration.

The department has complied fully with government's Minimum Anti-Corruption Capacity requirement, and of utmost importance is the agility displayed by units in the department tasked with combating and preventing fraud and corrupt activities within the department. Its policy frameworks include a fraud-prevention policy, a whistle-blowing policy and an anti-corruption policy. The department took a bold step in 2006 by naming and shaming those officials who were found guilty of fraud and corruption.

To strengthen its anti-corruption mechanisms and security in its facilities, the department plans to set up its own Vetting Fieldwork Unit together with the National Intelligence Agency.

The department's efforts at building an ethical and secure correctional system are ongoing, as evidenced by the launch of anti-corruption and ethics management training in 2006, which equipped 880 managers with the skills needed to improve work ethics and fight corruption.

The R4-million training programme comprises nine modules that include:

- ethos in correctional services
- evolution of corruption and factors contributing to corruption
- understanding corruption and factors contributing to it
- understanding anti-corruption strategies
- risk management
- conflict, diversity and change management
- ethical reasoning and decision-making
- professional ethics for the Public Service.

This training was expected to be rolled out to lower levels during the 2007/08 financial year.

To combat fraud and corruption, the department has forged partnerships with external agencies such as the SIU, the DSO and SAPS.

The results of these partnerships include:

- A new code of conduct that closed gaps in the disciplinary system.
- A task team with regional representatives being established to accelerate the implementation of the disciplinary recommendations of the Jali Commission that were tabled in 2006. As a result of the Jali Commission, the Departmental Investigation Unit investigated over 100 officials.
- Also emanating from the Jali Commission recommendations, the Scorpions arrested

120 persons as part of investigations into medical-aid fraud amounting to R45 million. By mid-2007, the disciplinary hearings of 96 officials were in the final stages.

- The department's internal anti-corruption campaign was expected to kick off in 2007 to strengthen the move to a more secure and ethical correctional system.

International co-operation

The Department of Correctional Services works closely with organisations such as the American Correctional Association and the International Corrections and Prisons Association (ICPA).

The department endorsed the Charter of Fundamental Rights for Prisoners at the 11th UN Congress on Crime Prevention and Criminal Justice in April 2005.

It will continue to participate in multilateral forums such as ICPA, the Conference of Commissioners for East and Southern Africa and the UN.

In conjunction with other African states, the department is developing a programme that will result in full compliance with the UN Minimum Standards on the Treatment of Offenders. Participation in bilateral commissions and joint commissions of co-operation has resulted in the department hosting several delegations from various countries, as well as the Commission on Human and Peoples' Rights under the AU.

Ministers responsible for prison management and correctional services in SADC countries are continuing efforts to implement the July 2003 Johannesburg Declaration on Corrections.

The declaration seeks to include the field of corrections in the work of regional and continental multilateral structures.

Acknowledgements

Beeld

BuaNews

Commission on Gender Equality

Department of Correctional Services

Department of Justice and Constitutional Development

Estimates of National Expenditure 2007, published by National Treasury

Public Protector

South African Law Reform Commission

www.dcs.gov.za

www.financialmail.co.za

www.gov.za

www.idasa.org.za

www.southafrica.info

Suggested reading

Altbeker, A. *The Dirty Work of Democracy: A Year on the Streets with the SAPS*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2005.

Asmal, K, Chidester, D and Lubisi C. eds. *Legacy of Freedom: The ANC's Human Rights Tradition: Africans' Claims in South Africa, the Freedom Charter, the Women's Charter and Other Human Rights Landmarks of the African National Congress*. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2005.

Bennett, TW. *Customary Law in South Africa*. Cape Town: Juta, 2004.

Bezuidenhout, C, and Joubert, S. eds. *Child and Youth Misbehaviour in South Africa: A Holistic View*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2003.

Bizos, G. *Odyssey to Freedom*. Johannesburg: Random House, 2007.

Burchell, J and Erasmus, A. *Criminal Justice in a New Society: Essays in Honour of Solly Leeman*. Cape Town: Juta, 2004.

Burger, J. *Strategic Perspectives on Crime and Policing in South Africa*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2006.

Dawes, A. et al, eds. *Monitoring Child Well-Being: A South Africa Rights-Based Approach*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press, 2007.

Doxater, E and Villa-Vicenco, C. eds. *Repairing the Unforgivable: Reparations, Restoration and Renewal*. Cape Town: David Philip, 2003.

Doxater, E and Villa-Vicenco, C. eds. *Provocation of Amnesty: Memory, Justice and Impunity*. Cape Town: David Philip, 2003.

Foster, D, Haupt, P and de Beer, M. *The Theatre of Violence: Narratives of Protagonists in the South African Conflict*. Cape Town: Institute of Justice and Reconciliation, 2005.

Gibson, JL. *Overcoming Apartheid: Can Truth Reconcile a Divided Nation?* Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2004.

Glauber, I. *The Death Penalty as a Deterrent*. Johannesburg: The Author, 2004.

Grogan, J. *Dismissal, Discrimination and Unfair Labour Practices*. Cape Town: Juta, 2005.

Hund, J. *Witchcraft, Violence and the Law in South Africa*. Pretoria: Protea, 2003.

Kaliski, S, ed. *Psycholegal Assessment in South Africa*. Cape Town: OUP SA, 2006.

Landis, H and Grossett L. *Employment and the Law: A Practical Guide for the Workplace*. Cape Town: Juta, 2005. 2nd ed.

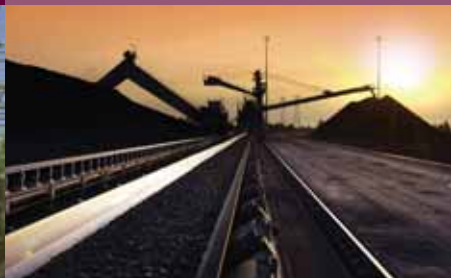
Lange, C and Wessels, J. *The Right to Know: South Africa's Promotion of Administrative Justice and Access to Information Acts*. Cape Town: Siberink, 2004.

Lewis, HP. *God's Gangsters: The History, Language, Rituals, Secrets and Myths of South Africa's Prison Gangs*. Cape Town: Ihilihili Press, 2006.

- Maxwell, E and Mogwe, A. *In the Shadow of the Noose*. Gaborone: Ditshwanelo, 2006.
- McQuoid-Mason, D. ed. *Street Law South Africa: Practical Law for South Africans*. Cape Town: Juta, 2004.
- Ndung'u, S. *The Right to Dissent: Freedom of Expression, Assembly and Demonstration in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Freedom of Expression Institute, 2003.
- Oduyoye, M and Kanyoro, M. *The Will to Arise: Women, Tradition and the Church in Africa*. Pietermaritzburg: Cluster Publications, 2006.
- Oomen, B. *Chiefs in South Africa: Law, Power and Culture in the Post-Apartheid Era*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2005.
- Pickover, M. *Animal Rights*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2006.
- Richter, L. et al. eds. *Sexual Abuse of Young Children in Southern Africa*. Pretoria: HSRC, 2004.
- Truth and Reconciliation Commission of South Africa Report*, Cape Town: Juta, 2003.
- Turrell, R. *White Mercy: A Study of the Death Penalty in South Africa*. Westport. Cape Town: Praeger, 2004.
- Vale, P. *Security and Politics in South Africa: The Regional Dimension*. Cape Town: University of Cape Town Press, 2003.
- Van der Walt, J. *Law and Sacrifice: Towards a Post-Apartheid Theory of Law*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2006.



SA YEARBOOK 2007/08 | MINERALS, ENERGY AND GEOLOGY



The aim of the Department of Minerals and Energy is to formulate and implement an overall minerals and energy policy to ensure the optimum use of minerals and energy resources.

The Hydrocarbons and Energy Planning Branch is responsible for coal, gas, liquid fuels, energy efficiency, renewable energy, designated national authority and energy planning, data and statistics, the roll-out of integrated energy centres (IECs) and the establishment of a national energy database.

The objective of the Mineral Development Branch is to transform the minerals and mining industry, and to promote the sustainable development of the industry for the benefit of all South Africans.

The Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate (MHSI) is responsible for implementing mine health and safety legislation.

The Mineral Regulation Branch regulates the mining and minerals industry to achieve transformation and contribute to sustainable development.

Policy

Mining and minerals policy is based on the principles of the Freedom Charter, according to which the mineral wealth beneath the soil will be transferred to the ownership of the people as a whole.

The Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act (MPRDA), 2002 (Act 28 of 2002), has opened doors for the substantial and meaningful participation of black people in the exploration and exploitation of mineral resources. The MPRDA, 2002 enshrines equal access to mineral resources, irrespective of race, gender and creed.

By April 2007, the Department of Minerals and Energy had received 11 447 applications for various types of rights since the promulgation of the MPRDA, 2002 in April 2004. This number of applications is unprecedented in the history of mining in South Africa.

Aided by the Department of Minerals and Energy, skills development is taking place in the jewellery sector to enable people to take leadership roles and the provinces to play supporting roles. This follows the introduction of the Diamonds Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 29 of 2005), the Diamonds Second Amendment Act, 2005 (Act 30 of 2005), and the Precious Metals Act 2005 (Act 37 of 2005). These amendments will see a more representative South

African Diamonds and Precious Metals Regulator replacing the South African Diamond Board. The Diamond Exchange and Export Centre will monitor the export of diamonds, while the State Diamond Trader will make diamonds available exclusively to beneficiaries of diamonds. It will open in Johannesburg initially and move to Kimberley in the Northern Cape later.

The Precious Metals Act, 2005 provides for the acquisition of smelting, refining, using and disposing of precious metals, with the emphasis on adding increased value.

Implementation of the Mineral and Petroleum Resources Development Act, 2002

The Department of Minerals and Energy's efforts to pursue and consolidate gender empowerment in the mining industry have culminated in the revitalisation of the South African Women in Mining Association (SAWIMA) and the official launch of their national offices in Johannesburg. Through the SAWIMA, the department will continue to lend assistance to women in mining to ensure that this sector does not continue to be the domain of men only.

Youth in Energy and Mining was established in 2006 to facilitate youth programmes and reach out to as many youth in the country as possible. To further fulfil the objectives of the Joint Initiative on Priority Skills Acquisition (Jipsa), the Council for Geoscience, the Central Energy Fund (CEF) Group of Companies and the University of Fort Hare are collaborating on a skills-development programme in the fields of geology, chemistry and economics.

Furthermore, the department uses the MPRDA, 2002, through its requirements for a social and labour plan, to intensify the struggle against poverty.

Housing projects, schools and clinics are initiatives undertaken by mining companies in an effort to fulfil the criteria as set out in the Act.

Mine environmental management

Mine environmental management, which forms an integral part of the management of mineral and petroleum resources, focuses on:

- Strengthening enforcement to prevent mining



legacies from occurring. This relates to the effective implementation of the MPRDA, 2002 and other short- and long-term strategies to strengthen environmental enforcement.

- Identifying mine-pollution “hot spots” and implementing regional closure strategies to direct operational mines in addressing and managing pollution and mining waste within these areas.
- Rehabilitating abandoned and ownerless mines in accordance with a priority ranking system and a dedicated database.

Considering the extent of environmental damage caused by mining in South Africa, the department has entered into a five-year agreement with the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR), the Council for Geoscience and Mintek to find solutions for long-term rehabilitation and environmental management.

The need for a national strategy dealing with derelict and ownerless mines is evident in the more than 8 000 entries on the database for such mines in South Africa. A ranking system has been developed to prioritise the rehabilitation of these mines and a dedicated geographic information system and an environmental auditing system have been finalised to strengthen environmental decision-making and the enforcement of environmental regulations. These systems will be integrated with the existing national mining promotion system.

Mining outcomes of the World Summit on Sustainable Development (WSSD)

Representatives from nearly 200 countries assembled at the WSSD in Johannesburg in September 2002 to reaffirm their commitment to sustainable development.

As a follow-up to the WSSD mining outcomes, the Department of Minerals and Energy finalised a strategy with specific programmes, plans and time frames to achieve the objectives and priorities regarding the implementation of the Johannesburg Plan of Implementation (JPI).

The WSSD outcomes for mining include:

- eradicating poverty
- changing unsustainable patterns of consumption and production
- protecting and managing the natural resource base for economic and social development
- globalisation
- initiatives for sustainable development in Africa.

International processes and structures such as the African Mining Partnership (AMP) have been established to champion, among other things, the

mining and mineral-related initiatives of the New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad). The Global Mining Dialogue was also established to promote WSSD mining outcomes in the international arena.

The fourth AMP plenary, held in Pretoria in February 2007, further advanced collective efforts by African mining ministers to find the best ways to alleviate poverty in Africa via mining. Specific small-scale projects were identified so that their feasibility could be evaluated. During the AMP's plenary, the Association of African Geological Surveys (AAGS) was launched. Its members expected to publish the Council for Geoscience geological map for the Southern African Development Community (SADC) in 2007/08, which AAGS members created.

South Africa's Cabinet agrees that African countries have to develop and adopt a common position on environmental matters that highlights the links between eradicating poverty, sustainable development and maintaining the long-term integrity of natural resources. The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism is taking the lead in developing South Africa's position, including addressing issues covered by the Kyoto Protocol and targets set at the WSSD.

The dialogue was instrumental in establishing the Intergovernmental Forum on Mining, Minerals, Metals and Sustainable Development. The 15th session of the United Nations (UN) Commission on Sustainable Development (CSD), met in New York from 30 April to 11 May 2007. The CSD's mandate is to follow-up, monitor and report on the JPI.

Sustainable development on the African continent

The Intergovernmental Memorandum of Understanding (MoU) on the Western Power Corridor Project (Westcor) was signed in October 2004. This Nepad flagship programme intends to pilot the use of hydroelectric energy of the Inga rapids site in the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC). It will ensure the security of supply in the SADC. The participating utilities are those of Namibia, South Africa, the DRC, Botswana and Angola. A joint-venture company has been formed to initiate studies determining the viability of the project and to build, own and operate the infrastructure.

Black Economic Empowerment (BEE)

The Mining Charter, which is founded on an accord reached between government and the private mining sector, espouses the cause of BEE.

In June 2007, the Department of Minerals and Energy announced that the South African Supplier Development Agency (Sasda) would be incorporated into the CEF Group of Companies as part of broader initiatives to accelerate the empowerment of BEE suppliers in the oil industry.

Sasda was established in March 2005 by the department in conjunction with the seven major oil companies which constitute the South African Petroleum Industry Association (Sapia). Sasda's brief is to facilitate increased access by BEE suppliers to procurement opportunities in the petroleum industry, in compliance with the Liquid Fuels Charter of 2000. One of its key focus areas is the development of black suppliers to meet the industry's required standards.

Mining industry

The commodities boom of 2005 continued into 2006. Preliminary figures for 2006 indicated that mineral sales grew by 36,7% to R195,2 billion, and those of processed minerals grew at a moderate 14,5%. Unlike in other mining countries, this strong growth in mineral sales was initially not matched by any meaningful fixed capital investment.

A marked improvement has been noted in this area. New BEE-compliant mines have been opened, especially in Limpopo and North West; and International Ferrometal South Africa was officially opened near Brits in the North West.

Reports about the lack of direct investment in the sector resulted in the department conducting international roadshows to better understand the

obstacles to investments. Together with the Chamber of Mines and the National Union of Mineworkers, a desktop study was conducted that indicated some of the causes of this lack of investment.

An all-inclusive indaba in June 2007 discussed all the aspects of the industry to develop concrete strategies. The results from the indaba were fed into the work of the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA).

South Africa produces 14% of the world's gold, and has 41% of the world's known reserves. It is estimated that 21 000 tons (t) of undeveloped resources – about one fifth of the world's unmined gold – still remains. These ores are increasingly difficult to exploit due to the great depths where they are situated and their fairly low-grade quality.

Over the past few years, South African mining houses have transformed into large focused mining companies that include Anglo Platinum, AngloGold, De Beers, Implats and Iscor.

In April 2007, the Minister of Public Enterprises, Mr Alec Erwin, signed a land-settlement agreement with the Richtersveld community for the return of the 84 000 hectares of diamond-bearing land on the Namaqualand coast. The deed settlement became effective in October 2007. It will make the Richtersveld community owners of Alexkor, the State diamond-mining company, and will allow the community to use Alexkor as a commercial vehicle for their own development.

The landmark settlement agreement includes:

- restoring the land claimed
- restoring the mineral rights by way of transfer of Alexkor's land-mining rights
- a lump sum developmental grant of R50 million
- R190-million compensation over three years as reparation payment
- transferring agricultural and mariculture assets
- establishing a formal township at Alexander Bay
- environmental rehabilitation.

Mineworkers

According to the Chamber of Mines, the South African mining sector in 2005:

- Directly employed about 442 911 workers, compared with 457 371 in 2004. It was estimated that another 147 673 workers were employed in



In February 2007, the Department of Minerals and Energy and mining group De Beers announced an agreement aimed at creating an even more empowered and sustainable diamond-mining and exploration industry in the country.

In terms of this agreement, the West Coast operations of Alexkor and De Beers Consolidated Mines' Namaqualand Mines will be amalgamated into a new, stand-alone diamond-mining company. This independent and empowered company will, among other things, capitalise on synergies and realise the full economic potential of the West Coast diamond-mining industry. As a first step, De Beers issued a 20% stake in its Namaqualand Mines to the department.



associated industries that either supplied products to, or used products from the mining industry (the multiplier linkages of the industry). Around five million people are directly dependent for their daily subsistence on mine employees.

- Accounted for 6,2% of those employed in the non-agricultural formal sector of the economy and 8% of the total private sector of non-agricultural employment.
- Paid R36,4 billion in wages and benefits to employees, which accounted for about 5,4% of the total compensation paid to all employed people in the country. This contributed substantially to domestic demand in the South African economy.

Mine health and safety

The MHSI, established in terms of the Mine Health and Safety Act (MHSA), 1996 (Act 29 of 1996), is responsible for protecting the health and safety of mineworkers or people affected by mining activities.

The activities of the MHSI focus on achieving a safer and healthier mining industry for all.

The MHSI works closely with industry and worker unions to reduce the incidence of mine accidents, with stakeholders committing themselves to continuously reducing fatalities by at least 20% a year. The inspectorate is also pursuing a strategy to eliminate silicosis and noise-induced hearing loss or occupational deafness by 2013, and to reduce the social costs of diseases and injuries to vulnerable communities, in particular.

Some 199 miners died in mine accidents in 2006 and about 4 000 people were injured. The mining sector failed to achieve the targets agreed to in 2003, of reducing the fatality rate by at least 20% a year.

Further analysis shows that fatalities in the platinum sector dropped by 21%, but there is still room for improvement.

The Mini-Indaba on Seismicity and Rockbursts was held in October 2007.

The department continues to work with security forces to develop a strategy of combating illegal mining, which is one of the biggest threats to mineworkers' health and safety.

The biennial Mine Health and Safety Council Summit was held on 5 October 2007 in Johannesburg, where the status of occupational health and safety in mines was discussed, including the progress on achieving the milestones agreed to in 2003.

South Africa is committed to combating the HIV and AIDS pandemic in the mining industry. The Mining Industry Tripartite HIV and AIDS Committee observed the 2007 World AIDS Day.

Mine Qualifications Authority (MQA)

The MQA was established as a sector education and training authority under the leadership of the Department of Labour. The MQA aims to facilitate the development of appropriate knowledge and skills in the mining, minerals and jewellery sectors to:

- enable the development and transformation of the sector
- contribute to the health, safety and competitiveness of the sector
- improve access to quality education and training for all
- redress past inequalities in education and training.

The MQA is responsible for:

- developing and monitoring the implementation of a sector skills plan
- registering skills-development facilitators at workplaces within the sector
- approving work-skills plans and annual training reports of companies in the sector
- developing unit standards and qualifications
- maintaining the quality of standards, qualifications and learning provision in the sector
- establishing, registering, administering and promoting learnerships
- administering existing apprenticeship systems
- administering and disbursing skills-development levies.

The MQA has introduced several initiatives to address skills shortages that specifically aim to support transformation across the mining and minerals sector. Two strategic documents support BEE in the mining industry. Firstly, the service-level agreement signed with the Department of Labour commits to targets set by the National Skills Development Strategy that are underpinned by equity principles aimed at accelerating Broad-Based BEE and employment equity.

Therefore, of all people trained, 85% should be black, 54% women and 4% people with disabilities.

The second strategic document that supports BEE in the mining industry is the MQA Mining Charter Support Strategy. In support of the Mining Charter, the MQA has introduced the Executive Preparation Programme, the Graduate Development Programme, a bursary scheme (including support for undergraduate practical training), the

Universities Employment Equity Project, and support for small-scale miners. The MQA also supports small, medium and micro-enterprises in the sector through grants for training in small-scale mining, mineral beneficiation, jewellery manufacturing and diamond processing.

The human resources development guidelines provide for enhanced opportunities to be made available to historically disadvantaged individuals (HDIs) within the mining and minerals sector. They specify that by 2010, 40% of managers controlling the full spectrum of activities should be from historically disadvantaged backgrounds and women must occupy 10% of all positions.

Consequently, the MQA Executive Preparation Programme (EPP) was created to aid HDIs. Its focus is on developing strategic and in-depth understanding of the mining and minerals sector in some 26 learners per six-month term.

The Graduate Development Programme was also introduced for unemployed graduates from universities of technology who had qualifications and skills that were scarce and critical according to the Mineral Sector Skills Plan, but who needed to gain work experience.

By August 2007, 103 candidates had completed the executive programme and 26 had graduated, and 200 graduate development programme candidates had received letters recognising their participation.

Chamber of Mines

Established in 1889, the Chamber of Mines consists of independent mining-finance corporations, individual mines and mining companies. The members account for more than 85% of South Africa's mineral output.

The Chamber of Mines provides an advisory and service function to its members and to the industry on a co-operative basis. It covers areas such as industrial relations; education and training; security and healthcare; technical, legal and communication services; and the provision of statistical data.

Subsidiary companies provide training, examination administration, visits to operational gold and diamond mines, the monthly newspaper *Mining News*, mine-rescue, environmental management, and centres for human development

to the South African mining industry and, in some instances, also to customers outside the mining industry.

Other areas of industry networking include:

- the Employment Bureau of Africa (Teba)
- Teba-Bank, which provides efficient and cost-effective banking services for mineworkers
- Rand Mutual Assurance, which provides compensation benefits for accidental injury or workers' death while on duty.
- Rand Refinery Limited, the world's largest gold refinery
- the Nuclear Fuels Corporation (Nufcor)
- Colliery Technical Services, which includes the Colliery Training College
- Rescue Drilling Unit
- Collieries Environmental Control Services
- Mintek, which specialises in mineral processing, extractive metallurgy and related areas.

Junior and small-scale mining

The Department of Minerals and Energy is committed to ensuring that the small-scale mining sector becomes sustainable.

In 2005, the department created the Small-Scale Mining Board with the mandate of finding and implementing solutions to overcome identified limitations within the small-scale mining sector.

The board will give priority to quality projects that will serve the poor and contribute to economic development.

The small-scale mining sector includes:

- artisanal or subsistence mining operations (new entrants)
- suboptimal formal mining operations
- entrepreneurs with start-up capital.

The department's Directorate: Small-Scale Mining helps aspiring small-scale miners:

- to establish a legal entity
- to identify mineral deposits
- with environmental impact assessments (EIAs)
- with legal and contractual arrangements and mineral rights
- to calculate a reserve estimation of the selected deposits
- to carry out mining-feasibility studies
- to perform market studies
- to develop their mining equipment.

The Small-Scale Mining Board co-ordinates a substantial amount of expert capacity and experience, and specialises in planning and developing viable mining projects through its pre-feasibility stages.

The National Small-Scale Mining Development Framework also assists small-scale miners with the challenges they face. The small-scale mining sector contributes significantly to job creation in the mining industry.

It is estimated that about 1 000 jobs can be created for every seven to 10 sustainable small-scale mining projects given assistance. Experience has shown that just providing institutional support is inadequate. There is also a need to involve technical partners or business professionals to mentor each project to its completion.

The framework's target market for assistance comprises:

- illegal or unacceptable operations, which are legalised and converted into sustainable operations
- undercapitalised operations which require expansion or optimisation
- first-time entrepreneurs interested in new projects.

The South African Small-Scale Mining Chamber (SASSMC) was launched in July 2005 in Kimberley, Northern Cape.

The SASSMC represents the interests of small-scale miners nationally. Its objectives include positioning small-scale mining member companies to use available mining opportunities in and beyond South Africa's borders. It also aims to provide a model for small-scale mining that can be used as a basis to link up with the SADC and the AMP.

The department continued supporting the development of small-scale mining and, for the first time, extended this support to jewellery-fabrication projects in 2007.

Both interventions contributed immensely to the Second Economy. Its annual budget of R21 million enabled the department to support four projects in Limpopo to the tune of R14, 6 million and three in KwaZulu-Natal at R7,2 million. In 2006, the department received more than 80 applications for financial assistance and expected the figure to double in 2007.

Mineral wealth

South Africa's mineral wealth is found in diverse geological formations, some of which are unique and extensive by world standards. Some of the country's minerals include:

- Gold – the unique and widespread Witwatersrand Basin yields some 96% of South Africa's gold output.
- Diamonds (in kimberlites, alluvial and marine deposits) – the country is among the world's top producers.
- Titanium – heavy mineral-sand occurrences containing titanium minerals are found along the coastline.
- Manganese – enormous reserves of manganese are found in the sedimentary rocks of the Transvaal Supergroup.
- Platinum-group metals (PGMs), chrome and vanadium – these minerals occur in the Bushveld Complex in Mpumalanga, Limpopo and North West. More than half of the world's chrome and platinum reserves are in this deposit.
- Bituminous coal and anthracite seams occur in the Karoo Basin in Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal, the Free State, Limpopo and the Eastern Cape.
- Copper, phosphate, titanium, iron, vermiculite and zirconium are found in the Phalaborwa Igneous Complex in Limpopo.

South Africa's mineral reserves, 2006

Commodity	Unit	Reserves	%	World ranking
Alumino-silicates	Kt	51	n/a	n/a
Antimony	t	200	6,4	4
Chrome ore	Kt	5 500	72,4	1
Coal	Mt	31 022	3,5	8
Copper	Kt	13	1,4	14
Fluorspar	Mt	80	16,7	2
Gold	t	36 000	40,1	1
Iron ore	Mt	1 500	0,9	9
Lead	Mt	3 000	2	7
Manganese ore	Kt	4 000	80	1
Phosphate rock	Kt	2 500	5	4
Platinum-group metals	Kg	70 000	87,7	1
Silver	t	n/a	n/a	n/a
Titanium minerals	Mt	220	18,3	2
Uranium	t	341	7,2	5
Vanadium	Kt	12 000	31	1
Vermiculite	Kt	80	40	2
Zinc metal	Kt	15	3,3	8
Zirconium	Kt	14	19,4	2

Mt=megaton, Kt=kiloton, t=ton, n/a=not available, Kg=Kilogram

Source: Minerals Bureau

South Africa's reserves of the following commodities are globally the highest, namely:

- manganese
- chromium
- PGMs
- gold
- alumino-silicates
- vanadium.

Due to the small domestic market for most commodities, South Africa's mineral industry is export-oriented. Alumino-silicates contribute 44%, ferrochromium 54%, chrome ore 57%, manganese ore 20,2% and ferromanganese 15,9% while vanadium and antimony also contribute significantly towards the export market.

South Africa is the world's largest exporter of these commodities, and of gold, zirconium and vermiculite. Other important export commodities include coal and titanium minerals.

Because of its vast mineral resource base, South Africa is, to a large degree, self-sufficient regarding the supply of minerals. However, some minerals and mineral products need to be imported.

South Africa's total sales of primary minerals increased to R142,8 billion in 2005. The value of exports of primary minerals in 2005 increased to R101,9 billion.

The Directorate: Mineral Economics (Minerals Bureau) of the Department of Minerals and Energy monitors and analyses all mineral commodities regarding South African and global supply and demand, marketing and market trends.

Gold

South African gold output fell 7,6% to 2,02 million ounces (62 807 kg) in the first three months of 2007 compared with the same period in 2006.



The National Hydrogen and Fuel Cells Technology Research Development and Innovation Strategy has been approved. Hydrogen and fuel cells are seen as energy solutions for the 21st century, enabling clean and efficient production of energy from a range of primary energy sources.

The transition to hydrogen is expected to reduce dependence on oil and gas and reduce carbon dioxide emissions. The strategy will enable government to support emerging research and development in this strategic field.

South Africa's gold production tumbled by 3,1% in the fourth quarter of 2006 to 68 118 kg, compared with the previous quarter.

The lowest levels of gold production since 1922 occurred in 2006, despite gold prices reaching multiyear record highs during the year.

On a year-on-year basis, the rate of decline rose to 9,3% in the fourth quarter compared with the 2,9% decline recorded in the third quarter of 2006.

The Chamber of Mine's members reported a quarter-on-quarter gold-mine production decline of 2,6% to 58 342 kg in the fourth quarter of 2006.

On a year-on-year basis, gold production declined by 10% in the last quarter of 2006, as the 4,9% increase in tons of ore milled was insufficient to compensate for the 14,2% decline in the average grade mined.

On 6 November 2007, the gold price rose to its highest level in nearly three decades after crude oil jumped more than a dollar on supply concerns.

The cost of spot gold hit an intraday high of US\$814,10 an ounce, its best level since January 1980, before slipping to US\$813,50/814,25 an ounce, higher than US\$808,80/809,60 late in New York.

Silver

Silver hit an intraday high of US\$14,84 an ounce early in November 2007, its highest level since mid-May 2006, before easing to US\$14,83/14,88.

Coal

In 2006, South African mines produced 246 million tons (Mt) of coal. Of this figure, 177 Mt was used locally, at a value of R16,2 billion, with export sales totalling 68,8 Mt at a value of R21,2 billion. South Africa has approximately 31 billion tons of recoverable coal reserves, making it the sixth-largest holder of coal reserves in the world.

Platinum-group metals

South Africa's PGM production increased by 9,6% to 302,9 t in 2005, while PGM revenue increased by 16,8% to US\$6,04 billion. The average platinum price for 2005 was 6% higher at US\$897/oz, while the average palladium price was 12,6% lower at US\$201/oz. World demand for platinum increased by 1,8% to 208,7 t in 2005.

Non-ferrous minerals

Refined copper, nickel, cobalt, titanium and zirconium concentrates dominate this sector, followed by zinc, lead and arsenic concentrates. The sector contributes some 12% and 4% respectively to total primary local sales and total primary export sales. About 44% of total revenue is from local sales for further added-value operations.

Ferrous minerals

This sector consists of manganese and chrome, and is dominated by iron ore. It has been a leading performer in the primary minerals industry in recent years, with revenue in dollar terms growing at about 10,3% annually. Demand depends on the state of the world's steel and stainless steel industries.

Export earnings from ferrous minerals increased by 70,45% from R4,84 billion in 2004 to R8,25 billion in 2005, despite higher dollar earnings being severely discounted by a much higher average rand/dollar exchange rate ratio for 2005. Higher prices also affected total ferrous sales, which rose by 45,2% to R11,63 billion.

Industrial minerals

This sector comprises a wide variety of mineral products with local sales accounting for over 85% of revenue. In dollar terms, domestic total sales increased by 19% to US\$925 million. In rand terms, local sales increased by 17% to R6 billion and export sales decreased by 5% to R1 billion.

During 2005, 83% of local sales comprised aggregate and sand (38%), limestone and lime (22%), phosphate-rock concentrate (data withheld) and sulphur (4%). Exports were dominated by dimension stone (26%), vermiculite (19%), andalusite (19%), fluorspar (22%) and phosphate-rock concentrate (data withheld).

Processed minerals

Ferro-alloys and aluminium dominate this sector, with solid support from titanium slag, phosphoric acid, vanadium, zinc metal and low-manganese pig-iron. Through investment in beneficiation, it has been the outstanding performer in the mineral industry over the last 20 years, with revenue in dollar terms growing by 6,3% annually.

Other minerals

This sector is dominated by diamonds, with support from hydrocarbon fuel, uranium oxide and silver. Revenue from these minerals increased by 6,5% to R125,2 billion in 2004.

New investment potential remains strong in this sector, which has recovered enormously through new investments in operations since 1994. This compensates for the rapid demise in the demand for uranium oxide in nuclear applications since the late 1980s.

Energy

The Department of Minerals and Energy's Energy Policy is based on the following key objectives:

- attaining universal access to energy by 2012
- providing accessible, affordable and reliable energy, especially to the poor
- diversifying primary energy sources and reducing dependency on coal
- good governance, which must also facilitate and encourage private-sector investments in the energy sector
- environmentally responsible energy provision.

South Africa's mineral production, 2006

Commodity	Unit	Reserves	%	World ranking
Aluminium	Kt	846	2,7	9
Alumino-silicates	Kt	228	36,4	1
Antimony	t	5 979	3,2	7
Chrome ore	Kt	7 494	38,7	1
Coal	Mt	245	4,9	5
Copper	Kt	97	0,7	16
Fluorspar	Mt	n/a	n/a	n/a
Gold	t	295	11,7	1
Iron ore	Mt	40	3	7
Lead	Mt	42,2	1,2	13
Manganese ore	Kt	4 612	13,3	2
Nickel	Kt	42,4	3,1	9
Phosphate rock	Kt	2 577	1,7	10
Platinum-group metals	Kg	303	56,7	1
Silver	t	88	0,4	17
Titanium minerals	Mt	952	19,8	2
Uranium	t	795	1,6	11
Vanadium	Kt	23	48	1
Vermiculite	Kt	210	39,6	1
Zinc metal	Kt	32,1	0,3	22
Zirconium minerals	Kt	n/a	n/a	n/a

Mt=megaton, Kt=kiloton, t=ton, n/a=not available, Kg=Kilogram

Source: Minerals Bureau

Estimates suggest that R107 billion will be needed between 2005 and 2009 to meet the country's growing energy needs. Eskom will invest R150 billion over the next five years. Some R23 billion is reserved for independent power producer (IPP) entrants.

In August 2007, Cabinet approved the Energy Security Strategy, a policy document that will change South Africa's approach to energy security.

The fuel shortages of 2005 and projected challenges coming out of studies conducted since then, as well as the blackouts that have hit the electricity supply industry raised the need for the strategy.

The strategy is presented in phases with phase one focusing on liquid-fuels issues, the energy security framework and the proposed energy planning approach. Phase two will address issues pertaining to electricity.

The approved strategy seeks to:

- secure adequate supplies of affordable energy for continued economic growth and development in the short term
- enable policy and decision-makers to make informed decisions on these complex interdependent energy outcomes in the medium term
- ensure that strategic planning and subsequent growth and development are sustainable in the long term.

Key elements of the policy include:

- Implementing the Integrated Energy Modelling and Planning Approach, which is aimed at

ensuring co-ordination and enhanced planning integration in dealing with future energy policy in support of achieving energy security.

- Publishing the Energy Security Master Plan. Phase one focuses on liquid fuels, and the Energy Security Master Plan and phase two, focuses on the short- to medium-term interventions in the electricity sector, as well as integration with the liquid-fuels sector.
- Improving Spoornet's operational efficiencies regarding its service to the liquid-fuels sector, by focusing on routes that allow for block trains/block loads, as well as the allocation of additional capacity to the Durban-Gauteng corridor.
- Improving operational efficiencies at ports, especially during periods of increased demand for imported crude oil or refined products in South Africa. This includes ensuring that back-of-port facilities are not used as part of refining operations.
- Promoting local refining as far as possible, with a particular preference for production from local resources, including those from South Africa's neighbouring states.
- Developing the Transnet Pipelines' new Multi-Products Pipeline, which is necessary to alleviate the identified capacity constraints in the petroleum supply chain by 2010.
- Promoting energy efficiency and other demand-side initiatives in all energy-demand sectors of the economy. This should be complemented by measures aimed at effectively managing interactions with the natural environment.



Eskom has a licence to build the country's first coal-fired power station in over 20 years.

The station, to be called Medupi, is located in Lephalale, Limpopo, and consists of six units with a 4 500-megawatt installed capacity.

The units will be commissioned between 2011 and 2015 at nine-month intervals.

The project will include supercritical boilers, which are able to operate at higher temperatures and pressures than older-generation boilers and, more importantly, with greater efficiency.

This is the first step towards a much-needed base load station for South Africa.

Energy in the economy

Energy comprises about 15% of South Africa's gross domestic product (GDP), and creates jobs for about 250 000 people. Eskom's total electricity sales had grown to 218 120 gigawatt/hour (GWh) by March 2007.

Contributing to this performance was high growth in sales volumes of 4,9% compared with the budget of 2,3%. The peak demand on the integrated system totalled 34 807 MW by June 2006. In 2001, total liquid-fuel sales grew by 0,3% to 20 934 million litres (Ml). These figures demonstrate the growth of the South African

economy and the importance of energy as a key driver of the country's economy.

This energy intensity is above average, with only 10 other countries having higher commercial primary energy intensities. It is largely a result of the economy's structure, with dominating large-scale, energy-intensive primary mineral beneficiation and mining industries.

Coal, as the major indigenous energy resource, is relied on for the generation of most of the country's electricity and a significant proportion of its liquid fuels. Diversification of the primary energy mix, which comprises 88% coal, is especially challenging.

South Africa has an abundance of low-cost coal, which means that reliable and inexpensive supplies are at hand. On the face of it, this facilitates Eskom's mandate of providing South Africa with affordable and reliable electricity.

Yet Eskom also has a duty to manage environmental impacts and has a responsibility to combat climate change.

Energy efficiency

The Energy-Efficiency Strategy, which was approved in March 2005, sets a national target for improving energy efficiency by 12% by 2015.

In June 2007, the Department of Minerals and Energy launched the Intensive Multimedia Energy-Efficiency Campaign in partnership with the Department of Public Enterprises, Eskom and other state organs. The campaign targets ordinary households and industrial consumers with a view to influencing prudent consumer behavioural patterns without negatively affecting the economy.

This intervention should yield enormous benefits in the form of lower energy demand, energy security being promoted, and a contribution to environmental conservation and savings for individual households.

All state-owned enterprises (SOEs) have been requested to make energy efficiency a part of their shareholders' compacts. In addition, large companies have joined forces with the Department of Minerals and Energy and Eskom, by signing an energy-efficiency accord, thus committing themselves to targets in the department's strategy.

By mid-2007, the Department of Minerals and Energy was making progress in implementing the national Energy-Efficiency Accord.

The CEF is expected to ensure that South Africa's energy is fully developed and used efficiently for the benefit of all South Africans. The CEF established two new energy bodies to deal with the country's energy challenges. These are the National

Energy Efficiency Agency (NEEA) and the South African National Energy Research Institute (Saneri).

The NEEA is a division of the CEF and will oversee the implementation of Eskom's Demand-Side Management (DSM) and other energy-efficiency projects.

The NEEA's initial focus will be on prioritising and recommending energy efficiency and DSM projects.

It will develop strategies to address the growing demand for all kinds of energy in South Africa. It will also create energy efficiency and DSM awareness campaigns to assist the public when purchasing energy-consuming equipment and appliances.

The NEEA will oversee the integration and co-ordination of training in existing energy-efficiency projects, and assist with skills transfer, capacity-building and the creation of additional jobs in the field of energy conservation.

In line with the national Energy-Efficiency Strategy, the NEEA will be subject to review every three years. Initially, it will operate under the CEF corporate umbrella, but is expected to develop its own unique identity as time progresses.

To assist households to be more energy-efficient, the department initiated an appliance-labelling campaign, starting with refrigerators. Labels on household appliances inform consumers how energy-efficient their appliances are. Labels will also be introduced for vehicles to indicate the vehicle's fuel consumption and its carbon-dioxide emissions.

Saneri is designed to generate new ideas to develop practical guidelines for taking advantage of the natural resources of clean and renewable energy.



In June 2007, the Minister of Minerals and Energy, Ms Buyelwa Sonjica, launched two youth programmes in partnership with Anglo American and Xstrata Mining. She also signed a memorandum of understanding with the Umsobomvu Youth Fund to assist youth who want to pursue entrepreneurial projects in minerals and energy.

These programmes are industry-supported government initiatives to intensify the participation of youth in the minerals and energy sector.

The department has initiated projects and programmes focusing on youth-development programmes in partnership with Youth in Energy and Mining and Industry. The programme targets youth who have an interest in the minerals and energy sectors, skills development, procurement, beneficiation, enterprise development and small-scale mining. Xstrata Mining has set aside R1 million for skills-development training programmes.

Saneri is a subsidiary of the CEF, and will be responsible for facilitating skills development and undertaking research and technology development that will ensure that South Africa's energy resources are used and optimised. The research institute will be based at the CEF's head offices in Rosebank, Johannesburg.

Eskom launched a DSM, which is intended to reduce demand by approximately 3 000 MW by 2012 and a further 5 000 MW by 2025. The programme's objective is to alleviate imminent supply constraints and obviate the need for more costly supply options. Eskom will pursue energy-saving measures nationally, following the success of a campaign that saved about 500 MW a day in 2006 in the Western Cape during power shortages in winter.

Energy statistics

Detailed, complete, timely and reliable statistics are essential to monitor the energy situation in South Africa. In addition, energy statistics on supply, trade, stocks, transformation and demand are the basis for any sound policy decisions.

The Department of Minerals and Energy, in collaboration with Statistics South Africa, is responsible for providing energy data and statistics.

It has initiated a programme to strengthen the expertise and experience of the department's staff to be able to collect, verify, analyse and publish energy statistics. In addition, it intends to reduce the backlog in providing energy balances to one year.

Energy statistics are available from publications such as the *Energy Digest* and *Energy Price Report*, as well as in electronic format and on the department's website.

The department, through the Energy Bill, intends to make the provision of energy data mandatory.

Integrated Energy Planning (IEP)

IEP involves estimating how much energy all consumers (e.g. industry or households) will need in future to deliver certain services, and then identifying a mix of appropriate sources and forms of energy to meet these needs in the most efficient and socially beneficial manner.

In terms of the *Energy White Paper, 1988*, the department will ensure that service-providers and energy suppliers adopt an integrated resource-planning approach for large investment decisions, in terms of which comprehensive evaluations of the economic, social and environmental implications of all feasible supply- and demand-side investments will have to be undertaken.

The Department of Minerals and Energy published IEP1 in 2003, and has commissioned the development of the National Integrated Energy Modelling System.

The system is expected to be in place in 2009, and will allow for data capturing and the development of a long-term energy plan.

Integrated Energy Centres Programme

The department, in partnership with municipalities, oil companies and other stakeholders, is establishing IECs countrywide. The main objective is to bring affordable and sustainable energy services and information closer to poor communities.

Underlying this is a strong social-responsibility drive aimed at poverty alleviation, job creation and capacity-building.

By April 2007, there were five operational IECs, namely, Kgalagadi IEC in Kuruman, Northern Cape; Caba Mdeni IEC in Matatiele, Eastern Cape; Moshaweng IEC in Laxey, Northern Cape; Eshane IEC in Greytown, KwaZulu-Natal; and Mutale IEC, Limpopo. Other IECs are at various stages of development.

The department has approved a sustainability strategy and roll-out plan to establish more IECs until 2015, targeting the nodal areas first, followed by peri-urban and urban areas.

The department hosted an IEC investment conference in October 2006 and invited potential partners from various oil companies and other energy institutions to attend. These partnerships will roll out the plan to establish more of these centres.

IECs contribute to job creation both directly and indirectly by employing permanent staff and village vendors, and contribute to cost-savings by the community at large by bringing energy sources and services to them, thereby reducing transport costs.

By mid-2007, a strategy and roll-out plan to establish more IECs had been approved.

Energy demand by the economic subsector

Households

Energy consumed by households represents some 17% of the country's net use. Most household energy is obtained from fuel wood (50% of net household energy), primarily in rural areas, with the remainder obtained from coal (18%), illuminating paraffin (7%) and a small amount from liquid petroleum gas (LPG).

Currently, South Africa produces over 10 000 t of this commodity a year. The total sales of the product generate turnover of close to R2 billion. LPG consumption has been growing at an average of 4% over the past few years. South African LPG consumers include commercial, industrial and households.

LPG can also be used by low-income households in both rural and urban areas in South Africa.

The number of households with access to electricity has almost doubled since 1995. In that year, the number of households with access to electricity was 4,47 million. This number increased to 7,73 million in 2001 and stood at 9,56 million in 2006. Electricity for lighting has increased across South Africa with 80% of households with access to electricity.

Coal

South Africa's indigenous energy resource base is dominated by coal. Internationally, coal is the most widely used primary fuel, accounting for about 36% of the total fuel consumption of the world's electricity production.

Coal meets about 88% of South Africa's primary energy needs. Eskom announced its intention to begin diversifying its primary energy mix (using less coal) five years ago. By mid-2007, it was building open-cycle gas turbines at Atlantis and Mossel Bay, of which 1 029 MW was expected to be commissioned. In addition, Eskom plans to build a 100-MW wind facility in the near future, pending licensing approvals, and will upgrade the Gariep Hydroelectric Power Station (80 MW). Feasibility studies continue regarding other renewable-energy and gas-plant initiatives.

Many of the deposits can be exploited at extremely favourable costs and, as a result, a large coal-mining industry has developed.

In addition to the extensive use of coal in the domestic economy, some 28% of South Africa's

production is exported internationally, mainly through the Richards Bay Coal Terminal, making South Africa the fifth-largest coal-exporter in the world.

South Africa's coal is obtained from collieries ranging from among the largest in the world to small-scale producers. Operating collieries decreased to 60 during 2006. Of these, a relatively small number of large-scale producers supply coal primarily to electricity and synthetic fuel producers. About 46,5% of South African coal mining is done underground and about 53,5% is produced by opencast methods.

The coal-mining industry is highly concentrated, with six companies, namely Anglo Coal, BHP Billiton, Sasol Mining, Eyesizwe Coal, Kumba Coal and Xstrata Coal accounting for 90% of the saleable coal production. The eight-largest mines account for 61% of the output.

South African coal for local electricity production is among the cheapest in the world. The beneficiation of coal, particularly for export, results in more than 65 Mt of coal discards being produced annually.

The remainder of South Africa's coal production feeds the various local industries. About 109 Mt is used for electricity generation; 44 Mt for petrochemical industries such as Sasol; 9,7 Mt for general industry; and 5,7 Mt for the metallurgical industry. Coal merchants buy 8,4 Mt to sell locally or abroad.

The key role played by South Africa's coal reserves in the economy is illustrated by the fact that Eskom ranks first as a steam-coal user and seventh as an electricity generator in the world. Sasol is the largest coal-to-chemicals producer.

Total discards on the surface could reach more than two billion tons by 2020, should none of this material be used. As a result, the Department of Minerals and Energy is investigating ways to promote and encourage the economic use of discards.

Environmental concerns pose the main challenge to coal as an energy source. Not only does the burning of coal cause air pollution, but the extraction of coal also affects the environment negatively. The department and coal-mining industry are fostering the introduction of clean coal technologies in South Africa.

Eskom has successfully commissioned an underground coal-gasification pilot plant next to Majuba Power Station in Mpumalanga. The underground coal-gasification process uses a matrix of wells drilled into the coal bed.

Air is injected and the coal is ignited underground, thus producing a synthetic gas which

is harvested and used as fuel for either boilers or turbines. Gas from the pilot plant was successfully flared in January 2007, demonstrating that the process works.

The technology promises a commercially competitive combustible gas, and has synergies with conventional mining, that would enable mines to exploit coal reserves that could not normally be mined. This application is a first for Africa and the frontrunner in terms of Eskom's research into clean coal technologies.

Nuclear

The nuclear sector in South Africa is mainly governed by the Nuclear Energy Act, 1999 (Act 46 of 1999), and the National Nuclear Regulator (NNR) Act, 1999 (Act 47 of 1999). The Department of Minerals and Energy administers these acts. The Department of Health administers the Hazardous Substances Act, 1973 (Act 15 of 1973), related to groups III and IV hazardous substances.

Approval of the Nuclear Energy Policy and Strategy is expected to result in the creation of many jobs and a boost to the economy. The document proposes the increased use of nuclear energy to supplement current energy sources.

Nuclear energy is likely to contribute 15% of South Africa's energy in the next 30 years. If the strategy is approved, an extra 10 000 MW could be added to the current 39 000 MW in 10 years. This would entail recapitalising certain nuclear agencies, financing others and setting up new ones.

The draft document sets out a phased approach to creating a nuclear industry. Infrastructure would be maintained and upgraded until 2010. Thereafter, up to 2015, new nuclear power plants will be constructed and will become operational in 2025.

The document also proposes that enriched uranium be sold internationally, allowing the country to compete in the global nuclear market.

The following main organisations are directly involved in the nuclear sector:

- The Department of Minerals and Energy plays a leading governance role regarding nuclear technology, non-proliferation and safety. The Minister of Minerals and Energy is the executive authority responsible for overseeing the Nuclear

Energy Corporation of South Africa (Necsa) and the NNR.

- Necsa undertakes and promotes research and development (R&D) in the fields of nuclear energy, radiation sciences and technology, medical-isotope manufacturing, nuclear liabilities management, waste management and decommissioning. Necsa's reactor-produced radioisotopes are exported to more than 50 countries.
- The NNR oversees safety regulation of nuclear installations and activities involving radioactive material at Necsa's Pelindaba site, Vaalputs Radioactive Waste Disposal Facility, the Koeberg Nuclear Power Station, certain mines and other small users.
- The Department of Health (Directorate: Radiation Control) issues licences for group III hazardous substances (electronic-product generating X-rays, other ionising beams, electrons, neutrons or other particle radiation or non-ionising radiation) and group IV hazardous substances (radioactive material outside a nuclear installation, which does not form part of or is used or intended to be used in the nuclear fuel cycle, and which is used or intended to be used for medical, scientific, agricultural, commercial or industrial purposes).
- The Koeberg Nuclear Power Station is responsible for about 6,5% of total electricity generation. It is owned by Eskom, which reports to the Minister of Public Enterprises.
- iThemba Laboratories is responsible for medical isotopes and medical applications. This public entity falls under the Department of Science and Technology.
- Nufcor is responsible for uranium-ore refinement and export. It is privately owned by AngloGold.

In February 2007, President Thabo Mbeki announced that government would be accelerating preparatory work to ensure greater reliance on nuclear energy and renewable energies.

Regarding nuclear energy, the department tabled a draft nuclear energy policy and strategy in mid-2007. The policy will guide the Expanded Nuclear Build Programme and address the issue of investment in uranium beneficiation. It will also

ensure that uranium output from mines is used to satisfy South Africa's own beneficiation needs first. The department continues to participate in the Women in Nuclear South Africa (WINSA) Programme. Government is expected to accelerate preparatory work to ensure greater reliance on nuclear energy and other renewable energies.

The department has introduced initiatives such as the South African Young Nuclear Professionals Society and WINSA to promote the industry among historically disadvantaged people.

Necsa will receive R10 million a year for the next three years to establish the National Nuclear Manufacturing Centre. It will incorporate Necsa's existing facilities at the Pelindaba complex outside Pretoria, including Fabritek (the manufacturing component of the former Atomic Energy Corporation), an existing design centre, and Necsa's current fuel manufacturing activities at the Safari-1 research reactor.

This centre intends to do its own manufacturing but also assists other South African companies to meet the required standards and be able to manufacture for nuclear.

The NNR has to strengthen its capacity to evaluate different technologies, and the State will also have to improve its system for ensuring compliance with its non-proliferation obligations.

The expanded nuclear programme is expected to result in the development of a nuclear energy industrial complex, which will lead to job creation in the nuclear sector. This envisaged energy complex will centre on uranium beneficiation and power-plant manufacturing infrastructure.

Liquid fuels

The liquid-fuels industry was licensed for the first time in 2005. The objectives of the licensing framework as detailed in the Petroleum Products Amendment Act, 2003 (Act 58 of 2003), include:

- promoting an efficient manufacturing, wholesaling and retailing petroleum industry
- facilitating an environment conducive to efficient and commercially justifiable investment
- promoting the advancement of HDIs
- creating employment opportunities and small businesses in the petroleum sector.

Sapia announced strong growth in petroleum product sales in the first quarter of 2007.

Aggregate sales of major petroleum products showed a strong increase of 7,3% in the first quarter of 2007, as compared with the first quarter of 2006. The most significant increases were in diesel (13,1%), bitumen (36,3%) and LPG (15%).

Petrol sales grew by 4,4% and jet fuel sales by 4,6%.

Paraffin sales declined by 13,4%, indicating that this product is being used less for household energy.

In the first quarter, the percentage split of petrol sales between unleaded petrol (ULP) and lead-replacement petrol (LRP) was 64% for ULP and 36% for LRP.

This represents a significant increase in the penetration of ULP from the prevailing level of 43% in May 2006. This indicates that demand for LRP is declining.

The petrol price in South Africa is linked to the price of petrol in United States (US) dollar in certain international petrol markets. This means that the domestic price is influenced by supply and demand for petroleum products in international markets, combined with the Rand/Dollar exchange rate.

The National Petroleum, Gas and Oil Corporation of South Africa (PetroSA) is responsible for exploring and exploiting oil and natural gas, as well as producing and marketing synthetic fuels produced from offshore gas at the world's largest commercial gas-to-liquids plant in Mossel Bay.

The Department of Minerals and Energy, together with the oil industry, established the Fuel Strategic



In June 2007, the Draft Petroleum Pipelines Regulations were gazetted for public comment in accordance with Section 33 of the Petroleum Pipelines Act, 2003 (Act 60 of 2003).

The objectives of the Act are, among other things, to:

- promote competition in the construction and operation of petroleum infrastructure
- promote the efficient and orderly development, operation and use of petroleum infrastructure
- ensure safe and efficient transport, loading and storage of petroleum
- promote equitable access to pipelines, loading and storage facilities
- facilitate investment
- provide for the security of petroleum infrastructure
- promote competitive participation by historically disadvantaged South Africans in the petroleum pipeline industry by means of licence conditions
- promote the development of competitive markets
- promote access to affordable petroleum products
- ensure an appropriate supply of petroleum to meet market requirements.

Setting and approving tariffs, and facilitating third-party access to storage facilities are among the other objectives of the draft regulations.

They also deal with the lodging, acceptance and evaluation of construction and operating licences for petroleum pipelines.

A tariff-setting methodology, which is part of the regulations, will encourage investment in petroleum infrastructure.

Supply Task Team. It identified current and future supply constraints.

Possible strategies and options to deal with these issues include the need for investment by SOEs in pipelines, storage and handling facilities. The findings pointed to inefficiencies emanating from industry practices, especially in port and railway operations. Changes in the industry's operations are expected to result in rail-infrastructure capacity doubling and port capacity increasing.

PetroSA will invest in developing the requisite energy-infrastructure network. In 2006, the licensing of petroleum activities had started. All licences were expected to be issued by the end of 2007/08.

Sasol

Sasol Limited is an innovative and competitive global energy company.

It is engaged in the commercial production and marketing of chemicals and liquid fuels, with a growing interest in oil and gas exploration.

Sasol was established in 1950 by the South African Government to manufacture fuels and chemicals from indigenous raw materials. The company has developed world-leading technology for the commercial production of synthetic fuels and chemicals from low-grade coal as well as the conversion of natural gas to environment-friendly fuels and chemicals. It is committed to sustainable development and is a signatory to Responsible Care, a worldwide initiative by the chemical industry that strives to improve performance in safety, health and environment.

About 30 000 workers drive the company forward in exploration, mining, science, technology R&D and business development. Sasol is listed on the Johannesburg Securities Exchange and the New York Stock Exchange.

Central Energy Fund

The CEF is involved in the search for appropriate energy solutions to meet the future energy needs of South Africa, the SADC and the sub-Saharan African region. This includes oil, gas, electrical power, solar energy, low-smoke fuels, biomass, wind and renewable energy sources. The CEF also manages the operation and development of the

South African Government's oil and gas assets and operations.

The CEF, through its integrated oil-company subsidiary, PetroSA, is involved in exploration for oil and gas onshore and offshore in South Africa and the rest of Africa. It is also involved in the production of environmentally friendly petroleum fuels and petrochemical products from gas and condensate at its synfuels refinery outside Mossel Bay, and the management of oil-storage facilities. The Strategic Fuel Fund manages South Africa's strategic crude oil reserves.

The CEF has established the Energy Development Corporation (EDC) to pursue commercially viable investments in renewable energy. The EDC's focus is on niche areas, and commercial and development projects that catalyse the renewable energy sector and social projects that benefit previously disadvantaged communities.

CEF subsidiary Oil Pollution Control SA provides oil-prevention control and clean-up services, mainly in South African ports and coastal areas. CEF subsidiary Petroleum Agency South Africa (Pasa) manages the promotion and licensing of gas exploration, development and production in South Africa and the coastal areas offshore as part of creating a viable upstream oil industry in South Africa.

CEF subsidiary iGas is the official agent of the South African Government for the development of the hydrocarbon gas industry, comprising liquified natural gas and LPG in South Africa.

Oil and gas

South Africa has very limited oil reserves and about 95% of its crude oil requirements are met by imports from the Middle East and Africa (Saudi Arabia, Iran, Kuwait, the United Arab Emirates, Yemen, Qatar, Iraq, Nigeria, Egypt and Angola).

Refined petroleum products such as petrol, diesel, residual fuel oil, paraffin, jet fuel, aviation gasoline, LPG and refinery gas are produced by the following methods:

- crude oil refining (oil refineries)
- coal to liquid fuels and gas to liquid fuels (Sasol)
- natural gas to liquid fuels (PetroSA)

The wholesale and retail markets for petroleum products in South Africa are subject to a set of

government controls. The Government regulates wholesale margins and controls the retail price of petrol. The industry has entered into product-exchange agreements to serve different markets. Together, these controls provide for access to fuel throughout the country and protect consumers, while providing a reasonable return on investment to the oil industry and enhancing opportunities for employment.

The refiners and wholesale marketers move products from the refineries by coastal barge, rail, truck and pipeline to roughly 200 depots. From these, about 4 600 service stations and 100 000 direct consumers (mostly farmers) are served.

Refineries and Sasol produce LPG and illuminating paraffin (kerosene). Most LPG is consumed in the country and the rest is used in refineries as fuel and/or exported regionally.

Limited natural gas reserves exist around the South African coast. PetroSA exploits the reserves off the coast of Mossel Bay, where the Moss gas plant converts the gas into liquid fuels.

Sasol produces gas from coal and is researching prospects to import gas from Namibia. Even though gas consumption has increased in recent years, the importance of gas in the South African energy economy is still low compared with other countries.

Import and export of fuel products

The importation of refined products is restricted to special cases where local producers cannot meet demand. It is subject to state control to promote local refinery usage.

When overproduction occurs, export permits are required and generally granted, provided that the needs of both South Africa and other Southern African Customs Union members are met.

More diesel than petrol is exported, owing to the balance of supply and demand of petrol and diesel relative to refinery configurations. Although petrol and diesel make up 55% of total liquid-fuel exports, South Africa is also the main supplier of all other liquid fuels to Botswana, Namibia, Lesotho and Swaziland.

Biofuels

The draft biofuels strategy was presented to Cabinet in 2006 and the final strategy was concluded by November 2007.

Pasa promotes the exploration for natural oil and gas resources.

The Gas Act, 2001 (Act 48 of 2001), aims to:

- promote the orderly development of the piped-gas industry

- establish a national regulatory framework
- establish the National Gas Regulator as the custodian and enforcer of the national regulatory framework.

Cross-border gas trade agreement

Since the arrival of natural gas from Mozambique in 2004, the contribution of natural gas to the primary energy supply has risen from 1,5% to 3,3% (2005). This figure is expected to rise to 4,3% when the new Mozambique-South Africa gas-transmission pipeline reaches maximum capacity.

By mid-2006, the South Africa-Namibia Gas Commission was addressing harnessing the natural gas reserves off the countries' coasts.

Electricity

South Africa supplies two thirds of Africa's electricity and is one of the four cheapest electricity producers in the world. About 88% of South Africa's electricity is generated in coal-fired power stations. Koeberg, a large nuclear station near Cape Town, provides about 6,5% of capacity. A further 2,3% is provided by hydroelectric and pumped storage schemes.

In South Africa there are few, if any, new hydro sites that could be developed to deliver significant amounts of power, due to water scarcity. Eskom currently dominates electricity generation. This national SOE, which also owns and operates the national electricity grid, currently supplies about 95% of South Africa's electricity.

In global terms, the utility is among the top-10 in generating capacity, among the top-11 in terms of sales, and has one of the world's biggest dry-cooled power stations, namely Matimba Power Station.

Electricity, as a key strategic economic sector, underpins government's growth and development objectives. The Department of Minerals and Energy has several policies in place to ensure an adequate supply of electricity-generation capacity and that the distribution infrastructure is maintained.

Ever-increasing demand for electricity in an expanding economy has brought the era of excess capacity to an end. Eskom's net generating reserve margin is lower than the internationally accepted range of 15 to 18%.

Its power stations are ageing. In many cases, refurbishment is necessary to extend their economically useful life. Continued high-load factors at the stations (required to meet demand) put severe stress on all parts of the plant as they are frequently required to operate outside initial

design parameters. These loads require a high level of planned maintenance.

To meet these challenges, Eskom's previously approved R97-billion capacity expansion programme budget covering the five years to 2011 has been revised. One year on, the budget has been increased to R150 billion and covers the five years to 2012.

The Integrated National Electrification Programme (INEP) provides a socio-economic support net that ensures that previously unconnected households have access to electricity. The programme creates new infrastructure while ensuring that existing infrastructure is rehabilitated and maintained. In rolling out the programme, the department's policy is to ensure that communities become not only the recipients of basic services, but also participants in the economy through the BEE framework.

While Eskom does not have exclusive generation rights, it has a practical monopoly on bulk electricity. It also operates the High-Voltage Transmission System and supplies electricity directly to large consumers such as mines, mineral beneficiators and other large industries. In addition, it supplies directly to commercial farmers and, through the INEP, to a large number of residential consumers. It sells in bulk to municipalities, which distribute to consumers within their boundaries.

The department is procuring about 1 000 MW of new-generation capacity from the private sector. This is in line with government's objectives to introduce private-sector participation and to promote BEE in the energy sector. This will be achieved through a competitive tender process for IPPs to provide the required capacity by the first quarter of 2009.

One open-cycle gas turbine plant (of approximately 300 MW) is planned for the Eastern Cape and another (of approximately 750 MW) for KwaZulu-Natal, as part of a R150-billion expansion programme over the next five years. Eskom is playing an active role as the purchaser of this energy and provider of transmission infrastructure. The process of identifying a successful bidder is expected to be finalised in 2007/08.

In 2004, Eskom announced major plans to expand its generation and transmission capacity for



In October 2007, PetroSA announced that it intended to build a R39-billion oil refinery in the Eastern Cape, with initial production of 200 000 barrels a day intended to start in 2014.

Construction of this project, which will create some 20 000 jobs, will start in 2010.

The project stems from South Africa's wish to reduce its growing economy's dependency on oil supplies from the Middle East and elsewhere.

PetroSA has interests in Nigeria and recently acquired exploration fields in Namibia, Mozambique, the Sudan and Egypt.

future electricity supply. The first step has been the reintroduction of three of its previously mothballed power stations.

These are Camden in Ermelo, Grootvlei in Balfour, and Komati, between Middelburg and Bethal. When fully operational by 2011, these stations should provide an additional 3 600 MW of capacity.

By mid-2007, the following progress was recorded:

- Camden: 1 580 MW – one unit was commissioned in 2006 (190 MW), and four units in 2007 (772 MW). The remaining 600 MW were expected to be commissioned by March 2008.
- Grootvlei: 1 200 MW – the first unit (200 MW) was expected to be commissioned at the end of 2007, with the balance to be commissioned by October 2009.
- Komati: 961 MW – due to be fully commissioned by 2011.

Eskom is implementing a number of key transmission projects over the next five years that include:

- continuing to strengthen the transmission system into the Cape (expected completion in 2007)
- strengthening the transmission network to the Coega Industrial Development Zone (IDZ) near Port Elizabeth, which is expected to be completed in 2009
- constructing a 765-KV line (200 km) from Majuba Power Station near Volksrust to KwaZulu-Natal, which is expected to be completed in 2009
- strengthening Johannesburg North to cater for load growth, including the high-speed Gautrain, which is expected to be completed in 2009

- integrating the new power stations with the transmission network.

In 2007, Nersa released an audit report conducted in 11 electricity-distribution utilities in the country. The report showed that the distribution industry's operations were suboptimal, with an infrastructure maintenance backlog of about R7 billion.

This scenario calls for the acceleration of the restructuring of the electricity distribution industry (EDI).

The EDI Restructuring Bill was expected to be presented to Parliament before the end of 2007. In October 2006, Cabinet decided to restructure the EDI into six wall-to-wall regional electricity distributors (Reds), as public entities managed through the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), and regulated by Nersa.

By August 2007, EDI Holdings, together with the South African Local Government Association, was involved in an undertaking to re-establish Red1 in line with Cabinet's decision and the Regional Engagement Forum composed of Eskom and municipalities from the Western and Northern Cape, which was launched in July 2007.

In September 2007, Cabinet resolved that Eskom be designated as the single buyer of power from IPPs in South Africa.

Eskom will be responsible for ensuring that adequate generation capacity is made available and that 30% of the new power-generation capacity is derived from IPPs.

This policy will ensure that the responsibility and accountability for the construction of power-generation capacity is co-ordinated, and will provide more certainty to private providers.

The introduction of the private sector into the power-generation sector will also allow production-cost benchmarking with the state utility, thus ensuring that electricity is produced at the lowest possible cost.

Over the next 20 years, Eskom will build all nuclear power plants in South Africa while the IPPs will build more than 50% of all non-nuclear power plants.

The Department of Minerals and Energy will develop the Integrated Resource Plan that will define the magnitude of power-generating capacity needed to meet the country's electricity demands. Nersa will regulate the single-buyer function and specifically approve all commercial agreements between the single buyer and the private producers.

Institutional and regulatory mechanisms will be put in place as per the Electricity Regulation Act, 2006 (Act 4 of 2006).

Integrated National Electrification Programme

The INEP remains the flagship of the Department of Minerals and Energy. Eskom is responsible for implementing the programme in its licensed areas of supply on the department's behalf.

Eskom continues to exceed its electrification targets. The target for 2006 was 141 578 connections but the actual number connected was 152 125. By mid-2007, since the inception of the electrification programme in 1991, 3 469 650 homes had been electrified, including subsequent in-fill connections.

The Electricity Basic Services Support Tariff Policy aims to bring relief, through government intervention, to low-income households and to ensure optimal socio-economic benefits from the INEP. Qualifying customers are eligible for 50 kilowatt-hours (KWh) of free electricity per month. Eskom and municipalities are the service-providers for free basic electricity in their respective areas of supply.

The electricity meters of a further 1 181 823 customers were reconfigured to receive free basic electricity (1 254 199 in 2006) and almost total coverage of municipalities had been achieved by June 2007, bringing relief to low-income households.

By providing this basic service, government hopes to offer social relief to those who typically earn less than the national minimum-wage levels.

Although these users have access to a basic quantity of 50 KWh per household per month in terms of the policy, they pay the normal tariff for any consumption exceeding 50 KWh per month.

The programme is funded by the Department of Provincial and Local Government through the equitable share allocation.

Each household connected to the Solar Home System receives up to R48 worth of electricity a month.

Rural solar-energy users are liable for any amount above the monthly subsidy.

To make paraffin more affordable, the Department of Minerals and Energy removed the value-added tax levy on it.

Of the R1,4 billion allocated for household electrification, a further R380 million was set aside for the building of 10 substations. Some 150 000 households and 700 schools were expected to be connected in 2007.

The backlog at clinics was expected to be eradicated by the end of 2007/08, and at schools within three years.

National Energy Regulator of South Africa

Nersa, which was launched in November 2005, is the regulatory authority established in terms of the National Energy Regulator Act, 2004 (Act 40 of 2004), with the mandate to undertake the functions of the Gas Regulator as set out in the Gas Act, 2001; the Petroleum Pipelines Regulatory Authority, as set out in the Petroleum Pipelines Act, 2003 (Act 60 of 2003); and the National Electricity Regulator (NER) as set out in the Electricity Act, 1987 (Act 41 of 1987), as amended.

While the NER has regulated the electricity industry for the past 10 years, the piped-gas and petroleum-pipeline industries in South Africa are now regulated for the first time. Three industries fund Nersa through levies.

The funds consist of money appropriated by Parliament, levies imposed by, or under, separate legislation, charges for dispute resolution, licence fees, and funds collected under Section 5B of the Electricity Act, 1987.

The Electricity Regulation Amendment Bill will ensure that Nersa plays an unambiguous role in its quest to achieve better regulation outcomes in the entire electricity value chain.

National and regional co-operation

Nersa, represented by its chief executive officer, was elected as chair of the African Forum for Utility Regulators (Afur) from 2006 to 2009.

The Afur focuses on issues related to the regulation of energy, telecommunications, transport, and water and sanitation industries, with particular emphasis on common issues. Afur is regarded as a key building block in the African Union's efforts and its socio-economic programme, Nepad, in the integration and rebirth of Africa. Afur's vision and objectives are derived from Clause 110 of the Nepad Framework Document, which recognises the establishment of the Afur and regional regulatory associations. Afur operates as a formal association of African regulators, with its own constitution stipulating its objectives, functions and other operational requirements.

Afur's objectives entail supporting the development of effective utility regulation in Africa by facilitating the harmonisation of regulatory policies, exchange of information and lessons of

experience among regulators, and capacity-building in support of the socio-economic development of the continent.

Nersa is also a founding member of the Regional Electricity Regulators' Association and the South African Utility Regulators' Association, which were launched in September and October 2002 respectively.

Southern African Power Pool (SAPP)

The SAPP is the first formal power pool in Africa.

The objectives of the SAPP are, among other things, to:

- co-ordinate and co-operate in planning and operating electricity power systems to minimise costs, while maintaining reliability, autonomy and self-sufficiency
- increase interconnectivity between SADC countries to increase the reliability of power supplies
- facilitate cross-border electricity trading
- fully recover operations costs and equitably share benefits, including reductions in generating capacity and fuel costs, and improved use of hydroelectric energy.

Member countries are Angola, Botswana, Lesotho, Malawi, Mozambique, Namibia, Swaziland, Tanzania, Zambia, Zimbabwe and the DRC.

The SAPP faces the following challenges:

- lack of infrastructure to deliver electricity
- lack of maintenance of infrastructure
- lack of funds to finance new investments
- insufficient electricity generation
- high losses.

To lay down the rules governing electricity exchange between utilities, the SAPP Agreement between operating members was drafted. By mid-2005, it had been signed by the following nine national utilities: BPC (Botswana), EDM (Mozambique), Eskom (South Africa), Snel (Zaire), Zesa (Zimbabwe), Nampower (Namibia), ZESCO (Zambia), SEB (Swaziland) and LEC (Lesotho).

Biomass

Renewable energy comprises biomass and natural processes that are replenished and can be used as an energy source. Biomass is used commercially in pulp and paper mills and sugar refineries by

burning bulk from logs, black liquor and bagasse to produce process heat. The energy produced is used by those industries to meet their needs.

In future, some of this energy could be sold to the national grid (depending on electricity prices and environmental regulations). However, given the limited potential for agricultural expansion due to a lack of water and arable land, it is unlikely that this could make a major contribution.

In households, biomass is used for cooking and heating. Biomass is estimated to comprise 8% of South Africa's primary energy supply.

Renewable energy

Renewable energy sources, other than biomass, have not yet been exploited optimally in South Africa.

The department strengthened international relationships in this area through the support offered to partnerships established during the WSSD in 2002. Such partnerships will overcome market barriers and promote widespread use of sustainable energy solutions. These include the Global Village Energy Partnership and the Renewable Energy and Energy-Efficiency Partnership.

Cabinet approved the *White Paper on Renewable Energy* in November 2003, which stipulates the following target:

- 10 000 GWh renewable energy contribution to final energy consumption by 2013, to be produced mainly from biomass, wind, solar and small-scale hydro. The renewable energy is to be used for power generation and non-electric technologies such as solar water-heating and biofuels.

This is equivalent to replacing two 660-MW units of Eskom's combined coal-fired power stations, or replacing 1 100 ML of diesel (14%) with biodiesel.

This is in addition to the estimated existing 8% to 9% renewable energy contribution mainly from fuel wood and waste.

A macroeconomic analysis of the targets in the White Paper concluded that:

- The target is economically viable with government financial support and "green" funding (e.g. Clean Development Mechanism [CDM], "green" premium etc.)
- Achieving the target could add about 1 667 MW new renewable energy capacity with a net impact on GDP of as high as R1 071 million per year compared with coal-fired power stations, and additional government revenue of R299 million. Just over 20 000 new jobs would be created and water savings of 16,5 million kilolitres would be achieved, translating into a R26,6-million saving.

The study also highlighted the 10 000-GWh low-cost renewable energy technologies and applications to be implemented first, based on the level of commercialisation of the technology and the natural-resource availability.

These technologies include:

- sugar-cane bagasse for cogeneration (59%)
- landfill gas extraction (6%)
- mini-hydroelectric schemes (10%)
- commercial and domestic solar water-heaters (23%).
- wind energy (1%)
- biomass pulp and paper (1%).

The White Paper addresses four key strategic areas, namely:

- financial instruments to promote the implementation of sustainable renewable energy through the establishment of appropriate financial instruments
- legal instruments to develop, implement, maintain and continuously improve an effective legislative system to promote the implementation of renewable energy
- technology development to promote, enhance and develop technologies for the implementation of sustainable renewable energy
- building capacity and education to develop mechanisms to raise awareness of the benefits and opportunities that renewable energy offers.

Technological feasibility studies will be conducted for possible implementation in the medium to longer term. These include:

- Grid-connected wind farms.
- Wind farm/pumped storage as a means of addressing peak loads on the national electricity grid.
- Domestic and commercial solar water heating. Solar thermal-power generation is a collaborative programme with Eskom. It also involves the SolarPACES Programme of the International Energy Agency.
- Small-scale hydropower.
- Landfill gas exploitation.
- Rural water supply and sanitation.

The department's capacity-building programme for renewable energy and energy efficiency, which was funded by the Danish International Development Agency, yielded significant value in capacity-building in the department, as well as various strategies and studies to support the enabling environment created by government.

The Department of Minerals and Energy and National Treasury approved the Renewable Energy Subsidy Scheme in September 2005. The scheme

started off with once-off capital grants that are made available for renewable energy projects.

In October 2005, the Renewable Energy Finance and Subsidy Office's website – www.dme.gov.za/dme/energy/refso.htm – was established. It is useful for providing information and application forms to potential applicants.

The department is working with stakeholders such as National Treasury and Nersa on a long-term sustainable financing mechanism for grid-based renewable energy applications.

Eskom participated in a pilot project of the Department of Minerals and Energy, which investigates green power trading. Eskom contributed to the development of draft market rules and will act as the independent market operator for the duration of the project.

Eskom's Renewable Energy Strategy states a commitment to increase the share of renewable energy in Eskom's energy mix. The aspiration is to include 1 600 MW of renewable energy in the mix by 2025.

Eskom has also partnered with the World Wildlife Fund South Africa to develop a renewable energy research fund for renewable energy projects outside Eskom. Eskom has committed R3 million to the fund over three years.

Solar

Most areas in South Africa average more than 2 500 hours of sunshine per year, and average daily solar-radiation levels range between 4,5 and 6,5 kWh/m² in one day.

The southern African region, and in fact the whole of Africa, is well endowed with sunshine all year round. The annual 24-hour global solar radiation average is about 220 W/m² for South Africa, compared with about 150 W/m² for parts of the USA, and about 100 W/m² for Europe and the United Kingdom. This makes the local resource one of the highest in the world. The solar resource is the most readily accessible in South Africa. It lends itself to a number of potential uses.

The country's solar-equipment industry is developing. Annual photovoltaic (PV) panel-assembly capacity totals 5 MW, and a number of companies in South Africa manufacture solar water-heaters.

Solar power is increasingly being used for water-pumping through the rural water-provision and sanitation programme of the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry.

Solar water-heating is used to a certain extent. Current capacity installed includes domestic (330 000 m²) and swimming pools (327 000 m²), commerce and industry (45 000 m²) and agriculture (4 000 m²).

Three co-operatives with over 10 permanent employees each have been started in the Eastern Cape to maintain 8 000 solar home systems installed under the previous electrification programme.

Solar-passive building design

Houses and buildings in South Africa are seldom designed with energy-consumption or energy-efficiency in mind. The energy characteristics of low-cost housing are particularly bad, resulting in energy consumption for heating homes in winter. The net result is dangerously high levels of indoor and outdoor air pollution in townships, due mainly to coal burning.

Research has shown that low-cost housing could be made "energy smart" by using elementary "solar-passive building design" practice. This could result in fuel savings of as much as 65%, which could significantly benefit households' energy costs. Energy-efficient homes may be constructed at the same direct cost (and lower life-cycle cost) as energy-wasteful houses. The challenge is to develop awareness and to ensure implementation of basic energy-efficiency principles.

National solar water-heating programme

Water-heating accounts for a third to half of the average household's energy consumption. In South Africa, this derives mainly from electricity, being the most common energy-carrier employed. Removing this expenditure could lead to significant improvements in the disposable incomes of the lower-income sector.

Furthermore, the equivalent of a large coal-fired power station (2 000 MW+) is employed to provide hot water on tap to the domestic sector alone. Since the inception of the accelerated domestic electrification programme through grid extension, a

major distortion of the national load curve has emerged, with the early evening load peak growing significantly.

Modelling indicates that the introduction of solar water-heating could ameliorate the situation substantially.

Switching from electrical to solar water-heating, therefore, could have significant economic and environmental benefits.

There are also economic benefits for home owners in reducing their energy bills. Expensive generation capacity to address load peaks will be obviated, and the introduction of new base-load capacity will be postponed. Benefits for the country include reducing greenhouse gas (GHG) emissions, and the release of scarce capital for other pressing needs.

Solar-thermal power generation

The minimum direct normal radiation (DNR) to justify a combined solar-thermal power plant is 1 800 kWh/m² per year. According to the Renewable Energy Resource Database, the area exceeding the minimum required DNR in South Africa covers about 194 000 km². A 100-MW solar-thermal plant requires roughly 3 km² (1 800 kWh/m² per year).

If 1% (1 940 km²) of the identified area is available for solar-thermal power generation, then South Africa has an installed potential of 64,6 GW, which is about 36 217 GWh/year.

Back-up and energy-storage constraints are limiting the wider economical utilisation of solar-electricity generation (solar thermal and PV).

Concentrating Solar Power (CSP) Project

To explore new-generation options, find solutions that can contribute to meeting the growing electricity demand, and in an effort to use renewable energy resources, Eskom is investigating the feasibility of a 100-MW CSP plant in the Northern Cape. This would provide energy for use during times of greater demand.

A prototype heliostat (large two-axis mirrors), one of the key components, has been installed at Eskom's R&D facility. By mid-2007, the EIA was nearing completion, discussions with technology partners had been initiated and a draft project plan completed.

The Upington area in the Northern Cape was identified as a feasible location for the CSP plant. Upington further has one of the highest solar values with a direct normal insolation level of about 2 900 kWh/m² per year.

The CSP plant being considered has molten salt-type central-receiver technology, which is based on the concept of thousands of large heliostats tracking the sun and reflecting the beam radiation to a common focal point. This focal point (the receiver) is located well above the heliostat field to prevent interference between the reflected radiation and the other heliostats.

Wind

Eskom's Klipheuwel, just north of Cape Town, is the first large wind-turbine facility in sub-Saharan Africa. The pilot phase of the Klipheuwel research and demonstration project ran from August 2002 to the end of 2005. During that time, the Klipheuwel pilot wind farm generated more than 12 GWh of electricity, thus reducing carbon dioxide emissions by 11 000 t. The three wind turbines operated at an average availability of 90%. The project's research phase has been completed and this pilot wind farm will be operated commercially for its anticipated 20-year lifespan as calculated from 2006.

Pending approvals and licensing processes, Eskom has decided to build a 100-MW wind facility. The choice of location and technology to be used is based on information obtained from the Klipheuwel pilot wind project.

In August 2006, the City of Cape Town signed a 20-year agreement to buy "clean" electricity from Darling Wind Farm. Local and foreign investors, government and the community of Darling, a small town north-west of Cape Town, will collaborate to make South Africa's first commercial wind-farm venture operational.

The R70-million pilot commercial wind-energy project was expected to start operating in 2007.

The Darling Wind Farm is expected to feed the national power grid by using four giant wind turbines to generate an estimated 13,2 GW/h of "clean" electricity a year. It will be "wheeled" through the grid and on to suppliers who have chosen to pay a 25c per KW/h surcharge for a "green" power supply.

With growing concern over global warming, Cape Town expects to sell the electricity on to an initially small, but willing, market that will include businesses whose "green credentials" will help them market their products in South Africa and abroad.

The project is the result of a partnership between the national Government, the Danish Government, the CEF and the Darling Independent Power Producing Company. The agreement enabled Darling Wind Power to secure the necessary

investment to finance the purchase of the initial four wind turbines comprising 17-storey-high towers with massive blades powering 42-t engine rooms at the top of the towers. Another six wind turbines will be added later, followed by another 10 in the longer term.

Hydro

An assessment conducted by the Department of Minerals and Energy, the *Baseline Study on Hydropower in South Africa*, indicated that specific areas in the country show significant potential for developing all categories of hydropower in the short and medium term.

The Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal are endowed with the best potential for developing small, i.e. less than 10-MW hydropower plants. The advantages and attractiveness of these plants are that they can either be stand-alone or can exist in a hybrid combination with other renewable energy sources.

Advantage can be derived from the association with other uses of water (e.g. water supply, irrigation, flood control, etc.), which are critical to the future economic and socio-economic development of South Africa.

Eskom has started the construction of the Ingula pumped storage scheme (1 332 MW) near Van Reenen, KwaZulu-Natal. It is expected that the first unit will be operational in 2012. Preliminary work for the design and construction of a second pumped storage scheme in Mpumalanga has commenced. As peak demand for electricity continues to grow, Eskom will continue to explore the development of new hydroelectric and pumped storage schemes.

The SAPP allows for the free trading of electricity between SADC member countries, providing South Africa with access to the vast hydropower potential in the countries to the north, notably the significant potential in the Congo River (Inga Falls).

The main project outside South Africa's borders is Westcor. It entails a five-way intergovernmental memorandum of understanding signed between the utilities of the DRC, Angola, Namibia, Botswana and South Africa. Westcor will tap into some of the potential in the DRC. The first project is Inga III, a 3 500-MW hydro plant on the Congo River.

At the same time, the countries to the north could benefit through access to the coal-fired power resources in the south. Such an arrangement should stabilise the energy requirements of the region well into this century.

Exploitation of the vast hydropower resources will constitute a significant infusion of renewable energy resources into the energy economy of the region over the medium to long term. The Lesotho Highlands Water Project can contribute some 72 MW of hydroelectric power to the system in the short term.

Global pressures regarding the environmental impact and displacement of settlements by huge storage dams are likely to limit the exploitation of hydropower on a large scale.

Irrespective of the size of installation, any hydropower development will require authorisation in terms of the National Water Act, 1998 (Act 36 of 1998).

Ocean energy

Ocean energy could potentially be derived from the various characteristics of the sea. For example, the rise and fall of the waves could be converted into hydraulic pressure by mechanical compression devices.

Such pressure could drive a turbine generator to produce electricity, while the tidal variation, sea current and different thermal layers in the ocean could also be used.

The main reason why this energy resource is not currently being harnessed is that no reliable technology exists that can generate electricity from this resource.

Various companies are testing systems internationally to develop technically viable solutions. Once technical reliability has been proven, cost-effectiveness in relation to other solutions will have to be established.

Eskom has continued with resource surveys of the Agulhas current on the east coast of South Africa and of wave energy, in partnership with Marine and Coastal Management, and the Bayworld Centre for Research and Education.

By mid-2007, results had proved the technical feasibility of extracting significant large-scale renewable energy from the current.

Energy and the environment

Energy and the global environment

South Africa is among the top-20 emitters of GHGs in the world and is the largest emitter in Africa, largely because of the economy's dependence on fossil fuels. The National Climate Change Strategy, developed by the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, requires that government departments collaborate in a co-ordinated manner to ensure that response measures to climate change are properly directed and carried out with a national focus. The Department of Minerals and Energy is expected to respond and mitigate climate change.

South Africa is a developing country or a non-annex1 country. This means that within the international political and negotiation context, South Africa is not required to reduce its GHG emissions. However, the South African economy depends greatly on fossil fuels for energy generation and consumption and therefore is a significant emitter due to relatively high values being derived from emissions intensity and emissions per capita. These calculations make South Africa one of the top-15 most energy-intensive economies that contribute significantly to GHG emissions.

Therefore, South Africa must proactively move the economy towards becoming less carbon-intensive, with the Department of Minerals and Energy playing a prominent role. The department has introduced systems to access investment through the CDM of the Kyoto Protocol. It has developed the *White Paper on Renewable Energy and Clean Energy Development*, together with an energy-efficiency programme, to support diversification in pursuit of a less carbon-intensive energy economy.

Sources of greenhouse gas emissions

The energy sector is a major source of GHGs, because of South Africa's heavy reliance on coal for electricity generation, the Sasol oil-from-coal process and a variety of other indigenous energy uses such as household coal-burning.

The reduction of particulate emissions from Eskom coal-fired power stations has been the most significant environmental challenge the organisation has faced. Particulate reduction began in the 1980s. Initial reductions followed the mothballing and closure of many of the older plants. From the early 1990s, reductions were achieved by installing bag-filters and managing electrostatic precipitators better. In the late 1990s,

Eskom developed a stringent five-year target to cut particulate emissions from an average of 0,37 kg/MWh to 0,28 kg/MWh.

Between 1990 and 2003, total annual particulate emissions were reduced from 271 000 t to 57 000 t, while the energy delivered increased by 64 000 GWh.

Energy and the national environment

There is some contention regarding the polluting effects of the energy sector, particularly in the Mpumalanga Highveld, where most of Eskom's coal-powered stations and the largest Sasol plants are located.

Eskom has announced a much higher proportion of nuclear energy as part of the future energy mix by 2025.

Energy and the household environment

Coal is used by about 950 000 households countrywide. This causes indoor air-pollution problems, which have a serious health impact.

It has been found that in some cases, especially regarding particulate matter, exposure can exceed World Health Organisation (WHO) standards (180 mg.m³) by factors of six to seven during winter, and two to three in summer. A national programme has been established to introduce low-smoke energy alternatives into the townships.

Fuel wood is used by millions of rural households as their primary energy source. Studies have shown that fuel-wood users are exposed to even higher levels of particulate emissions than coal users. In one study, exposure levels were found to exceed the WHO lowest-observed-effect level by 26 times.

The Department of Minerals and Energy participates in the National Housing Interdepartmental Task Team and has contributed towards the development of norms and standards for solar-passive and thermally efficient housing design.

The department is investigating the introduction of improved woodstoves and other alternatives, such as solar cookers and biogas, in an attempt to address these pollution problems.

By November 2007, about 3,5 million households did not have access to electricity and relied primarily on paraffin and collected wood for light, cooking and heating.

The *White Paper on Clean and Renewable Energy* commits South Africa to producing 5% of the country's energy supply from renewable energy sources by 2013.

One way of doing this and simultaneously dealing with South Africa's electricity infrastructure pressures, is to have more energy-efficient houses that use the sun's free energy. The Department of Science and Technology, the Overstrand Municipality and the Cape Town Grail Centre Trust are collaborating on a sustainable development project involving the construction of more than 600 low-cost houses that will use building material offering better insulation, and have solar water-heaters. The project is also looking at ways of catching storm water to irrigate the local school's sports field and will pilot a novel reed-bed sewerage treatment plant.

Projects of this nature could yield useful lessons and technologies to support the Department of Housing in its shift towards environmentally sustainable housing projects.

In the search for energy solutions, the department's work on Hydrogen Fuel Cells continues.

Designated National Authority (DNA)

The South African DNA was established in December 2004 as an important step towards the implementing the provisions of the Kyoto Protocol and of the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC).

The main functions of the DNA are to regulate and promote CDM activities in South Africa. In its evaluation process, the DNA uses an established approval procedure and criteria that look at the projects' social, economical and environmental contribution.

According to the Department of Minerals and Energy, the Kyoto Protocol's CDM makes it possible to trade emission reductions on international carbon markets, for example, by improving energy efficiency in industry, recovering methane from landfill sites, or by switching to renewable energy sources. The CDM is the market mechanism designed to assist developing countries to stimulate the green investment required to tackle climate change and become a low-carbon economy. The CDM, even with its current limitations, provides an effective vehicle for developing countries to participate in ongoing efforts to reduce carbon emissions, achieve



In March 2007, the Solar Water Heater (SWH) Test Rig was launched at the South African Bureau of Standards in Pretoria.

The SWH Test Rig is the first of its kind in Africa and has the potential to leverage electricity savings, increase employment opportunities, improve management of electricity demand and reduce greenhouse gas emissions.

technological progress and promote sustainable development.

By 31 March 2007, South Africa had received and reviewed 46 CDM projects. Seven were at advanced project implementation stages and 12 had been recognised and registered as South African CDM projects by the CDM Executive Board of the UNFCCC. By June 2007, South Africa had nine registered projects with another 39 to come.

These projects could contribute to government's sustainable development objectives of alleviating poverty and creating jobs, accessing clean energy, technology transfer and economic development. These projects could also help South Africa reduce GHGs such as CO₂, which is emitted largely by the energy sector. The project types reviewed by November 2007, were in the energy sector i.e fuel switching, cogeneration, renewable-energy generation, and energy efficiency. Collectively, these projects' lifespan will reduce about 24 Mt of CO₂ equivalent yearly, and contribute about 58 MW through electricity generation and energy savings.

Geology

South Africa has a long and complex geological history dating back more than 3 700 million years. Significant fragments of this geology have been preserved and along with them, mineral deposits.

The preservation of so much Archaean geology, dating back more than 2 500 million years, has resulted in the Archaean Witwatersrand Basin, as well as several greenstone belts, being preserved. Ten of the more significant geological formations in South Africa are discussed below.

Barberton mountain land

This beautiful and rugged tract of country with some of the oldest rocks on Earth is south of Nelspruit, Mpumalanga. The renowned Barberton



Greenstone Belt, the largest of its kind in South Africa, contains remnants of original crust, dated at around 3,5 billion years old. The greenstone formations represent the remains of some of the earliest clearly decipherable geological events on the Earth's surface. Silica-rich layers within the greenstone have revealed traces of a very early life form – minute blue-green algae.

Granites surround the formations and gneisses that are more than 3 000 million years old.

Gold, iron ore, magnesite, talc, barite, chrysotile asbestos and verdite are mined in the area.

Witwatersrand

The geology and gold mines of the “Ridge of White Waters” are world-famous. Nearly half of all the gold ever mined has come from the extensive Witwatersrand conglomerate reefs that were discovered in 1886, not far from Johannesburg's city centre.

The Witwatersrand is the greatest goldfield known to mankind. More than 50 055 t of gold have been produced from seven major goldfields distributed in a crescent-like shape along the 350-km long basin, from Welkom in the Free State in the southwest, to Evander in the east.

The geology of the region can be seen at many excellent outcrops in the suburbs of Johannesburg. The sequence is divided into a lower shale-rich group and an upper sandstone-rich group. The latter contains the important gold-bearing quartz-pebble conglomerates. These “gold reefs” were formed from gravels transported into the basin and reworked 2,75 billion years ago. The gold and uranium originated from a rich source in the hinterland.

Bushveld Complex and escarpment

The Bushveld Complex extends over an area of 65 000 km² and reaches up to 8 km in thickness. It is by far the largest known layered igneous intrusion in the world and contains most of the world's resources of chromium, PGMs and vanadium.

This mega-complex was emplaced in a molten state about 2 060 billion years ago into pre-existing sedimentary rocks, through several deep feeder zones.

The impressive igneous geology of the Bushveld Complex is best viewed in Mpumalanga, in the mountainous terrain around the Steelpoort Valley. The imposing Dwars River chromitite layers, platinum-bearing dunite pipes, the discovery site of the platinum-rich Merensky Reef, and extensive

magnetite-ilmenite layers and pipes near Magnet Heights and Kennedy's Vale are in this area.

The Great Escarpment of Mpumalanga is one of South Africa's most scenic landscapes. This area features potholes at Bourke's Luck, the Blyde River Canyon and the dolomite formation in which giant stromatolites bear witness to the 2,5 billion-year-old fossilised remains of vast oxygen-producing algae growth.

Drakensberg escarpment and Golden Gate Highlands National Park

The main ramparts of the Drakensberg range, reaching heights of more than 3 000 m, lie in KwaZulu-Natal and on the Lesotho border. These precipitous mountains are the highest in southern Africa and provide the most dramatic scenery.

They were formed by the partial erosion of a high plateau of basaltic lava, which is more than 1 500 m thick, and covers the Clarens sandstones. Prior to its erosion, the continental basalt field covered significantly more of the continent.

The northern area of the Drakensberg has been declared a world heritage site. More than 40% of all known San cave paintings in southern Africa are found here.

The scenic Golden Gate Highlands National Park in the Free State features spectacular sandstone bluffs and cliffs. The sandstone reflects a sandy desert environment that existed around 200 million years ago. Dinosaur fossils are still found in the area.

Karoo

Rocks of the Karoo Supergroup cover about two thirds of South Africa and reach a thickness of several thousand metres. The sedimentary portion of this rock sequence reveals an almost continuous record of deposition and life, from the end of the Carboniferous into the mid-Jurassic periods, between 300 million and 180 million years ago.

Karoo rocks are internationally renowned for their wealth of continental fossils, and particularly for the fossils of mammal-like reptiles that show the transition from reptiles to early mammals, and for their early dinosaur evolution.

During this long period of the Earth's history, southern Africa was a lowland area in the centre of the Gondwana supercontinent.

Initially, the prehistoric Karoo was a place of vast glaciation. It then became a shallow inland sea, before this was replaced by huge rivers, with lush flood plains and swampy deltas, which dried out to form a sandy desert. Finally, vast outpourings of

continental basaltic lava accompanied by the break-up of Gondwana occurred.

Diamond fields

Kimberlite is the primary host-rock of diamonds and was first mined as weathered “yellow ground” from the Kimberley mines, starting in 1871 at Colesberg koppie, now the site of the Big Hole of Kimberley.

At increasing depths, less-weathered “blue ground” that continued to yield diamonds was encountered.

The discovery of kimberlite-hosted diamonds was a key event in South Africa’s economic and social development, and paved the way for the later development of the Witwatersrand goldfields.

Kimberlite originates as magma from very deep below the surface, and typically occurs as small volcanic pipes and craters at the surface. Included within solidified kimberlites are fragments of deep-seated rocks and minerals, including rare diamonds of various sizes.

The Orange and Vaal rivers’ alluvial diamond fields and the rich West Coast marine diamond deposits all originated by erosion from primary kimberlite pipes.

Meteorite impact sites

Impacts by large meteoritic projectiles played a major role in shaping the surface of the Earth.

One such site is the Vredefort Dome, the oldest and largest visible impact structure known on Earth.

Declared a world heritage site in 2005, it lies some 110 km south-west of Johannesburg, in the vicinity of Parys and Vredefort in the Free State and North West.

This spectacular and complex geological feature, measuring 70 km across, was caused by the impact of a 10 km-wide asteroid some two billion years ago. Only a partial ring of hills remains of the dome created by the rebound of rock below the asteroid’s impact site. The original crater – now eroded – is estimated to have been between 250 km and 300 km in diameter.

The Vredefort structure comprises a core zone of granitic rocks, surrounded by a ring-like collar zone of younger bedded formations. Only the north-western portion of the structure remains visible.

The south-eastern half was flooded by sediments of the Karoo Supergroup, which cover the Free State.

About 40 km north of Pretoria is a small bowl-shaped meteorite-impact crater, termed Tswaing. Just one kilometre in diameter, this is one of the best-preserved and accessible impact craters of its kind on Earth. It was created about 220 000 years ago when a meteorite of about 50 m wide slammed into the Earth, and is one of the few impact craters containing a crater lake.

Pilanesberg

The Pilanesberg complex and National Park, located some 120 km north-west of Johannesburg in North West, is a major scientific attraction which includes a number of unique geological sites.

The complex consists of an almost perfectly circular, dissected mountain massif some 25 km in diameter, making it the third-largest alkaline ring complex in the world.

The geology reflects the roots of an ancient volcano that erupted some 1,5 billion years ago. The remains of ancient lava flows and vulcanic breccias can be seen.

The dominant feature of the complex is the concentric cone sheets formed by resurgent magma that intruded ring fractures, created during the collapse of the volcano.

There are old mining sites for fluorite and dimension stone, and a non-diamond-bearing kimberlite pipe in the region.

Pilanesberg is also the site of a magnificent game reserve containing the Big Five and the world-renowned Palace of the Lost City hotel complex and golf course.

Cradle of Humankind

This world heritage site extends from the Witwatersrand in the south to the Magaliesberg in the north, and is considered to be of universal value because of the outstanding richness of its fossil hominid cave sites.

The Sterkfontein area near Krugersdorp is the most prolific and accessible fossil hominid site on Earth. It comprises several scientifically important cave locations, including Sterkfontein, Swartkrans, Drimolen, Kromdraai, Gladysvale and Plover’s Lake,



all of which have produced a wealth of material crucial to palaeoanthropological research material.

Table Mountain and the Cape Peninsula

Table Mountain is, arguably, South Africa's best known and most spectacular geological feature, comprising a number of major rock formations.

The earliest of these are the deformed slates of the Malmesbury Group which formed between 560 million and 700 million years ago.

Coarse-grained Cape granite intruded around 540 million years ago. The Table Mountain Group,

which started forming about 450 million years ago, consists of basalt, reddish mudstone and sandstone that is well exposed along Chapman's Peak. Overlying this is the light-coloured sandstone that makes up the higher mountains and major cliff faces of the Cape Peninsula, as far south as Cape Point.

Much younger sandy formations make up the Cape Flats and other low-lying areas adjacent to Table Mountain. The Table Mountain Group continues further inland across False Bay in the strongly deformed Cape Fold Belt.

Acknowledgements

Business Day

Chamber of Mines

Council for Geoscience

Department of Minerals and Energy

Digest of South African Energy Statistics – 2006 – published by the Department of Minerals and Energy
Eskom

Estimates of National Expenditure 2007, published by National Treasury

Mining Weekly

www.cef.org.za

www.globaldialogue.info

www.gov.za

www.hartrao.ac.za

www.miningweekly.co.za

www.sabcnews.com

www.sasol.co.za

www.southafrica.info

Suggested reading

Brooke-Simons, P. *Cullinan Diamonds: Dreams and Discoveries*. Cape Town: Fernwood Press, 2004.

Fig, D. *Uranium Record: Questioning South Africa's Nuclear Direction*. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2005.

Reimold, WU and Gibson, RL. *Meteorite Impact! The Danger from Space and South Africa's Mega-Impact, the Vredefort Structure*. Johannesburg: Chris van Rensburg Publications, 2005.

Strategic Overview of the South African Mining Industry: Gold, Coal, Platinum-Group Metals, Diamonds, Vanadium. Johannesburg: Industrial Development Corporation, 2000.

Ward, S. *The Energy Book for Urban Development in South Africa*. Noordhoek: Sustainable Energy Africa, 2002.



SA YEARBOOK 2007/08 | SAFETY, SECURITY AND DEFENCE



The aim of the Department of Safety and Security is to prevent, combat and investigate crime, maintain public order, protect and secure the inhabitants of South Africa and their property, and uphold and enforce the law.

The Department of Defence defends South Africa's territorial integrity and its people.

Safety and security

In accordance with the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, the Minister of Safety and Security is responsible for policing in general and is accountable to Cabinet and Parliament. Important features of the minister's responsibilities include determining national policing policy and providing civilian oversight. The following three structures fall under the Minister of Safety and Security:

- Secretariat for Safety and Security
- Independent Complaints Directorate (ICD)
- South African Police Service (SAPS).

Secretariat for Safety and Security

In terms of the SAPS Act, 1995 (Act 68 of 1995), the Secretariat for Safety and Security's functions are to:

- advise the minister
- promote democratic accountability and transparency in the SAPS
- provide the minister with legal services and advice on constitutional matters
- monitor the implementation of policy
- conduct research on any policing matter in accordance with the instructions of the minister, and evaluate the performance of the SAPS.

Independent Complaints Directorate

The ICD's primary role is to ensure that complaints about alleged criminal offences and misconduct committed by SAPS members are investigated effectively. Police conduct or behaviour that is prohibited in terms of the SAPS standing orders and police regulations include neglect of duties and failure to comply with the SAPS Code of Conduct. It is governed by Chapter 10 of the SAPS Act, 1995.

The ICD has additional mandates in respect of monitoring the SAPS implementation of the Domestic Violence Act, 1998 (Act 116 of 1998), and overseeing municipal policing services.

The ICD investigates all deaths in police custody or as a result of police action. An investigation is conducted to determine any indications of criminal conduct by the SAPS. Where there are no indications of criminal conduct, the matter is left to

the police to investigate, while the ICD monitors and supervises the investigation. If information is subsequently received indicating criminal conduct on the part of the police, the ICD conducts a full investigation.

Upon completion of an investigation, the ICD may make recommendations to the Director of Public Prosecutions about the prosecution of any implicated SAPS member(s), and to SAPS management regarding the departmental prosecution of a police member.

The ICD reports to Parliament through the Minister of Safety and Security. However, it operates independently from the SAPS.

In April 2007, the ICD celebrated its 10th anniversary. The ICD has arranged with the United Kingdom's Independent Police Complaints Commission to help train some members in various aspects relating to the ICD's mandate, including investigations into police misconduct.

The ICD started in 1997 with a staff complement of 36 and a budget of R17 million. By mid-2007, it had 248 personnel members and a budget of R80,8 million.

The restructuring of the ICD has seen the establishment of its Integrity Strengthening Unit and the Anti-Corruption Command. The ICD is the Secretariat of the African Policing Oversight Forum and has influenced the creation of oversight mechanisms in several African countries.

South African Police Service

The vision of the SAPS is to create a safe and secure environment for all South Africans.

The values upheld by the SAPS are to:

- protect everyone's rights and be impartial, respectful, open and accountable to the community
- use its powers responsibly
- provide a responsible, effective and high-quality service with honesty and integrity
- evaluate its service continuously and strive to improve it
- use its resources efficiently
- develop the skills of its members through equal opportunities
- co-operate with the community, all levels of government and other role-players.

The SAPS key aims and programmes are based on the objectives provided for in Section 206 of the Constitution. The SAPS is responsible for:

- preventing, combating and investigating crime
- maintaining public order
- protecting and securing South Africans and their property
- upholding and enforcing the law.

These objectives have been aligned with the aims of the integrated justice system and the Justice, Crime Prevention and Security (JCPS) Cluster.

The operational priorities of the department's strategic plan for 2005 to 2010 are:

- combating organised crime
- fighting serious and violent crime
- reducing crime against women and children
- improving on other SAPS priorities that affect basic service delivery.

The budget allocation in the 2003/04 financial year was R22,7 billion, which increased to R25,4 billion in 2004/05, R29,3 billion in 2005/06 and R32,5 billion 2006/07. The 2007/08 budget allocation is R35,9 billion, and it is expected to reach R43,6 billion in three years' time.

The personnel of the service increased from 140 560 in 2003/04 to 149 060 in 2004/05. By the end of 2009/10, the numbers are expected to be 193 240, showing an increase of 52 780 members since 2003/04. Replacement personnel during that period was 20 000, bringing the figure to 72 780.

By May 2007, there were 1 115 fully fledged police stations countrywide.

Strategic overview and key policy developments

Community and sector policing

Crime prevention in South Africa is based on the principles of community policing, which involves partnerships between the community and the SAPS. Police officers are appointed as sector managers in community police forums (CPF's).

CPF's, which have been in place since 1993, are actively involved in crime-prevention and awareness programmes, and allow the SAPS to mobilise and involve communities in the fight against crime. CPF's also assist police by mobilising partnerships with business and other stakeholders in communities to address crime.

In 2007, meetings were held with the National Community Policing Consultative Forum (NCPCF), which represents the country's 1 072 CPF's. Discussions included:

- reshaping the CPF's to give them more powers and resources

- recasting the CPF's as the co-ordinators of the partnership between communities and the police
- properly defining the programme to mobilise communities to participate fully in community policing.

The NCPCF has drafted a document that seeks to improve efforts to mobilise community involvement.

The CPF's will be empowered to help the police become known in their communities, identify trustworthy and capable persons from their communities to be recruited into the police reservist service and mobilise volunteers who could assist the police in certain areas of policing, including trauma counselling for victims of domestic violence, and abused women and children.

The SAPS is dedicated to uplifting historically disadvantaged communities. This includes building community safety centres (CSC's) that focus on delivering basic and easily accessible services to communities, especially in deep rural areas and informal settlements.

CSC's bring together the SAPS and the departments of justice and constitutional development, of correctional services, of health and of social development.

By mid-2007, sector policing was operating in 169 priority areas, 35 285 additional reservists had been recruited, and 1 064 CPF's were operating at 1 115 police stations.

Performance management

The SAPS has introduced a new performance-management system to improve organisational performance in the service. This system is part of the overall change-management strategy to improve service delivery and strengthen the SAPS capacity to fight crime.

It includes:

- setting national performance standards and targets
- performance assessments
- identifying and adopting corrective measures for non-performing stations
- introducing performance incentives for police stations that meet the crime-fighting targets.

Other aspects include better deployment of personnel and a performance-management chart to measure and monitor the performance of police stations.

Revised reservist system

The SAPS introduced an alternative system to the phased-out commando system to prevent a

security vacuum. One of the strategies for doing this is increasing reservist numbers.

The revised system of police reservists, among other things, consolidates the SAPS sector-policing programme. It provides for four categories of reservists, namely Functional Policing, Support Services, Specialised Functional Policing (pilots, divers, social workers etc.) and Rural and Urban Sector Policing.

The main thrust of the revised system is to create a part-time professional police service. The system also provides for the call-up and payment of reservists, based on identified policing needs at station level. Modular outcomes-based training programmes have been completed to enhance the skills and knowledge of all reservists.

The recruitment of 7 665 new reservists raised the number of police reservists in the country to more than 45 000 in 2006/07.

The new recruits include 80 former commando members. At least 12 536 reservists were called up for crime-fighting operations in 2006/07.

Reducing contact crime

Government aims to reduce contact crimes by 7% to 10% a year, focusing specifically on the 169 high-contact crime stations.

The SAPS will contribute by improving its detection rate and increasing the number of cases sent to court in respect of serious and violent crime, organised-crime syndicates, and crimes against women and children.

This will improve the feeling of safety among the general public, restore public confidence in the SAPS and the wider justice system, and improve co-operation and willingness to assist in preventing, combating and investigating crime. Funds for resources such as personnel and equipment have been provided to achieve these departmental outcomes.

Reducing violence against women and children

Deterring sexual offences against women and children has been a priority for the SAPS since 2002. The objectives are to improve the rate of detection and conviction of perpetrators, eliminate secondary victimisation, support victims and improve on the prevention of these crimes.

Specific programmes, such as the Victim-Empowerment Programme (VEP), the Safer Schools Programme and the Environmental Design Programme addressing violence against women and children, have been prioritised for implementation in the high-contact crime police station areas and the nodes of the Urban Renewal Programme and the Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Programme.

Improving policing capacity

Personnel numbers will be increased from 156 000 in 2005/06 to about 193 000 by the end of 2009/10 to improve the capacity of the SAPS to perform security functions at borderlines, ports of entry and exit, and during the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

This will be complemented by expanding the department's vehicle fleet, equipment supplies, technological infrastructure and reservists force.

Restructuring

To improve policing and services, the SAPS management has adopted a flatter organisational structure that will incorporate the advantages of decentralising work and authority, and make specialised skills available at police stations.

The restructuring of the SAPS focuses on:

- reducing policing levels from four to three, namely national, provincial and station level
- reducing provincial and national structures to improve co-ordination, and providing functional policing and support services
- redeploying to station-level certain specialised operational policing functions to ensure crimes are investigated where they occur
- ensuring that each station has national-, provincial- and area-skilled persons to increase the leadership, management, decision-making and skill levels at stations dealing with crime challenges unique to that station
- empowering station commissioners to render a comprehensive service and effectively manage all resources
- amending accountability frameworks to assess the performance of stations and station commissioners in terms of standardised performance indicators.



The most important change will be the dissolution of area offices, which are expected to devolve to the various police stations as part of the station-empowerment strategy.

Experienced operational managers and personnel from 43 area offices in the nine provinces, and from the national and provincial offices where necessary, have been redeployed to police stations to boost their administrative and operational managerial ability and increase the staff complement.

Regional and continental initiatives

The department has provided support to government's regional and continental objectives by implementing the Southern African Development Community (SADC) Protocol on the Control of Firearms through the Southern African Regional Police Chiefs Co-operation Organisation (SARPPCO) and the African Union (AU) Convention on the Prevention and Combating of Terrorism.

It also provides operational support and institutional capacity-building to police agencies in southern Africa through SARPPCO, e.g. in Rwanda. These initiatives aim at promoting development, stability and security, and will have a positive impact on policing in South Africa through shared information and experiences.

The SAPS formed part of the South African contingent that assisted the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC) in preparing for general elections. It was also a key component of the civilian police structure built into the programme of the AU Mission in the Sudan, working towards permanent peace in that country. The civilian police comprised members of police services from 16 African countries.

The SAPS assisted the Sudanese police by:

- facilitating communication between them and local communities
- providing technical assistance requested by the Sudanese Government and police authorities.

The SAPS has co-operation agreements with France, Argentina, Chile, Brazil, the Russian Federation, Hungary, Egypt, China, Nigeria, Mozambique, Portugal, Swaziland and the People's Republic of China. Negotiations are ongoing to include more countries on its list of international partners against organised crime.

South Africa is among 182 countries whose police structures are affiliated to Interpol. It has a number of liaison officers based at South African missions abroad to interact continuously with its counterparts in detecting international crime. The SAPS is involved in removing and destroying

weapons and ammunition in Mozambique and the DRC.

Technology

The Department of Safety and Security has invested substantially in new technology in various areas of its operations. A firearm-control system provides a mechanism for managing all business processes concerning all firearms and ammunition, from the point of manufacture or import and ownership, to the point of export or destruction.

By mid-2007, the Border Control Co-ordinating Committee and the Department of Public Works were constructing and upgrading ports of entry. This included installing modern technology with improved satellite and electronic-surveillance systems.

Technological advances that have been introduced in the forensic science support environment include the Integrated Ballistics Identification System, the DNA Criminal Database, the Criminal Intelligence Database and the National Drug Intelligence Database. Advanced information management technology is being implemented at the Forensic Science Laboratory (FSL) in Pretoria.

A genetic sample processing system has been installed at the FSL, which is used for DNA analysis.

A high-tech project centre, which co-ordinates information and the use of skills and technology to support investigators in identifying suspects, opposing bail, apprehending wanted persons and establishing links between cases of a serious nature, has been established.

The National Traffic Information System, led by the Department of Transport, enables various stakeholders to share information regarding vehicles to combat vehicle-related crime. The Vehicle Circulation System of the SAPS and that of the Department of Transport were interfaced in 2001 and 2002. This system is also linked to the SAPS Crime Administration System.

SAPS divisions

A national commissioner heads the SAPS. Five deputy national commissioners (under whom the divisions and components of the SAPS fall) and nine provincial commissioners (under whom the provinces fall) report to the National Commissioner.

Visible Policing and Cluster Management fall under the Deputy National Commissioner: Operational Services. The detective service, crime intelligence, criminal record and forensic science services fall under the Deputy National Commissioner: Crime Intelligence and Crime Detection.

The Protection and Security Service, Supply Chain Management (SCM) and the National Inspectorate fall under the Deputy National Commissioner: SCM, Protection, Security and Evaluation.

Career Management, Training, Legal Services, Strategic Management and Finance and Administration fall under the Deputy National Commissioner: Human Capital Development, Legal and Financial Administration, and Legal Services.

Personnel Services, Efficiency Services, Information and Systems Management (ISM), Communication and Liaison Services and Internal Audit fall under the Deputy National Commissioner: Personnel Management and Organisational Development.

Visible Policing

Visible Policing is responsible for providing a proactive and reactive policing service. It is regarded as a line function and its components are visible policing, social-crime prevention, police emergency services, specialised operations, firearms and liquor control, borderline operations and crime-combating operations.

Visible Policing is responsible for combating crime through anti-crime operations, activities at police stations, high visibility and the availability of police officials at grassroots level. It also oversees

sector policing, reservists, municipal police services and closed-circuit television (CCTV) surveillance.

Social-Crime Prevention deals with crimes affecting the social fabric of society, including crimes against women and children. Through its VEP, 594 victim-friendly facilities have been established at police stations nationwide.

During 2006/07, 11 victim-friendly facilities were upgraded. The VEP has the Safe Schools Programme, and the Drug-Reduction-in-Schools pilot project was launched in Pretoria, in 2007.

A joint action plan for school safety developed by the national Department of Education and the SAPS was expected to be implemented in 2007/08. It aims to address issues ranging from reducing behavioural and social challenges such as bullying, the use of weapons, child abuse and gangsterism to strengthening infrastructure and environmental issues that contribute to crime in schools.

The unit's Children Living in Streets Programme facilitates protective safety nets for children living on the street by mobilising a network of service-providers to reunite children with their families and reintegrate them into their communities. Two pilot projects have been running in Hillbrow and Sunnyside, Gauteng.

The Police Emergency Services responds to crimes in progress, and provides dog and mounted services. Hostage and suicide negotiators, police divers and uniformed units such as the 10111 emergency centres and the Flying Squad provide specialised services.

Police Emergency Services is also responsible for optimising the Integrated Crime-Prevention Road Policing Strategy, which aims to improve safety and order in the road environment by preventing and combating criminality and lawlessness.

Firearms and Liquor Control eradicates the proliferation of firearms for use in crime and violence in South Africa. The component also ensures effective compliance and enforcement of liquor-control legislation to address serious, violent and contact crimes.

Specialised Operations provides a rapid-response capacity for intervening in extreme situations where normal policing is ineffective, such as: combating



South Africa sent a contingent of police and defence force members to the West Indies in April 2007, to assist the Caribbean countries with security for the remainder of the Cricket World Cup.

The team comprised 77 members drawn from the South African Police Service's Special Task Force and National Intervention Unit, and the South African National Defence Force's special forces and 7th Medical Battalion.

They provided operational assistance during the matches, semi-finals and final in Grenada, St Lucia and Barbados.

The team, which served as a reaction force for deployment in case of an emergency, included bomb-disposal experts, detectives, hostage negotiators, crime-scene investigators, dog handlers and a command and control group.

All team members wore their own uniforms and used their own equipment and firearms, including dogs and bomb-disposal equipment.

public violence, stabilising serious- and violent-crime incidents, policing public gatherings, rendering specialised operational support (including the Air Wing and Special Task Force) and handling high-risk operations.

The Air Wing has received an additional helicopter for each province. A second air-wing unit, which was established at Bulembu in the Eastern Cape, will serve the East London, Bhisho and Mthatha areas. Two newly-acquired Squirrel helicopters with spray equipment will make it possible to regularly do dagga-spraying in the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal.

Borderline Operations combats transnational crimes at air, sea and land borderlines. Air Borderline Control polices more than 1 000 smaller airfields and airstrips.

Sea Borderline Control is responsible for policing smaller sea harbours and slipways, including the South African ocean up to the 300 nautical mile zone.

Land Borderline Control polices the South African land borderline. The SAPS' process of taking over the borderline-control function from the South African National Defence Force (SANDF) is expected to be finalised in 2009.

Crime-Combating Operations combats crime and maintains public order. In this section, Mobilisation and Operational Support renders comprehensive administrative support to external, national mobilisations, deployments and special duties.

It also provides logistical and vehicle-fleet support to all SAPS mobilisations and activities to address crime.

Cluster Co-ordination

Cluster Co-ordination is responsible for co-ordinating the planning and monitoring of identified major joint intelligence and operational structure events, i.e. the 2010 World Cup and the Twenty20 Cricket World Championships, held in September 2007.

The Secretariat of the JCPS Cluster is responsible for the functioning of the cluster in terms of its administration and liaison with other departments regarding all interdepartmental issues, e.g. the Forum of South African Directors-General, SARPCCO and the AU Standby Forces.

It reports on the JCPS Cluster's Programme of Action (PoA). This includes co-ordinating, receiving, consolidating and distributing JCPS project cards, progress reports, Cabinet memoranda and presentations on the PoA.

Detective Service

This division is responsible for maintaining an effective crime-investigation service. It investigates crimes and gathers all related evidence required by the prosecuting authority to redress crime, including organised crime, commercial crime and crime against women and children.

Crime Intelligence

This division of the SAPS is responsible for centralised intelligence and for managing, co-ordinating and analysing information-gathering. It also provides technical-intelligence support to the operational components of crime intelligence and, where necessary, to other operational divisions of the SAPS.

Criminal Record and Forensic Science Services

This division consists of the Criminal Record Centre (CRC) and FSL.

Criminal Record Centre

The Automated Fingerprint Information System's (AFIS) palm-print extension and matcher upgrade have been successfully maintained since its implementation in December 2004. The palm-print extension has contributed to solving crime in the SAPS and 6 329 suspects have been identified at crime scenes with the assistance of this technology.

Its implementation has also increased accuracy in the 10-print matching process. Of the more than eight million fingerprint forms processed on AFIS during 2006, the system positively identified more than 30%.



In December 2007, the South African Police Service released crime statistics for the first semester of 2007/08. In comparison with the whole of 2006/07,

- attempted murder decreased by 7,6%
- common assault decreased by 5,1%
- assault with intent to do grievous bodily harm decreased by 2,8%
- robbery with aggravating circumstances decreased by 9,7%
- common robbery decreased by 12,2%
- drug-related crimes decreased by 4%
- car hijackings decreased by 0,7%
- murder decreased by 6,5%
- rape decreased by 3,6%
- indecent assault increased by 3,5%
- driving under the influence of alcohol or drugs increased by 32,9%
- cash-in-transit heists decreased by 26,7%
- bank robberies decreased by 11,7%
- house robberies increased by 7%
- illegal possession of firearms and ammunition decreased by 8,6%.

The CRC has procured 108 live-scan booking stations capable of capturing finger and palm prints electronically. This is expected to improve the quality of prints to be added to the AFIS database, which will enhance the ability to arrest identified suspects.

Forensic Science Laboratory

The FSL in Pretoria has implemented revolutionary new technology that will quadruple the laboratory's capacity to process DNA samples.

Previously, some 200 samples were processed manually daily, but the newly implemented Automated Genetic Sample Processing System (GPS) is expected to handle 800 samples daily.

The GPS – the only one of its kind in the world – is a robotic system that combines engineering and science, to improve the police's capacity in processing DNA samples. Between April and September 2006, DNA analysis was done for over 2 000 cases.

In 2006/07, the FSL finalised 48 670 biological cases, and the Integrated Ballistics Information System received 168 732 cases. On average, the laboratory receives up to 30 firearms a day, and a comparison takes up to three days to complete.

In a world first, the country's Pretoria, Durban, Port Elizabeth and Cape Town databases were expected to be linked by June 2007.

The FSL has acquired a video spectral comparator infrared-apparatus to help differentiate between inks and documents, and detect alterations, additions and obliterations on documents. It has also acquired gas chromatograph mass spectrometers to assist in analysing drug-

related cases. The Craig Micro Spectrometer was obtained to analyse the colour of varied material.

Protection and Security Services

This division comprises the VIP Protection Service, Static and Mobile Security, Operational Support, Railway Policing, Government Security Regulator and Ports of Entry Security.

The VIP Protection Service protects and secures the national and provincial executive of South Africa, comprising the President, Deputy President, former presidents, national ministers, premiers, members of provincial executive committees and any other office bearer whose safety is of national importance.

This component is also responsible for protecting visiting foreign dignitaries who qualify for protection, and judges and magistrates presiding over trials where their safety may be threatened.

Static and Mobile Security provides comprehensive static security cover to all identified strategic government installations, including residences and offices of identified VIPs.

Railway Policing prevents and combats organised crime, serious and violent crime, and crimes against women and children in the rail environment.

The Government Security Regulator regulates physical security in the public sector and strategic installations, and administers the National Key Points Act, 1980 (Act 102 of 1980).

Incident Management develops control centres and protocols for the monitoring of operations, and limits the probability and manages the impact of critical incidents in the operational sphere of Protection and Security Services.

The Security Advisory Service is responsible for evaluating all ports of entry (harbours, airports and border ports) and auditing the physical security at all government departments and VIP's residences and offices.

Ports of Entry Security is responsible for the security of all ports of entry into South Africa.

Operational Support ensures the operational success of the division, by way of financial management, human-resource (HR) management, auxiliary services, management services and SCM. It also facilitates, develops and co-ordinates



In June 2007, an anti-crime campaign, whereby the public can report suspected crime anonymously by SMS, was launched in Johannesburg.

The R75-million campaign, called Crime Line, is an initiative of Primedia and the South African Police Service (SAPS). Primedia provided R50 million and the SAPS R25 million to launch the initiative.

Citizens suspecting crime can send an SMS from their cellphones to the number 32211.

Radio 702 also handed over 65 mobile fingerprint identification machines.

policies; conducts inspections; and determines operational standards within the division.

Supply Chain Management

This division is responsible for meeting the total logistical needs of the SAPS through effective and efficient demand, acquisition, logistical, disposal and performance management.

In April 2006, the SAPS took over custodianship of all functional SAPS accommodation from the Department of Public Works.

The R600-million SAPS radio centre in Midrand, Gauteng, that opened in October 2007 is designed to accommodate all of Gauteng's emergency services in a single provincial call centre, with the number 10111. Existing 10111-centres will be integrated into the new centre, which was expected to be fully operational by mid-December 2007. The centre's digital trunked radio network will provide coverage for all of Gauteng and thus better police radio communication on all roads, in sports stadiums, shopping and convention centres, and airports.

Additional funds have been made available to procure more vehicles for the SAPS.

National Inspectorate

The National Inspectorate of the SAPS was reorganised in March 2007 when the National Commissioner signed the policy to centralise command and control of all provincial evaluation capacities.

Its inspection activity, unless otherwise directed by top management or special requests of provincial commissioners, is generally directed by information obtained at the Management Information Centre, where various analyses are done to promote intelligence-driven inspections.

Career Management

This division renders a people-centred HR service to all personnel and ensures their optimal deployment. It provides HR support and capacity-building to the SAPS, including management interventions, career coaching, career alignment and strategic workforce planning.

Training

The division is, among other things, responsible for the following in the SAPS:

- researching, designing and developing all policing-related education, training and development (ETD) learning programmes

- generating, maintaining and quality assuring all ETD system standards
- facilitating skills development
- managing basic training and management development
- managing field training
- managing in-service and specialised skills training

There are 22 training institutions countrywide that strategically provide quality training according to the Workplace Skills Plan of the SAPS.

To qualify for recruitment into the SAPS, new trainees have to undergo training for 12 months before they are enlisted. Thereafter, they are subjected to a further 12-month probation.

During the first six months, recruits are trained at any one of the training institutes throughout South Africa. The next six months are for field training at a designated training station.

After the first 12 months, the recruits are monitored and assessed as part of their probation. This is supplemented by various in-service training courses for specialisation.

The detective-learning programme has been increased from six to 14 weeks and is presented at the detective academies in Hammanskraal, Gauteng, and Paarl in the Western Cape. The detectives complete courses, including those connected to counter terrorism, commercial crime, organised crime, family violence, child protection and sexual offences, and serious and violent crime.

The development and training of all employees within the SAPS will remain a priority to ensure and enhance police capacity and effectiveness. As part of the ongoing expansion of the police service, 11 360 learners entered basic-training institutions across the country in 2007. They completed the National Certificate in Policing, which covers basic policing. A total of 1 500 investigators were trained in the Detective Learning Programme. Some of the 125 detective commanders from Gauteng were expected to be trained in the new Detective Commanders course, which would enhance their



In April 2007, the South African Police Service (SAPS) launched a new website to boost interaction with the public and provide information on personal safety, community policing and crime-fighting initiatives.

SAPS Journal Online (www.sapsjournalonline.gov.za) allows South Africans to submit their stories about crime, and showcases stories of police successes and convictions.

managerial skills. The Intelligence Trade Craft Learning Programme, which was developed in co-operation with all intelligence agencies, is set to equip members to act on information gathered and to initiate intelligence-driven operations to support crime fighting.

The Street Survival and Techniques course continues to provide functional members with the required skills to perform their duties in a safe and efficient manner. By mid-2007, more than 15 500 members had been trained.

During 2006/07, management courses focusing on police-specific subjects were presented to junior, middle and executive employees within the SAPS.

Legal Services

This division mainly provides a legal advisory service to the SAPS in respect of the development, interpretation, application and implementation of policy; the drafting of legislation; the management of litigious matters; the administration and management of contracts and agreements; arbitration; the management of national and international crime operations; special projects; the promotion of corporate identity and good governance; and the general administration and management of legal services.

Strategic Management

The functions of this component include facilitating the development and compilation of a strategic plan for the SAPS, facilitating the development of operational plans in support of the strategic plan at all levels, co-ordinating the strategic implementation of plans, and co-ordinating strategic monitoring and evaluation in the SAPS.

Various plans such as the Firearms Strategy, Prevention of Attacks and Killings of Police Officials, the Corruption and Fraud Prevention Strategy, and the Risk Management Strategy have been developed to assist with the implementation of strategic plans.

The component has a research unit that co-ordinates all research requests and conducts surveys.

Finance and Administration

This division ensures that the SAPS' budget is managed cost-effectively, manages financial and

auxiliary services and oversees the management and use of all resources in accordance with relevant directives and legislation. It has a capacity for support and interventions at national level pertaining to, among other things, managing the national budget.

Personnel Services

This division manages personnel-related matters in support of the operational priorities of the SAPS. It consists of the following three components:

- Employee Assistance Services maintains a professional occupational social-work service, as well as a disability and HIV- and AIDS-support service. It offers a professional spiritual-support service; conducts psychological interventions and evaluations; and manages, develops and enhances sport and recreation within the SAPS. It provides a national call-centre service and functions as a 24-hour helpline for the wellness of SAPS members.
- Personnel Provision and Maintenance comprises Promotions and Awards, and Personnel Provision.
- Service Terminations and Behaviour Management comprises three sections, namely Medical Administration, Service Absence and Terminations, and Behaviour Management.

Efficiency Services

Efficiency Services is responsible for organisational development and maintenance in the SAPS. Its



Between July 2004 and March 2007, 103 541 licensed firearms were handed in voluntarily to the South African Police Service (SAPS), together with 1 468 840 rounds of ammunition.

During the same period, the SAPS confiscated 73 132 illegal firearms and 1 125 666 rounds of ammunition. Between 2002 and 2006, the SAPS destroyed 415 351 firearms.

By mid-2007, 13 sports-shooting organisations, five hunting associations, 14 collectors' associations, 292 businesses in hunting, 439 training-providers and 298 shooting ranges had been licensed.

The SAPS had received 286 094 competency certificates and 408 114 renewal applications, respectively. Some 120 121 competency certificates had been finalised and 84 885 firearm licence renewals processed.



functions include developing and maintaining organisational structures, working procedures and methods, and official forms and registers within the framework of the strategic objectives of the service.

Other functions include organisational and business-process analyses and design, resource establishment, facilitation of managerial processes, and dealing with relevant organisational enquiries.

Information and Systems Management

The ISM's strategy, which will be implemented over several years, focuses on three operational areas. The first intervention aims at modernising and expanding the number of personal computers, printers and fax machines. The second focuses on modernising and expanding the hosting capabilities and network infrastructure. The third entails implementing a range of strategic initiatives for leveraging the full potential of information systems and information and communications technologies.

Communication and Liaison Services

Communication and Liaison Services promotes the image of the SAPS by:

- meeting the organisation's communication needs through internal and external communication, and by dealing with the local and international media
- building community relations
- doing communication planning, research and marketing
- making the best use of various mediums of communication such as *POL TV*, *Police File*, the *SAPS Journal*, the SAPS website and intranet
- producing training videos.

The component preserves and promotes the image, identity and heritage of the SAPS. It is responsible for the SAPS library, music services, museum protocol, and film and TV liaison.

Internal Audit

Internal Audit evaluates and contributes to improving the risk management, control and governance systems of the SAPS. To achieve its objectives, the component considers the adequacy and effectiveness of controls and the likelihood of risk, and recommends improvements.

Preparations for the 2010 World Cup

South Africa is expected to deploy 30 000 police officers specifically to ensure the safety of visitors to the country during the 2010 World Cup. There will be one police officer to every 10 foreign tourists expected for the duration of the event.

The Government plans to increase the number of police officers in the country from 156 000 to more than 190 000 over the next three years.

These numbers will be bolstered further by South Africa's police-reservist (volunteer) service, which had about 30 000 active members by 2007 and was expected to grow to 80 000 by 2009, supported by an additional government budget of R260 million. By mid-2007, the SAPS was strengthening its partnerships with the country's 300 000-strong private-security industry, as well as with local communities.

The SAPS was allocated an additional R600 million to prepare for the World Cup, mostly to purchase equipment ranging from light aircraft to retractable fencing. Other equipment needed includes mobile command centres, water cannons, crime-scene trailers, new armour for vehicles, new tools for bomb squads and light aircraft for patrolling the skies above World Cup venues and equipped with video cameras to send live footage to officers on the ground.

Each stadium will have one or two mobile police centres featuring high-tech monitoring equipment with which to perform functions such as identity checks.

In addition, every host city will have a dedicated 2010 police station with separate holding cells, a courtroom for speedy judgments and a home affairs office for possible deportations.

International police officers from every country playing in the event will also be present, wearing their own uniforms, to assist the SAPS and public.

Business Against Crime (BAC)

BAC was formed in 1996 at the request of former President Nelson Mandela. For business to play a pivotal role in supporting government's crime-fighting initiatives, its resources and skills are needed.

BAC is a section 21 not-for-profit organisation mandated to support government in the fight against crime. The organisation is primarily funded by business-sector donations, and has a presence in seven provinces with a national office in Johannesburg.

The BAC's vision is for a safe and secure South Africa where its people and businesses live without the threat of crime and violence.

The BAC's mission is to:

- facilitate an effective and close working relationship between government and industry in the fight against crime
- facilitate the implementation of a long-term social-crime prevention strategy with government

- partner business with international organisations to support government in the fight against crime
- facilitate the alignment of business-wide and other relevant non-governmental organisations' crime-fighting initiatives
- facilitate the achievement of government's goals for reducing crime, as set out in the National Crime-Prevention Strategy and departmental plans
- leverage resources, skills and the expertise of business to assist government in attaining an effective and efficient criminal justice system (CJS)
- build community and business confidence and support by communicating the successes of the fight against crime consistently and aggressively.

Programmes

The BAC's seven programmes include:

- The Criminal Justice Strengthening Programme that is designed to build, support and strengthen the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development, through the professional management of courts and court services.
- The Tiisa Thuto Programme that seeks to teach scholars non-violent methods of conflict-resolution and positive morality, including life skills and personal values, to reduce crime and violence and improve standards of learning.
- The Support Programme for Police Stations, which aims to improve service delivery at police stations through effective management, best practices, and skills and capacity development.
- The Commercial Crime (including fraud and corruption) Programme, which established specialised commercial court centres (SCCCs) countrywide, staffed by specialists, to convict people awaiting trial quickly and efficiently, and secure appropriate sentences. The SCCCs have an average conviction rate of between 97% and 98%.
- The Organised Crime Programme aims to reduce large-scale syndicated crimes by removing the commercial benefit of trading in stolen goods, as well as ensuring the effective prosecution of offenders. The focus is on vehicle theft and hijacking, and the theft of cellphones and copper cables. Business processes within the vehicle-

management system aim to root out fraud and corruption and improve service delivery. The Cellphone Blacklisting Agreement, brokered by BAC, was signed on 13 April 2005 by the SAPS, Cell C, MTN and Vodacom.

- The Department of Justice and Constitutional Development has been reorganised into functional business units that have a proper management structure and accountability criteria at all levels. The programme involves implementing financial policies and procedures for managing the department in accordance with good business practice and generally accepted accounting principles.
- The Support Programme seeks to enhance the department's internal capacity through a number of interventions, to address overcrowding and recidivism in prisons.
- The BAC National Vehicle Crime Project, that includes the microdotting of vehicles as a measure against vehicle theft, was among the programmes consolidated in 2007. By mid-2007, government and the business sector were discussing a best-practice model for motor-vehicle registration and licensing to reduce fraud and corruption.

All programmes have clear and appropriate performance and delivery goals that the BAC board, government, donors and sponsors review continually.

Presidential Working Group on Big Business

In April 2007, President Thabo Mbeki met with the Big Business Working Group in Pretoria. The state of electricity generation, transmission and consumption in South Africa and plans for improving energy security over the short to long term were presented. The Joint Government/Business Team tackling crime-fighting explained the initiatives that they had taken as well as their Government/Business "Step Change" crime-fighting initiative that involved close collaboration between the Government and business.

The group had four work groups for reducing violent organised crime, improving the effectiveness of the CJS, social mobilising and enhancing overall service delivery. They would be focusing on crimes such as house robberies,

vehicle robbery, and cash-in-transit and business heists in the short term.

Defence

The Constitution, the Defence Act, 2002 (Act 42 of 2002), and the *White Paper on Defence and the Defence Review*, mandate the Department of Defence. These laws and policies direct and guide the functions of the Department of Defence and the SANDF.

The mission of the Department of Defence is to provide, manage, prepare and employ defence capabilities commensurate with the needs of South Africa, as regulated by the Constitution, national legislation, and parliamentary and executive direction. The department's mission success-factors involve:

- national consensus on defence
- excellent strategic direction
- excellent resource management
- effective combat and support forces
- professionalism in the conduct of operations
- successful implementation of the transformation process.

Ongoing transformation has drastically changed the functions of the department from offensive to defensive. Not only has the posture been amended to primarily defensive, but it is now described as non-threatening. It is gradually withdrawing from its involvement in support of the police and other protection agencies.

As a key player in regional peace efforts, and as a committed member of the SADC and the AU, the department is participating in various initiatives aimed at securing peace and stability in Africa.

By April 2007, the Department of Defence had deployed 14 defence attachés in Africa, and was planning to add 15 more by 2008.

The defence budget was expected to remain constant over the next three years, with R25,9 billion set aside for 2007/08, R28 billion for 2008/09, and R28,6 billion for 2009/10.

Legislation

Defence Act, 2002

The Defence Act, 2002 regulates the defence function.

National Conventional Arms Control Committee (NCACC) Act, 2002 (Act 41 of 2002)

The NCACC Act, 2002 establishes, among other things, the NCACC (a committee of ministers of which the Minister of Defence is a member) as a statutory body to ensure compliance with government policies in respect of arms control, and

to provide guidelines and criteria to be used when assessing applications for permits.

National conventional arms-control regulations dealing with applications for permits and the list of dual-use goods, technologies and munitions that are subject to control were published in May 2004. The NCACC's Policy for the Control of Trade in Conventional Arms was promulgated in January 2004.

Protection of Constitutional Democracy and Related Activities Act, 2004 (Act 33 of 2004)

The Protection of Constitutional Democracy and Related Activities Act, 2004 came into force on 20 April 2005. Given the scale and nature of contemporary terrorist threats and activities, it is conceivable that military action, including action in fulfilling international obligations, and action exceeding the usual service in co-operation with the SAPS, could be required in future.

Any military action surpassing service in co-operation with the SAPS and aimed at preventing or combating terrorism within South Africa must be in defence of the country, its sovereign territory, its citizens or its political independence.

Only the President may authorise the deployment of the SANDF in defence of South Africa or in co-operation with the SAPS.

Functions

The SANDF may be employed for:

- defending South Africa, and for protecting its sovereignty and territorial integrity
- compliance with South Africa's international obligations regarding international bodies and other states
- preserving life, health and property
- providing and maintaining essential services
- upholding law and order in South Africa in co-operation with the SAPS, under circumstances set out in legislation, where the SAPS is unable to maintain law and order on its own
- supporting any state department for the purpose of socio-economic upliftment
- functions in support of national interests.

Defence Strategy

The Department of Defence's Defence Strategy is based on the Constitution, the *White Paper on Defence*, the *Defence Review* and the National Security Strategy.

The Defence Strategy endeavours to perform the functions as set out in legislation and policy, which include defence of the sovereignty, territorial

integrity and people of South Africa. It also includes promoting the regional and continental security initiatives of the South African Government.

The Defence Strategy promotes good departmental governance and the continuous improvement of defence capabilities, and also ensures that resources are provided to all required elements of the Department of Defence.

Military Strategy

The Military Strategy of South Africa is derived from the Constitution, the *Defence Review*, the *White Paper on Defence* and the National Security Strategy. The National Security Strategy is derived from implied national interests, the Department of Foreign Affairs and International Relations, Peace and Security and JCPS Cluster objectives.

Military strategic objectives

The purpose of military strategic objectives is to defend South Africa in accordance with the United Nations (UN) Charter, which allows for any country to defend itself. This self-defence aims at protecting the country and its territorial integrity. The military strategic objectives of the SANDF are the following:

- Enhancing and maintaining comprehensive defence capabilities by providing self-defence in accordance with international law against any external aggression which endangers the stability of South Africa.
- Promoting peace, security and stability in the region and on the continent. The purpose is to provide armed forces for external deployment in accordance with international obligations, or support to enhance security of decisions by the executive.
- Supporting the people of South Africa by being employed for service in South Africa. This could be by means of operations other than war during periods when the responsible state departments do not have the capacity to do so.

Missions

The SANDF uses a mission-based approach to achieve the military strategic objectives of the Department of Defence. This approach allows for wartime and peacetime missions to direct the peacetime strategy for force preparation, and to

guide joint and combined force preparation and force employment during times of conflict. The missions envisaged for the next 10 years include:

- repelling conventional and unconventional onslaught
- peace-support operations
- health support
- defence diplomacy
- special-forces operations
- support to other government departments
- disaster relief and humanitarian assistance
- presidential tasks.

Military strategic concepts

The military strategic concepts describe the procedures to be followed to meet military strategic objectives:

- Providing mission-essential training: The SANDF educates, trains and develops its soldiers in the essential skills required to execute the tasks necessary to accomplish its missions. It focuses on force training and preparation aligned with the allocated budget.
- Establishing a mission-trained force: The SANDF is to have the capability to establish a mission-trained force that can engage in specific missions. The force will be relatively small, but must ultimately be prepared according to the missions and capabilities required.
- Selective engagement where possible: The SANDF will execute all missions as ordered, but will be selective in the courses of action it will follow, the force levels it will field, as well as the capabilities and resources it will provide and maintain. It focuses on consciously taking calculated strategic and operational risks.
- Strategic positioning: This entails establishing early-warning mechanisms, such as deploying military attachés and getting involved in subregional institutions to enhance peace and security in the region. This supports development initiatives such as the SADC and AU.

Military strategic capabilities

The SANDF's capabilities constitute the means of the strategy and consist of:

- command and control, communications, information technology, information, intelligence,



infrastructure, reconnaissance and surveillance capabilities

- light mobile capability
- conventional warfare capability
- support capability.

Human Resource 2010 Strategy

A key initiative to sustain the Department of Defence's state of readiness in the context of people-centred transformation is the HR 2010 Strategy (HR 2010).

HR 2010 aims to ensure that the department has the most effective, efficient and economical HR composition of both uniformed and civilian members to deliver on its mandate and support for government.

Military Skills Development System (MSDS)

The MSDS, launched in 2003, aims to ensure a continuous intake of young, healthy South Africans into the SANDF. This is to rejuvenate the Regular Force and supply the Reserve Force.

The MSDS not only provides young South Africans with military skills, but also contributes to their social upliftment by providing them with skills that they will use in their civilian lives after completing their military service.

It also provides the youth with employment opportunities. By mid-2007, of the total strength of 5 166 MSDS soldiers, 1 536 or 30% were women. The MSDS was also planning to attract and recruit a sizeable number of white young men and women, whose representation was just 6%.

Through the MSDS, the South African Navy (SA Navy) has provided on average 600 young men and women per year the opportunity to complete the two-year Military Skills Development Programme. Nearly 60% of these people were subsequently afforded the opportunity to migrate to the Core Career Service System and now serve as proud members of the SA Navy. The remaining 40% were helped to find relevant employment and were incorporated into the SA Navy Reserves.

Organisational structure Defence Secretariat

The Department of Defence adheres to the principles of civil control and oversight through the Minister of Defence, through various parliamentary committees such as the Joint Standing Committee on Defence (JSCD) and the Defence Secretariat. While the minister is responsible for providing political direction to the department, the JSCD

ensures that the Executive Authority (Minister of Defence) remains accountable to Parliament. However, for day-to-day administration and the co-ordination of strategic processes, the Minister of Defence relies on the Defence Secretariat, which is the civilian leg of the department.

The Secretary for Defence heads the Defence Secretariat.

In terms of the Defence Act, 2002, the Defence Secretariat is responsible for:

- supporting the Secretary for Defence in his/her capacity as the head of the department, the accounting officer for the department and the principal departmental adviser to the Minister of Defence
- performing any functions entrusted by the minister to the Secretary for Defence, in particular those necessary or expedient to enhance civil control by Parliament over the Department of Defence, parliamentary committees overseeing the Department of Defence, and the Minister of Defence over the Department of Defence
- providing the SANDF with comprehensive instructions regarding the exercise of powers
- monitoring compliance with policies and directions issued by the Minister of Defence to the SANDF, and reporting on them to the minister
- ensuring discipline of, administrative control over, and the management of employees, including effective utilisation and training
- instituting departmental investigations as may be provided for by the law.

Chief of the South African National Defence Force

The functions of the Chief of the SANDF include:

- advising the Minister of Defence on any military, operational and administrative matters
- complying with directions issued by the Minister of Defence under the authority of the President, as contemplated in the Constitution
- formulating and issuing policies and doctrines
- exercising command by issuing orders, directives and instructions
- directing management and administration
- executing approved programmes of the defence budget
- employing the armed forces in accordance with legislation
- training the armed forces
- maintaining defence capabilities
- planning contingencies
- managing the defence force as a disciplined military force.

Inspector-General

The Inspector-General provides management information to the Secretary for Defence. This is derived from performance and regulatory internal audits based on the risks derived from the Department of Defence Risk Register and results gained from survey analyses.

Policy and Planning

The Policy and Planning Division comprises the Defence Policy, HR Policy and Strategic Management components. The functions of this subprogramme include, but are not limited to:

- providing advice relating to general defence policies to the Minister of Defence, Deputy Minister of Defence, Secretary for Defence and the Chief of the SANDF
- overseeing the strategic management, planning and strategic control processes of the department
- managing the policy-formulation process of the department
- drawing up, promulgating and presenting the departmental plan to Parliament
- ensuring integration and performance analyses of management systems in the department
- interpreting input and influences that could affect the overall national defence strategy
- regulating conventional arms transfers in accordance with government policy
- co-ordinating the drawing up of national contingency plans for a state of national defence.

Managing transformation

The Transformation Project aims to:

- maximise defence capabilities through an affordable and sustainable force design and structure
- minimise defence costs using business processes, i.e. engineering and restructuring of especially the support structures
- institutionalise appropriate leadership, command and management practices, philosophy and principles
- align defence policies, plans and management with overall government transformation and administrative-reform initiatives
- ensure compliance with the Public Finance

Management Act (PFMA), 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), as amended by Act 29 of 1999 and National Treasury regulations.

After comprehensive research, seven shared values for the department were approved:

- military professionalism
- human dignity
- integrity
- leadership
- accountability
- loyalty
- patriotism.

Operations

Conventional

In the event of a conventional military threat against South Africa, the broad joint concept of operations will be as follows:

- land operations: the SANDF will conduct offensive, proactive and reactive land operations directed at stopping and destroying the enemy before it can penetrate South African territory
- air operations: enemy air power will be neutralised mainly through defensive counter-air operations assisted by air-mobile land operations aimed at destroying the enemy's air force on the ground
- maritime operations: enemy maritime forces will be attacked at range, while the defence of own and friendly shipping will be enhanced by defensive patrols and escort
- South African Military Health Service (SAMHS) operations: during conventional operations, the SAMHS deploys its mobile formation in direct support of land, air and maritime operations.

Non-conventional

The broad non-conventional concepts of operations are as follows:

- support to the SAPS in maintaining law and order will be provided by general support tasks and focused rapid-reaction operations directed at priority crime and the conduct of special operations
- border control will be exercised on land, sea and air by high-technology surveillance supported by rapid-reaction forces
- general area protection will be provided by a



combination of high-density and rapid-reaction operations.

Operational commitments

Operational commitments include:

- Achieving international and regional defence co-operation aims.
- Executing limited peace operations.
- Effective land, sea and air-border control.
- Maintaining law and order in support of the SAPS, with special attention to combating taxi violence, robberies and heists.
- Controlling South African maritime areas of responsibility, including the Exclusive Economic Zone (EEZ).
- When requested, providing support to civil authorities within the scope of regulations regarding:
 - the preservation of life, health and property
 - the maintenance of essential services
 - the provision of medical and health services
 - search-and-rescue operations
 - missions to the Antarctic and the southern oceans
 - diplomatic initiatives.
- Air-transport missions, including for diplomatic commitments and scheduled departmental flights.
- Area-defence operation missions.
- Multinational and joint-force preparation missions.
- Special forces missions.
- Borderline control: The SANDF deploys forces in support of the SAPS along South Africa's international borders. The SANDF is gradually phasing out its role in this regard. SANDF deployment consists of an average of nine infantry companies patrolling selected stretches of the borderline as the situation demands, supported by elements of the SAMHS and the South African Air Force (SAAF). The SAAF contributes aircraft to deploy land forces along the land borders where necessary. It also does reconnaissance flights along the land and sea borders to assist the SA Navy in patrolling the EEZ. The SA Navy patrols the coastline, assisting the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism with the prosecution of illegal fisherfolk, while also maintaining a presence at sea, thereby deterring other criminal activities such as drug smuggling.

The SAAF further assists the Civil Aviation Authority (CAA) and the SAPS border component in reducing the incidence of illegal aircraft flights into the

country which, in most cases, are involved with smuggling. The SAMHS is the confirming authority for all flight medicals for air crew registered with the CAA.

Other defence commitments

The Department of Defence's other commitments are to:

- achieve a reasonable level military diplomacy by:
 - placing and controlling of defence attachés
 - establishing and maintaining bi- and multilateral agreements
 - participating in the activities of the defence structures of multinational organisations such as the UN, AU and SADC (especially in the Interstate Defence and Security Committee)
- meet the international obligations of the Department of Defence in line with international agreements, which may include search-and-rescue and hydrography
- provide communications-security services to other state departments
- administer the National Key Points Act, 1980
- provide healthcare for the President and Deputy President.

Force employment

In accordance with the Force-Employment Strategy approved in 2002, force-employment structures provide for operational level structures to enhance command and control, cost-efficiency and functional differentiation at Joint Operations Division's military-strategic, operational and tactical levels. This ensures that the department's core strategic objectives are addressed effectively.

For internal operations, nine tactical-level headquarters have been established, one in each province. If required, temporary joint task force headquarters may be created for specific operations. Combat-ready units are prepared, provided and supported, as required.

Bases

Bases are lower-level structures provided by all the services. Units are generally clustered in or around bases, and share common facilities and services. Bases exercise administrative control, but not command over attached units.

One Force

"One Force" comprises the regular and reserve-force components of the SANDF. The Regular Force consists of highly trained soldiers to operate and maintain a core capability, as well as sophisticated

equipment and defence systems. The Reserve Force is the former part-time component of the SANDF. Members are trained to support the core defence commitment.

Force preparation

The chiefs of the South African Army (SA Army), SAAF, SA Navy and SAMHS are responsible for the “provide forces” processes of their respective services. Formations are basic building blocks in this process.

Each formation has its own commander. A formation includes, where practical, all units and support elements related to a specific user-system type.

It is capable of providing a fully supported user system to a commander responsible for the exercising and combat-readiness of land, air, maritime and military health capabilities, such as a brigade or division commander.

A formation can provide the same service to a task-force commander appointed by the Chief of Joint Operations.

This is a considerable improvement in cost-effectiveness, while it also provides the best way of retaining core defence capabilities, especially expertise in critical mass function. Some examples of formations established by the different services are:

- SA Army – infantry, artillery or armour formations
- SAAF – direct combat system
- SA Navy – the fleet
- SAMHS – military-health formations.

A formation’s specific geographical location depends on where its combat and support units are concentrated.

Force support

Support formations are intermediate structures with their own formation commanders. Their task is to provide combat support to type formations and other system structures.

Military veterans

The Military Veterans Affairs Act, 1999 (Act 17 of 1999), came into effect on 1 February 2001. The regulations in terms of the Act were approved for promulgation by the Minister of Defence.

The minister appointed a chairperson and members of the Advisory Board on Military Veterans’ Affairs from nominations received from the recognised military veterans’ organisations. The President is designated as the Patron-in-Chief of all military veterans in terms of the Act.

Resettlement

The Directorate: Personnel Separation has executed programmes at various levels in terms of HR 2010. The directorate serves as a nodal point for redeployment and resettlement.

The Department of Defence established the Personnel Rationalisation Advisory and Co-ordinating Committee to ensure efficient and cost-effective support programmes for resettling and redeploying of the department’s members and employees affected by separation.

The directorate has established and implemented the Social Plan, which addresses the reskilling and psychosocial needs of the department’s employees.

Professional multidisciplinary teams execute this support programme. The HR Planning Instruction guides the process of interdepartmental transfers of redeployable members and employees.

Peace support

Based on the *White Paper on South African Participation in International Peace Missions*, the SANDF continues to support peace missions.

Some 2 500 SANDF soldiers are deployed at any given day in peace support and related operations outside South Africa’s borders.

Burundi

In 2007, Burundi requested that South Africa mediate peace talks between the Government and Palipehutu-FNL, the last rebel movement that is not part of the Arusha Agreement of 2000.

After conclusion of the UN Operation in Burundi (Onub), executed in line with the UN Security Council Resolution 1545 of 2004, which paved the way for a democratic government in Burundi, all forces withdrew to their countries of origin, including South African soldiers. Late in 2006, however, the Palipehutu-FNL also signed the Arusha Agreement and was entitled to participate in



the country's democratic process and absorption into the Burundian National Defence Force. The AU asked South Africa and a number of African countries to provide forces to facilitate this process.

South Africa contributed 1 100 troops to the AU's special task force in Burundi in March 2007, following the return in February 2007 of an 800-strong battalion that served with the Onub. The AU Task Force took over in Burundi when the UN's mandate ended on 31 December 2006.

Democratic Republic of Congo

South Africa has been involved with peacekeeping in the DRC since April 2001. SANDF members form part of the UN mission as military observers, staff officers and contingent members.

In terms of a bilateral agreement between the governments of South Africa and the DRC, 27 SANDF members were deployed in the DRC during February 2005 to assist with the integration of the different armed groups. This is not part of the UN mission in the DRC and facilitates the compilation of a nominal role for the DRC's armed forces, issuing of military identity documents and team-building training of the integrated DRC forces. By May 2006, some 1 200 SANDF members were deployed in the DRC.

Sudan

Since July 2004, when 10 SANDF members were deployed to the Sudan as observers, about 500 more South African soldiers have been deployed there in support of the AU Mission in Sudan.

Ethiopia and Eritrea

Six military observers and staff officers form part of the UN and AU missions that have been deployed in Ethiopia and Eritrea since December 2002.

Nepal

Two South African soldiers have been deployed in Nepal since March 2007, as staff officer and observer, respectively.

Acquisition of weapon systems

Directorate: Army Acquisition

The Directorate: Army Acquisition is engaged in various capital projects at various stages of execution. The projects include upgrades of existing equipment and several major new systems. A number of upgrades were also completed.

A major focus area is the SA Army's armoured combat-vehicle capability. This includes Mamba, Casspir, Olifant Mk II main battle tank, Rooikat armoured car and GV6 self-propelled gun systems

that are all being upgraded to extend their usage, while the new infantry combat-vehicle and supply-support vehicle programmes are close to being contracted.

The infantry's indirect fire capability and anti-tank missile systems were expected to be commissioned by the end of 2007 and 2008, respectively. The Hornet rapid-deployment vehicle system for special forces entered into service at the end of 2006, and the Gecko rapid-deployment logistical vehicle, destined for use by airborne forces, was also handed over to the SA Army by the end of 2006.

The directorate focused on several engineering projects, with a new water-provision system to be commissioned from the end of 2009, when enhanced mine-detection and earth-moving systems will also be commissioned.

The acquisition of phase one of a tactical intelligence system (TIS) has been contracted. The TIS consists of a tactical intelligence centre at brigade level and a tactical intelligence-control post at regimental level.

Directorate: Air Force Acquisition

Following the delay in the certification of the avionics software of the Hawk lead-in fighter trainer aircraft, ministerial approval for a contract change proposal to allow for a phased release to service has been received. According to the phased release, aircraft are delivered with interim software certification configuration. The full fleet of 24 Hawks was expected to be delivered to the SAAF in its final configuration by April 2008.

The Gripen Advanced Light Fighter Aircraft is still under development, with a series of production activities under way. The test flight programme at the Test Flight and Development Centre (TFDC) at Bredasdorp (to complete the certification phase in the Western Cape) was scheduled for completion in October 2007.

Delivery of the first production aircraft was planned for the first quarter of 2008. Delivery of the remaining dual-seat aircraft will commence from the third quarter of 2008, with the last single-seat aircraft being delivered at the end of 2011. The initial cadre of Gripen groundcrew training in Sweden started in February 2007 and was expected to be completed by June 2007.

The first batch of Agusta A109 light-utility helicopters has been commissioned at the SAAF Helicopter Flying School. Delivery of the rest of the fleet continued to the various squadrons, with final handover to the SAAF expected during 2007.

The Super Lynx maritime helicopter project has commenced with production in the United Kingdom. The first deliveries were scheduled for 2007 and handover to the SAAF in 2008.

As part of a government initiative, an international partnership has been formed with Airbus Military to rejuvenate the local aviation industry. This has resulted in an acquisition contract for eight A400M large military-transport aircraft.

Substantial orders for structural components for the worldwide fleet of aircraft were placed with local companies in accordance with contractual agreements. Based on the present development plan, the first South African aircraft should be delivered by the end of 2010.

In addition to these major programmes, a host of smaller upgrade projects are also being implemented. These will enhance existing capabilities and improve the efficacy of ageing equipment to extend their effective service to the optimum.

Directorate: Naval Acquisition

Two frigates, *SAS Spioenkop* and *SAS Mendi*, were commissioned and handed over to the SA Navy early in 2007.

By mid-2007, the project was in the final stages of integration into the SA Navy and was expected to run for an additional year to complete the

integration of the maritime helicopter due for delivery to South Africa in mid-2007.

The 209 submarine, *SAS Charlotte Maxeke*, was commissioned and named on 14 March 2007. She departed from Germany on 16 March 2007, escorted by *SAS Drakensberg* and, after a 8 000-nautical mile journey, arrived in Simon's Town on 26 April 2007.

By mid-2007, the third submarine, *SAS Queen Modjadji*, was undergoing sea acceptance trials and was expected to arrive in South Africa in 2008.

Phase one of the Underwater Signature Measurement System was expected to be handed over to the SA Navy in December 2007, with phase two following about 18 months later.

Command and Management Information System

It is envisaged that formal acquisition of the first components of the tactical telecommunications system will commence early in 2008.

The projects for a mobile and transportable power-provision system, static and mobile telecommunications carrier system as well as a static electronic warfare system have entered their respective definition phases.

The definition of the joint tactical command and control system for brigade level and lower has been completed and the process of acquiring a solution has commenced with a planned delivery date of 2008.

South African Military Health Service System

The design of a biochemical defence system for both urban and conventional employment is being conducted.

Facilities, Land and Environment

Facilities, Land and Environmental Management in the Department of Defence strives for the efficient management of these entities. The department has adopted the process of base conversion. The focus is on the role and responsibilities of the military process of conversion aimed at assisting role-players in closing down and re-using military bases sustainably.

The *Military Integrated Training Range Guide* provides military environmental managers with



In 2007, Lieutenant (Lt) Phetogo Molawa, 21, became the South African National Defence Force's (SANDF) first black female helicopter pilot.

She displayed her flying prowess in an Oryx army helicopter to delegates attending the third Women's Conference in Defence in Centurion outside Pretoria on 15 August 2007.

Lt Molawa, who hails from the Free State, completed her initial helicopter training at the SANDF and is one of only a few female helicopter pilots in the Air Force.

The SANDF has set itself the target of 30% representation by women in all its decision-making structures by 2009.

Earlier in 2007, the Minister of Defence, Mr Mosiuoa Lekota, announced the appointment of 11 new brigadier-generals and two new rear admirals. Eight of the new brigadier-generals were women, bringing the total number of female generals in the SANDF to 25.

information that will ensure the long-term continuation of environmentally sound management practices. It will also enhance the ability of the defence sector to sustain long-term and cost-effective range operations.

The department continues to demonstrate its responsibility as the custodian of land entrusted to it through active co-operation in government's land redistribution and restitution policies.

Over the past decade, the department has been rationalising its land portfolio and has made one third (close to a quarter million hectares) of its original estate available for non-military use.

Armaments

Armaments Corporation of South Africa

Armcor is a statutory body established in accordance with the Armcor Limited Act, 2003 (Act 51 of 2003). The Minister of Defence is the executive authority responsible for Armcor. The management and control of Armcor resides with a board of directors, while its day-to-day management vests in the hands of the management board.

In executing its functions, Armcor maintains capabilities and technologies that are required to fulfil its mandate.

These include appropriate programme-management systems, the Defence Industrial Participation Programme, and the management of technology projects and strategic facilities. Armcor acquires defence material for the Department of Defence and for any organ of state that may require such services, such as the SAPS and other public entities, as approved by the Minister of Defence.

Quality assurance

Armcor provides for a quality-assurance capability in support of acquisition and technology projects as well as for any other service required by the Department of Defence.

To enhance this capability, Armcor is a certified International Organisation for Standardisation 9001:2000.

Armcor Business (Pty) Ltd

This subsidiary of Armcor offers defence-support services of an exceptional standard to the Department of Defence.

The core of these services includes defence research and development, test and evaluation, disposal of defence material and logistic support services.

To fulfil this mandate, Armcor Business is structured into three groups:

Defence, Science and Technology Institute

- The Institute for Maritime Technology aims to satisfy strategic needs for technomilitary maritime support, products and services; and to establish applicable technology and systems to further the interests of the SANDF.
- Protechnik Laboratories conducts research, and develops and implements projects in the fields of chemical and biological defence, and the non-proliferation of chemical weapons.
- The Defence Institute assists the defence community in developing informed solutions to decision-making problems over the full life-cycle of defence capabilities.
- Hazmat Protective Systems manufactures and distributes protective equipment such as filter canisters, cartridges and masks, and impregnates activated carbon.
- Ergonomics Technologies is a leading ergonomics consultancy providing a comprehensive service in ergonomics, and occupational health and safety, both locally and internationally. It is an inspection authority in occupational hygiene, approved by the Department of Labour.
- Flamengo, the Fluid and Mechanical Engineering Group, specialises in the numerical stimulation of the dynamic behaviour of fluid flow and structures, and the processing of experimental data to serve as input for improved simulations or to evaluate the accuracy of theoretical predictions.
- Armour Development provides a research and development capability for armour protection and anti-armour attacks.



In 2005/06, the Department of Defence announced that, together with the Safety and Security Sector Education and Training Authority (SASSETA), it had launched a project to re-skill unemployed military veterans.

Together, they created a database of military veterans that was expected to be completed in 2007. The database revealed that 4 000 veterans needed housing. The Department of Housing was asked for help in this matter.

By August 2007, the SASSETA Project had trained 800 veterans, which represented 17% of the target, and a number of them had found jobs with government departments such as the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry's Working for Water Project, and metropolitan municipalities, notably Ekurhuleni.

The Department of Defence also intended to provide medical assistance to veterans to relieve their financial burden and give them access to medical treatment and psychological counselling to help them adapt to civilian life.

Test and Evaluation Group

- Gerotek Test Facilities provides specialised services such as testing and evaluating vehicles and vehicle components, researching and developing vehicle-testing technologies and methods, VHF/UHF and microwave antenna-testing and evaluation, environmental testing, and verifying military products against specification. The Events Division offers restaurant, conference and development facilities, whereas the Training Division offers various driver-training courses.
- Alkantpan offers an all-purpose weapon and ammunition test range for the testing of all kinds of weaponry, ranging in calibre from 20 mm to 155 mm and larger.

Defence Support Group

- Armscor Defence Asset Management Centre provides decision-making support in the acquisition, operational and phasing-out phases of systems by rendering data and asset-management services.
- Defence Material Disposal is the appointed agent of the Department of Defence to dispose of redundant military defence equipment.
- AB Logistics Freight is a registered and accredited customs-clearing agent with the South African Revenue Service, and a member of the Federation of Freight Forwarders Associations and the South African Association of Freight Forwarders. It also enjoys authority to act as a customs-clearing agent in South Africa.

Armscor is financed mainly by an annual payment from the Department of Defence, interest received on investments, letting of its buildings, commission from stock sales, and income from subsidiaries. The acquisition of arms is transparent and fully accountable. Armscor publishes the monthly *Contracts Bulletin*, which contains all requests for proposals and bids awarded. A daily electronic bulletin is also available to the industry through a secure computer network.

Denel Group of South Africa

Denel (Pty) Ltd operates in the military aerospace and landward defence environment. Incorporated as a private company in 1992 in terms of the

Companies Act, 1973 (Act 61 of 1973), Denel's sole shareholder is the South African Government.

The Minister of Public Enterprises appoints an independent board of directors to oversee the executive management team responsible for the day-to-day management of the company.

As part of a major restructuring, arguably the most substantive in its 15-year history, Denel is being unbundled. While Denel itself will remain state-owned, its constituent businesses are in the process of being corporatised as stand-alone companies, each with its own board of directors and operating off its own balance sheet.

Denel as a holding company is set to retain equity in these businesses, varying from full ownership (100%) to minority shareholding.

In this transformation, the new companies are actively seeking equity partners, local or foreign, to introduce modern business processes and management, skills development, technology transfer, the injection of fresh capital and market access.

The unbundling of the Government's defence company is key to refocusing the business. In the roll-out of the macrostrategy embarked upon in mid-2005, clear indicators have emerged as to which businesses are profitable or potentially profitable and which should be disposed of.

The board of directors has recommended a way forward to the shareholder (government), notably in instances where particular businesses are commercially unviable, but strategic to the needs of South Africa's armed forces.

The South African Government considers Denel a strategic asset for its role as custodian of South Africa's technological capabilities, and as a driver of skills development in the engineering and high-technology disciplines.

Moreover, Denel is a key domestic supplier to the SANDF. Apart from being an original equipment manufacturer in certain product categories, Denel



In 2007, Bubele Kitie Mhlana, popularly known as "Bravo", became the captain of *SAS Isandlwana*, making him the first African commander of a frigate. The process of qualifying as a naval commander of a frigate is long and arduous, and demands considerable intellectual growth and development.

is also expected to overhaul, maintain, repair, refurbish and upgrade defence systems in the SANDF's arsenal. As such, it ensures a greater measure of strategic independence for the country, while providing the SANDF with the cost-effective means to undertake its role in peacekeeping and in peace-support missions beyond South Africa's borders.

In several niche areas, Denel has developed innovative technologies, principally in artillery, munitions, missiles and unmanned aerial vehicles (UAVs). Along with specific production capabilities, its businesses are well positioned to act as specialised contractors to global defence suppliers.

The restructuring process also involves disposing of non-core businesses and driving internal improvements across all core business units. As a state-owned enterprise, Denel remains subject to the provisions of the PFMA, 1999, while being managed in accordance with sound business principles as laid down in the Companies Act, 1973. In terms of corporate governance, Denel adheres to the King II guidelines.

Denel businesses

In restructuring, Denel has established several independent new companies in which it will hold equity on behalf of the South African Government.

By mid-2007, the process of incorporating the new companies was still under way, although the businesses were already being managed as such.

Denel-Saab Aerostructures and Zeiss Optronics (Pty) Ltd are the first concrete results of the unbundling of Denel's 15-year old structure. Some of Denel's remaining businesses are likely to find equity partners in the near future.

- Denel-Saab Aerostructures: During 2006, Saab of Sweden acquired a 20% holding in Denel's aerostructures business and has taken over management of the entity. This business in Kempton Park, adjacent to OR Tambo International Airport, specialises in a range of manufacturing disciplines. With its comprehensive facilities, it is well positioned to supply aircraft detail components and aerostructure subassemblies, as well as to undertake the assembly and integration of airframes. It designs and builds crucial parts for the Airbus A400M military transport aircraft, the Gripen advanced jetfighter, and the SAAF's Agusta A109 LUH helicopter. It also supplies parts to Boeing for commercial airliners.
- Denel Optronics: As a specialist entity in the design, development and manufacture of

electro-optical products for airborne, laser and pilot helmet head-tracker systems for the commercial and military markets, Denel Optronics was a good candidate for an international partnership. German company, Carl Zeiss Optronics Gmb, has gained a majority share in this business as from March 2007, while Denel retained 30% ownership.

- Denel Aviation: A well established maintenance, repair and overhaul facility, Denel Aviation has been providing support services to the SAAF and the South African aviation industry for more than 40 years. The line and heavy maintenance capabilities for fixed wing and rotary wing aircraft are complemented by maintenance workshops for mechanical, electrical and avionics aircraft components. Denel Aviation's Rotary Wing business was enhanced by the coveted Eurocopter accreditation in 2007. This enables Denel Aviation to give the SAAF strategically important support regarding the Oryx tactical transport helicopter for the next 10 to 15 years. It also provided support to the Rooivalk development and retrofit to complete the helicopter's deployment baseline. The Rooivalk was one of two attack helicopters shortlisted in Turkey for that country's Armed Reconnaissance Helicopter Programme. However, the Turkish authorities chose the Italian helicopter.
- Denel Dynamics: Ring-fenced as a self-contained business during 2006, Denel Dynamics is dedicated to the domains of missiles and UAVs. The successful commissioning of its Umkhonto-IR surface-to-air missile systems with the Finnish Navy, including a very successful flight test from the customer's vessel in the Baltic Sea, was one of the important achievements in 2006/07. The Department of Defence concluded the contracting of a binational air-to-air missile programme with Brazil for Denel Dynamics's A-Darter fifth generation, enabling South Africa to remain at the forefront of modern missile technology development.
- Overberg Test Range (OTB): A versatile missile and aircraft test range at the southernmost tip of



Denel, under the political direction of the Ministry of Public Enterprises, has been restructured and re-organised.

Armcor, under the political direction of the Ministry of Defence, was being streamlined by mid-2007 as an acquisition division of the Department of Defence. The research divisions of both Denel and Armcor will be located in a new body called the Defence Evaluation and Research Institute.

Africa, Denel OTB specialises in in-flight systems performance measurements for the local and international aerospace industries. Its spectrum of services ranges from tests of short-range guided munitions for land, sea and air combat, to evaluations of standoff weapons and aircraft performance.

During 2006/07, OTB supported several launches for Boeing/SAC, by relaying data in real time from the space vehicles to the National Aeronautics and Space Administration control centre in the United States of America (USA).

- Denel Land Systems (DLS): Based near Pretoria, DLS focuses on landward defence system solutions, primarily to the SANDF, but also international customers, and is a prime contractor, system integrator, and subsystem and product supplier.

It is renowned for developing, producing, maintaining and upgrading infantry systems, artillery gun systems (like the G5 and G6 systems) and combat turrets, as well as small arms.

During 2006/07, all the approvals for the procurement of the SANDF's new-generation infantry combat vehicle (ICV) up to ministerial level were concluded. In mid-2007, DLS won an R8-billion contract from Armscor to develop a new generation ICV for the SA Army. The contract is aimed at replacing the army's fleet of Ratel ICVs, which have been in service for about 30 years. The new ICV is being based on a Finnish Patria platform and will be built locally under licence, with a turret designed by DLS at its core. The light ICV, in its complete state, will be able to hold between five and 11 soldiers.

- Mechem: Historically part of the Land Systems Group within Denel, Mechem has emerged as one of the successful core businesses, notably in the mine-action environment. Mechem provides turnkey landmine removal and contraband-detection services to commercial clients all over the world.

During 2006/07, one of the largest demining contractors to the UN successfully conducted demining operations in support of UN peacekeeping operations in Sudan, Eritrea, the DRC and Afghanistan.

- Denel Munitions: An integrated producer of energetic material, ammunition and related products, Denel Munitions comprises seven plants. Naschem has a large-calibre ammunition plant outside Potchefstroom in North West, and an artillery-shell forging and machining plant in Boksburg, Gauteng.

DLS Western Cape has its energetic material chemical plant outside Wellington, while propellant, rocket and missile motors are manufactured outside Somerset West, and pyrotechnics and ammunition in Philippi near Mitchell's Plain. By mid-2007, the latter plant was being relocated to other Denel Munitions sites.

Denel Munitions' Pretoria Metal Pressings (PMP) plant for small arms and medium-calibre ammunition is at Elandsfontein, west of Pretoria, while its brass foundry is in the industrial area of Pretoria West. PMP received the largest contract in its 68-year history from BAE Systems for the delivery of brass cups worth R304 million over the next three years.

Denel Munitions has several partnership arrangements, notably with US company General Dynamics Tactical Ordinance Systems, regarding marketing 105 mm and 155 mm ammunition in the USA. With its European partner, Nitrochemie, Denel Munitions has a strategic alliance concerning artillery modular charges (MCs). This alliance allows the two leading manufacturers of MCs in the world to share technologies to develop new products.

National Conventional Arms Control Committee

The NCACC, consisting of ministers and deputy ministers, oversees policy and sets control mechanisms for the South African arms trade. It also ensures that arms-trade policies conform to internationally accepted practices.

Companies interested in exporting arms have to apply for export permits, after which the Ministry of Defence processes the applications. Each application is also sent for scrutiny to the relevant government departments, such as foreign affairs or trade and industry.

The application is then referred to the various directors-general for their recommendations,

whereafter the NCACC makes the final decision. An independent inspectorate ensures that all levels of the process are subject to independent scrutiny and supervision, and are conducted in accordance with the policies and guidelines of the NCACC. The inspectorate submits periodic reports to the JSCD.

Intelligence services

There are two civilian intelligence structures, namely the National Intelligence Agency (NIA) and the South African Secret Service (SASS).

The intelligence community provides evaluated information to:

- safeguard the Constitution
- promote the interrelated elements of security, stability, co-operation and development, both within South Africa and in relation to southern Africa
- uphold the individual rights enshrined in the Bill of Rights contained in the Constitution
- promote South Africa's ability to face foreign threats and enhance its competitiveness in a dynamic world.

In line with a constitutional obligation, that the security services must act and teach their members to act in accordance with the Constitution and the law, the Minister of Intelligence Services launched a civic education programme in 2007.

The programme, which will be institutionalised and accredited by the South African Qualifications Authority, will contribute to building professionalism and entrenching respect for the Constitution and the rule of law as key values for intelligence officers in South Africa.

All members of the services will undergo the training, and its objectives will be written into the performance contracts of heads of intelligence services.

The programme will also entail a series of internal and external debates allowing members of the public to contribute to developing a new intelligence philosophy. In November 2006, a ministerial review commission on intelligence was launched. It produced a draft concept paper to develop a broader understanding and further insight into the mechanisms of control within the service.

National Intelligence Agency

The National Strategic Intelligence Act, 1994 (Act 39 of 1994), defines the primary functions of the NIA as being to gather, correlate, evaluate and analyse domestic intelligence to:

- identify any threat or potential threat to the security of South Africa or its people

- supply intelligence regarding any such threat to the National Intelligence Co-ordinating Committee (Nicoc)
- gather departmental intelligence at the request of any interested department of state, and transmit such intelligence that constitutes departmental intelligence to the relevant department without delay
- fulfil the national counter-intelligence responsibility and, for this purpose, conduct and co-ordinate counter-intelligence to gather, correlate, evaluate, analyse and interpret information to identify any threat or potential threat to the security of South Africa or its people
- inform the President of any such threat
- supply (where necessary) intelligence relating to any such threat to the SAPS for the purposes of investigating any offence or alleged offence.

South African Secret Service

Section 2(2) of the National Strategic Intelligence Act, 1994, as amended, stipulates the role of the SASS as being to:

- gather, correlate, evaluate and analyse foreign intelligence, excluding foreign military intelligence, in order to identify any threat or potential threat to the security of South Africa or its people
- supply intelligence relating to national strategic intelligence to Nicoc
- gather departmental intelligence at the request of any interested department of state and, without delay, to evaluate and transmit such intelligence and any other intelligence at the disposal of the service and which constitutes departmental intelligence to the department concerned and to Nicoc.

Intelligence oversight

Joint Standing Committee on Intelligence (JSCI)

Integral to the *White Paper on Intelligence*, drafted in 1994, was the establishment of legislative oversight mechanisms. The JSCI is an oversight parliamentary body comprising members of the six largest political parties. Selection to the committee is based on proportional representation decided on by the percentage of votes received in the last national election. The JSCI hears complaints from the public, scrutinises the finances and operations of the services, and reports to Parliament on these.

Parliamentary members serving on the JSCI take an oath of secrecy and undergo security screening to ensure that they do not compromise the work of the services in the course of performing their duties.

Inspector-General

The Inspector-General monitors compliance with the Constitution, laws and policies of the country. The Office of the Inspector-General reports to the Minister of Intelligence Services.

The office reviews the activities of the services, receives and investigates complaints from the general public and the JSCI, or is tasked by the Minister of Intelligence Services.

The Inspector-General is appointed by the President following approval by two thirds of the members of the National Assembly.

Other civilian intelligence structures*Office of Interception Centre (OIC)*

The Regulation of Interception of Communications and Provision of Communications-Related Information Act, 2002 (Act 70 of 2002), was implemented in 2005. In line with this, the OIC was established in July 2006. Oversight and control of this centre reside with the Minister of Intelligence Services, the JSCI and the Inspector-General. The office provides a service to all law-enforcement agencies, alleviating duplication, pooling resources and limiting abuse of this instrument.

South African National Academy of Intelligence (Sanai)

Sanai plays a central role in providing quality training to members of the intelligence services.

Training at Sanai, which was established in February 2003, is geared towards producing officers who understand the political and security realms of South Africa and Africa. The academy comprises the Academic Faculty, the Intelligence Research Institute and the ETD Support Component.

Located in Mafikeng, North West, the Sanai campus is named after the late Mzwandile Piliso, a veteran intelligence officer who played an important role in establishing a non-statutory intelligence body that served the liberation movement.

Intelligence Services Council (ISC)

The ISC conducts continuous research towards developing effective and competitive working conditions for members, commensurate benefits, career options and, eventually, retirement benefits.

Electronic Communications Security (Pty) Ltd (Comsec)

Comsec was established as a private company in February 2003 to ensure that critical electronic communications of government and related organs are protected and secured. Comsec's functions include securing government communications against unauthorised access and technical, electronic or any other related threats. The company will, in concurrence with the NIA, provide verification services for electronic communications security systems, products and services used by the State. Comsec strives for greater co-ordination, integration, alignment and the maintenance of communications security.

National Communications Centre (NCC)

The NCC serves as an advisory structure to the Minister of Intelligence Services on matters related to signals-intelligence procurement, management and direction. This includes areas such as the Signals Intelligence Evaluation Centre and the OIC.

Acknowledgements

BuaNews

Denel

Estimates of National Expenditure 2007, published by National Treasury

Secretariat for Safety and Security

South African National Defence Force

South African Police Service

www.gov.za

www.nia.gov.za

www.sapa.org.za

www.sass.gov.za

www.southafrica.info

Suggested reading

Altbeker, A. *The Dirty Work of Democracy*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2006.

Buur, L, Jensen, S and Stepputat, F, eds. *Security Development NEXUS: Expressions of Sovereignty and Securitisation in Southern Africa*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council Press, 2007.

Cohen, D. *People Who Have Stolen From Me*. Johannesburg: Picador, 2004.

Dixon, B and van der Spuy, E. *Justice Gained? Crime and Crime Control in South Africa's Transition*. Cape Town: University of Cape Town Press, 2004.

Kynoch, G. *We are Fighting the World: A History of the Marashea Gangs in South Africa, 1947–1999*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2005.

Marks, M. *Transforming the Robocops: Changing Police in South Africa*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2005.

Marks, M. *Young Warriors: Youth Politics, Identity and Violence in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2004.

Mills, G. *Security Intersection: The Paradox of Power in an Age of Terror*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2004.

Pelser, E. ed. *Crime Prevention Partnerships: Lessons from Practice*, Pretoria: Institute of Strategic Studies (ISS), 2003.

Pistorius, M. *Profiling Serial Killers and Other Crimes in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Penguin, 2005.

Pistorius, M. *Strangers on the Street: Serial Homicide in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Penguin Books, 2002.

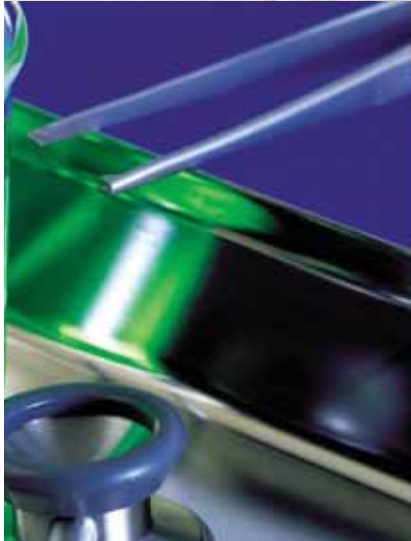
Rupiya, M, ed. *The Enemy Within: Southern African Militaries' Quarter-Century Battle with HIV and AIDS*. Tshwane (Pretoria): ISS, 2006.

Sanders, J. *Apartheid's Friends: The Rise and Fall of South Africa's Secret Service*. London: Murray, 2006.

Shaw, M. *Crime and Policing in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. Cape Town: David Philip, 2002.

Solomon, H. ed. *Towards a Common Defence and Security Policy in the Southern African Development Community*. Pretoria: Africa Institute of South Africa, 2004.





SA YEARBOOK 2007/08 | SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY



The Department of Science and Technology seeks to realise the full potential of science and technology (S&T) in social and economic development, through the development of human resources, research and innovation.

The department primarily focuses on implementing the National Research and Development Strategy (NRDS), which provides for an integrated approach to HR development, knowledge generation, investment in infrastructure and improving the strategic management of the public S&T system.

The revised strategic-management model for the S&T system enables the department to develop emerging and rapidly changing areas of S&T, and to co-ordinate and support sector-specific S&T activities initiated by other government departments.

Expenditure is expected to continue to increase rapidly, rising from R1,4 billion in 2003/04 to an expected R4,1 billion in 2009/10; representing an average annual increase of 20%. Most of this expenditure comprises transfers to public entities for S&T initiatives.

South Africa has to address what the NRDS identifies as the "innovation chasm"; the gap that exists between the knowledge generators and the market. One of the things the department is proposing to narrow or close this innovation gap, is the establishment of an institution to be called the Foundation for Technological Innovation (FTI).

The FTI will have the competency to assist the National System of Innovation (NSI) to mine the existing body of knowledge, and to develop technology-based services and products that could be commercialised and diffused through the economy.

Legislation

Government plays a formative role in research and innovation by developing and approving policy, legislation and regulatory frameworks; setting the overall national agenda; and creating an enabling environment for research and innovation to thrive. Since 1994, government has put forward a range of mechanisms to encourage innovation in the private sector, government research institutes and the Higher Education (HE) sector.

The Joint Initiative for Priority Skills Acquisition (Jipsa) and the sector education and training authorities are other strategies and tactics used to address shortages of various skills. In particular Jipsa, as a framework, is aimed at addressing the shortage of urgently needed skills. It targets and

mobilises unemployed graduates, and retired and foreign experts for deployment into the economy. Through this process, knowledge is shared and transferred.

The department is determined to realise its mission to develop, co-ordinate and manage an NSI that will help achieve a critical mass of the required human capital, realise sustainable economic growth and improve the general quality of life of the people of South Africa, including its regional neighbours and the continent of Africa.

As part of developing the NSI, all programmes and initiatives are carried out in partnership with business, labour, academia, research councils, HE institutions and other knowledge producers.

National System of Innovation

The *White Paper on S&T, 1996* introduced the NSI as the basis of the S&T interventions in the South African economy.

Aligned with South Africa's national developmental priorities and programmes, such as, among other things, the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA) and the National Spatial Development Programme, substantial progress has already been made in this regard.

Government has set the target of spending a minimum of 1% of gross domestic product (GDP) of public and private expenditure on research and development (R&D) by 2008.

The department's ongoing efforts towards achieving further economic growth, by stimulating R&D in the private sector, have been given added impetus with the Minister of Finance's announcement of the 150% tax credit for R&D in February 2006.

This new tax incentive means that, with a corporate tax rate of 36%, government will forego 18 cents of tax revenue for each rand spent on R&D.

Given that private-sector expenditure on R&D amounted to about 0,45% of GDP by May 2007, this tax credit could translate to a further R1 billion allocated to R&D.

By 2001/02, international funding on R&D in South Africa had grown to 6%, from close to zero in 1994. By 2003/04, foreign funding stood at 10% of total R&D funding. A 2005/06 survey indicated that in 2003/04, businesses, universities, science

councils, government research institutes and non-governmental organisations (NGOs) spent R12 billion on R&D, equivalent to 0,87% of GDP.

Surveys indicate that government has increased national spending on R&D by about R4,5 billion over the past five years. As the custodians of the NSI, the Department of Science and Technology recognises that investment decisions can be enhanced with a strong information base on research activities funded by public funds.

For these purposes, the department is setting up the Research Information Management System to gather and make available information on research activities within science councils and other government research agencies. This will strengthen its capacity to monitor the performance of the S&T system and provide a rigorous long-term planning platform for the NSI.

The Department of Science and Technology is also providing resources and is co-operating with universities and the National Research Foundation (NRF) to use a licensed information technology (IT) platform to gather and make available information on research activity within tertiary education institutions.

The largest share of the department's budget over the medium term, about R323 million, goes to the Human Capital Development Programme, which addresses the adequate development and renewal of human scientific resources. It will strengthen current programmes, which include the:

- Research Professional Development Programme, which targets young Science,

Engineering and Technology (SET) masters and doctoral students

- Postdoctoral Fellowship Programme
- Centres of Excellence (CoE) Programme.

Innovation Fund (IF)

The *White Paper on S&T, 1996* set the policy framework for the promotion of innovation. Innovation is defined as the successful production, assimilation and exploitation of novelty in the economic and social spheres.

The IF was created to promote technological innovation; increase networking and cross-sectoral collaboration and competitiveness, quality of life and environmental sustainability, and the harnessing of IT.

The IF addresses serious problems that could impede socio-economic development or affect the country's ability to compete in products and services. Through the IF and the Bioregional Innovation Centres (Brics), the department is focusing its efforts on establishing the institutional infrastructure, legislation and policy framework needed to integrate the process of knowledge creation and its subsequent commercialisation for national benefit.

Among other things, the fund promotes technological innovation through consortia of expertise drawn from both public and private sectors.

The instruments of the IF are specifically tailored to foster the pursuit of high-risk technologies by business entities, by creating partnerships that draw on technical expertise in the public research enterprise. The incentive to the business partners is the equal sharing of the R&D costs of the market-oriented research agenda.

The IF is managed by one of the science councils, the NRF. The fund provides funding to near-market and end-stage research, which produces new intellectual property (IP) and commercial enterprises, and expands existing industrial sectors.

HE students, particularly first-degree engineering students, can take advantage of the fund by developing, as part of their final-year work, projects resulting in the creation of new IP or the establishment and/or expansion of commercial enterprises.

The NRF claims a management and administration fee from the allocated budget for support services rendered.



Early in 2007, the Human Sciences Research Council released the results of the first official *South African Innovation Survey*. It is modelled on the survey used in all European Union countries in 2005/06, showing that more than half of South Africa's companies engaged in the development of new products and processes between 2002 and 2004.

South Africa's rate of innovation is well above that of the European average of 42% for 2004.

According to the survey, South African companies spent about R27,8 billion on innovative activities in 2004, representing about 2,4% of the total turnover of all business in the industrial and service sectors.

While the bulk of this expenditure was devoted to the acquisition of new machinery, equipment and software, in-house research and development expenditure accounted for some 20% of total innovation expenditure.

Ten percent of successful innovators in industry received public funding for innovation activities.

Promoting niche areas

Space science

In July 2006, Cabinet approved the establishment of the South African Space Agency (Sasa) as an institutional vehicle to establish space S&T in South Africa. The country is increasingly reliant on space-based services, particularly those underpinning Earth observation, communications and navigation, and those that will contribute to making South Africa a regional hub of space S&T, especially in astronomy. The increasing geopolitical implications of national competence in space-related activities can change the future of provinces such as the Northern Cape. Legislation leading to Sasa was expected to be tabled in Parliament in 2007.

Astronomy

Through the Astronomy Geographical Advantage Programme, South Africa continues to promote high-technology investment in space science to ensure that local researchers and students are able to participate in international astronomy.

A key result was the launch of the Southern African Large Telescope (Salt) in November 2005, in Sutherland in the Northern Cape.

Salt is a multimillion rand project involving Germany, Poland, the United States of America (USA), New Zealand and the United Kingdom (UK). Salt is the largest single optical telescope in the southern hemisphere.

South Africa has been shortlisted, along with Australia, as one of the sites for the world-class radio telescope, the Square Kilometre Array (SKA). A final decision in this regard is expected in 2008.

The SKA will be the biggest telescope ever built, the only one of its kind worldwide, and the only instrument able to answer the most basic questions of the origin of the universe and the birth and evolution of stars and galaxies. It will investigate the origin of magnetism in the universe and will be the most powerful instrument ever to search for extraterrestrial intelligence.

South Africa has assembled a team to build the Karoo Array Telescope (Kat). The Kat team and researchers in the UK, the Netherlands, Australia and the USA are developing digital signal processing for the telescope, and software and innovative telescope antennas, using composites.

The SKA and Kat projects are important for developing high-level skills and expertise in South Africa.

The Department of Science and Technology has provided funding for graduate study associated with these projects. Twelve postgraduates were provided with funding in 2004/05. A further 11 recipients were identified in 2006. By mid-2006, there were 20 students participating in this programme, carrying out research for PhD and MSc degrees at South African universities, and two postdoctoral fellows.

This programme is being extended to South Africa's partners in the SKA bid – Botswana, Ghana, Kenya, Madagascar, Mauritius, Mozambique and Namibia.

The 2007/08 budget allocated R500 million, both for the SKA and for the construction of the Kat, which will in turn provide the means to train scientists and engineers to acquire relevant capabilities and skills.

The Kat team has already been recognised for its competence and is being called upon to assist and advise the international SKA project office on system engineering, costing and other key technology areas.

The team is playing a leading role in collaboration with researchers in the UK, the



In March 2007, six scientists from South Africa's University of the North West were part of an international team that scooped the European Union's (EU) prestigious Descartes Prize for their ground-breaking research on the Earth's galaxy via gamma rays.

The recipients of the Descartes Prize for Research, announced in Belgium, were Okkie de Jager, Christo Raubenheimer, Christo Venter, Matthew Holleran, Namibian astronomer Isak Davids, and German postdoctoral astronomer Ingo Buesching.

The six scientists are part of an EU-funded team of about 100 who run the High-Energy Stereoscopic System (Hess), comprising four telescopes in Namibia that were specially developed for the study of gamma rays.

The South African Government invested over R30 million in the construction of the telescopes, has contributed millions more to establishing the Hess site which is near the Gamsberg, and is funding South Africa's participation in the project.

Netherlands, Australia and the USA, in developing digital signal processing for the telescope, developing software and, in partnership with the industry, developing innovative telescope antennas using composites.

In support of the astronomy programme, the department was expected to submit the Astronomy Geographic Advantage Bill to Parliament in 2007, which will enable the introduction of measures to protect the sensitive astronomy sites and maintain South Africa's geographic advantage.

The construction of the low-Earth observation satellite, SumbandilaSat, was completed on time and handed over to the department in November 2006.

In 2007, nine black engineering interns were expected to finish building the training model satellite. At the same time, the department had commissioned the technology development of a new sensor, which it expects to use in a future remote-sensing satellite.

Biotechnology

The National Biotechnology Strategy (NBS), which was launched in 2001, sets the agenda for the development of South Africa's biotechnology industry.

AsgiSA has identified biofuels as a potential contributor to rural development. This includes the establishment of sustainable rural jobs, both in the agricultural sector and in the processing of biofuels. Efforts are under way to examine the introduction of biofuels in the commercial transport

sector, as a way of stimulating a biofuels industry in South Africa.

However, such a strategy needs to be complemented by other biofuels-related initiatives that will enable the products to be used beyond the commercial transport fuel sector. One such initiative is the local production of biofuels for local users. Internationally, this has taken the form of the development of a local biofuels industry that supplies fuel for running public transport.

This project will explore the potential of such an approach through the deployment of appropriate technology and initiation support for R&D activities. Results of this project should serve as a benchmark and model for public transportation.

Nevertheless, the biotechnology sector is attracting a fast-growing portion of R&D funding. Funding for genetic engineering grew by 360% between 2002 and 2004. Investment growth in the related fields of biochemistry, genetics, molecular biology, microbiology, genetic engineering and biotechnology exceeded 46%.

The department is also committed to developing biotechnology in Africa. In August 2005, the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research (CSIR) initiated a southern regional hub of the New Partnership for Africa's Development's (Nepad) African Biosciences Initiative.

Research related to agriculture, human and animal health, environment and industry is being prioritised. Other initiatives include the establishment of Brics, namely: Biotechnology Partnership for Africa's Development (Biopad), Cape Biotech, LIFElab and the Plant Biotechnology Innovation Centre.

Brics were created as instruments for implementing the NBS. Their focus areas cover a wide spectrum of subdisciplines in biotechnology. These include human and animal health, biopharmaceuticals, industrial bioprocessing, mining biotechnology, bio-informatics and plant biotechnology.

One of the challenges facing the South African biotechnology sector is the public's lack of understanding and knowledge of biotechnology applications and benefits.

As a result, the Public Understanding of Biotechnology Programme was initiated to provide South Africans with information, enabling them to participate meaningfully in debates about biotechnology and to make informed decisions in this regard.

In addition, the implementation of the NBS has seen the development of the National Bio-



In September 2007, the International Centre for Genetic Engineering and Biotechnology (ICGEB) opened its third major laboratory in Cape Town, which will focus mainly on the development of new vaccines against serious infectious diseases which afflict Africa, such as HIV and AIDS, malaria, hepatitis B and C, and tuberculosis.

The laboratory, situated at the Groote Schuur Hospital, joins sister laboratories in Trieste, Italy, and New Delhi, India, in serving as the 74-country organisation's international facilities for high-quality scientific research and training in the field of bioscience.

The Cape Town component of the ICGEB will eventually be expanded to advance knowledge and apply latest techniques in the fields of biomedicine, crop improvement, environmental protection and remediation, biopharmaceuticals and biopesticide production.

The Department of Science and Technology will contribute approximately Euro four million toward the costs of the Cape Town laboratory over the next four years.

Informatics Network (NBN) at eight universities, investing in technology R&D, infrastructure and teaching.

In 2005, 71 students (51% of whom were women and 34% of whom were black) received training in biotechnology-related subjects.

The results of biotechnology investments have long lead times, sometimes up to 15 years, yet some success stories resulting from the investments and interventions made by the biotechnology institutions are already being reported.

The goal is to expand the country's biotechnology platform and develop a bio-economy base.

Indigenous Knowledge System (IKS)

Since government launched the IKS policy in 2004, a number of successes have been achieved on key cross-cutting issues. This includes the timely establishment of the Ministerial Advisory Committee, which will assist in establishing IKS chairs to be located within HE institutions, based on nationally prioritised areas such as traditional medicines, knowledge studies and indigenous food security.

In March 2007, South Africa and the Ministry of Science and Technology of Zambia successfully hosted the second Southern African Development Community (SADC) workshop on IKS policy development in the region. Emanating from this workshop was a number of recommendations for member states, including the need to harmonise the region's policy framework within the next two years.

Government plans to develop IKS databases, following an audit of those residing at various institutions. It is also envisaged that a hardware multimedia recording system to capture documentation, such as the registration of holders of indigenous knowledge, interviews and satellite-information linkages, will be developed.

By mid-2007, the first pilot IKS centre was being established at the University of Zululand. It will support the IKS Laboratory on Traditional Medicines at the Medical Research Council (MRC).

Public funding

The provision of public funding is a key component of government's responsibility of creating an

enabling environment for R&D. To track investments, government has initiated a process whereby a national R&D survey is conducted every year.

The link between government and industry is crucial. Current human-capital programmes have introduced research chairs with industry partnerships to strengthen this linkage.

The first group of scientists appointed as university research chairs, an initiative that aims to attract top minds and reverse the declining research output, was announced in 2006.

The South African Research Chair Initiative (Sarchi), was officially launched in September 2007. It aims to invigorate HE research institutions,

By September 2007, the initiative was supporting 59 master's and PhD students under the tutelage of 21 round-one research chairs. The department planned to award another 51 research chairs by the end of 2007.

Working with the National Advisory Council on Innovation (Naci), the department has produced a comprehensive report on the infrastructure requirements for both science and innovation. This will form the basis of a long-term infrastructure plan for S&T.

Other infrastructure projects that government is expected to benefit from include the Centre for High Performance Computing (CHPC), nanotechnology characterisation centres, astronomy and space science. Regarding nanotechnology and nanoscience, government is in the process of creating the physical infrastructure that will enable first-class basic research, exploration of applications, the development of new industries and the commercialisation of innovations.



The Digital Doorway Project is an effective tool in bridging the digital divide.

Some 150 units give thousands of young people, who have no access to computers in their schools or homes, the opportunity to develop computer skills and to access valuable information. The project is a joint initiative of the Department of Science and Technology, the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research and Eskom.

Policy and initiatives

National Research and Development Strategy

The NRDS is an enabling framework for South Africa's innovation system to prioritise economic sectors with growth potential, such as biotechnology, nanotechnology, IT and space technology. The strategy has enabled government to increase investment in human capital to transform and fill the skills gaps identified in key sectors.

More focused sector strategies, such as the Biotechnology Strategy, the Advanced Manufacturing Technology Strategy (AMTS) and the Nanotechnology Strategy, were formulated. A need was identified to enhance the research infrastructure to create a knowledge workforce for advanced technology businesses, and so support the country's future competitiveness and its ability to achieve an improved quality of life.

Projections of future R&D spending show that in 2008, when it is anticipated that GDP would have reached about R1 991 billion, an additional R6 billion would be required for investment in R&D to attain the 1% of GDP target.

The NRDS focuses on three broad areas:

- Innovation, primarily through technology missions: The emphasis is on technological innovation, demonstrating technology, incubating new technology-based businesses and enhancing networks of knowledge workers and organisations in specific areas of technology.
- Strengthening SET, HR and transformation: The emphasis is on establishing CoEs, establishing and funding networks for Nepad and the SADC, strengthening global science networks, formulating strategies aimed at sourcing new finance for R&D equipment, strengthening institutional and individual research capacity in science focus areas through the NRF, and increasing public understanding and engagement.
- Creating an effective government S&T system: A clear distinction needs to be drawn between the roles of line-function departments and the integrative role of the Department of Science and Technology. This focus area is involved in generating three-year R&D plans for science councils in line with the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) process, developing standard-reporting frameworks and a performance-management system for all institutions, and giving the department central responsibility for producing an integrative budget for all S&T initiatives.

The six CoEs are:

- Biomedical Tuberculosis (TB) Research
- Invasion Biology
- Strong Materials
- Birds as Keys to Biodiversity Conservation at the Percy Fitzpatrick Institute
- Catalysis
- Tree Health Biotechnology at the Forestry and Agricultural Biotechnology Institute.

Advanced Manufacturing Technology Strategy

The AMTS was launched in October 2003. It guides efforts in the manufacturing sector, including the aerospace industry. The AMTS strives to:

- develop technology platforms that increase current and create new competitive advantages
- establish partnerships and human-capital development.

The aim is to enhance the knowledge base and the knowledge intensity of South Africa's manufacturing sector.

In 2006, the Department of Trade and Industry launched the National Aerospace Centre of Excellence, located at the University of the Witwatersrand.

The Centre for Innovation, focusing on craft and design, opened in Cape Town in July 2006. The centre is the first of its kind in the world and a state-of-the-art resourced venue aimed at promoting innovative design, product development and process technologies for crafters and designers.

The Cape Craft and Design Institute (CCDI) spearheaded the creation of the centre, together with the Western Cape Provincial Government and the AMTS.

The Centre for Innovation incorporates a fabrication laboratory, sponsored by the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT). The centre's activities are linked to the CCDI's small, medium and micro-enterprise (SMME) development and market-access support programmes.

Government has set aside R16 million to establish 10 fabrication laboratories (FabLabs) around the country, providing disadvantaged communities with opportunities in the design, testing and fabrication process.

FabLabs form part of the department's goal of providing SET platforms for social development, while benefiting private-sector competitiveness and growth.

Advanced manufacturing technology is brought to ordinary people as an accessible platform to

empower them by hands-on participation in an environment that enables the freedom to experiment, and encourages peer-to-peer learning. The platforms provide the means to solve local problems innovatively and stimulate creativity that should lead to technopreneurship options.

FabLabs are also sponsored by the MIT's Centre of Bits and Atoms, where it was originally developed. By August 2007, six FabLabs were operational throughout South Africa in Pretoria, Soshanguve, Cape Town, Bloemfontein, Potchefstroom and Kimberley.

South African National Energy Research Institute (Saneri)

Cabinet approved the establishment of the Saneri in 2004. It was officially launched in February 2007.

The Central Energy Fund houses the institute, jointly run by the departments of minerals and energy and of science and technology. It conducts research on the energy sector.

The Saneri, through R&D, provides for:

- cost-effective and efficient energy generation, transformation, transport, end-use and decision-support technologies
- energy-technology innovation
- sustainable development and use of energy resources
- improving the quality of life of all South Africans
- promoting and conducting training of energy researchers
- establishing and expanding industries in the field of energy
- commercialising energy technologies resulting from its R&D and innovation programmes.

Saneri established the Renewable and Sustainable Energy Research and Development Hub at the University of Stellenbosch.

The hub will support the development of a vibrant renewable and sustainable energy-supply industry in South Africa.

Pebble Bed Modular Reactor (PBMR)

PBMR (Pty) Ltd of South Africa was established in 1999 to develop and market small-scale, high-temperature reactors, both locally and internationally. The 700-member PBMR project team is based in Centurion, near Pretoria.

The PBMR is a high-temperature reactor, with a closed-cycle, gas turbine power conversion system. The South African project is internationally regarded as the leader in the power-generation field. Better efficiency and attractive economics are possible without compromising the high levels of passive safety expected of advanced nuclear designs.

PBMR (Pty) Ltd's current investors are the South African Government, Eskom, the Industrial Development Corporation of South Africa and the US nuclear giant Westinghouse. The PBMR programme represents a significant development for South Africa in the field of nuclear S&T.

National Advisory Council on Innovation

The Naci is appointed by the Minister of Science and Technology to advise on the role and contribution of innovation, including S&T, in promoting and achieving national objectives. These include:

- improving and sustaining the quality of life of all South Africans
- developing HR for S&T
- building the economy
- strengthening the country's competitiveness in the international sphere.

Naci membership is broadly representative of all sectors and is constituted to ensure a spread of expertise and experience regarding national and provincial interests, scientific and technological disciplines, innovation regarding the needs and opportunities in different socio-economic fields, and R&D in all sectors.

Public understanding of Science, Engineering and Technology

The department's efforts in this regard include:

- The South African Reference Group on Women in S&T, established in March 2003. This ministerial body advises on ways to increase the visibility and development of women, and on making science more relevant to the needs of society by incorporating women's needs and expectations.
- The Women in Science Awards, first awarded in 2003, to honour female scientists and their achievements.
- National Science Week, an annual week-long event aimed at persuading the youth to pursue

careers in SET, while highlighting the important role that science plays in everyday life. The 2007 event was held from 12 to 19 May and the theme was *Tomorrow's Science and Technology are in our Youth's Hands*.

National Nanotechnology Strategy

The National Nanotechnology Strategy recognises the needs of local industry and focuses on the essential building blocks of nanoscience, namely synthesis, characterisation and fabrication.

The National Nanotechnology Strategy positions South Africa as a global player in this emerging area and seeks to strengthen government's integrated development focus.

The strategy aims to:

- support long-term nanoscience research that will lead to a fundamental understanding of the design, synthesis, characterisation, modelling and fabrication of nanomaterial
- support the creation of new and novel devices for application in various areas
- develop the required HR and supporting infrastructure
- stimulate new developments in technology missions, such as advanced material for advanced manufacturing, nanobiomaterial for biotechnology, precious metal-based nanoparticles for resource-based industries, and advanced material for information and communications technologies (ICTs).

The strategy is aimed at increasing the number of nanotechnology characterisation centres in South Africa. In 2007, National Treasury allocated R450 million to implement the strategy over the next three years.

Known as "the technology of the very small" (i.e. about 1/80 000 of the diameter of a human hair), nanotechnology comprises a wide range of technologies, techniques and multidisciplinary research efforts for application in a range of cross-cutting industries and activities.

These include aerospace, manufacturing and automotive industries; energy conversion, storage

and distribution; the hydrogen economy; chemicals; electronics and information processing; as well as biotechnology and medicines.

South African industry and researchers have been involved in nanotechnology and the practical application of nanoscience for several years, for example, Sasol's chemical processing by catalysis. New generations of emerging nanotechnology-based products require that South Africa develops its ability to derive more benefits from global advances in this area.

In this regard, human-capital development also forms a very strong and integral component of the National Nanotechnology Strategy. For this reason, the development of a highly trained HR base with R&D expertise will encourage the private sector to develop nano-based products and services.

The country's human-capital development programmes include the use of the Department of Science and Technology's Sarchi postgraduate programmes, as well as bursaries for students. The CSIR has taken the lead in this challenge. By mid-2007 it was training 19 nanotechnology postgraduate students (three master's, three postdoctorates and 13 PhDs).

Information and communications technology

South African researchers now have the advantage of using massive computing power in their quest for new knowledge and application.

The CHPC is the first of its kind in South Africa. Initiated by the Department of Science and Technology, hosted by the University of Cape Town and managed by the Meraka Institute of the CSIR, the CHPC is making scientific "supercomputing" a reality for South Africa.

The Minister of Science and Technology, Mr Mosibudi Mangena, officially opened the facility in Cape Town on 22 May 2007.

The CHPC supports a diverse base of researchers and scientists, and facilitates the collaboration and multidisciplinary approach needed to solve complex computational problems.

The centre will advance South Africa's research capabilities in areas such as advanced manufacturing, space science, and research into infectious diseases.

The high-speed computational infrastructure comprises 160 computer nodes (640 processors) in a clustered architecture. It is rated to have a peak performance of around 2,5 teraflops (2,5 million mathematical operations) every second.

It is complemented by 50 terabytes of storage space. To maximise the benefit and use of this



The winners of the 2007 Women in Science Awards were announced in August. The top award in the Distinguished Women Scientist category was won by Professor Susan Harrison from the University of Cape Town.

The Best Emerging Young Scientist Award went to Dr Nadine Strydom for her research in her unique field as a larval fish biologist.

infrastructure, the research communities in South Africa are self-assembled into 10 special-interest groups, and the CHPC will add significant computational power to accelerate the research agenda of these groups.

The CHPC and the South African Research Network are the backbone of an emerging cyber-infrastructure in South Africa that will support research initiated in other elements of the country's S&T infrastructure, such as the SKA, the NBN and the Global Earth Observation System of Systems (GEOSS).

The GEOSS aims to enable globally co-ordinated Earth observations across a number of domains, to provide better and more reliable data in areas of benefit to society, including agriculture, weather, climate, water, disasters, health, energy, biodiversity and ecosystems.

Tshumisano

Tshumisano was established in 2002 with the mandate to provide support for the SMME sector through its Technology Stations Programme.

One of the aims of this programme is to strengthen technological innovation activities and related skills upgrading, to increase the relative competitiveness of SMMEs in targeted sectors.

These sectors include automotive, agrifoods processing, electronics, metal value-adding, chemicals, metal casting, and composite and moulded plastics.

Technology stations are based at various universities of technology across the country. The approach is a two-way learning process in which SMMEs improve their operations through technology assimilation and by upgrading their innovation capabilities.

This process enriches the teaching and learning activities of universities of technology by improving their equipment and their real-world understanding of the industry challenges.

The Tshumisano Trust, a joint venture between government, the German Agency for Technical Co-operation and the Committee of University of Technology Principals, is generating stronger working relationships between the departments of science and technology and of labour.

Technology stations that fall under the control of the trust are listed below, along with the relevant host institution:



In May 2007, the Minister of Science and Technology, Mr Mosibudi Mangena, launched a database that is aimed at quantifying and monitoring the levels of unemployment among Science, Engineering and Technology (SET) graduates in South Africa. This is aimed at addressing the challenge of unemployment among graduates in this sector.

The database will be used by job seekers, potential employers, prospective candidates for postgraduate studies, institutions for higher learning and other stakeholders to improve the rate of human-capital development, especially in SET.

- Tshwane University of Technology (TUT): Electronics and Electrical Engineering, complemented by IT
- Central University of Technology: Metals Value-Adding and Product Development
- TUT: Chemistry and Chemical Engineering
- Mangosuthu Technikon: Chemistry and Chemical Engineering
- Vaal University of Technology: Material and Processing Technologies
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University: Automotive Components
- Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University: Downstream Chemicals
- Cape Peninsula University of Technology: Clothing and Textiles
- University of Johannesburg: Metal-Casting Technology
- Durban Institute of Technology: Reinforced and Moulded Plastics
- Cape Peninsula University of Technology: Agri-Food Processing Technologies.

By mid-2007, the Tshumisano Internship Programme had placed more than 50 interns within various technology stations.

Poverty reduction

The Department of Science and Technology believes in a multipronged approach to fighting poverty.

Its poverty-alleviation projects are having positive outcomes in businesses and co-operatives and focus on, among other things, bee-keeping, paper-making, incorporating African design in clothing and textiles based on natural fibres, and indigenous cattle production. These projects are concentrated in the poverty nodes as identified by

government's Integrated Sustainable Rural Development Strategy.

Internship Programme

The department and the NRF have jointly implemented and are managing a programme to provide work experience for unemployed graduates by providing them with practical and accelerated learning programmes towards building workplace competencies.

National Information Society Learnership Programme

The National Information Society Learnership Programme aims to contribute towards building an information society and promoting greater and more efficient use of IT.

Youth into Science Strategy

The Youth into Science Strategy primary objective is to contribute towards the development of the priority skills base.

Through this programme, the department will be recruiting young people to pursue careers in areas of scarce skills. Its targets include doubling S&T literacy among the youth and nurturing more than 5 000 young people with talent and potential in SET by 2010.

International science and technology co-operation

The strategy to use southern Africa's local (geographical) advantages and efforts to attract large international science-based investments is paying off. Examples include the construction of the High-Energy Stereoscopic System (Hess) observatory in neighbouring Namibia and the Salt in Sutherland in the Northern Cape, as well as winning the bid to host the European Developing Countries Clinical Trials Partnership (EDCTP). Added to this are bold efforts to bolster South Africa's bid to site the SKA in South Africa.

International breakthroughs include South Africa's leading role in the European Union's sixth framework programme, and in implementing Africa's Consolidated S&T Plan of Action.

South Africa is involved in developing an S&T platform in the subregion through the SADC Ministers' Council on S&T, which is developing a SADC protocol to guide the implementation of the subregional S&T plan.

Developing a high-speed broadband network in the region is a flagship project of the Department of Science and Technology. The UbuntuNet Project is

set to link through the South African National Research Network to Europe, via the Geant connection, to give South Africa and its research community a high-speed network. The first phase of implementing this network began with total funding of R178 million over the MTEF.

The department has successfully leveraged human-capital support through international S&T agreements. This has resulted in jointly funded projects with 16 countries in areas such as agriculture, manufacturing and biotechnology.

South Africa's role at the forefront of Nepad is, to a significant extent, based on its ability to deploy scientific knowledge and technological solutions on the continent.

In 2002, the International Council for Science (Icsu) decided to establish four regional offices in the developing world. In September 2005, the council's Regional Office for Africa was launched in Pretoria. South Africa hosts the office at the premises of the NRF.

The Department of Science and Technology leads the international process to establish the GEOS. Acting through the department, South Africa participated in developing the 10-year implementation plan and was elected co-chair of the Group on Earth Observations.

Heads of state and government met during the eighth ordinary session of the Assembly of the AU in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia, in January 2007. The focal theme was *Science and Technology, Climate Change and Sustainable Development in Africa*.

Each country pledged to devote 1% of its GDP to supporting R&D by 2010. They also endorsed the 20-year Biotechnology Action Plan, which calls for co-operation among African nations in specific regions to bolster research in different fields according to regional strength.

The heads of state designated 2007 as the "Year for Scientific Innovations". They also acknowledged the need to establish a single Pan-African Internet-provider organisation to protect indigenous innovations and urged all member states to lend full support to the implementation of such a decision. They also endorsed the need for both South-South and North-South co-operation in S&T and innovation, and to enhance Africa's role in international partnerships.

South Africa is on course in implementing these decisions and resolutions.

South Africa is hosting the Nepad focal points such as the African Laser Centre (ALC), the African Institute for Mathematical Sciences (Aims) and the biosciences initiatives. Every two years, the ALC hosts

summer schools co-funded by the USA-based National Science Foundation, and Aims is establishing a network of institutes on the rest of the continent.

South-South co-operation has been strengthened and enhanced by fostering partnerships with the countries of the south, and in particular African countries. South Africa is spearheading a number of bids to host significant international facilities in Africa and is doing so in collaboration with its partner African countries.

This is how government approached the decision to host the regional offices of the World Association for Industrial and Technical Research Organisations, Icsu, the third component of the International Centre for Genetic Engineering and Biotechnology and the EDCTP. In the same spirit, government is working towards winning the bid to host the SKA radio telescope in partnership with, and for the benefit of, the entire continent.

The HIV and AIDS, TB and Malaria clinical trials (ATM) Registry was launched in May 2007, as part of the African Contributors Meeting hosted by the South African Cochrane Centre and the MRC.

The ATM Registry will be a global resource for researchers, clinicians, policy-makers and the public, by:

- providing a source of reliable information on the efficacy and safety of prevention and treatment measures
- identifying research gaps that should be addressed in future trials
- providing a laboratory for studying the scope, quality and funding patterns of trials
- keeping track of ongoing trials.

National Research Foundation

With ring-fenced allocations of R54 million, R66 million and R44 million for the MTEF period, the NRF is a key public entity responsible for promoting and supporting the development of HR for research, technology and innovation in all fields of S&T. The NRF carries out its missions by:

- providing seven unique national research facilities
- promoting science awareness through the South African Agency for Science and Technology Advancement (Saasta)
- making and managing merit-based grants and co-operative agreements with individual

researchers, research groups, and institutions locally, regionally and internationally (through the Research and Innovation Support Agency)

- delivering unique knowledge-management services to the research community.

The NRF focuses on contributing to government's strategy to create wealth and improve citizens' quality of life.

Doctoral graduates are the platform upon which social and technical progress, innovation and business performance can flourish.

The key driver for all the NRF's activities is the production of large numbers of highly skilled people who can generate new knowledge, develop and use new technologies, and innovate and drive the competitiveness of the country in international world markets.

The NRF regards HR development as a long-term investment in growing the pool of resources by drawing in learners who will become scientists and innovators.

SET education, through pre-tertiary, tertiary and lifelong learning initiatives, provides the basis for creating the required human capital for South Africa's SET endeavours. Saasta's contribution to the NRF vision is to grow the pool of quality learners who will become the scientists and innovators of the future.

Science-advancement programmes within the NRF reside under three interdependent strategic areas:

- building the supply of tomorrow's scientists and innovators through education-related programmes
- celebrating South African achievements in S&T and building the public's appreciation of the benefits of science through science communication
- using interactive exploration, engagement and exhibitions to instil enthusiasm about the wonder and application of SET, while encouraging greater public engagement in SET issues.



In April 2007, South Africa hosted the seventh World Nano-Economic Congress. It was the first time the congress had been held in this country.

Through a series of integrated programmes, Saasta is developing an infrastructure that supports high-impact activities and science-promotion sites.

The NRF manages the following research facilities:

South African Astronomical Observatory (SAAO) and Southern African Large Telescope

SAAO is the national research facility for optical/infrared astronomy in South Africa. Its primary function is to further fundamental research in astronomy and astrophysics at national and international level.

In 2005, SAAO made the transition from the Salt construction phase to the Salt operation phase. By devising a vastly superior spherical aberration corrector, and a variety of other innovations, SAAO has contributed to making Salt more capable than its counterpart, the Hobby-Eberly Telescope in Texas, USA.

From the outset, Salt was conceived as an African facility. With the advent of large-scale facilities such as Salt and Hess, and other initiatives such as the SKA, Inkaba ye Afrika and ZASat, southern Africa is emerging as a regional space S&T hub.

Hartebeesthoek Radio Astronomy Observatory (HartRAO)

HartRAO is responsible for research and training in radio astronomy and space geodesy in South Africa. The 26m-diameter radio telescope is available for research either as a single, independent instrument or in global networks of radio telescopes, using the technique of very long baseline interferometry (VLBI).

HartRAO is one of only six permanent fundamental space geodesy stations worldwide and participates in geodetic VLBI, through the International VLBI Service, in satellite laser ranging (through the International Laser Ranging Service), and in the Global Navigating Satellite System (GNSS) (through the International GNSS Service). The data is available to the international community.

The radio astronomy group is part of the National Astrophysics and Space Science Programme for postgraduate students.

It is involved in developing the SKA and its South African prototype, Kat. Research collaborations are in place with southern African countries and overseas institutions.

Hermanus Magnetic Observatory (HMO)

The HMO functions as part of the worldwide network of magnetic observatories. Its core function

in this regard is to monitor and model variations of the Earth's magnetic field. The scope of the HMO's activities also includes fundamental and applied space-physics research, science outreach and the provision of geomagnetic field-related services on a commercial basis. To facilitate achieving its objectives, the HMO is structured into three operational groups: Geomagnetism, Space Physics and Technology. Science outreach falls under the Space Physics Group.

The objectives of the HMO include:

- providing geomagnetic field data and information in accordance with intermagnet standards
- providing ionospheric and space-environment data in accordance with international benchmarks
- being at the forefront of space-physics research
- human-capacity development
- providing quality-controlled magnetic-field-related services to clients in the defence and aerospace industries.

South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity (Saiab)

Saiab is an interactive hub, focused on serving the nation by generating, disseminating and applying knowledge towards understanding and solving related conservation problems and the wise use of African fish and aquatic biodiversity. Saiab cares for and develops the National Fish Collection, generates knowledge through research on aquatic biodiversity in Africa, and trains and educates knowledge workers in aquatic biodiversity.

It addresses national and international issues in aquatic biodiversity, through the priorities set by national and international funding agencies.

The Deputy Minister of Science and Technology, Mr Derek Hanekom, launched the National Fish Collection in March 2007.

Completed in 2006, the facility stores about a million marine, estuarine and freshwater fish specimens collected during field trips, and received as gifts and exchanges from other research organisations and museums around the world.

Unique to the National Fish Collection, the Saiab also boasts an unusual albino great white shark, caught by fisherfolk off the East Cape coast. The development of modern facilities, such as the National Fish Collection, is expected to play a critical role in shaping the future of research on aquatic biodiversity in South Africa.

Science challenges for Saiab include building the flagship African Coelacanth Ecosystem Project,

developing biosystematic capacity, and developing an effective and integrated information-management system. Saiab has an active rural outreach programme, the Bright Spark Club, which identifies high-potential candidates for science careers and gives them career-forming experiences over one year.

South African Environmental Observation Network (Saeon)

Saeon aims to generate and archive reliable long-term information, relevant to the sustainable management of natural resources and habitat, over a range of ecoregions and land uses. These include pristine (wild) landscape, partially pristine (managed) landscape, agriculturally (rural) transformed landscape and urban transformed landscape.

Saeon establishes innovative research platforms and information-management systems for long-term multidisciplinary, multi-institutional and participatory ecosystem studies, with strong regional and global linkages. These research platforms are co-ordinated as nodes, with the first one – the Ndlovu Node – established during 2004 in Phalaborwa.

The second, the Elwandle Node, covers the coastal-inshore zone and was established in 2006 in Grahamstown, Eastern Cape.

The launch of the saeon fynbos, the marine-offshore, the arid lands and the grasslands/forests/wetlands mosaic nodes are in the pipeline. Saeon is founded on three pillars, namely observation sciences, information-management systems and science-education outreach. It also runs an innovative education-outreach programme that focuses on educators, learners and postgraduate students.

National Zoological Gardens (NZG)

The NZG was declared a national research facility in April 2004. It has since been engaged in a strategic reorientation process to align with, and contribute to, the NRF's core missions and strategic priorities.

The NZG is changing from being a traditional zoological garden, to becoming a national facility for, and an active participant in, terrestrial biodiversity research. It has the potential to offer South Africa, Africa and the international

community the infrastructure required to conduct world-class and knowledge-generating research.

The NZG houses one of the largest animal collections in the world. It operates two biodiversity-conservation centres (in Lichtenburg and Mokopane) and a second zoo and game park in Vanderbijlpark. Including the NZG in Pretoria, the area managed by the NZG totals 7 730 hectares. The NZG is well placed as an education platform, receiving close to 600 000 visitors a year. (See Chapter 8: *Environmental affairs and tourism*)

iThemba Laboratory for Accelerator-Based Sciences (iThemba Labs)

iThemba Labs is a multidisciplinary research centre and provides facilities for:

- basic and applied research using particle beams
- particle radiotherapy for the treatment of cancer and other life-threatening lesions
- the supply of accelerator-produced radioactive isotopes for nuclear medicine and research.

iThemba Labs brings together people working in the medical, biological and physical sciences who are interested in using accelerated particle beams, by providing opportunities for research and postgraduate training in these separate disciplines, and also by stimulating mutual interest in interdisciplinary areas.

iThemba Labs has an "open-door" policy towards training postgraduates and in-service trainees.

While postgraduates from universities all over South Africa use the facilities, iThemba Labs proactively participates in building research and postgraduate capacity at historically disadvantaged institutions.

Research and Innovation Support Agency (Risa)

Risa aims to support and promote research and research-capacity development in all fields of knowledge and technology, including the natural sciences, social sciences, humanities, law, engineering, technology and IKS.

This is done by:

- investing in knowledge production and promoting basic and applied research, technology development and innovation
- developing research capacity and advancing

equity and redress to unlock the full creative potential of the research community

- investing in research infrastructure
- facilitating strategic partnerships and knowledge networks.

Much effort has been directed towards ensuring that Risa-supported research focuses on areas that are relevant to South Africa's developmental challenges, in a rapidly changing, highly competitive and knowledge-driven environment.

Support functions

Risa's granting functions are focused on:

- advancing and strengthening strategic knowledge
- identifying distinct South African research opportunities
- conserving and managing ecosystems and biodiversity
- promoting economic growth and international competitiveness
- advancing education and the challenges for change
- supporting IKS
- advancing ICT in South Africa
- establishing the socio-political impact of globalisation and the challenge for South Africa
- eradicating poverty.

Within these focus areas, knowledge fields that may be weak are developed in conjunction with the research community. Research agendas are established through interaction with the research community and collaboration between disciplines is promoted.

Risa implements the following interventions to achieve its goals:

- Student support through a range of different offerings:
 - Block grants are provided to HE institutions to be distributed to worthy postgraduate students who meet certain performance targets. This mode of operation is used to ensure the speedy delivery of funds to students, who are the lifeblood of the research system.
 - Two complementary programmes of postgraduate student support, namely free-standing scholarships, awarded directly to postgraduate students for studies locally and abroad; and grantholder-linked bursaries, granted to researchers within their NRF support package, and which may be awarded to students selected by the NRF grantholder.
- The Department of Labour, in conjunction with the departments of education and of science

and technology, is responsible for ensuring HE training in scarce skills. The Department of Labour allocates resources from the National Skills Fund to the NRF for bursaries and scholarships. The NRF created the Scarce Skills Fund to promote and support students who study at postgraduate levels in areas where skills are scarce. This fund also provides funds to postgraduate students with disabilities.

- Support of postdoctoral fellows through a range of different offerings, including the:
 - Innovation Postdoctoral Fellowship Programme
 - NRF Postdoctoral Programme, which supports and encourages doctoral candidates to embark on further research.
- Staff development at HE institutions is promoted through the Thuthuka Programme, which provides support for researchers in training, women in research and the Research Development Initiative for Black Academics.
- The Institutional Capacity-Development Programme focuses on linking and assisting institutions committed to research through institutional interventions and through funding finely focused research areas at these institutions.
- Within the focus-area programmes, researchers or teams of researchers can obtain up to two-year or five-year grants, depending on their individual ratings in an open competition.
- Sarchi aims to free academics to focus on research, thus increasing the number of world-class researchers and their output, to make South Africa internationally competitive. Up to R2,5 million a year can be awarded to a chair to cover salaries, postdoctoral and student awards, running costs and small equipment purchases. The aim is to support 210 chairs by 2010.
- The CoE Programme supports strategic, long-term research by providing secure and stable funding to outstanding researchers and their research groups when undertaking multi-institutional and cross-disciplinary research.
- The Technology for Human Resources for Industry Programme (Thrip) supports projects that address



In May and July 2007, South Africa hosted the Max Planck Science Tunnel; a 1 000-m² travelling international science exhibition.

The exhibition offered tours of present-day and future scientific discoveries and innovations, including digital and video displays of major scientific breakthroughs in important research areas in all major science areas.

the technology and HR needs of the industry on a cost-sharing basis with industrial partners. The programme focuses on increasing participation by SMMEs, Black Economic Empowerment entities, and black and female researchers and students, as well as encouraging collaboration between small and large firms.

Thrip fosters industry-academia collaboration by subsidising industry research conducted by students. Many successful enterprises have been created through this programme. Not only has Thrip brought more money for university research, it has also successfully funded hundreds of postgraduate students. Since its inception 16 years ago, Thrip has made an important contribution to skills development, supporting on average 2 400 tertiary students each year. Its funding has now reached the billion Rand mark, an amount that has been matched and exceeded by industry.

- The IF invests in technologies at various stages of development. Some of the funding instruments of the IF fund the “proof of concept” phase of projects. The IF also provides seed-funding for commercialising IF projects and establishing technology-based start-up companies. The IF offers commercialisation advice to potential entrepreneurs, and promotes and stimulates the patenting of technologies and products.
- The S&T Agreements Fund supports agreements that facilitate international research collaboration, specifically with African countries. The Department of Science and Technology is responsible for negotiating binational or multilateral agreements with international partners, and for drafting framework programmes. The NRF also has an independent responsibility for negotiating bilateral agreements with counterpart agencies. These agreements develop relations between the research communities of the intergovernmental and interagency signatories, and establish long-term co-operation between researchers.
- Equipment grants allow HE institutions, museums and government-supported research institutions, such as science councils, to acquire research equipment, either of a general nature

or in focused fields, such as nanotechnology and laser technology.

- Mobility grants afford students and researchers the opportunity to obtain access to equipment at other local and international HE institutions. Support is also given to the in- and outbound travel expenses of researchers for participation in international conferences, and the limited sponsorship of various scientific events.
- Risa also works in partnership with various organisations to support their research needs. Examples of these include:
 - Initiatives linked to the biodiversity science thrust of the NRDS. These include the South African Biodiversity Initiative and the South African Biodiversity Information Facility. Risa manages the Sea and Coast Programme with the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism as a co-investor.
 - The NRF also manages the provincial research projects of the Marine and Coastal Management Branch of the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism. These projects have a strong applied-research focus, feeding into the management of marine and coastal resources, including resource allocations for the fishing industry.
 - The South African National Antarctic Programme aims to create a demographically balanced Antarctic research programme that strives for high-quality international research, and links to other African countries and interdisciplinary research.

Promotion functions

The promotion of research and research-capacity development also involves a number of separate initiatives. Knowledge fields that may be weak or underdeveloped are encouraged and stimulated in partnership with the relevant research community. Research agendas are established through interaction with the research community, and collaboration between disciplines is promoted.

Risa offers a performance-assessment service to the research community. This service assesses the quality of individual researchers from all fields of scholarly pursuit.

The so-called rating system uses international peer review to benchmark the quality and impact of previous research output, and assigns one of six ratings to individual researchers.

These ratings qualify applicants for extended periods of research support and in limited cases, guaranteed support. They are also used by HE institutions in the development of their staff members.

Another promotional service offered by Risa is the evaluation of research programmes or even research disciplines. This service is achieved through the facilitation of independent and informed assessment of the quality and value of programmes through peer review. The outcomes of the assessments, which normally contain recommendations for improvement of the programmes, are given to the relevant authorities to act upon, for the good of the entire research and innovation system.

Risa also generates, acquires and provides information that is useful for the production of new knowledge, such as the:

- Nexus Database System, which is a database of current and completed research projects and contains abstracts on 137 000 projects, in all science domains, from the year 1900 onwards
- Research Organisations' Database, which contains information on research organisations in South Africa
- Professional Associations' Database, which contains information on 180 associations, with contact details and disciplines
- conference website, which facilitates access to other conference databases on the Internet
- Women-in-Research Database, which facilitates collaboration between female researchers
- NRF-funded Projects Database, which reflects the grants of the foundation
- South African Data Archive, which is a large data archive of computerised social-science data.

Science councils

The statutory science councils are a key part of South Africa's NSI. Through them, government is able to directly commission research in the interest of the nation, and to support technology development in its precompetitive phase.

Agricultural Research Council (ARC)

The ARC is a statutory body established in terms of the Agricultural Research Act, 1990 (Act 86 of 1990). It comprises research institutes that were previously part of the Department of Agriculture, the oldest of which dates back to 1902.

As the principal agricultural research institution in South Africa, the ARC is committed to agricultural research, technology development and technology transfer within the macroframework of the agricultural sector, thereby contributing to the quality of life of South Africans.

The ARC's research goals are aligned with the objectives of the Strategic Plan for South African Agriculture.

The ARC's research activities address major government priorities, namely integrated rural development, natural-resource management, job creation, regional integration, urban renewal, HR development, crime prevention, farmer settlement, support-service improvement, infrastructure development, food security, and trade development and support.

The ARC comprises the following business units:

Natural Resource and Engineering Business Division

ARC-Institute for Soil, Climate and Water (ARC-ISCW)

Established in 1902 as the Division of Chemistry, the ARC-ISCW (in Pretoria, Gauteng) is a leading centre of expertise in the fields of soil science, agrometeorology, spatial modelling, soil-water science, geoinformatics (remote sensing, geographic, spatial and other information systems) and analytical services.

It is committed to improving rural livelihoods and agricultural productivity, and to the sustainable use of natural resources, soil, climate and water. The ARC-ISCW is the custodian of the Soil Information Systems, the Agrometeorological Climate Network and Databank, and the Coarse Resolution Satellite Imagery Database.

ARC-Institute for Agricultural Engineering (ARC-IAE)

The core purpose of the ARC-IAE (in Pretoria) is to develop and apply agricultural engineering technology that will contribute to higher yield, higher income and lower input costs for agriculture and related industries in a sustainable way.

The ARC-IAE is active in the agricultural engineering field and focuses on agricultural mechanisation, resource conservation, farm structures, irrigation, alternative energy, aquaculture and product-processing. Research is directed at a wide range of clients, from subsistence farmers using animal traction, to commercial farmers and manufacturers requiring scientific performance evaluations of advanced equipment.

ARC-Plant Protection Research Institute (ARC-PPRI)

The PPRI addresses agricultural and environmental concerns, through research aimed at promoting economic and environmentally acceptable pest-management strategies.

Fields of expertise include:

- biosystematics, ecology and epidemiology of invertebrates, fungi, pathogenic and useful bacteria and viruses
- the use of integrated pest management in the control of pests, diseases and invasive weeds
- beneficial organisms such as biological control agents, nitrogen-fixing bacteria, insect pollinators and bees.

The institute is mandated to address plant-protection issues that cut across commodities, affecting many crops and regions. Its research impacts on all South Africa's provinces and addresses the needs of many African countries.

Research is directed at commercial and resource-poor farmers to address current and anticipated threats. It also provides support for the benefit of researchers, agricultural industries and to governments to carry out their statutory obligations.

Grain and industrial crops***ARC-Grain Crops Institute (ARC-GCI)***

The ARC-GCI (in Potchefstroom, North West) is responsible for research into improving and cultivating grain crops such as maize, sorghum and millet, as well as oil and protein seeds such as sunflower, ground-nuts, soybeans, dry beans, cowpeas, sweet white lupin and bambara. Research activities involve plant breeding, evaluation of cultivars and grain quality, plant physiology, plant pathology, nematology, entomology and tillage.

ARC-Small Grain Institute (ARC-SGI)

The ARC-SGI (in Bethlehem, Free State) concentrates on improving and cultivating small grain crops such as wheat, barley, oats, triticale and rye.

Research activities include breeding new cultivars with better resistance to diseases and pests, the national evaluation of cultivars and grain quality, plant physiology, tillage, weed science, plant pathology, entomology and yield potential.

The ARC-SGI is the only institute of its kind that offers one-stop small-grain information, not only to the commercial farmer, but also to new, emerging and small-scale farmers.

ARC-Institute for Industrial Crops (ARC-IIC)

The ARC-IIC (in Rustenburg, North West) is involved in fundamental and applied research in the interest of the cotton and tobacco industries. Research is also conducted on other fibre crops such as hemp, sisal and flax, as well as on finding indigenous fibre crops with economic potential as new alternative crops in rural areas.

Likewise, certain crops are being investigated for their potential as sources of essential oils or household utilities. Research on cassava is directed at its potential as an alternative food source, and source of starch for industrial use. Research on pigeonpea and the promotion of this crop as an additional source of protein, is being widely conducted in rural areas.

Horticulture***ARC-Institute for Tropical and Subtropical Crops (ARC-ITSC)***

The ARC-ITSC (in Nelspruit, Mpumalanga) is responsible for research into all aspects of the cultivation of tropical and subtropical fruits.

Other crops into which production research is conducted include coffee, herbs and spices, medicinal plants, and pecan, macadamia and cashew nuts. Lesser-known exotic crops being evaluated are pitanga, feijoa, annona types, carambola and jaboticaba.

ARC-Roodeplaat Vegetable and Ornamental Plant Institute (ARC-VOPI)

The ARC-VOPI (near Pretoria) concentrates on a wide range of horticultural crops. Research is conducted on commercial vegetables such as onions, potatoes and sweet potatoes. Traditional and indigenous vegetables receiving attention include amaranthus, cassava, plectranthus, Zulu round potato, pigeon peas, cowpeas and bambara. Research into the production and development of ornamentals and indigenous flora such as fynbos, woody ornamentals and bulbs, has led to a new growth industry.

ARC-Infruitec/Nietvoorbij (Institute for Fruit, Vine and Wine)

ARC-Infruitec/Nietvoorbij (in Stellenbosch, Western Cape) does research, development and technology transfer pertaining to the following commodities: deciduous fruit (apples, pears, peaches, plums, apricots and nectarines); grapes (wine, table and raisin); alternative temperate climate crops (cherries, mushrooms, nuts, olives, persimmons, figs, berries and others); brandy; dried fruit and processed fruit.

Increasing attention is also being paid to indigenous crops (honeybush tea, rooibos tea and kei-apple) and their general use, processing and health-promoting abilities. The breeding and evaluation of new stone and pome fruit, as well as table-grape cultivars, is a major research effort. Progeny from the various breeding programmes continue to succeed on the local and export markets.

Traceability and authenticity have become major concerns in modern trade, particularly for sophisticated markets in the first world. Developing the ability to analytically prove the authenticity of South African wine and brandy is the goal of a second major research intervention. Data from isotopic and trace-element analyses will be used to compile reference databases for use in authentication and fraud detection.

Livestock

ARC-Onderstepoort Veterinary Institute (ARC-OVI)

The ARC-OVI (north of Pretoria) is responsible for the prevention and control of animal diseases. It also provides a public-health service regarding food safety and security. The institute conducts research and diagnostic and new-generation vaccine development of livestock diseases.

It has six reference laboratories approved by the *Office International des Epizooties*, namely: rabies, lumpy skin disease, rift valley fever, African horse sickness, African swine fever and bluetongue. The Exotic Diseases Division is a high-containment facility for diseases such as foot-and-mouth disease and African swine fever. The institute is also the Food and Agricultural Organisation collaborating centre in Africa for transboundary diseases.

ARC-Livestock Business Division: Animal Production (ARC-LBD: Animal Production)

ARC-LBD: Animal Production (in Irene, outside Pretoria) comprises seven units, which assist the animal production and products industry to stay

abreast of global competition. Animal Genetics and Biotechnology employs DNA technology, genetic characterisation and accelerated reproduction technology to conserve, maintain and enhance genetic variation. Together with the Animal Recording and Improvement Unit, this has assisted livestock producers in breeding seed-stock material to the benefit of genetic resources worldwide.

Cattle breeds such as the Bonsmara and Nguni, Dorper sheep, boerbok goat, Fowls for Africa, South African ostrich and the indigenous Kolbroek pig have become highly sought after in breeding programmes abroad.

The Production Systems Unit deals with cattle, small stock, pigs and poultry. The Range and Forage Unit assists in the effective use of rangeland and forage production.

Council for Scientific and Industrial Research

Constituted by an Act of Parliament in 1945, the CSIR is one of the leading scientific and technology research, development and implementation organisations in Africa. The CSIR's main site is in Pretoria, while it is represented in most of South Africa's nine provinces through regional offices.

The organisation undertakes directed and multidisciplinary research, technological innovation, and industrial and scientific development to improve South Africans' quality of life.

The CSIR is committed to supporting innovation in South Africa to improve national competitiveness in the global economy. S&T services and solutions are provided in support of various stakeholders, and opportunities are identified where new technologies can be further developed and exploited in the private and public sectors for commercial and social benefit.

The CSIR receives an annual grant from Parliament, through the Department of Science and



The National Science and Technology Forum announced the top achievers and contributors to Science, Engineering and Technology (SET) for 2006 during its awards gala dinner in May 2007.

Ten individuals and three organisations were honoured for their outstanding contributions towards SET development. Winners were selected from 70 nominations. Educators, schools and students who had excelled in Mathematics, Science and Technology, were also acknowledged.

The winner of the Individual over a Lifetime category was Prof. Doug Butterworth.

Technology, which accounts for close to 40% of its total income. The remainder is generated from research contracts with government departments at national, provincial and municipal levels, the private sector and research-funding agencies in South Africa and abroad. Additional income is derived from royalties, licences and dividends from an IP portfolio and commercial companies created by the CSIR.

The parliamentary grant is focused on the knowledge base and facilities in the CSIR to ensure these stay at the leading edge of technological development. It is invested in developing new areas of expertise, undertaking pre-competitive research (too risky for the private sector to fund) and for training young researchers.

The CSIR's shareholder is the South African Parliament, held in proxy by the Minister of Science and Technology. South Africa's national imperatives and global challenges provide the macrostrategic framework within which the CSIR conducts its research. In an effort to contribute to placing the African continent on a path of sustainable growth and development, the organisation supports and actively participates in Nepad.

In line with its mandate, the CSIR contributes to the national programme of development by:

- building and transforming human capital
- strengthening the S&T base
- performing relevant, knowledge-generating research, and transferring technology and skilled human capital.

The CSIR transfers the knowledge generated through research activities by means of technology and skilled people. The generation and application of knowledge reside at the core of the CSIR. This takes place in domains such as biosciences; the built environment; defence, peace, safety and security; material science and manufacturing; and natural resources and the environment.

Emerging research areas (Eras)

The CSIR explores these new science areas, that could be unique to local circumstances or be successful internationally and need to be established for local competitiveness. Examples of Eras include nanotechnology, synthetic biology and mobile autonomous intelligent systems.

National research systems

The CSIR houses specialist facilities of strategic importance for African science. These include ICTs, laser technology and space-related technology.

Research and development outcomes

The R&D Outcomes Portfolio includes IP management, technology transfer (for commercial gain as well as for social good), knowledge dissemination and impact assessment.

Knowledge services

The CSIR Knowledge Services group manages specialised and differentiated services. This is done on a routine basis to address the needs of clients.

Mintek

Mintek, South Africa's national mineral-research organisation, is one of the world's leading technology organisations specialising in mineral processing, extractive metallurgy and related areas. Working closely with industry and other R&D institutions, Mintek provides service testwork, process development, consultation and innovative products to clients worldwide.

Mintek is an autonomous statutory organisation that reports to the Minister of Minerals and Energy. About 30% of the annual budget of R350 million is funded by the State Science Vote, with the balance provided by contract R&D, sales of services and products, technology-licensing agreements and joint-venture operating companies.

Mintek's objectives are to research, develop and transfer to industry, novel and improved technologies to optimise processing, extracting, refining and using minerals and mineral products, to:

- enhance the competitiveness of South Africa's minerals industry in the global market
- assist local mining and engineering companies to expand internationally
- promote job creation, economic growth and regional development.

Specific goals of the organisation include:

- promoting increased beneficiation of South Africa's minerals and mineral commodities by developing competitive and innovative processing technology and equipment
- strengthening South Africa's international



position as a supplier of mineral technologies, capital goods and services

- developing regional strategies for the mineral-processing sector, concentrating on value-addition, capacity-building and broad-based development.

Mintek's activities include:

- providing essential services (information, consulting and experimental)
- increasing the competitiveness of the industry by developing appropriate technology to cut costs and improve and optimise recoveries
- developing breakthrough process technologies and novel uses for metals and their products
- marketing its commercial products and technologies to industry
- establishing strategic partnerships and joint ventures
- participating in regional development initiatives and SADC activities and projects
- maintaining and expanding international scientific links
- developing the HR potential of the region through education and training activities.

Mintek offers a complete range of process-development services, from preliminary bench-scale investigations to large-scale piloting and integrated flowsheet development in support of bankable feasibility studies. Engineering design, plant construction and commissioning are conducted in conjunction with international partners.

Comprehensive laboratory and piloting facilities for sample preparation, milling, flotation, physical separation, smelting, leaching, pressure leaching, and metal recovery and purification, are supported by internationally accredited analytical laboratory and mineralogical services.

Mintek's R&D activities are focused particularly on mineral commodities that are important to the South African economy:

- Gold-improving technologies, such as biotechnology and ion-exchange processes are developed and introduced to simplify processing and increase recoveries, particularly from ores that are difficult to treat. A major joint venture with industry and other research groups is exploring new industrial uses of gold in the fields of catalysis, nanotechnology and biomedicine.
- Platinum-group metals' (PGMs) R&D is aimed at increasing the cost-effectiveness of PGM production and stimulating industrial demand for PGMs.
- Ferrous-metal products and technical services are developed to increase the cost-effectiveness

of ferro-alloy production, as well as stainless steels and other alloys with improved properties.

- Mintek has done a large amount of work for non-ferrous metals, such as new copper, nickel and cobalt, through projects in southern and central Africa. Processes are also developed for aluminium, lead, magnesium and zinc. The major emphasis is on the introduction of cleaner technologies.
- R&D includes the beneficiation and processing of industrial minerals, including commodities such as heavy mineral, chromite, iron and manganese ores, andalusite, phosphates, fluorite and diamonds.
- With the upswing in the uranium market, Mintek has re-established itself as one of the foremost uranium laboratories in the country, and has played a significant role in developing and optimising several new projects on the African continent.

Promoting industrial growth

Mintek is promoting a number of major new industrial projects based on mineral beneficiation, using existing and newly developed technologies. These include the recovery of PGMs from metallurgical waste material, ferro-nickel production, and the establishment of a local magnesium industry using a novel thermal production route.

Minerals policy and development

Mintek conducts surveys, evaluations and commodity and market studies to support initiatives by governmental, international, regional or industry associations. It also identifies and evaluates potential development projects, assesses and provides technology, and conducts feasibility studies.

The organisation co-operates with industry and other research institutions and academia to maintain and enhance the mineral sector's contribution to society, by providing strategic direction and procedures that promote value addition and sustainable development in the mining industry.

Mintek is frequently called upon to support strategy and policy issues at all levels in South Africa, including participation in Nepad and the African Mining Partnership, through research into broad-based economic-development issues around mining and minerals.

Mintek is growing its capacity to lead and support multiple initiatives in small-scale mining and beneficiation, and is well positioned to lead

projects that will benefit economies on the African continent and support government initiatives to create employment in mining, manufacturing and agriculture at local and rural levels.

Environment

Mintek continues to focus on developing environmentally responsible technologies for the recovery and recycling of metals from metallurgical residues. A major programme is in place to monitor cyanide species in various locations around gold plants, from both an environmental and a processing point of view. Mintek's environmental-management system is certified as meeting the requirements of the International Organisation for Standardisation (ISO) 14001.

Education

The development of appropriate HR is crucial for the long-term sustainability of the minerals industry. Mintek's education and training initiatives focus on developing and training South Africans from historically disadvantaged communities as technicians, technologists and engineers. Training programmes include:

- artisanal and small-scale mining training
- jewellery-manufacturing training
- upgrading Mathematics and Science skills
- science promotion through participation in various SET initiatives (sponsored by the departments of science and technology and of minerals and energy), corporate events, university open days, and the Minquiz national schools' science competition
- corporate social investment/responsibility through Mintek's Adopt-a-School Programme and Girl 11 and 12 Learner Programme
- undergraduate and postgraduate bursary schemes
- in-training programmes for recently qualified engineers and technicians
- specialised advanced technical programmes.

Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC)

The HSRC, South Africa's statutory research agency, conducts research that generates critical and independent knowledge, relative to all aspects of human and social development.

Alleviating poverty, and developing and implementing public policy are central to its research activities. Its research extends beyond South African borders, through projects and collaborations in other African countries.

As a social-science research organisation committed to making a difference in the quality of life of ordinary people, the HSRC is often commissioned to undertake large-scale research on behalf of government departments at national, regional and local levels.

The HSRC also serves the research needs of parastatal organisations, the private sector and local and international development agencies, to track service delivery, evaluate performance and measure the efficacy of interventions.

The HSRC's collaborative approach to research provides a platform for interaction with research experts in South Africa, elsewhere in Africa and internationally. In addition to conducting commissioned research, the organisation proactively disseminates its research findings in peer-reviewed and other publications, and through seminars, invited lectures and media briefings.

Functioning as a knowledge hub, the HSRC contributes to bridging the gap that so often exists between research, policy and action.

The research undertaken by the HSRC has been configured into five interdisciplinary research programmes:

- Child, Youth, Family and Social Development
- Democracy and Governance
- Education, Science and Skills Development
- Social Aspects of HIV and AIDS and Health
- Urban, Rural and Economic Development.

Five cross-cutting research units and two priority initiatives have been established to interactively contribute to, and draw from, the five research programmes to integrate and enhance the work of the HSRC as a whole. The units are:

- Capacity Development
- Gender and Development
- Knowledge Systems
- Policy Analysis
- Social Aspects of the Southern African HIV and AIDS Research Alliance (Sahara).

The Policy Analysis Unit has a dual mandate. The first is to serve as a think tank and provide a



platform for public discourse of critical social issues. The second is to pursue time-limited, multiyear analyses into specific priority areas, namely poverty reduction, employment, quality education, HIV and AIDS, and service delivery. The work of the unit is centred around the various crossroads between these policy issues and heuristic parameters, drawn from the NRDS.

The first two priority initiatives are the National Quality Education Initiative and the Employment, Growth and Development Initiative.

Research programmes

Child, Youth, Family and Social Development

The Child, Youth, Family and Social Development Unit aims to promote human and social development through the production of high-quality applied research that addresses challenges arising from social inequality, poverty, violence, HIV and AIDS and other causes of ill-health, suffering and loss of human potential.

The programme researches aspects of the life course, from infancy to old age, with an emphasis on understanding how contexts, policies and politics shape and distribute life chances.

Democracy and Governance

The Democracy and Governance Unit recognises that there is an ongoing need to consolidate South Africa's relatively young democracy, continually improve governance and address emerging issues in fresh and substantive ways. The unit examines issues that contribute to or constrain the growth and development of democracy in South Africa and the rest of Africa, the outcome of which promotes and informs public debate.

Education, Science and Skills Development

The Education, Science and Skills Development Unit plays a critical role in fulfilling the knowledge and skills requirements to keep the country and its people competitive in an increasingly global environment.

The work of the unit spans three major social domains in the form of the education system, the NSI and the world of work. The programme aims to produce comprehensive, integrated and holistic analyses of the pathways of learners through schooling, further and HE, and into the labour market and NSI.

Social Aspects of HIV and AIDS and Health

The Social Aspects of HIV and AIDS and Health Unit undertakes cutting-edge and innovative research

into HIV and AIDS and public health, so as to contribute to public-policy dialogue and formulation, and improve health-service delivery.

It focuses on research that is policy-relevant and responds to the current challenges facing South Africa, while also assessing, monitoring and evaluating HIV and AIDS and health programmes that aim to improve the lives of South Africans.

Its primary focus is on the key socio-cultural, political, economic and demographic determinants that increase or reduce vulnerability to HIV-infection.

It also addresses risky behaviour, prevention and interventions. In the area of health policy, it conducts strategic epidemiological research and demographic analyses into mortality, natality and fertility.

Urban, Rural and Economic Development

The Urban, Rural and Economic Development Unit primarily aims to promote integrated urban and rural development in the country through problem-oriented research, user-driven policy development and ongoing monitoring and evaluation.

With poverty reduction as the unifying theme, the unit's objectives and activities are specifically designed to address key national, regional and Africa-wide underdevelopment challenges and policy priorities through a collaborative approach to research.

Cross-cutting units

Policy Analysis

The Policy Analysis Unit serves as a think tank and forum for the deliberation and analysis of public policy on the most critical issues affecting the lives of people in Africa. It focuses on issues such as poverty reduction, employment, quality education, HIV and AIDS, and service delivery.

The unit conducts systematic evaluation of policies and suggests alternative means of achieving social goals. It also analyses existing or prospective policies with the intention of suggesting alternative ways of improving the population's social welfare.

Capacity Development

The Capacity Development Unit was established to develop individual and institutional research capacity. Using a collaborative approach, the unit intends to increase the pool of competent researchers for human and social sciences in South Africa and support the development of black and female researchers to enable the HSRC to meet its equity targets.

Gender and Development

The unit provides the HSRC with a gender “lens”, thereby empowering it to make men’s and women’s concerns and experiences an integral dimension of the design, implementation, monitoring and evaluation of policies and programmes, to equally benefit both sexes.

Social Aspects of the Southern African HIV and AIDS Research Alliance

Sahara is an Africa-wide network co-ordinated by the HSRC. It has the expressed purpose of sharing research expertise, knowledge and experiences on HIV and AIDS with policy-makers, other researchers, government departments and organisations working in this field.

Through this alliance, Sahara seeks greater understanding of the pandemic in the hope of contributing to a reduction in the number of new HIV infections and, ultimately, to a reversal in the spread of HIV and AIDS.

Knowledge Systems

The Knowledge Systems Unit conducts primary and secondary research on socio-economic and governance issues to facilitate evidence-based decision-making.

The unit works with external research users and supports the research programmes of the HSRC, while also building complementary expertise throughout Africa.

The key focus of the unit involves the design, implementation and analysis of quantitative and qualitative data to enhance the knowledge-management strategies of the HSRC and promote social scientific research and capacity-building throughout South Africa and the African continent.

National priority initiatives*National Education Quality Initiative*

The National Education Quality Initiative was established to focus on education quality, with the aim of supporting the Government and other key role-players in enhancing decision-making based on research evidence that could contribute to improving educational quality.

The initiative is dedicated to supporting role-players in general education, such as teachers,

principals, parents, education officials, NGOs and the donor community, by enhancing evidence-based planning pertaining to policy and practice.

The initiative focuses on the primary determinants of education quality, namely the quality of learning and teaching practices.

Employment, Growth and Development Initiative

This initiative has set out to identify clear, evidenced-based scenarios and strategies for unemployment reduction and employment creation, thereby contributing to the strategic imperative of national economic growth that benefits all.

The scenario process, underpinned by policy-orientated research, engages high-level South African decision-makers from government, business and organised labour in an ongoing round-table dialogue. The areas of research include macroeconomic policy, labour markets and social protection, industrial policy, government-employment programmes, and political-economy questions. These link to practical policy decision-making processes.

Medical Research Council

The MRC’s mission is to improve the nation’s health and quality of life through promoting and conducting relevant and responsible health research. The MRC is an autonomous body but reports to the Department of Health. It receives 60% of its budget from the Department of Science and Technology. Its head office is situated in Cape Town, with provincial offices in Pretoria and Durban.

The MRC’s research activities are aligned with the health priorities of the nation, the national S&T imperatives and the health priorities defined by the Department of Health. Activities are grouped into the following national programmes:

National Programme for Research in Molecules to Disease

This programme undertakes research on human and microbial genetics, genomics, bio-informatics, cell and molecular biology, tissue engineering, oesophageal cancer, molecular hepatology, microbiology, and liver and bone disease.

National Programme for Health Systems and Policy Research

The scientists in this programme conduct research on health systems, clinical epidemiology, biostatistics, health policy, the burden of disease and telemedicine.

National Programme for Infection and Immunity Research

The research units in this programme are involved in research into TB, malaria, immunology of infectious diseases, diarrhoeal diseases, inflammation and amoebiasis, genital-ulcer diseases, respiration and meningeal pathogens, and South African traditional medicines. It also incorporates the MRC National HIV and AIDS Lead Programme, whose divisions co-ordinate the South African AIDS Vaccine Initiative, various aspects of biomedical research, (including mother-to-child transmission and microbicides), and prevention of transmission through behavioural change.

National Programme for Non-Communicable Disease Research

This programme undertakes research into heart disease (both laboratory, clinical and public-health research), nutritional intervention, diabetes, crime, violence and injury, anxiety and stress disorders, dental issues, medical imaging, chronic diseases of lifestyle and cancer epidemiology.

National Programme for Environment and Development Research

In this entity, research is undertaken into health promotion, health and development, exercise and sports science, occupational and environmental health, alcohol and drug abuse, and technology transfer.



Telemedicine is one example of how information technology can be used to provide and support healthcare, especially in rural clinics without doctors or specialist advice. Through the use of telemedicine, patients get quicker and better diagnosis and have access to specialised care closer to their homes, thereby avoiding time off work and travel costs.

The Department of Science and Technology supports the Primary Healthcare Telemedicine Workstation project in Grabouw, Western Cape. This clinic is directly linked to the University of Stellenbosch and allows for consultation and diagnosis in various specialities.

The next step in the implementation plan will be the installation of 10 telemedicine workstations in KwaZulu-Natal over the next two years.

National Programme for Women and Child Health Research

This programme undertakes research into many aspects of women's health, including high blood pressure during pregnancy, healthcare strategies in maternal and infant health, perinatal mortality, gender and health, mineral metabolism and nutritional intervention.

South African National Health Knowledge Network

The South African National Health Knowledge Network was established in 1999 at the MRC with funding from the Government's IF.

The network operates under the trade name SA HealthInfo and is available on the Internet at www.sahealthinfo.org. It provides a one-stop interactive forum or resource for quality-controlled and evidence-based health-research information.

Council for Geoscience (CGS)

The main functions of the CGS are:

- documenting the surface of the Earth within the borders of South Africa; compiling geological, geophysical, geochemical and other geoscientific information; and publishing this information in the form of maps and documents
- conducting geoscientific research into rocks, minerals, ores, fossils, etc. in South Africa and publishing research results in national and international journals
- collecting and conserving all geoscientific information and data on South Africa in national collections and electronic databases
- supplying geoscientific services and advice to the national and provincial governments and ensuring informed decisions regarding the optimal and efficient use of the Earth's surface.

The objectives of the CGS are to:

- minimise the geological and geoscientific investment risk for national and international entrepreneurs in the South African mining sector (the quality of available geological information – known as the “geological risk grading” – contributes to about 61% of the investment risk in any country)
- supply the country with basic geoscience data to establish a safe, cost-effective physical infrastructure
- supply basic knowledge to ensure safe, cost-effective and environmentally acceptable urbanisation and housing development
- carry out research into raw materials needed to clothe, transport, feed and provide shelter for the nation.

To accomplish these functions and objectives, the CGS maintains a specialised workforce, consisting of Earth scientists supplemented by technical, support and administrative staff at its headquarters in Pretoria, and at branch offices in the Western Cape, Northern Cape, Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape.

The CGS maintains the following national institutions:

- The National Geoscience Library in Pretoria is probably the most comprehensive geoscience library in Africa. It includes the Map Library, which contains a collection of South African and African geoscience maps.
- The National Core Library contains a representative stratigraphic-borehole core collection, representing most of the lithological units located within the borders of South Africa. This collection is housed at Donkerhoek, east of Pretoria.
- The Geoscience Museum, in the Transvaal Museum in Pretoria, exhibits rocks and minerals, catering for the Earth-science education of the public, especially schoolchildren.

An extensive laboratory at the CGS head office uses various specialised techniques to analyse rock and soil samples.

Geoscience information and services provided by the CGS are particularly important for the sustainable development of the country. In South Africa's arid regions, the management of groundwater resources (both the quantity and quality thereof) is aimed at providing enough clean water to communities. In addition, the CGS has established the Environmental Geoscience Unit to provide services in this highly competitive and very important field.

Although South Africa is situated on a relatively stable part of the Earth's crust, the CGS maintains a seismic network for recording such events within the national borders and coastal waters off South Africa's coastline. This information is available to interested parties and helps mitigate the problems associated with mining-related seismic events.

The CGS is a world leader in the domain of geophysical surveys, using a detection system deployed on light aircraft. This significantly reduces the cost of very high-resolution geophysical data for mineral exploration. A larger aircraft (a Cessna

Caravan 208B) and a helicopter, can carry larger sensors, dramatically increasing the CGS' capability to conduct high-resolution geophysical surveys.

The CGS leads an initiative by the Department of Minerals and Energy to assist upcoming mining entrepreneurs, particularly those from historically disadvantaged groups, to exploit South Africa's mineral resources in a cost-effective and environmentally friendly way.

Because the CGS plays a leading role in the SADC, several geoscience publications covering the region have been produced, describing heavy mineral sand, diamond, gold, copper and cobalt, bauxite and dimension-stone deposits in the region. A seismic hazard map of the region, a lithostratigraphic table comparing the geological formations in the region, and maps of the Kalahari Basin have also been produced.

In addition to its national responsibilities, the CGS is also active internationally, mainly in Africa. Geological and metallogenic maps of, among other countries, Angola, the Democratic Republic of Congo, Mozambique, Gabon and Morocco, have been produced. By early 2007, major geological mapping projects in Ghana, Mozambique, Madagascar and New Guinea, and the supervision of mapping projects in Mauritania, Mozambique and Madagascar, were under way.

South African Bureau of Standards (SABS)

The SABS was established in 1948 to develop, maintain and disseminate standards in South Africa. Although this core objective has remained unchanged over the years, the mission of the SABS has changed its focus in step with the times. The SABS sees its mission as "improving the quality of life of all South Africans, through the process of standardisation".

Standards South Africa (StanSA)

StanSA is the SABS' core function and is responsible for developing, maintaining and disseminating the country's national standards.

Through its Standards Sales Division in Pretoria, and its offices in Durban, Cape Town and Port Elizabeth, all national standards and those of the International Electrotechnical Commission, the ISO and a host of other foreign standards are made available to the public.

Regulatory Affairs and Consumer Protection

This division of the SABS is responsible for administering certain national regulations, mainly on behalf of the Department of Trade and Industry.

Legal Metrology forms a part of the division and ensures the protection of consumers against incorrect metrological practices, such as the sale of underweight or undersized products.

A specific function, directed towards providing conformity-assessment services to the SMME sector, and other presidential imperatives and social-responsibility activities, are also located in this division.

South African Bureau of Standards Holdings (Pty) Limited

All the conformity-assessment services of the SABS are located in this company. These include testing products, providing system and product-certification schemes, inspecting consignments and training people in these matters. SABS Holdings is a separate company that competes in the private sector and charges for the services that it renders. This is unlike SABS Regulatory Affairs and StanSA, which recover their costs from monies allocated for those purposes under the Science Budget Vote of the Department of Science and Technology. A corporate function provides overhead services, such as finance, HR, legal, marketing and communication, risk management and IT.

Other scientific and research organisations and structures **Biotechnology Partnership for Africa's Development**

Biopad is a biotechnology regional innovation centre established by the Department of Science and Technology. The centre, initiated in 2002, aims to boost biotechnology development in the region. The core objective is to implement South Africa's NBS.

By the end of 2006, Biopad's investments in research projects and private companies were approaching R200 million. During 2007, Biopad continued to identify near-commercialisation opportunities, particularly in the areas of animal health and production.

Sasol

Sasol Technology conducts most of its fuel- and chemical-related R&D at Sasolburg in the Free State. It also maintains R&D programmes at external CoEs, including St Andrews University in Scotland, Twente University in the Netherlands and the University of Cape Town in South Africa. Sasol

Polymers operates a polymer technology centre near Johannesburg, and Sasol Nitro and Sasol Wax maintain R&D programmes in South Africa and Germany, respectively.

Eskom

Eskom's Technology Services International group is a multidisciplinary industrial laboratory and consulting organisation. It undertakes testing, investigation studies, project management, engineering services and applied research for Eskom and other customers.

ArcelorMittal

ArcelorMittal is the world's number one steel company, with 320 000 employees in more than 60 countries. It has led the consolidation of the world steel industry and today ranks as a truly global steelmaker with an industrial presence in 27 countries. ArcelorMittal is the leader in all major global markets, including automotive, construction, household appliances and packaging. The group is a leader in R&D and technology, holds sizeable captive supplies of raw materials, and operates extensive distribution networks.

National Health Laboratory Service (NHLS)

The NHLS is a national network of integrated pathology laboratories countrywide that use common laboratory-management systems and transport networks to facilitate the transport of specimens, referral of tests to reference laboratories and the delivery of results.

The NHLS includes about 250 laboratories, employing 3 500 people. Their activities comprise diagnostic laboratory services, research, teaching and training, and the production of sera for anti-snake venom and reagents. Laboratories provide diagnostic services to the Department of Health, provincial hospitals, local governments and medical practitioners.

Research conducted by the NHLS covers a wide spectrum of activities in all pathology disciplines. Grants in support of research are made by the MRC, the Cancer Association of South Africa, the South African Sugar Association, the Poliomyelitis Research Foundation, pharmaceutical companies, private donors and numerous overseas institutions. The NHLS finances a large part of the research programme from the earnings of its laboratory services.

The NHLS teaching programme includes training medical technologists in association with universities of technology. University teaching at

both undergraduate and postgraduate level is done through the pathology departments of universities' medical schools.

Bureau for Economic Research (BER)

The BER at the University of Stellenbosch, Western Cape, is an independent and objective economic research organisation. It renders a service to organisations ranging from small one-person businesses to policy-makers at the highest level of government.

National Institute for Tropical Diseases

The National Institute for Tropical Diseases in Tzaneen, Limpopo, is responsible for the ongoing assessment of malaria-control programmes carried out by various authorities in South Africa.

Control methods are assessed and recommendations made to the appropriate authorities regarding equipment, insecticide usage and application. A malaria-reference service is also provided. Malaria tests are carried out by the institute, and statistical analysis of data pertaining to the programme is undertaken.

General research areas

Mine-safety research

The activities of the Safety in Mines Research Advisory Committee are aimed at advancing the safety of workers employed in South African mines. The committee is a statutory tripartite sub-committee of the Mine Health and Safety Council. It has a permanent research-management office managing the rock engineering, engineering and mine occupational health fields of research.

Energy research

The Chief Directorate: Energy of the Department of Minerals and Energy manages a policy-directed research programme. This includes transport energy, renewable energy, energy for developing areas, coal, electricity, energy efficiency, energy economy, and integrated energy-policy formulation.

Agricultural research

Agricultural research is conducted by the ARC, several universities and various private-sector organisations. Provinces are responsible for farm

management and technological development. These activities are aimed at improving managerial efficiency on farms.

The Directorate: Scientific Research and Development in the Department of Agriculture, co-ordinates all agricultural R&D activities.

The National Agricultural Research Forum (NARF) co-ordinates agricultural R&D within the national agricultural research system. The NARF also provides a platform for stakeholder consultations on R&D matters.

Biannual meetings are held to debate and agree on research needs, programmes and budgeting. Efforts are made to ensure that the bulk of research serves the needs of small-scale producers.

Research initiatives have been integrated into the various industries in line with the overall objectives of each agricultural sector.

Water research

Water research in South Africa is co-ordinated and funded by the Water Research Commission (WRC) in Pretoria, Gauteng.

The WRC was established in 1971 through the Water Research Act, 1971 (Act 34 of 1971), following a period of water shortage.

The WRC provides leadership for R&D through the support of knowledge creation, transfer and application. It engages stakeholders and partners in solving critical water-related problems. It is a networking organisation, linking the nation and working through partnerships.

Being a water-stressed country, South Africa progressively needs to find innovative ways of managing water resources to ensure that the basic needs of its citizens are met, that social and economic development is not restricted through poor quality or a lack of water, and that sustainability of water resources and water-dependent ecosystems is achieved.

The WRC continues to play a leading role in building a sustainable water-related knowledge base in South Africa by:

- investing in water R&D
- building sustainable and appropriate capacity
- developing skills for the water sector
- being adept at forming strategic partnerships to achieve objectives more effectively while

making optimal use of the latest available global information and knowledge and other technologies. The Water Research Act, 1971 established the Water Research Fund, which derives income primarily from levies on water consumption.

In supporting the creation, dissemination and application of knowledge, the WRC focuses on five key strategic areas:

- water-resource management
- water-linked ecosystems
- water use and waste management
- water use in agriculture
- water-centred knowledge.

The WRC also calls for specific mechanisms to address key strategic issues of national importance. These issues are dealt with in four cross-cutting domains:

- water and society
- water and the economy
- water and the environment
- water and health.

The organisations most active in water research are:

- universities and universities of technology
- professional consultants
- science councils
- water and waste utilities
- NGOs.

The main areas of research are surface hydrology, groundwater, hydrometeorology, agricultural water use, water pollution, municipal effluents, industrial water and effluents, drinking water, membrane technology, water ecosystems, hydraulics, mine-water management, water policy, developing communities, and the transfer of technology.

The Division: Water, Environment and Forestry Technology (Environmentek) of the CSIR specialises in research into water quality, including technology to meet effluent and water-quality standards, and to establish reclaimed water as an additional water source.

Environmentek is a world leader in research into activated sludge processes and the biological monitoring of water to detect potentially toxic substances. It is also involved in research into the effects of afforestation and veld management on the quantity and quality of catchment water-yield.

Environmental research

The Chief Directorate: Environmental Management of the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism annually finances several research and monitoring programmes.

The programmes comprise subjects such as waste management and pollution, nature

conservation, river management, coastline and marine environment, and the atmosphere.

Some programmes are conducted in collaboration with the NRF, while others are undertaken on behalf of the department by the CSIR and universities. Research into human-environment interaction, sponsored by the department, is co-ordinated by the HSRC.

In addition, institutes of the ARC are concerned with environmental research insofar as environmental problems impact on agriculture or are caused by agricultural practices.

The South African Weather Service (SAWS) is a statutory body functioning under the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism.

SAWS delivers public-good services, mainly for the protection of life and property, as well as commercial services to the private sector, as stipulated in the Weather Service Act, 2001 (Act 8 of 2001).

The implementation of NiNjo, the new forecasting workstation, will be a major step towards improving the quality of forecasting products and services. SAWS will be the first national meteorological service in the southern hemisphere to have access to this state-of-the-art technology, which presents product development and research opportunities for South Africa's forecasters and researchers.

Among other activities, SAWS runs the Global Atmospheric Watch Programme, which measures and monitors greenhouse gas datasets. The SAWS has also rolled out a number of ozone-monitoring stations in the SADC region.

The NRF directs the multidisciplinary Conservation and Management of Ecosystems and



A new research base worth R200 million is being built to replace the existing one on Marion Island. The building is expected to be ready for occupation by May 2008.

The building will accommodate 80 people and include laboratories, office space, a jacuzzi, an operation centre, two helicopter decks, a technical centre with a workshop, gymnasium, storage space, conference room and medical centre.

The research base on Marion Island is the home of a team of researchers that focuses on the unique wildlife on the island. The researchers also gather important weather data. The South African National Antarctic Programme is responsible for the logistics and scientific support to the Marion and Gough islands and Antarctica South African base stations. Expedition members spent between 13 and 15 months on the islands.

Biodiversity Focus Area, primarily in collaboration with universities and museums, to promote and support research into living resources and terrestrial, freshwater, marine, coastal and atmospheric ecosystems.

Some 170 projects are approved annually, and global issues such as climate change and biological diversity are also included. The sustainable use of natural resources is a priority area, resulting in an increase in projects relying on sociology and the humanities. The NRF also supports a range of environmental research network organisations, such as the Arid Zone Ecology Forum, the Fynbos Forum, the Indigenous Plant-Use Forum and the Savanna Ecology Forum.

Fisheries research

Research into South Africa's fish resources, and their conservation and judicious exploitation, is carried out by research personnel of the Chief Directorate: Marine and Coastal Management, a division of the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, and by several universities and NGOs.

Research is designed to provide parameters for estimates of stock sizes and sustainable yields for the different fisheries.

Coastal and marine research

The Chief Directorate: Marine and Coastal Management advises on the use of marine living resources and the conservation of marine ecosystems, by conducting and supporting relevant multidisciplinary scientific research and by monitoring the marine environment.

Sustainable use and the need to preserve future options in using marine ecosystems and their resources are guiding objectives in the research and advice provided by the chief directorate.

The NRF supports marine and coastal research in partnership with the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, and the South African Network for Coastal and Oceanic Research.

Private-sector involvement

South Africa's gold-mining industry works at deeper levels and under more difficult conditions than any other mining industry in the world. The research into gold mining conducted by the CSIR's

Mining Technology group, is concerned primarily with ensuring the health and safety of the workforce. It includes those working in the areas of rock engineering and the underground environment.

Mining Technology's coal-mining research takes place on a smaller scale than that of gold mining, because the coal-mining industry can make use of various overseas developments.

Areas in which research is undertaken include strata control, mining, maximising the extraction of coal, and the underground environment.

Research is also carried out by a large number of industrial companies with facilities to meet their specific needs.

The more important ones are the:

- Anglo American Corporation of South Africa (applied metallurgy, processing of precious metals, base metals and coal)
- Agricura (synthesis and testing of veterinary remedies, insecticides, herbicides and entomology)
- Cullinan Holdings (refractories and electrical porcelain)
- De Beers Industrial Diamond Division (manufacturing and application of synthetic diamonds and other super-hard material)
- Johannesburg Consolidated Investment Company (metallurgy, mineralogy, chemistry and chemical engineering)
- National Chemical Products (chemistry, microbiology and animal nutrition)
- Metal Box Company of South Africa (corrosion mechanism and microbiology)



The National Accessibility Portal Project at the Meraka Institute addresses the marginalisation of people with disabilities through information and communications technology.

Many of the researchers are people who have disabilities themselves. They have developed a portable information and communications device for visually impaired people that has built-in speech technologies and access to the Internet and audio books.

They have also designed a highly customised picture-based tool that provides an alternative communication mechanism to people with physical disabilities and to those who cannot talk. Twenty-seven specially equipped centres will be established over the next two years.

- 
- Tellumat (development of electronic instruments)
 - Rembrandt Group (development and improvement of tobacco and liquor products)
 - South African Pulp and Paper Industries (wood

- technology, paper manufacturing and water treatment),
- Standard Telephones and Cables SA (long-distance transmission of information and lightning protection).

Acknowledgements

BuaNews

Council for Geoscience

Estimates of National Expenditure 2007, published by National Treasury

Human Sciences Research Council

Medical Research Council

Mintek

National Health Laboratory Service

National Research Foundation

South African Bureau of Standards

Water Research Commission

www.csir.co.za

www.dst.gov.za

www.gov.za

www.iscor.co.za

www.sabs.co.za

www.southafrica.info

Suggested reading

Bonner, P, Esterhuysen, A. and Jenkins, T. *The Search for Origins: Science, History and South Africa's "Cradle of Humankind"*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2006.

Brooke-Simons, P. *Cullinan Diamonds: Dreams and Discoveries*. Cape Town: Fernwood Press, 2004.

Fig, D. *Uranium Record: Questioning South Africa's Nuclear Direction*. Johannesburg: Jacana, 2005.

Harrison, I and Joyce, P. eds. *The Book of Firsts: South African Edition*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2005.

Harrison, P. *South Africa's Top Sites: Science*. Cape Town: Spearhead, 2004.

Staples, CO. *Mills of Southern Africa: Water, Wind and Horse*. Pretoria: Umdaus Press, 2006.



SA YEARBOOK 2007/08 | SOCIAL DEVELOPMENT



The Department of Social Development aims to ensure the provision of comprehensive, integrated, sustainable and quality social-development services to combat vulnerability and poverty. It also strives to create an enabling environment for sustainable development in partnership with those committed to building a caring society.

The Department of Social Development collaborates with other government departments within the framework of intergovernmental-relations legislation and co-operative governance. It also collaborates with non-governmental organisations (NGOs), faith-based organisations (FBOs), the business sector, organised labour and other role-players to ensure its strategic objectives are implemented.

The national department provides strategic policy leadership and implementation support to nine provincial departments that are responsible for direct service delivery to citizens. The national department monitors and evaluates the range of social-development programmes.

The department's key programmes include:

- social assistance through the South African Social Security Agency (Sassa)
- social-welfare services
- integrated developmental services, including community development
- research in the area of population and development issues and social policy to enhance evidence-based policy development and planning.

The departmental mandate has also widened in recent years to include initiatives aimed at improving the livelihoods of South Africans, by co-ordinating home- and community-based care (HCBC) for people living with HIV and AIDS (including probation services, child care and protection, and family counselling and support services), sustainable livelihoods and food-relief programmes, with a focus on programmes for particularly vulnerable groups.

The Department of Social Development also undertakes participatory research to provide evidence for developing relevant and appropriate programmes and strategies for sustainable livelihoods, and policies and strategies on community development. This includes creating a conducive environment for facilitating community development practice and overseeing the National Development Agency (NDA).

Legislation

Older Persons Act, 2006 (Act 13 of 2006)

The Older Persons Act, 2006 contains provisions to improve the lives of older South Africans.

The main objective of the Act is to:

- maintain and promote the status, well-being, safety and security of older persons
- recognise the skills and wisdom of older persons
- encourage older persons' participation in community activities to promote them as people.

Childcare legislation

President Thabo Mbeki signed The Children's Act, 2005 (Act 38 of 2005), in June 2006. However, until Parliament passes the Children's Amendment Bill; and the Children's Act, 2005 and the Amendment Bill become a single comprehensive Act, the Child Care Act, 1983 (Act 74 of 1983), will remain in effect.

In July 2007, the National Assembly passed the Children's Amendment Bill and referred it to the National Council of Provinces to be ratified.

The Children's Act, 2005:

- gives effect to certain rights of children as contained in the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996
- sets out principles relating to the care and protection of children
- defines parental responsibilities and rights
- makes further provision regarding children's courts
- provides for the issuing of contribution orders
- makes new provision for the adoption of children
- provides for intercountry adoption
- gives effect to the Hague Convention on Intercountry Adoption
- prohibits child abduction and trafficking, and gives effect to the Hague Convention on International Child Abduction
- provides for surrogate motherhood
- creates certain new offences relating to children.
- provides for matters relating to the trafficking of children and the implementation of the relevant protocol.

The Children's Amendment Bill aims to amend the Children's Act, 2005 and:

- inserts certain definitions such as "child-headed household" and "cluster foster-care scheme"
- provides for partial care of children
- provides for early childhood development (ECD)
- makes further provision regarding the protection of children

- provides for prevention and early-intervention services
- provides for children in alternative care
- provides for foster care
- provides for child- and youth-care centres, shelters and drop-in centres
- creates certain new offences relating to children
- addresses the plight of child-headed households
- ensures parental rights are respected by providing that no person may take or send a South African child out of the Republic without consent from parents or guardians
- provides for the discipline of children.

The Children's Act, 2005 provides for the establishment of the National Child Protection Register (NCPR) that will record all persons found unsuitable to work with children.

It will also list any person found by the Children's Court and criminal courts to be unsuitable to work with children.

In terms of this new law, childcare facilities, including welfare organisations offering foster care and adoption, will be able to check prospective employees, foster parents and adoptive parents against the register.

The register, however, will not be open to the public, and all requests for information will be directed through the Department of Social Development.

Comprehensive social security

Government has committed itself to specific goals concerning a comprehensive social-security system. The Cabinet-approved framework of the new system seeks to ensure access to social security, including appropriate social assistance as provided for in Section 27 of the Constitution.

The construction, over time, of a comprehensive social-security system will result in substantial changes to the existing social-insurance funds, the enhancement of administrative arrangements, a new tax structure, and adjustments to employee benefits across the economy.

This reform project will affect all South Africans and extend across the entire labour market. Its implementation calls for a new social partnership constructed on the principles of equity and solidarity, that builds on both public-administration reforms and effectively mobilises private-sector capacity.

To give effect to government's social-insurance reform agenda, Cabinet has appointed an inter-ministerial committee to provide political leadership. The Department of Social Development

will play a key role in designing and implementing reforms in the area of:

- retirement provisions
- social-health insurance
- unemployment insurance
- compensation for injuries and diseases on duty
- road-accident insurance.

Among these reforms, retirement provisions present the most complex of challenges, encompassing savings for old age, contributions to post-retirement medical schemes, disability and survivors' benefits. A discussion document on the reform of retirement provisions in South Africa can be found on the Government's website: (www.info.gov.za/otherdocs/2007/soc_sec_retire.pdf).

The key proposals regarding retirement reform include:

- removing the means test for the Old-Age Grant and increasing the upper ceiling of the means test for all other grants
- introducing a mandatory system of retirement contributions
- reviewing the current system of tax-expenditure subsidies
- establishing a government-sponsored retirement fund
- introducing ancillary benefits along with retirement savings to cover disability and survivors' benefits
- providing arrangements for post-retirement medical contributions.

Social-assistance policy developments

In the context of South Africa's main challenges of high levels of poverty and inequality, the Department of Social Development continues to expand the social-safety net. The Social Assistance Act, 2004 (Act 13 of 2004), creates uniform norms and standards that apply countrywide. It provides for the publication of regulations on performance management and on adherence to the Batho Pele (People First) principles of customer service.

The Act provides for the rendering of social assistance to persons, mechanisms for the rendering of such assistance, establishment of an inspectorate for social assistance, and related matters.

Social-assistance transfers are funded from general revenue and are appropriated on the Vote of the Department of Social Development. Social-assistance cash grants provide targeted income support to those whose livelihoods are most at risk. The available grants are the old-age; disability; child-support; foster-care; care-dependency and war-

veterans' grants; and temporary grant-in-aid relief. By September 2007, over 12 million South Africans were accessing social assistance, the country's most effective poverty-alleviation programme. Of these beneficiaries of social assistance, more than eight million were children.

Income transfers to households through social-assistance grant programmes increased from R42,9 billion in 2002/03 to R74,2 billion in 2005, representing an increase of 20% a year. Social assistance increased from 2,9% of gross domestic product in 2003/04 to 3,3% in 2006/07.

The growing number of child-support beneficiaries has been the main source of increased expenditure over this period, with the increase in disability grants taking up a rising share of the total.

Following the Committee of Inquiry into the Comprehensive Social Security System in 2002, the Department of Social Development implemented the following recommendations:

- extended the Child Support Grant (CSG) to include children up to the age of 14 years
- developed a new definition for disability grants and an assessment tool
- established the Sassa as a national institution to manage and deliver social-assistance grants
- completed a detailed gap analysis of social-insurance provisions.

As part of the measures to reach vulnerable children over the age of 14 years, the committee and the Office on the Rights of the Child are

working on the definition of the child and rationalisation of all legislation dealing with children.

Implementing social-assistance programmes

Before 2006, the nine provincial departments each had their own administration for social assistance. This situation posed significant challenges for government concerning lack of norms and standards of social-assistance service delivery. The Sassa Act, 2004 (Act 9 of 2004), was introduced to create a single entity for the delivery of social grants. The agency took over this responsibility from the provinces from April 2005.

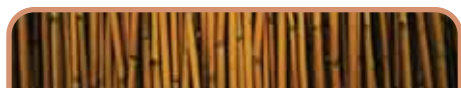
The agency's delivery model aims to ensure that the administration and payment of social grants become more customer-focused, while ensuring regular reviews of beneficiaries' eligibility. Regular reviews and a comprehensive fraud strategy should reduce levels of fraud, leakage and corruption in the social-grants system.

Together with the Department of Health, the Department of Social Development has embarked on a project that aims to bring about the provision of free healthcare and disability grants seamlessly, by piloting and then rolling out a harmonised assessment tool for people with disabilities.

Cabinet approved a new definition of disability, specifically for the two programmes (free healthcare and disability grants). This definition necessitated an investigation into possible dispensation for people with chronic conditions, who usually form the bulk of temporary-disability grant recipients.

The rehabilitation of people with disabilities is considered imperative to facilitate the development of an exit strategy for such people from social grants. Such rehabilitation is expected to enable people with disabilities to access training and job opportunities.

Foster-care grants are paid to caregivers of children who have been placed with them by the courts. Caregivers of children between one and 18 years with severe disabilities are eligible for care-dependency grants. The children must be cared for at home even when receiving treatment and stimulation outside of home during the day. Once these children turn 18, they are eligible for the Disability Grant.



In 2006, the Health and Welfare Sector Education and Training Authority (HWSETA) awarded scholarships to 190 students to study Social Work, Child and Youth-Care Work, and Economics. Final-year students in Social Work were also appointed in their respective provinces in terms of their contractual obligations.

To address the shortage of social workers in the sector, savings from the HWSETA scholarships were also used to take over graduates' bad debt and offer them employment. All the students whose debt was taken over were placed in various provincial departments.

For 2007/08, 1 428 scholarships were awarded to students of Social Work studies from the R50 million awarded by National Treasury.

Employment assistance

An employment-assistance directorate has been established to link social-grant beneficiaries with economic activities and poverty-alleviation strategies, for their possible exit from the social-grants system.

In line with this thinking, Cabinet approved a presentation on this proposal in principle, to explore possible economic activities and poverty-alleviation strategies for the same purpose.

Combating fraud and corruption

The department's national facilities to combat fraud and corruption in the social-security system consist of:

- a toll-free national security fraud hotline (0800 60 10 11) that operates 24 hours a day, seven days a week
- an e-mail address (fraud@socdev.gov.za) and a free-call fax-service number (0800 61 10 11).

As part of the Anti-Corruption and Fraud Prevention Strategy, internal control systems have been improved, and forensic and investigating teams deployed in all provinces.

By mid-2007, the investigation, which saved the Government R7,7 billion, had achieved the following results:

- 21 588 government employees had been found to be on the system irregularly and removed, and 3 657 had been referred for disciplinary action ranging from warnings to dismissals.
- 5 656 people had been arrested and taken to court. The conviction rate was more than 80%.
- R63 million had been recovered from disentitled beneficiaries.
- 143 485 people had been recommended for removal from the system and 21 587 civil-servant grants had been stopped.
- 123 610 beneficiaries had been cancelled due to non-collection or direct requests from beneficiaries.

By May 2007, more than 86 000 beneficiaries had applied for indemnity and their grants were suspended. This led to savings on the cost of investigations in excess of R400 million.

The department, in collaboration with all national and provincial law-enforcement agencies, including the South African Police Service (SAPS) and the Special Investigation Unit (SIU), was expected to establish the Inspectorate for Social Security.

Social relief

Social relief of distress is provided in the event of sudden loss of income in families due to sickness, imprisonment of the breadwinner, disasters or any

contingency that leaves family members and communities vulnerable.

During 2006/07, the department submitted for consideration a proposal to restructure and re-engineer the relief funds:

- repeal the Fund-Raising Act, 1978 (Act 107 of 1978), and have an appropriate legislative framework supporting the vision of becoming the fastest social-relief services
- consolidate all relief funds into one
- have an effective and efficient institutional model to ensure the provision of relief to communities in need
- have an effective information and disbursement system supporting the delivery of relief measures.

By May 2007, various government structures were being consulted to solicit support in taking the process forward. The department commissioned legal expertise to review all legislation relating to relief services with a view to streamlining services.

Health insurance

An estimated seven million South Africans contribute to medical schemes. These schemes account for the largest element of contributory health cover, which was estimated at R43 billion in 2005, excluding the Tax Expenditure Subsidy.

The current private health arrangements incorporate only limited levels of social solidarity. Optimising social solidarity requires:

- Risk equalisation: This is achieved through interscheme financial transfers to eliminate demographic differences between medical schemes. This is being implemented following government's approval.
- Minimum benefits: By mid-2007, the mandatory minimum package represented only about a third of a comprehensive package of benefits.

Amounts of grants per month as at 1 April 2007

Grant type	Amount
Old-Age Grant	R870
Disability Grant	R870
War-Veterans' Grant	R890
Foster-Care Grant	R620
Care-Dependency Grant	R870
Child Support Grant	R200
Grant-in-Aid	R200

Source: Department of Social Development

- Income-based contributions: By mid-2007, some medical-scheme members paid flat-rate contributions that were insensitive to income. The inequitable provision of tax subsidies to higher-income groups created a perverse outcome.
- Mandatory participation for income-earners: Voluntary contributory health systems are characterised by “anti-selection”. Mandating participation in health cover is a key mechanism to bolstering and sustaining risk-pooling.

Community development and sustainable livelihoods

The persistence of poverty calls for the development of innovative and sustainable community-development and poverty-eradication policies, strategies and programmes that will not only create opportunities for sustainable jobs and income generation, but that will also harness and strengthen resources within households and civil society to achieve sustainable livelihoods.

Eradicating poverty is the highest priority in government's efforts to build a better life for all. In this regard, the Department of Social Development

manages the Sustainable Livelihoods Programme, which aims to assist communities in a range of developmental projects and to develop best practices to link social grants to the livelihood strategies of direct and indirect beneficiaries and income-generating vehicles such as co-operatives.

By mid-2007, a four-phased pilot project was being implemented in the Eastern Cape, with the first phase completed.

The objective of this pilot project is to restore the poor and vulnerable as quickly as possible to self-reliance.

Through this pilot project, the “sweat equity” principle, which provides beneficiaries with an opportunity to invest in-kind in their own development initiatives, was introduced. This process ensures that beneficiaries do not become passive, but rather play the role of active partners in the development process.

The project also ensures ownership, commitment and accountability on the side of beneficiaries, which are critical and necessary ingredients for sustainability.

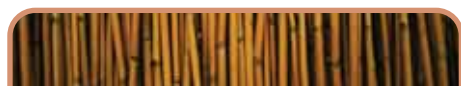
Through this process, government supports beneficiary initiatives and is therefore perceived not just as a provider, but also an enabler.

In addition to providing social assistance, the department is still implementing poverty-relief initiatives.

The department will hand over to the provinces all the projects that were implemented by the national department and supported by the Independent Development Trust (IDT).

To facilitate a smooth handover, a study to verify the status of these projects was conducted and a memorandum of agreement between the national and receiving provincial departments signed. The IDT is still supporting the implementation of the projects until the handover process is completed and all the funds have been disbursed.

A comprehensive multiyear research project was commissioned in 2005 to assess the impact of programmes and projects that underpin local programme development in the country's 21 urban renewal programme and integrated sustainable rural development programme nodes.



In September 2007, the Minister of Social Development, Dr Zola Skweyiya, signed a co-operation agreement with Cuba's Minister of Labour and Social Security, Mr Alfredo Morales Cartaya. The agreement seeks to benefit hundreds of unemployed South African youths in the following areas:

- comprehensive social security
- services to women, youth and children's community development, poverty alleviation and training of social service professionals.

Among many areas of co-operation, the department will collaborate with the Cuban Ministry to train unemployed youth as auxiliary social workers. The Department of Social Development has to train and absorb 9 360 auxiliary social workers by 2010. Cuba has developed a two-pronged work-training programme comprising a formal university-level programme and a rapid 12-month social-work training programme. As part of the implementation of the agreement, the Cuban programme will be replicated in South Africa to alleviate the shortage of social workers and create much-needed jobs as part of the Expanded Public Works Programme. A national recruitment programme will be embarked upon with a bias towards employing youth from rural and poor communities.

The research sought to inform the department of how it was performing, its shortcomings, what needed to be done to improve service delivery, and what support processes were needed to effect change.

The findings of the research will be used to assist the department in developing a better understanding of the social and local economic development needs, and service-delivery challenges in the nodes.

Improving community-development service delivery

To improve community-development service delivery, the Department of Social Development is regrading work and salary levels for community-development practitioners. This process was approved by a meeting of the minister and MECs for social development in February 2007.

The department also worked with the South African Qualifications Authority to standardise the qualifications and training of community-development practitioners. An agreement has been reached on the generic qualifications at National Qualifications Framework (NQF) levels 1, 3 and 4.

The department is also consulting stakeholders in drafting a community-development policy, which has been identified as an important aspect for improved community-development service delivery.

The envisaged policy on community development will integrate the norms and standards for community-development practice.

Responding to the impact of HIV and AIDS

The Department of Social Development has developed a framework for an integrated and co-ordinated response to HIV and AIDS.

The framework includes sourcing reliable research and information; providing social protection to those infected and affected, especially children; protecting children's rights; providing services; special programmes such as the HCBC Programme; empowering women; and capacitating officials to deal with HIV and AIDS.

Partnerships with other government departments, NGOs, community-based organisations (CBOs), FBOs, the business sector, volunteers and international agencies underpin the department's response to HIV and AIDS.

The main objectives of the Gender, HIV and AIDS Programme are to:

- facilitate the mainstreaming of HIV and AIDS into policies, and of gender into HIV- and AIDS-prevention programmes
- monitor the development and implementation of policies and programmes.

HIV and AIDS Youth Programme

The expansion of the loveLife Groundbreaker Partnership Programme aims to strengthen the loveLife Mphintshi Initiative by linking it to the Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) and the prevention programme in relation to HCBC and support.

The HIV and AIDS Youth Programme's services now reach marginalised and vulnerable youth in rural areas. It focuses on preventing the spread of HIV and AIDS among young people. Behaviour-changing programmes have been implemented to help reduce vulnerability.

HIV and AIDS Workplace Policy and Strategy

The Department of Social Development's HIV and AIDS Workplace Policy and Strategy was reviewed

Grant type	Number of beneficiaries as at April 2005	Number of beneficiaries as at April 2006	Number of beneficiaries as at April 2007
Old-Age Grant	2 093 440	2 144 117	2 194 066
War Veterans Grant	3 343	2 832	2 317
Disability Grant	1 307 551	1 319 536	1 425 105
Foster Care Grant	252 106	312 614	405 813
Care Dependency Grant	88 889	94 263	98 690
Child Support Grant	5 661 500	7 044 901	7 910 748
Grant-in-Aid			32 280

Source: Department of Social Development

in 2004, when strategic focus areas for the next three years were outlined.

The department's initiatives are managed according to these focus areas. In addition, a set of indicators has been developed to monitor the implementation of the workplace strategy.

Research has been undertaken to monitor the HIV and AIDS Workplace Policy and Strategy, and assess related capacity-building and training needs.

The impact of the department's HIV and AIDS workplace initiatives will also be assessed. The aim is to develop a comprehensive programme that addresses, among other things, sexual behaviour and creates awareness about accurate and scientific facts on HIV and AIDS.

HIV and AIDS advocacy, awareness and outreach

Achieving a meaningful and clear understanding of the scientific facts about HIV and AIDS will lead to individual self-management regarding the risk of HIV infection. The awareness programme has the following main pillars:

- disclosure
- communication
- rights
- facilitation.

The programme also deals with the physical and emotional consequences of HIV and AIDS. It has the following challenges:

- lack of accurate and current information on HIV and AIDS
- lack of access to care, support, treatment and new healthcare developments
- discrimination against the infected and affected
- involving people living with HIV and AIDS in programmes that directly help affected and infected people to alleviate stigmatisation.

Care and support

The HCBC Programme is based on the premise that vulnerable children and their families are better protected and supported within the context of their communities.

As a result, this programme informs one of the main development strategies presently implemented by the department to enable communities and

people affected by HIV and AIDS to access social-development services.

Norms and standards for implementation of the HCBC and support have been developed to ensure quality of services and to provide a minimum package of services. The norms and standards were based on the evaluation of costs and process indicators for HCBC identified in three provinces.

In 2006/07, the programme:

- identified 206 889 orphans and vulnerable children (OVCs) and extended appropriate services to them
- assisted 34 025 child-headed households access counselling and support services
- provided meals to 102 723 children through various community multipurpose centres
- assisted 356 073 affected families and distributed 155 754 food parcels
- distributed 47 607 school uniforms
- provided stipends to 11 059 caregivers
- funded 750 NGOs and FBOs.

The AIDS pandemic resulted in a dramatic increase in the need for HCBC services and has led to an unco-ordinated increase in the number of organisations offering HCBC. The emerging HCBC organisations often lack the required management skills to implement their mandate effectively.

In response, the Department of Social Development with the support of the United Kingdom's Department for International Development commissioned a situational analysis and needs assessment of management capacity among HCBC service-providers. As a result of the study, partnerships were established with four provinces, namely the Eastern Cape, Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal and Northern Cape.

The Department of Social Development also has a responsibility to build the capacity of community caregivers by providing them with accredited training, recognising their prior learning and placing them in appropriate NQF-levels. This is in line with the EPWP's social-sector plan, with HCBC identified as one of the programmes that could be used to meet its objectives. A process was initiated to identify training service-providers and to assist those not yet accredited. This will fast-track the process of training community caregivers.



A study was commissioned to assess the existing monitoring and evaluation (M&E) system for HCBC at national, provincial, district and local level. The findings of this study were expected to become available during the first quarter of 2007/08 and will direct the development of a comprehensive M&E system for HCBC.

Services to orphans made vulnerable by HIV and AIDS

A policy framework for orphans and other children made vulnerable by HIV and AIDS was developed, which reflects the collective commitment of government, FBOs, CBOs, civil society and the business sector, and serves as a guiding tool to all people involved in HIV and AIDS and in the children's sector. It seeks to reinforce existing commitments and efforts to create a supportive and enabling environment for children.

A national action plan was then developed to clearly define the unique value-adding role of various stakeholders in addressing the social impact of HIV and AIDS.

The Department of Social Development is developing a national database of orphans and vulnerable children, which will include child-headed households. The programmes which are in place to assist OVCs include access to treatment, food, skills training and psycho-social support.

In July 2007, a conference on strengthening co-ordinated action for orphans and other children made vulnerable by HIV and AIDS was held. The policy framework for orphans and other children made vulnerable by HIV and AIDS has co-ordination as one of its guiding principles.

The conference provided a forum for all stakeholders at both country and Southern African Development Community level to review progress, identify successes and challenges, and share experiences and lessons of good practice pertaining to OVCs in the context of HIV and AIDS.

The department provides care and support to orphans and other children made vulnerable by HIV, AIDS and other circumstances.

Each community should have a child-care forum, that works with social workers, welfare organisations and other community structures to ensure that identified OVCs receive appropriate services.

The department has established a number of community-based drop-in centres where children are given meals before they go to school and a packed lunch.

The caregivers at the drop-in centres also assist children from child-headed households with

homework and involve them in life-skills programmes.

Partnerships

Since 2000, the department has strengthened its partnerships with national and international organisations involved in the fight against HIV and AIDS.

The department chairs the National Action Committee for Children Affected by HIV and AIDS, which is a multisectoral team consisting of government, FBOs, CBOs, civil society, the business sector, the United Nations (UN) Children's Fund and Save the Children, focusing on the care and support of OVCs.

Faith-based organisations and the business sector

The department has strengthened its partnership with churches and other FBOs, the business sector, volunteer organisations and individuals, to assist with poverty-relief, HIV and AIDS, and social-grant registration programmes.

Promoting and protecting the rights of vulnerable groups Children and youths

In addition to providing social assistance to children through the CSG and the Foster-Care Grant, the Department of Social Development facilitates the provision of services to children and the youth through the provincial departments of social development and NGOs.

The department has entered into partnerships with research and academic institutions to promote scientific research in the social, population and development fields. For example, the Human Sciences Research Council and African Migration Alliance, in collaboration with the department, undertook research on homelessness in South Africa and also on migration trends in the African region.

The department leads the co-ordination of the EPWP. The sector is made up of the departments of social development, of health and of education, with the Department of Public Works as the overall co-ordinator.

The programme is being piloted through the HCBC and ECD programmes. The programme intends to improve the quality of training received by both caregivers and ECD practitioners to improve service delivery and offer them better opportunities to access the open labour market.

The department has successfully managed to strengthen co-ordination of these programmes at

both national and provincial level, as well as create an avenue for skilling and the creation of more job opportunities for unemployed youth and graduates.

The sector's performance at mid-term was expected to reflect an average of 50% after the steps identified by their sector review conference held in Cape Town in March 2007 had been implemented.

The department's participation in the implementation of the EPWP is aimed at improving services and care to orphans and other vulnerable children, with 5 000 community caregivers earmarked for training.

The policy framework for this sector was finalised and a national action plan for OVCs developed.

The Department of Social Development launched a national registration drive in October 2007. Provincial departments have reported an increase in enquiries from various community-based centres, requesting information on registration and subsidies, since the launch of the campaign.

The EPWP also includes the ECD Programme, which aims to contribute towards skills development and the creation of job opportunities for the unemployed.

The Department of Social Development has committed itself, as per the Integrated Plan on ECD, to increase the number of ECD sites from where practitioners are selected for training.

The ECD sites will also be provided with subsidies for children from poor households.

At least 1 500 additional ECD sites were registered from April 2006 to March 2007. An additional 1 774 sites were expected to be registered in 2007.

By November 2007, 369 new sites had been registered. In 2006/07, the Department of Social Development provided subsidies to 314 912 children from poor households.

An additional 435 000 children are targeted to receive subsidies.

More than 4 000 ECD practitioners and support staff received stipends and training on ECD NQF levels 1 and 4.

An additional 6 000 learners were to receive training and stipends in 2007.

Various programmes for protecting children continued, including installing the NCPR in provinces.

Progress was made in finding permanent homes for children. In 2006/07, 252 intercountry adoptions and 2 166 domestic adoptions were registered.

International social services (ISS) are rendered to clients in need of intercountry social services. The focus is on unaccompanied minors.

The South African ISS unit works with other ISS offices worldwide through the network of branches, affiliated bureaus and correspondents.

By May 2007, other countries had referred 471 cases to the unit.

The ISS unit has initiated training at provincial level to streamline referral processes in the sector across partner departments and NGOs.

Child abuse and neglect

The department's priority is fighting child abuse and neglect, as illustrated by the following initiatives:

- **NCPR:** By November 2007, a wireless web-based system was being introduced and provinces were to participate in this programme, which had already established a community-based, integrated Information Management System (IMS) with a NCPR component linked to the national database. In 2007, the department was working in partnership with the Child Welfare League of Canada on a surveillance study of child abuse and neglect. Officials went on a study tour to look at various programmes, including information systems and how they can enhance service delivery.
- **Draft Policy Framework and Strategic Plan on the Prevention and Management of Child Abuse, Neglect and Exploitation:** The framework has been completed. Effective implementation is expected to reduce the incidence of abuse and neglect, and to clarify stakeholders' roles and responsibilities.
- **Isolabantwana (Eye of the Child):** The Department of Social Development funded the South African National Council for Child Welfare to replicate a prevention programme in communities to eliminate child abuse and promote child protection. The programme aims



to provide a safety net for children within a community where services and support can be provided to children at risk on a 24-hour basis, and in areas where resources are limited. Community members contribute to the success of child-protection services, as they reside in the communities and are familiar with the local people, structures and traditions. The programme has been implemented (with a minimum of three sites per province) in all nine provinces according to community needs.

Childline South Africa

Childline offers a toll-free crisis line (0800 55 555) to children and families across South Africa on a 24-hour basis. The line provides immediate assistance to children and families in crisis who need counselling and information.

Apart from the 24-hour toll-free helpline, services also include treatment centres for individual, family and play therapy; prevention programmes; community safehouses; and training and awareness programmes.

Social-crime prevention Probation services

The Department of Social Development is tasked with implementing the Probation Services Act, 1991 (Act 116 of 1991), as amended, and as such has various obligations to fulfil at national and provincial level, e.g. early intervention services (reception, assessment and referral services, restorative justice programmes and diversion projects); prevention programmes; services to victims of crime; and statutory services.

The proposed Child Justice Bill, which provides for a legislative framework for the protection of children in conflict with the law, will add more responsibilities for probation services, especially ensuring sufficient diversion programmes in rural and urban areas assessing every arrested child within 48 hours; providing additional home-based supervision programmes; increasing the number of probation and assistant probation officers (APOs); and ensuring sufficient secure-care facilities to accommodate children awaiting trial.

The department's contribution towards the implementation of the Child Justice Bill was strengthened by donor funding from the Royal Netherlands Embassy. Service-providers were contracted to deliver a range of projects, namely, setting minimum standards for diversion; establishing the Professional Board and Standards Generating Body for Probation Services; rolling out

the home-based supervision programme; appointing additional APOs; training and retraining probation practitioners; restorative justice training for probation practitioners in all provinces; and evaluating the assistant probation and crime-buster programmes.

By mid-2007, most of the projects had been finalised and the booklet on minimum standards on diversion had been completed. The National Youth Service (NYS) Programme, which is a partnership between the Department of Social Development, Umsobomvu Youth Fund (UYF), the National Association for Child Care Workers and the Royal Netherlands Embassy was launched in October 2005. Through this programme, 192 volunteer assistant-probation officers (VAPOs) were appointed to run the Home-Based Supervision Programme. About 93 probation officers from all provinces were trained as assessors/mentors of VAPOs. Gauteng, Limpopo, Mpumalanga, the Free State and Northern Cape have included APOs in this programme.

In 2006/07, about 1 986 children benefited from the Home-Based Supervision Programme, and 12 770 were diverted away from the criminal justice system.

The department, as one of the Justice, Crime Prevention and Security (JCPS) Cluster's core integrated justice system (IJS) partners, has been included in a capacity-strengthening programme to ensure departmental delivery on IJS and JCPS strategic focus areas. By mid-2007, the IMS for the department's secure-care facilities and probation case management were being developed. As an interim measure, the Western Cape system was rolled out during the first quarter of 2007/08. The IMS will assist the department in providing accurate and reliable information for planning, reporting and effective service-delivery purposes.

Overcrowding in prisons remains a concern. The national office and provinces have developed an action plan to ensure that children do not await trial in prisons. The focus of the action plan is to provide secure-care facilities. By mid-2007, there were 36 secure-care centres in the country and provision was being made for additional facilities, especially near magistrates' courts.

Victim-Empowerment Programme (VEP)

The VEP aims to facilitate the establishment and integration of intersectoral programmes and policies to support, protect and empower victims of crime and violence, with a special focus on women and children.

It also ensures that the implementation of such programmes and policies is monitored and evaluated.

Integrated Victim-Empowerment Policy

The Integrated Victim-Empowerment Policy serves as a framework for a victim-centred approach, with strong emphasis on service delivery to victims of crime and violence that promotes the reduction of secondary victimisation and improved co-operation with the criminal justice process.

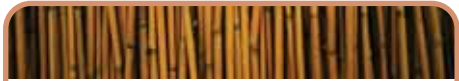
The draft policy document serves as a point of reference for all stakeholders regarding the establishment, development, delivery and nature of victim-empowerment benefits and services. It serves as a framework to facilitate the establishment of partnerships for integrated, effective and efficient service delivery to victims.

The core intervention strategies for the Integrated Victim-Empowerment Policy apply to all sectors involved in the empowerment of victims, namely:

- capacitating management structures
- creating awareness and providing information
- building skills
- educating and training personnel and consumers in using the services
- establishing services and programmes
- research and M&E.

National Directory on Services for Victims of Violence and Crime

The National Directory on Services for Victims of Violence and Crime, which was launched during the



The Department of Social Development developed the National Integrated Plan for Early Childhood Development (ECD). This plan is also supported by the Tshwaragano ka Bana Programme. Tshwaragano Ka Bana is a Sotho phrase which means "working together for children". This plan is guided by the United Nations Convention on the Rights of the Child and the African Charter on the Rights and Welfare of the Child. The plan is also underpinned by national policies and programmes, which include South Africa's Constitution, the National Plan for the Promotion and Protection of Human Rights, and the National Plan of Action for Children. The registration campaign for ECD services was launched during Social Development Month in October 2007.

The department will assist 1 500 ECD sites.

16 Days of Activism on No Violence Against Women and Children Campaign in December 2004, is updated annually in collaboration with the provincial VEP managers or co-ordinators and their provincial counterparts.

Minimum Standards for Service Delivery to Victims of Crime and Violence

The Minimum Standards for Service Delivery to Victims of Crime and Violence is a developmental quality-assurance instrument for practitioners. Proficiency, professionalism and respect for the client are uppermost in service delivery.

Workshops concerning the implementation of the minimum standards for service delivery to the victims of violence are continuing in some provinces as a complementary process to the implementation of the South African Victim's Charter of Services. By mid-2007, the provinces were conducting development quality-assurance criteria using the minimum standards document as a guideline.

Campaigns: national/international women's days and 16 Days of Activism

South Africa is a signatory to various international declarations on the promotion and the protection of the rights on women and children, such as the Convention of the Rights of the Child, the Convention on the Elimination of All Forms of Discrimination Against Women, and the Declaration on the Elimination of Violence Against Women. The latter convention focuses on the basic human rights of women and girls.

To honour these conventions, the department participates in events such as:

- 16 Days of Activism For No Violence Against Women and Children
- International Women's Day.

Women's Strategy

The social-development-specific Women's Strategy has been developed. The strategy guides service delivery to women within the social-development sector. The focus is on empowering women and promoting their resilience.

The Women's Strategy aims to address the needs of women in South Africa and empower them to know their rights and be assertive, productive

and independent by developing and implementing policy, programmes and services in partnership with stakeholders.

Strategy for the Engagement of Men and Boys in the Prevention of Gender-Based Violence

The strategy aims to strengthen existing programmes and develop new initiatives aimed at mobilising men and boys to positively engage in the prevention of gender-based violence.

The objectives are to:

- guide efforts to mainstream the constructive involvement of men and boys in preventing gender-based violence in the social-development sector, in line with the National Gender Machinery's Men and Gender Equality Programme
- facilitate integration of the involvement of men and boys in preventing gender-based violence programmes into the National Action Plan.

European Union (EU) funding for victim empowerment

A workplan for the implementation of the EU Programme of Assistance for the VEP has been developed and is awaiting approval by the European Commission.

Shelters for abused women and children

A strategy for establishing shelters has been developed to accommodate abused women and children in South Africa. This initiative forms part of the implementation of the Domestic Violence Act, 1998 (Act 16 of 1998).

The department monitored four shelters in Gauteng, the Eastern Cape, Western Cape and Free State, which were strengthened in partnership with the Transnet Foundation.

Criminal Asset Recovery Account (Cara) funds

The VEP received R3,3 million from Cara for victim-support services. Proposals for the funding include, among other things:

- establishing two new shelters for victims of domestic violence at a cost of R500 000 each, in KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga
- strengthening existing shelters in all nine provinces at a cost of R150 000
- supporting initiatives by civil-society organisations involved in running victim-support/empowerment centres at a cost of R483 000
- initiatives related to the engagement of men and boys in the prevention of gender-based violence at a cost of R500 000.

Interdepartmental collaboration

The department is actively involved in the following interdepartmental task teams for an integrated approach to victim empowerment, namely:

- National Anti-Rape Strategy with the National Prosecuting Authority
- 365 Days Programme and National Action Plan to End Gender-Based Violence in South Africa
- Trafficking in Human Beings, the Victims' Charter, and the Victims of Truth and Reconciliation with the Department of Justice and Constitutional Development.

Care and support to families

Care and support programmes promote the family as the core of society. A well-functioning family addresses the emotional, physical, intellectual, spiritual and economic well-being of its members.

It is in the family environment that children are born, nurtured, supported and provided with opportunities for growth and development into competent and productive adults. Therefore, the family is the basic institution in society for the survival, protection and development of children.

The programme promotes services and programmes at all levels. A training manual on preparing for marriage and a marriage-enrichment programme have been developed.

The draft National Family Policy proposes a framework for integrated and comprehensive service delivery to families. It identifies the family as the focal point for service delivery and promotes the benefits of a well-functioning, resilient family and the extended family as a strong support system.

The draft policy is linked to the African Union's Plan of Action for Families in Africa for implementation by government and civil society. The draft Moral Regeneration Strategy for Social Development has been developed to instil positive values in families and communities.

The International Day for Families is celebrated annually on 15 May.

Prevention and treatment of substance abuse

Dagga and alcohol are still the most abused substances. An estimated 2,2 million people use dagga or cannabis, followed by cocaine, heroin, speed, LSD, hashish, ecstasy, tik and others.

According to the *World Drug Report*, the approximate number of problem drug-users in South Africa exceeds 200 000. Close to 9 000 problem drug-users were treated at 73 treatment

centres between June and December 2006. Considerable abuse of over-the-counter and prescription medicines is also reported.

These include pain relievers, tranquilisers, cough mixtures and slimming tablets, as well as solvents such as glue. The social cost of illicit drug use has not been officially calculated, but up to 12 million family members of drug users face emotional and financial strain. In addition, drug usage has a negative effect on transport safety. A third of heavy-duty long distance drivers admit to using drugs to relax and stay awake. The main drugs used in this instance are alcohol and dagga.

Meanwhile, a conservative estimate of the economic costs to South Africa of alcohol abuse, based on research studies conducted in other countries, is between R8,7 billion and R17,4 billion a year. The social costs are also enormous. About 11 million family members have to endure the turmoil of living with problem or risky drinkers. Risky drinking affects 17,5 million South Africans. Harmful drinking is defined as people drinking first thing in the morning, drinking to the point of intoxication and also taking alcohol between mealtimes.

The Ke Moja Project, launched in the Western Cape, is a prevention programme that targets the youth. "Ke Moja" means "no thanks", and aims to inform and educate the public about the dangers of drugs, as well as to mobilise them, particularly children and the youth, to say no to substance abuse. The project was extended to all provinces during 2006/07.

The Youth Best-Practice Treatment Model was developed, and training provided countrywide to facilitate the roll-out of the model. It proposes essential elements to be considered when offering treatment to youths in residential facilities.

A significant achievement has been the development of minimum standards for in-patient treatment centres, which were piloted and implemented in five government facilities. These minimum norms and standards were expected to be implemented in all provinces during 2006/07, with training to be based on identified needs.

The standards are being used to transform service delivery in government facilities as a first priority, and to ensure that appropriate services are provided at these centres.

The standards will also set the framework for registering treatment centres run by civil-society structures in the country. The proliferation of unregistered treatment centres is being addressed. Notices have been sent out to sensitise the sector about the legal registration requirements and to ensure that such facilities are registered in terms of the Prevention and Treatment of Drug Dependency Act, 1992 (Act 20 of 1992).

Most treatment centres have since applied for registration and the department was working with the provinces to accelerate registration.

In October 2006, Cabinet approved the National Drug Master Plan and Programme. The plan is in line with the Prevention and Treatment of Drug Dependency Act, 1992, which requires that government reviews such plan every five years.

Cabinet approved the Prevention and Treatment of Substance Abuse Bill in August 2007. It will replace the Prevention and Treatment of Drug Dependency Act, 1992, which has become outdated. One of its shortcomings is that it focuses primarily on institutional treatment with little provision for prevention, community-based and out-patient services.

The proposed legislation promotes more community-based services, with greater emphasis on preventative services. It will also be more sensitive towards the needs of children.

Women

Social-development services for women is another priority, due to the premise and concern that the inequality that exists between men and women in South Africa is deeply entrenched and has characterised South African society for many decades.

Women are often subject to discrimination, exploitation and violence despite the Constitution, which affirms the democratic values of human dignity, equality and freedom. An unprecedented effort is therefore required to ensure that the status of women is elevated to protect their rights and speed up the attainment of gender equality. Various economic-empowerment projects include bread-baking, leather works, offal-cleaning, child-minding and paper-and-fabric printing.

People with disabilities

There are more than three million people with disabilities in South Africa, with the majority being women. The Office on the Status of Disabled Persons is part of The Presidency and duplicated in the offices of the premiers. Together, they have co-ordinated work to mainstream disability issues in all government policies and programmes.

The *White Paper on an Integrated National Disability Strategy* provides a policy framework for implementation across the whole of society and through all spheres of government. The National Skills Development Strategy calls for 4% of all people who obtain training to be people with disabilities.

The Department of Social Development supports the following national councils:

- National Council for Persons with Physical Disabilities
- Deaf Federation of South Africa
- South African National Epilepsy League
- South African Federation for Mental Health
- Cancer Association of South Africa.

As existing policies are not adequate to address the needs of this vulnerable group, the Department of Social Development has allocated R1 million for research into the needs of people and children with disabilities.

Youth development

Youth-development initiatives are guided by, among other things, the National Youth Development (NYD) Policy Framework, the World Programme of Action for Youth, and the Ministerial Ten-point Plan. Various youth-development services have been rolled out to cater for the needs of young people in South Africa.

Youth-development services

The department developed NYD implementation guidelines in line with the NYS guidelines.

The NYD Forum sits biweekly to consult, secure support and guide provinces in implementing youth projects. Key to these are provincial visits, including hosting meetings with stakeholders and visiting projects funded by the department to monitor their implementation and impact.

Volunteerism is promoted among the youth. A volunteer manual has been developed, which includes a volunteer-rights charter and a basic code of conduct for volunteers and volunteer-involving organisations. These documents are distributed to organisations and government departments throughout the year and, in particular, during the National Volunteer Week held annually



In August 2007, Linda Olga Nghatsane, a public health practitioner turned farmer from Mpumalanga, was named South Africa's Shoprite Checkers/SABC2 Woman of the Year for 2007. Winners in seven subcategories were also announced.

Nghatsane won the business category of the Woman of the Year Award before taking the overall title.

from 26 June to 2 July, as part of the Youth Month Programme.

Several relations have been developed and strengthened, including the signing of the Memorandum of Understanding with the UYF on the NYS Programme.

Research and policies

In 2007, the Draft Youth-Development Framework was presented to management for approval.

From a population and development perspective, a process has been initiated to gather information on the expectations, aspirations and needs of the youth, which would serve as a basis for research and policy-making regarding the social and economic integration of youth into society.

Regarding the development of children into worthy citizens, research has been undertaken on the situation of orphans and other vulnerable children, to support policy development and M&E of children's issues.

Outreach programmes

Youth Development Month is held every June. Activities include Youth Day on 16 June, the National Entrepreneur Exhibition and National Volunteer Week.

International obligations regarding youth

The department was part of a task team charged with reviewing the World Programme of Action for Youth and preparing the *Country Report* to the UN General Assembly. The review of the World Programme of Action included a civil-society youth assembly held in New York in the United States of America. The outcome of the assembly was included in the final report presented to the UN General Assembly as part of the 10-year review of the youth programme.

United Nations Population Fund Second Country Support Programme for South Africa

The second UN Population Fund Country Support Programme (approved by the Minister of Social

Development in October 2002) was conceptualised and designed to develop best-practice models and methodologies for local municipalities, and to integrate population and development priorities in local integrated development plans.

Its design and implementation was informed by the need for government to focus development initiatives on those areas that had previously been marginalised and disadvantaged, in particular rural areas, through integrated, sustainable rural development.

The objectives of the Second Country Support Programme were to:

- improve the quality of life of historically disadvantaged South Africans
- alleviate poverty through population trends commensurate with social and economic development
- reduce the spread of HIV and AIDS
- improve reproductive health services and respect for reproductive rights
- enhance gender equality.

Since 2003, the programme has been implemented in 10 rural nodes in three provinces, namely the Eastern Cape, KwaZulu-Natal and Limpopo, thus demonstrating the worst socio-economic conditions.

Subprogrammes were developed in each of the provinces to address:

- sexual and reproductive health and rights
- gender-based violence
- population and development strategies.

As a result of advocacy, a more streamlined project implementation framework, comprising 27 identified projects, was developed. Capacity-building and research initiatives were designed to support the pilot programme. The following capacity-building projects and research were implemented:

- Population and HIV and AIDS Integrated Development – Capacity-Development Course for Government Managers and Planners (offered by the South African Management Development Institute)
- Applied Population Sciences Training and Research Programme (offered at the University of KwaZulu-Natal)
- Leadership Training in Sustainable Development – Population, Environment and Development Nexus Programme

- advocacy, information, education and communication training workshops
- Capacity-Building Programme for Civil-Society Advocacy Organisations Working in the Fields of Sexual and Reproductive Health, Gender-Based Violence, and HIV and AIDS
- Research Study on Knowledge, Practices and Attitudes on Gender-Based Violence.

In the meantime, the UN Population Fund and other UN partners have introduced a third cycle of assistance to South Africa in the form of the Third Country Support Programme, which has been framed within the UN Development Assistance Framework.

The overall goal is to improve the quality of life by contributing to reversing the spread of HIV, reducing gender inequities in the AIDS pandemic, enhancing the centrality of population issues in development policies and programmes, and strengthening the integration of population factors in the national development agenda.

These areas reflect national priorities as articulated in government's Vision 2014. They are contextualised within the millennium development goals and government-prepared country analysis, which was adopted as the basis for development co-operation with all partners. Implementation of the programme's projects will include and benefit all nine provinces.

The duration of the Third Country Programme is from 2007 to 2010, and the UN Population Fund pledged to assist with US\$13 million.

Welfare services

Remuneration of social workers

The process of regrading social workers was completed and implemented at national and provincial levels. Social workers on salary levels 7 to 12 were regraded. The Minister of Finance allocated funds for revised salary packages to be implemented. The implementation will be evaluated to reduce disparities and ensure uniformity.

Retention Strategy for Social Workers

The broader Retention Strategy for Social Workers has been drafted. The strategy will address the needs of social workers in the public and private sectors. It includes the following key components:

- increasing human resources by recruiting and retaining social workers
- promoting the education, training and development of social workers
- improving the quality of social-work services
- strengthening governance structures within the social-service professions
- promoting occupational safety standards within the workplace
- improving service conditions for social workers
- marketing and promoting social-work services and programmes.

Capacity-Building Programme for Social-Service Professionals

About R105 million will be allocated in 2008/09 to train about 3 000 social auxiliary workers and family social workers.

Repositioning the developmental social welfare sector

The Integrated Service Delivery Model for Developmental Social Services aims to implement comprehensive, efficient and quality service delivery that contributes to a self-reliant society.

The model acknowledges the interdependent relationship between the department's main programmes, namely Social Security, Social Welfare and Community Development.

It determines the nature, scope, extent and level of work that constitutes service delivery by developmental social services. It also provides a basis for determining appropriate norms and standards for service delivery, which will, in turn, provide a basis for funding and greater efficiency in service delivery.

Review of the policy for service-providers

The policy was being implemented in phases with effect from 1 April 2005. Procedure guidelines and an administrative tool have been developed and approved, and were being implemented on a trial basis with a view to full implementation in 2007.

Funding of non-governmental organisations

The services rendered by NGOs as partners of the department in service delivery continue to receive support. The department continues to award funds to service-providers at national and provincial level, with 18 national bodies having been awarded funds.

Statutory bodies

National Development Agency

The NDA is a government agency mandated by the

NDA Act, 1998 (Act 108 of 1998), to contribute towards eradicating poverty through funding, capacity-building, research and development. The NDA's primary sources of income are an allocation from the National Revenue Fund and donor funding.

Transfers to the NDA increased from R103,3 million in 2003/04 to R123 million in 2006/07.

The NDA is mandated to:

- grant funds to civil-society organisations to meet the development needs of poor communities
- strengthen organisations' institutional capacity for long-term sustainability
- promote consultation, dialogue and the sharing of developmental experiences
- inform and influence national developmental policies
- collaborate with stakeholders in the development field to develop strategies for eradicating poverty in South Africa.

The NDA plays a critical role in finalising a national anti-poverty strategy for South Africa. In 2006/07, the NDA approved funding of 95 projects, to the value of R110,97 million.

Relief boards

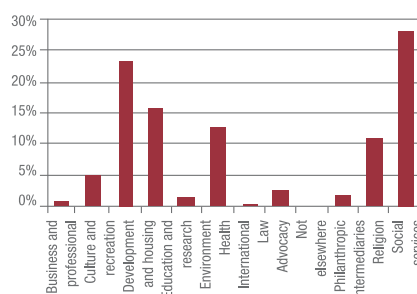
The Fund-Raising Act, 1978 (Act 107 of 1978), provides for relief boards to offer social relief to people in distress as a result of disasters or their displacement from another country.

Non-profit organisations (NPOs)

Civil society in South Africa is characterised by a variety of organisations of different sizes and shapes across the political, economic and social spectrum of society.

These range from FBOs and CBOs, charities (welfare), traditional organisations such as social

Non-profit organisations operating in the different fields



Source: Department of Social Development

and sports clubs, and a host of other development and social forms of organisations working tirelessly on weaving and maintaining the social fabric of society.

South Africa, like any democratic society, has an enabling legal environment for civil society that supports and encourages the formation of organisations.

This legal framework is rooted in the fundamental human-rights culture of the country's Constitution.

The NPO Act, 1997 (Act 71 of 1997), is perceived to be the entry point in the regulatory framework for organisations to derive benefits. It provides a registration facility for all public NPOs that are not organs of the State.

The Directorate: NPOs was established in terms of this Act to increase public access to information on registered organisations. The legal mandate requires that the directorate registers organisations within two months of receipt of a complete application, and provides support for organisations to register and meet reporting requirements.

The registration and reporting of organisations has increased substantially since the inception of the Act in 1998.

By mid-2007, there were 44 062 registered organisations in different fields. The graph on p 503 indicates the number of organisations (expressed as a percentage of the total registered organisations) operating in the different fields. Social service (28%) is the leading sector, followed by development and housing (23%).

Education and research comprise 15%, followed by environment at 12%. A number of churches have chosen to register and thus increase the religion sector to 10,7%.

In supporting NPOs in their endeavour to register, the department continues conducting capacity-building interventions and other support initiatives in collaboration with the provincial departments, including other networking organisations and forums within civil society.

Acknowledgements

BuaNews

Department of Social Development

Estimates of National Expenditure 2007, published by National Treasury

National Development Agency

www.childline.org.za

www.gov.za

www.socdev.gov.za

Suggested reading

Adhikari, M. *Not White Enough, Not Black Enough: Racial Identity and the South African Coloured Community*. Cape Town: Double Storey Books, 2006.

Amoateng, AY and Heaton, TB. eds. *Families and Households in Post-Apartheid South Africa*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council (HSRC) Press, 2007.

Ballard, R, Habib, A and Valodia, I. eds. *Voices of Protest: Social Movements in Post-Apartheid South Africa. Poverty in the New South Africa*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2006.

Bartley, T. *Holding Up the Sky: Love, Power and Learning in the Development of a Community*. London: Community Links, 2003.

Beukes, L. *Maverick: Extraordinary Women from South Africa's Past*. Cape Town: Oshun Books, 2004.

Brown, D. *To Speak of this Land: Identity and Belonging in South Africa and Beyond*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal, 2006.

Coetzee, E and Streak, J. *Monitoring Child Socio-Economic Rights: Achievements and Challenges*. Cape Town: Institute for Democracy in South Africa (Idasa), 2004.

Hoad, N, Martin, K and Reid, G. eds. *Sex and Politics in South Africa. Lesbian and Gay Rights under the New Constitution*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2005.

Nattrass, N. *Moral Economy of AIDS in South Africa*. Cape Town: Struik, 2004.

Padayachee, V. ed. *Development Decade? Economic and Social Change in South Africa 1994–2004*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Patel, L. *Social Welfare and Social Development in South Africa*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press SA, 2005.

Pillay, U, Roberts, B and Rule, S. eds. *South African Social Attitudes*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Prah, KK, ed. *Racism in the Global African Experience*. Cape Town: Centre for Advanced Studies of African Society, 2006.

Ratele, KR. *et al.* eds. *Self, Community and Psychology*. Cape Town: University of Cape Town Press, 2004.

Richter, L and Morrell, R. eds. *Baba: Men and Fatherhood in South Africa*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.

Schlebusch, L. *Suicidal Behaviour in South Africa*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2005.

Seekings, J and Nattrass, N. *Class, Race and Inequality in South Africa*. Pietermaritzburg: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2005.

Stevens, G. *et al.* eds. *A Race Against Time: Psychology and Challenges to Deracialisation in South Africa*. Pretoria: University of South Africa Press, 2006.

Streak, J. ed. *Monitoring Government Budgets to Advance Child Rights*. Cape Town: Idasa, 2003.





SA YEARBOOK 2007/08 | SPORT AND RECREATION



Sport has the potential to build social cohesion and national unity, as demonstrated by the euphoria when South Africa won the Rugby World Cup in 1995 and 2007, the African Cup of Nations in 1996, and also in 2004 when the country won the bid to host the 2010 FIFA World Cup™.

The United Nations (UN) recognises participation in sport and recreation as a fundamental human right which all governments should make available to their people. The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, affirms the democratic values of human dignity, equality and freedom. Sport and Recreation South Africa (SRSA) acknowledges that sport is a provincial and local competency in accordance with Section 5 of the Constitution, but that the Intergovernmental Relations Framework Act, 2005 (Act 13 of 2005), requires that the three spheres of government must plan and deliver services in an integrated manner.

The SRSA is responsible for developing and implementing national policies and programmes regarding sport and recreation in the country. In its strategic direction, the department endeavours to fulfil this mandate by contributing towards transforming South Africa into a country that belongs to all who live in it, united in their diversity.

Sport in South Africa is a multibillion rand industry and contributes more than 2% to the country's gross domestic product. The SRSA aims to improve the quality of life of all South Africans by creating an environment conducive to maximising access to participation in sport and recreation, as well as hosting and participating in world-class events that enhance nation-building.

The key objectives of the SRSA are to:

- increase the number and enhance the quality of South African sport and recreation participants
- raise sport's profile, especially among decision-makers, in the face of conflicting and competing priorities by building a case for sport and recreation in order to increase resources
- maximise the probability of success of South African teams and individuals in major events
- place sport in the forefront of efforts to address issues of national importance (i.e. using sport as a medium to contribute to the achievement of positive outcomes for South African society)
- contribute to the success of the 2010 World Cup through relevant actions.

In addition to the line-function activities, the SRSA is also directly responsible for:

- managing the budget for sport and recreation in the national government

- supporting the Office of the Minister and Deputy Minister of Sport and Recreation
- providing support, from a government perspective, to all stakeholders in sport and recreation
- ensuring that integrated sports-management information is available to all stakeholders
- interpreting broad government policy, translating government policy into policies for sport and recreation for South Africa, revising such policies if and when necessary, and monitoring the implementation thereof
- initiating, co-ordinating and contributing to the development of relevant legislation for sport and recreation
- subsidising clients of the SRSA in accordance with the Public Finance Management Act, 1999 (Act 1 of 1999), the SRSA strategic objectives, and funding policy; monitoring and evaluating the application of such funds; and advising clients on the management of their finances and good governance
- acknowledging the outstanding contributions of sportspeople to South African society in partnership with SABC Sport and the South African Sport Confederation and Olympic Committee (Sascoc)
- communicating sport- and recreation-related matters from a government perspective
- maintaining an effective and proactive liaison with Parliament, including a prompt response to all parliamentary questions on sport and recreation matters.

Programmes

Sports Tourism Project

The SRSA launched the Sport Tourism Project at the Durban Tourism Indaba in May 2006. The primary objective of the project is to exploit the substantial benefits that the tourism industry presents for job creation in South Africa.

It combines the Veza route-finder tool, developed by the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research, with sports information, enabling users to plan attendance of sports events, including mapping the route to the venue, booking accommodation, and selecting restaurants and

other tourist attractions in the vicinity of the venue or elsewhere in South Africa.

Tourism is widely recognised as a major growth sector internationally and it is estimated that 30% of all tourism comprises sports tourism.

The SRSA aims to enhance the sustainability of the project by:

- promoting “home-grown” events such as the Dusi Canoe Marathon, Pick ‘n Pay Argus Cycle Tour, Midmar Mile (swimming), Berg and Breede river canoe marathons and the Comrades and Two Oceans marathons, which attract large numbers of international participants and spectators
- working closely with South African Tourism and the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism to promote more attractive tourist packages for spectators who want to accompany touring sports teams to South Africa
- assisting agencies, in line with a major events strategy and the hosting and bidding regulations, to attract major international sports events to South Africa
- marketing South Africa’s sport and recreation facilities, such as golf courses and beaches, abroad
- producing an interactive CD-ROM to provide information on sport and recreation events, and associated information on South Africa
- publishing the *Sports Atlas*, which is a high-quality fold-out map featuring the major sporting venues and events and tourist attractions.

Mass participation

The Siyadlala Mass Participation Programme (SMPP) is the cradle of community sport in South Africa. The programme was launched in 2005 to facilitate access to sport and recreation by as many South Africans as possible, especially those from historically disadvantaged communities. The SRSA launched the programme with a budget of R20 million.

The budget has since increased to R194 million with the inclusion of school sport and club development. Hubs (centres of activity) have increased from 36 to 289, with over two million participants in various activities ranging from indigenous games to rugby, soccer, netball, baseball, general gymnastics, hockey, aerobics, handball, boxing, cricket, swimming, dance sport, volleyball and basketball. The eventual aim is to ensure that no child has to walk more than five kilometres to access an activity hub anywhere in the country.

The ideal is to establish at least one hub in every ward in every municipality across South Africa.

The SMPP is expected to enable the sport sector to contribute to the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa. Some 8 000 unemployed young people were expected to be recruited and trained by mid-2007. The trained youth will then be employed as activity co-ordinators. Research done in the hubs indicates that small stipends given to these co-ordinators contribute to feeding up to eight families in some instances.

By mid-2007, the SMPP had also trained over 2 000 young volunteers in sport-and-recreation administration, over 1 500 entry-level coaches, over 1 200 referees, and over 2 000 people in event management and first aid.

Women and Sport

This project aims to address the gender imbalances in sport and recreation both at participation and administrative level, by:

- gender mainstreaming
- equity, access opportunities, diversity, legacy, active participation, research, leadership and skills development
- sustainable programmes through tested practice initiatives, including girl-child programmes
- availing resources and capacity
- developing mentorship programmes and role-modelling.

The programme also seeks partnerships with relevant stakeholders such as the Department of Education.

The following Women and Sport activities were co-ordinated in 2006/07:

- the SRSA celebrated Women’s Month through Women in Sport seminars and female sports festivals
- roadshows in rural areas on breaking barriers in leadership and cultural constraints
- seminars on the media’s portrayal of women and sport and opportunities
- 16 Days of Activism for No Violence against Women and Children
- gender and HIV and AIDS seminars
- research on women and sport participation
- monitoring and evaluating programmes in the provinces and ensuring that national sporting bodies have gender desks and policies with set targets on the promotion of women in their codes
- international participation by sharing best practices and presentations
- involvement in the International Working Group conferences and seminars.

The programme also aims to support and encourage the participation of women in male-dominated federations.



In April 2007, South Africa and the United Kingdom (UK) signed a bilateral sport and recreation protocol of action.

The areas of co-operation in the protocol include:

- Promoting sports in schools.
- A sports leadership-exchange programme.
- Capacity-building for netball, rowing, swimming and disability sport.
- A scholarship programme for young South African cricketers.
- Bilateral co-operation in preparation for the 2010 World Cup and the 2012 London Olympic Games. This will include the opportunity for six South Africans to be attached to the Local Organising Committee for the Olympic Games and the Olympic Delivery Agency, and the offer of two sports-related postgraduate scholarships to the UK.

This was the second annual protocol of action to result from the Bilateral Sports Memorandum of Understanding, which was signed in 2005.

Participation levels of women in sport has increased immensely:

- In 2006, over 2 000 women participated in soccer, boxing, rugby, cricket, netball and basketball.
- The SRSA trained over 900 women in various courses, including leadership management.
- During the National Girls Games in August 2006, the girls participated in soccer, cricket and amateur boxing. As part of talent identification, three girls were identified to join the under-19 national soccer squad and two joined the Banyana Banyana team.

The SRSA hosted a national conference on Women and Sport in August 2006. The conference attracted over 150 delegates. The conference focused on:

- women leadership
- sponsorship
- cultural diversity.

The national women's rugby team participated in the Women Rugby World Cup, held in Canada in 2006.

In August 2007, an international professional boxing tournament was held. The SRSA also hosted the National Ladies Boxing Tournament to celebrate International Women's Day. Over 40 women from the nine provinces participated.

The plan is to promote and encourage participation in Rural Girl's Games in all nine

provinces with the following federations: netball, soccer, athletics and baseball.

Mass mobilisation

The project aims to create awareness among ordinary South Africans by popularising the logo and other 2010 FIFA World Cup symbols.

Indigenous games

Together with the provincial departments responsible for sport and recreation, the SRSA annually hosts the Indigenous Games Festival in celebration of Africa's cultural diversity and in an effort to revive indigenous games. The revival of indigenous games in South Africa evolved as a response to the national call to embrace the African Renaissance.

This revival is intended to popularise those cultural activities that have a particular appeal to vast sectors of the South African society, particularly the traditional rural people. Due to the fact that sport and recreation activities are predominantly practised in urban areas and are largely Eurocentric, the revival of indigenous games is essential to get more South Africans more active.

Indigenous games are a fundamental part of the SMPP, which focuses on both vertical and horizontal sport development. Apart from indigenous games, the programme also incorporates, among other things, an active inner-city programme, Women and Sport, and corporate recreation.

The fourth annual National Indigenous Games Festival took place in Mdantsane, East London, in August 2007. The festival was titled *Celebrating South African Poetry, Demonstrating our Heritage through Indigenous Games*.

North West was the 2007 indigenous games champion, having also won in 2003, 2005 and 2006. There will be no Indigenous Games Festival in 2008 as South Africa will be hosting the Zone VI Under-20 Youth Games.

The indigenous games are: Ugqaphu/Kgati/Ntimo, Diketo/Upuca/Magave, Morabaraba/Mlabalaba, Ncuva/Ntijwa/Tsoro/Tshimaya/Moruba, Dibeke/Diwiki/Snuka/Skununu/Umabhorisha, Jukskei, Kho-Kho and Iintonga/Melamu/Iziduku.

Recreation Rehabilitation Programme

The project focuses on inmates and aims to promote sport and recreation participation in correctional centres. It also aims to empower prisoners in event management and to become activity co-ordinators in the following activities: general gymnastics, indigenous games, netball, soccer and handball. The focus in 2006 was on general gymnastics.

School sport

The SRSA's work in school sport had its beginnings in 2005 when a framework of collaboration, entitled *Co-ordination and Management of School Sport in Public Ordinary Schools* was signed by the ministers of sport and recreation, and of education.

The framework document describes firstly the common understanding that the SRSA and the Department of Education has about the important role of physical activity and sport in schools. Besides emphasising the importance of providing all children with access to physical activity at school, it also touches on teacher capacity-building, sports facilities, and the importance of linking school sport to issues of national importance such as HIV and crime prevention.

The framework goes on to describe the responsibility of each of the two government departments as far as school sport goes. It matches levels of responsibility with specific activities and target groups. In broad terms, the Department of Education is responsible for:

- intracurricular activities, including Physical Education in schools
- intraschool activities, including afterschool sports activities
- interschool activities and competitions below regional level
- regional and intraprovincial activities and competitions, in collaboration with provincial sports and education authorities.

The SRSA has established the Directorate: School Sport within the Chief Directorate: Mass Participation. It consists of two sections: Competitive School Sport and Mass Participation in School Sport. This programme reaches about 1 600 schools nationally and focuses on capacity-building, provision of sports equipment for use at events, and sustaining the programme by supporting local sports assistants, local leagues and providing logistical support.

The National Co-ordinating Committee (Nacoc), envisaged in the school sport framework, has been established. Nacoc has drafted and adopted a five-

year school sport programme for 2007 to 2011. School-sport events include national schools aquatics, national schools athletics, the South African schools winter games, summer games and cross country. Nacoc aims to integrate the national Schools Sport Programme, making it as inclusive as possible.

Progress has been made with school-sport initiatives. Two school-sport programmes have been launched.

The first is designed to ensure access to the masses of learners. It should serve as the entry point of the development continuum for sport in schools. The second is aimed at a smaller group of elite performers who participate in regular tournaments that channel them to the next level of participation.

The School Sport Mass Participation Programme received more than R110 million in funding in 2007/08.

This will ensure that regular sports programmes in seven codes of sport are taken to the poorest of the poor schools in the country.

Physical Education is now receiving more attention, after it was found that its demise in schools contributed to South Africa's performance at international level. Getting more girls involved in sport is also a priority.

The SRSA has twinned 26 schools with 26 sports colleges in the United Kingdom (UK). This has assisted in capacity-building of 26 teachers who visited their twin institutions in the UK in 2006. Also, 52 UK sport-development officers visited South Africa and conducted workshops for their South African colleagues.

National orders are the highest awards that the country can bestow on individual South Africans.

On 21 September 2007, President Thabo Mbeki presented the Order of Ikhamanga in Silver to:

- George Moir (Kitch) Christie (posthumous), for excellent contribution to the game of rugby through his remarkable abilities, and for coaching South Africa to Rugby World Cup victory in 1995
- Morné du Plessis, for excellent achievement in rugby, putting South Africa on the world stage through being inducted into the Rugby Hall of Fame and promoting the use of sport for social change throughout the world
- Sam Ramsamy, for excellent contribution to the building of non-racial sport during apartheid and contributing to sporting development in a democratic South Africa
- Roland Schoeman for excellent achievement in the field of swimming.

International affairs

South Africa continues to play a leading role in forums such as the World Anti-Doping Association (Wada), African Union, Supreme Council of Sport and in other binationals. National federations such as netball, cricket, swimming, hockey, cycling and korfbal have been twinned with the UK, the Netherlands and Flanders.

Diving, boxing, handball, judo and volleyball have been linked with China, Cuba and Algeria. By mid-2007, nine students were studying towards a degree in Physical Education and Sport in Cuba through a generous scholarship provided by the Cuban Government. Limpopo and the Free State are beneficiaries of graduates from this programme.

Sporting accolades South African Sports Awards

The SRSA and Sascoc are joint custodians of the South African Sports Awards, in partnership with the SABC. South African sports stars are presented with awards for their efforts to keep the passion for sport alive in the hearts of millions of South Africans through their achievements in local and international sports events.

The awards recognise and honour individuals and teams who have excelled both on and off the field each year as well as the critical contributions made by coaches, technical officials and volunteers who continue to keep sport running.

Legislation

In 2006, several pieces of legislation were referred to the National Assembly and the National Council of Provinces (NCOP) for consideration. Prominent among these was the 2010 World Cup Special Measures Bill that sought to amend all “non-money” Acts that may impede the implementation of guarantees that government provided to FIFA when bidding for the event. The Act was passed in July 2006.

The Safety at Sport and Recreation Events Bill was also put before Cabinet for consideration. It constitutes an important tool in the security arrangements for the World Cup.

During 2006, Cabinet passed the South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport (Saidis) Amendment

Bill. The Bill aims to bring South Africa in line with developments in the Wada and the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation's Convention on Anti-Doping, and to improve the efficiency of the institute at countering athletes' use of banned performance-enhancing substances, particularly through increased out-of-competition testing and education.

The Sport and Recreation Amendment Bill that aims to improve the governance of sports federations, and allows the Minister of Sport and Recreation to intervene where the actions of federations threaten to bring sport into disrepute, was referred to the NCOP after it was passed by Cabinet. It also seeks to address transformation in sport.

2010 World Cup

South Africa will host the FIFA World Cup in 2010. The Peter Mokaba Stadium in Polokwane is one of five venues South Africa is building from scratch for world football's showpiece event.

The other four are the Greenpoint Stadium in Cape Town; Mbombela Stadium in Nelspruit, Mpumalanga; Nelson Mandela Bay Stadium in Port Elizabeth, Eastern Cape; and the Durban Stadium in KwaZulu-Natal.

The following five existing stadiums are being refurbished and upgraded: Soccer City and Ellis Park in Johannesburg; Loftus Versfeld in Pretoria; the Royal Bafokeng Stadium in Rustenburg, North West; and Manguang Stadium in Bloemfontein, Free State.

Government has reaffirmed its state of readiness and commitment to host the 2010 World Cup. By mid-2007, preparations for the 2010 World Cup were under way, including stadiums, transport and other infrastructure projects.

The Government has set aside R17,4 billion of direct investment in the World Cup, which is integrated into a much larger spending programme between 2006 and 2010. During this period, government is expected to invest more than R400 billion in the country's infrastructure.

South Africa will take advantage of the World Cup opportunity to attract inward investment (construction, manufacturing and other sectors) and to stimulate new investment in stadiums,

transport, airports, communications infrastructure, accommodation, broadcast and information technology, and financial services.

The projects are also expected to stimulate skills development and create jobs, develop football and its commercial base, and upgrade facilities to ensure South Africa is a competitive destination for major events.

Government will deliver according to the following deadlines:

- September 2008: FIFA inspection team for readiness
- December 2008 to March 2009: construction work on selected stadiums complete (confederations cup stadiums)
- April to June 2009: preparation for Confederations Cup
- December 2009: stadium and supporting infrastructure complete
- June 2010: World Cup.

By mid-2007, the match planning had been completed, in accordance with FIFA regulations. This will enable South African security services to further detail their security plan. It will also enable detailed planning of transport routes and accommodation.

By May 2007, the construction of all stadiums was on schedule. The International Broadcast Centre (IBC) will ensure television coverage across the globe and will cater for more than 2 000 journalists. The South African Cabinet has approved Johannesburg as the venue for the IBC.

About R600 million was spent in 2006/07. National Treasury was expected to bring forward R1,9 billion in October 2007. All stadium facilities will be ready by October 2009, to allow for the identification and allocation of seats and issuing of tickets.

The R9-billion investment in transport projects will accelerate the delivery of an efficient, sustainable and affordable transport system.

In November 2007, 170 teams were given the route they will have to follow to reach the 2010 World Cup when the preliminary draw took place at the Albert Luthuli International Convention Centre in Durban.

The draw, beamed to a television audience of millions across the globe, went off successfully as the first major FIFA event on African soil, with artists mixing African colour and rhythm with the serious business of lining up the teams contending for a place at the 2010 tournament. The World Cup is also about showcasing the very best of the African continent and building pride and unity.

In August 2007, two South African women co-promoted the International Professional Women Boxing Tournament.

Ms Mbali Zantsi of Showtime Boxing Promotions and Ms Kenosi Mlabateki of Rams Boxing Promotions promoted the first-ever tournament featuring professional South African female boxers.

In addition to funding stadiums and transport, funding allocations for the delivery of government guarantees and programmes include, among other things:

- R666 million for safety and security
- R2,5 billion for information and communications technology (ICT)
- ports of entry
 - air (ICT): R71 million
 - land (physical and ICT infrastructure): R1,5 billion
 - sea: R1,5 million.

Government has allocated:

- R25 million for training of volunteers, which will build skills in the long term
- R17 million for community mobilisation
- R337 million for legacy projects
- R150 million for arts- and culture-related projects.

Sports organisations

South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee

Sascoc is the controlling body for all high-performance sport in South Africa. It also prepares Team South Africa for all multisport international games, including the Olympic, Paralympic, Commonwealth, World Student and All Africa Games.

It has assumed functions relating to high-performance sport that were carried out by the following controlling bodies: Disability Sport South Africa, the National Olympic Committee of South Africa, South African Commonwealth Games Association, South African Sports Commission, South African Student Sports Union, and the United School Sports Association of South Africa.

Sascoc also:

- affiliates to and/or is recognised by the appropriate regional, international and continental sports organisations for high-performance sport
- initiates, negotiates, arranges, finances and controls multisport tours to and from South Africa
- ensures, and if necessary, approves that the bidding process relating to the hosting of international or any other sporting events in

South Africa complies with the necessary rules and regulations

- ensures close co-operation between government and the private sector relating to all aspects of Team South Africa
- ensures the overall protection of symbols, trademarks, emblems or insignia of the bodies under its jurisdiction, including the Springbok and Protea logos.
- co-ordinates the National Sports Academy (NSA) system to support the identification and development of talented athletes

Two public entities have been established to assist the SRSA with the delivery of specific interventions in sport and recreation in accordance with the relevant legislation through which they were constituted, namely:

- Boxing South Africa (BSA), which was established through the South African Boxing Act, 2001 (Act 11 of 2001)
- Sais, established through the Sais Act, 1997 (Act 14 of 1997).

National Sports Academy

The NSA Programme seeks to improve sports performance and bring South Africa on par with other sporting nations by creating opportunities for talented athletes to exploit their potential to the full.

Its short-term focus is on providing a one-stop, world-class training and support environment for identified sport, offering elite athletes the opportunity to prepare for the All Africa, Olympic and Paralympic Games. It is run in partnership with Sascoc. The NSA comprises a significant aspect of the delivery system in sport and recreation at high-performance level. It will eventually provide the necessary support for talented athletes, especially those from disadvantaged backgrounds.

Government allocated R16 million to the NSA in 2006/07.

Boxing South Africa

BSA is partly funded with public money. Its functions are to promote boxing and to protect the interests of boxers and officials. Its main responsibilities are to:

- consider applications for licences from all stakeholders in professional boxing

- sanction fights
- implement the regulations pertaining to boxing
- promote the interests of all stakeholders in boxing.

South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport

Sais is the South African national anti-doping organisation, funded by the SRSA. Its mandate is to promote participation in sport, free from the use of prohibited substances or methods intended to artificially enhance performance, in the interest of the health and well-being of sportspeople.

Sais is responsible for developing anti-doping policy and implementing a national anti-doping programme across all South Africa's sports codes. It has over 50 part-time, accredited doping-control officers based throughout South Africa, trained to international standards, who conduct in-and-out competition testing on athletes from over 50 sports disciplines, with over 70 trained and accredited chaperones to assist the doping-control officers.

Sais is one of the few national anti-doping agencies worldwide with an ISO 9001:2000 certification in compliance with the International Testing Standards. This is the internationally recognised benchmark for quality assurance and excellence, and represents world best-practice in doping control in sport.

Sais' key focus areas are:

- Drug testing: the institute conducts a comprehensive, independent and effective national doping-control programme on South African athletes competing at regional, national and international level. Over 2 300 tests were conducted in 2006/07. It also conducts in-and-out-of-competition testing on international athletes on behalf of international sports federations and other international anti-doping organisations.
- Education: Sais provides education and information resources and services for all its target groups, namely athletes, coaches, parents, sports organisations, members of the medical and pharmaceutical and sports-science professions, tertiary-education institutions and the public. It provides a telephone information service manned by qualified pharmacists (021 448 3888), and has a website with a



database of prohibited and permitted products in sport that are available on the South African market (www.drugfreesport.org.za). It also contains up-to-date news and information on national and international anti-doping issues. Saids conducts a comprehensive monthly programme of lectures, workshops and anti-doping seminars throughout South Africa, and collaborates with role-players in education to include sports drugs in drug-awareness and education programmes conducted at school level.

- Research: Saids conducts sociological research into the knowledge, attitude and use of performance-enhancing drugs among South African sportspeople, for the purpose of planning and implementing effective drug-testing and education programmes.
- International collaboration: South Africa is an active participant in the global effort to combat drugs in sport. Saids collaborates closely with its counterparts throughout the world to achieve international harmonisation and the improvement of standards and practice in doping control. The Minister of Sport and Recreation, Rev. Makhenkesi Stofile, is a member of the Wada Foundation Board and Executive Committee. South Africa is a member of the International Anti-Doping Arrangement and of the Executive Committee of the Association of National Anti-Doping Organisations.

World Anti-Doping Agency

The Africa Regional Office of Wada was established in Cape Town in 2004 to co-ordinate the anti-doping activities of the agency throughout Africa. This includes promoting and maintaining effective lines of communication between Wada and all the relevant stakeholders, governments and public authorities, the broad sports movement, national anti-doping agencies and laboratories.

2007 sports highlights Rugby World Cup

In September 2007, in its first match of the 2007 Rugby World Cup, South Africa beat Samoa 59-7. Wing Bryan Habana scored four tries.

Any lingering doubts as to South Africa's ability to reach the final were erased in a 36-0 thrashing of title-holders England.

In their third game, South Africa beat Tonga 30-25, and then went through to the quarter-final by beating the United States of America (USA) 64-15 in their Pool A game at *Stade de la Mosson*.

The Springboks beat Fiji 37-20 at the *Stade Vélodrome* in Marseille to advance to the semi-finals of the Rugby World Cup.

South Africa and Argentina, the last unbeaten southern hemisphere teams at the World Cup, met in the semi-finals.

The Springbok's took advantage of the Puma's errors to cruise to a 37-13 victory, and book a place in the final against England, who defeated France in the other semi-final.

On 20 October 2007, in the final, South Africa defeated England 15-6 at the *Stade de France* in Paris to clinch the William Webb Ellis trophy.

The Springboks' return was held back by a day as the team remained in Paris for the annual International Rugby Board (IRB) Awards Gala. The team picked up three major awards.

Bryan Habana was named IRB Player of the Year, following in the footsteps of his teammate Schalk Burger, who won the award in 2004.

Jake White was named Coach of the Year and the Springboks were named Team of the Year.

After their World Cup-final victory, they also moved above the All Blacks to number one in the world rankings.

All Africa Games

The All Africa Games were held in July 2007 in Algiers. Egypt narrowly edged out Algeria on the medals table for first place, with South Africa securing third spot behind the two North African nations.

The Egyptians, a traditional power at the All Africa Games, won 74 gold medals and 199 medals overall to squeeze in ahead of the Algerians, who lifted their performance considerably over their showing in Abuja four years ago when they finished fourth in the standings.

The hosts won more medals than the Egyptians, claiming 205, but they fell four short of their rivals in the gold medal stakes. It was Algeria's best-ever showing at the All Africa Games.

South Africa finished with 61 golds and 180 medals in total, with Nigeria, the 2003 hosts, who topped the medal table in Abuja, taking fourth place with 50 gold medals and 159 medals in all. Tunisia finished fifth with 48 golds.

In total, 27 sporting disciplines were contested, with about 8 000 athletes from 52 countries participating.

South Africa dominated in the swimming pool, winning 53 medals, with the next-best return being Algeria's 16 and Zimbabwe's 15. South African men won 12 golds, seven silvers, and seven bronzes, while the women claimed 13 gold medals, nine silvers and five bronzes.

The results reflected South Africa's recent emergence as a country to be reckoned with in international swimming competitions.

They were also especially encouraging given that local swimming stars on the world stage such as Roland Schoeman and Ryk Neethling did not take part.

Paraplegic superstar Natalie du Toit excelled in the relays and won individual gold in the 1 500-metre (m) freestyle.

South Africa also performed well in athletics, winning the most medals with 24, although Algeria won the most golds; nine to South Africa's seven.

The Rainbow Nation's men achieved the best results of any country, with the highlight provided by the 400-m hurdlers. They finished first, second and third, with LJ van Zyl taking gold in 48,74 seconds (sec), while Pieter de Villiers was awarded silver ahead of Alwyn Myburgh.

In wheelchair athletics, South Africa finished second, picking up 14 medals, of which eight were for wins. There was also a gold medal for the wheelchair basketball team.

South African sailors led the way in a competition that featured women's and mixed racing. Of the nine golds on offer, South Africa picked up six. In another water-based sport, rowing, South Africa finished just one gold behind Algeria, although the team's seven medals was one better than the hosts.

After a tight fight against Nigeria, South Africa's badminton team finished top of the table, winning two golds, three silvers and three bronzes.

South Africa was also number one in cycling, with three gold medals out of the six on offer, and six medals in all.

The wrestling team secured three gold medals and five bronzes to total eight medals in all.

Gymnasts claimed 12 medals, with two golds among them. In chess, South Africa picked up 10 medals, with one gold.

Due to a lack of facilities in Algeria for hockey, an Olympic qualifying tournament was held in Nairobi

at the same time as the All Africa Games. Only the winners would qualify for Beijing 2008. South Africa's women had no problem in securing their spot, beating Kenya 5-0 in the final.

Matters were tougher for the men who faced their traditional rivals, Egypt, for the prized Olympic place as African champions. The Egyptians took the lead in the 34th minute through Sameh Metwaly, but just five minutes later Emile Smith levelled for South Africa. Then, with only six minutes remaining, Geoff Abbot scored the winning goal for South Africa.

Taking place every four years, in the year before the Olympic Games, the next All Africa Games, the 10th edition, will be hosted by Lusaka in Zambia in 2011.

Athletics

In April 2007, Oscar Pistorius broke three world records at the Nedbank Championships for the Physically Disabled in Johannesburg.

He clocked a time of 49,16 sec in the 400 m, shaving 0,26 sec off the previous world record of 49,42 sec. Pistorius became the first amputee sprinter to dip below the 11-sec mark when he broke the 100-m world record in a time of 10,91 sec. He also clocked a time of 21,58 sec to break the 200-m world record of 21,66 sec he set at the World Championships in the Netherlands in 2006.

In May 2007, Pistorius won two gold medals at the Paralympics World Cup for the 100 m and the 200 m in the T44 category. Teboho Mokogalagadi also secured two gold medals for South Africa; for the 100 m and 200 m in the T35 category.

Bethuel Netshifhefhe broke a three-year Zimbabwean stranglehold on the men's race as he won the Old Mutual Two Oceans Marathon in April.

Canoeing and skiing

In February 2007, Michael Mbanjwa, partnering Martin Dreyer, made canoeing history when he won the Stihl Non-Stop Dusi Canoe Marathon in record-breaking time. He became the first black paddler in the world to win a canoe marathon on the famous river. He and Dreyer finished in seven hours, 47 minutes and 40 sec to slice seven seconds off the previous record, set in 2000 by John and Andrew Edmonds.

Covering 120 kilometres in a single day, the Stihl Non-Stop Dusi, which combines both paddling and portaging, is arguably the toughest canoe marathon in the world.

In September 2007, paddler Barry Lewin won the US national double-ski title with Tahitian star Lewis Laughlan to end his month-long international tour on a high note, which also included a win in Souliga Challenge in the Caribbean Netherlands Antilles and victory in the Liffey Descent in Ireland.

Cricket

In April 2007, the South African cricket team, the Proteas, advanced to the semi-finals of the International Cricket Council (ICC) Cricket World Cup hosted in the West Indies. However, in the semi-final, Australia beat the Proteas by seven wickets.

In June 2007, South Africa beat Ireland in Belfast, Ireland, in a one-day international (ODI) game by 42 runs.

South Africa beat India in the first of three matches in June 2007 in Belfast, in the Future Cup. South Africa won with only three balls remaining.

An unbeaten 61 by Yuvraj Singh guided India to a six-wicket win over South Africa in the third and deciding ODI of the Future Cup series. They also won the second ODI by six wickets. India won the series 2-1 despite losing the opening match. The 2-1 victory in Belfast also allowed India to avenge their 4-0 series whitewash in the previous ODI series held in South Africa. The Future Cup win over Proteas also marked India's first series win overseas.

In September 2007, South Africa hosted the first Twenty20 World Cup after successfully hosting the Cricket World Cup in 2003.

The 10-day, 12-nation event was played at three venues: the Wanderers in Johannesburg, Kingsmead in Durban and Newlands in Cape Town.

The opening match between South Africa and the West Indies was won by eight wickets by the home side. South Africa cruised to a seven-wicket win over Bangladesh in their match in Cape Town.

Albie Morkel was the star of South Africa's 19-run win over England in their Super Eights match in Cape Town. Morkel smashed 43 off 20 balls to resurrect South Africa's innings and boost them to a defendable total of 154 for eight.

A few days later, Justin Kemp hit six sixes for 89 not-out that set up a six-wicket victory over New Zealand in their match at Kingsmead in Durban.



The South African Government launched a website (www.sa2010.gov.za) to provide information on preparations for the 2010 FIFA World Cup™. The site is complementary to the website of FIFA and the Organising Committee, and was conceived in consultation with FIFA. It also provides information about the country and the continent in the context of the first African World Cup.

This is one of government's initiatives to take advantage of the World Cup communication opportunity for the benefit of the country and continent. South Africa has committed to being Africa's stage, and to making the World Cup part of a 21st century of African growth and development.

The site provides an entry point to other sources of information about the country – such as the South African Tourism and International Marketing Council gateways, and provincial and host-city websites.

However, a few days later South Africa crashed to a 37-run defeat at India's hands, which knocked them out of the semi-final race on net run-rates. India went on to win the tournament.

In October 2007, Dale Steyn took five wickets to dismiss Pakistan for 263 as South Africa won the first test in Karachi by 160 runs. South African cricketer Mark Boucher set a new world record for the most test dismissals by a wicketkeeper. Boucher's record of 396 dismissals (378 catches and 18 stumpings) in 103 tests surpassed the record previously held by Ian Healy of Australia, who made 395 dismissals in 119 tests. Jacques Callis scored two test centuries.

South Africa sealed their first test series on the subcontinent since 2000 after being held to a draw by Pakistan in the second and final match.

In October 2007, South Africa defeated Pakistan in the fifth and final ODI in Lahore, securing a rare double of test and one-day series wins in Pakistan.

Cycling

In 2007, along with Agritubel and Astana, Team Barloworld of South Africa became one of only three non-Pro Tour Series teams to be invited to participate in the Tour de France.

They surprised the international cycling community when Mauricio Soler won the ninth stage of the 2007 Tour de France.

Robert Hunter became the first South African to win a stage of the Tour de France. Hunter won a crash-hit bunch sprint at the end of the 11th stage ahead of Swiss time-trial world champion Fabian Cancellara and Brazil's Murilo Fischer. Hunter's victory gave Barloworld their second stage win of the race.

South Africa's Team Barloworld wrapped up an outstanding debut at the Tour de France, with Hunter finishing fourth in the final stage and second in the points competition, while Soler captured the prestigious polka dot jersey, which is awarded to the King of the Mountains.

Golf

In January 2007, South Africa tied for 16th place in the Women's World Cup of Golf held at Sun City, in North West. Paraguay won the event by a big seven-shot margin. The USA finished second, with South Korea in third place.

In January 2007, Retief Goosen claimed the Qatar Masters by sinking a 15-m putt to steal a spectacular victory with a three-under-par 69. The win was worth over R2,4 million.

In March 2007, up-and-coming Anton Haig won the Johnnie Walker Classic in Phuket, securing the title in a three-way play-off against fellow South African Richard Sterne and England's Oliver Wilson.

Charl Schwartzel captured his second European Tour title, and his first in mainland Europe, when he won the 2007 Spanish Open in April.

In May 2007, South African Rory Sabbatini sank a 15-foot birdie putt on the first play-off hole to win the USA PGA Crowne Plaza Invitational, beating veterans Bernhard Langer and Jim Furyk.

A birdie on the final hole at Celtic Manor earned South African Richard Sterne a one-stroke Wales Open victory in June 2007.

The victory lifted Sterne to 35th in the world rankings, giving South Africa five players in the top-35, including four in the top-15.

In June 2007, Ashleigh Simon (18) won the Catalonia Masters. It was her first title and came only a month after she turned professional. By winning this tournament she became the youngest

professional to win in Ladies European Tour history.

In October 2007, Ernie Els won his seventh World Match Play Championship title by beating Angel Cabrera 6 and 4. The win earned Els one million pounds.

Mountaineering

South African Sibusiso Vilane became the first black man to climb the seven highest peaks on seven continents. He reached the peak of Denali in Alaska in May 2007.

The seven mountains are Denali, Kilimanjaro in Africa, Aconcagua in South America, Elbroes in Europe, Kosciuszko in Australia, Everest in Asia and Vinson Masif in Antarctica. In 2003, Vilane became the first black man to climb Everest.

Poker

Raymond Rahme beat 6 500 players to take third place in the world poker series in July 2007. Rahme won more than R21 million in the world's biggest poker game in Los Angeles, USA.

Rugby

In May 2007, the Sharks and the Bulls rugby teams played in the final of the southern hemisphere tournament, the Super 14.

It was the first time that two South African sides contested the final, the first final held on South African soil and the first final won by a South African team.

Teams from New Zealand, Australia and South Africa participated in the tournament. The Bulls won the game 20-19 in the last minutes of the match.

In May 2007, South Africa beat England 53-3 in a test in Bloemfontein.

In June 2007, the Springboks beat England 55-22 in a test in Pretoria.

In June 2007, the Springboks beat Samoa 35-8 in Johannesburg.

South Africa beat Australia in the Tri-Nations rugby test at Newlands in June 2007, by scoring two drop-goals in the last few minutes. The final score was 22-19.

The Springboks beat Namibia 105-13 in a World Cup warm-up match at Newlands in August 2007.



The Garden Route in the Western Cape was named the 2006 Golf Destination of the Year for Africa and the Middle East at the International Golf Travel Market in Spain, beating top destinations such as Dubai and Mauritius. It also boasts international standard golf courses designed by some of the world's best players, including Ernie Els, Gary Player and Jack Nicklaus.



In another warm-up game, South Africa beat the Irish provincial side Connacht 18-3.

Also in August, South Africa beat Scotland 27-3 in their Rugby World Cup warm-up international played at Murrayfield in Edinburgh.

Soccer

In March 2007, Carlos Alberto Parreira got off to a winning start as coach of Bafana Bafana, as South Africa recorded a convincing 3-0 win over Chad in an African Nations Cup qualifier in N'Djamena.

With Zambia and Congo drawing goalless in Brazzaville, the win saw South Africa move to the top of their qualifying group.

Bafana Bafana consolidated their position at the top of Group 11 standings when they beat Chad 4-0 in the African Cup of Nations qualifier at Durban's Absa Stadium in June 2007. It was Bafana Bafana's biggest win since South Africa returned to international soccer 15 years ago.

Bafana Bafana drew one all with the Congo in June 2007. This result left South Africa in prime position to book their place at the African Cup of Nations finals in Ghana in 2008.

In September 2007, Bafana Bafana beat Botswana 1-0 in a Council of Southern Africa Football Associations (Cosafa) Castle Cup semi-final game at the Super Stadium in Atteridgeville, west of Pretoria, and went through to the final against Zambia.

South Africa edged Zambia in Bloemfontein 4-3 on penalties to claim the Cosafa Castle Cup title. It was South Africa's second victory in the 10-year history of the Cosafa Castle Cup.

The win also meant the trophy will remain in South African hands as it was the last match to be played in the Cosafa Castle Cup.

Surfing

In January 2007, 19-year-old Jordy Smith claimed the Billabong Association of Surfing Professionals (ASP) World Junior Championship title after a hard-fought victory over Brazil's Adriano de Souza, ranked 20th in the world.

In March 2007, Smith claimed his maiden win on the ASP World Qualifying Series (WQS) by defeating a top-class international field in the four-star, R550 000-Hot Tuna Central Coast Pro in Australia.

Smith rocketed to the top of the WQS rankings, following a fifth-place finish in the R700 000-Sri Lankan Airlines Pro at Pasta Point in the Maldives. He amassed 10 063 points from his best seven results on the 2007 WQS. In August 2007, he went on

to win the R850 000-Sooruz Lacanau Pro by defeating Spanish Basque surfer Aritz Aranburu in the 35-minute final. His victory was worth R105 000 and 2 500 ratings points, and put him ahead on the WQS.

Swimming

In March 2007, Roland Schoeman won gold in the 50-m butterfly at the Fina World Championships in Melbourne, Australia, in a time of 23,18 sec, matching the time he recorded in the semi-finals.

Gerhard Zandberg won the men's 50-m backstroke gold medal at the championships, touching in 24,98 sec.

Natalie du Toit claimed three victories at the Paralympic World Cup in May; in the multidisability (MD) 100-m freestyle, the S9 100-m freestyle and the MD 50-m freestyle.

Riaan Schoeman was the talk of the South African swimming squad after winning the 400-m individual medley final in a new South African record time, on the second day of an international swimming meeting in Tokyo, Japan.

In October, Durban's Kings Park Aquatic Centre hosted the first leg of the 2007 Fina/Arena Swimming World Cup.

Roland Schoeman and Gerhard Zandberg excelled, with Zandberg winning seven medals, three of them gold.

Susan van Biljon matched Zandberg, claiming three titles as she dominated the breaststroke to win the 50-, 100- and 200-m titles.

In total, 10 meeting records fell and four African records were established. South Africa finished with 16 wins.

Later in October, at the second final leg in Singapore, Schoeman was a comfortable winner in the 100-m freestyle in a time of 47,34. He claimed his second gold in the 50-m breaststroke in a time of 27,45 sec.

His hat-trick of victories came in the 100-m individual medley. On day two of the competition, Schoeman added a fourth gold medal when he won the 50-m freestyle in 21,61 sec.

Other South African gold-medal winners were William Diering (200-m breaststroke) and Melissa Corfe (200-m and 400-m freestyle).

Tennis

In January 2007 at the year's first tennis major, the Australian Open, there was success for South Africa as Liezel Huber teamed up with Zimbabwe's Cara Black to win the women's doubles title. Second seeds Black and Huber won their second

Wimbledon women's doubles title in three years in July 2007.

The African pair came from a set down to win 3-6 6-3 6-2 and capture their second grand slam title of the year.

Triathlon

Hendrik de Villiers became the first-ever South African winner of a World Cup triathlon event when he claimed line honours in the Richards Bay Triathlon World Cup in May.

Acknowledgements

Beeld

South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport

Sowetan

Sport and Recreation South Africa

The Star

www.gov.za

www.news24.com

www.sapa.org.za

www.southafrica.info

www.supersport.co.za

www.superswimmer.co.za

Suggested reading

Alegi, P. *Laduma! Soccer, Politics and Society in South Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2004.

Alfred, L. *Testing Times: The Story of the Man Who Made South African Cricket*. Cape Town: Spearhead Press, 2003.

Alswang, J. *South African Dictionary of Sport*. Cape Town: David Philip, 2003.

Barlow, E. *Eddie Barlow: The Autobiography*. Cape Town: Tafelberg, 2006.

Beaumont, F. *In the Presence of Gary Player: A Perspective on the Life and Philosophy of One of the World's Greatest Golfers*. Hatfield, Pretoria: Undaus Press, 2004.

Black, B. *Fly-Fishing South Africa's Rivers, Lakes and Surf*. Cape Town: Struik, 2007.

Capostagno, A and Neild, D. *Fancourt: The Road to the President's Cup*. Johannesburg: Viking, 2003.

Chesterfield, T and McGlew, J. *South Africa's Cricket Captains*. Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2002.

Colquhoun, A. ed. *South African Rugby Annual 2004*. Johannesburg: SA Rugby and MWP Media, 2004.

Cottrell, T. *Old Mutual's Runner's Guide to Road Races in South Africa*. Parklands: Guide Book Publications, 2003.

Cottrell, T. ed. *Nedbank Runners' Guide to the Road Races in South Africa*. Parklands: Guide Book Publications, 2005.

Curtis, P. *Fishing the Margins: A History and Complete Bibliography of Fly Fishing in South Africa*. Johannesburg: Platanna Press, 2005.

Eaton, T and Alfred, L. *Touchlines and Deadlines: A Compendium of South African Sports Writing*. Cape Town: Double Storey, 2005.

Griffiths, E. *Glory Days: Forty Years of One-Day Cricket*. Johannesburg: Viking, 2003.

Hartman, R. *Ali: The Life of Ali Bacher*. 2nd ed. Johannesburg: Penguin, 2006.

Heyns, P and Lemke, G. *Penny Heyns*. PHBH Publications, 2004.

Introduction to Sports Law in South Africa, edited by R Cloete. Durban: LexisNexis, 2005.

Jaffee, J and Wolfaardt, F. *And Away They Go*. Johannesburg: Sharp Sharp Media, 2004.

Jooste, G. *Rugby Stories from the Platteland*. Johannesburg: 30° South Publishers, n.d.

Keohane, M. *Springbok Rugby Uncovered: The Inside Story of South African Rugby Controversies*. Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2004.

King, G. *Hansie Cronje Story: An Authorised Biography*. Cape Town: Global Creative Studios, 2006.

Kirsten, G and Manthorp, N. *Gazza: The Gary Kirsten Autobiography*. Cape Town: Don Nelson, 2004.

Krige, C and Bills, P. *The Right Place at the Right Time*. Cape Town: Zebra Press, 2005.

Lediga, S. *Ndizani 1992 – 2003 Bafana Bafana*. Polokwane: Sello Lediga, 2003.

Leppan, L. *South African Book of Records*. Cape Town: Don Nelson, 1999. Greenhouse, 2004.

- Mazwai, T. ed. *Thirty Years of South African Soccer*. Cape Town and Randburg: Sunbird Publishing and Mafube Publishing, 2003.
- Murray, B and Merrett, C. *Caught Behind: Race and Politics in Springbok Cricket*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press and Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2004.
- Nicholson, C. *Papwa Sewgolum: From Patriarch to Legend*. Johannesburg: Witwatersrand University Press, 2005.
- Odendaal, A. *The Story of an African Game*. Cape Town: David Philip, 2003.
- Ramsamy, S. *Reflections on a Life in Sport*. Cape Town: Publishing Partnership for Greenhouse, 2004.
- Sasol South African Rugby Annual, 2006*, edited by A Colquhoun. Cape Town: SA Rugby and MWP Media, 2005.



SA YEARBOOK 2007/08 | TOURISM



South Africa is a tourist paradise, offering scenic beauty, diverse wildlife, a kaleidoscope of cultures and traditions, and endless opportunities to explore the outdoors through sport and adventure activities.

In 2006, South Africa received nearly 8,4 million tourists. Tourism created 947 530 jobs in 2006, representing an increase of 9,6% over 2005. The tourism industry forms part of the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa's (AsgiSA) goals to reduce poverty and unemployment; to raise the level of economic growth by at least 4,5% in the next few years; and to an average of 6% between 2010 and 2014.

Tourism's estimated contribution to gross domestic product (GDP) increased from 4,6% in 1993 to 8,3% in 2006. It is expected to increase to 12% by 2014. Tourism has been set steep goals for the next five years: 500 000 new jobs, 8,5 million international arrivals annually and a contribution to the GDP of at least R100 billion a year.

South Africa is following the global trend with a rise in travel and tourism to the country. Overall, foreign arrivals grew by 10% from January to May 2007. The positive trend in foreign arrivals is reflected in arrivals at airports, which increased by 4,4% during the first five months of 2007 compared with the same period in 2006, and across all regions which South African Tourism markets.

According to statistics released by Statistics SA, 2007 saw the highest number of recorded arrivals for the first five months of a year since 1998.

Tourism has been identified as one of the key economic sectors with excellent potential for growth. Tourism is the only sector nationally that has managed to grow jobs (currently half a million and rising) while increasing its contribution to the GDP. For every 12 new tourists to the country, one new job is created. By 2010, South Africa plans to accommodate 10 million foreign visitors annually.

The Tourism Branch of the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism promotes and develops tourism to generate revenue, create jobs and transform the tourism industry, thus encouraging the participation of previously disadvantaged individuals (PDIs).

The Tourism Branch provides support to both the public and private sectors, and to the broader South African community.

The Tourism Branch has identified seven thematic areas for tourism development:

- skills
- transport

- safety and security
- information management
- marketing
- small, medium and micro-enterprise (SMME) and infrastructure development
- industry transformation.

These areas are the bedrock of the 2010 Action Plan, hence government's alignment of AgsiSA and 2010 World Cup initiatives.

In June 2006, the Minister of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, Mr Marthinus van Schalkwyk, announced the creation of the R20-million Tourism Equity Fund. This fund provides access to much-needed support for small and medium-sized tour operators and SMMEs.

To address the skills gap, government has allocated R7,5 million to a partnership between the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, the Tourism Hospitality and Education Training Authority (Theta), the National Business Initiative (NBI) and the Tourism Business Council of South Africa (TBCSA), to build a consensus skills plan for revising existing curricula, and streamlining accreditation and certification.

The fastest-growing segment of tourism in South Africa is ecological tourism (ecotourism), which includes nature photography, birdwatching, botanical studies, scuba diving, snorkelling, hiking and mountaineering.

Community tourism is becoming increasingly popular too, with tourists wanting to experience South Africa's rural villages and townships. (See Chapter 4: *Arts and culture*.)

Business tourism currently comprises 5% of South Africa's total tourism market. Over the past three years, government has dedicated an average of R17 million per year to business tourism and continues to invest in this segment.

The South African Tourism Board has approved the Business Tourism Growth Strategy, which is the result of extensive consultation between the business-tourism industry and government. It was designed to ensure that all role-players align their efforts in respect of the growth of this industry.

In 2007/08, the Tourism Branch sought to consolidate the work done towards AgsiSA goals, by doing more to alleviate poverty, reduce unemployment and raise awareness. There was



also a focus on working more efficiently with other government departments and improving co-operative efforts between national, provincial and local government.

The implementation of the Airlift Strategy, the result of a strong partnership between the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, South African Tourism, the Department of Transport and the private sector, shows impressive increases in capacity to bring tourists to South Africa. The strategy provides for increased access to the South African market for foreign airline carriers. Between September 2006 and January 2007, rights for almost 1,4 million additional seats per year were secured.

The development of the Open Africa Route initiative will focus on the packaging of second-economy products into tourism experiences through business hubs in 21 presidential nodes throughout South Africa. A key focus of this initiative is to overcome the critical barrier of limited market access.

On average, each route will assist 30 second-economy operators; and train 2 025 SMMEs in tourist awareness, and 810 in business management, human resource management, marketing and financial management.

The department is also providing comprehensive support measures to ensure that second-economy operators are well equipped to meet the high expectations of both local and international travellers.

Tourism policy and initiatives

The Tourism Branch of the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism aims to create the right conditions for responsible tourism growth and development by promoting and developing tourism. This increases job and entrepreneurial opportunities and encourages the participation of PDIs. It focuses on facilitating the growth of the tourism industry by providing support to the public and private sectors, and the broader community.

The *White Paper on Tourism* provides a policy framework for tourism development, and entails, among other things:

- empowerment and capacity-building
- focusing on tourism-infrastructure investment
- aggressively marketing South Africa as a tourism destination to international markets
- a domestic tourism and travel campaign.

Raising general awareness about the opportunities for domestic travel remains a priority. The aim is to encourage South Africans to travel within their

country, to make tourism products accessible to all, to facilitate the development of a culture of tourism, and to create a safe and welcoming environment for visitors.

Poverty-relief funding

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism's poverty-relief projects promote the development of community-owned tourism products and the establishment of tourism infrastructure, including roads, information centres and tourism signage.

These poverty-relief projects are categorised into product and infrastructure development, capacity-building and training, the establishment of SMMEs and business-development projects.

Social-responsibility and poverty-relief programmes run by the department in all nine provinces have created 13 887 job opportunities to exceed the target of 12 500.

Welcome Campaign

The South African Welcome Campaign was launched in December 1999 with the hope of turning South Africans into domestic tourism ambassadors and highlighting the importance of tourism to the domestic market. The campaign encourages South Africans to make visitors feel safe and welcome. It has been launched in at least 30 towns and at seven border posts. In support of the campaign, the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism has commissioned Theta to re-engineer the Ubuntu We Care Programme.

A revived programme will target substantial numbers of people who interact with tourists – from the moment they arrive in South Africa until they leave. This customer-training programme is known as Welcome Host and is based on a similar programme started in Canada and employed successfully in Australia and the United Kingdom (UK). It comprises a two-day in-house workshop and teaches people how to meet and exceed tourists' expectations.

Sho't Left Campaign

To promote a culture of domestic tourism among South Africans, the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism successfully implemented the Sho't Left domestic marketing campaign, generating more than R40 million in the economy from a R20-million investment. The success of the campaign is largely due to a partnership between the department and the tourism industry. The campaign promotes affordability, increasing the

number of South Africans accessing tourism products and services.

Sho't Left focuses on converting interest into the actual booking of accommodation and inspiring people to discover the country. The campaign facilitates closer co-operation with the private sector, and particularly the Association of Southern African Travel Agents (Asata). The public can book affordable Sho't Left holidays through the retail network of more than 5 000 agents, all of whom are equipped with brochures and educational leaflets. Asata was also working with South African Tourism to develop the Sho't Left Enterprise Programme, through which travel agencies employ domestic agents to stimulate the domestic travel market.

In alignment with the Tourism Black Economic Empowerment (BEE) Charter, this project also addresses unemployment and skills transfer.

The Sho't Left Campaign continues to be the flagship project to drive the promotion of domestic tourism. With the popular SABC2 television show, *Sho't Left Chalenj!*, as the centrepiece, the campaign showcases affordable local tourist facilities and attractions. Judging by the good domestic tourism seasons enjoyed by KwaZulu-Natal and the Western Cape during 2006, the promotion of tourism is working. This was helped along by the establishment of the new airline, Mango, which offers affordable domestic airline travel to more South African holiday-makers.

Tourism is also being promoted in provinces by the Tourism Branch through roadshows.



South Africa, Zimbabwe, Zambia and Mozambique have signed an agreement to share the tourism spin-offs of the 2010 World Cup through "border-free" tourism packages.

South Africa's Limpopo Tourism Parks Board, the Zambian National Tourist Board, Zimbabwe's Tourism Authority and Mozambique struck the deal, thus creating the Limpopo-Zambezi Destination at the Tourism Indaba conference and exhibition in Durban in May 2007.

The agreement will see the creation of new package tours between and within the four countries, the easing of border formalities to smooth the passage of travellers through border posts, and joint marketing and branding in support of the package tours.

International tourism

Cabinet approved the International Tourism Growth Strategy in June 2003, which includes an analysis of core markets and their segments.

Priority markets have been identified in Europe, Asia and Africa.

The strategy not only aims to increase arrivals, but also to:

- increase the duration of tourists' visits to South Africa
- increase spending by tourists
- ensure that tourists travel throughout the country and not just in a few provinces
- facilitate transformation and BEE in the local tourism industry.

South Africa has made its mark as a global destination for meetings, incentives, conferences and exhibitions.

The New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad) identified tourism as an important sector for addressing the development challenges facing Africa. The Nepad Tourism Action Plan has been developed, providing a more detailed framework for action at national and subregional levels. The action plan proposes concrete interventions in the following focus areas:

- creating an enabling policy and regulatory environment
- institution-building aimed at promoting tourism
- tourism marketing
- research and development
- investment in tourism infrastructure and products
- human-resource development (HRD) and quality assurance.

Some of the tourism initiatives South Africa is actively participating in include:

- various tourism spatial development initiatives in the Southern African Development Community (SADC)
- developing the SADC univisa.

Apart from the United Nations World Tourism Organisation (UNWTO) and foreign-language training courses, the Tourism Branch was also active in the Middle East portfolio market. Tourism, trade and investment workshops were held in five Gulf Co-operation Countries – Saudi Arabia, United Arab Emirates (UAE), Oman, Qatar and Kuwait. This

is a largely untapped market, which can offer huge returns on investment. Local media coverage of the workshops helped to spread the South African message to the broader public in these markets.

There is also a need to implement projects to enhance tourism within the SADC. One such project is the univisa, a single visa to cover travel within the SADC. Although there is the Regional Tourism Organisation of Southern Africa (Retosa) agreement on the need for the univisa, the differing levels of development in SADC countries is a challenge that must be overcome first.

Furthermore, lack of sufficient funding is hampering Retosa's ability to implement the univisa project. South Africa has advised Retosa to approach donors, especially the European Union (mainly Schengen states), to assist with this project.

2010 FIFA World Cup™

The Tourism Branch has drafted a strategy to engage with countries that have successfully hosted similar events, to learn from their experiences. The strategy was expected to be finalised and implemented in 2007/08. In addition, during a meeting in Spain, South Africa together with various other African countries, the UNWTO and FIFA agreed to a programme of work pertaining to hosting a world cup which is African in scope.

The announcement that the 2010 Soccer World Cup will, for the first time ever, feature non-hotel accommodation, has tremendous implications for SMME entrepreneurs who run lodges, bed-and-breakfast establishments (B&Bs) and other smaller establishments. In 2006, the 2010 National Accommodation Workshop was attended by around 1 000 establishment owners. The workshop was supplemented by 17 workshops in 2010 host cities and satellite areas, which attracted a further 3 400 participants.

The workshops were held in conjunction with MATCH, FIFA's ticketing, accommodation, information technology and communications agency. The aim was to raise awareness among SMMEs about the need to become graded and to enter into contracts with MATCH.

By November 2007, 22 000 hotel rooms and 6 000 non-hotel rooms had been contracted.

The FIFA Tour Operator Programme was launched in November 2007.

Tourism Organising Plan

Based on research into the opportunities and challenges facing the industry, South African

Tourism has developed the Tourism Organising Plan to maximise tourism value in 2010.

This includes measures to increase the number of graded establishments, develop a database of tourism products in the country, and address service levels and skills shortages.

The plan also involves ensuring tourism-friendly transport at focal points, and working with the Department of Safety and Security to implement a national tourism safety plan.

Industry transformation

Implementation of the Tourism BEE Charter and Scorecard, launched in 2005, was expected to start in 2006/07.

To kick-start this, the Charter Council was launched nationally in May 2006. A brand and corporate identity were developed to promote visibility and awareness of the council. The brand, "Be Empowered" can be used as a marketing tool by organisations that are certified to comply with the charter and scorecard.

Communication and marketing objectives were taken further with the development of the Tourism BEE Charter website, to serve as a one-stop shop for tourism BEE information. The website, www.tourismbeecharter.co.za, contains many useful tools for use by the industry.

Twelve call-centre agents from the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism were trained to deal with tourism BEE-related enquiries. A monthly stakeholder update keeps them informed of developments in the sector. Seven public-sector workshops were held to introduce the charter to state bodies.

After countrywide consultation with industry focus groups, a recognition and incentive framework to acknowledge contributors to the charter and scorecard, was compiled. This is based on a six-step approach whereby the industry is required to commit to transformation, fill in the attitudinal survey, self-assess and verify, culminating in regional and national tourism awards.

The tourism sector is expected to report annually on how it is complying with the charter. The verification systems and processes will guide the sector on how to verify their BEE status, and to report on progress. It will also identify creative ways to offset verification costs for SMMEs. Most importantly, it will provide a toolkit to guide the industry in its verification process.

The Tourism BEE Focal Points Forum meets quarterly to review progress concerning BEE



June 2007 was a good month for international conferences and congresses in South Africa.

Eleven were held, which brought an estimated 12 000 business tourists to the country.

Events included the 60th Annual World Newspaper Congress, the 14th World Editors' Forum, Mediatech Africa 2007, the World Economic Forum, and the third South African AIDS Conference.

Other events were the Markex World of Sport and Securex, the Cape Town Book Fair, the International Home Textile Exhibition, the Thailand Exhibition, and the International Symposium on Wood and Pulp Chemistry. They were hosted by the International Convention Centre in Durban, the Sandton Convention Centre, and the Cape Town International Convention Centre.

Five percent of the 8,4 million travellers who visited South Africa in 2006 were business tourists, who spent on average R1 427 a day, against leisure tourists spending R783 a day.

implementation and to strategise on how best to implement BEE at provincial and local levels.

There is also a beneficiaries' engagement strategy, aimed at encouraging black people to take advantage of the enabling environment brought about by the Tourism BEE Charter and Scorecard.

Through the Tourism BEE Charter Council, the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism hosted the first-ever Tourism BEE Consultative Conference at the Sandton Convention Centre in Gauteng, in April 2007. The conference, amongst other things, sought to:

- consult on the draft recommendations for aligning the Tourism BEE Charter with the codes of good practice
- launch the first annual report for the Tourism BEE Charter Council.

Domestic tourism growth

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism and South African Tourism launched the Domestic Tourism Growth Strategy at the Tourism Indaba in Durban in May 2004.

Domestic tourism is particularly valuable to the country because, unlike foreign tourism, it is not seasonal.

To continuously support the growth of the domestic industry, South Africa is:

- promoting the domestic-tourism brand

- promoting a set of experiences that relate to South African consumers
- distributing appropriate information in specific places
- facilitating the development of co-operative product packages
- developing marketing and distribution channels
- promoting repeat visitation.

Tourism Enterprise Programme (TEP)

The TEP is a public-private partnership between the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism and the Business Trust. The TEP facilitates the growth of tourism SMMEs, often by establishing links between SMMEs and larger customers. For 2006/07, the department provided R42 million in funding to TEP. In 2006/07, 1 683 SMMEs were trained, 6 525 jobs were created and 368 transactions were facilitated, of which 225 were BEE transactions.

The development of SMMEs is a high-priority issue for the Tourism Branch, not just to increase capacity in the tourism sector, but also to distribute the benefits of tourism and contribute towards national poverty-alleviation goals.

In 2007, the Tourism Branch helped 197 SMMEs to attend Indaba, South Africa's premier tourism event, where they could showcase their products. Indaba 2007 was held at the Inkosi Albert Luthuli International Convention Centre (ICC) in Durban during May.

Almost 200 SMMEs received funding of R7 000 each for marketing, transport and accommodation, on a cost-sharing basis. Indaba attendance has often proved a springboard for launching successful tourism SMMEs. In 2007, nine SMMEs were sponsored to attend the Japanese Association of Travel Agents' Travel and Trade Fair in Japan, 25 SMMEs were sent to the Jazz African Heritage Festival in North West, and nine to the *Internationale Tourismus-Börse* in Germany.

For the first time ever, tourism products for investment have also been identified. Sixteen products were identified in collaboration with the provinces and the Department of Trade and Industry. The products were packaged as investment-marketing material, and are now available to potential investors. The goal for

2007/08 was to identify additional projects and to approach potential investors.

Opportunities also abound in sectors such as construction, security services, transfers, volunteer training, grading assessment and event management.

South Africa is to invest R170 million in the TEP. Small businesses from around the country will be able to apply to the programme for assistance, partially for grading costs.

Other initiatives undertaken by the department in support of tourism SMMEs included establishing a business-training package for entrepreneurs, developing a tourism SMME-funding and -support handbook, and introducing the Department of Trade and Industry's incentives for tourism entrepreneurs.

Tourism Indaba

Indaba 2007 aimed to introduce industry participants to the fast-growing world of online tourism, as websites are increasingly seen as cost-effective ways for businesses to sell their products and services.

The 2007 Indaba, which has been dubbed "The Gold Standard Travel Trade Show" welcomed 12 223 attendees, which is 6% up on 2006's attendance figure.

Minister van Schalkwyk opened the four-day indaba, launching a new initiative designed to take advantage of the online travel industry. During the indaba, South African Tourism held an online marketing-education seminar, showing industry participants how to effectively harness the power of the Internet.

Other activities at the Indaba included the Gold Standard Travel Trade Show, the Industry Seminars and the Buyer's Networking Evening, the Media Face-Off, the Welcome Awards Ceremony, the SMME Networking Event and the Automobile Association (AA) Travel Awards.

Human-resource development

Tourism HRD is considered one of the pillars of the development of a responsible tourism culture in South Africa.

The department supports the full introduction of Travel, Tourism and Hospitality studies as a subject in schools. Travel and Tourism was introduced in 2000 in all schools wishing to offer the subject from grades 10 to 12.

In April 2006, South African Tourism launched an online course to equip the travel industry with skills to sell the country to locals.

The Theta-accredited Fundi Training Programme is a free and valuable addition to initiatives such as the Sho't Left Campaign. While the course is only available to travel agents and tour operators for now, it will be phased into schools and form part of tourism lessons in future.

The course entails five modules, including how to sell domestic travel in South Africa, an overview of the South African travel and tourism industry, South Africa's tourism infrastructure, unique provincial tourism-product offerings and sample itineraries for students to use as guidelines.

Tourism and Hospitality Education and Training Authority

Theta comprises the following chambers:

- Hospitality
- Conservation and Tourist Guiding
- Sport, Recreation and Fitness
- Tourism and Travel Services
- Gaming and Lotteries.

Every chamber has its own committee that helps Theta to identify industry needs. The Tourism Learnership Project (TLP) is a multimillion rand partnership between the Business Trust, Theta and the Department of Labour.



In 2006, there was a 6,4% increase in occupancy rates at hotels and other forms of accommodation, compared with 2005.

Figures in Statistics SA's (Stats SA) tourist accommodation survey, released in March 2007, showed that the number of stay unit nights sold during 2006 increased from 17 227 200 individual stays in 2005 to 18 330 900.

A stay unit is defined as a unit of accommodation available to be let out to guests, be it a hotel room or a powered site in a caravan park.

Furthermore, the number of stay unit nights sold during the fourth quarter of 2006 increased by 10,3%, from 4 544 300 to 5 014 500, compared with the fourth quarter of 2005.

The occupancy rate increased by 5,9%. In the fourth quarter of 2006, compared with the fourth quarter of 2005, the occupancy rate increased by 9,3%.

Income from accommodation in the fourth quarter of 2006 increased by 25,3%, totalling R528,1 million, compared with the fourth quarter of 2005.

The occupancy rate of 54,6% reported in November 2006 was the highest recorded since the beginning of the survey in September 2004.

Stats SA's figures also indicated that income from accommodation in 2006 increased by 17,7%, totalling almost R1,3 billion, compared with 2005.

The major contributors to the increase were hotels (10%), other accommodation (4,9%), and guest houses and guest farms (2,9%).

The TLP aims to raise the standards of South Africa's tourism industry by ensuring the development of useful, transferable and accredited skills. The TLP's three core objectives are to:

- accelerate the development of national qualifications for all primary subsectors of the tourism sector
- ensure the availability of national qualifications, which will trigger increased investment in training by employers
- develop systems and support the training of unemployed people through learnerships that provide them with the necessary skills to find jobs.

Tourist guiding

Illegal tourist guides undermine the efforts of legitimate guides. In February 2006, the Tourism Branch of the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism launched a campaign against illegal guiding.

Provincial tourist-guide registrars were trained and illegal guiding was monitored, resulting in illegal guides being stopped from operating. The branch continues to work with the industry and South African Police Service (SAPS) to curb illegal guiding.

It is estimated that 2010 will require 30 662 guides, at least half of whom should be black. By mid-2007, South Africa had about 10 000 guides, with only 30% black representation. Updating the database of tourist guides and ensuring that it

interfaces with provincial structures, will also be a priority.

Skills development

In 2006/07, the Tourism Branch and the NBI signed a memorandum of understanding (MoU). The goal was to engage with the tourism industry and other relevant stakeholders regarding conducting the skills-audit research project. It also outlined roles and responsibilities of the parties and areas where they wished to co-operate in advancing their common objectives.

A steering committee, consisting of all key stakeholders, including the departments of labour, of education and of trade and industry, was established to ensure alignment and co-ordination of skills-development issues across the industry. The steering committee's first major project was a comprehensive tourism skills audit, which was launched in 2006, to identify gaps in which available skills do not match industry demand or expectations.

A second highlight was the hosting of the National Tourism Skills-Development Conference at Muldersdrift, Gauteng, in October 2006. The conference was the first of its kind in South Africa, and drew together all stakeholders, including government, organised labour, the South African Non-Governmental Organisation Coalition and the TBCSA. To ensure that the conference included a global perspective, senior UNWTO specialists were approached to present a paper on skills development to delegates.

The conference adopted a declaration and action plan, which align with the national policy that tourism should be government-led, private sector-driven, community-based and labour-reliant. The conference declaration outlined the need for a forum to oversee all skills-development issues in the sector. Since the subsequent launch of the National Tourism Skills Development Forum, it has appointed five task teams (Sector Skills Plan, Curriculum Review, Information Management and Sharing, SMME Development and Accreditation System) to chart the way forward.

Foreign-language training is an important component of the overall skills-development plan, particularly for 2010. In 2007, various diplomatic



Figures released by the International Congress and Convention Association (ICCA) in April 2007 showed that South Africa held 64 international congresses in 2006, moving the country up to 31st spot on the international rankings.

According to the ICCA's *Meetings Market 2006 Statistics Report*, the leading destinations in the country were Cape Town, which hosted 42 congresses, Durban with seven and Pretoria with five.

Vital to Cape Town's allure has been the Cape Town International Convention Centre (CTICC), which was constructed in 2003.

According to the CTICC, bookings for congresses with more than 10 000 delegates have already been made for 2008, 2009, 2012 and 2014.

missions were approached to assist tourist guides with training in the French, Mandarin and Spanish languages. Of the original 161 French-language trainees who completed the first phase of training in all nine provinces, 142 proceeded to second-phase training. Seventy went on to complete their training by the end of March 2007. Of these, eight were expected to be placed in Paris in July 2007 for experiential learning.

A pilot programme was launched in Gauteng for Mandarin-language training, provided by a full-time teacher from China. Thirteen of the original 20 guides completed the course, followed by a two-month experiential learning phase in Beijing during August and September 2006.

The Spanish-language pilot programme in Gauteng and Limpopo was launched in August 2006. Thirty-four tourist guides enrolled, of whom 20 were expected to be selected to undergo experiential learning in Madrid during 2007/08.

In conjunction with the Deputy President's office, eight graduates were placed in the UAE, seven in India and by mid-2007, agreement was under way concerning 18 placements in the UK. The department, Theta and the tourism industry are facilitating a process of placing 1 500 unemployed tourism graduates in the industry. Some of them will later be selected for further internships abroad.

Hints for the tourist

Every traveller to South Africa must have a valid passport and, where necessary, a visa.

The Immigration Act, 2002 (Act 13 of 2002), stipulates that all visitors to South Africa are required to have at least one blank page (both back and front) in their passport to enable the entry visa to be issued. If there is insufficient space in the passport, entry will be denied.

Enquiries may be directed to South African diplomatic representatives abroad or to the Department of Home Affairs in Pretoria. Visas are issued free of charge. Visitors who intend travelling between South Africa and neighbouring countries are advised to apply for multiple-entry visas. Passport-holders of certain countries are exempt from visa requirements.

Tourists must satisfy immigration officers that they have the means to support themselves during their stay and that they have return or onward tickets. They must also have valid international health certificates.

Visitors from the yellow-fever belt in Africa and the United States of America (USA), as well as those who travel through or disembark in these areas, have to be inoculated against the disease.

Malaria is endemic to parts of KwaZulu-Natal, Mpumalanga and Limpopo. It is essential to take anti-malaria precautions when visiting these areas.

Foreign tourists visiting South Africa can have their value-added tax (VAT) refunded, provided the value of the items purchased exceeds R20.

VAT is refunded on departure at the point of exit.

South Africa's transport infrastructure – airlines, railroads, roads, luxury touring buses (coaches) and motor cars – is such that tourists can travel comfortably and quickly from their port of entry to any part of the country.

A number of international airlines, including South African Airways (SAA), operate regular scheduled flights to and from South Africa. Several domestic airlines operate in the country. There are also mainline trains to all parts of the country. (See Chapter 21: *Transport*.)

A steering committee was formed, comprising several departmental and industry stakeholders, to identify barriers to tourism growth arising from the National Land Transportation Transitional Act, 2000 (Act 22 of 2000). The committee was concerned that several provisions in the Act would not assist tourism growth.

One identified concern was that the Act does not differentiate between commuter and tourist transport, which has delayed the grading of tourism transport services. By November 2007, the Department of Transport was amending the Act to recognise the tourism transport sector and its needs.

By 2007, the transport branch had employed 40 additional immigration officers at OR Tambo and Cape Town international airports. This was expected to improve service levels by facilitating quicker entry for visitors.



The top-10 tourist attractions in South Africa are:

1. Kruger National Park
2. Table Mountain
3. Garden Route
4. Cape Town's Victoria and Alfred Waterfront
5. Robben Island
6. Beaches
7. Sun City
8. Cultural villages
9. Soweto
10. The Cradle of Humankind.

Source: SA Venues

The Tourism Branch also engaged the Department of Home Affairs concerning revising visa conditions in portfolio markets.

The aim is to incorporate tourism needs into the visa process, to be considered alongside traditional factors such as security. This process was expected to continue in 2007/08.

Accommodation

The tourist-accommodation industry in South Africa provides a wide spectrum of accommodation, from formal hotels to informal holiday flats and cottages, game lodges and reserves, guest houses, youth hostels and B&B establishments.

Some hotels cater for businesspeople and the high-end luxury market, but there are diverse hotels available across the country, ranging from family-centred establishments to international chains, and a growing selection of conference hotels, casino resorts and golf hotels.

There are also spa resorts, numerous options for the budget traveller, and a charming array of B&B accommodation and guest houses. Facilities range from the ultra-luxury to the rustic, but most are noted for their high-quality, personalised service and warm hospitality. Many have restaurants on site.

A variety of promotional material on South Africa are available. Comprehensive guides and maps cover all the regions and aspects of interest to tourists, including accommodation. Various useful tourism websites can be found on the Internet.

Quality assurance

The Tourism Grading Council of South Africa (TGCSA) inspects standards in the hospitality and accommodation industry.

This voluntary grading system, which was launched in 2001, uses internationally recognised star insignia to rate accommodation establishments and will be extended to include relevant businesses in classified sectors of the tourism industry. Once graded, establishments are encouraged to use the star system for marketing and advertising purposes.

Establishments are assessed according to the type of accommodation they provide. There are currently nine types of establishments:

- B&B
- guest house

- hotel
- self-catering
- backpacker and hostelling
- caravan and camping
- country house
- meeting, exhibitions, special events
- restaurants.

Grading assessors undergo training to receive the National Certificate in Tourism Grading, a world-first qualification. Assessors are accredited with Theta and registered with the TGCSA before being recommended to the industry.

Larger hotel groups with their own internal assessors are also accredited with Theta. Independent auditors conduct random audits. These auditors also assist in ensuring that the assessors adhere to a code of conduct.

Star grading is the only system recognised by government and the TGCSA.

Star gradings are displayed on most advertising material and at hotel entrances. Participation by hotels is voluntary and indicates a commitment to providing good service and regularly upgrading facilities. Star-graded establishments undergo annual quality checks to ensure that standards are maintained.

The grading categories are as follows:

- one star – fair to good; modest, clean, comfortable and functional
- two stars – good; quality furnishings, service and guest care
- three stars – very good; better furnishings, service and guest care
- four stars – superior; excellent comfort and very high standard of furnishings, service and guest care



A number of South Africa's top-end hotels feature regularly on some of the best-known "world's best" lists, such as the World Travel Awards, *Condé Nast Traveller Readers' Choice Survey*, and *Travel & Leisure* magazine's World's Best Awards.

The hotels include the Cape Grace, Arabella Sheraton Grand, Table Bay and Mount Nelson hotels in Cape Town; the Grande Roche in Paarl outside Cape Town; The Plettenberg along the Garden Route; the Grace in Rosebank; and Michelangelo, Saxon and Westcliff hotels in Johannesburg.

- five stars – exceptional; top-of-the-line quality and luxurious accommodation in line with the best international standards and stringent attention to service.

In 2006/07, the national effort to promote the grading of tourism establishments was given impetus by Cabinet's decision that national government should only use graded establishments for its travelling staff. Ensuring that national and provincial departments comply with this policy is an ongoing challenge.

Two workshops, attended by 27 national departments, were held in 2006 to explain the rationale behind Cabinet's decision and promote greater compliance.

Provinces are also being urged to comply with Cabinet's decision. By mid-2007, the Free State and KwaZulu-Natal had adopted the policy. The target was to increase this figure to five provinces in 2007/08, and to achieve at least 30% compliance among national departments.

Roadshows also revealed that many establishments, particularly SMMEs, allow their graded status to lapse after one year.

Further investigation revealed that many did not fully understand the benefits. Education and awareness initiatives to reinforce the benefits of grading were prioritised for 2007/08. Indaba 2007 saw the release of the *2007/08 Accommodation Guide*, which lists over 5 000 star-graded properties across all accommodation categories. The guide is the only one of its kind distributed by South African Tourism via its call centres internationally and is also distributed to all South African missions abroad.

AA Travel Guide offers another quality check for visitors to South Africa. The AA stamp of approval on promotional material indicates that a venue is highly recommended. Since 1994, the organisation has also been running an annual awards programme based on consumer feedback on some 1 200 AA quality-assured establishments. Qualified assessors visit high-scoring establishments to verify their scores.

Tourist safety

Crime has had a negative impact on the country's growing reputation as a desirable travel destination. However, the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism is lobbying and working together with safety and security agencies such as the SAPS, the National Intelligence Agency and the Department of Safety and Security.

During 2006, the Tourism Branch established a task team to assist in developing the National Tourism Safety and Awareness Strategy. All nine provinces are represented on the task team.

While crime-fighting initiatives are implemented locally, there is also a need for all provinces to develop their own tourism safety and awareness strategies which, in turn, will synchronise with the national strategy. Mpumalanga, the Western Cape and KwaZulu-Natal have completed its strategies. By mid-2007, the Free State and Limpopo's strategies were nearing completion. The remaining provinces were expected to finalise their strategies in 2007/08.

Agencies such as the International Marketing Council, have also been identified to help counter international perceptions about crime.

As part of its efforts to combat crime, the SAPS holds joint operations committee meetings with stakeholders at provincial level. A range of stakeholders attend these planning meetings which, previously, did not include tourism stakeholders.

The Tourism Safety and Awareness Strategy involves pro-active and support measures. A booklet containing safety tips for tourists has been revised and was distributed at the Tourism Indaba. The department, together with the SAPS, is working on the *Tourism Safety and Awareness Handbook for Practitioners*, which will serve as the definitive guide for the entire industry.

Research

Tourism data collection and dissemination is an important activity of the Tourism Branch, as a growing industry needs to be well informed. In 2006, the *Tourism Fact Sheet*, a credit card-sized Z-fold booklet that consolidates key annual



South Africa's Blue Train is one of the world's most luxurious railway services. There are two trains which run between Cape Town and Pretoria, to Hoedspruit in Mpumalanga, and along a section of the Garden Route between Cape Town and Port Elizabeth. They also travel to the Victoria Falls in Zimbabwe.

The first of the trains hosts 82 guests in 41 suites, while the second accommodates 74 guests in 37 suites. It also has a conference or observation car.

The trains travel at 90 kilometres an hour. Both are 336 m long and comprise 18 carriages, 11 of which are for the use of guests. Each train weighs about 825 metric tons, excluding the locomotives.

statistics on tourism, was produced. By mid-2007, 6 000 booklets had been distributed. The plan is to update and distribute the fact sheet annually.

There is also a need for research on aviation data. During 2006/07, an agreement was signed with the Airports Company of South Africa to receive their aviation data quarterly. This has helped to inform negotiations around airlift and other aviation issues.

The Tourism Satellite Account (TSA) is a key research tool, which calculates the value of tourism to the national economy, based on the data accumulated in 10 different tables.

By mid-2007, two tables had been partially filled, and the branch had appointed an economist to benchmark tourism's contribution to the economy, as an interim measure to increase knowledge of this area until the full TSA is implemented. The process resulted in two reports entitled *What is the Role of Tourism in the Economy?* and *What Drives Tourism in South Africa?*

These reports will also serve to inform the TSA development process. Statistics South Africa assisted by developing a model to populate tables using ratios and assumptions.

Tourism in the provinces Western Cape

The Western Cape lies at the southern tip of Africa. Considered one of the most beautiful regions in Africa, it is also the place where two oceans meet and the home of the famous fynbos vegetation.

The paternal presence of Table Mountain, the pristine coastline with its white sandy beaches, the magnificent countryside with its bountiful rivers, vleis and dams, fauna and flora, together with the warm summer climate and friendly community, make the Western Cape the perfect holiday destination.

Cape Metropole

Tourism in the city of Cape Town centres around the Victoria and Alfred (V&A) Waterfront, a working harbour offering everything from upmarket shopping malls, arts and craft markets, theatres and live music, to museums.

Other major attractions in the city include the Bo-Kaap Museum, the Castle of Good Hope, the

Company's Garden, the District Six Museum, flea markets, the Grand Parade, the houses of Parliament, the South African Cultural History Museum and the South African National Gallery. Also worth a visit are historical buildings in the Bo-Kaap and District Six.

The Gold of Africa Museum established by Anglo Gold houses a celebrated collection of more than 350 gold artefacts.

Air flips and trips are available, as are many boat and yacht trips from Table Bay Harbour, including trips to Robben Island (proclaimed a world heritage site and also the place where former President Nelson Mandela was imprisoned for 27 years).

The Nelson Mandela Gateway to Robben Island is in the Clock Tower Precinct at the V&A Waterfront. The gateway houses interactive multimedia exhibitions, an auditorium, boardrooms, the Robben Island Museum and a restaurant.

Jazz is big in Cape Town. From traditional blues through progressive jazz to African-influenced jazz, every taste is catered for at a number of restaurants, jazz cafés, cigar bars, pubs and wine farms. The top jazz event in the Western Cape is the annual Cape Town International Jazz Festival.

Table Mountain, which forms part of the Table Mountain National Park (TMNP), is a popular attraction for visitors and provides a majestic backdrop to the vibrant and friendly Mother City. An ultra-modern cableway takes visitors to the top of the mountain, providing spectacular views.

Newlands is home to the renowned Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden. In summer, various open-air concerts are held here.

The South African Rugby Museum in Newlands reflects the history of the sport as far back as 1891.



A brochure titled *Helpful Hints to Make Your Stay Enjoyable and Safe* is distributed to tourists at international airports. South African Tourism's state-of-the-art global call centre in Johannesburg offers information on travelling to South Africa.

Operated 24 hours a day and equipped with 19 international operators, the centre provides information telephonically and via e-mail to English, French, German, Italian, Dutch, Portuguese and Mandarin-speaking customers.

The Rhodes Memorial in Rondebosch is on the slopes of Table Mountain. It was built of granite from the mountain as a tribute to the memory of Cecil John Rhodes, prime minister of the Cape from 1890 to 1896. The University of Cape Town is worth a visit for its historic Middle Campus and many buildings designed by Sir Herbert Baker.

Cape Point, part of the TMNP, offers many drives, walks, picnic spots and a licensed restaurant. Care has been taken to protect the environmental integrity of this 22 100-hectare (ha) reserve of indigenous flora and fauna.

Simon's Town's naval atmosphere and Historic Mile are major attractions in the area. A statue of the famous dog and sailor's friend, Able Seaman Just Nuisance, stands at Jubilee Square.

Other attractions include the South African Naval Museum and the Warrior Toy Museum. One of only two of the mainland African penguin-breeding colonies in the world can be found at Boulders Beach, also part of the TMNP.

Hout Bay is well known for its colourful working harbour. Seafood outlets, round-the-bay trips to the nearby seal colony, shell and gift shops, and a famous harbour-front emporium attract many visitors. Duiker Island is a seal and sea-bird sanctuary. The World of Birds Wildlife Sanctuary is one of the largest bird parks in the world and houses some 3 000 birds.

In Oostenberg, visitors can enjoy some fine wine and flower farms, such as Zevenwacht Wine Estate with its graceful Cape Dutch homestead. Tygerberg Zoo boasts a collection of exotic animals.

Endless stretches of quiet beaches provide popular surfing and windsurfing spots. Big Bay in Bloubergstrand is a surfer's paradise and host to an international windsurfing event. Rietvlei Nature Reserve is a unique wetland area, with over 110 bird species, including pelicans and flamingos.

Canal Walk Century City is one of the largest shopping centres in Africa, with close to 400 shops, and is home to the largest cinema complex in South Africa.

Tygerberg is a vibrant and fast-growing area with a well-developed business centre, numerous sports fields, an international indoor-cycle track, well-kept golf courses and a racecourse. New Year in Cape Town is a festive affair, when the Cape minstrels take to the streets with their upbeat music and fancy costumes.

Garden Route

This area features the pont at Malgas, which is the only remaining pont in the country, ferrying vehicles and livestock across the Breede River. Whale-

watching attracts tourists at Witsand and Port Beaufort from June to November.

The Grootvadersbosch Nature Reserve outside Heidelberg comprises the popular Bushbuck Trail, a wilderness trail and two mountain-bike trails.

Riversdale is one of South Africa's most important fynbos export areas. Other attractions include the Julius Gordon Africana Museum.

At the historical Strandveld Architectural Heritage Site at Still Bay, visitors can watch tame eels being fed. Ancient fish-traps can be seen at Morris Point and the harbour.

At the aloe factories at Albertinia, aloe juice is extracted for medicine and high-quality skin-care products.

Nearby, bungee-jumping at the Gourits River Gorge, hiking, mountain-biking and angling are popular pastimes.

The Point in Mossel Bay is not only popular among surfers, but its natural pool formed by rock is also a favourite swimming spot at low tide. The St Blaize trail starts here and is the ideal place from which to watch the whales and dolphins at play in season.

The harbour at Mossel Bay is one of the most modern commercial and recreational harbours on the southern Cape coastline. PetroSA's Information Centre informs visitors about the production of synthetic fuels from Mossel Bay's offshore gas fields. Other attractions include the Attequas Kloof Pass, Anglo-Boer/South African War blockhouses and the Bartolomeu Dias complex.

Great Brak River offers a historic village with many opportunities for whale- and dolphin-watching along the extensive coast.

George is at the heart of the Garden Route. It is the mecca of golf in the southern Cape, as it is home to the renowned Fancourt Country Club and Golf Estate, as well as various other acclaimed golf courses. Board the Outeniqua Choo-Tjoe on its daily trip along the coastline between George and Knysna (except Sundays) at the Outeniqua Transport Museum.



By the end of 2007, United Kingdom-based RTL Games was set to launch the board game *Destination South Africa*. The game will introduce players to 45 South African locations that best convey the beauty and diversity of the country, offering a fun, interactive way for people abroad – and at home – to get to know South Africa better. The game sees players competing against each other using “taxis”, with the winner visiting the most places and collecting the most fares.

Visitors can also board the Power Van here, and enjoy a glimpse of the Garden Route Botanical Garden from this rail bus.

The George Museum, with its theme of timber history, offers ongoing exhibitions. The Montagu and Voortrekker passes are national monuments, providing spectacular views of the Outeniqua Nature Reserve, which offers several hiking trails.

The George Airport, the Outeniqua Pass, the railway line and the N2 offer convenient access to this region, making George the ideal hub from which to explore the Garden Route and Little Karoo.

Victoria Bay and Wilderness are popular for their unspoilt beaches. Wilderness is the western gateway to the southern Cape lakes area. It is a nature lover's paradise, best known for its beaches, lakes, placid lagoon and lush indigenous forests. Birdwatchers flock to the Langvlei and Rondevlei bird sanctuaries in the Wilderness National Park, which hosts over 230 different bird species.

Sedgefield borders Swartvlei Lagoon, the largest natural inland saltwater lake in South Africa. Activities include beach horse-riding, hiking, angling and birdwatching.

Knysna nestles on the banks of an estuary, guarded by The Heads (two huge sandstone cliffs) and surrounded by indigenous forests, tranquil lakes and golden beaches.

This natural wonderland is home to the largest and smallest of creatures, from the Knysna seahorse to the Knysna elephants, rare delicate butterflies and the endemic Knysna loerie, a colourful forest bird. Over 200 species can be found in the abundant fynbos and forest settings.

Knysna is also famous for its delectable home-grown oysters, enjoyed with locally brewed beer in quaint pubs and restaurants. An eclectic mix of art galleries showcases the diversity of talent in the area. There are also lagoon cruises, forest hikes, golf and adventure sports on offer.

Plettenberg Bay is adventure country, offering boat-based whale-watching, black-water tubing, hiking, and forest and cycling trails.

The Keurbooms River Nature Reserve at Plettenberg Bay offers a canoeing trail, while the Robberg Nature Reserve is a treasure trove of land, marine, geological and archaeological wealth.

At 216-m high, the bungee jump from the Bloukrans River Bridge on the border between the Western and Eastern Cape is the highest commercial bungee jump in the world.

Little Karoo

The Little Karoo's spectacular landscape is fashioned almost entirely by water. Its vegetation ranges from lush greenery in the fertile river valleys to short, rugged Karoo plants in the veld. Gorges feature rivers that cut through towering mountains, while breathtakingly steep passes cross imposing terrain. The region is also home to the largest bird in the world – the ostrich. The Little Karoo is rich in culture and history.

Excellent wines and port are produced in the Calitzdorp and De Rust areas. Oudtshoorn, the world's ostrich-feather capital, is the region's main town. The Swartberg Nature Reserve and Pass with its gravel roads are also worth a visit. The Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees is held in the town annually. Some 29 km from Oudtshoorn lie the remarkable Congo caves, a series of spectacular subterranean limestone caverns. Bearing evidence of early San habitation, the 30-cave wonderland boasts magnificent dripstone formations.

Amalienstein and Zoar are historic mission stations midway between Ladismith and Calitzdorp. Visitors can go on donkey-cart and hiking trails through orchards and vineyards, while the Seweweekspoort is ideal for mountain-biking, hiking, and protea and fynbos admirers.

Calitzdorp has four wine estates, three of which are open to the public. The spring water of the Calitzdorp Spa is rich in minerals and reputed to have medicinal properties. The Gamka Mountain Reserve is home to the rare and endangered Cape mountain zebra.

De Rust lies at the southern entrance to Meiringspoort. The Meiringspoort Gorge extends 20 km through the Swartberg Mountain Range. Half-way through there is a beautiful 69 m-high waterfall. Wine farms in the area are open to the public.

Ladismith is home to the Towerkop Cheese Factory. There are various hiking, mountain-biking and 4x4 trails in the area, as well as the Anysberg, Klein Karoo and Towerkop nature reserves.

Uniondale, on the main route between George and Graaff-Reinet, features the largest water-wheel in the country, the Old Watermill. Uniondale Poort is a scenic drive linking Uniondale with Avontuur in the Langkloof Valley.

At Vanwyksdorp, visitors can see how fynbos is dried and packed for the export market. Donkey-cart rides take visitors to Anglo-Boer/South African War grave sites.

Central Karoo

The Central Karoo, a fascinating semi-desert area, lies in the heart of one of the world's most unique and interesting arid zones.

This ancient, fossil-rich land, which is five times the size of Great Britain, is also home to the richest desert flora in the world.

In the Central Karoo, visitors will find the largest variety of succulents found anywhere on Earth.

Beaufort West, the oldest town in the Central Karoo, is often referred to as the "Oasis of the Karoo". The local museum displays awards presented to heart-transplant pioneer, the late Prof. Chris Barnard, a son of this town.

A township route introduces visitors to the Xhosa culture in the area. At the Karoo National Park on the town's doorstep, visitors can experience the flora and game of the Karoo. A challenging 4x4 route takes them to the escarpment and new areas of ecological discovery. The park is also home to a variety of game, as well as the highly endangered riverine rabbit.

Matjiesfontein, a national monument, offers tourists a peek into yesteryear and the opportunity to overnight in Victorian splendour. The village houses a transport museum and the Marie Rawdon Museum. Next to the transport museum is a large field on which the first international cricket match was played in South Africa.

Experience the vastness of the Great Karoo in Murraysburg, an ecotourist and hunter's paradise.

Laingsburg, a tiny village almost totally wiped out by floods a century after it was established, is the best place to study the geology of the region.

Prince Albert is a well-preserved town at the foot of the Swartberg mountains. It is the ideal place to sample a great variety of Karoo cuisine, see examples of local architecture dating back to the early 1800s, and enjoy several scenic drives. The Fransie Pienaar Museum introduces visitors to the cultural history of the area. It has a fossil room and an exhibit covering the gold rush in this area in the 19th century. The museum has a licence to distil and sell "witblits" (white lightning). Prince Albert is the closest town by road to Gamkaskloof.

The Hell, a little valley in the heart of the Swartberg mountains, was the home of one of the world's most isolated communities for almost 150 years. Today, Gamkaskloof is a nature reserve and national monument managed by Cape Nature Conservation. It has overnight facilities and can be accessed by a 57-km long (but two-hour-drive) winding road which starts at the peak of the Swartberg Pass.

Cape winelands

The Cape winelands, including the former Breede River Valley, are close to Cape Town. The Cape winelands feature dramatic mountains, rolling farmlands and peaceful vineyards. They are home to Route 62, the world's longest wine route.

Stellenbosch, the oldest town in South Africa, is also known as the "Eikestad" (City of Oaks). Various historical walks delight visitors. The town is a gracious blend of old Cape Dutch, Georgian and Victorian architecture. Dorp Street consists of one of the longest rows of old buildings in the country. The Stellenbosch Village Museum consists of four homesteads and gardens ranging from the late-17th to the middle-19th centuries.

The Spier Summer Arts Festival livens up sultry summer nights from November to March at the Spier Wine Estate near Stellenbosch. The Stellenbosch Wine Route comprises over 100 wine estates, most of which offer cellar tours.

The Freedom Monument at Pniel, which was built in 1992, commemorates the freed slaves who were the first settlers at the mission station, established in 1843.

Franschhoek has become known as the "Gourmet Capital" of the Cape. Originally known as Oliphantshoek, it was renamed after the arrival of Huguenots who were predominantly French. The Huguenot Monument was built in 1944 to commemorate their arrival in 1688.

Visitors can also enjoy various hiking trails and historical walks, as well as the *Vignerons de Franschhoek* wine route.

Paarl lies between the second-largest granite rock in the world and the Du Toit's Kloof mountains. It is famous for its Cape Dutch and Victorian



Tourism Month is celebrated every September to mark World Tourism Day, which is held annually on 27 September.

World Tourism Day aims to foster awareness among the international community of the importance of tourism and its social, cultural, political and economic values.

architectural treasures found along a 1-km stretch of the main street.

The area's fynbos vegetation supports a number of south-western Cape endemics, such as the Cape sugarbird and the orange-breasted sunbird.

The Afrikaanse Taalmonument is situated on the slopes of the Paarl Mountain, while the Afrikaanse Taalmuseum is in the centre of the town.

The town of Wellington lies in a picturesque valley, with the majestic Hawequa mountains on its eastern border. Apart from three renowned co-operative wineries, one can visit several prestigious wine cellars situated on historic Huguenot farms with Cape Dutch homesteads.

More than 90% of South Africa's vine-cutting nurseries are found in Wellington. The town is also the home of South Africa's dried-fruit industry.

Experience life as the pioneers lived in years gone by at the Kleinplasie Living Open Air Museum. The KWV Brandy Cellar, the largest of its kind in the world, offers cellar tours and brandy tastings.

Tulbagh is famous for its heritage, historical homesteads and magnificent country living. Church Street, home to 32 national monuments, constitutes the largest concentration of national monuments in one street in South Africa.

Ceres, named after the Roman goddess of fruitfulness, is the largest deciduous fruit-producing region in South Africa. Tours are offered at various fruit farms. The area also offers several 4x4 trails, horse-riding, mountain-biking and abseiling.

The Hex River Valley is the largest producer of table grapes in southern Africa. Visitors can pick their own grapes at harvest time and can sample the variety of export-quality produce.

The well-known Hex River 4x4 trail and the Ochre San rock art trails are a must for nature lovers.

De Doorns is situated in the heart of the Hex River Valley.

Situated on the Breede River, Bonnievale features several cheese factories. For the adventurous outdoor enthusiast there are canoe trips, birdwatching and riverboating.

Known as "The Valley of Wine and Roses", Robertson is one of the most beautiful areas in South Africa. Surrounded by vineyards, orchards,

delectable fruit and radiant roses, Robertson produces connoisseur-quality wines and is also known for its thoroughbred horses.

Renowned for its muscadel wines, Montagu is the gateway to the Klein Karoo and set in a fertile valley. Relax in the healing waters of the Avalon springs or visit the Montagu Museum, which houses, among other things, original cartoons and books by TO Honiball.

The area also offers several hiking trails, game-viewing drives, guided cultural tours and excellent rock climbs.

The picturesque village of Gouda is renowned for the Parrotts Den Pub, a living museum in the Gouda Hotel.

McGregor has a wealth of fascinating whitewashed, thatched cottages and well-preserved Victorian houses, making it one of the best-preserved examples of mid-19th century architecture in the Western Cape.

Prince Alfred Hamlet is the gateway to the Gydo Pass, known for its scenic views. This quaint village lies in an important deciduous-fruit farming area.

Hidden amidst vineyards and wine estates lies the picturesque town of Rawsonville, renowned for its array of award-winning wines. Tourists can enjoy an afternoon drive along the awe-inspiring Slanghoek Valley, with its lush vineyards and breathtaking views, or relax in the warm-water mineral springs at Goudini Spa.

West Coast

The West Coast is a region of extreme beauty and contrast. The solitary coast's scenic beauty is challenged only by rich culinary experiences of mussels, oysters, calamari, crayfish and abalone in season, or linefish pulled from the Benguela current's cold waters. The area is a birdwatcher's paradise. In addition, every year migrating whales visit the coastal waters from July.

Within two months of the first good winter rains, wild flowers on the West Coast explode in a brilliant array of colour. The Swartland region is known for its undulating wheat fields, vineyards, wineries and outdoor activities. Further north, visitors encounter the fertile Olifants River Valley and the vast plains of the Knersvlakte with its wealth of indigenous succulent plants.

The town of Darling draws visitors to its country museum and art gallery, annual wild flower and orchid shows, basket factory and wine cellars. The entertainment venue Evita se Perron is situated at the old Darling Railway Station and offers top entertainment from South African entertainers.

Malmesbury is the biggest town in the Swartland. Major attractions include the Malmesbury Museum and the historical walk-about.

The Riebeek Valley is known for its scenic beauty. The area has become a popular haven for well-known artists of various disciplines. Wines and olives can be tasted at various cellars.

Elands Bay is a popular holiday resort and surfer's paradise. Khoi and San rock art can be viewed at the Elands Bay caves.

Moorreesburg and Koringberg are major wheat-distributing towns. Tourists can visit the Wheat Industry Museum, one of only three in the world. Birdwatching, hiking, 4x4 routes, clay-pigeon shooting, mountain-bike trails, canoeing and waterskiing at Misverstand are popular activities.

Yzerfontein is famous for its unspoilt beaches, fynbos, beautiful views and whale-watching. Another major attraction is the historical lime furnaces.

Langebaan is a popular holiday destination. The West Coast National Park, an internationally renowned wetland that houses about 60 000 waterbirds and waders, attracts thousands of visitors each year. The park is also the site where the oldest anatomically modern fossilised human footprints were discovered.

The Langebaan Lagoon forms part of the park and is zoned for specific activities. The Postberg section of the park, across the lagoon, is famous for its wild flowers that bloom mainly during August and September.

Cape Columbine at Paternoster is the last manned lighthouse on the South African coast. The Columbine Nature Reserve is home to many seabird species.

Saldanha is a watersport enthusiast's paradise. Its attractions include Doc's Cave, a landmark on the scenic breakwater drive, and the Hoedjieskoppie Nature Reserve. There are various hiking trails in the SAS Saldanha Nature Reserve.

St Helena Bay is best known for the Vasco Da Gama Monument and Museum. Fishing (snoek in season), hiking, and whale- and birdwatching opportunities also draw many visitors.

Vredenburg, the business centre of the area, has a popular golf course with a bird hide where various species can be viewed.

Lambert's Bay is a traditional fishing village with Bird Island as a tourist attraction. It is a breeding ground for African penguins, the Cape cormorant and other sea birds. Visitors can also watch southern right whales here from July to November.

Piketberg offers arts and crafts, fauna and flora, wine culture and recreation. The Goedverwacht and Wittewater Moravian mission stations are close to the town.

Porterville is famous for its Disa Route (best in January and February). The Groot Winterhoek Mountain Peak in the Groot Winterhoek Wilderness Area is the second-highest in the Western Cape. The Dasklip Pass is popular with hang-gliders.

At Velddrif/Laaiplek, visitors can indulge in bakkems (a West Coast salted-fish delicacy) at factories along the Berg River. Tourists can also visit the salt-processing factory and the West Coast Art Gallery in town.

The citrus area in the Olifants River Valley is the third-largest in South Africa. The wine route from Citrusdal to Lutzville produces a selection of internationally acclaimed wines. The world-renowned rooibos tea is also produced here.

Citrusdal is famous for its citrus products and wines. The Citrusdal Museum depicts the pioneering days of the early colonists. The Goede Hoop Citrus Co-op is the largest single packing facility in South Africa. The annual Citrusdal Outdoor Calabash features, among other things, 4x4 outings, lectures and visits to rock-art sites, and an arts and crafts market.

The oldest orange tree in the country, calculated to be more than 250 years old, grows in the Citrusdal Valley.

The Sandveldhuisie is a recently built example of a typical Sandveld dwelling. There are several recognised mountain-biking, walking, hiking and canoeing trails and a sky-diving club.

Annually, scores of sky-diving enthusiasts visit Citrusdal for a skydiving "boogie" that lasts several days.

The Cederberg Wilderness Area features the elephant's foot plant, the rare snow protea, and some of the best examples of San rock art in the Western Cape.



Cape Town was ranked by the United States of America's prestigious *Travel and Leisure* magazine as the number-one city in Africa and the Middle East. The city also claimed 10th spot in the Best City in the World Category.

Visitors to Clanwilliam can visit the rooibos and velskoen factories and the grave of the well-known South African poet Louis Leipoldt. Various historical buildings can also be viewed. The Clanwilliam and Bulshoek dams are popular among watersport enthusiasts.

Wuppertal, at the foot of the Cederberg mountains, features the oldest Rhenish Mission Station. Proceeds from 4x4 trails in the area fund the creation of new hiking trails and building of more overnight huts and guest houses.

Vredendal is the centre of the Lower Olifants River Valley. Major attractions include marble-processing and manufacturing, industrial mines (dolomite and limestone), the KWV Grape Juice Concentrate Plant and Distillery, and the South African Dried Fruit Co-op. The town is also home to the Vredendal Wine Cellar, the largest co-operative wine cellar under one roof in the southern hemisphere.

The picturesque town of Doringbaai (Doring Bay) with its attractive lighthouse is well-known for its seafood.

Strandfontein, about 8 km north of Doring Bay, is essentially a holiday and retirement resort with a breathtaking view of the ocean.

Klawer was named after the wild clover growing in the area. During the flower season, the area is a kaleidoscope of colour. There are hiking trails as well as river-rafting along the Doring River.

Lutzville and Koekenaap are synonymous with wine and flowers in season.

Visitors can also view the Sishen-Saldanha Railway Bridge. Where the railway line spans the Olifants River, it is divided into 23 sections, each 45 m long. The 14 100-ton deck was pushed into position over teflon sheets with hydraulic jacks from the bridgehead. It is the longest bridge in the world built using this method.

Vanrhynsdorp houses the largest succulent nursery in South Africa. The Latsky Radio Museum houses a collection of old valve radios, some dating back to 1924. Birdwatching, mountain-biking, day walks, and hiking and 4x4 trails abound. The Troe-Troe and Rietpoort mission stations are a must-see for historians.

Overberg

In the most southerly region of Africa, just over an

hour's drive east of Cape Town, lies a fertile area surrounded by mountains and sea, called the Overberg.

The Hangklip-Kleinmond area comprises Kleinmond, Betty's Bay, Pringle Bay and Rooiels. It is a popular holiday region, ideal for whale-watching, and includes the Kleinmond Coastal Nature Reserve and the Harold Porter Botanical Garden.

The Penguin Reserve at Stoney Point, Betty's Bay, is one of two breeding colonies of the jackass penguin on the African continent.

South Africa's first international biosphere reserve, the Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve, was proclaimed by the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation in 1999. It runs along the coast from Gordon's Bay to the Bot River Vlei, stretching 2 km out to sea, and inland to the Groenlandberg mountains near Grabouw.

Hermanus is a popular holiday resort, famous for the best land-based whale-watching in the world.

Stanford is one of the few villages in South Africa where the market square has been retained. The central core of the village has been proclaimed a national conservation area. Award-winning wines are produced in the area (they have received Raka double gold veritas and Michelangelo awards for several of their wines).

Gansbaai is known for its excellent rock and boat angling, diving, shark-cage diving and whale-watching. The Danger Point Lighthouse, named as such because of the ships that have been wrecked and lives that have been lost on this dangerous coast, is open to the public.

De Kelders is the only freshwater cave on the African coast. Spectacular views of southern right whales can be enjoyed from the cliffs at De Kelders and along the coast to Pearly Beach. Also popular are white-shark tours, diving safaris and fishing trips.

Elim was founded by German missionaries in 1824, with its only inhabitants being members of the Moravian Church. Visitors are welcome to attend services. The Old Watermill (1833) has been restored and declared a national monument.

Popular sites in Napier include the Militaria Museum and Rose Boats and Toy Museum. The Shipwreck Museum in Bredasdorp, founded in 1975, specialises in shipwrecks found along the



South African coastline. The town also boasts the Audrey Blignault museum.

De Mond Nature Reserve is home to some rare bird species, including the damara tern and giant tern.

The Geelkop Nature Reserve derives its name from the mass of yellow flowering plants that cover the hill during spring.

The lighthouse at L'Agulhas, which forms part of the Agulhas National Park, is the country's second-oldest working lighthouse. It celebrated its 150th anniversary in 1999.

The Agulhas National Park, home to a rich and diverse plant population, boasts more than 110 *Red Data Book* species. Among these are the endangered Cape platanna and microfrog, and rare coastal birds such as the African oystercatcher. The damara tern finds the area ideal for breeding.

At Cape Agulhas, the southernmost tip of the continent, the waters are cleaved into the Indian and Atlantic oceans.

Struisbaai has the longest white coastline in the southern hemisphere.

Arniston was named Waenhuiskrans (coach-house cliff) by the local fishers in honour of the huge sea cave capable of housing several ox-wagons. For outsiders, it was named after the *Arniston*, a ship wrecked there in 1815. The Waenhuiskrans Cave can be explored at low tide.

The De Hoop Nature Reserve on the way to Swellendam includes an internationally renowned wetland and bird sanctuary. It is a winter retreat for the southern right whale and the Western Cape's only Cape griffen vulture colony.

The red Bredasdorp lily and many species of protea and erica are found in the Heuningberg Nature Reserve.

Swellendam is well known for its youngberries and eclectic architecture. The Drostdy Museum consists of a group of buildings containing a huge selection of period furniture. The Bontebok National Park, about 7 km from Swellendam, provides sanctuary to the threatened bontebok and other species.

Known for its world-class wine, Barrydale offers the visitor fruit and fresh air in abundance.

Situated on the N2, about 160 km from Cape Town, Riviersonderend offers beautiful mountain and river scenery, a nine-hole golf course and sightings of the blue crane.

Caledon is famous for its natural mineral waters, hot springs and wild-flower shows. Southern Associated Maltsters is the only malt producer for

the South African lager beer industry and the largest in the southern hemisphere.

Genadendal is the oldest Moravian village in Africa, with church buildings and a school dating back to 1738. The Genadendal Mission and Museum Complex documents the first mission station in South Africa.

The Theewaterskloof Dam outside Villiersdorp is the seventh-largest dam in the country. The Villiersdorp Wild Flower Garden and Nature Reserve has an indigenous herb garden and a reference library.

The Grabouw/Elgin district produces about 60% of South Africa's total apple exports and fine wines. The valley is also renowned for cultivating fresh chrysanthemums, roses and proteas. The Elgin Apple Museum is one of only two in the world. Sir Lowry's Pass offers spectacular views of False Bay from Gordon's Bay to Cape Point.

Northern Cape

Characterised by its vast expanses of space and silence, blazing summer sunshine and interesting and friendly people, the Northern Cape is a province rich with culture.

Diamond fields

The Big Hole in Kimberley is the largest hand-dug excavation in the world. In 1871, diamonds were discovered at the site and mined manually by prospectors. The Kimberley Tram Service dates from the beginning of the 20th century and still transports passengers from the City Hall to the Mine Museum.

Underground mine tours are a big attraction, as are the famous ghost tours, during which many historical buildings are seen from a different perspective. Hand and mechanical diamond-digging by private diggers can be viewed by appointment.

The McGregor Museum houses invaluable collections of the archaeological finds in the area, as well as San art works. The house where Sol Plaatje (African National Congress founding member and human-rights activist) lived in Kimberley, boasts a library of Plaatje's and other black South African writers' works, and several displays, including a portrayal of black involvement in the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

The Paterson Museum near the Kimberley Airport houses a replica of a Paterson biplane, which was used for pilot training by the flying school operated by the Paterson Aviation Syndicate at Alexandersfontein. A township tour of Galeshewe

provides a fresh perspective on South Africa's socio-historical realities. Pan African Congress founder Robert Sobukwe's house is situated there.

The Magersfontein Battlefield outside Kimberley with its original trenches and other defences intact, is the site of the Boers' crushing defeat of the British during the Siege of Kimberley. A cultural centre at Wildebeestkuil outside Kimberley features !Xun and Khwe artwork for sale and a tour of rock engravings by these indigenous people.

A short distance from Kimberley is the mining town Barkley West, which, due to its proximity to the Vaal River, is a favourite spot for many water-sport enthusiasts and anglers.

Tucked along the Vaal River near Barkley West lies the Vaalbos National Park. The park is not only home to large raptors, but is also a breeding centre for endangered African herbivores such as rhino, roan and sable antelope and disease-free buffalo.

Kalahari

At Black Rock, visitors have the opportunity to view a worked-out manganese mine.

Danielskuil lies at the foot of the Kuruman hills. The Tswana people occupied the area before it became home to the Griquas. Boesmansgat, on the farm Mount Carmel outside Danielskuil, is a unique natural sinkhole – the second-deepest and largest of its kind in the world.

Known as the "Oasis of the Kalahari", Kuruman is blessed with a permanent and abundant source of water that flows from Gasegonyana (Tswana for "the little water calabash") – commonly called the "Eye of Kuruman".

Moffat's Mission in Kuruman is a tranquil place featuring the house of missionary Robert Moffat, the church he built, and several other buildings. Moffat translated the Bible into Setswana – the first African language in which the Bible was made accessible.

The printing press on which he printed the first 2 000 copies can still be viewed. The church he built seats 800 people and is still in use. David Livingstone married Moffat's daughter and started many famous travels from this mission station.

The Wonderwerk Cave at Kuruman features extensive San paintings that may be viewed by appointment.

The Kalahari Raptor Centre cares for injured birds. Many of these majestic creatures can be seen at close quarters. Another marvel is the Witsand Nature Reserve, situated about 80 km south-west of Postmasburg, which features a 100-m high dune of brilliant white sand. It stretches for about 9 km and is about 2 km wide.

Green Kalahari

The roaring sands on the farm Doornaar near Groblershoop are an interesting site. The white dunes, surrounded by typically red Kalahari dunes, are said to "roar" when the wind blows.

Eleven waterwheels are still used today along the hand-built irrigation canals at Kakamas. The Orange River Wine Cellar Co-op Rockery Route runs between Keimoes and Kakamas.

Kanoneiland is a settlement on the biggest island in the Orange River.

At Keimoes, the Orange River flows at its widest. The Tierberg Nature Reserve offers spectacular views of the Keimoes Valley and the many islands in the Orange River. The original irrigation canal system is still in use. The Orange River Wine Cellar Co-op's largest cellar is situated here.

Kenhardt is the oldest town in the Lower Orange River area. The Quiver Tree Forest and Kokerboom Hiking Trail, consisting of between 4 000 and 5 000 quiver trees, are within easy driving distance of the town. Upington is the commercial, educational and social centre of the Green Kalahari, owing its prosperity to agriculture and its irrigated lands along the Orange River. A camel-and-rider statue in front of the town's police station pays tribute to the "mounties", who patrolled the harsh desert territory on camels.

The South African Dried Fruit Co-operative is the second-largest and one of the most modern of its kind in the world. Tours of the plant are offered and freshly packed dried fruit is sold.

The Orange River displays its impressive power at the Augrabies Falls, also known as the "Place of Great Noise", in the Augrabies Falls National Park. Visitors can hire canoes to ensure closer contact with the natural heritage surrounding the world's sixth-largest waterfall.

The Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park comprises 38 000 m² of land, making it one of the largest



conservation areas in the world. Straddling the Green Kalahari and Botswana, the park is a two-million ha sanctuary for various raptors, antelope, gemsbok, springbok, blue wildebeest, red hartebeest, eland, Kalahari lion, black-maned lion, brown and spotted hyena, leopard, cheetah, and smaller game, including mongoose, porcupine and the endangered honey badger.

The names of various landmarks within the park reflect its long history as a crossroads of many cultures, which have included the San, the Mier, the Huguenots and the Scottish at various times.

The park is an important element of the first phase of the Transfrontier Conservation Area 2010 Strategy, which is a priority of the SADC.

Namaqualand

The indigenous people of the Namaqualand region are the Namas. Their traditional Nama reed huts still abound in Leliefontein, Nourivier and Steinkopf.

Namaqualand is famous for a spectacular annual show in spring when an abundance of wild flowers covers vast tracts of desert. The flowers sprout and survive for a brief period before they wilt and disappear in the blistering heat and dry conditions just as suddenly as they had appeared.

The small town of Garies is the centre for those setting out to enjoy spring's show of exuberance in the Kamiesberg.

After diamonds were discovered along the West Coast in 1925, Alexander Bay was known for its mining activities. The town is no longer a high-security area and no permits are needed to enter. The Alexkor Museum paints a picture of the history of the area. The town also features the world's largest desert lichenfield that has some 26 species.

At Hondeklip Bay, visitors can dive for crayfish and watch the local fisherfolk conduct their trade.

Established as a small-vessel harbour and railway junction in 1954 for the copper-mining industry, Port Nolloth is a centre for the small-scale diamond-recovery and crayfish industries. It is the only holiday resort on the Diamond Coast. The local factory sells fish and crayfish in season.

Set in a narrow valley bisecting the granite domes of the Klein Koperberge lies Springbok.

South of Springbok, near Kamieskroon, lies the Skilpad Wild Flower Reserve, part of the Namaqua National Park, which captures the full grandeur of the flower season. The 1 000-ha reserve operates only during the flower season.

The Goegap Nature Reserve comprises 15 004 ha of typically granite, rocky hills and sandy

flats. The reserve also offers a 4x4, and several hiking and mountain-biking trails.

Namaqualand is also home to the Ais-Ais/Richtersveld National Park. It is managed jointly by the local Nama people and South African National Parks.

Upper (Bo-Karoo)

Flanked by the Towerberg, Colesberg is one of the Northern Cape's most beautiful towns.

The town features one of the country's last working horsemills. An Anglo-Boer/South African War tour is also on offer. A weekend tour includes a visit to the Norvalspont prisoner-of-war camp and cemetery. Colesberg has bred many of the country's top merino sheep. It is also renowned for producing high-quality racehorses.

De Aar is the most important railway junction in South Africa. The author Olive Schreiner lived in the town for many years. Visitors can dine in her former house, which has been converted into a restaurant.

Hanover is known for its handmade shoes and articles made mostly from sheepskin and leather.

The "Star of South Africa" diamond was discovered at Hopetown. The town, which is steeped in history, also features an old toll house and a block house dating from the Anglo-Boer/South African War.

At Wonderdraai near Prieska, visitors can see the horseshoe-shaped island formed by the flow of the Orange River. It seems as if the river turns to flow uphill.

Vanderkloof was built to house the people building the Vanderkloof Dam. Today, it is a flourishing holiday resort. Visitors can enjoy waterskiing, boardsailing, boating and swimming, or visit the Eskom Hydroelectric Power Station situated within the dam's wall.

Victoria West is home to the Apollo Theatre, South Africa's last operational art deco movie theatre from the 1950s. The theatre comes alive each September with the Apollo Film Festival. The rare riverine rabbit is found in the Victoria West Nature Reserve.

Hantam Karoo

Near the small town of Brandvlei lies Verneukpan, where Sir Malcolm Campbell unsuccessfully attempted to break the world land-speed record in 1929.

Carnarvon is well known for its corbelled dome-roofed houses built of flat stones because of a lack of wood. The floors of these interesting houses

were smeared and coloured with a rich red mixture of fat and oxblood and polished with smooth stone.

A few kilometres outside Fraserburg lies the Gansfontein Palaeosurface.

Discovered in 1968, it comprises several trackways of large, four-footed and five-toed mammalian reptiles. The prints are estimated to be some 190 million years old.

Sutherland, birthplace of well-known Afrikaans author and poet NP van Wyk Louw, is known for its brilliant night skies and cold, biting winters.

The sterboom (star tree), which blossoms in September, is found only in Sutherland.

The South African Astronomical Observatory's (Saa) observation telescopes, including the Southern African Large Telescope (Salt), are in Sutherland. From Monday to Saturday, the Saa offers two guided tours a day and two night tours a week.

Day tours entail a guided walk through the visitors' centre adjacent to the telescope sites on the mountainside and a guided tour of selected telescopes, including Salt.

During night tours, visitors' can view interesting objects in the sky through two dedicated visitors' telescopes. Booking is essential.

Free State

The Free State lies in the heart of South Africa with the Kingdom of Lesotho nestling in the hollow of its bean-like shape.

Between the Vaal River in the north and the Orange River in the south, this immense rolling prairie stretches as far as the eye can see.

This central region is characterised by endless rolling fields of wheat, sunflower and maize, and forms the principal bread basket of South Africa.

Motheo

With its King's Park Rose Garden containing more than 4 000 rose bushes, the Free State's major city, Bloemfontein, has rightfully earned the nickname "City of Roses". The city also hosts an annual rose festival.

The Eerste Raadsaal (First Parliament Building), built in 1849 as a school, is Bloemfontein's oldest surviving building. Still in its original condition, this historical building is used as the seat of the Provincial Legislature.

The National Afrikaans Literary Museum and Research Centre has a repository of works by prominent Afrikaans authors. Exhibits in the Afrikaans Music Museum and the Theatre Museum (part of the centre) include old musical instruments, sheet music, costumes, photographs and furniture.

The national museum is notable for its wide collection of fossils, cultural-historical exhibits and archaeological displays, including the Florisbad skull, which was discovered in the 1930s at the Florisbad Spring, about 50 km north of Bloemfontein.

The National Women's Memorial is a sandstone obelisk, 36,5-m high, which commemorates the women and children who died in concentration camps during the Anglo-Boer/South African War from 1899 to 1902. Visitors get a glimpse of life in the concentration and prisoner-of-war camps. The research library contains an extensive collection of Africana.

The Old Presidency dates back to 1885 and was the official residence of three presidents of the former Republic of the Orange Free State. It houses a museum depicting their respective terms of office, and a cultural centre for art exhibitions, theatrical productions and musical events.

The Observatory Theatre in Bloemfontein's game reserve is a unique attraction.

Bloemfontein has a busy cultural and social-events calendar. One of the annual events not to be missed is the Mangaung African Cultural Festival, popularly known as the Macufe Arts Festival, in September.

The Sand du Plessis Theatre and Art Gallery at Oliewenhuis are also worth visiting.

Botshabelo (Place of Refuge), 45 km from Bloemfontein on the N8 road to Lesotho, is believed to be the largest township settlement in the Free State – and the second-largest in South Africa after Soweto.

Nearby, the town of Thaba Nchu features luxury hotels and a casino, with the Maria Moroka Nature Reserve surrounding Thaba Nchu Sun and the Setlogelo Dam.

Xhariep

Bethulie used to be a London Missionary Society station. The original mission buildings still stand.

The Pellissier House Museum depicts the history of events in the area.



The Gariep Dam, more than 100-km long and 15-km wide, is part of the Orange River Water Scheme, the largest inland expanse of water in South Africa.

Between the dam and Bethulie is the Gariep Dam Nature Reserve. On the southern side of the dam lies the Oviston Nature Reserve.

Philippolis, the oldest town in the Free State, was founded as a London Missionary Society station in 1824. It was the first mission station in the province.

Trompsburg is the hub of the Free State Merino sheep-farming industry.

The Tussen-die-Riviere Nature Reserve reputedly supports more game than any other sanctuary in the Free State and receives hunters in autumn and winter.

A fountain near Koffiefontein was a favourite outspan for transport riders in the 19th century. In June 1870, one of these transport riders picked up a diamond near the fountain. This prompted a rush, and by 1882 Koffiefontein was a booming town with four mining companies.

Thabo Mofutsanyana

With its beautiful snow-capped mountains providing a backdrop to numerous romantic hideaways, this untouched, pristine area with its breathtaking scenery possesses grandeur of majestic proportion.

The Basotho Cultural Village in the QwaQwa Nature Reserve is a living museum where visitors can witness the Sotho traditions and lifestyle in the chief's kraal.

Clocolan is known for its cherry trees, which provide a spectacular sight when they blossom in spring. San rock paintings and engravings are also found in the area.

Clarens is often described as the “Jewel of the Free State”, owing to its spectacular scenery. San paintings are found on farms in the area. Close by, the Highlands Route meanders along the foothills of the Maluti mountains. One can also explore the magnificent mountain scenery by bike. The town offers art excursions and painting getaways and has 14 art galleries.

Ficksburg is known for its cherry and asparagus farms. Every November a cherry festival is held there. The town is a gateway to the Mountain Kingdom of Lesotho.

The Golden Gate Highlands National Park, known for its beautiful scenery, is a very popular holiday destination. A vulture restaurant allows visitors to observe these scavengers closely. San paintings can also be viewed.

The Highlands Route follows the Lesotho border via Ladybrand and ends at Zastron in the south. San caves and rock art are some of the main features of the route.

The birdwatching mecca of Seekoeivlei Nature Reserve near Memel constitutes a wetland with Ramsar status, and is surrounded by private game and holiday farms.

Lejweleputswa region

Bethlehem lies on the banks of the Jordaan River and was founded by the Voortrekkers during the 1840s. The museum in Miller Street depicts the history of the area. The banks of the Jordaan River form part of the Pretoriuskloof Nature Reserve – a sanctuary for birds and small game.

Van Reenen's Pass winds through the Drakensberg, and was originally used by migrating herds of zebra, hartebeest, blesbok and wildebeest. The Llandaff Oratory in the nearby village of Van Reenen is believed to be the smallest Roman Catholic Church in the world.

At Harrismith, there are various memorials in honour of those who fought in the Anglo-Boer/South African War and World War I. Of particular interest is a memorial for the Scots Guards and Grenadier Guards.

Platberg, the 2 394-m “flat mountain”, is the town's landmark. A well-known race, claimed by some to be the toughest in the country, is run annually up, along and back down the mountain. Sterkfontein Dam is ideal for water sports and fishing.

The Riemland Museum in Heilbron depicts the heritage and agricultural activities of the region.

The QwaQwa district is a traditional home to the Basotho people. Karakul carpets, mohair, wall hangings, copper, glassware and brass are made and sold at Phuthaditjhaba. The nearby Metsi Matsho and Fika Patso dams are renowned for trout-fishing.

Welkom is known for its gold mines. It is also the only city in the country where traffic circles are used instead of traffic lights.

The world's deepest wine cellar is at the St Helena Mine, which is 857 m below the Earth's surface.

Bothaville is regarded as the centre of the Free State Maize Route. The Nampo Harvest Farm and Festival attracts more than 20 000 visitors each year and is the second-largest private agricultural show in the world. Bothaville also hosts the annual Food and Witblits Festival, drawing visitors from all over South Africa.

Winburg is the oldest town and first capital of the former Republic of the Orange Free State. The Voortrekker Museum, using life-size models, depicts the daily routine of the trekkers. A concentration camp cemetery is situated close by.

Sasolburg originated in 1954 with the establishment of Sasol, the synthetic fuel producer.

Parys, which is situated on the banks of the Vaal River, is a popular holiday destination.

The nearby Vredefort Dome World Heritage Site was caused by the collision of a meteorite with the Earth many years ago. It features unique fauna and flora, including 100 different plant species, more than 300 types of birds and a variety of small mammals. Various hiking and mountain-bike trails are also on offer.

Eastern Cape

The main feature of the Eastern Cape is its magnificent coastline. With its wide open sandy beaches, secluded lagoons and towering cliffs, the Indian Ocean coastline provides the province with a rich natural tourist attraction, which is also a paradise for watersport enthusiasts. Added to the diverse coastal experiences are more than 60 state-owned game reserves and more than 30 private game farms, which collectively cover an area greater than the Kruger National Park.

Amatola mountain region

The Amatola mountains are famous for their scenery and history, and stretch from Adelaide in the east to Stutterheim in the west. With its lush forests and ancient battlefields, it is an area steeped in Xhosa culture and early settler history.

The dense forests of the Amatolas are a haven for the endangered Cape parrot, and were also home to the first dinosaur to be identified in South Africa, the Blinkwater Monster; a large fossilised reptile discovered near Fort Beaufort.

Outdoor enthusiasts enjoy Cathcart, where trout-fishing, hiking, riding and birdwatching are among the attractions.

The Amatole Hiking Trail is a well-known scenic, but strenuous, trail.

The coastal city of Port Elizabeth, which has earned the name "Friendly City", is a superb holiday destination offering a diverse mix of eco-

attractions. The Isuzu National Sailing Week is held annually in April in the waters of Algoa Bay.

The Red Location Museum of the People's Struggle in New Brighton – winner of three international awards – was designed to be both a monument to South Africa's struggle against apartheid and an integral part of community life in a township that acted as a crucible for the struggle.

The city boasts various scuba-diving sites. Visitors can also visit Bay World with its oceanarium and snake park, and many splendid museums. Other attractions include the Greater Addo Elephant National Park and game reserves; the traditional healing village, Kaya Lendaba; birdwatching; air tours; canoeing; various mountain-bike and horse-riding trails; and organised outdoor excursions.

Within the city there are some beautiful parks with well-landscaped gardens, including the St George's Park, which covers 73 ha and houses the famous Port Elizabeth Cricket Club, the oldest bowling green in South Africa, Prince Alfred's Guard Memorial, the 1882 Victorian Pearson Conservatory, and the 54-ha Settlers' Park.

Tourists can also explore the Donkin Heritage Trail, take a ride on the famous Apple Express, and hike along the site of ancient shipwrecks on the Sacramento Trail. At King William's Town, tourists can visit the Amathole Missionary Museum. The grave of Black Consciousness activist, Steve Biko, is also in the town.

Wild Coast

Since Portuguese mariners first pioneered the sea route around the Cape to India, this notorious coast has claimed countless ships.

Southern right and humpback whales and their calves are regularly spotted from the high dunes, usually between May and November, while common and bottlenose dolphins are often seen close to shore.

The entire region, once known as the "Transkei homeland", is the home of a major section of the Xhosa-speaking southern Nguni (or Pondo) tribes. Brightly coloured examples of their beadwork, together with traditional pottery and basketry can be bought from roadside vendors and at some trading posts.



Visitors to the rural village of Qunu can view the childhood home of former President Mandela. In the city of Mthatha, the Nelson Mandela Museum tells the story of this great figure. The museum is a collection of heritage sectors spread across three locations: Qunu, Mveso and Mthatha. A display reflecting the life and times of Mandela can be found at the Bhunga Building section of the Nelson Mandela Museum in Mthatha. Mandela has received thousands of gifts from presidents, groups and ordinary people. Accepted on behalf of the people of South Africa, they are in safekeeping at the museum for the benefit and appreciation of the nation. Artefacts range from children's letters to jewelled camel covers.

The alignment of the N2 national route along the Wild Coast will help open up investment opportunities in this area.

Coffee Bay is popular among surfers, anglers and shell collectors.

To the south is the prominent rock formation, the Hole-in-the-Wall. The local Xhosa call this place Izi Kheleni (Place of Thunder). During high tide, the waves move through the hole in such a way that the concussion can be heard throughout the valley.

Karoo

The vast plains of the Karoo have an air of grandeur and its many picturesque towns are steeped in history.

The Owl House in Nieu Bethesda displays the creative talent of the late Helen Martins. Statues of mermaids, wise men, camels, owls and churches create a wonderland in the garden. All the artworks were created with broken bottles, bits of mirror and cement.

More than 200 houses in Graaff-Reinet have been restored to their original Victorian appearance, and proclaimed national monuments. The Old Library Museum houses the Lex Bremner Fossil Collection of Karoo reptile fossils and a collection of Khoi and San art reproductions. Urquhart House has a popular genealogical research centre.

Almost 50 km south-west of Graaff-Reinet is the Kalkkop Crater, a gigantic circular impact that is of major scientific importance.

To the north-west of Graaff-Reinet lies the Valley of Desolation. A steep and narrow road leads into the mountains that surround the valley.

The Valley of Desolation is a national monument within the Karoo Nature Reserve, and was formed millions of years ago by weathering erosion.

The first evidence of the presence of dinosaurs in South Africa can be viewed at Maclear.

The Mountain Zebra National Park is a haven for the Cape mountain zebra species, which at one time inhabited most of the Cape. The park saved these animals from extinction and today their population stands at about 350.

Other species found in the park include various antelope such as eland, the African wildcat, bat-eared fox, and more than 200 bird species, including the pale-winged starling, the booted eagle and the blue crane.

N6 Route

This route runs from Bloemfontein to East London. Popular attractions include the slopes of the Tiffindell Ski Resort and the trout-filled streams, as well as the many caves adorned with ancient rock art.

Several historic towns can be found in the region, including Barkly East, Rhodes, Lady Grey, Elliot, Aliwal North, Burgersdorp and Queenstown.

Sunshine Coast

The Sunshine Coast comprises miles of unspoilt, sun-drenched beaches.

Port Alfred lies at the mouth of the Kowie River. Coastal hills are home to the oribi – a small territorial buck that was recently near extinction.

Inland, Grahamstown is sometimes referred to as the “City of Saints”, because of the more than 40 churches found in the town. It is also known for the National Arts Festival, which is held annually. During the festival, Grahamstown is transformed into a dedicated arts venue where performers, visual artists, audiences, writers and craftspeople fuse in a celebration of creative energy.

Other attractions include various museums and historical buildings, the oldest post-box in South Africa, botanical gardens, the cathedrals of St Michael and St George, nature reserves and hiking trails.

Situated north-east of Grahamstown, the Great Fish River Reserve consists primarily of valley bushveld habitat and is surrounded by both tribal land and commercial game reserves and farms.

The reserve boasts abundant wildlife such as white rhino, giraffe, waterbuck, Cape buffalo, hippo, kudu, springbok and eland.

There are several historic forts and remains from the legendary frontier wars located in the area.

East London, South Africa's only river port city, was originally established as a supply port to serve the colonial British military headquarters at King

William's Town. The city's own waterfront development, Latimer's Landing, is situated on the banks of the Buffalo River. The East London Aquarium houses approximately 400 different marine and freshwater species.

The East London Museum depicts the natural environment and rich heritage of the region. Best known for the prehistoric coelacanth, the museum also displays reconstructions of the extinct dodo of Mauritius, along with the only extant dodo egg in the world.

The Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area is the largest of the inland protected areas and provides opportunities to visit spectacular fynbos-covered mountains on foot or in off-road vehicles.

There is a fascinating shell collection at the Shell Museum at Kei Mouth.

Tsitsikamma

This region, stretching from Plettenberg Bay to Jeffreys Bay, is renowned for its dense forests, majestic mountains and deep river gorges. It forms the eastern end of the Garden Route.

The word *tsitsikamma* is derived from the Khoekhoen words "tse-tsesa" meaning clear, and "gami" meaning water.

South Africa's first marine park, the Tsitsikamma National Park, extends along a rocky coastline of 50 km, and 3 km out to sea.

Inland, adventure-seekers will find deep gorges and temperate evergreen forests criss-crossed by six hiking trails, including the five-day Otter Trail. The varied wildlife includes dolphins and whales, caracal, genet, chacma baboon, dassie and mongoose.

Another popular adventure is a black-water tubing experience on the Storms River.

Prominent bird species in the area are the African black oystercatcher, the orange-breasted sunbird, the Nerina trogon and the colourful Knysna loerie. A lucky few may catch a glimpse of the rare Cape clawless otter, which the Otter Trail is named after.

Limpopo

Limpopo is a land of dramatic contrasts characterised by hot savanna plains and mist-clad mountains, age-old indigenous forests and cycads alongside modern plantations, and ancient

mountain fortresses and the luxury of contemporary infrastructure and modern-day facilities.

Steeped in history, Limpopo celebrates a rich cultural heritage, and at many archaeological sites the mysteries of the past and ancient peoples are still being unearthed. The present tranquility of the province belies a turbulent past, to which many monuments and museums attest. Much of the land, particularly in the Kruger National Park and other game and nature reserves, is unspoilt, and provides sanctuary to large numbers of game.

Waterberg

The Nylsvley Nature Reserve boasts one of the greatest concentrations of waterfowl and bushveld birds in South Africa. More than 400 species frequent the area.

The Mokopane vicinity has several nature reserves. The Arend Dieperink Museum features a fine cultural-historical collection, and the Makapan caves are notable for their fossils. The caves are being developed into an archaeological site.

Makapan Valley is an extension of the Cradle of Humankind World Heritage Site. The Makapansgat caves and limeworks near Mokopane represent an archaeological site of global importance.

The Thabazimbi district has a large concentration of private game reserves and is one of the fastest-growing ecotourism areas in the country. The Marakele National Park is home to some rare yellowwood and cedar trees and the world's largest colony of Cape vultures. It is also a leader in the conservation of the black rhino outside of the Kruger National Park and the KwaZulu-Natal parks.

Bela-Bela is known for its hot springs. There are also a number of game reserves and leisure resorts in the area.

The Waterberg range is rich in indigenous trees, streams, springs, wetlands and birdlife. Cliffs known as the "Palace of the Vultures" harbour a large breeding colony of Cape vultures. Modimolle is the region's main town.

Capricorn district

The Bakone Malapa Open-Air Museum outside Polokwane is a traditional Northern Sotho kraal.



Men and women practise traditional skills such as making baskets, clay pots, furniture and utensils, and preparing hides.

Polokwane is considered the premier game-hunting destination in South Africa. It is ideally located near the neighbouring countries of Botswana, Zimbabwe, Mozambique and Swaziland.

Zion City at Moria near Polokwane is the headquarters of the Zion Christian Church, which attracts more than a million pilgrims every Easter.

Polokwane hosts a great variety of museums and art galleries.

Vhembe district

The Mapungubwe Archaeological Site, situated 80 km west of Musina, lies within the boundaries of the Mapungubwe National Park. It is one of the richest of its kind in Africa and a world heritage site. Excavations in the 1930s uncovered a royal graveyard, which included a number of golden artefacts, including the famous gold-foil rhinoceros.

The Schoemansdal Voortrekker Town and Museum, west of Makhado, is built on the site of an original Voortrekker village and depicts their lifestyle between 1848 and 1852.

Also worth visiting is the Big Tree in the Mutale Municipality; the Tshatshingo potholes; the mystical lake of Dzivhafundudzi; and the holy forest and waterfalls at Phiphidi.

Mopani district

The Modjadji Nature Reserve, north of Tzaneen, is named after the legendary Rain Queen, Modjadji, who is believed to have settled in the area early in the 16th century. The reserve encompasses the world's largest concentration of the cycad species *Encephalartos transvenosus*, also known as the Modjadji cycad.

The Hans Merensky Nature Reserve and Mineral Spa on the southern banks of the Great Letaba River supports a large variety of game. At the adjoining Tsonga Kraal Open-Air Museum, arts, crafts and traditional huts reflect the Tsonga lifestyle of 100 years ago.

The Kruger National Park (northern section) is one of South Africa's major tourist attractions. The park is home to a large number and wide variety of amphibians, reptiles and birds, as well as 147 mammal species, including the Big Five.

Thulamela, in the northern part of the Kruger National Park, was opened to guided groups in June 1997. This followed seven years of archaeological excavations, which brought to light the skeletons of

two ancient royals and a multitude of artefacts, including gold bangles, beads and a double gong.

Bohlabela district

On the way to the Kruger National Park, visitors can enjoy wildlife experiences at Manyeleti, home of the Big Five. Adventurers can attempt mountain-climbing at the Mangwazi Nature Reserve and enjoy the Mapulaneng Trail at Zoeknag. The Inyaka Dam at Bushbuckridge is also worth a visit.

North West

North West is blessed with several cultural villages that entertain and enrich visitors.

A number of excellent game reserves have been established, including the Pilanesberg National Park, known as the "Jewel of the North West". It is set in a crater on an extinct volcano and is home to the Big Five as well as a wide variety of smaller game and birds.

Central district

The historic route of Mafikeng includes an Anglo-Boer/South African War siege site, the Molema House where Sol Plaatje lived while writing his *Mafikeng Diary*, and the Mafikeng Museum.

The Lichtenburg Game-Breeding Centre and the Botsalano Game Reserve are well worth a visit.

The Groot Marico region is known as mampoer country and visitors can embark on a tour of the mampoer route. The Kortkloof Cultural Village is dedicated to the Tswana people.

Other attractions include the Wondergat; the Bosbult Monument, which commemorates a battle fought during the Anglo-Boer/South African War; the Kaditshwene Iron Age Village Ruins; and various hiking trails.

Eastern district

The Hartbeespoort Dam is a popular spot for weekend outings, breakfast runs and yachting. The Hartbeespoort Reptile and Animal Park is situated on the banks of the dam.

Cultural experiences in the area include the popular Mapoch and Gaabo Motho cultural villages as well as the Ring Wagon Inn.

The De Wildt Cheetah-Breeding and Research Centre specialises in breeding cheetah and other endangered wildlife species. Other places of interest include the Borakalalo Game Reserve, the Margaret Roberts Herb Farm and the Phaladingwe Nature Trail.

There are several golf courses in the area.

Bophirima district

The Taung skull fossil site and the blue pools are renowned for the Taung skull found in the Buxton quarries. In July 2005, the World Heritage Committee declared the Taung skull fossil site an extension of the Sterkfontein fossil hominid site. This region is popular with adventure-seekers – especially those who enjoy the 4x4 routes and hunting farms.

Rustenburg district

The Pilanesberg National Park supports more than 7 000 head of game and 350 bird species.

The 60 000-ha Madikwe Game Reserve is home to 66 large mammal species. Over 10 000 animals of 27 major species have been reintroduced under Operation Phoenix. A hot-air balloon ride, day and night game drives, and bushwalks are available. Sun City and the Palace of the Lost City are very popular tourist attractions offering gambling, golf, extravaganza shows, watersport and an artificial sea.

There are various hiking trails in the region. The Heritage Route starts at the Sterkfontein Caves World Heritage Site and ends at Pilanesberg.

Southern district

The OPM Prozesky Bird Sanctuary in Potchefstroom has over 200 bird species and is situated adjacent to the Mooi River. The Oudorp Hiking Trail takes visitors through the old part of Klerksdorp where 12 Voortrekker families settled.

Other attractions in the region include the Potchefstroom Lakeside Resort, the Faan Meintjies Nature Reserve in Klerksdorp, mine tours at Orkney, the Diggers Route at Wolmaransstad and the Bloemhof Dam Nature Reserve.

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga – “The Place Where The Sun Rises” – epitomises every traveller’s dream of the true African experience. Located in the north-eastern part of South Africa, the province is bordered by Mozambique to the east and the Kingdom of Swaziland to the south and east.

The climate and topography vary from cool highland grasslands at 1 600 m above sea level, through the middleveld and escarpment, to the

subtropical Lowveld towards the Kruger National Park and many private game reserves. Scenic beauty, climate and wildlife, voted the most attractive features of South Africa, are found in abundance in this province.

Attractions range from game viewing and bird-watching to scenic drives across the valleys and peaks of the vast Drakensberg escarpment, and include agritourism, industrial and adventure tourism and cultural experiences. Historical sites and villages, old wagon routes and monuments mark events and characters who passed this way in search of adventure and wealth.

The cultural heritage of the province is varied and fascinating. The Ndebele beadwork and wall-painting in the north-west, the arts and crafts of the Lowveld and the different traditional villages throughout the province offer a unique insight into the people’s history.

Nelspruit

Nelspruit is the capital of Mpumalanga and the commercial and administrative hub of the Lowveld. The Nelspruit Historical Trail is an hour-long route stretching from the Promenade Centre to the Civic Centre.

The Blue Train runs between Pretoria and Nelspruit from May to September on a trip called the “Lowveld Experience”. Rovos Rail’s trains also travel to Nelspruit.



In May 2007, Deputy President Phumzile Mlambo-Ngcuka attended a sod-turning ceremony at the multimillion Rand community project, the King Mawane cultural village at Ingoba, Bergville, KwaZulu-Natal.

This cultural village is being constructed at the World Heritage Site and has provided over 400 jobs to local people.

The development of the village, funded by a South African government grant through the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism, and implemented through a local non-governmental organisation, the Inkosi Tshanibezwe Development Trust, will bring more tourism-related opportunities to the community of Bergville, largely through craftwork.

In the context of the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa, tourism has been identified as one of key sectors which are labour-intensive and need priority attention.



The Green Heritage Hiking Trail in the Nelspruit Nature Reserve is one of several walks in the reserve and one of many in the region.

Not to be missed is the Lowveld Botanical Garden, as well as the Reptile Park, the Sudwala caves, PR Owen Dinosaur Park, and the tranquil town of White River. Well known as an artists' haven and a gateway to the Kruger National Park, White River also boasts an orange winery.

Panorama

Barberton features many reminders of the early gold-rush era. Museums include Belhaven, Fernlea House and Stopforth House. The only known verdite deposits in the world are found in the rocks of the Barberton district. An annual Diggers Festival is held in September.

The Blyderiverspoort Nature Reserve near Graskop is characterised by striking rock formations and a rich diversity of plants. Within the reserve, the Bourke's Luck potholes were formed by river erosion and the action of flood water.

The spectacular Blyde River Canyon is a 26 km-long gorge carved out of the face of the escarpment, and is one of the natural wonders of Africa. The canyon is the third-largest in the world, the only green canyon, and hosts three rivers which feed the Blydepoort Dam at Swadini. God's Window provides a magnificent panoramic view across miles of densely forested mountains, the green Lowveld and the canyon. The Blyderiverspoort Hiking Trail is one of the most popular in the country. A number of other hiking trails are also available.

The southern section of the Kruger National Park, which is a major tourist attraction, falls within this region.

Kaapsehoop is a quaint historical village known for the wild horses that frequent the district. Blue swallows are regular visitors from September to April.

The Lydenburg Museum is situated in the Gustav Klingbiel Reserve, which is the site of archaeological ruins from the Later Iron Age. The Lydenburg heads, human-like masks dated to 500 AD, were discovered in this area.

Sabie is the centre of the largest man-made forest in South Africa. The Cultural Historical Forestry Museum depicts various aspects of the country's forestry industry. The Bridal Veil, Horseshoe and Lone Creek waterfalls, and Mac Mac pools and falls that are just outside Sabie are well worth a visit.

The 69-km Prospector's Trail starts at the Mac Mac Forest Station and leads to the Bourke's Luck potholes.

At the Montrose Falls in Schoemanskloof, the Crocodile River cascades 12 m into a series of rock pools. It is also the starting point of the annual Lowveld Crocodile Canoe Marathon, held in February.

Pilgrim's Rest is a living museum and a replica of the early gold-mining town. The Alanglade House Museum offers guided tours of the former mine-manager's house, while the Diggings Museum just outside the town arranges guided tours of gold-panning activities. This area was the setting for *Jock of the Bushveld*, the novel by Sir Percy Fitzpatrick about the experiences of a man and his dog as they shared adventures in the world of African gold mining. The Dredzen Shop Museum features a range of items in use nearly a century ago. The Pilgrim's Rest Festival is held every December.

Mount Sheba Nature Reserve, south of Pilgrim's Rest, is best known for its indigenous forest – one of few left in the region.

Highlands Meander

The Highlands Meander is a mecca for fly-fishers. It is in the placid and pristine waters of this region that one finds various stocks of fish, with trout as the major drawcard. The meander also offers numerous other activities.

At the Verloren Vlei and Steenkampsberg nature reserves at Dullstroom, one can get a rare glimpse of the endangered blue, wattled and crowned cranes.

The Loskop Dam Nature Reserve offers game watching, boating and fishing.

A large number of hiking trails are available, such as the Elandskrans Trail, which includes a 30-minute train ride between Waterval-Boven and Waterval-Onder.

Cultural Heartland

Visitors to the Cultural Heartland can immerse themselves in the true cultural heritage of Mpumalanga. Here, one can learn about the proud and welcoming Ndebele people, revered for the striking and colourful geometric patterns on their houses, clothing and beadwork.

This region also has illuminating historical sites such as the Botshabelo Historical Village, near Middelburg.

Cosmos Country

Cosmos Country covers parts of what is known as the energy belt of Mpumalanga, which is home to a number of power stations. This region also has the

world's largest underground coal-mining complex and the Sasol plant that is renowned for its oil-from-coal technology.

The carpet of cosmos flowers that blossoms in late summer lures visitors to this region.

Wild Frontier

Various archaeological discoveries dating back almost three billion years were made in the imposing mountains of this region. Visitors can enjoy a rare glimpse of the inimitable San paintings embossed in some rocks.

The region also holds rich historical sentiments centred on the monument of the late Mozambican President Samora Machel, constructed in the village of Mbuzini. The year 2006 saw the 20th anniversary of Machel's death in an aircraft crash.

While they are in this region, visitors have the opportunity to visit Swaziland and Mozambique, which are nearby.

Grass and Wetlands

Grass and Wetlands is a paradise, with its variety of bird species. This region stretches across the deep valleys and mountains of the east where thermal springs bubble to the surface.

There are 270 pans and lakes within a 20-km radius of Lake Chrissie. In this region, visitors can take part in the unusual "frogging expedition" or simply gaze at the stars during "star-gazing weekends".

Gauteng

Gauteng, the "Place of Gold", is the economic powerhouse of South Africa. It is characterised by a cosmopolitan, multicultural mix of people from all walks of life. The province's unique cultural and social legacy is evident from the many excellent museums, theatres, cultural precincts and craft markets.

The Vaal Dam, which supplies water to most of Gauteng's residents, covers some 300 km² and is a popular venue for watersport. Numerous resorts line the shore. The dam also attracts diverse bird species.

Vanderbijlpark was built during the late 1940s by the then Iron and Steel Corporation to accommodate its employees.

The Sterkfontein caves near Krugersdorp are the site of the discovery of the famous skull of Mrs Ples, an estimated 2,5 million-year-old hominid fossil, and Little Foot, an almost complete hominid skeleton some 3,3 million years old.

The broader Cradle of Humankind site consists of 47 000 ha, with numerous caves, the most famous of which are the Sterkfontein caves.

In 1999, Sterkfontein and its environs were declared a world heritage site.

Forty percent of all the world's human ancestor fossils have been found here, including several of the world's most famous and important fossils.

A further 500 hominid fossils and more than 9 000 stone tools have been excavated in the area, and work is ongoing.

The Krugersdorp Game Reserve provides sanctuary for several game species, including four of the Big Five. The African Fauna and Bird Park houses various species of wildlife and birds.

The South African National Railway and Steam Museum at Randfontein Estates Gold Mine outside Krugersdorp houses some of the country's old steam locomotives, a diesel-electric locomotive, and more than 50 vintage passenger coaches. Train rides are offered once a month.

A team of Lippizaner stallions performs every Sunday at the South African National Horsemanship Centre in Kyalami, near Johannesburg.

Visitors to Roodepoort can go on walks and trails through the Kloofendal Nature Reserve, or enjoy a picnic or a show at the popular Kloofendal Amphitheatre. The Walter Sisulu National Botanical Garden boasts a 70 m-high waterfall and breeding pairs of black eagles.

Forty kilometres north of Pretoria lies a ring of hills a kilometre in diameter and 100 m high. These are the walls of an impact crater left by an asteroid that hit the area some 200 000 years ago. The Tswaing Meteorite Crater is similar in size to the well-known Barringer Meteor Crater in Arizona, in the USA. The crater walls at Tswaing were originally about twice as high as they are today.

There is a museum adjacent to the crater. A path leads from the museum to the crater, along the rim, and down to the central lake. The crater is covered with indigenous trees and bushes, which attract a variety of bird life.



The old mining town of Cullinan developed around the Premier Diamond Mine. Many turn-of-the-century houses still stand. The mine has produced some of the world's most famous diamonds, including the Cullinan Diamond, the world's largest at 3 106 carats.

Johannesburg

The Adler Museum of the History of Medicine depicts the history of medicine, dentistry and pharmacy in South Africa. The Pharmacy Museum in Melrose houses a large variety of medicines, including more than 670 traditional medicines that have been collected throughout southern Africa.

There is also a display of old prescription books and dictionaries used by pharmacists.

The Nelson Mandela Bridge is a landmark gateway into Newtown, the arts precinct of Johannesburg. It is the largest cable-stayed bridge in southern Africa.

Museum Africa in Newtown tells the story of life in South Africa from the Stone Age to the Nuclear Age and beyond.

The Market Theatre Complex comprises three theatres, an art gallery, restaurants and pubs.

A bronze statue of the champion of passive resistance, Mahatma Gandhi, can be seen in the city centre.

The Lesedi Cultural Village in the Swartkops Hills north of Johannesburg gives visitors the opportunity to meet families of different cultural groupings. It features four traditional homesteads where visitors can spend the night with a family of their choice.

The Phumangena Zulu Kraal is home to traditional Zulu people living and working there.

The Melville Koppies in Johannesburg was once the site of a Stone Age African village and iron-smelting works.

Flora includes 80% of the species recorded on the Witwatersrand. It is open to the public from September to April.

Gold Reef City is a theme park based on Johannesburg during the gold-rush era.

The Apartheid Museum in Johannesburg is a state-of-the-art tribute to the rise and fall of apartheid, with 22 exhibition areas that take the visitor on an emotional journey through the state-sanctioned system of apartheid. A team of curators, film-makers, historians, designers and architects assembled the exhibits on a seven-hectare site. Film footage, photographs, text panels and artefacts depict apartheid.

Constitution Hill features the impressive building housing South Africa's Constitutional Court, and

offers visitors the chance to view the fort, the so-called native gaol, the women's gaol and the awaiting-trial block. People once imprisoned at these facilities include Gandhi and Albert Luthuli, as well as the only woman to be executed in South Africa's history, Daisy de Melker.

At Santarama Miniland and Entertainment World, visitors can explore models of South Africa's most popular beacons, such as Robben Island, OR Tambo International Airport, East London Harbour, and the Union Buildings in Pretoria.

A large, well-established park surrounds Zoo Lake, which breeding bird colonies frequent. Other attractions include jazz concerts, rowing boats for hire, a tea garden and a restaurant.

The South African Museum of Military History houses an impressive collection of weaponry and uniforms from the two world wars.

The South African Transport Museum in Heidelberg represents all aspects of South Africa's transport services.

Soweto is a popular tourist destination. It is estimated that some 1 000 foreign tourists visit Soweto every day. Its tourism industry contributes about R143 million to Gauteng's GDP.

The two-bedroom house where former President Mandela lived before his incarceration has been declared a national monument and converted into a museum.

The Walter Sisulu Square in Kliptown (Soweto) is the place where the Freedom Charter was signed in 1955.

No tour of Soweto would be complete without a visit to the Hector Petersen Museum, which commemorates the people who died during the Student Uprising of 16 June 1976.

The museum was named after the young boy who was the first person to be shot dead by police on that day.

Guest houses and B&B establishments are a fast-growing phenomenon in Soweto.

A tourism and information centre was opened in Soweto in February 2006. The centre provides comprehensive information to tourists. Visitors can book accommodation in Soweto, and plan and book tours and site guides.

In September 2007, former President Mandela opened southern Africa's largest shopping centre, the Maponya Mall. It covers 65 000 m², has 200 shops and eight cinemas.

Pretoria

A variety of historical buildings are found in the city, which is known as the "Jacaranda City" because of

the many jacaranda trees that line its streets. When these are in full bloom in October, they cover the city in a lilac haze, providing spectacular views from the surrounding hills.

Church Square is built around a statue of Paul Kruger, president of the former Zuid-Afrikaansche Republiek, and includes buildings such as the Old Raadsaal and the Palace of Justice.

Ten minutes' drive away from Church Square is Freedom Park, which commemorates the country's political history.

Once fully completed in 2010, the 35-ha site will comprise a garden of remembrance, a museum, and statues and sculptures to honour South Africans who have contributed to the country's freedom and development.

The Kruger House Museum contains the personal belongings of President Kruger. Melrose House is a beautiful example of Victorian architecture. The Peace Treaty of Vereeniging, which ended the Anglo-Boer/South African War, was signed there in 1902.

Demonstrations at the Pioneer Open-Air Museum include cow milking, butter and candle making, bread baking and coffee-bean grinding.

Other museums include the Police Museum, the Coert Steynberg Museum and the Transvaal Museum of Natural History.

The Voortrekker Monument also has a museum and commemorates the Great Trek. Some 260 steps lead to the dome, where spectacular views of the city can be enjoyed. The monument receives about 200 000 visitors a year.

Fort Schanskop has been refurbished and has a 375-seat amphitheatre.

The Union Buildings were designed by Sir Herbert Baker and completed in 1913. They were the setting for the presidential inauguration of Nelson Mandela in 1994, and those of Thabo Mbeki on 16 June 1999 and 27 April 2004.

The Sammy Marks Museum near Pretoria dates from 1885. Rooms in the house are filled with Victorian paintings, furniture, silver and porcelain. Visitors can relax at the tea garden and restaurant on the premises.

The General Smuts House Museum in Irene, south-east of Pretoria, contains the original furnishings of the Smuts family. A popular arts and craft market is held here on certain Saturdays.

The Rietvlei Nature Reserve is notable for its grass types, herbs, a large number of game and many bird species.

The Mapoch Ndebele Village, north of Pretoria, is being restored by its residents and the National Cultural History Museum. To develop the project into a viable, living tourist village, the 50 families staying there have undergone tourist-guide and business training. It is the first living cultural village in South Africa owned and managed by its residents.

Mamelodi is approximately 20 km from the city centre and features the Solomon Mahlangu Square, which is dedicated to this freedom fighter.

The Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum outside Pretoria features a farmstead dating from 1880. Traditional farming activities are demonstrated, and annual events include a prickly-pear festival, a mampoer festival and the Agricultural Museum Show.

The Pretoria National Botanical Garden houses the National Herbarium of South Africa, the largest in the southern hemisphere.

KwaZulu-Natal

Also known as the "Zulu Kingdom", KwaZulu-Natal is a many-splendoured interaction of natural wonders, ultra-modern facilities, fascinating cultural imprints and reminders of a dynamic history in a breathtakingly beautiful and varied setting.

Durban and surroundings

Tourist Junction, in Durban's historical station building, provides access to tourist information and accommodation bookings for Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife and South African National Parks.

The Golden Mile skirts the main beaches of the Indian Ocean. Attractions include an amusement centre, paddling pools, paved walkways and fountains.

The uShaka Island marine theme park, oceanarium, dolphinarium and oceanographic research institute on Durban's Point opened in May 2004. It is home to a wide variety of sea life, including sharks, dolphins and seals.

There is a snorkelling trail and a tubing river around the park.



Durban's most popular fishing spot is at Blue Lagoon Beach at the wide Umgeni River mouth. Beyond the river, the La Lucia and Beachwood Mangroves nature reserves offer long, tranquil walks along empty sands.

The Durban area has more than 50 reserves, developed parks and specialised gardens, the most renowned being the Municipal Botanical Garden.

The Fitzsimons Snake Park offers lectures and venom-milking demonstrations. MiniTown is a model city depicting Durban's best-known buildings. Museums include the Natural History Museum, the Natural Science Museum, the Old House Museum and the Old Fort.

The Shree Ambalavaanar Alayam Temple (The Second River Temple) in Cato Manor was the first Hindu temple in Africa. It is a national monument.

The Juma Masjid Mosque is the largest mosque in the southern hemisphere. Daily tours are available.

Annual events in and around the city include the popular Comrades Marathon between Durban and Pietermaritzburg, an international surfing competition, the Duzi canoe marathon, the Midmar Mile swimming event, the July Handicap horse-race and the Amashovashova cycle tour.

Umhlanga Rocks, just north of Durban, is notable for its ski-boating facilities and the Ski-Boat Festival held every April. The Natal Sharks Board offers shark dissections and interesting displays. Guided tours of the Hawaan Forest are also on offer. Hawaan is the last relic of coastal forest in the region and contains rare indigenous trees.

The Umgeni River Bird Park overlooks the Umgeni River and ranks among the world's best bird sanctuaries. Many varieties of birds, indigenous and exotic, inhabit walk-in aviaries.

The Millennium Town at the end of the Bluff houses the maritime offices, which control the entry of ships into and out of the busiest port in Africa.

East Griqualand

East Griqualand is an area of great beauty featuring colourful, living history. Kokstad lies in the Umzimhlava River basin between Mount Currie and the Ngele mountains.

The original town hall – built in 1910 – is a national monument, now serving as the local library. The former library – built in 1907 – is also a national monument, and houses the Kokstad Museum.

The Weza State Forest runs through indigenous forests and commercial plantations. The forest is home to several antelope species and a huge variety of birds.

East Griqualand is home to the southernmost portion of the Ukhahlamba/Drakensberg World Heritage Site, plus the impressive Swartberg, Bokkiesberg, Cedarberg and Ngele mountain ranges.

The Mountain Lake Nature Reserve is a national heritage site comprising rolling grasslands and pristine wetlands. When full, the lake offers 30 ha of deep, trout-filled waters. It also boasts 80 bird species and panoramic views of the Drakensberg mountain range.

Between Kokstad and Matatiele, the hamlet of Cedarville provides tranquil canoe-borne excursions into its surrounding, water-filled hollows. Also nearby, the carp-abundant Umzimvubu River is an ever-popular recreation ground for locals and visitors alike. Steam-train journeys can be undertaken between Swartberg and Creighton.

North Coast

The coastline between the Umdloti and the Tugela rivers is aptly called the "Dolphin Coast", as Indian Ocean bottlenose dolphins can be seen here all year round. The larger humpback dolphins are also found here, but rarely seen.

Many of the first Indian immigrants settled here, and the area's markets, mosques and temples give the region an authentic eastern flavour.

Tongaat is an area where sugar was first planted in 1854. The town's Indian ambience is accentuated by two prominent Hindu temples – the Juggernath Puri and Vishwaroop temples.

Other towns along the Dolphin Coast include Shaka's Rock, Salt Rock, Ballito, Verulam, Stanger, Darnall and Umdloti.

Zululand and the Elephant Coast

Cultural tourism is inextricably linked to economic upliftment in Zululand, and historically disadvantaged communities are applying their traditional skills to meet visitors' interests.

Zululand's north-east quadrant – between Mozambique, Swaziland and the warm Indian Ocean – has its own unique tale to tell. This is the Elephant Coast or Maputaland, named after the mid-17th century king who established dominion here some 200 years before Shaka consolidated his Zulu empire to the south. The Tembe Elephant Park in the far north is home to herds of the massive African elephant.

The Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Park is one of the largest game parks in South Africa and hosts the Big Five as well as the elusive cheetah and wild dog.

The eMakhosini Valley, birthplace of King Shaka, is the venue for a new tourism- and economic-

development project. Known as "eMakhosini, the Valley of Zulu Kings", the joint public-private sector project aims to preserve the culture and history of the Zulu people. A sculptured hilltop monument named Spirit of eMakhosini draws many tourists. This heritage park is near a nature reserve that will eventually support the Big Five of the animal kingdom.

At the eMakhosini Memorial Site, seven Zulu kings are buried.

Ulundi lies at the hub of the old Zulu Kingdom. The KwaZulu Cultural Museum houses interesting displays relating to Zulu history and archaeology. The beehive huts and the layout of the original Zulu village have been reproduced.

Umgungundlovu was once the royal capital of King Dingaan and is now being reconstructed. A tour provides the opportunity to observe Zulu building techniques and to experience the social life of the Zulu people. Work will begin on a R20-million multi-media centre, which will include first-rate audio-visual representations of Zulu history and culture.

Authentic Zulu villages such as Shakaland, Kwabhekithunga Kraal, Damazulu and Stewart's Farm offer accommodation and the opportunity to experience traditional Zulu culture.

The iSimangaliso Wetland Park (formerly Greater St Lucia Wetland Park) World Heritage Site has some of the highest forested dunes in the world. The park also has the greatest marine and terrestrial mammals, namely whales and elephants. St Lucia and its surroundings comprise a globally important wetland and has five separate ecosystems. It is a fishing and birdwatching paradise, and boat trips on the lake offer opportunities for crocodile and hippo sightings.

In August 2006, Minister van Schalkwyk opened the R9-million Ophansi entrance bridge in the then Greater St Lucia Wetland Park. The new entrance bridge enables visitors to enjoy a unique beach and bush experience, with only an hour's drive separating uMkhuze's unique wildlife experience from Sodwana Bay's world-class beaches and diving.

The Kosi Bay Nature Reserve is part of the Coastal Forest Reserve between Mozambique and Sodwana Bay. The adjacent Indian Ocean provides

exciting snorkelling and fishing opportunities. On offer is a four-day guided walking trail around the estuarine system.

UMkhuze is a small trade and transport centre. The Mkuze River cuts through the Ubombo mountains before serving as a boundary for Zululand's popular Mkuzi Game Reserve.

The Border Cave, a site of immense archaeological interest on the border of Swaziland, now also has an interpretation centre.

A monument has been erected for the first Zulu martyr, Maqhamusela Khanyli, in Mondli.

Lake Sibaya is South Africa's largest natural freshwater lake, covering some 77 km². Birdwatching and walks through the coastal forest are popular pastimes.

Sibaya Lake Lodge, the first South African ecotourism development jointly owned by private enterprise and the local community, was officially launched in September 1999.

The coral reef in the Sodwana Bay National Park attracts hundreds of scuba-divers throughout the year, and in summer, power-boaters arrive for some of the best marlin-fishing in the world.

South Coast

The Banana Express is a narrow-gauge steam train running between Port Shepstone and Paddock and back (39 km) twice a week. A shorter route is also offered.

Amanzimtoti is popular for its safe swimming beaches and various other activities and attractions.

The Hibiscus Coast stretches between Umkomaas and the Wild Coast. Margate is the largest resort town along this coast, and is very popular during the holidays. The Hibiscus Festival is held there in July.

The Oribi Gorge Nature Reserve encompasses forest, rivers, rapids and ravines. Prolific bird life, including five kingfisher species and seven eagle species, inhabits the reserve, along with a variety of mammals. There is also a 140-m abseil and gorge swing for adrenalin junkies.

Port Edward is known for its safe swimming and good fishing opportunities. Nearby, the Umthamvuna Nature Reserve is noted for its beautiful scenery, bird life and many rare plant species.



The Shell Museum at Shelly Beach is well worth a visit. Other popular coastal towns include Port Shepstone, Ramsgate, St Michael's-on-Sea, Uvongo and Scottburgh.

Sardine fever strikes the South Coast around the end of June every year, when people flock to the beaches and anglers wait for the game fish, following the sardines, to arrive.

Pietermaritzburg and the Midlands

Pietermaritzburg boasts various museums, including the Voortrekker Museum, the Natal Museum and the Natal Steam Railway Museum, which offers steam-train rides on the second Sunday of every month. The Tatham Art Gallery is also extremely popular.

The Albert Falls Public Resort Nature Reserve and the Albert Falls Dam provide opportunities for sailing, canoeing and fishing. Birdwatching, horse-riding and hiking are also popular activities.

The Howick Falls are situated in the Nature Valley Reserve, where the river tumbles down 100 m in a single fall. There are several climbing routes.

The Midlands Meander is a scenic drive between Hilton and Mooi River with about 70 ports of call en route, ranging from art studios, potters and painters, to herb gardens and cheese-makers.

Midmar Dam is zoned for yachting and powerboating. The 1 000-ha Midmar Game Park is inhabited by rhino, zebra, a wide variety of antelope species, and waterfowl. The popular yearly Midmar Mile event attracts thousands of swimmers.

Drakensberg

The Drakensberg mountain range forms the north-western border of KwaZulu-Natal. The entire area is a bird sanctuary, featuring among other species, the endangered lammergeier (bearded vulture). The highest concentration of walks and trails in South Africa is found here.

The Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park was declared a world heritage site in 2001 and consists of almost the entire Drakensberg mountain range from Bushman's Neck in the south to the Royal Natal National Park in the north.

Peaks soar to over 3 000 m and are often snow-covered in winter. The park is administered by Ezemvelo KwaZulu-Natal Wildlife. Their trout hatcheries are located in the Kamberg Reserve area.

The Lotheni Nature Reserve is notable for its trout-fishing facilities (angling permits are required). Relics of the area's history have been preserved in the Settler Museum.

The Himeville Nature Reserve has two lakes stocked with trout. The Swamp Nature Reserve close by attracts a variety of waterfowl, including the rare wattled crane.

The Ndema Gorge is located in the Mdedelelo Wilderness Area near Cathedral Peak and contains examples of Khoi and San art.

Sani Pass is the only road across the high escarpment between KwaZulu-Natal and the Kingdom of Lesotho. The Giant's Cup hiking trail, starting at the foot of the pass, is described as one of South Africa's finest. Giant's Castle Game Reserve is especially known for its more than 5 000 San paintings. The Bushman Site Museum is well worth a visit.

The Royal Natal National Park offers many scenic highlights, including the Amphitheatre, Mont-aux-Sources and the Tugela falls.

Battlefields

The KwaZulu-Natal Battlefields Route has the highest concentration of battlefields and related military sites in South Africa. The Battlefields Route starts at Estcourt, winding north through Colenso and Ladysmith to Newcastle and Volksrust, and eastwards to Utrecht, Glencoe, Dundee, Nqutu, Paulpietersburg, Vryheid, Babanango and Ulundi.

All the towns along the route have their unique charm and range of attractions: arts and crafts, scenic hiking trails, farm resorts, Zulu culture and roadside stalls. Game viewing, natural hot springs, horse trails and watersport can also be enjoyed.

The Chelmsford Nature Reserve near Newcastle is a birdwatcher's paradise. Power-boating and carp-fishing are added attractions. Game includes springbok, zebra, rhino and blesbok.

Other interesting places to visit are Majuba Hill and O'Neill's Cottage.

The Ladysmith Siege Museum provides insight into the battles of Colenso, Spioenkop, Vaalkrans and Tugela Heights. Museum staff arrange guided tours to nearby battlefields such as Wagon Hill. Other attractions in Ladysmith include the statue of Gandhi, the All Saints Church, the Soofi Mosque and the Spioenkop Dam and Nature Reserve.

Near Dundee, tourists can visit various battlefields, including Ncome-Blood River, Isandlwana, Rorke's Drift and Talana. The Talana Museum depicts various facets of the coal industry, as well as local Zulu, Boer and British history.

Rorke's Drift was the setting for one of the most famous battles of the war. The main attraction is the Rorke's Drift Battle Museum.

Acknowledgements

BuaNews
 Business Day
 Business Report
 Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism
 South African National Parks
www.capetourism.org
www.cape-town.net
www.clarens.co.za
www.doorway.co.za
www.ectourism.co.za
www.freestateprovince.co.za
www.gauteng.net
www.gov.za
www.indaba-southafrica.co.za
www.joburg.org.za
www.kzn.org.za
www.mpumalanga.com
www.news24.co.za
www.northerncape.org.za
www.saa0.ac.za
www.sapfa.org.za
www.sasdi.co.za
www.sati-web.za
www.southafrica.info
www.southafrica.net
www.soweto.co.za
www.travel.iafrica.com
www.tourismboard.org.za
www.tourismgrading.co.za
www.tourismnorthwest.co.za
www.wheretostay.co.za

Suggested reading

Bennet, A, Jooste, C and Strydom, L. eds. *Managing Tourism Services: A Southern African Perspective*. Pretoria: Van Schaik, 2005.

Berger, L and Hilton-Barber, B. *A Guide to Sterkfontein: The Cradle of Humankind*. Cape Town: Struik, 2006.

Branch, B. et al. *Travellers' Wildlife Guides: Southern Africa*. Cape Town: Double Storey Books, 2007.

Erasmus, BPJ. *On Route in South Africa*: 2nd ed. Johannesburg: Jonathan Ball, 2004.

Erasmus, BPJ. *On Route in South Africa: A Region by Region Guide*. Cape Town: Sunbird (Jonathan Ball), c. 2007.

Esterhuysen, A. *Sterkfontein: Early Hominid Site in the "Cradle of Humankind"*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2006.

George, R. *Marketing South African Tourism*. Cape Town: Oxford University Press, 2004.

Greenwood Guide to South Africa: Hand-Picked Accommodation. 4th ed. London: Greenwood Guides, 2005.

Greenwood Guide to South Africa; 3rd ed. London: Greenwood, 2006.

Harrison, P. *South Africa's Top Sites: Ecotravel*. Cape Town: Spearhead, 2004.

Kellett, F and Williams, L. *Footprint South Africa*. 7th ed. Bath, England: Footprint Travel Guides, 2004.

- Meintjies, M. *Remarkable Flyfishing Destinations of Southern Africa*. Cape Town: Struik, 2005.
- Souchon, D. *Serpent Spires*. Cape Town: Sunbird (Jonathan Ball), 2005.
- South African Highlights*. London: Greenwood Guides, 2005.
- Sycholt, A. *A Guide to the Drakensberg*. Cape Town: Struik, 2002.
- Tourism Blueprint: Reference Guide to the Nine Provinces of South Africa*. 3rd ed. Tourism Blueprint, 2006.
- Van der Walt, B. *The Enchanting World of the Drakensberg Mountains*. Potchefstroom: Institute for Contemporary Christianity in Africa, 2003.
- Viljoen, J and Tlabela, K. *Rural Tourism Development in South Africa: Trends and Challenges*. Cape Town: HSRC Press, 2006.
- Wright, J and Mazel, A. *The Drakensberg of KwaZulu-Natal: Exploring the History of a Mountain Range*. Johannesburg: Wits University Press, 2006.





SA YEARBOOK 2007/08 | TRANSPORT



The aim of the Department of Transport is to lead the provision of an integrated, sustainable, reliable and safe transport system by planning, developing, co-ordinating, promoting and implementing transport policies and strategies.

The department aims to achieve the following:

- competitive transport costs
- improved safety and security
- reduced infrastructure backlogs
- improved access
- reduced transit times.

Policy

Public Transport Strategy (2007 – 2020)

In March 2007, Cabinet approved the Public Transport Strategy (2007 – 2020). The strategy aims to accelerate the improvement in public transport by establishing integrated rapid public transport networks (IRPTNs), which will introduce priority rail corridors and bus rapid transit (BRT) systems in cities.

Public Transport Action Plan

The high-level Public Transport Action Plan supplements the Public Transport Strategy. It maps out phase one (2007 – 2010) to fast-track an implementation programme over the next four years, targeting the initial development of high-quality IRPTNs in 2010 World Cup host cities.

The essential feature of the Public Transport Strategy is the phased extension of mode-based vehicle recapitalisation into IRPTNs. These networks comprise an integrated package of rapid rail, BRT and taxi and metered taxi priority networks, especially in major cities. The strategy is expected to improve public-transport services for over half of the country's population.

The IRPTN package involves citywide, transport authority-controlled networks of rapid public transport corridors and feeder systems of smaller buses, taxis, bicycles, pedestrian access, as well as metered taxis and park-and-ride facilities. Full special needs and wheelchair access for all trunk corridor rail and road vehicles will also be implemented.

An amount of R9 billion was allocated to improve public-transport infrastructure over the Medium Term Expenditure Framework (MTEF) period. This includes a further R19,2 billion for airports, R5,5 billion for national roads, R8,5 billion for passenger rail and R9,2 billion for public transport for the 2010 World Cup.

The projects which are funded through the Public Transport Infrastructure and Systems Grant include:

- public transport links and facilities
- public transport interchange facilities
- rail infrastructure and system upgrades
- inter-modal facilities
- information technology (IT) infrastructure and systems
- non-motorised transport (NMT) infrastructure
- airport-city accommodation and stadium links.

Electronic National Traffic Information System (eNaTIS)

In April 2007, the Department of Transport replaced the 14-year-old National Traffic Information System (NaTIS) with the eNaTIS, which uses state-of-the-art technology.

The eNaTIS is the national register and asset that stores, records, manages and enforces the requirements of the National Road Traffic Act (NRTA), 1996 (Act 93 of 1996), and the National Road Traffic Regulations.

It provides for the registration and licensing of vehicles, and manages and records applications for and authorisation of driver's and learner's licences. The eNaTIS is also a law-enforcement tool that is used to ensure that details of stolen vehicles are circulated to prevent the irregular or fraudulent re-registration of such vehicles.

The South African Bureau of Standards (SABS) is linked to the eNaTIS, ensuring that only vehicles that meet South Africa's stringent safety standards are allowed to be registered.

The eNaTIS provides the following immediate advantages:

- centralised road-traffic management data
- elimination of fragmented small systems
- reduction in queues due to the implementation of online transactions
- improved system security
- lower-operating costs
- convenient, easy interaction by members of the public
- rapid deployment of new software.

The eNaTIS is one of the most advanced traffic-management systems in the world. It interfaces directly with the South African Police Service (SAPS), motor manufacturers, vehicle builders, vehicle importers, investigative agencies, financial institutions and insurance companies. Vehicles are

managed on the system from factory floor to scrap yard.

The system was commissioned on 12 April 2007 with 4,6 billion records. While the old NaTIS performed an average of 287 000 transactions per day in March 2007, between April and May 2007, eNaTIS performed about 326 000 transactions per day (13,4% more) with 93% uptime.

Since May 2007, eNaTIS has performed about 619 000 transactions per day (115% more) with 100% uptime. One of the functions that will be added to eNaTIS will enable motorists to do transactions using the Internet.

2010 Action Agenda

In October 2006, the Minister of Transport, Mr Jeff Radebe, announced that the 2010 Transport Action Agenda had been developed and that the World Cup Public Transport Infrastructure and Systems Grant had allocated the initial funding to municipalities.

Government has set aside R9 billion for public-transport infrastructure for the 2010 World Cup.

By mid-2007, the implementation of the 2010 Transport Action Plan was under way, and the host cities had submitted detailed plans and had started implementing physical projects funded through the Public Transport Infrastructure and Systems Grant.

The provincial 2010 World Cup projects in host cities and their budget allocations include:

- Rea Vaya in Johannesburg, integrating trains, taxis and buses, at a cost of R329 million
- inner-city distribution and BRT networks in Tshwane worth R104 million
- Khulani Corridor in Nelson Mandela Bay, a BRT project worth R200 million
- BRT projects on the Klipfontein Corridor along the N2 highway and Airport City in Cape Town
- the Warwick Junction in Durban's inner city
- road infrastructure-upgrading projects in Limpopo.

Black Economic Empowerment (BEE)

The integrated Broad-Based BEE (BBBEE) Charter for the Transport Sector sets targets for empowerment and participation through ownership, management and employment in companies throughout the transport-sector value chain. The charter aims to ensure representivity for black women and designated groups across most of the BEE indicators.

One of the most important priorities has been to maximise the participation of black people in the mainstream economy, as part of the Codes of Good

Practice on BEE approved by Cabinet in February 2007.

As a result, BBBEE has been effectively placed at the centre of economic growth to promote economic transformation and enable meaningful participation of black people in the transport industry, and to achieve a substantial change in the racial composition of ownership and management structures of existing and new enterprises.

Non-motorised transport

The promotion of NMT primarily aims to increase transport mobility and accessibility, mainly in rural areas.

The Department of Transport has broadened its Shova Kalula "Pedal Easy" project into a more comprehensive NMT project and intermediate means of transport that incorporates cycling, animal-drawn carts, NMT infrastructure and safety issues.

According to Statistics South Africa, 80% of South Africans depend on public transport. According to the *National Household Travel Survey, 2003*, walking and cycling constitute 23% of modal share. The survey found that 76% of the learners walk to education resource centres and three million of them spend more than an hour walking to and from places of learning.

The department aims to distribute a million bicycles countrywide by 2015, in line with the resolution and action plan of the African Ministers' Transport Summit held in Addis Ababa, Ethiopia, in 2005.

Shova Kalula also incorporates the establishment of micro businesses which sell, repair and maintain bicycles to ensure the sustainability of the project.

New Partnership for Africa's Development (Nepad)

From a transport point of view, key issues in creating an effectively co-ordinated African response to global market challenges are market access, mobility and systems integration.

The Department of Transport is contributing actively to the practical realisation of Nepad and the Southern African Development Community (SADC) development goals in several major areas, by promoting:

- efficient and effective maritime transport services
- rail-systems integration
- road-systems development and infrastructure maintenance.

Public entities and other agencies

The Department of Transport has established different bodies to take over certain elements of government's operational activities. They are the South African National Roads Agency Limited (Sanral); South African Maritime Safety Authority (Samsa); Cross-Border Road Transport Agency (CBRTA); Transport Appeal Tribunal; Road Traffic Management Corporation (RTMC); National Railway Safety Regulator and the South African Civil Aviation Authority (SACAA).

The Transport Agencies General Laws Amendment Bill seeks to standardise practices within entities by streamlining the selection and appointment of board members and CEOs. The Bill aims to:

- streamline the appointment processes and procedures and remove limitations of delivery capacity
- boost the performance of entities through strict monitoring of performance agreements
- ensure the smooth harmonisation of the national policy directive and strategic objectives of the entities.

South African National Roads Agency Limited

Sanral is an independent, statutory company responsible for the design, construction, management and maintenance of South Africa's national road network, including toll and non-toll roads.



By mid-2007, the Department of Transport was implementing the Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences (AARTO).

The AARTO is, among other things, expected to improve the fine collection and revenue system for the benefit of road-safety improvement.

The AARTO Act, 1998 (Act 46 of 1998), also introduces a National Contravention Register that will be linked to the Electronic National Traffic Information System. Repeat offenders will be punished through a points-demerit system, which will lead to driver's licences being confiscated or a heavy financial penalty when relicensing vehicles.

All notices will be issued by or on behalf of the Road Traffic Infringement Agency.

Sanral's responsibilities are to:

- strategically plan, design, construct, operate, rehabilitate and maintain South Africa's national roads
- deliver and maintain a world-class primary road network
- generate revenue from the development and management of its assets
- undertake research and development to enhance the quality of the country's roads
- upon request of the Minister of Transport and in agreement with a foreign country, provide, operate and maintain roads in that country.

Sanral is responsible for the existing national road network of 16 750 kilometres, at an estimated value of over R40 billion. Over the MTEF period, transfers were expected to increase due to additional allocations of R350 million in 2007/08, R550 million in 2008/09 and R1,2 billion in 2009/10. This funding is for non-toll national-road infrastructure.

South African Maritime Safety Authority

Samsa is a statutory body that reports to the Minister of Transport. Its responsibilities include promoting safety of life and property at sea, preventing marine pollution by pollutants emanating from ships, and co-ordinating overall technical operations. It also develops policy on legal issues, foreign relations, marine pollution and certain specific safety matters.

Samsa's main functions are:

- providing shipping competence and pollution services in a regional context
- managing marine incidents, casualties and wrecks, and participating in search-and-rescue missions
- controlling standby tugs and pollution stores
- maintaining seafarers according to standards of training and staffing criteria
- providing a shipping-administration support service
- managing the registration of ships
- managing a coastal patrol service
- managing vessel traffic, including navigation aids
- providing lighthouse services.

Funding comes from, among other sources, levies on ships calling at South African ports, direct user charges and government service fees.

Cross-Border Road Transport Agency

The CBRTA regulates and controls cross-border passenger, freight and road transport. It also facilitates the establishment of co-operative and consultative relationships and structures between public and private-sector institutions, with an interest in cross-border road transport.

The CBRTA fosters investment in the cross-border road-transport industry and provides high-quality cross-border freight and passenger road-transport services at reasonable prices. The agency works on a cost-recovery basis and any profits from cross-border permit fees are ploughed back into the system through a price reduction on permits in the following financial year. It also encourages small-business development in the industry.

The CBRTA is also involved in collecting, processing and disseminating relevant information; providing training and capacity-building; and promoting entrepreneurship, focusing on small, medium and micro-enterprises (SMMEs) with an interest in cross-border road transport.

The functions of the agency include:

- advising the Minister of Transport on cross-border transport matters and assisting in the process of negotiating and renegotiating cross-border road-transport agreements on request
- regulating the road-transport industry's access to the cross-border road-transport market
- facilitating ongoing co-operative and consultative relationships and structures between the public and private sectors in support of cross-border road-transport operations
- undertaking road-transport law enforcement.

The main source of income for the CBRTA is fees charged for cross-border permits.

South African Civil Aviation Authority

The SACAA promotes, regulates and enforces civil-aviation safety and security.

The SACAA is a leader in the aviation-regulatory sector in the SADC region. It has hosted several regional meetings and conferences, and is the driving seat of efforts to harmonise aviation regulations in the region and to improve the level of aviation surveillance.

In 2003, South Africa was elected as a member of the International Civil Aviation Organisation (ICAO) Council and was requested to establish a

South African office at the ICAO headquarters in Montreal, Canada.

The SACAA is funded by a combination of direct and indirect fees and government funding for the investigation of aircraft accidents. User fees are based on the recovery of the agency's costs to provide the relevant direct services. This approach creates a more efficient and cost-effective regulatory regime and a safer civil-aviation system.

Indirect fees are recovered through aircraft and passenger safety charges payable by all scheduled passengers.

Transnet Limited

Transnet, which is transforming into a focused freight-transport and logistics company, comprises the following operating divisions:

- Transnet Freight Rail (formerly Spoornet) – the freight rail division
- Transnet Rail Engineering (formerly Transwerk) – the rolling stock maintenance business
- Transnet National Ports Authority (TNPA) (formerly National Ports Authority) – fulfils the landlord function for South Africa's port system
- Transnet Port Terminals (formerly South African Port Operations) – manages port and cargo terminal operations in the country's leading ports
- Transnet Pipelines (formerly Petronet) – the fuel and gas-pipeline business, pumps and manages the storage of petroleum and gas products through its network of high-pressure, long-distance pipelines.

Transnet was set to spend about R17 billion in 2007/08 as part of its capital investment. Projects include:

- providing 110 locomotives for the coal line and 212 locomotives for the general freight business of Transnet Freight Rail
- widening and deepening the Port of Durban's entrance channel
- constructing a new container terminal in Ngqura in the Eastern Cape
- expanding the Cape Town container terminal
- constructing a new multiproduct pipeline between Durban and Johannesburg to boost capacity from 2010.

Road transport National roads

In terms of the National Roads Act, 1998 (Act 7 of 1998), government is responsible for overall policy, while road-building and maintenance is the responsibility of Sanral.

The Department of Transport continues to improve the road network by ensuring that it is well maintained and safe. A new national roads plan is being developed, acknowledging the importance of roads to the economy.

The national road network is about 16 750 km long.

National Treasury granted approval for the allocation of R3 billion for Expanded Public Works Programme (EPWP) road construction, which will include labour-intensive road construction and maintenance in the 2007/08 and the MTEF periods.

Projects in the pipeline include expanding provincial transport departments' initiatives for labour-intensive rural access roads, such as Zibambele and Vuk'uzakhe in KwaZulu-Natal, Gundo Lashu in Limpopo, Siyantela in Mpumalanga and Siyakha in Gauteng.

The three concession contracts, the N3, N4 Platinum Corridor and the N4 Maputo Development Corridor, continue to facilitate improved trade, tourism and intergovernmental relations; thus providing faster, safer and more reliable transport as well as building the economy of South Africa.

The Department of Transport, through Sanral, continues with its Public-Private Partnership concession programme. By mid-2007, it was developing projects such as the N2 Wild Coast Toll Highway between Durban and East London. The Wild Coast was identified as one of the areas for strategic development in accordance with government's Spatial Development Initiative.

This will not only give access to the untapped potential of the Pondoland but, in doing so, address the inequality, namely lack of access, that has led to this being the most impoverished region of South Africa.

The Sani-Pass Road Project at the border of South Africa and Lesotho brings in regional co-operation and integration as articulated in the SADC Protocol on Transport, Telecommunications and Meteorology. The total cost of this project is R160 million. On the South African side, this initiative will extend as far as Pietermaritzburg, which has the potential to provide a variety of economic services to Lesotho.

Provincial roads

Provincial governments are responsible for planning, constructing and maintaining roads and bridges, except those falling under Sanral or local governments. The Department of Transport assists provincial and local governments to improve and develop the state of their roads.

Municipal roads

The construction and maintenance of most roads and streets within the municipal boundaries of cities and towns are the responsibility of the municipality concerned.

Toll roads

Toll roads cover some 2 400 km and are serviced by 53 toll plazas.

The viability of every toll road is determined over a 30-year period to assess private-sector funding.

The performance of all toll roads is within what was forecast, and in many cases roads perform better than forecast. It is envisaged that all new major toll-road projects will be financed through the Build, Operate and Transfer principle. This allows greater private-sector involvement in the financing, building, operation and maintenance of toll projects. When the concession period expires, the facility is transferred back to the State at no cost.

Public transport

In terms of the Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, legislative and executive powers in respect of public transport are a provincial competency. National government, however, is responsible for policy-formulation, monitoring and strategic implementation. The Department of Transport continues to administer subsidies for



In October 2007, the Minister of Transport, Mr Jeff Radebe, launched the National Freight Databank. The databank will be used as an integrated baseline tool for the mapping of corridors, regional integration, determining freight traffic peak-times and congestion, particularly at border posts, and assisting with and contributing to the development of freight scenarios for 2014.

buses and other subsidised forms of public transport.

According to the *National Household Travel Survey, 2003*, there were about 3,9 million public-transport commuters in mid-2003. The 2,5 million taxi commuters accounted for over 63% of public-transport work trips. Bus services accounted for another 22% of public-transport commuters and the rest were carried to work by train. In addition to the 2,5 million commuters who used minibus taxis as the main mode of travel, there were another 325 000 commuters who used taxis either as a feeder mode to other public-transport services, or as a distribution service from the main mode to their places of work.

National Transport Register

The National Land Transport Transition Act, 2000 (Act 22 of 2000), prescribed the establishment of the National Transport Register.

The purpose of this register is to integrate the land-transport systems, i.e. the Subsidy Management System (SUMS), the Land-Transport Permit System (LTPS) and the Registration Administration System (RAS).

The LTPS facilitates the issuing of public road-carrier permits, regulating entry into the road-carrier markets.

The objective is to facilitate the processing of permit applications and to enable local road-transportation boards (provincial permit boards) to provide an efficient service to the industry. In achieving this goal, the LTPS supports the boards in:

- registering applications
- generating and verifying advertisements
- capturing objections and appeals
- generating agendas
- verifying vehicle information
- generating permits and permit transfers.

The RAS facilitates the registration of minibus-taxi associations with the Provincial Registrar to formalise the industry. They support the registrar with:

- registering members and associations
- registering vehicle particulars of members
- registering corridor particulars of associations
- management reporting.

The SUMS manages claims from provincial departments and payments thereof for bus contracts.

Urban transport

Metropolitan transport advisory boards govern urban areas, which have been declared

metropolitan transport areas. Both short- and long-term programmes for adequate transportation development are drawn up by the core city of each area and are revised and adjusted annually.

Nine such core areas exist, namely Johannesburg, Cape Town, Pretoria, Durban, Pietermaritzburg, Port Elizabeth, the East Rand, Bloemfontein and East London.

The planning of transport for metropolitan and major urban areas must be done in accordance with a growth-management plan, and travel modes should not compete with one another.

In urban areas, passenger road-transport services are provided by local governments, private bus companies which operate scheduled bus services between peripheral areas and city centres, and minibus taxis. The Department of Transport supports provincial departments of transport and of public works in constructing intermodal facilities and in their efforts to achieve integration between bus and taxi operations.

The minibus-taxi industry has shown phenomenal growth during the last few years, leading to a decrease in the market share of buses and trains as modes of transport.

Motor vehicles

The number of registered vehicles increased by 573 715 (7,20%) from 8 544 902 at the end of December 2006.

Taxi Recapitalisation Programme (TRP)

Government's TRP is underpinned by a strong desire to have an integrated public transport system.

The main objectives are to have a taxi industry that supports a strong economy, that puts the passenger first and that meets the country's socio-economic objectives.

Government recognises the critical role played by the industry, and endeavours to ensure its growth and sustainability. The TRP is not only about scrapping old taxi vehicles, but also about the sustainability and effective regulation of the industry. It is a direct response to the recommendations of the National Taxi Task Team, to consider specific interventions to turn around the taxi industry.

Compliance with the necessary basic requirements include possession of legitimate documentation and securing the appropriate type of vehicles, specifically new taxi vehicles that comply with safety specifications.

The TRP is part of government's broad integrated public transport network system, which is aimed at

forming part of the larger public transport feeder systems. By mid-2007, about 80 000 operating licences had been issued nationally. About 50 000 were upgraded by operators.

Nationally, more than 11 000 old and unroadworthy vehicles had been removed from the roads and over R600 million paid out as scrapping allowances.

Law enforcement is also one of the key pillars of implementing the TRP, and R2,2 billion has been set aside for this purpose. By mid-2007, the RTMC was developing a TRP law-enforcement strategy, which would include the recruitment and training of staff for law-enforcement activities within the taxi industry.

Bus transport

BRT systems provide an exciting and innovative mechanism for implementing high-quality public transport networks that operate on exclusive right of way and incorporate current bus and minibus operators with no source of income or jobs.

The department has been engaging the metropolitan cities and related provinces in this regard. By mid-2007, phase one of the BRT scoping plans had been completed or were under way in the Johannesburg, Tshwane, Cape Town and Nelson Mandela metros. The bus subsidy will be extended to an integrated road-based public transport subsidy framework, which will also benefit the taxi industry, albeit only in a regulated environment.

Progress has been made in the preparatory work for implementing road-based public transport contracts with the publication of the model tender and contract documents in 2006. In this regard,



In October 2007, the Ministry of Transport hosted the first African Union (AU) conference of ministers responsible for road transport in Durban.

The ministers and transport experts deliberated on critical road-transport imperatives, including the:

- vision and policy of the AU on infrastructure and road transport
- developing road-transport infrastructure in Africa
- harmonising and facilitating road transport in Africa
- road safety, environment protection and combating of infectious diseases
- financing the road-transport subsector in Africa.

public transport services were already being designed based on existing transport plans in provinces.

Cross-border transport

Multilateral

The SADC Protocol on Transport, Communications and Meteorology provides a comprehensive framework for regional integration across the entire spectrum of the transport, communications and meteorology sectors. The general objective is to promote the provision of efficient, cost-effective and fully integrated infrastructure and operations in these fields.

The protocol also specifically addresses road transport, and aims to facilitate the unimpeded flow of goods and passengers between and across the territories of SADC member states.

It aims to promote the adoption of a harmonised policy, which lays down general operational conditions for carriers.

Cross-border transport within the Southern African Customs Union (Sacu) is undertaken in terms of the Sacu Memorandum of Understanding (MoU), which facilitates transport between member countries through the use of the single-permit system.

The MoU provides the framework for co-operation between the signatory countries, which has resulted in the establishment of technical working groups for traffic standards, road-user charges and passenger transport.

The activities of the passenger-transport working group has led to the establishment of joint route-management committees for certain cross-border passenger routes within the Sacu. These committees comprise representatives from the public and private sectors of the countries concerned, and are aimed at jointly managing the routes in consultation with all stakeholders.

Bilateral

Bilateral agreements facilitate and encourage cross-border road transport in support of regional trade.

The Maputo Development Corridor between South Africa and Mozambique is a good example.

The two governments also signed agreements dealing with road freight and passenger transport between the two countries, to facilitate the movement of goods and people by road, and to eliminate bureaucratic proceedings at border posts.

The project also includes the upgrading and modernisation of the railway line between the two countries and of Maputo harbour, at a cost of about R150 million.

On 29 September 2003, South Africa, Namibia and Botswana signed a MoU on the development and management of the Trans-Kalahari Corridor (TKC).

The TKC was formally established in 1998 following the completion of the Trans-Kgalagadi Highway in Botswana. The TKC links the three southern African countries by road.

One of the benefits of the TKC is that it links the hinterlands of Botswana, Namibia and South Africa (especially Gauteng) with the Port of Walvis Bay. This port is the western seaboard port in southern Africa and is closest to shipping routes to and from markets in the Americas and Europe.

The development of the TKC has the potential of significantly reducing transaction costs for SADC exporters and importers. This is expected to enable economic operators to become increasingly competitive internationally by enhancing their ability to exploit the benefits of preferential trade agreements with the United States of America (USA) and the European Union.

Freight transport

In South Africa alone, road transport accounts for the movement of some 650 million tons (Mt) of freight traffic per year, compared with about 180 Mt by rail.

The National Freight Logistics Strategy, launched in 2005, aims to:

- regulate the freight system to ensure economic efficiency
- exercise effective oversight of the environmental and security elements of the freight system
- promote better physical and operational integration of seaports, airports and land-transport networks.

The implementation of this strategy is expected to have a positive impact on the efficiency of freight movement. The Department of Transport will continue to focus on the Durban-Gauteng Corridor and its development projects, and will later focus on the Cape Town-Beit-Bridge Corridor.

By mid-2007, plans were under way in KwaZulu-Natal to develop the Dube Tradeport and an airport at La Mercy, in line with the eThekweni Freight Plan,

to unlock the streamlining of goods transportation in and through Durban. The main projects will include rehabilitating the Nkwalini rail line, implementing the Harrismith Trade Hub project, establishing a transport logistics centre as a repository of central logistics, and developing a freight master plan for the country.

Emphasis will be placed on empowering local people.

By mid-2007, the Department of Transport, in close co-operation with the provincial road-traffic authorities, had developed and was implementing the National Overload Control Strategy (NOCS) to protect the road infrastructure, to improve road safety and to ensure seamless movement of cargo. More than R20 million has been set aside to implement this strategy, which is also in line with the Road Safety Strategy, the Infrastructure Strategic Framework for Roads and the Freight Logistics Strategy.

The main focus is to improve weighbridge infrastructure, which involves the development and upgrading of overload-control infrastructure in strategic locations across South Africa's road network.

Through the National Road Traffic Act, 1996 (Act 93 of 1996), the department was investigating ways of extending the liability for overloading beyond operators, and ensuring that cargo consignors and consignees take ownership and face the full might of the law. It has also revised the 5% tolerance of the gross vehicle mass to 2%, in line with the recommendations of a weighbridge survey that was conducted during the development of the NOCS.

Inroads are being made in the insurance industry to brand overloaders as high-risk and charging them steep insurance premiums in an effort to discourage overloading.

Both the departments of transport and of justice are also upgrading the guidelines for public prosecution to elevate the profile of overloading offences and ensure stiff penalties for offenders.

The department has also developed guidelines in co-operation with the South African Bureau of Standards (SABS) as part of promoting self-regulation in the heavy-vehicle industry. This is aimed at fostering a partnership to ensure proper load management, vehicle roadworthiness and driver fitness.

By mid-2007, guidelines were in place for the training of law-enforcement officers to ensure that they are adequately qualified and trained to execute overload control effectively. This includes improving training material at traffic colleges and

upgrading operational manuals for overload control.

The department was conducting research on various options of introducing portable weighing equipment to continuously improve this technology and offer desired accuracies, not only for heavy-vehicle screening but also for prosecution purposes.

A new administrative fee is expected to be introduced over and above traffic fines for damage caused on the roads. The intention is to strike a balance between the amount of damage that heavy vehicles inflict on the road network and the fines imposed on overloading offenders.

Road-traffic safety

The RTMC Act, 1999 (Act 20 of 1999), provides for the establishment of the RTMC to:

- enhance the overall quality of road-traffic management and service provision
- strengthen co-operation and co-ordination between the national, provincial and local spheres of government in the management of road traffic
- maximise the effectiveness of provincial and local government efforts, particularly in road-traffic law enforcement
- create business opportunities, particularly for the historically disadvantaged sectors, to supplement public-sector capacity
- guide and sustain the expansion of private-sector investment in road-traffic management.

The RTMC is a partnership between the three spheres of government to strengthen its collective capacity for road-traffic management. The process for adjudicating road-traffic offences has been reformed and is now administrative, rather than judicial.

The Constitution authorises provinces to exercise legislative and executive powers pertaining to road-traffic safety, while the promotion thereof is primarily the responsibility of the Department of Transport.

The Road Traffic Safety Board (RTSB) endorses and acts as guardian of the Road Traffic Management Strategy (RTMS); assists in identifying, formulating and prioritising projects; monitors progress; and gives direction in the implementation of the RTMS.

The RTSB comprises members of national, provincial and local government and traffic stakeholders in the private sector. The ministers of education, of health, of justice and constitutional development, of provincial and local government, of safety and security and of transport serve on the board.

Three Acts provide for the national co-ordination of regulation and law enforcement, the registration and licensing of motor vehicles, and the training and appointment of traffic officers. These are the RTMC Act, 1999, the National Road Traffic Amendment Act, 1999 (Act 21 of 1999); and the Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences Amendment Act, 1999 (Act 22 of 1999).

The Administrative Adjudication of Road Traffic Offences Amendment Act, 1999 provides for a more efficient system of collecting traffic fines and introducing the points-demerit system, linked to credit-card format driver's licences.

In terms of the Act, motorists' driver's licences will be suspended when they have 12 penalty points against their names. For every point over and above 12, the motorist's licence will be suspended for three months.

Points can easily be accumulated, for example, four penalty points each are given for exceeding the speed limit by 50%, driving an unregistered vehicle, refusing to undergo a blood or breathalyser test, or driving a vehicle without registration plates. The use of hand-held cellphones in vehicles is not allowed and non-compliance could cost a motorist two points.

When a driver's licence is suspended for a third time, it will be cancelled and the motorist will have to undergo a driver's test again. In more serious cases, a court may forbid a motorist to drive on a public road ever again. However, the system in no way detracts from the accused's constitutional right to a fair trial. The points-demerit system is to be implemented in phases.

In 2006, the department approved the new Road Safety Strategy. Central to this is the enhanced role of the RTMC. Traffic law-enforcement officers play a key role in encouraging improved road-user behaviour.

The finalisation of the National Road Traffic Law Enforcement Code and subsequent agreements in

respect of key performance indicators and service-level agreements between the RTMC and road traffic authorities will ensure that authorities are capacitated, empowered and supported in the planning, execution and reviewing of their road-traffic strategies, programmes and campaigns.

The training and development of all traffic officials also remains one of the RTMC's highest priorities.

The RTMC aims to establish a national training academy and integrated management model. Current traffic training colleges will be integrated, aligned and co-ordinated to ensure standardised training facilities, material and standards.

Arrive Alive

Government's Arrive Alive Road-Safety Campaign aims to:

- reduce the number of road-traffic accidents in general, and fatalities in particular, by 5%, compared with the same period the previous year
- improve road-user compliance with traffic laws
- forge an improved working relationship between traffic authorities in the various spheres of government.

South Africa's pedestrian fatality rate is unacceptably high. Factors that have exaggerated the problem in South Africa include lack of infrastructure such as adequate pavements or road-crossing facilities; lack of education in road usage; a traffic mix with vehicles and pedestrians sharing the road; poor town and transport planning of facilities such as those around schools and community halls; and an absence of law enforcement.

In October 2007, Minister Radebe launched the Grand-Pa Safer Taxis Campaign in Johannesburg. The campaign, in association with Arrive Alive, is a road-safety initiative aimed at making taxis safer for thousands of commuters who use them daily.

Road Accident Fund (RAF)

The RAF is a public entity that compensates victims of motor-vehicle accidents for bodily injuries and/or loss of financial support caused by the death of a breadwinner. The rights for compensation are prescribed by the RAF Act, 1996 (Act 56 of 1996).

The RAF derives its income from a tax levied on petrol and diesel sold in South Africa.

The RAF pays out numerous claims each year due to accidents caused by recklessness; inconsiderate, negligent and aggressive driver behaviour; as well as drunken driving. In 2006/07, 170 418 new claims were lodged, some 260 903

claims were finalised, and 341 146 were outstanding.

Legislation

The RTMC's effectiveness will have a positive impact on the RAF in that fewer claims will result in reduced accidents on the roads. In 2007, the RAF implemented a new business model that will improve information collection and management, ensure proactive claims origination, risk management and fraud management.

Rail transport

Construction of the Gautrain Rapid Rail Link commenced in September 2006. The project will comprise an 80-kilometre route and 10 new stations. The route between the OR Tambo International Airport and Sandton is expected to be completed in time for the 2010 World Cup.

By mid-2007, utilities such as water pipes, electricity and telecommunications cables, had been removed in most areas and nearly 70% of affected properties along the proposed route had been handed over.

The train and bus depots in Midrand were under construction to stable and service Gautrain's 24 train sets and to station 150 commuter buses.

About R8,8 billion had been expended on the project and the private sector had spent more than R3 billion.

In South Africa, rail has for a long time carried fewer tons of total-surface transport volumes, compared with road volumes. As a result, the Department of Transport began a process of reversing the shift from road to rail, particularly of cargoes that should ideally be transported by rail.

By mid-2007, the department was implementing the National Freight Logistics Strategy that seeks, among other things, to integrate the first and second economies, and support the integration of



The Intelligent Transport System (ITS) transmits real-time information on traffic and road conditions to ordinary road users, traffic authorities and emergency services so that they can make informed decisions in response to traffic delays and bad road conditions.

A five-year ITS pilot project that focuses particularly on the N1 Ben Schoeman Highway between Pretoria and Johannesburg commenced in October 2006.

Over R51 million has been invested in this project, with 90 cameras and 19 variable message signs installed along the highway to capture and transmit traffic information to road users.

marginalised local economies with the main logistics corridors.

The key objective of the strategy is to reduce the costs of doing business by removing inefficiencies and reducing the impediments that the logistics system has placed on businesses and their long-term sustainability.

The growth of the road-freight sector can be ascribed to the inability of rail operations to respond to new production methodologies and techniques, or offer predictable and efficient services. Some of the rail customers are prepared to pay for a reliable and fast door-to-door service provided by road freight, which has provided a viable alternative.

The National Freight Logistics Strategy will ensure a significant increase in the traffic, volumes and nature of rail-freight cargo, particularly with huge improvements to the rail infrastructure and rolling stock emanating from huge investments by government and state enterprises.

In terms of the Gautrain, the Consolidated Regional Rail Plan has been approved which, among other things:

- focuses on priority corridors where rail operates at its strength
- sets out the regional rail plans and business plans in areas where Metrorail operates
- quantifies the actual needs for each corridor, while at the same time giving an indication of the investment and improvements required.

The Department of Transport embarked on a comprehensive recapitalisation programme to improve rail safety and revive rail transport as a viable public-transport alternative.

By mid-2007, the department had been implementing the National Rail Passenger Plan, which charts the way for the future of passenger-rail services in South Africa.

The following different options have been proposed:

- full recovery, where the whole rail network would be restored
- limited system, where all but efficient lines/routes would be closed
- priority rail corridors, where the socio-economic planning objectives would be balanced on existing rail strengths.

The National Railway Safety Regulator Act, 2002 (Act 16 of 2002), is the enabling legislation for the setting up of the independent Railway Safety Regulator, reporting and accountable to the Minister of Transport.

The regulator also oversees safety by conducting audits and inspections; undertaking occurrence investigations; analysing occurrence statistics, operator-safety plans and accident reports; and issuing notices to operators to cease an activity or to improve an unsafe activity. Failure to respond to a notice could result in the operator, including the top management and even the board, being prosecuted.

Since the re-introduction of the railway police, there has been a significant drop in crime on trains and train stations. Crime was reduced by 38% in the financial year ending 31 March 2007. By mid-2007, the SAPS had trained and deployed in excess of 1 500 constables, with 250 deployed in the eThekweni region.

In 2006/07, the Railway Police made 28 000 arrests, of which 9 000 were for serious crimes. The main target remains the deployment of 5 000 members by 2010.

The development of industrial and local standards, which will cover certain geographical locations and circumstances, is expected to be completed in 2008.

Transnet Freight Rail

The primary purpose of Transnet Freight Rail is the transportation of rail freight. Core freight activities account for about 95% of its revenues.

Transnet Freight Rail continues to operate the long-distance passenger service, Shosholoz Meyl, and the luxury Blue Train. By April 2007, consultations for the consolidation of all passenger services in a state-owned enterprise, independent of Transnet, were under way.

The migration is expected to be implemented in 2008. Concessioning opportunities were being sought for the Blue Train. Divestment of these passenger assets will enable Transnet Freight Rail to focus on its core business of freight operations.

It has a 20 247-km rail network, of which about 1 500 km comprises heavy-haul lines. The network connects the ports and hinterland of South Africa

and the rail networks of the sub-Saharan region. Its infrastructure represents about 80% of Africa's rail infrastructure.

Transnet Freight Rail operates freight trains serving customers in the following major segments:

- mining: coal, iron ore, manganese, granite, asbestos, chrome and non-ferrous metals
- manufacturing: chemicals, fuel and petroleum, fertiliser, cement, lime, iron steel and scrap
- agriculture and forestry: grain, stockfeed and milling, timber, paper and publishing, and fast-moving consumer goods
- containers and automotive: intermodal wholesale, automotive and industrial.

South African Rail Commuter Corporation (SARCC)-Metrorail

The SARCC-Metrorail provides commuter rail services in South Africa. The first phase of the consolidation of all passenger rail entities in South Africa has been concluded by Metrorail's transferral from Transnet to the SARCC-Metrorail with effect from 1 May 2006. The second phase will see Shosholozo Meyl transferred to the Department of Transport.

In the long term, this change will lead to better provision of passenger services in South Africa.

The SARCC operates the Rail Commuter Services through its operator, Metrorail.

Rail Commuter Services is operated as a social-responsibility programme requiring considerable government subsidisation. The assets that were transferred to the SARCC-Metrorail included property with a net potential worth billions in the main metropolitan areas.

The corporation's role as concessionaire is to establish and monitor service standards, safety and security levels, and operating efficiencies. Up to 1,7 million people use the commuter rail service daily.

The SARCC-Metrorail infrastructure and assets comprise 478 stations, some 2 240 km of electrified single-rail track and 4 564 coaches.

Investment for passenger rail has been more than doubling since 1994, to over R16 billion in 2007.

The long-term plan for the upgrading of flagship stations such as Park and Durban stations is expected to attract more passengers to trains.

The SARCC-Metrorail works closely with metros and other municipalities to ensure that rail services support integrated transport plans developed by local government. The introduction by the SARCC-Metrorail of the express services within the current

rail environment is intended to create a culture of using public transport among all South Africans.

The express service will also be deployed effectively as part of the transport operation plans for both the Confederations Cup in 2009 and the 2010 World Cup.

The SARCC-Metrorail is expected to construct a station next to the FNB Stadium in Johannesburg, and also one next to the new Orlando Stadium in Soweto, as part of World Cup preparations.

Intersite

Intersite Property Solutions (Pty) Limited manages, builds, upgrades and maintains commuter rail stations and properties to generate income for commuter rail. Intersite is a wholly owned subsidiary of SARCC-Metrorail.

The commuter rail portfolio comprises 478 stations, 4 200 hectares (ha) of land, and property in the major metropolitan areas of Johannesburg, Pretoria, Durban, Port Elizabeth, East London and Cape Town. Since 1992, Intersite has completed a number of station upgrades at a cost of R565,8 million, while a further R205,7 million has been invested in the former Metrorail operational assets. Several new stations and intermodal transport facilities were also completed, totalling some R106,6 million.

The SARCC-Metrorail is implementing an active programme to improve the state of commuter rail rolling stock.

This is accomplished by increasing the number of coaches in the refurbishment process and improving repair standards. The new standard includes the upgrade of a modular body train set that shares the same aesthetics as the 10M3 and 10M4 coaches currently running in the Johannesburg and Cape Town regions.

Civil aviation

By October 2007, there were 10 067 aircraft in South Africa. Air travel in South Africa has grown above 10% per year over the past three years, largely due to the proliferation of low-cost airlines following the deregulation of the industry in the early 1990s and the increased volume of international traffic flowing into the country. In 1993, fewer than 12 international airlines flew to South Africa. However, this number increased to 20 by 1995 and by mid-2007, more than 70 international airlines were flying into the country regularly.

In terms of passenger growth, between 1994 and 2000, the rate of domestic growth was pinned at 7,5%, compared with the global rate of 3%.

Similarly, while global international traffic grew at an average of 7% during this period, South Africa experienced an international passenger growth rate of about 8,5%, and 2007 figures for passenger growth surpassed the 10% mark per year.

Airports Company South Africa (Acsa) handles about 16,8 million departing passengers annually and was experiencing an annual growth of 10,8% in 2007. Smaller airports such as Port Elizabeth, Kimberley and Bloemfontein grew by about 10,4%, reaching total passenger volumes of 1,4 million passengers. The current consolidated terminal capacity for smaller airports is two million passengers.

Airlift Strategy

The Department of Transport has developed a five-year Airlift Strategy, which was approved by Cabinet in July 2006, to introduce effectively structured regulatory measures for increasing tourism growth for South Africa.

In particular, this strategy is based on aviation policy directives and contributes to the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA) by:

- aligning with the Tourism Growth Strategy and industry
- prioritising tourism and trade markets
- unblocking obstacles to growth through regulatory mechanisms, and bilateral and multilateral air-services negotiations.

In particular, the strategy supports the millennium development goals and the objectives of Nepad to increase African connectivity and access through the accelerated implementation of the Yamoussoukro Decision.

The overall objective of the Airlift Strategy is to increase aviation's contribution towards sustainable economic growth and job creation. This requires the creation and maintenance of an enabling framework within which both suppliers and consumers of air transport services may exercise reasonable flexibility and choice.

In particular, the strategy will enhance the prospects of South Africa as a preferred air-travel destination and synchronise the basis for bilateral air-services negotiations with other priorities.

It also provides specific guidelines for various unique markets with emphasis on the needs of intra-African air services, and aims to improve the regulation of particularly the supply-side of air transport services.

The department also developed the Airlift Implementation Plan, which provides a clear framework and capacity targets to be met. The Airlift Strategy is expected to promote the provision of adequate air-service capacity and infrastructure to cater for the projected growth in air movements within South Africa, and between South Africa and its key international partners.

The entry of new foreign carriers including Delta, Thai Airways and Virgin Nigeria buoyed international passenger arrivals. In line with the anticipated demand and large volume of passengers, which the A380 Airbus carries, Acsa has already developed five A380 parking bays located on the Echo Apron at OR Tambo International Airport.

The demand in international traffic is set to continue at South African airports, with the Department of Transport actively engaged in dialogue with Canada, the Republic of Korea, the United Kingdom and a number of other key countries identified by the Airlift Strategy and the implementation plan.

The implementation of the department's strategy is expected to yield a significant increase in the number of passengers moving through Acsa's network of airports.

Efficient airports and effective airspace management are also critical to the future development of air transport. By mid-2007, three projects aimed at addressing air-transport infrastructure were under way, namely: the Air Freight Logistics Project, the creation of a national airports development plan and a project aimed at the possible establishment of an independent slot co-ordinator for South Africa.

The principle of fair and equal opportunity enshrined in bilateral air-service agreements will be applied in the case of slot-constrained airports, to achieve maximum economic benefits in a pro-competitive environment.

Airports

Acsa owns and operates South Africa's 10 principal airports, including the three major international airports in Johannesburg, Cape Town and Durban.

Acsa also has a 35-year concession to operate the Pilanesberg Airport near Sun City in North West. The other six airports are Bloemfontein, Port Elizabeth, East London, George, Kimberley, Upington and Pilanesberg.

Acsa's three core activities are:

- airport services, including the development of airport infrastructure such as providing and maintaining runways, taxiways and aprons; terminal facilities; and aviation security, fire and rescue services
- retail and advertising activities, including the provision of space within terminals to appropriate retailers; other sites to operations such as car-hire firms and banks; and space for advertisers
- property activities, including the provision of retail and office premises, and car-parking facilities, as well as functioning as commercial landlords.

In 2007, Acsa processed a total of 33 million departing and arriving passengers and 236 000 aircraft landings from nearly 50 international destinations. Its infrastructure upgrading has been boosted by R19,3 billion for the next three years as part of expanding airport capacity ahead of the 2010 World Cup.

By January 2007, Acsa had begun its five-year investment programme in all major airports in the country. With passenger traffic estimated to be in excess of 45 million passengers a year by 2012, Acsa will be investing in infrastructure developments. This investment is also meant for the new airport at La Mercy, as part of the Dube Tradeport in Durban.

About R5,2 billion will be spent to accommodate the 2010 World Cup. Some R492 million was spent on the Johannesburg, Cape Town and Durban international airports, and R46 million was invested in the Port Elizabeth, East London, George, Bloemfontein, Kimberley, Upington and Pilanesberg national airports.

In July 2007, the Bhisho Airport in the Eastern Cape underwent a R100-million upgrade.

The upgrade, funded through the province's Department of Roads and Transport, was expected to be complete by March 2008.

The project provided more than 100 jobs for people from surrounding villages and derives from

the Blue Skyway Aviation Strategy, which was unveiled by the provincial transport department in 2006, in an effort to maximise the potential of the Bhisho and Mthatha airports, and bring new life to the rural airstrips in the province.

The SAPS Air Wing was expected to relocate to the Bhisho Airport, while the Port Alfred-based 43 Air School also planned to expand to the airport.

A new R5-million fire tender was brought in from overseas to increase the emergency capacity of the airport and improve its grades from two to four.

The Bhisho Airport has been earmarked for international flights during the 2010 World Cup.

About 7,9 million international passengers pass through the OR Tambo International Airport each year. In September 2007, Minister Radebe officially opened the R535-million international pier that serves as an extension to the international terminal building.

The increased number of holding lounges, airside commercial areas and boarding gates in the double-level structure ease international travellers into their journeys, with the new expansion to the existing international terminal building also boasting considerably larger departure and arrival areas.

The completion of the pier development has substantially increased the airport's capacity to handle ever-increasing passenger traffic. Airline operators are now able to significantly improve their turnaround times, improving their efficiency considerably as the majority of passengers will use the connecting stands (air bridges).

Another significant part of phase one is the new international remote-bussing gate. The gate serves departures to remotely parked aircraft and has increased OR Tambo International Airport's remote-bussing facility from eight gates to 12. This has also significantly increased capacity for departing international passengers.

The new pier is environmentally friendly. It is fitted with energy-efficient light fittings. The long escalators are energy-saving as they only automatically operate on demand.

Four stands of the Echo Apron development can accommodate an A380, the largest commercial aircraft on the market, and are equipped with dual air bridges to load and offload passengers to upper and lower levels of double-deck aircraft at the same time.

The completion of the second and final phase of the project is scheduled for July 2008, when the retail mall extension and new mezzanine lounges will be completed.

By mid-2007, the Cape Town International Airport was constructing the airport's first multistorey parkade. Acsa's investment of more than R1,3 billion in infrastructure is on schedule for completion by the end of 2009.

The construction of a second multistorey parkade, which started in mid-2007, was expected to be complete in 2008 at a cost of about R210 million. This will be a five-level parkade with about 4 000 bays.

In January 2007, the drop-and-go road was relocated to a temporary bypass road in order for the site of the new Central Terminal Building (CTB) to be hoarded off and to make way for an elevated road to be built in front of the terminal buildings. The route for domestic car-rental returns was also changed in July 2007, and the international car-rentals area was relocated.

The five-storey CTB will house a common processing area where both international and domestic passengers will be processed, as opposed to two separate terminals. Once passengers pass through the security screening points, international passengers will route to the left to the international departures waiting area and domestic passengers right to the domestic departures waiting area.

The elevated roadway will separate the arrivals and departure levels and is set for completion in July 2008. These developments are expected to significantly enhance the airport's capacity to process approximately 15 million passengers upon completion.

Air-Traffic Navigation Services (ATNS)

The ATNS is responsible for the efficient running of South Africa's air-traffic control systems and the maintenance of navigation equipment, including the deployment of air-traffic controllers and aviation technical staff.

The company's college is a well-established facility that is used by several African countries for air-traffic services training and technical training for equipment support.

The ATNS does not receive government transfers and derives its funding from its operations.

A joint operations centre at the OR Tambo International Airport is the nerve centre of all airport

communications and operations. From here, all activities related to maintenance and building management are co-ordinated. The centre serves as a control office, crisis-control centre for emergencies, and an IT centre.

In 2007/08, the ATNS was allocated more than R200 million to renew terrestrial aeronautical navigation systems and replace existing older radar systems in certain areas of South Africa.

The Department of Transport has developed the National Aviation Security Plan, a requirement of the ICAO.

Airlines

Eight major domestic airlines operate in the country, as well as a number of smaller charter airline companies.

South African Airways (SAA), British Airways (BA)/Comair, SA Express, SA Airlink and Interair operate scheduled air services within South Africa and the Indian Ocean islands. In addition to serving Africa, SAA operates services to Europe, Latin America and the Far East.

Scheduled international air services are also provided by Air Afrique, Air Austral, Air Botswana, Air France, Air Gabon, Air Madagascar, Air Malawi, Air Mauritius, Air Namibia, Air Portugal, Air Seychelles, Air Tanzania, Air Zimbabwe, Airlink Swaziland, Alliance Express, BA, Cameroon Airlines, Delta Airlines, El Al, Egyptair, Emirates, Ethiopian Airlines, Ghana Airways, Iberia, KLM, Kenya Airways, LAM Mozambique Airlines, LTU International Airways, Lufthansa, MK Airlines, Malaysia Airlines, Martinair Holland, Northwest Airlines, Olympic Airways, Qantas, Royal Air Maroc, Saudi Arabian Airlines, Singapore Airlines, Swissair, Taag, Thai International, Turkish Airlines, Uganda Airlines, United Airlines, Varig, Virgin Atlantic, Yemenia, Zambian Air Services and Zambian Skyways.

South African Airways

SAA is by far the largest air carrier in Africa, with the OR Tambo International Airport being the busiest airport in Africa. Nearly 75% of air-traffic activity in Africa takes place in the region.

Following on 2006's success at the World Travel Awards, SAA scooped yet another cluster of prestigious accolades in 2007.

In voting conducted worldwide by the World Travel Awards, travel-industry professionals once again voted in favour of SAA, enabling it to clinch top honours such as Africa's Leading Airline, Africa's Leading First-Class Airline, Africa's Leading Business Class Airline and Africa's Leading Airline Website.

The World Travel Awards are the benchmark for excellence in the travel and hospitality industry. Held annually, the awards are determined solely by survey results, making it the most respected survey of its kind for each continent.

SAA is further enhancing its extensive route network and product offering in Africa with a host of improvements, including new routes, added capacity, larger aircraft and more lounge facilities.

Routes in Africa contribute about 16% towards company revenue, and in 2006, SAA's flights to Africa averaged about 70% in terms of load factors.

SAA carried over a million passengers across the continent in 2006, representing a 7% increase over 2005. SAA will add capacity to 11 of its 19 African destinations, namely Entebbe, Nairobi, Dar Es Salaam, Mauritius, Blantyre, Lilongwe, Gaborone, Windhoek, Luanda, Kinshasa, Libreville and Abidjan.

Key among these will be the Luanda route, where SAA will add one additional flight per week to increase the number of seats by 12%.

The current seven return flights per week to Nairobi (1 902 seats) will increase to 10 (2 622 seats). The seven flights per week to Mauritius (2 384 seats) will be increased to eight per week (2 512 seats), which will include two flights on Saturday with connections to and from Europe.

The airline will also re-align its New York flights, operating four flights via Accra, with three flights remaining via Dakar. Departing times have been adapted for improved connections. SAA will fly to Entebbe four times a week, using a larger aircraft, a Boeing 737, to increase the number of seats by 15%; to Dar Es Salaam four times per week to increase seats by 18%; to Blantyre (31% more seats) and Lilongwe (12% more seats) both twice per week. The larger Boeing 737 aircraft will also be used to fly to both Windhoek and Kinshasa twice per week to provide 6% more seats (Windhoek) and 15% more seats (Kinshasa).

The lounge facilities in Africa are being upgraded. The improvements on the African network come on the back of the successful launch of the Munich route in July 2007.

Aviation safety and security

South Africa complies with the ICAO-recommended practices on aviation security.

SAA participated in the Operation Safety Audit Programme for the first time in 2005/06 and became the first southern African airline to successfully complete its safety audit.

South Africa is also participating in the development and establishment of an upper airspace control centre for the SADC. This initiative proposes that a single centre, hosted by an SADC country, will provide air-navigation services to all aircraft flying above 24 500 feet.

Emphasis is being placed on improved international access to and from South Africa by air, the expansion of the bilateral air-services framework, effective monitoring of airline activities, and the efficient licensing and regulation of domestic and international air services. Other aims include promoting:

- safer skies: this involves ensuring that adequate safety and upper-airspace-control regimes are in place across the continent, supported by efficient air-traffic and navigational services and systematic human-resource (HR) development programmes
- efficient and effective aviation networks: this involves regulation to make air transport more affordable, creating regional hubs and air-carrier



Facts and figures about South African Airways (SAA):

- SAA serves more than 700 destinations throughout the world.
- It carries more than seven million passengers each year and serves 34 cities in 26 countries on six continents.
- It employs close to 10 000 people worldwide, including 3 800 at SAA Technical. Staff include some 2 800 flight attendants and more than 800 pilots.
- SAA Technical at OR Tambo International Airport is the largest maintenance facility in Africa.
- SAA flies more than 20 domestic routes; there are 20 flights between Cape Town and Johannesburg per day.
- Airbuses offer a choice of movie channels in addition to video games, short features, actuality programmes and travel information.
- Airbus aircraft have 14 audio channels and a CD collection, allowing passengers to select and play their choice of music.
- Voyager, SAA's loyalty programme, has 1,8 million members.
- Each year, wine experts sample 800 wines and select 70 for serving on-board the aircraft.
- The Baobab Lounge for business class international travellers at OR Tambo International Airport has 33 workstations offering ergonomic business modules, computers, printers and faxes.

Source: SAA

alliances, and supporting one another to establish a high-quality African airports network. South African aviation accident and incident statistics for 1996 to 2006 reflect an average of 150 accidents and an average of 31 fatalities.

Between January and September 2007, there were 114 aircraft accidents which claimed 25 lives. Human error caused 80% of accidents and mechanical problems the rest.

Ports

Commercial ports play a crucial role in South Africa's transport, logistics and socio-economic development. About 98% of South Africa's exports are conveyed by sea.

In April 2007, Minister Radebe appointed board members to the National Ports Regulator. The regulator was established in terms of the National Ports Act, 2005 (Act 12 of 2005).

Its primary function is the economic regulation of the ports system, in line with government's strategic objectives to promote equity of access to ports and to monitor the activities of the TNPA. The regulator also promotes regulated competition, hears appeals and complaints, and investigates such complaints.



As of 1 June 2007, international travellers using South Africa's airports are prohibited from carrying hand luggage containing liquids, aerosols and gels (LAGs) exceeding 100 millilitres (ml). These include perfume, shampoo, suntan lotion, creams, toothpaste and hair gel.

The new security measures are in line with the International Civil Aviation Organisation's standards.

Hand luggage with LAGs exceeding 100 ml is confiscated, while passengers are only allowed to carry one parcel on board.

International travellers are required to place essential liquids to be carried on board in a resealable clear, plastic bag with a capacity of not more than one litre and a total diameter of 80 centimetres.

With prior arrangement, permission is granted to people with medical problems to carry more LAGs, if they produce a doctor's prescription to that effect.

Items carried on board that need to be placed in bags include formula milk and food for babies, prescription medicine in liquid and gel form, essential non-prescription medication, eyecare products, other liquids and gels, including juice needed by diabetic passengers.

The TNPA is the largest port authority on the continent. It owns and manages South Africa's ports at Richards Bay, Durban, East London, Port Elizabeth, Mossel Bay, Cape Town, Saldanha and Ngqura.

The TNPA provides suitable infrastructure as a conduit for the country's imports and exports. As port landlord, it is responsible for:

- developing and managing port properties
- developing, advising and implementing national port policies
- providing and maintaining port infrastructure (i.e. breakwaters, seawalls, channels, basins, quay walls and jetties), and the sustainability of ports and their environments
- co-ordinating marketing and promotional activities for each port.

The TNPA also has a control function, which includes:

- providing vessel-traffic control and navigational aids
- licensing and leasing terminals to operators
- monitoring the performance of port operators
- ensuring the orderly, efficient and reliable transfer of cargo and passengers between sea and land.

Based on the National Commercial Ports Policy, the vision for South African ports is to become a system of ports, seamlessly integrated in the logistics network, that is jointly and individually self-sustainable.

This will be achieved through the delivery of high levels of service and increasing efficiency for a growing customer base. It will result in the enhancement of South Africa's global competitiveness and facilitate the expansion of the economy through socially and environmentally sustainable port development. The TNPA business consists of the following divisions:

Trade and Logistics

This division is the strategic business arm of the TNPA. It is responsible for customer-relationship marketing, in combination with technology and HR.

Landlord Services

Landlord Services ensures the planning, development and optimal use of port property and

infrastructure, as well as a safe, secure and healthy port environment.

The division consists of property, engineering, and planning and development. Landlord Services has traditionally been the TNPA's major revenue earner, initially through wharfage, and currently through cargo dues.

Maritime Services

Maritime Services includes improving efficiency in shipping services, dredging navigational waterways, and ensuring a safe shipping environment through vessel-tracing services, pilotage and lighthouse services.

The ports provide:

- pilotage, tug and berthing services
- bulk-handling installations to handle dry and liquid bulk, complemented by storage facilities
- container-handling facilities
- multipurpose terminals for the handling of breakbulk and containers
- access to rail and road links
- ship-repair facilities
- feeder services.

Lighthouse Services

Lighthouse Services operates 45 lighthouses along the South African coastline.

The TNPA has vessel-traffic systems in all ports, ensuring improved safety of navigation within the port and port limits, and enhancing the service provided to the port user.

Marine Services

Marine Services operates 24 large tugs, eight work boats, four pilot boats and 14 launches in South Africa's commercial ports. Twenty-four-hour services are provided at the ports of Durban and Richards Bay.

Portcon International

This division provides a consultancy and training service appropriate to ports operating within the African context.

Port and Corporate Affairs

This division is responsible for the efficient and profitable running of the ports as service-delivery platforms.

Deepwater ports

The Port of Richards Bay is South Africa's leading port in terms of cargo volumes, handling in excess of 80 Mt of cargo annually.

By June 2007, the port was handling more than 1,7 billion tons (Bt) of cargo, of which coal represented 1,3 Bt. The port covers a surface area of 2 174 ha on land and 1 443 ha on water, making it the biggest port in South Africa in terms of size. It also offers easy access to South Africa's national rail network.

One of the port's inherent strengths is its deep-water infrastructure, with a maximum permissible draught of 17,5 m. This, coupled with the high-tech state-of-the-art terminal infrastructures, allows for high-speed, high-volume cargo handling and a fast turnaround of vessels.

The facilities at Richards Bay's Port comprise a dry-bulk terminal, a multipurpose terminal and the privately operated coal terminal. Other private operators within the port include several wood-chip export terminals and a bulk liquid terminal.

Saldanha Port, situated on the West Coast, is the deepest and the largest natural port in southern Africa. The port is unique in that it has a purpose-built railroad serving a bulk-handling facility, which is connected to a dedicated jetty for the shipment of iron ore. Saldanha also serves as a major crude-oil importation and transshipment port. It is the only iron ore-handling port in South Africa.

Hub ports

The Port of Durban is a full-service general cargo and container port. It is the most conveniently situated port for the industrialised Durban/Pinetown and Gauteng areas and cross-border traffic.

The Port of Durban is one of the busiest in southern Africa. It has a surface land area of 1 854 ha. The container terminal is the largest such facility in the southern hemisphere and is geared to expand in terms of cargo handling.

It is especially effective as a hub port for cargo to and from the Far East, Europe and the Americas, serving South Africa, as well as west and east African countries. The port is also the premier port for a wide range of commodities, including coal, mineral ores, granite, chemicals, petrochemicals, steel, forest products, citrus products, sugar and grain.

The Port of Cape Town is the other hub in South Africa. It offers multipurpose dry, and liquid and dry terminals, as well as fully serviced dry docks. The port is renowned for its deciduous fruit and frozen-product exports. A major fishing industry is also based here. The Port of Cape Town is strategically positioned and ideally situated to serve as a hub for cargoes between Europe, the Americas, Africa, Asia and Oceania. The port provides a complex network of services to its clients and a favourable

environment for all stakeholders, maximising benefits to the local and national economy.

Integrated intermodal cargo systems, ship repair, bunkering facilities and the reefer trade are examples of these services.

Multipurpose ports

The Port of Port Elizabeth, with its proximity to heavily industrialised and intensively farmed areas, has facilities for the handling of all commodities – bulk, general and container cargo.

Being situated at the centre of the country's motor-vehicle-manufacturing industry, the port imports large volumes of containerised components and raw material for this industry. The bulk of exports comprises agricultural products. Apart from agricultural produce, manganese ore, motor-vehicle-industry-related products and steel are exported.

The container terminal has maintained the highest handling rates in Africa in recent years and is accredited to International Standards Organisation (ISO) 9002.

Located mid-way between Cape Town and Port Elizabeth, the Port of Mossel Bay has in the past specialised in serving the local inshore and deep-sea fishing industry, as well as limited commercial cargo. However, it now serves the oil industry as well as other client-orientated marine cargo.

This port is the only South African port that operates two offshore mooring points within port limits. Both mooring points are used for the transport of refined petroleum products.

The Port of East London is situated at the mouth of the Buffalo River on South Africa's east coast, and is the country's only commercial river port.

It boasts a large container terminal and grain elevator, and it is the largest exporter of maize.

With a world-class R80-million car terminal, the port has become one of the major motor-vehicle export and import terminals in South Africa.

Through Transnet, government is investing close to R50 billion on rail- and port-infrastructure improvement.

Pipelines

Transnet Pipelines owns, maintains and operates a network of 3 000 km of high-pressure petroleum

and gas pipelines. Transnet has approved R3 billion for the design, construction and commissioning of a new multiproduct pipeline between Durban and Gauteng. The new pipeline will enhance Transnet Pipelines' capacity to service the transport needs of refined petroleum products such as petrol, diesel and jet fuel along the Durban-Gauteng corridor.

Apart from doubling the current pipeline capacity to accommodate growing need, there is also the imperative to have this pipeline completed to coincide with South Africa's hosting of the 2010 World Cup. As the safest mode of bulk petroleum product transportation, this pipeline project will, in the long term, ensure optimal use of the fuel-transport infrastructure in the country.

Maritime affairs

Maritime administration, legislation and shipping

Marine transport encompasses all forms of transport by sea, intermodal links and inland ports. It caters to a large degree for the freight market, and in the South African context offers no significant passenger-carrying ability.

The Department of Transport is responsible for South Africa's maritime administration and legislation, which Samsa controls on its behalf in terms of the Samsa Act, 1998 (Act 5 of 1998).

The broad aim of Samsa is to maintain the safety of life and property at sea within South Africa's area of maritime jurisdiction, and to ensure the prevention of marine pollution by oil and other substances emanating from ships.

The Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism is responsible for combating pollution and uses Kuswag coast-watch vessels to perform this function. Samsa is responsible for introducing and maintaining international standards set by the International Maritime Organisation in London, with respect to:

- ship construction
- maritime training and training curricula
- watch-keeping
- certification of seafarers
- manning and operation of local and foreign ships
- maritime search-and-rescue
- marine communications and radio navigation aids
- pollution prevention.

Samsa has an operations unit, a policy unit and a corporate support division to handle all financial, HR and IT issues.

Other functions include registering ships, establishing a coastal patrol service, and managing marine casualties and wrecks.

Samsa is steadily improving its capacity to monitor safety standards of foreign vessels. A considerable number of ships calling at South Africa's major ports are inspected, and those not complying with international safety standards are detained until the deficiencies are corrected.

The South African Marine Corporation (Safmarine), Unicorn Lines and Griffin Shipping are South Africa's predominant shipping lines. Their fleets of container, oil tanker, general cargo and bulk cargo vessels operate not only between South African ports, but also as cross-traders to other parts of the world.

In January 2007, South Africa signed an agreement to establish the subregional Maritime Rescue Co-ordination Centre (MRCC) in South Africa and subregional maritime subcentres in the Comoros, Madagascar, Mozambique and Namibia. South Africa also contributed R100 000 to be used in the operations of the International Maritime Security Fund.

Training

The South African Maritime Training Academy at Simonstown in the Western Cape provides advanced training to the broader maritime sector, including the merchant navy, harbour-craft operations, the fishing industry and the South African Navy.

The South African Merchant Navy Academy, General Botha, established at Granger Bay, is integrated with the Cape Peninsula University of Technology, with a similar training facility at the Durban Institute of Technology. Deck and

engineering students and officers complete their academic training at the Cape Peninsula University of Technology and the Durban Institute of Technology, while lower classes of certificates are offered at the Training Centre for Seamen, situated in the Duncan Dock area in Cape Town. This training institution also caters for deck, engine-room and catering department ratings.

Samsa is responsible for setting all standards of training certification and watch-keeping on behalf of the Department of Transport, while the Maritime Education and Training Board is responsible for accrediting all maritime courses.

Other maritime training organisations offer a wide range of courses that have been developed within the South African maritime industry. These are situated mainly in the ports of Cape Town and Durban and, to a lesser degree, Port Elizabeth.

Search-and-rescue services

The Department of Transport is responsible for providing a search-and-rescue function in South Africa. The search-and-rescue programme has been in existence since 1948.

The South African Search-and-Rescue Organisation (Sasar) provides South Africa with a world-class search-and-rescue capability.

Sasar is a voluntary organisation functioning under the auspices of the Department of Transport.

Its main function is to search for, assist, and, if necessary, rescue survivors of aircraft accidents or forced landings, vessels in distress, and accidents at sea. It is also charged with co-ordinating the resources made available to the department by various government departments, voluntary organisations, and private aircraft and shipping companies for search-and-rescue purposes.

The executive committee of Sasar, in conjunction with the relevant officials of the department, is responsible for formulating policy and procedures.

The Department of Transport, the South African National Defence Force, Telkom, Portnet, Samsa, SACAA, ATNS, SAPS, the Independent Communications Authority of South Africa, SAA and the Department of Provincial and Local Government are members of Sasar and contribute their services and/or facilities.

Voluntary organisations such as the 4x4 Rescue Club, the Mountain Club of South Africa, Hamnet and the National Sea Rescue Institute are also members of Sasar.

The Aeronautical Rescue Co-ordination Centre is an operational facility of Sasar that promotes the efficient organisation of search-and-rescue



In June 2007, the Southern African Development Community's (SADC) 2007 Maritime Conference, titled *Emerging Maritime Concepts in Southern Africa*, was held in Simon's Town, Western Cape.

The four focus areas identified as being critical to support the vision of the SADC were:

- the creation of a centre of excellence for naval training
- naval co-ordination and guidance of shipping
- the formation of a maritime component of the SADC brigade
- sealift capabilities required for peace-support operations in Africa.

services and co-ordinates aeronautical search-and-rescue operations. This plays a significant role in improving the safety of South African airspace.

Maritime safety

An estimated 7 000 vessels pass around South Africa's coastline annually, of which many are laden tankers carrying in excess of 30 Mt of crude oil. South African weather conditions present regular challenges to vessels, often resulting in distress calls to the Cape Town-based MRCC.

The MRCC has been in operation since 2003. This has enabled South Africa to exercise its responsibilities to the international community by employing state-of-the-art search-and-rescue infrastructure and services. Since 2003, the MRCC

has received over 500 distress signals from vessels off the South African coastline, some as far south as Antarctica. Various laden, very large crude-oil carriers have been assisted to safety, their cargo safely transferred by means of ship-to-ship transfers, and the affected vessels repaired or temporarily repaired to enable them to proceed to other ports for permanent repairs.

South Africa has a well-established Pollution Prevention Strategy, and is ready to respond in case of threat to the environment or to provide assistance to vessels at risk.

South Africa also acts in terms of the Indian Ocean MoU on Port State Control and has a similar agreement with the states of west Africa in the form of the Abuja MoU.

Acknowledgements

Airports Company South Africa

BuaNews

Department of Transport

Estimates of National Expenditure 2007, published by National Treasury

National Household Travel Survey, 2003

National Ports Authority of South Africa

South African Rail Commuter Corporation

Spoornet Limited

Road Accident Fund

www.gov.za

www.ports.co.za

www.southafrica.info

www.spoornet.co.za

www.saa.co.za

www.transnet.co.za

Suggested reading

Illsley, J. *In Southern Skies: A Pictorial History of Early Aviation in Southern Africa*. Cape Town: Jonathan Ball, 2003.

Potgieter, CA, Pillay, R and Rama, S. *Women, Development and Transport in Rural Eastern Cape, South Africa*. Cape Town: Human Sciences Research Council Press, 2006.

Stirling, WGM and House, JA. *They Served Africa With Wings: 60 Years of Aviation in Central Africa*. Saanichton BC Canada: Bookmark Publishing, 2004.





SA YEARBOOK 2007/08 | WATER AFFAIRS AND FORESTRY



The aim of the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry is to ensure the availability and supply of water at national level to facilitate equitable and sustainable social and economic development, to ensure the universal and efficient supply of water services at local level and to promote the sustainable management of forests.

The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry has a regional office in each province. These offices deal with the day-to-day water and forestry issues of provincial and local government. They support municipalities in their day-to-day water and sanitation service delivery by providing planning guidance and crisis management.

The regional offices also provide support and oversee provincial institutions such as water-user associations (WUAs), water boards and catchment management agencies (CMAs). They are the first port of call when applying for a water-use or forestry licence. In co-operation with water services authorities (WSAs) and water boards they monitor the quality of drinking water.

Out of a total budget of R5,3 billion in 2007/08, R3,1 billion (or 58% of the budget) was allocated to regional offices. The department employs over 16 000 people.

Hydrological conditions

South Africa is located in a predominantly semi-arid part of the world. The country's climate varies from desert and semi-desert in the west to subhumid along the eastern coastal area, with an average rainfall of about 450 mm per year. This is well below the world average of about 860 mm per year, while evaporation is comparatively high.

South Africa's inland water resources include 22 major rivers, 165 large dams, more than 4 000 medium and small dams on public and private land, and hundreds of small rivers.

The country's water resources are, in global terms, scarce and extremely limited. The total flow of all the rivers in the country combined amounts to about 49 200 million cubic metres (m³) per year. This is less than half of that of the Zambezi River, the closest large river to South Africa. Groundwater plays a pivotal role, especially in rural water supplies.

However, owing to the predominantly hard-rock nature of South Africa's geology, there are few major groundwater aquifers that can be used on a large scale.

The poor spatial distribution of rainfall means that the natural availability of water across the country is also highly uneven. This is compounded by the strong seasonality of rainfall over virtually

the entire country, and the high within-season variability of rainfall, and consequently, of run-off.

As a result, stream flow in South Africa's rivers is at relatively low levels for most of the time, with sporadic high flows occurring – characteristics which limit the proportion of stream flow that can be relied upon to be available for use, and which also have implications for water-related disasters such as floods and droughts.

To aggravate the situation, most urban and industrial development, as well as some dense rural settlements, have been established in remote locations away from large watercourses. As a result, the requirements for water already far exceed its natural availability in several river basins. Widespread and often large-scale transfers of water across catchments have, therefore, been implemented in South Africa.

To facilitate the management of water resources, the country has been divided into 19 catchment-based water-management areas. Eleven of these water-management areas share international rivers.

Over the years, water-resource development and management in South Africa have continuously evolved to meet the needs of a growing population and a vibrant economy, within the constraints imposed by nature. These developments have largely been made possible by recognising water as a national asset, thereby allowing its transportation from where it is available to where the greatest overall benefits for the nation can be achieved.

Sufficient water resources have been developed and are available to ensure that all current requirements for water can reasonably be met, without impairing the socio-economic development of the country.

Where feasible, special management techniques may be applied to improve water quality to appropriate standards for particular uses. The quality of groundwater varies according to hydrogeological conditions and anthropogenic impact. However, most major aquifer systems contain potable-quality water.

Measures will also be introduced to ensure the most beneficial and efficient use of water in the country from a social and economic perspective.

Provided that South Africa's water resources are judiciously managed and wisely allocated and used, sufficient water of appropriate quality will be available to sustain a strong economy, high social standards and healthy aquatic ecosystems for many generations.

South Africa depends mainly on surface-water resources for the urban, industrial and irrigation water supplies in the country. In general, surface-water resources are highly developed over most of South Africa. Groundwater is also extensively used, particularly in the rural and more arid areas, contributing to some 60% of newly serviced households (since 1994).

In the northern parts of the country, both surface and groundwater resources are nearly fully developed and used. Some overexploitation occurs in localised areas, with little undeveloped resource potential remaining. The reverse applies to the well-watered south-eastern region of the country where there are still significant undeveloped and little-used resources.

The total mean annual run-off of water in South Africa under natural (undeveloped) conditions is estimated at a little over 49 200 million m³ per year, including about 4 800 million m³ per year of water originating from Lesotho, and about 700 million m³ per year originating from Swaziland, which naturally drain into South Africa. Agricultural irrigation represents close to 60% of the total water requirements of the country, while urban requirements constitute about 25% as the second-largest user sector. The remaining 15% is shared by the other sectors (all standardised to 98% assurance of supply).

The total net abstraction of water from surface water resources amounts to about 10 200 million m³ per year for the whole of South Africa, after allowing for the re-use of return flows. This represents about 20% of the total mean annual run-off of 49 200 million m³ per year (all standardised to 98% assurance of supply). A further 8% is estimated to be lost through evaporation from storage and conveyance along rivers, and 6% through land-use activities. As a national average, about 66% of the natural river flow (mean annual run-off) therefore still remains in the country's rivers.

Water-resource management and development

Government is committed to ensuring that everyone in South Africa has access to functioning basic water-supply services and that everyone has

access to a functioning basic sanitation facility by 2010.

In 2006, 10,84 million households had access to water infrastructure, contributing to government's target of eradicating the backlog of people without access to water by 2008. In 2006, 9,05 million households had access to basic sanitation. Households with access to basic sanitation increased from 50% in 1994 to 71% in 2006.

Government is also committed to eradicating bucket systems in formal settlements.

By the end of August 2007, a little more than 100 000 households were still using the bucket system. The challenges to eradicate the bucket system include:

- community expectation to replace buckets with full waterborne systems
- insufficient water resources resulting in higher unit costs
- the need to construct new or upgrade bulk infrastructure to deal with additional load brought about by additional waterborne sanitation systems.

Government has set targets to eradicate:

- the bucket-system in formal settlements
- water and sanitation backlogs in clinics,
- the backlog in schools
- water-supply backlogs
- the general sanitation backlog.

In 2007/08, the department was expected to establish a special programme for bulk water-services infrastructure, which includes wastewater treatment plants. A grant of R1,4 billion has been allocated over the next three years.

To meet these targets, R1,9 billion has been allocated for water and sanitation services and substantial resources allocated to municipalities through the Municipal Infrastructure Grant (MIG) programme.

The substantial restructuring of the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, which is expected to be completed in eight to 10 years' time, includes:

- establishing CMAs to perform water-resource management functions currently performed by the department's regional offices
- transferring water-service delivery and operations to WSAs.

As WSAs are now providing water services, the department's role is to:

- act as custodian of the country's water resources
- provide water-services policy and guidelines
- provide ongoing support to the water sector

- act as a water-sector regulator.
- The department remains focused on the phased implementation of the National Water Act, 1998

Major dams of South Africa

Dam	Full supply capacity (10 ⁶ m ³)	River
Gariiep	5 341	Orange
Vanderkloof	3 171	Orange
Sterkfontein	2 616	Nuwejaarspruit
Nuwejaarspruit Vaal	2 603	Vaal
Pongolapoort	2 445	Pongolo
Bloemhof	1 264	Vaal
Theewaterskloof	480	Sonderend
Heyshope	451	Assegai
Woodstock	380	Tugela
Loskop	361	Olifants
Grootdraai	354	Vaal
Kalkfontein	318	Riet
Goedertrouw	304	Mhlatuze
Albert Falls	288	Mgeni
Brandvlei	284	Brandvlei
Spioenkop	277	Tugela
Mthatha	253	Mthatha
Driekoppies	250	Lomati
Inanda	241	Mgeni
Hartbeespoort	212	Crocodile
Erferis	207	Groot Vet
Rhenosterkop	204	Elands
Molatedi	200	Groot Marico
Ntshingwayo	198	Ngagane
Zaaihoek	192	Slang
Midmar	175	Mgeni

Source: Department of Water Affairs and Forestry

(Act 36 of 1998), with a particular emphasis on implementing a new organisational structure, which includes:

- Establishing the National Water Resource Strategy (NWRS), which will set out the procedures, guidelines and overall strategy for managing water resources.
- Developing and testing a strategy for compulsory water-use licensing to facilitate equitable access to water resources for historically disadvantaged individuals.
- Enhancing water-use efficiency.
- Ensuring compliance with dam-safety regulations and enhancing public safety at water-resource installations.
- Investigating and implementing appropriate institutional arrangements for the optimal management of the Working for Water (WfW) Programme.
- Building national capacity to monitor the state of water resources, so that accurate information is used in decision-making about the use and management of water resources.
- Creating the National Water Resource Infrastructure Agency (NWRIA) to manage and develop national infrastructure. The agency was expected to be established in 2008.

In accordance with the international best practice of decentralising and democratising water-resource management, the Inkomati CMA has been established, with more agencies to follow.

Monitoring water resources

River flow is monitored at 1 200 flow-gauging stations and some 260 major reservoirs are monitored. The evaporation and rainfall station network comprises 360 stations.

The oldest flow-gauging station still in operation in South Africa is on the Mooi River near Potchefstroom in North West. It celebrated a century of monitoring in August 2004.

A new initiative to monitor precipitation in mountainous areas has been launched. There are 21 operational rainfall stations in the mountains of the Western Cape and five stations are operational in the Mpumalanga escarpment. Observations are relayed through the cellular short-message system. The data is updated daily on the

Department of Water Affairs and Forestry's website at www.dwaf.gov.za.

Water levels are monitored at some 1 000 observation boreholes across South Africa. Particular attention is given to monitoring in dolomitic areas. In addition, a small network of rain gauges is in operation to monitor rainwater quality.

The importance of qualitative information on South Africa's water resources has led to an increasing drive towards creating a national water-quality monitoring network.

The National Aquatic Ecosystem Health Monitoring Programme (NAEHMP), initially known as the National Aquatic Ecosystem Biomonitoring Programme, is responsible for managing aquatic ecosystems.

Until recently, the programme focused mainly on riverine ecosystems. The short name, River Health Programme (RHP), was adopted for this component of the NAEHMP. However, the original broader focus of the monitoring programme remains valid, namely, monitoring the ecological health of all aquatic ecosystems (estuarine and riverine ecosystems) managed by the department.

The NAEHMP focuses on the biological attributes of a river that serve as indicators of its ecological health. The rationale for initiating a biomonitoring programme is that the classic approach of monitoring only physical and chemical water-quality attributes was inadequate for generating information on the overall health of an aquatic ecosystem. Monitoring chemical attributes alone was found to be insufficient to detect, for example, the cumulative effects on aquatic ecosystems of extended exposure to multiple stressors.

Such stressors include habitat alteration, barriers that alter stream flow, water abstraction and alien species being introduced. Aquatic communities (e.g. fish, riparian vegetation and aquatic invertebrate fauna), however, are adapted to live within a certain range of environmental conditions.

These organisms' biological communities integrate, respond to and reflect the effects of chemical and physical disturbances that occur in aquatic ecosystems over extended periods, and provide a direct, holistic and integrated measure of the ecological integrity of a river.

If healthy and diverse biological communities inhabit a watercourse, the watercourse as a whole is considered to be ecologically resilient and healthy. However, from an RHP point of view, a healthy water resource does not guarantee the fitness of that resource for domestic, recreational, industrial and agricultural use.

The NAEHMP's main objectives are to:

- generate a national perspective of the health of aquatic ecosystems in South Africa
- develop the capacity and information base required to enable the department and other role-players to report on the status of and trends in the ecological health of South Africa's river systems, in an objective and scientifically sound manner
- generate information products and audit-management strategies that could assist in distinguishing between aquatic ecosystems exposed to sustainable use and those experiencing ecological deterioration.

The NAEHMP, and in particular the RHP, is regarded as the "flagship" for water-resource quality monitoring in South Africa. Products of the RHP have attracted wide attention and recognition, and provide strategic water-resource management information and training material for use in schools and universities, as well as in awareness creation.

The National Chemical Monitoring Programme assesses and reports on the chemical status of water resources in South Africa. Based on the report produced in 2002, the main water-quality challenges for domestic water-users are high levels of dissolved salts and, in some places, high fluoride concentration. The other challenges facing irrigated agriculture are the high sodium absorption ratio, high electrical conductivity, high pH and high levels of chloride.

Another global challenge affecting South Africa is eutrophication or excessive plant (including algae) growth in dams. This is due to high levels of nutrient input from point sources of pollution and diffuse sources of pollution from catchments. Annual reports indicate that 50% of dams in South Africa are seriously affected (hypertrophic), while the rest range in quality from good (oligotrophic) to poor (mesotrophic).

Another problem is the sporadic outbreak of cholera and other water-borne diseases, mainly due to poor sanitation and hygiene at household

The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry has implemented a drinking-water quality-management system which sees municipalities supplying data on drinking-water quality, which enables the department to identify possible problems and work with the affected municipality to resolve these problems. In addition to other capacity-building initiatives, the department has seconded a number of engineers to municipalities to provide support.

level. The Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal are especially prone to cholera outbreaks.

The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry is designing water-resource monitoring programmes to assess and report on the radiological (radioactivity) and toxicological quality status of South African water resources. The National Toxicity Monitoring Programme also reports on the status of DDT (dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane) and other persistent organic pollutants. This information will be reported internationally to the Stockholm Convention through the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism.

In 2005/06, municipalities identified a number of challenges concerning drinking-water quality. Therefore, the department, in consultation with local government, has been working with the Department of Health on the collection, testing and management of drinking-water quality.

The department has introduced the electronic Water Quality Management System to WSAs. By mid-2007, more than a 100 WSAs were using this

system to ensure effective management of drinking-water quality. Water boards are also assisting municipalities in ensuring high standards of drinking-water quality.

In 2007, the department was revising the Framework for Drinking-Water Quality Management.

One of the biggest challenges faced by municipalities is the lack of bulk-water infrastructure and waste-water treatment capacity. The department therefore established a special programme for bulk water-services infrastructure. This programme is expected to be introduced in 2007/08, and a grant amount of R1,4 billion has been allocated over the next three years.

Another international obligation is reporting on chemical water quality through the Global Environmental Monitoring System's Water Programme.

Municipal Infrastructure Grant

The MIG, a conditional grant from national government to local government to support investment in basic municipal infrastructure to eradicate backlogs, was implemented in April 2004.

The purpose of the MIG is to facilitate and ensure more effective and integrated service delivery by local government and the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, working with the Department of Provincial and Local Government in seeking to ensure that funds are made available. (See Chapter 1: *Government system*.)

The department's support to municipalities comprises:

- planning support regarding integrated development plans (IDPs) and water-services development plans (WSDPs)
- monitoring the water-purification and waste-water treatment works' operations
- facilitating project selection, feasibility studies and service-level options
- supporting the implementation of a tariff structure and the Free Basic Water (FBW) Policy
- supporting the Section 78 process (division of powers and functions for water services between district and local municipalities) and selecting water-services providers

The Minister of Water Affairs and Forestry has committed to the following:

- Ensuring that women are firmly in the driving seat in forestry and water, not only as recipients of water, but as empowered owners of their own enterprises, as leaders and as managers.
- Establishing an organisation for women in the water and sanitation sector to contribute to the empowerment and capacity-building of women in this sector.
- Driving the process of restructuring the department by establishing the National Water Resources Infrastructure Agency, the catchment-management agencies and the transfer of forests and water schemes.
- Ensuring that bucket toilets in formal settlements are eradicated, and that all schools and clinics have adequate water and sanitation.
- Ensuring that there are well-developed programmes to find the needed skills in the water and forestry sectors, now and in the future. The department will continue to drive the 2025 capacity-building programme for the water sector, working with all relevant players in the water sector towards a coherent, comprehensive and successful programme.
- Ensuring that the Forestry Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment Charter is finalised and implemented and that the transformation of this sector benefits the poor and the marginalised in rural areas.

- training councillors and officials in water-services and water-demand management
- mobilising resources to support municipalities.

Policy and legislation

The Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996, and the Bill of Rights enshrine the basic human right to have access to sufficient water and a safe and healthy environment. The two Acts that enable government to fulfil these rights through the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry are the:

- Water Services Act, 1997 (Act 108 of 1997), which created a regulatory framework within which water services could be provided. Schedule 4 of the Constitution vests the responsibility for water and sanitation services in local government. National government, however, is responsible for the regulatory function.
- National Water Act, 1998, which aims to ensure that water resources are protected, used, developed, conserved, managed and controlled in a sustainable manner, for the benefit of everyone in South Africa.

National Water Act, 1998

The Act provides for:

- integrated management and sustainable use of surface water and groundwater
- devolution of surface and groundwater to catchment and local level
- government to play a support role through functions such as promoting awareness, providing information and building capacity.

The Act aims to control the use of water resources, protect them from being impacted on or exploited and polluted, and ensure that every person has equitable access to them.

The Act gives the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry the tools to gather the information it needs to optimally manage the country's water resources. The registration of water-use is one of these tools.

All water users instructed to register have the statutory obligation to do so. There are strict penalties, prescribed in the Act, for those who do not comply.

All water users who do not receive their water from a service-provider, local authority, water board, irrigation board, government water scheme or other bulk supplier, and who use water for irrigation, mining purposes, industrial use, feedlots or in terms of a general authorisation, must

register. This includes the use of surface and groundwater.

Other uses of water that must be registered include:

- Diversion of rivers and streams.
- Discharge of waste or water containing waste.
- Storage, which includes any person or body storing water for any purpose (including irrigation, domestic supply, industrial use, mining, aquaculture, fishing, water sport, aesthetic value, gardening, landscaping, golfing, etc.) from surface run-off, groundwater or fountain flow in excess of 10 000 m³, or where the water area at full supply level exceeds one hectare (ha) in total on land owned or occupied by that person or body, and who is not in possession of a permit or permission.
- Stream-flow reduction activities (afforestation). All afforestation for commercial purposes, including communal forestry for commercial gain, that took place prior to 1972, must be registered. Forest owners who have permits issued under forestry legislation need not register.
- Local authorities and other bulk suppliers with their own water sources and purification works.
- Controlled activities such as irrigating with waste, power generation with water, atmospheric modification or recharging of aquifers.

An assessment of the environmental requirements of the rivers and streams concerned is conducted before a licence can be issued.

The implementation of the National Pricing Strategy for Raw Water began in 2002 to ensure that, as far as possible, the costs of the management of water resources and water-supply infrastructure are borne by water users.

The majority of water users pay the water-resource charge or cost for which they are billed. However, underrecovery of costs remains considerable.

Action has been taken against a number of illegal water users across South Africa in response to growing concern about an apparent increase in the rate of illegal water use in some catchment areas.

Of the 597 schools targeted for the provision of water during the 2006/07 financial year, 76% received water. More than 50% of 2 409 schools targeted for the provision of sanitation had been provided for.

National Water Resource Strategy

Cabinet approved the first edition of the NWRS in September 2004. The NWRS describes how the water resources of South Africa will be protected, used, developed, conserved, managed and controlled in accordance with the requirements of the National Water Policy and the National Water Act, 1998.

Through the NWRS, South Africa reached one of the first recommendations of the Johannesburg Plan of Action, adopted at the 2002 World Summit on Sustainable Development, to develop national water-resource management plans.

The strategy contains estimates of present and future water availability and water requirements. It also proposes actions to be taken to achieve a sustainable balance between water availability and requirements. This is necessary to provide sufficient water, which is essential for human life, for participation in economic activity and for the progressive re-allocation of water to sectors of society that were previously excluded.

A vital element of the NWRS is the progressive decentralisation of the responsibility and authority for water-resource management to CMAs and, at a local level, to WUAs. These institutions, representing water users and other stakeholders, will facilitate effective participation in water-resource management in their areas. It will also enable the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry to move from its present multiple roles as operator, developer and regulator to become the sector leader, policy-maker, regulator and monitor.

The department will lead the creation of new institutions over a number of years, and will support and guide them in executing their tasks.

While the actions include the construction of new infrastructure such as dams, pumping stations and pipelines to meet increasing water demands, attention is mainly given to arrangements for the careful management, use and protection of water resources.

Water Services Act, 1997

The Act aims to:

- set out the rights of consumers, and the rights and duties of those responsible for providing water services

- provide for the right of access to basic water supply, and the right to basic sanitation necessary to secure sufficient water and an environment not harmful to human health or well-being
- allow the Minister of Water Affairs and Forestry to set national standards (including norms and standards for tariffs) to ensure efficient, equitable and sustainable water services
- promote the effective and sustainable use of financial and natural resources
- establish effective and financially viable statutory institutions to assist local government to fulfil its obligations
- ensure the production by WSAs of WSDPs required by municipal legislation within the framework of IDPs
- provide a comprehensive framework for the oversight and regulation of water boards under the authority of the Minister of Water Affairs and Forestry
- provide a framework for the collection and publication of information about water services.

Strategic Framework for Water Services (SFWS)

In 1994, the *White Paper on Community Water Supply and Sanitation* played a key part in creating an enabling policy framework for the delivery of water and sanitation services. However, since 1999, local government's responsibilities have changed significantly and the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry has transformed from being an implementer to a regulator. This necessitated the revision of the policy, which culminated in the SFWS.

The framework provides a comprehensive policy summary regarding the total water services sector in South Africa, and sets out the vision, targets and policy for the next 10 years. The key challenges are to address prevailing inequality and to provide basic services, higher levels of service and sustainable service, including institutional sustainability.

In October 2003, following the approval of the SFWS, the department and the South African Local Government Association signed a joint declaration committing both parties to give effect to the SFWS.

The key policy themes of the SFWS are:

- eliminating the backlog in basic service provision
- providing higher levels of service
- providing free basic services (water supply and sanitation)
- credit control
- institutional reform of water-services providers
- a decentralised fiscal framework
- a long-term vision for regulation.

Existing policies on free basic services, the provision of basic household sanitation and the transfers of infrastructure from national to local government aim to ensure that:

- everyone in South Africa who has access to a functioning basic water supply is provided with free basic water
- everyone who has access to a functioning basic sanitation facility is provided with free basic sanitation by 2010
- everyone has access to a functioning basic sanitation facility supply by 2010
- all assets of water-services schemes are transferred from the department to WSAs by 2008.

More detailed strategies to give effect to the implementation of the SFWS are the:

- Institutional Reform Strategy
- Regulatory Strategy
- Legislative Review (amendments to the Water Services Act, 1997)
- Sanitation Strategy
- Free Basic Services Strategy
- Transfer Strategy (of infrastructure assets to local government).

Water-resource management

Water-resource management in South Africa has undergone major revision along with the reform of water policy and legislation. The National Water Act, 1998 provides the principles for water-resource management. This policy aims to manage water resources in an integrated manner to ensure a healthy and stable water-resource base to meet the current and future needs of South Africa.

Water Allocation Reform (War) Programme

The War Programme is a proactive approach towards redressing race and gender inequities regarding water use – where “water use” refers to promoting access to water for productive purposes (and not to the provision of basic water services).

This includes actions ranging from promoting applications from historically disadvantaged individuals, to supporting the licence-evaluation

process to promote equity, as well as implementing the compulsory licensing process itself. Through this programme, the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry is developing and overseeing the implementation of frameworks (policies, strategies, guidelines and procedures) for compulsory licensing, and the allocation of water between and among users.

By mid-2006, a document titled *Position Paper: Water Allocation in South Africa – A Framework for Water Allocation Reform*, under development since 2004, was being finalised. It outlines the high-level rules for allocating water to promote race and gender reform, while minimising potential negative impacts on existing lawful users and the economy. A draft position paper formed the basis for public consultation on reform, and was launched in April 2005.

Awareness material on the programme has been developed and will be available in the appropriate official languages where the programme is being implemented. The material includes pamphlets on compulsory licensing and understanding the verification and validation of water-use, and a booklet on the productive use of water.

A toolkit of methodologies in support of War has also been developed. The toolkit uses the position paper as its basis, and outlines practical implementation methods that promote the goals of the War Programme. The department's intention is to speed up the process and to improve the efficiency with which licences are evaluated within the Batho Pele prescriptions.

As key role-players in the programme, provincial and local government, through their provincial growth and development plans (PGDPs) and IDPs are central to informing, and being informed by, the way water allocations are made in their areas of jurisdiction. The awareness materials and toolkit will assist municipalities in determining water requirements in IDPs – in terms of WSDPs, and other plans, for example local economic development, land use, agriculture and the environment.

The Olifants Basin is one of the pilot projects for the War programme, and aims to reallocate water to deal with imbalances of the past.

One of the major challenges for the Olifants is the issue of water pollution owing to mining activities, power generation and other land-use activities. These challenges are worsened by limited capacity to monitor and intervene.

By mid-2007, integrated catchment-management studies were also under way at the Thukela Basin, under the auspices of the Help Programme.

National Water Resource Infrastructure Agency

In August 2005, Cabinet approved the establishment of the NWRIA to ensure long-term water security for South Africa.

The NWRIA will develop and operate South Africa's major national dams and water-transfer schemes, which are currently managed directly by the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry. These include the Vaal Dam, the Tugela-Vaal transfer system, the Orange River Scheme and the Western Cape system.

The agency will also integrate the Trans-Caledon Tunnel Authority (TCTA), the parastatal organisation responsible for funding the Lesotho Highlands Water Project. It will not be responsible for domestic water supplies, which remain the responsibility of municipalities and regional water boards.

In March 2007, the second National Sanitation Week was celebrated and the National Health and Hygiene Strategy was launched. This strategy recognises the close relationship between the delivery of water and sanitation infrastructure and the improved health of a community. The strategy also informed the theme for 2007's National Sanitation Week, which was *Sanitation for Health and Dignity*.

The purpose of Sanitation Week is to highlight government's work to ensure that all South Africans have access to sanitation, to communicate the critical importance of looking after sanitation facilities, and to inform communities of the need to wash their hands after using the toilet and before preparing food.

There is an international movement to address the lack of sanitation. The United Nations' General Assembly, in adopting the millennium development goals in 2000, agreed to halve the global backlog in sanitation and water by the year 2015. Government has set its targets higher and committed itself to ensure that all buckets in formal settlements are eradicated, all clinics have safe and adequate water and sanitation, all schools have safe and adequate water and all households access to basic sanitation.

The Minister of Water Affairs and Forestry will be responsible for deciding what projects need to be built in terms of the NWRS. The agency will be required to make funding arrangements, and to ensure that projects are designed and built according to appropriate technical, social and environmental standards, and operated effectively and efficiently.

The NWRIA is expected to be operational by April 2008.

Water-management institutions

The National Water Act, 1998 sets out the framework for the management of South Africa's water resources. This framework provides for the establishment of water-management institutions, which include CMAs and WUAs.

Catchment-management agencies

CMAs aim to ensure equitable, efficient and sustainable water-resource management. They are required to establish governing boards, which are responsible for integrated water-resource management and developing a catchment management strategy.

The boards have to represent the various sectors of society within their specific water-management areas and will consist of water users, potential water users, local and provincial government, and environmental interest groups.

The department aims to establish CMAs in South Africa's 19 water-management areas, as required by the National Water Act, 1998.

The department will devolve administration to local water users and communities, accompanied by vigorous capacity-building, so that historically excluded communities can participate in water management.

Internal strategic perspectives have been developed for the water-management areas.

These are the forerunners of the catchment-management strategies that will be prepared by the CMAs when they are established. They describe the water availability and water requirements in each area, and outline the approaches to be adopted for managing water resources. In particular, they provide general principles for the CMAs to authorise water use.

Water-related research

Being a water-stressed country, South Africa progressively needs to find innovative ways of managing water resources to ensure that the basic needs of its citizens are met, that social and economic development is not restricted by a lack of or a poor quality of water, and that sustainability of water resources and water-dependent ecosystems is achieved.

As reflected in the Water Research Commission's (WRC) mission and its various undertakings, the WRC functions as a "hub" for water-centred knowledge.

It is a networking organisation linking the nation and working through partnerships. The innovative organisation continuously provides novel (and practical) ways of packaging and transferring knowledge into technology-based products for the water sector, and the local and international community.

The WRC will continue to play the leading role in building a sustainable water-related knowledge base in South Africa by:

- investing in water research and development
- building sustainable and appropriate capacity
- developing skills for the water sector
- being adept in forming strategic partnerships to achieve objectives more effectively while making optimal use of the latest global information and knowledge and other technologies available.

The Water Research Act, 1971 (Act 34 of 1971), provides for the establishment of the Water Research Fund, which derives income primarily from levies on water consumption.

In supporting the creation, dissemination and application of knowledge, the WRC focuses on five key strategic areas:

- water-resource management
- water-linked ecosystems
- water use and waste management
- water in agriculture
- water-centred knowledge.

The WRC also calls for specific mechanisms to address key strategic issues of national importance. These are dealt with in four cross-cutting domains:

- water and society
- water and the economy
- water and the environment
- water and health.

To ensure that research results are relevant to the broader objectives of water-resource management, the applicability of research in each key strategic area is maximised by addressing the relationships

between water and society, the economy, health, and the environment.

The WRC's key objective is supporting the development of human resources in the water sector. Involvement in research is recognised as an important vehicle for building and developing expertise among water-resource practitioners. Every research project is required to incorporate a strong element of capacity-building, especially among previously disadvantaged individuals.

The Department of Science and Technology and the National Research Foundation are partners with the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry and the WRC in ensuring that approaches to water research are consistent with South Africa's broad policy on science and innovation.

Water boards

Water boards have been established as service-providers that report to the Minister of Water Affairs and Forestry. The boards manage water services in their supply areas and provide potable water at cost-effective prices. By mid-2007, there were 15 water boards that have been set up as financially independent institutions, in terms of Section 34(1) of the Water Services Act, 1997, aiming to be financially viable.

These water boards are: Albany Coast Water, Ikangala Water, Overberg Water, Amatola Water, Lepelle Northern Water, Pelladrift Water, Bloem Water, Magalies Water, Rand Water, Botshelo Water, Mhlathuze Water, Sedibeng Water, Bushbuckridge Water, Namakwa Water and Umgeni Water.

The impact of their financial performance on the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry has been limited. Apart from providing seed funding to some of the newly formed water boards, and providing operating subsidies where they have undertaken specific functions on behalf of the department, the department has only had to provide financial assistance in exceptional circumstances.

Irrigation boards and water-user associations

WUAs are established in terms of Chapter 8 of the National Water Act, 1998 for localised users to manage their water use jointly and in a more integrated way. The Act requires that all irrigation boards formed under previous legislation must transform into WUAs.

In terms of sections 61 and 62 of the Act, the new policy framework for financial assistance to water-management institutions for irrigated agricultural development aims to promote initial

access to irrigated agriculture, and to improve sustainable irrigation development by subsidising emerging farmers.

Natural mean annual run-off and ecological reserve (million m³ per annum)

Water management	Natural mean annual run-off ⁽¹⁾	Ecological reserve ^(1,2)
Limpopo	985	156
Luvuvhu/Letaba	1 185	224
Crocodile West and Marico	855	165
Olifants	2 042	460
Inkomati ⁽³⁾	3 539	1 008
Usutu to Mhlathuze ⁽⁴⁾	4 780	1 192
Thukela	3 799	859
Upper Vaal	2 423	299
Middle Vaal	888	109
Lower Vaal	368	48
Mvoti to Umzimkulu	4 798	1 160
Mzimvubu to Keiskamma	7 241	1 122
Upper Orange	6 981	1 349
Lower Orange ⁽⁵⁾	502	69
Fish to Tsitsikamma	2 154	243
Gouritz	1 679	325
Olifants/Doring	1 108	156
Breede	2 472	384
Berg	1 429	217
Total	49 228	9 544

1) Quantities refer to the water-management area under consideration only (water that originates or is required in that water-management area).

2) Total volume given, based on preliminary estimates, impact on yield being a portion of this.

3) Includes Komati catchment in Swaziland (mean annual run-off = 517 million m³/a).

4) Includes Pongola catchment in Swaziland (mean annual run-off = 213 million m³/a).

5) Includes contributions from Sengu and Caledon rivers in Lesotho (mean annual run-off = 4,765 billion m³/a).

Source: Department of Water Affairs and Forestry

By mid-2007, all irrigation boards were being transformed into WUAs. Of the 279 irrigation boards, some 68 had been transformed into 38 WUAs. Some 23 new WUAs were established, most of which are focused on emerging farmers.

The new associations include the Lower Olifants Dam in the Western Cape and the Imfunda Yophongolo, KwaZulu-Natal. The Western Cape associations include commercial and resource-poor farmers, while Limpopo associations are made up of resource-poor farmers only. The transformed irrigation boards include Hex Valley and Kabous River, Western Cape; and Nkwalini, KwaZulu-Natal.

By mid-2007, a number of WUAs were using government-guaranteed loans worth R300 million.

Working for Water Programme

The WFW Programme is an Expanded Public Works Programme. Alien invasive plants (Aips) cause billions of rands of damage to South Africa's economy yearly, and are the single biggest threat to the country's biological biodiversity. The country's biological diversity also underpins the tourism industry and creates jobs. It is equally worrying that these species undermine ecological integrity when the land's ability to produce is compromised. Social issues such as poverty and unemployment inevitably follow.

It is estimated that between 6% and 7% of South Africa's annual water run-off is being consumed by Aips.

The core business of the programme is to contribute to the sustainable prevention and control of Aips, thereby optimising conservation and the use of natural resources. In doing so, it addresses poverty relief and promotes economic empowerment and transformation within a public-works framework.

WFW is recognised internationally as one of the most effective programmes for addressing the problem of Aips, combining environmental issues with social-development objectives. It is estimated that Aips have invaded over two million ha of South Africa.

The programme, using community labour, removes Aips from South Africa's river courses and water sheds and cleared over 7 900 km² of land in 2006/07.

It also provided over 1,8 million days of employment for 29 000 people and, with a budget of R387 million, there are plans to expand the programme under the Jobs for Growth Programme.

Part of the programme is Operation Vuselela, where the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry has partnered with the Department of Defence to clear Aips from more than 5 500 ha of Defence Force land, and providing 44 000 days of employment to military veterans.

Campaigns such as Weedbuster Week provide the opportunity for WFW to raise awareness of its activities, and bring the importance of Aip control to the public's attention. While Weedbuster Week specifically highlights the problem within South Africa, it is linked bilaterally to Australia and New Zealand, and through multilateral agreements to the broader Global Invasive Species Programme.

Flood and drought management

The latest South African Disaster-Management Policy and ensuing legislation brought about a major shift in focus from reactive to preventative and mitigative disaster management.

From a flood-management perspective, the South African focus has shifted from primarily structural to non-structural, accentuating the value of, for example, floodplain zoning and flood warnings.

Draft regulations for support to resource-poor farmers were published, and support to these farmers was expected to be increased during 2007/08. By mid-20007, rain-water harvesting tanks had been supplied to these farmers and plans

were under way to provide a further 200 rain-water tanks in Limpopo, Free State and Eastern Cape, and 1 000 of the smaller Jojo water tanks in Thaba Nchu in the Free State.

Dams and water schemes

The central objective of managing water resources is to ensure that water is used to support equitable and sustainable social and economic transformation and development.

Dams and water schemes form an integral component of the strategy to meet these objectives. The NWRS provides details on possible major water schemes to be developed in the next 25 years, amounting to about R21 billion at 2004 price levels.

The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry follows an integrated approach to managing South Africa's water resources. Proposed new water schemes need to comply with the NWRS, requiring that water-demand management programmes be implemented before embarking on new infrastructure development.

Strict environmental-impact assessments must also be performed in accordance with laws and regulations administered by the Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism. The guidelines issued by the World Commission on Dams must be followed.

The following major schemes are under construction or reaching the implementation stage:

- **Berg River Project:** The Minister of Water Affairs and Forestry has directed the TCTA to implement the R1,55-billion privately funded scheme comprising the Berg River Dam near Franschoek in the Western Cape, and the associated supplement scheme comprising a weir, pumping stations and pipelines to increase the water supply to the Western Cape. Construction of the dam by a private contractor started in June 2004 and was due for completion in 2007/08. Construction of the supplement scheme, using government and private resources, was expected to commence in 2005 for commissioning during 2007. At 70 metres (m) tall, the 990 m-long dam wall will be the highest concrete-faced, rock-filled dam wall in South Africa.
- **Nandoni Dam Project:** Water-treatment works for the Nandoni Dam, in Limpopo, were expected to be completed in 2007. The R389-million dam, which will benefit over 700 000 people, is expected to be completed in 2008.
- **Vaal River Eastern Subsystem Augmentation Project:** The Minister of Water Affairs and

The South African Government has started a massive campaign to reduce the high level of water loss in the country's water distribution system.

Some of the interventions being planned to curb wastage includes a national water-wise campaign, the investigation of the possible development of water-conservation and demand-management regulations and the possibility of introducing a national fund to support municipalities and other qualifying water users to implement water-saving technologies.

Ministerial awards will also be held in 2008 to recognise those who have excelled in the areas of water saving and management, while the National Water-Use Efficiency Information System will be set up to share ideas and approaches to improving the state of water use in the country.

The new pricing strategy for charges for water use, which came into effect on 1 April 2007, makes provision for the establishment of a waste discharge charge system that is based on a "polluter pays" principle.

Forestry directed the TCTA to augment the water supply to Sasol and Eskom by implementing abstraction and desilting works alongside the Vaal Dam shoreline, and a pumping station and a 120 km-long steel pipeline of 1 900 mm diameter to the Bosjesspruit and Trichardsfontein dams in Mpumalanga. Construction of the privately funded project was expected to be completed in 2007/08 at an estimated cost of more than R2 billion.

- The Olifants River Water Resource Development Project: This project was commissioned to achieve an increased assurance of water supply. It is part of government's aim to secure bulk water for domestic supply purposes to stimulate economic activity and promote the socio-economic development of the people of this part of Limpopo in line with the PGDS and the Spatial Development Framework. Phase one of the project was the raising of the Flag Boshielo Dam by five metres, which was completed at the end of 2006. The prosperity of this area is closely linked to the mining industry, which creates employment opportunities and economic growth; and water is the catalyst for this development. The local mining sector has spent millions of rand on the Lebalale water pipeline from the Olifants River to the Steelpoort area. The mines have also carried the cost for the raising of the Flag Boshielo Dam.

The construction of this dam is the second phase of the Olifants River Water Resource Development Project, one of the flagship programmes of government's Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa (AsgiSA). The importance of this dam is twofold; the first is to supply water to the towns, industries and poorly serviced rural communities in the Sekhukhune District of Limpopo. Secondly, the dam will supply water to the mines that will help to unlock vast mineral deposits, mainly in the form of platinum-group metals (PGMs) found in the region. These PGMs are at present the largest known unexploited mineral wealth in South Africa.

The construction of the De Hoop Dam and the associated bulk water-distribution infrastructure will cost about R5 billion, and municipalities in

the area, supported by the national and provincial government, are preparing to invest an additional R3 billion on infrastructure to treat and distribute potable water to rural domestic and urban users. More than 800 000 people in the project area will benefit from improved domestic water supply when availability of water from the dam is secured. The construction of the dam was due to start in 2007 and be completed in 2009/10.

- Mooi-Mgeni River Transfer Scheme: Phase one of the water-transfer project comprising the new Mearns weir on the Mooi River near the town of Mooi River and the raised Midmar Dam near Howick on the Mgeni River was commissioned during 2003 to augment the water supply to the Umgeni area in KwaZulu-Natal. Phase 2A, to be completed towards the end of the decade, will include the construction of the Spring Grove Dam on the Mooi River near Rosetta. The Spring Grove pumping station (Phase 2B) will follow at a later stage to suit the demand requirements of Umgeni Water.
- In KwaZulu-Natal, the Hluhluwe regional water works is expected to be completed by the end of 2007/08. This project will provide rural communities in Northern KwaZulu-Natal with water for domestic use.
- In the Northern Cape, a R22-million water pipeline was being constructed from the Orange River to Colesberg.
- In Gauteng, government was rehabilitating the Vlaktefontein Canal as part of the Usutu Vaal Scheme, and rehabilitating and refurbishing water and waste water treatment works in the Vaal River system.
- The North West was expected to install early warning systems in the groundwater aquifers in the Vryberg area to detect levels of groundwater.

Groundwater resources

Groundwater, despite its relatively small contribution to bulk water supply (13%), represents an important and strategic water resource in South Africa, since it services between 52% and 82% of community water-supply schemes in the Eastern Cape, Limpopo, Northern Cape, North West and KwaZulu-Natal.

Owing to the lack of perennial streams in the semi-desert to desert parts, two thirds of South Africa's surface area is largely dependent on groundwater. Although irrigation is the largest user, the supply to more than 300 towns and smaller settlements is also extremely important. Through government's commitment to meeting the basic water needs of communities, groundwater has become a strategic resource for village water supply in the wetter parts of the country, because of its cost-effectiveness in a widely scattered small-scale-user situation.

Groundwater also contributes a considerable portion to river flow. This requires reserving a significant share of groundwater resources to protect aquatic ecosystems in terms of the National Water Act, 1998. The maximum quantity of groundwater that can be developed economically is estimated at about 6 000 million m³ a year, while some 4 000 million m³ of groundwater (mainly in the dry season) contributes to surface-water flow annually.

Regional and international co-operation and initiatives

South Africa has signed co-operative agreements with a number of countries in the southern African region with which it shares water resources, such as:

- Mozambique and Swaziland on the Incomati and Maputo rivers
- Botswana, Lesotho and Namibia on the establishment of the Orange Senqu River Commission
- Botswana, Zimbabwe and Mozambique on the establishment of the Limpopo Watercourse Commission
- Lesotho on the Lesotho Highlands Water Project
- Swaziland on the Komati River Development Project.

These co-operative agreements improve South Africa's bilateral and multilateral relations in the African Union. All the countries involved benefit, while sharing development costs.

During 2006/07, the department raised South Africa's profile in the international community by hosting an international conference on Earth observation technology for use in obtaining water-related information. The department's officials also presented papers at international conferences.

South Africa is increasingly seen as a leading light in addressing the pressing water and sanitation challenges faced by the poor and by

people living in rural areas. This view was supported during the launch of the 2006 United Nations (UN) Development Programme's *Human Development Report* in the Western Cape.

During 2007/08, the department planned to host two international events, the UN Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation symposium on hydrological issues in November 2007 in Gauteng and the African San Conference in KwaZulu-Natal in February 2008. The department was also expected to participate in the Water and Sustainable Development exhibition to be held in Zaragoza, Spain, during 2008.

In addition to participating in the African Ministers' Council on Water, South Africa has been active in watercourse commissions that were established to manage the rivers it shares with Lesotho, Swaziland, Namibia, Mozambique, Botswana and Zimbabwe.

Forestry

Provincial and local government play a crucial role in the national forestry agenda. Many provinces and municipalities are aware of the benefits of forestry, not just for the social and aesthetic benefits which trees and forests provide, but more importantly for the livelihood support and economic benefits they provide.

In terms of the economic growth and development which forestry offers, the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry is working closely with other government structures in the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal to fast-track the afforestation licensing process, which involves support from a number of other provincial departments.

These new forestry areas will be singularly important in transforming and growing the forestry sector and, as such, afforestation forms an important part of the Forestry Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment (BBBEE) Charter, which has been completed and agreed with the sector.

The department has worked closely with other departments on the process of reducing the administrative burden on forestry development. Applications for afforestation have increased dramatically from 800 ha in 2004 to 5 500 ha in 2007. Under the charter, government aims to process about 15 000 ha per year for the next 10 years to get a net increase in forestry of about 10 000 ha per year.

The department has almost halved the original time of nearly 18 months to process a licence application, and has plans in place to further reduce this timeframe. It also plans to use the

progressive provisions of the National Forests Act, 1998 (Act 84 of 1998), to provide direct support to communities in this and other forest-enterprise areas. Strategic interventions such as the establishment of the special-purpose vehicle AsgiSA Eastern Cape (Pty) Ltd will assist in driving the implementation of the forestry programme in these key areas.

Afforestation will take place in rural areas where there are few other viable opportunities for job creation and economic activity. The development of these additional raw material resources will attract greater processing capacity in the form of sawmills, board mills, chipping plants and treatment plants. All these will lead to broad economic growth. For example, through this afforestation an additional R500 million per year could be generated in plantations, which had a turnover of R32 billion in 2006, and in excess of R1,5 billion could be added per year in the value-adding processes.

The Chief Directorate: Forestry has developed and adopted a new vision for forestry. South Africa needs to create an enabling environment for economic and social development through sustainable forestry, especially at local level.

Forestry encourages growth and development of the First Economy, thereby increasing its potential to create jobs. Following a recently published supply-and-demand study on softwood sawlogs in South Africa, the department commissioned a similar study for roundwood. The objective of this report was to establish the supply and demand at regional and national levels.

The forestry sector is an important contributor to gross domestic product and employment. It employs about 170 000 people and contributes more than R16 billion annually to the South African economy. The impact of the sector is felt particularly in rural areas and there is significant scope for this sector to expand and thereby contribute towards uplifting those in the Second Economy.

Over the past few years, much work has been done in the forestry sector to improve yields, restructure institutions, improve community access and redefine government's role. The Forestry BBEE Charter recognises the link between the

transformation and growth of the sector. Through the strategic environmental assessments that have been conducted, about 100 000 ha of new commercial forests can be planted over the next 10 years.

The forestry programme also encompasses expanded greening and tree-planting projects. The programme prioritises work on fire programmes and encourages the establishment of fire-protection associations.

Forestry supports small growers and facilitates new afforestation, especially in the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal. Growing trees in these areas will add to the economy, and will provide employment and entrepreneurial opportunities to local people.

Fruit trees have multiple purposes: they help clean the air, reduce heat, provide nutrition and support good mental health and well-being.

The department has been involved in planning for the expansion of forest areas in the Eastern Cape, where most forestry opportunities are available and where the local rural economy needs stimulation. A strategic environmental assessment conducted in the Eastern Cape has identified areas for new afforestation, which are being pursued.

It is estimated that at least an initial 30 000 ha of land could be afforested and that this could be increased to more than 150 000 ha of land once the project gains momentum. The areas could accommodate small growers and community afforestation, if correctly planned, and could expand the broad base of black people engaged in forestry. In KwaZulu-Natal, options for new afforestation also exist, and conservative estimates show between 30 000 ha and 40 000 ha are suitable for this purpose. This will create substantial employment opportunities.

This view is expressed in the *Genesis Report*, which looked at the costs and benefits of the forest sector. The report was commissioned by the Department of Trade and Industry. Following this report, the Government has identified forestry as one of seven "strategic industries" that will be included in a comprehensive Industrial Development Strategy. The Department of Trade and Industry and the industry have produced the Forest Sector Growth and Development Strategy as part of this initiative.

Indigenous forests are indispensable to the country's heritage, beauty, wildlife and environment, while commercial forests provide jobs and economic opportunities for many people, especially in rural areas. Forestry represents a substantial investment in the country and plays an important role in the Integrated Rural Development Programme.

Plantations cover about 1,3 million ha of South Africa. Over 80% of them are found in Mpumalanga, KwaZulu-Natal and the Eastern Cape. They produced more than 22 million m³ of commercial roundwood, worth an estimated R5 billion, according to a study done in 2005. They provide direct employment for about 107 056 people, of which 67 556 are in formal employment, 30 000 are contract workers and 39 500 are small growers and their helpers.

Together with the processed products, the total industry turnover was about R15 billion in 2005, including R6,8 billion worth of wood-pulp.

A pulp and paper log intake of about 17,3 million m³, mining timber of 826 000 m³, charcoal of 258 000 m³, and almost 4,8 million m³ of sawlogs and veneer logs and poles of about 351 000 m³ were transferred to processing plants in 2005.

The sales of timber from primary processors by volume in 2005 were as follows: sawn timber, 2,2 million m³; pulp, two million tons (Mt); mining timber, 639 390 t; panel products, 512 802 m³; poles, 293 021 m³; charcoal, 46 790 t; chips/mill residues, about six Mt; and firewood, 13 251 t.

Between 390 000 and 560 000 people depend on plantation forestry for their livelihoods, particularly in the rural areas.

About half of the more than 1 700 indigenous tree and shrub species found in South Africa grow along the south and east coasts and on the southern and south-eastern slopes of inland mountains. The other half is spread over the interior plateau.

The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry plans to transfer the management and control of all state natural (indigenous) forests by the end of 2008/09 to other competent management agencies, primarily to provincial government departments or national and provincial conservation agencies.

This includes the official handover to South African National Parks (SANParks) of about 97 000 ha of state forest land in the southern Cape and Tsitsikamma areas. SANParks, as a conservation agency, will manage natural forests in terms of all the provisions of the National Forests Act, 1998.

Progress was made in releasing state forest land that was no longer required for forestry purposes as part of the process to deproclaim state forests in mountain-catchment areas. The total area released in the Western Cape, Sederberg and De Mond areas comprised 146 888 ha. In the Eastern Cape, the transfer of uncontested natural forests has begun. Agreement has also been reached on the transfer of contested areas.

A socio-economic impact analysis will inform the finalisation of an exit strategy for the Blyde state forest land. Findings are that there will be no job losses on the side of government for the duration of the rehabilitation process, lasting between five and 10 years; and that there will be a net increase in job opportunities in the medium to long term.

The Real Yellowwood (*Podocarpus latifolius*) is South Africa's national tree. There are different species of yellowwood trees that can grow higher than 40 m with a girth of 8 m, and can live for up to 800 years. The Big Tree near the Storms River Bridge (46 m), the King Edward VII in the Knysna Forest (46 m) and the Eastern Monarch in the Amatola mountains (44 m) are the best-known giants.

National Arbor Week is celebrated annually at the beginning of September to encourage the greening of South Africa. Two different trees of the year are nominated annually: a common variety and a scarcer, possibly endangered, species. The 2007 trees of the year were the common wild currant (*Rhus pyroides*) and the poison bride's bush (*Pavetta schumanniana*).

The aim of Arbor Week is to promote awareness of the need for planting and preserving indigenous trees throughout South Africa. It highlights the opportunities for sustainable economic development, community participation, poverty alleviation and job creation in forestry to create a better life for all. The theme for 2007 was *Plant a Tree – Grow our Future*.

The Arbor Week campaign aims to:

- promote improved knowledge of trees, particularly indigenous trees, and their importance
- stress the necessity for everyone to contribute to the greening of South Africa by planting and caring for trees
- highlight the vital roles of trees in the natural environment
- contribute to the achievement of green, dignified and healthy environments in all parts of the country

- encourage the youth to participate in tree-planting activities and related environmental-education programmes.

It highlights the opportunities for sustainable economic development, community participation, poverty alleviation and job creation in forestry, thereby contributing towards growth, development and a better life for all. The target audience includes all South Africans but more specifically rural communities, municipalities and schools.

The Minister of Water Affairs and Forestry, Ms Lindiwe Hendricks, proclaimed the first 21 champion trees as protected under the National Forests Act, 1998 in the *Government Gazette* in December 2006. These individual and groups of trees were shortlisted by a panel of experts from a list of proposed trees considered to be of national conservation importance. Among the listed trees are:

- the famous Tsitsikamma Big Tree along the Garden Route
- the Post Office Milkwood Tree of Mossel Bay
- the Sagole baobab in Limpopo (one of the two largest trees in South Africa)
- camphor trees planted at Vergelegen Estate three centuries ago.

Guidelines have been developed for the use of these trees to ensure their continued economic and ecological benefits to South Africans.

The Champion Tree Project has entered an exciting phase, with new discoveries of exceptionally large trees. In Aderne Gardens in Cape Town, officials measured an enormous Indian rubber fig with a trunk circumference of more than 11 m and a crown diameter of more than 44 m.

Applying the international formula for tree size that combines height, trunk size and crown

diameter, it was discovered that this tree has a size index similar to the Sagole baobab in Limpopo. This means that the title for largest tree in the country is now shared by two trees at opposite ends of South Africa, one an indigenous tree in the far north and the other an exotic tree in the far south.

A new cycle of nominations for champion trees begins at the start of August each year, while the nominations of the previous cycle are then evaluated by the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry and its panel of experts.

Contributing to socio-economic reform and growth

Government recognises that BEE will not be effective if it does not have the support of the private sector.

The BBBEE Charter for the Forest Sector will be instrumental in achieving the objectives of the scorecard as suggested by the Department of Trade and Industry.

The Forestry BBBEE Charter process was launched at the Forestry Indaba in April 2005.

Forestry Enterprise Development (FED) relates to the concept of using forests and forest-based resources as a vehicle for economic growth, employment and socio-economic upliftment that takes people from a subsistence livelihood system into a market economy. The concept is also central to the department's pro-poor agenda and a key component of BBBEE in the forestry sector.

The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry supports FED. This includes transferring state forests, developing an afforestation strategy for the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal, and including forestry as a key sector in PGDPs.

The Directorate: Forestry Development supports the establishment of community projects through regional forestry staff.

An estimated R2 million from the Community Facilitation Fund has been spent to support the establishment of projects.

Current projects include bee-keeping, which is a partnership with the Agricultural Research Council, and establishing medicinal nurseries in partnership with various stakeholders.

In 1997, Cabinet decided that the State should exit from commercial-plantation forestry.

Apart from Arbour Week, the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry organises Water Week, Sanitation Week and Weedbuster Week. The department also has youth-development initiatives such as Baswa le Meetse, the Water Allocation Reform Programme, which seeks to redress historical water allocations, a programme to support resource-poor farmers, and plans to establish a national water-resource infrastructure agency.

To allow the restructuring, the commercial plantation forests of South African Forestry Company Limited (Safcol) and the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry were combined and packaged into five stand-alone special-purpose vehicles, operating as wholly owned subsidiaries of Safcol.

Following an in-depth review by the Department of Public Enterprises, in consultation with other government departments, Cabinet decided to dispose of the Safcol subsidiary, Komatiland Forests (KLF). KLF's commercial operations will be aligned with the requirements of improved industry structure and operation of the saw-log market, and ownership of KLF will be transferred to the private sector.

The Department of Public Enterprises will be responsible for ensuring clear guidelines regarding government's objectives and will empower the Safcol Board to implement Cabinet's decision. The goal will be to ensure that, in future, the value of the State-owned forests will contribute optimally to government's objectives for the forestry, timber, pulp and paper sector.

South African Forestry Company Limited

Safcol, a wholly owned state enterprise, was formed in 1992 and acquired the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry's commercial forestry assets and related business in April 1993. It also acquired the remaining commercial forestry assets of the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry to facilitate the privatisation of the State's forestry assets. Since 1993, Safcol has played a leading role in the forestry industry, especially by introducing new forest engineering and sawmilling technology to the local industry. Safcol was also the leader in the introduction of forest certification in South Africa. Its operations in KwaZulu-Natal were the first in the local industry to be certified by the Forest Stewardship Council (FSC).

After completing the privatisation transactions, Safcol holds a minority interest in each of the four privatised entities. These holdings are earmarked to be used mainly to benefit employees and communities, offering:

- up to 9% for an Employee Share Ownership Programme (Esop).
- 10% for communities, directly or through the National Empowerment Fund.

By March 2007, the Esops for two of the privatised entities had been implemented, with a third close to implementation. The fourth Esop will be substituted with a cash settlement for eligible employees.

The disposal of contributions to the communities is awaiting policy guidelines.

The remaining Safcol interest, after the disposals to the Esops and the communities, together with any other assets held by Safcol, will be disposed of by 31 March 2009, in line with existing policy guidelines on the disposal of non-core assets as part of the process of winding up the affairs of Safcol.

Industry and exports

The industry was a net exporter of almost R1,9 billion worth of goods in 2006, more than 98% of which was in the form of converted value-added products. Had it not been for this trade surplus in forest products, the country's trade deficit of R69 billion in 2006 would have been almost 3% higher.

The forest-product industry ranks among the top exporting industries in the country, having contributed 2,51% to total exports and 1,74% to total imports in 2006. Capital investment in the industry amounted to some R35 billion in 2006.

The value of forest-product exports has grown by 115% over the past decade, from R4,6 billion in 1996 to R9,9 billion in 2006. In real terms (taking inflation into account), this growth was 25% or a compounded real growth of 2,3% per year over that period. However, the net trade balance in foreign trade in forest products increased from 1996 by only 12% in nominal terms (minus 35% in real terms) to R1,9 billion in 2006.

In 2006, paper products were the most important (R3,699 billion or 37% of the total), followed by solid wood products (R2,989 billion or 30%), pulp (R2,910 billion or 30%), and other products (R309 million or 3%). Woodchip exports, which are exported mainly to Japan, accounted for 68% (R2,045 billion) of total solid-wood product exports.

As with other export-based industries, the strength of the Rand has had a negative effect on

South Africa has identified the Eastern Cape and KwaZulu-Natal as key for development in the forestry, wood and paper sector, with reforestation a vital part of the strategy.

The Government envisages between R20 billion and R30 billion of investment by the private sector, including the Industrial Development Corporation, over the next five years to develop the economies of the two provinces.

Forestry is one of the sectors identified as a key growth area in terms of the Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa, which aims to reduce poverty and unemployment and help the country achieve an economic growth rate of 6% per year.

the Rand-value of forest-product exports during the past several years, with the total value of exports in 2006 being only R382 million more than in the previous year, but some R1,3 billion or 12% less than when at its peak in 2002.

Stringent environmental codes of practice are implemented in all plantation and processing activities. The Chief Directorate: Forestry of the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry promotes optimal development of forestry and arboriculture in South Africa.

The National Forests Advisory Council (NFAC) was established in terms of the National Forests Act, 1998. It advises the Minister of Water Affairs and Forestry on all aspects of forestry in the country. The NFAC is actively involved in developing local criteria, indicators and standards for sustainable forest management (SFM), and makes recommendations on how public access to state-owned forests can be improved.

Achieving sustainable forest management

Apart from ecological considerations in determining where it is appropriate to grow trees, there are other ecological, social and economic considerations that must be addressed when growing trees.

These criteria, indicators and standards will form the basis for monitoring the sustainability of forestry operations in commercial and natural forests. Managers and owners will be required to report against these criteria, which also form useful guidelines for new entrants to the sector.

The commercial forestry industry in South Africa is committed to practising SFM and is a world leader in forest certification. Over one million ha, or over 80% of the entire planted area of commercial forestry plantations in South Africa, is certified by the FSC and the ISO 14001 certification schemes as being sustainably managed. By March 2007, 1 630 418 ha of plantation forestry land (planted and conservation areas combined) in South Africa was certified by the FSC, the second-largest area in the southern hemisphere after Brazil. There were no certified plantations in 1996.

Although large forestry companies do not own all the certified forests, having their own specialist environmental departments has helped the rapid

expansion of certification, as they ensure that land is managed according to their own stringent environmental codes of practice. To promote transparency, members of the public are invited to join company staff when regular audits are done.

There has also been a large increase in the number of non-corporate growers who have become certified. This can be attributed to factors such as the FSC's acceptance of group-certification schemes and the availability of local FSC auditors, both of which have reduced the cost of certification considerably.

The introduction of small, low-intensity managed forest audits enables small and community forestry schemes to be FSC-certified. As part of its commitment to the practice of SFM, the forestry industry is also involved in the NFAC's Committee for SFM, which develops criteria, indicators and standards for SFM, tailored to meet South Africa's specific conditions.

The industry is also involved in an FSC national initiative, the result of which will be the acceptance and use by FSC auditors of criteria, indicators and standards for SFM which take into account local South African conditions. Currently, the FSC auditors have to use generic measures.

After extensive consultation, the Institute of Natural Resources, which was contracted by the Committee for SFM to develop these criteria, has developed a draft set which was tested in 2004 and accepted in 2005. A manual was produced with guidelines, standard operating practices and checklists for reporting on criteria and indicators for plantations. A training course was developed and staff in the cluster were trained to use the manual.

Through the Forestry Industry Environmental Committee, a set of environmental guidelines was published in 1995 to encourage and facilitate timber growers to practise SFM, implementing best environmental practices.

These guidelines were widely used in South Africa and abroad. A second updated and more comprehensive, user-friendly edition of the guidelines was published in July 2002. These are used by certification agents in completing the physical environment component of their FSC audits.

The indigenous forests of the southern Cape, previously managed by the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, received FSC-certification – a first on the continent for high forests. It is a major step towards the sustainable management of the country's natural forests.

Legislation

The National Forests Act, 1998 reflects the vision for the future of forestry in South Africa. This vision emphasises SFM, and explains how people and communities can use forests without destroying them. The Act sets out rules for protecting indigenous forests, and ensures that the public has reasonable access to state-forest land for recreational, cultural, spiritual and educational purposes.

South Africa is richly endowed with more than 1 700 tree species. Some are threatened, and a total of 47 species is now protected under the Act. Protected trees may not be cut, damaged or sold without a licence. The listing of protected trees is not primarily aimed at preventing the use of such trees, but at ensuring sustainable use through licensing-control measures. A list of protected tree species is available on the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry's website at www.dwaf.gov.za.

The National Veld and Forest Fire Act, 1998 (Act 101 of 1998), bans open-air fires when the risk of veld blazes in an area is high. It also introduces the concept of voluntary fire-protection associations (FPAs) formed by landowners. It further obliges the Minister of Water Affairs and Forestry to operate a national fire-rating system in consultation with the South African Weather Service (SAWS) and fire associations. The Act also allows the minister to impose minimum firefighting requirements on landowners.

Protection of life and property is a basic human need and the department has been moving ahead in implementing the National Veld and Forest Fire Act, 1998. Due to the high incidences of fires during extreme weather conditions, it is a priority for the department to ensure registration of FPAs. By mid-2006, 59 FPAs were registered. The department advised and assisted FPAs in compiling business plans, including the principles of risk assessment. By mid-2006, 36 FPAs had been assisted with their business plans. The department plans to review FPAs' performance regularly. There is also ongoing awareness-raising and information-provision on policy matters.

The department's *Veldfire Bulletin* is produced quarterly. Special bulletins are also produced

occasionally depending on the need, such as the special *Veldfire Bulletin* on FPAs.

The National Fire Danger Rating System (NFDRS) was launched during Arbor Week 2005. The NFDRS is an early warning system for veldfires. The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry has delegated the operation of this system to the SAWS. The SAWS will operate the system and issue daily veldfire warnings as it does with other weather information. Warnings will be communicated to FPAs, the departmental fire advisers, Disaster Management, Department of Provincial and Local Government and other role-players.

Indigenous forests

There are around 530 000 ha of indigenous or natural forests in the country, which occur mainly along the southern and eastern escarpment, the coastal belt and in sheltered kloofs or ravines.

Natural forest cover is slow, which led to the development of the commercial forest sector in South Africa over the last 100 years. Nonetheless, natural forests have continued to play a major role in the livelihoods and well-being of many rural communities.

There has been an increase in the use of natural forests as sources of medicine, building material, fuel wood and food. An estimated 80% of South Africa's population still uses medicinal plants, most of which are sourced from natural forests.

For the first time, South Africa now has a detailed inventory of all its natural forests, which will be used to accurately monitor changes in forest areas. The Department of Water Affairs and Forestry also completed a forest-type classification for natural forests, which are represented by 24 broad forest types. The Natural Forests Protected Areas System, completed for all forests in 2004, guides the setting aside and demarcation of natural forests as protected areas.

Systematic timber harvesting occurs in areas of the production-management class. Harvesting is concentrated on overmature trees, with logs being sold by tender and/or on public auction. On average, 3 750 m³ of round logs are harvested annually (150 m³ of stinkwood, 750 m³ of yellowwood, 2 500 m³ of Australian blackwood and 350 m³ of other species).

Another valuable product of the indigenous forests of South Africa is the seven-week fern (*Rumohra adiantiformis*), which is harvested in the Knysna and Tsitsikamma forests.

The South African market for this fern is considerable and reaches its peak in September,

when sales exceed 420 000 bunches, and only slightly fewer in December.

Woodlands

Woodlands can be defined as vegetation formation dominated by trees, but not to the extent that the canopies are continuous and overlapping. Woodlands cover 29 million ha, constituting 21% of land cover. This vegetation covers extensive areas in the low-lying, drier areas of Limpopo, KwaZulu-Natal and Mpumalanga. Woodlands have thousands of species (5 900 plants, 175 mammals, and 540 birds), of which the majority are used for one purpose or another.

Woodlands are the most extensive vegetation type in southern Africa and dominate Africa as a whole. Globally, woodlands cover between an eighth and a sixth of the Earth's land surface.

The woodlands are, however, a valuable source of fuel, building material, craft-timber and a variety of non-timber products. These include fruit, fodder, medicinal compounds, honey, meat and mushrooms, and form the backbone of the livelihoods of millions of people. The annual Marula-fruit (*Sclerocarya birrea*) harvest is worth some R1,1 million a year to rural communities.

Commercial forests

During the 1930s, government started establishing extensive plantations to make South Africa self-sufficient in its timber requirements, and to provide more job opportunities in a diversified economy during the depression. Commercial plantations of exotic species proved to be a sound investment and the private sector established large plantations of pine, eucalyptus and wattle trees.

By mid-2006, the private sector owned 1 021 390 ha (or 77%) of the total plantation area of 1 333 563 ha, as well as virtually all the processing plants in the country. The remaining 23% (312 173 ha) was under private ownership. The extent of public ownership will decrease significantly due to restructuring.

In 2006, capital investment in these plantations stood at R16 billion, 55% of which was attributable to investment in trees. A further 23,3% was tied up in land, 13% in roads, 7,2% in fixed assets and 1,4% in machinery and equipment.

Plantation yields

Of the 1 333 563 ha of plantations in 2005, 54% were softwood species and 46% hardwood species. Some 38% of the plantation area was managed mainly for sawlog production, 56% for pulpwood and 3% for mining timber, while the balance of 3% was grown for the production of poles, matchwood (poplar) and other minor products. Plantation yields vary from an average of 16 m³ per ha per year for softwood, to 21 m³ per ha per year for eucalyptus and 10 m³ per ha per year for wattle (timber and bark).

Likewise, the rotation ages vary from a maximum of 30 years in the case of pine sawlogs, to six to 10 years in the case of eucalyptus pulp and mining timber.

Production from plantations amounted to some 22 million m³ in 2005.

Primary wood-processing

South Africa has 211 primary wood-processing plants, 206 of which are owned by the private sector and five of which are owned by local and state authorities. Of these, some 115 are sawmills; 16 mining-timber sawmills; 49 pole-treating plants; 25 pulp, paper and board mills; one match factory; and five charcoal plants. The total roundwood intake into these processing plants in 2005 was 23,6 million m³ valued at R5 billion. The value of sales of timber products produced by these primary processing plants totalled R15,025 billion. Some R16,3 billion was invested in primary roundwood-processing plants (at book value). At market value, this increased to an estimated R35 billion.

The pulp industry in South Africa is dominated by two main pulp-and-paper manufacturing companies, Sappi and Mondi. They rank among the largest in the southern hemisphere, own assets in many parts of the world, and are internationally listed.

The saw-milling industry produces sawn timber, which is used in producing solid wood products, such as lumber for roof trusses, flooring, etc. and consumer products such as furniture. The furniture industry consumes about 250 000 m³ of mainly industrial timber.

A large number of companies operate in this sector, with the five biggest companies contributing

51% of total production. Some 52% of total sawn timber is produced in Mpumalanga.

Research and training

South Africa has world-class forestry-research infrastructure and personnel, with almost 2% of the forestry industry's turnover (private and public sectors) devoted to research. The priority fields of research include tree-breeding through applied silviculture, climate and soils, environmental impact and management solutions, forest biology, hydrology and forest protection.

The major institutes servicing the research needs of the industry are the Institute of Commercial Forestry Research in Pietermaritzburg, the Forestry and Agriculture Biotechnology Institute, and the Council for Scientific and Industrial Research in Pretoria. The National Biodiversity Institute also plays an important role in terms of species protection.

The total annual forest-sector research and development investment in South Africa is approximately R163 million, more than 80% of which is funded by the commercial forest industry.

The faculties of agricultural and forestry sciences at the universities of Stellenbosch, KwaZulu-Natal and Venda offer forestry degrees. The Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University (George Saasveld Campus) offers diplomas and limited degree courses in forestry disciplines. The Natal University of Technology offers a diploma in Pulp and Paper Technology, and the Fort Cox College of Agriculture and Forestry a diploma in Social Forestry.

Skills training is provided by a number of industry-sponsored and in-house training centres. Industry-sponsored bursaries are available, as are company-sponsored bursaries for study at these institutions.

The Forest Industries Education and Training Authority (Fieta) is, among other things, responsible for ensuring that the training undertaken by the industry meets certain quality standards. It also manages the distribution of training grants to employers and to Fieta-sponsored projects which will help meet the goals of the National Skills Development Strategy within the sector.

Over the past two years, the department, together with Fieta, has been offering bursaries to students who choose to study in the forestry field.

Community forestry

The *White Paper on Sustainable Forest Development in South Africa* states that community forestry

is designed and applied to meet local social, household and environmental needs and to favour local economic development.

Community forestry is implemented by communities or with the participation of communities, and includes tree-centred projects in urban and rural areas, woodlots, and woodland management by communities and individuals. Community forestry has gained impetus through more focused core functions, particularly in urban greening and forest enterprise development.

Participatory Forest Management (PFM) of the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry is an integrated approach that contributes to achieving the SFM of South African forests.

Elements of PFM were initially developed for indigenous state forests. However, the aim is to use PFM as an approach to managing all forest types where feasible (indigenous forests, plantations, woodlots and woodlands) and where different types of ownership and management (state, provincial, communal, private and community) exist.

Food and Trees for Africa (FTFA)

FTFA is the sub-Saharan African partner of Global Releaf, an international greening organisation.

FTFA's mission is to contribute to a healthy and sustainable quality of life for all, through environmental awareness and greening programmes.

Since its inception in 1990, FTFA has developed, managed and promoted numerous sustainable greening programmes, including land-use management and food security through permaculture.

FTFA works in partnership with government, the private and public sectors, and civil society.

FTFA attempts to provide trees to as many underserved communities as possible with the help of sponsors and certificate programmes.

The Urban Greening Fund is managed by the FTFA, the departments of water affairs and forestry and of agriculture, and the Institute of Environment and Recreation Management. It was set up with donor funds, which included R1,2 million from the Department of Water Affairs and Forestry.

It is a collective fund that supports partnerships aimed at sustainable development through tree planting, parks, food-gardening projects and environmental education.

Organisations, companies and individuals can contribute to the fund to help disadvantaged South Africans to create a greener, healthier and more secure life.

Acknowledgements

Department of Water Affairs and Forestry
Estimates of National Expenditure, 2007, published by National Treasury
 Forestry South Africa
 South African Forestry Company Limited
 Water Research Commission
www.csir.co.za
www.dwaf.gov.za
www.forestry.co.za
www.gov.za
www.trees.org.za
www.southafrica.info

Suggested reading

Bate, R and Tren, T. *The Cost of Free Water*. Johannesburg: Free Market Foundation, 2002.
 Coates Palgrave, K and M. *Everyone's Guide to Trees of South Africa*. 4th revised ed. Cape Town: Struik, 2002.
Draft Key Issues Paper on Forestry and Poverty in South Africa, Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, 2005.
Ferns, Foliage and the Foliage Industry; A Sub-Sector Analysis, Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, 2003.
Genesis Analytics, The Contribution, Costs and Development Opportunities for the Forestry, Timber, Pulp and Paper Industries in South Africa, 2005.
 Lawes, M. *et al.* eds. *Indigenous Forests and Woodlands in South Africa*. Scottsville: University of KwaZulu-Natal Press, 2004.
 McCullum, H. ed. *Biodiversity of Indigenous Forests and Woodlands in South Africa*. Maseru: Southern African Development Community/International Union for the Conservation of Nature and Natural Resources/ Southern African Research and Documentation Centre, 2000.
Manufactured Timber Products: A Sub-Sector Analysis, Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, 2003.
 Pakenham, T. *Remarkable Baobab*. Cape Town: Sunbird (Jonathan Ball), 2004.
Study of Supply and Demand of Industrial Roundwood in South Africa, Department of Water Affairs and Forestry, 2005.
Systematic Conservation Planning for the Forest Biome of South Africa, October, 2005.
 Van Wyk, B and Van Wyk, P. *Field Guide to the Trees of Southern Africa*. Cape Town: Struik, 1997.
 Venter, F and Venter, J. *Making the Most of Indigenous Trees*. Pretoria: Briza Publications, 1999.

Abbreviations

A

AADP	African Agricultural Development Programme
AAGS	Association of African Geological Surveys
AAIICT	African Advanced Institute for Information and Communications Technology
AAPS	Animal and Aquaculture Production Systems
ABC	Agricultural Business Chamber
ABC	Audit Bureau of Circulations
Abet	Adult Basic Education and Training
Absa	Amalgamated Banks of South Africa
AC	Advisory Committee
ACAP	Agreement on the Conservation of Albatrosses and Petrels
ACEP	African Coelacanth Ecosystems Programme
ACE	Advanced Certificate in Education
ACP	African-Caribbean-Pacific
ACR	Army Conventional Reserve
ACS	Agricultural Credit Scheme
Acsa	Airports Company of South Africa
ACT	Arts and Culture Trust
ADB	African Development Bank
ADEA	Association for the Development of Education In Africa
ADS	Approved Destination Status
AEC	African Economic Community
AFIS	Automated Fingerprint Information System
AFU	Asset Forfeiture Unit
Afur	African Forum for Utility Regulators
AG	Attorney-General
AGOA	African Growth and Opportunity Act
AHPCSA	Allied Health Professions Council of South Africa
AICs	African independent churches
AIICT	Advanced Institute for Information and Communications Technology
AIP	Association of Independent Publishers
Aisa	African Institute of International Affairs
Alsi	all-share index
ALTX	Alternative Exchange
Amib	African Peace Mission in Burundi
Amis	African Union Mission in Sudan
AML/CFT	Anti-money laundering and combating the financing of terrorism
AMP	African Mining Partnership
AMPS	All Media Products Survey

AMTS	Advanced Manufacturing Technology Strategy
ANC	African National Congress
AP	Associated Press
Apis	Agricultural Products Inspection Services
APRM	African Peer Review Mechanism
APSD	African Public Service Day
APSW	African Public Service Week
ARC	Agricultural Research Council
ARDM	Agricultural Risk and Disaster Management
Aressa	Antarctic Research Strategy
Armescor	Armaments Corporation of South Africa
ART	Antiretroviral treatment
ARV	antiretroviral
ASA	Advertising Standards Authority
Asean	Association of South-East Asian Nations
AsgiSA	Accelerated and Shared Growth Initiative for South Africa
Asom	Association of Marketers
ASP	African Stockpile Programme
ATDs	awaiting-trial detainees
ATNS	Air-Traffic Navigation Service
ATP	Agritourism Programme
ATR	Army Territorial Reserve
ATU	African Telecoms Union
AU	African Union
AUC	African Union Commission
AWHF	African World Heritage Fund

B

BA	British Airways
BAC	Business Against Crime
Basa	Business and Arts South Africa
BBBEE	Broad-Based Black Economic Empowerment
bbls	barrels
BBSDP	Black Business Supplier Development Programme
BCLME	Benguela Current Large Marine Ecosystem
BEE	Black Economic Empowerment
Benefit	Benguela Fisheries Interaction and Training
Besa	Bond Exchange of South Africa
BFI	Bridges to the Future Initiative
Biopad	Biotechnology Partnership for Africa's Development
Blindlib	South African Library for the Blind
BLNS	Botswana, Lesotho, Namibia and Swaziland
BMCC	Broadcasting Monitoring Complaints Committee

BNC	Binational Commission
BNG	Breaking New Ground
BoM	Buddyz on the Move
BPO	Business Process Outsourcing
BPO & O	Business Process Outsourcing and Offshoring
Brics	biotechnology regional innovation centres
BRT	Bus Rapid Transit
BSRP	Building for Sport and Recreation Project
BTec	Bachelor's Degree in Technology
BTT	Board of Tariffs and Trade

C

CAADP	Comprehensive African Agricultural Development Programme
CaBEERE	Capacity-Building Programme for Renewable Energy and Energy Efficiency
CAD	computer-aided design
CAR	Central African Republic
Caricom	Caribbean Community
CASP	Comprehensive Agricultural Support Programme
CBD	Convention on Biological Diversity
CBE	Council for the Built Environment
CBNRM	Community-Based Natural Resource Management
CBOs	community-based organisations
CBPWP	Community-Based Public Works Programme
CBRTA	Cross-Border Road Transport Agency
CC	Constitutional Court
CCD	Convention to Combat Desertification
CCDI	Cape Craft and Design Institute
CCF	credit-card format
CCF	Comprehensive Country Co-operation Framework
CCMA	Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration
CCTV	closed-circuit television
CDA	Central Drug Authority
CDI	Co-operative Development Initiative
CDM	Clean Development Mechanism
CDWs	community development workers
CEE	Commission for Employment Equity
CEF	Central Energy Fund
CEIRD	centres of excellence in industrial research and development
CEM	Council of Education Ministers
CEO	Chief Executive Officer

CFCs	chlorofluorocarbons
CFG	Courier Freight Group
CFM	case-flow management
CGE	Commission on Gender Equality
CGS	Council for Geoscience
CHCs	community health centres
CHE	Council on Higher Education
CHPC	Centre for High Performance Computing
CHW	Community Health Worker
CIDB	Construction Industry Development Board
CIDP	Construction Industry Development Programme
CIP	Critical Infrastructure Programme
Cipro	Companies and Intellectual Property Registration Office
Cirad	French Agricultural Centre for International Development
CIS	Cadastral Information System
CIS	collective investment schemes
Cites	Convention on International Trade in Endangered Species
CJS	criminal justice system
ClARA	Communal Land Rights Act
CMAs	catchment management agencies
CMCs	case management committees
CoEs	centres of excellence
Comsec	Electronic Communications Security
CoP	Conference of the Parties
Cosse	SADC Committee of Stock Exchanges
CPA	Comprehensive Peace Agreement
CPA	Cotonou Partnership Agreement
CPA	Community Press Association
CPD	Continuing Professional Development
CPF	Community Policing Forum
CPI	Consumer Price Index
CPIDP	Construction and Industry Development Programme
CPIX	consumer price index excluding mortgage costs
CPOs	citizens post offices
CPP	Court Process Project
CPSI	Centre for Public Service Innovation
CRC	Criminal Record Centre
Create SA	Creative Education and Training Enterprise South Africa
CRLR	Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights
CSCs	community service centres
CSD	Commission on Sustainable Development

CSG	Child Support Grant
CSIR	Council for Scientific and Industrial Research
CSN	Community Services Network
CSP	Concentrating Solar Power
CSP	Customised Sector Programme
CSPBs	correctional supervision and parole boards
CSSDCA	Conference on Security, Stability, Development and Co-operation in Africa
CTB	Central Terminal Building
CTBF	Cape Town Book Fair
CVDs	card-verification devices
CWSS	Community Water Supply and Sanitation
CYFD	Child, Youth and Family Development

D

D&G	Democracy and Governance
DA	Democratic Alliance
DBSA	Development Bank of Southern Africa
DCOs	doping control officers
DCRS	Digital Count Recording System
DCT	Durban Container Terminal
DDT	dichloro-diphenyl-trichloroethane
Dexco	Departmental Executive Committee
DFID	Department for International Development
DIU	Departmental Investigation Unit
DLS	Denel Land Systems
DMO	Destination Marketing Organisation
DMS	Document Management System
DNA	Designated National Authority
DNR	Direct Normal Radiation
DNS	Digital Nervous System
Docex	Document Exchange
Dots	Directly Observed Treatment Short Course
Dots	document-tracking system
DPP	Director of Public Prosecutions
DRC	Democratic Republic of Congo
DRS	Deeds Registration System
DSM	Demand-Side Management
DSO	Directorate: Special Operations

E

EAD	Elite Athlete with Disability
EAFM	Ecosystem Approach to Fisheries Management
EAP	Employee Assistance Programme
EASSY	Eastern Africa Submarine Cable System
EC	European Commission

EC	Executive Council
ECA	Electronic Communications Act
ECC	Employment Conditions Commission
ECD	Early Childhood Development
ECDP	Emerging Contractor Development Programme
Ecosocc	Economic, Social and Cultural Council
Ecowas	Economic Community of West African States
EDC	Energy Development Corporation
EDI	Electricity Distribution Industry
EDL	Essential Drug List
EEA	Employment of Educators Act
EEZ	Exclusive Economic Zone
EFA	Education For All
EIAs	environmental impact assessments
EIB	European Investment Bank
EIDD	Enterprise and Industry Development Division
EIPs	environmental implementation plans
Efta	European Free Trade Area
ELRC	Education Labour Relations Council
EMS	Emergency Medical Service
eNaTIS	Electronic National Traffic Information System
Enpat	National Environmental Potential Atlas
EPI	Expanded Programme on Immunisation
EPP	Executive Preparation Programme
EPRD	European Programme for Reconstruction and Development
EPWP	Expanded Public Works Programme
ESDS	Employment and Skills Development Services
ESF	Equitable Shares Formula
ESI	Electricity Supply Industry
ETD	Education, Training and Development
ETDPs	education, training development practices
ETQS	Education and Training Quality Assurance
EU	European Union

F

Fabi	Forestry Agricultural Biotechnology Institute
FAIS	financial advisory and intermediary services
FAO	Food and Agricultural Organisation
FAS	Financial Administration System
FAS	Foetal Alcohol Syndrome
FATF	Financial Action Task Force
FBOs	faith-based organisations
FBW	Free Basic Water
FCIS	foreign collective investment schemes
FCJ	Forum of Community Journalists
FCTC	Framework Convention on Tobacco Control

FDI	foreign direct investment
FED	Forestry Enterprise Development
FET	Further Education and Training
FETC	Further Education and Training Certificate
FFC	Financial and Fiscal Commission
FIC	Financial Intelligence Centre
Fieta	Forest Industries Education and Training Authority
FIG	Foreign Investment Grant
FM	Frequency Modulation
FMD	foot-and-mouth disease
FNB	First National Bank
FOCAC	Forum on China-Africa Co-operation
Fosad	Forum of South African Directors-General
FPA	Fire Protection Association
FPB	Film and Publications Board
FPEF	Fresh Produce Exporters' Forum
FPMC	National Food Pricing Monitoring Committee
FSB	Financial Services Board
FSC	Forest Stewardship Council
FSL	Forensic Science Laboratory
FSPs	financial services providers
FTA	free trade agreement
FTFA	Food and Trees for Africa
FTI	Foundation for Technological Innovation
FXI	Freedom of Expression Institute

G

G&A	Governance and Administration
Gaap	Generally Accepted Accounting Practice
GAW	Global Atmosphere Watch
GBADS	ground-based air defence systems
GBIF	Global Biodiversity Information Facility
GCIS	Government Communication and Information System
GDP	gross domestic product
GDPR	gross domestic product per region
GDS	Growth and Development Summit
GEF	Global Environment Facility
Gems	Government Employees Medical Scheme
GEPF	Government Employees Pension Fund
GEOSS	Global Earth Observation System of Systems
GET	General Education and Training
GGP	gross geographical product
GGR	Gross Gambling Revenue
GHG	greenhouse gas
GIS	Georeferenced Information System

Gito	Government Information Technology Officer
GKW	<i>German Kreditanstalt für Wiederaufbau</i>
GLTP	Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park
GM	Genetically Modified
GMOs	genetically modified organisms
GPS	Global Positioning System
GPT	General Preferential Tariff
GPW	Government Printing Works
GSC	General Services Counter
GSP	Generalised System of Preferences
GSLWP	Greater St Lucia Wetlands Park
GWh	gigawatt-hour
GWM&ES	government-wide monitoring and evaluation system

H

ha	hectare
HartRAO	Hartebeesthoek Radio Astronomy Observatory
HCBC	home- and community-based care
HCE	housing consumer education programme
HDI	historically disadvantaged individuals
HE	Higher Education
Hedcom	Heads of Education Departments Committee
HEQC	Higher Education Quality Committee
Hess	High-Energy Stereoscopic System
HG	Higher Grade
HMO	Hermanus Magnetic Observatory
HoDs	heads of departments
HPCSA	Health Professions Council of South Africa
HPP	High-Performance Programme
HR	human resources
HRD	human-resource development
HRDS	Human Resource Development Strategy
HRM	human-resource management
HSGIC	Heads of State and Government Implementation Committee
HSIC	Heads of State and Government Implementation Committee
HSRC	Human Sciences Research Council

I

IAAF	International Association of Athletics Federations
IBA	Independent Broadcasting Authority
IBO	International Boxing Organisation
IBSA	India-Brazil-South Africa

K

Kat	Karoo Array Telescope
KLF	Komatiland Forests
km	kilometre
KM	Knowledge Management
kWh	kilowatt-hours

L

l	litre
LAB	Legal Aid Board
LAGs	liquids, aerosols and gels
LDC	least developed country
LED	local economic development
LHWP	Lesotho Highlands Water Project
Liasa	Library Association of South Africa
Lis	Library and Information Services
LMIS	Labour-Market Information and Statistics
LPG	liquid petroleum gas
LPI	Land Planning and Information
LRAD	Land Redistribution for Agricultural Development
LREF	Land Reform Empowerment Facility
LRP	lead-replacement petrol
LRSSS	Land Reform Systems and Support Systems
LTPS	Land Transport Permit System
LTR	Land and Tenure Reform

M

m ³	million cubic metres
m	metre
M&E	monitoring and evaluation
Mafisa	Micro-Agricultural Financial Institutions of South Africa
Mappp-Seta	Media, Advertising, Publishing, Printing and Packaging Sector Education and Training Authority
MATD	Management of Awaiting-Trial Detention
MCA	MultiChoice Africa
MCC	Medicines Control Council
MCLI	Maputo Corridor Logistics Initiative
MDDA	Media Development and Diversity Agency
MDGs	millennium development goals
MEC	Member of the Executive Council
Mercosur	South American Common Market

MERS	Micro-Economic Reform Strategy
MFMA	Municipal Finance Management Act
MFN	Most Favoured Nation
MFRC	Micro-Finance Regulatory Council
MFSA	Marketing Federation of South Africa
MHIC	Mental Health Information Centre
MHSA	Mine Health and Safety Act
MHSC	Mine Health and Safety Council
MHSI	Mine Health and Safety Inspectorate
Mice	meetings, incentives, conferences and exhibitions
MIDP	Motor Industry Development Programme
MIG	Municipal Infrastructure Grant
MiningTek	Mining Technology Division
MK	Umkhonto we Sizwe
ML	million litres
MLA	Micro-Lenders Association
MLDP	Municipal Leadership Development Programme
MMM	MultiMarket Model
MMSD	Mineral and Mining for Sustainable Development
MoU	Memorandum of Understanding
MPAs	marine protected areas
MPC	Monetary Policy Committee
MPP	Mass Participation Programme
MPRDA	Minerals and Petroleum Resources Development Act
MQA	Mining Qualifications Authority
MRC	Medical Research Council
MRCC	Maritime Rescue Co-ordination Centre
MRLs	maximum residue limits
MRMC	Major Radiation Medicine Centre
MSc	Master of Science
MSDS	Military Skills Development System
MST	Marketable Securities Tax
MST	Mathematics, Science and Technology
mt	metric ton
Mt	million tons
MTech	Master's Degree in Technology
MTEF	Medium Term Expenditure Framework
MTN	Mobile Telephone Network
MW	medium wave
MW	megawatts
MYIP	Multi-Year Implementation Plan

N

NAASP	New Asian-African Strategic Partnership	NDMP	National Drug Master Plan
NAC	National Agrometeorological Committee	NDPP	National Director of Public Prosecutions
NAC	National Arts Council of South Africa	NEAF	National Environmental Advisory Forum
NACF	National Anti-Corruption Forum	Necsa	South African Nuclear Energy Corporation
NACHRET	National Centre for Human-Rights Education and Training	Nedlac	National Economic Development and Labour Council
NACI	National Advisory Council on Innovation	NEEA	National Energy Efficiency Agency
Nacoc	National Co-ordinating Committee	NEF	National Empowerment Fund
NACP	National Anti-Corruption Programme	Nemisa	National Electronic Media Institute of South Africa
NACTT	National AIDS Children's Task Team	Nepad	New Partnership for Africa's Development
NAEHMP	National Aquatic Ecosystem Health Monitoring Programme	NER	National Electricity Regulator
Nafu	National African Farmers' Union	Neri	National Energy Research Institute
NAFVSA	National Film, Video and Sound Archives	NFAC	National Forests Advisory Council
Nail	New Africa Investments Limited	NFDRSA	National Fire Danger Rating System for South Africa
NAM	Non-Aligned Movement	NFLS	National Freight Logistics Strategy
Namac	National Manufacturing Advisory Centre	NFVF	National Film and Video Foundation
NAMC	National Agricultural Marketing Council	NG	Nederduitse Gereformeerde (kerk)
NAMF	New Africa Mining Fund	NGB	National Gambling Board
NAP	National Anti-Corruption Programme	NGC	National Governing Council
NARF	National Agricultural Research Forum	NGOs	non-governmental organisations
NaTIS	National Traffic Information System	NHBRC	National Home-Builders Registration Council
NBFET	National Board for Further Education and Training	NHC	National Health Council
NBI	National Botanical Institute	NHC	National Heritage Council
NBN	National Bioinformatics Network	NHFC	National Housing Finance Corporation
NBS	National Biotechnology Strategy	NHLS	National Health Laboratory Service
NBSAP	National Biodiversity Strategy and Action Plan	NHRP	National Human Resource Plan
NCA	National Credit Act	NHS	National Health System
NCACC	National Conventional Arms Control Committee	NIA	National Intelligence Agency
NCC	National Communications Centre	NIB	National Immigration Branch
NCCS	National Crime Combating Strategy	NICD	National Institute for Communicable Diseases
NCHM	National Cultural History Museum	NIF	National Implementation Framework
NCLIS	National Council for Library and Information Services	NIPP	National Industrial Participation Programme
NCOH	National Centre for Occupational Health	NIRP	National Integrated Resource Plan
NCOP	National Council of Provinces	NIU	National Intervention Unit
NCPCF	National Community Policing Consultative Forum	NIV	National Institute for Virology
NCPR	National Child Protection Register	NLB	National Lotteries Board
NCR	National Credit Regulator	NLP	National LandCare Programme
NCRF	National Community Radio Forum	NLPF	National Language Policy Framework
NCS	National Curriculum Statement	NLR	National Loans Register
NCSP	National Crime Prevention Strategy	NLRD	National Learners' Records Database
NDA	National Development Agency	NLS	National Language Service
NDMC	National Disaster Management Centre	NLSA	National Library of South Africa
		NLU	national lexicography units
		NMPS	National Mining Promotion System
		NMT	non-motorised transport
		NNR	National Nuclear Regulator

NOCS	National Overload Control Strategy
NPA	National Prosecuting Authority
NPA	National Ports Authority
NPI	National Productivity Institute
NPLs	non-performing loans
NPOS	non-profit organisations
NPS	National Prosecuting Services
NPWP	National Public Works Programme
NQF	National Qualifications Framework
NRDS	National Research and Development Strategy
NRF	National Research Foundation
NRTA	National Road Traffic Act
NRGP	National Responsible Gambling Programme
NSA	National Skills Authority
NSBAC	National Small Business Advisory Council
NSDF	National Spatial Development Framework
NSDP	National Spatial Development Perspective
NSDS	National Skills Development Strategy
NSI	National System of Innovation
NSIF	National Spatial Information Framework
NSF	National Skills Fund
NSFAS	National Student Financial Aid Scheme
NSNP	National School Nutrition Programme
NSP	National Strategic Plan
NSSD	National Strategy for Sustainable Development
NSW	National Science Week
Nufcor	Nuclear Fuels Corporation
Nurcha	National Urban Reconstruction and Housing Agency
NWRIA	National Water Resource Infrastructure Agency
NWRS	National Water Research Strategy
NYC	National Youth Commission
NZG	National Zoological Gardens

O

OAG	Office of the Auditor-General
OAU	Organisation of African Unity
OBE	outcomes-based education
OBP	Onderstepoort Biological Products
ODA	Overseas Development Assistance
ODI	One-Day International
ODS	ozone-depleting substances
OECD	Organisation for Economic Co-operation and Development
OHS	occupational health and safety
OIC	Office of Interception Centres
OIE	<i>Office International des Épipizooties</i>

OIV	International Wine Office
Onub	United Nations Operation in Burundi
OPA	Online Publishers' Association
OPDS	official publications depositories
OPSC	Office of the Public Service Commission
OSI	Open Society Institute
OTB	Overberg Test Range
OTC	over-the-counter

P

PAC	Pan Africanist Congress
PanSALB	Pan South African Language Board
PAP	Pan-African Parliament
Papu	Pan-African Postal Union
PAS	provincial academies of sport
Pasa	Petroleum Agency South Africa
PBMR	Pebble Bed Modular Reactor
PC	Project Consolidate
PCA	Permanent Court of Arbitration
PCC	President's Co-ordinating Council
PCS	Public Service Commission
PDPHCP	Partnerships for the Delivery of Public Healthcare, including HIV and AIDS Programme
Pefol	Panel of Experts on Foreign Ownership of Land
PetroSA	Petroleum, Gas and Oil Corporation of South Africa
PFM	Participatory Forest Management
PFMA	Public Finance Management Act
PGDP	Provincial Growth and Development Plan
PGDS	Provincial Growth and Development Strategy
PGMs	platinum-group metals
PHC	primary healthcare
PHP	People's Housing Process
PHPT	People's Housing Partnership Trust
PIC	Public Investment Commissioner
PIC	Public Investment Corporation
PICC	Print Industries Cluster Council
PILIR	Management Policy and Procedure on Incapacity Leave and Ill-Health properties in possession
PIPs	public information terminals
PITS	Plant Biotechnology Innovation Centre
PlantBio	Proactive Land Acquisition Strategy
PLAS	provincial land reform offices
PLROs	Print Media South Africa
PMSA	

PMTCT	preventing mother-to-child transmission
PNC on ISAD	Presidential National Commission on Information Society and Development
PPPs	public-private partnerships
PRA	pest risk-analysis
PRC	People's Republic of China
PSC	Peace and Security Council
PSC	Public Service Commission
PSCBC	Public Service Co-ordinating Bargaining Council
PSM&ES	Public Service Monitoring and Evaluation System
PSW	Public Service Week
PTA	Preferential Trade Agreement
PTDs	person-training days
PUB	Public Understanding of Biotechnology
Puset	Public Understanding of Science, Engineering and Technology
PV	photovoltaic

R

R&D	research and development
RAC	Regional Advisory Committee
RAF	Road Accident Fund
RAS	Registration Administration System
RCD	research capacity development
RDP	Reconstruction and Development Programme
RECs	regional economic communities
REDS	regional electricity distributors
REF	Risk Equalisation Fund
Rera	Regional Electricity Regulators' Association
RFSTP	Regional Food Security Training Programme
RHLF	Rural Housing Loan Fund
RHP	River Health Programme
Risa	Research and Innovation Support Agency
RNCS	Revised National Curriculum Statement
RPP	Research Policy and Planning
RSC	Regional Services Council
RTMC	Road Traffic Management Corporation
RTMS	Road Traffic Management Strategy
RTSB	Road Traffic Safety Board

S

S&T	science and technology
SAA	South African Airways
SAAF	South African Air Force

Saafqis	South African Agricultural Food and Quarantine Inspection Services
Saao	South African Astronomical Observatory
Saasta	South African Agency for Science and Technology
Saats	South African Air Traffic System
Saavi	South African Aids Vaccine Initiative
SAB	South African Breweries
SABC	South African Broadcasting Corporation
Sabi	South African Biodiversity Initiative
Sabif	South African Bioinformatics Facility
SABS	South African Bureau of Standards
SACC	South African Council of Churches
Sacca	South African Civil Aviation Authority
SACE	South African Council for Educators
Sacob	South African Chamber of Business
Sacu	Southern African Customs Union
SADB	South African Diamond Board
SADC	Southern African Development Community
Saeon	South African Environmental Observation Network
Safcert	South African Certifications Council
Safcol	South African Forestry Company Limited
Safex	South African Futures Exchange
SAGBVHI	South African Gender-Based Violence and Health Initiative
SAGNC	South African Geographical Names Council
Sahara	Social Aspects of AIDS Research Alliance
Sahra	South African Heritage Resources Agency
SAHRC	South African Human Rights Commission
Saiaab	South African Institute for Aquatic Biodiversity
Saids	South African Institute for Drug-Free Sport
SAIMR	South African Institute for Medical Research
Salga	South African Local Government Association
SALRC	South African Law Reform Commission
Salt	South African Large Telescope
Samaf	South African Micro-Finance Apex Fund
Samdi	South African Management Development Institute
SAMHS	South African Military Health Service
SAMM	Surveys, Analysis, Mapping and Modelling
Samos	South African Multiple Option Settlement
Samsa	South African Maritime Safety Authority
SANAC	South African National AIDS Council
Sanai	South African Academy of Intelligence
Sanap	South African National Antarctic Programme
Sanas	South African National Accreditation Standards

Sanbi	South African National Biodiversity Institute	SDI	Spatial Development Initiative
SANC	South African Nursing Council	SDIP	Service-Delivery Improvement Programme
Sancor	South African Network for Coastal and Oceanic Research	SDP	Strategic Defence Procurement
SANDF	South African National Defence Force	Seda	Small Enterprise Development Agency
Sanef	South African National Editors' Forum	SET	science, engineering and technology
Saneri	South African National Energy Research Institute	Setas	sector education and training authorities
Sanli	South African National Literacy Initiative	SFF	Strategic Fuel Fund
SANParks	South African National Parks	SFM	sustainable forest management
Sanral	South African National Roads Agency Limited	SFWS	Strategic Framework for Water Services
Santaco	South African National Taxi Council	SGB	Standard Generation Body
Sapa	South African Press Association	SHF	Social Housing Foundation
Sapip	South African Pesticide Initiative Programme	SHI	Social health insurance
SAPS	South African Police Service	SIP	Strategic Investment Programme
Sapca	South African Pest Control Association	Sita	State Information Technology Agency
Sapo	South African Port Operations	SIU	Special Investigating Unit
Sapo	South African Post Office	Ska	Square Kilometre Array
SAPP	Southern African Power Pool	SMEs	small and medium-sized enterprises
Saqa	South African Qualifications Authority	SMEDP	Small Medium Enterprise Development Programme
SARCC	South African Rail Commuter Corporation	SMMES	small, medium and micro-enterprises
Sarchi	South African Research Chairs Initiative	SMPP	Siyadlala Mass Participation Programme
SARPCCO	Southern African Regional Police Chiefs Co-operation Organisation	SMS	Senior Management Service
Sars	South African Revenue Service	SNO	Second National Operator
Sasar	South African Search-and-Rescue Organisation	Soca	Sexual Offences and Community Affairs (unit)
Sascoc	South African Sports Confederation and Olympic Committee	SOEs	state-owned enterprises
SASS	South African Secret Service	SPF	Sector Partnership Fund
Sassa	South African Social Security Agency	SPS	Soil Protection Strategy
Sasseta	Safety and Security Sector Education and Training Authority	SQF	SiyaQhubeka Forests
SASSMC	South African Small-Scale Mining Chamber	SRII	Socially Responsible Investment Index
Sati	South African Tourism Institute	SRSA	Sport and Recreation South Africa
SAUJ	South African Union of Journalists	SSM	small-scale mining
Saura	South African Utility Regulators' Association	SSP	Skills Support Programme
Sawen	South African Women Entrepreneurs Network	SSPD	Sasol Slurry Phase Distillate
Sawima	South African Women in Mining Association	Stac	Science and Technology Agreements Committee
SAWS	South African Weather Service	Stats SA	Statistics South Africa
SCA	Supreme Court of Appeal	STD	State Diamond Trade
SCCs	specialised commercial court centres	STIs	sexually transmitted infections
SCCU	Specialised Commercial Crime Unit	Strips	Separate Trading of Registered Interest and Principal Securities
SCI	Social Cohesion and Integration	Sums	Subsidy-Management System
SCLP	Sustainable Coastal Livelihoods Programme	SWH	Solar Water Heater
SCM	supply chain management		
Scopa	Standing Committee on Public Accounts		
SDF	Spatial Development Framework		

T

t	ton
TAC	Total Allowable Catch
TAU	Transvaal Agricultural Union

TB	tuberculosis		
TBCSA	Tourism Business Council of South Africa	UNDAF	United Nations Development Assistance Framework
TCTA	Trans Caledon Tunnel Authority	UNDP	United Nations Development Programme
TDCA	Trade Development and Co-operation Agreement	Unep	United Nations Environment Programme
Teba	Employment Bureau of Africa	UNFCCC	United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change
TEF	Tourism Equity Fund	Unga	United Nations General Assembly
Teo	The Enterprise Organisation	Unicef	United Nations Children's Fund
Tep	Tourism Enterprise Programme	Unisa	University of South Africa
TFCA	transfrontier conservation areas	Unesco	United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organisation
TFDC	Test Flight and Development Centre	UNSG	United Nations Secretary-General
TGCSA	Tourism Grading Council of South Africa	UPU	Universal Postal Union
Theta	Tourism and Hospitality Education and Training Authority	URP	Urban Renewal Programme
Thrip	Technology and Human Resource for Industry Programme	USA	United States of America
TICAD	International Conference on African Development	Usaasa	Universal Service and Access Agency
Tisa	Trade and Investment South Africa	USALS	underserved area licences
Tissa	Telephone Interpreting Service of South Africa	USOs	universal service obligations
TJDR	The Jupiter Drawing Room	USSR	Union of Soviet Socialist Republics
TKC	Trans-Kalahari Corridor	UST	uncertified securities tax
TLP	Tourism Learnership Project		
TMNP	Table Mountain National Park	V	
TNPA	Transnet National Ports Authority	V&A	Victoria and Alfred (waterfront)
TRC	Truth and Reconciliation Commission	VAT	value-added tax
TRP	Taxi Recapitalisation Programme	VCT	voluntary counselling and testing
TSP	Tshumisano Station Programme	VEP	Victim-Empowerment Programme
TTC	Technology Transfer Centre	VLBI	very long baseline interferometry
Twib	Technology for Women in Business	VOC	Dutch East India Company
		VSAT	Very Small Aperture Terminal
U		W	
UAE	United Arab Emirates	Wada	World Doping Agency
UAVs	unmanned aerial vehicles	War	Water Alliance Reform
UEMP	Urban Environmental Management Programme	WEF	World Economic Forum
UIF	Unemployment Insurance Fund	Westcor	Western Power Corridor Project
UK	United Kingdom	WfW	Working for Water
ULP	unleaded petrol	WHO	World Health Organisation
Umalusi	General and Further Education and Training Quality Assurance Council	WINSA	Women in Nuclear South Africa
UN	United Nations	WPC	World Petroleum Congress
UNCCD	United Nations Convention to Combat Desertification	WPP	Witness Protection Programme
Unccd	United Nations Conference on Environment and Development	WPU	Witness Protection Unit
Unctad	United Nations Conference on Trade and	WRC	Water Research Commission
		WRCC	World Radio Communication Conference
		WRS	Water Resource Strategy
		WSAs	water service authorities



WSDPS	water-services development plans	X	
WSDSP	Workplace Skills Development Support Programme	XDR TB	extreme drug-resistant tuberculosis
WSSD	World Summit on Sustainable Development	Z	
WTO	World Trade Organisation		
WTO-SPS	World Trade Organisation Agreement on the Application of Sanitary and Phytosanitary Measures	ZCC	Zion Christian Church
WTW	Water Treatment Works		
WUAs	water-user associations		
WWF-SA	World Wildlife Fund for Nature South Africa		



CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

National government departments and organisational components

Agriculture

Website: www.nda.agric.za
Private Bag X250
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 319-6000
Fax: 012 319-7135

Arts and Culture

Website: www.dac.gov.za
Private Bag X897
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 441-3000
Fax: 012 441-3699

Communications

Website: www.doc.gov.za
Private Bag X860
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 427-8000
Fax: 012 427-8026

Correctional Services

Website: www.dcs.gov.za
Private Bag X136
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 307-2000
Fax: 012 328-6149

Defence

Website: www.dod.mil.za
Private Bag X161
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 355-6220
Fax: 012 347-7445

Education

Website: www.education.gov.za
Private Bag X895
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 312-5911
Fax: 012 323-5837

Environmental Affairs and Tourism

Website: www.deat.gov.za
Private Bag X447
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 310-3911
Fax: 012 322-2682
Call centre: 086 111 2468

Foreign Affairs

Website: www.dfa.gov.za
Private Bag X152
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 351-1000
Fax: 012 328-7384

Government Communications (GCIS)

Website: www.gcis.gov.za
Private Bag X745
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 314-2911
Fax: 012 323-3831

Health

Website: www.doh.gov.za
Private Bag X828
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 312-0000
Fax: 012 326-4395

Home Affairs

Website: www.home-affairs.gov.za
Private Bag X114
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 810-8911/0800 601 190
Fax: 012 810-7567/8169

Housing

Website: www.housing.gov.za
Private Bag X644
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 421-1311
Fax: 012 341-8513

Independent Complaints Directorate

Website: www.icd.gov.za
Private Bag X941
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 392-0400
Fax: 012 320-3116/7

Justice and Constitutional Development

Website: www.doj.gov.za
Private Bag X81
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 315-1111
Fax: 012 322-3155

Labour

Website: www.labour.gov.za
Private Bag X117
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 309-4000
Fax: 012 320-2059

Land Affairs

Website: <http://land.pwv.gov.za>
Private Bag X833
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 312-8911
Fax: 012 312-8066

Minerals and Energy

Website: www.dme.gov.za
Private Bag X59
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 317-8000
Fax: 012 322-3416

National Intelligence Agency

Website: www.nia.gov.za
Private Bag X87
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 427-4000
Fax: 012 427-4651



CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

National Treasury

Website: www.treasury.gov.za
Private Bag X115
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 315-5111
Fax: 012 315-5126

The Presidency

Website: www.thepresidency.gov.za
Private Bag X1000
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 300-5200
Fax: 012 323-8246
and
Private Bag X1000
Cape Town 8000
Tel: 021 464-2100
Fax: 021 461-6456

Provincial and Local Government

Website: www.dppl.gov.za
Private Bag X804
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 334-0600
Fax: 012 334-0603

Public Enterprises

Website: www.dpe.gov.za
Private Bag X15
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 431-1000
Fax: 012 432-1039

Public Service and Administration

Website: www.dpsa.gov.za
Private Bag X916
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 336-1183/1000
Fax: 012 336-1831/7802

Public Service Commission

Website: www.psc.gov.za
Private Bag X121
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 352-1000
Fax: 012 325-8308/8382

Public Works

Website: www.publicworks.gov.za
Private Bag X65
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 337-2000
Fax: 012 328-4217

Science and Technology

Website: www.dst.gov.za
Private Bag X894
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 843-6300
Fax: 012 349-1037

Secretariat for Safety and Security

Website:
www.nationalsecretariat.gov.za
Private Bag X922
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 393-2500
Fax: 012 393-2538

Social Development

Website: www.dsd.gov.za
Private Bag X901
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 312-7794
Fax: 012 312-7943

South African Management Development Institute

Website: www.samdi.gov.za
Private Bag X759
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 314-7511
Fax: 012 314-7505/7125
E-mail: info@samdi.gov.za

South African Police Service

Website: www.saps.gov.za
Private Bag X94
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 393-1000
Fax: 012 393-5520

South African Revenue Service

Website: www.sars.gov.za
Private Bag X923
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 422-4000
Fax: 012 422-6848

South African Secret Service

Website: www.sass.gov.za
Private Bag X5
Elarduspark 0047
Tel: 012 427-5500
Fax: 012 427-6428

Sport and Recreation

Website: www.srsa.gov.za
Private Bag X896
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 304-5000
Fax: 012 323-0795

Statistics South Africa

Website: www.statssa.gov.za
Statistics SA
Private Bag X44
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 310-8911/8600
Fax: 012 310-8500
E-mail: info@statssa.gov.za

Trade and Industry

Website: www.thedti.gov.za
Private Bag X84
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 0861 843 384 (local)
Tel: +27(12) 394-9500
Fax: 0861 843 888
Fax: (international callers)
+27 012 394 951

Transport

Website: www.transport.gov.za
Private Bag X193
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 309-3000
Fax: 012 328-7891



CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Water Affairs and Forestry

Website: www.dwaf.gov.za
Private Bag X313
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 336-7500
Fax: 012 336-8850

Parliamentary information

National Assembly

Website: www.parliament.gov.za
PO Box 15
Cape Town 8000
Tel: 021 403-2549
Fax: 021 461-7300

National Council of Provinces

Website: www.parliament.gov.za
PO Box 15
Cape Town 8000
Tel: 021 403-2110/5/3221
Fax: 021 461-9460

Provincial governments

Eastern Cape

Website: www.ecprov.gov.za
Private Bag X0047
Bhisho 5605
Tel: 040 609-6301
Fax: 040 635-1166

Free State

Website: www.fs.gov.za
PO Box 20538
Bloemfontein 9300
Tel: 051 405-5799
Fax: 051 405-4803

Gauteng

Website: www.gautengonline.gov.za
Private Bag X61
Marshalltown 2107
Tel: 011 355-6000
Fax: 011 836-9334/834 4912

KwaZulu-Natal

Website: www.kwazulunatal.gov.za
Private Bag X9037
Pietermaritzburg 3200
Tel: 033 341-3407/3329
Fax: 033 342-7368

Limpopo

Website: www.limpopo.gov.za
Private Bag X9483
Polokwane 0700
Tel: 015 287-6000
Fax: 015 295-3840

Mpumalanga

Website: www.mpumalanga.gov.za
Private Bag X11291
Nelspruit 1200
Tel: 013 766-1000
Fax: 013 766-2494

Northern Cape

Website:
www.northern-cape.gov.za
Private Bag X5016
Kimberley 8300
Tel: 053 802-4500
Fax: 053 839-8215

North West

Website: www.nwpg.gov.za
Private Bag X65
Mmabatho 2735
Tel: 018 387-3000
Fax: 018 387-3008

Western Cape

Website: www.capegateway.gov.za
Private Bag X9043
Cape Town 8000
Tel: 021 483-3806
Fax: 021 483-2744

Government structures and organisational components

Agricultural Research Council

Website: www.arc.agric.za
PO Box 8783
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 427-9700
Fax: 012 342-3948

Airports Company South Africa

Website: www.airports.co.za
PO Box 75480
Gardenview 2047
Tel: 011 723-1400
Fax: 011 453-9353/4

Armaments Corporation of South Africa

Website: www.armscor.co.za
Private Bag X337
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 428-1911
Fax: 012 428-5635

Central Energy Fund

Website: www.cef.org.za
PO Box 786141
Sandton 2146
Tel: 011 280-0300
Fax: 011 880-9803

Commission for Conciliation, Mediation and Arbitration

Website: www.ccma.org.za
Private Bag X94
Marshalltown 2107
Tel: 011 377-6650
Fax: 011 834-7351
E-mail: ho@ccma.org.za

Commission on Gender Equality

Website: www.cge.org.za
PO Box 32175



CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Braamfontein 2017
Tel: 011 403-7182
Fax: 011 403-7188
E-mail: cgeinfo@cge.org.za

Commission on the Restitution of Land Rights

Website:
<http://land.pwv.gov.za/restitution>
Private Bag X833
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 312-9244/9146
Fax: 012 321-0428

Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities

Website: www.crlcommission.org.za
Private Bag X90000
Houghton 2041
Tel: 011 339-1775
Fax: 011 339-2234

Competition Commission

Website: www.compcom.co.za
Private Bag X23
Lynwood Ridge 0040
Tel: 012 394-3200
Fax: 012 394-4332

Constitutional Court

Website:
www.constitutionalcourt.org.za
Private Bag X1
Constitution Hill,
Braamfontein 2017
Tel: 011 359-7400
Fax: 011 403-6524

Council for Geoscience

Website: www.geoscience.org.za
Private Bag X112
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 841-1911
Fax: 012 841-1221

Council for Scientific and Industrial Research

Website: www.csir.co.za
PO Box 395
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 841-2911
Fax: 012 349-1153

Council on Higher Education

Website: www.che.ac.za
PO Box 13354
The Tramshed 0126
Tel: 012 392-9100
Fax: 012 392-9110

Denel (Pty) Limited

Website: www.denel.co.za
PO Box 8322
Centurion 0046
Tel: 012 671-2700
Fax: 012 671-2793

Development Bank of Southern Africa

Website: www.dbsa.org
PO Box 1234
Halfway House 1685
Tel: 011 313-3911
Fax: 011 313-3086

National Prosecuting Authority

Website: www.npa.gov.za
Private Bag X752
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 845-6000
Fax: 012 843 3111

Eskom

Website: www.eskom.co.za
PO Box 1091
Johannesburg 2001
Tel: 011 800-8111
Fax: 011 800-4299

Film and Publication Board

Website: www.fpb.gov.za
Private Bag X2205
Houghton 2041
Tel: 011 483-0971
Fax: 011 483-1084

Financial Intelligence Centre

Website: www.fic.gov.za
Private Bag X115
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 309-9200
Fax: 012 315-5828

Financial and Fiscal Commission

Website: www.ffc.co.za
Private Bag X69
Halfway House 1685
Tel: 861 315 710
Fax: 011 207-2344
E-mail: info@ffc.co.za

Financial Services Board

Website: www.fsb.co.za
PO Box 35655
Menlo Park 0102
Tel: 012 428-8000
Toll-free: 0800 110443/202087
Fax: 012 347-0221

Government Printing Works

Website: http://home-affairs.pwv.gov.za/gov_printing_works.asp
Private Bag X85
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 334-4500
Fax: 012 323-0009

Human Sciences Research Council

Website: www.hsrc.ac.za
Private Bag X41
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 302-2000
Fax: 012 302-2001

Independent Communications Authority of South Africa

Website: www.icasa.org.za
Private Bag X10002
Sandton 2146
Tel: 011 321-8200
Fax: 011 444-1919



CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Independent Development Trust

Website: www.idt.org.za
PO Box 73000
Lynnwood Ridge 0040
Tel: 012 845-2000
Fax: 012 361-5610

Independent Electoral Commission

Website: www.elections.org.za
PO Box 7943
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 428-5700
Fax: 012 428-5784

Industrial Development Corporation

Website: www.idc.co.za
PO Box 784055
Sandton 2146
Tel: 011 269-3000
Fax: 011 269-3116

International Marketing Council

Website: www.imc.org.za
PO Box 87168
Houghton 2198
Tel: 011 483-0122
Fax: 011 483-0124

Judicial Service Commission

Private Bag X1
Constitutional Hill
Braamfontein 2017
Tel: 011 359-7537
Fax: 011 403-5964

Khula Enterprise Finance Limited

Website: www.khula.org.za
PO Box 28423
Sunnyside 0132
Tel: 012 394-5560/0800 118815
Fax: 012 394-6560/5900

Land Bank and Agricultural Bank of South Africa (Land Bank)

Website: www.landbank.co.za
PO Box 375
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 312-3999
Fax: 012 328-4055

Land Claims Court

Website:
www.law.wits.ac.za/lcc/
Private Bag X10060
Randburg 2125
Tel: 011 781-2291
Fax: 011 781-2217/8

Media Development and Diversity Agency

Website: www.mdda.org.za
PO Box 42846
Fordsburg 2033
Tel: 011 726-3336
Fax: 011 726-5087

Mintek

Website: www.mintek.co.za
Private Bag X3015
Randburg 2125
Tel: 011 709-4111
Fax: 011 793-2413

Municipal Demarcation Board

Website: www.demarcation.org.za
Private Bag X28
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-2481/2
Fax: 012 342-2480

National Advisory Council on Innovation

Website: www.naci.org.za
Private Bag X894
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 843-6511
Fax: 086 681 0144

National Agricultural Marketing Council

Website: www.namc.co.za
Private Bag X935
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 341-1115
Fax: 012 341-1811/1911

National Archives of South Africa

Website:
www.national.archives.gov.za
Private Bag X236
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 441-3200
Fax: 012 323-5287

National Arts Council of South Africa

Website: www.nac.org.za
PO Box 500
Newtown 2113
Tel: 011 838-1383
Fax: 011 838-6363

National Development Agency

Website: www.nda.org.za
PO Box 31959
Braamfontein 2017
Tel: 011 718-5500
Fax: 011 403-2514/5

National Empowerment Fund

Website: www.nefcorp.co.za
PO Box 31
Melrose Arch
Melrose North 2076
Tel: 011 305-8000
Fax: 011 305-8001

National Economic Development Labour Council

Website: www.nedlac.org.za
PO Box 1775
Saxonwold 2132
Tel: 011 328-4200
Fax: 011 447-2089/6053



CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

National Energy Regulator

Website: www.nersa.org.za
PO Box 40343
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 401-4600
Fax: 012 401-4700

National Gambling Board

Website: www.ngb.org.za
Private Bag X27
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 394-3800
Fax: 012 394-0831

National Home-Builders' Registration Council

Website: www.nhbrc.org.za
PO Box 461
Randburg 2125
Tel: 011 317-0000
Fax: 011 317-0105
Toll-free: 0800 200 824
Fraud hotline: 0800 203 698

National House of Traditional Leaders

Private Bag X804
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 395-4659
Fax: 012 326-4664

National Housing Finance Corporation

Website: www.nhfc.co.za
PO Box 31376
Braamfontein 2017
Tel: 011 644-9800
Fax: 011 484-0204

National Lotteries Board

Website: www.nlb.org.za
PO Box 1556
Brooklyn Square 0075
Tel: 012 394-3440
Fax: 012 394-0452

National Nuclear Regulator

Website: www.nnr.co.za
PO Box 7106
Centurion 0046
Tel: 012 674-7100
Fax: 012 663-5513

National Prosecuting Authority

Website: www.npa.gov.za
Private Bag X752
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 845-6000
Fax: (012) 804 7335

National Research Foundation

Website: www.nrf.ac.za
PO Box 2600
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 481-4000
Fax: 012 349-1179

National Youth Commission

Website: www.nyc.gov.za
Private Bag X938
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 309-7800
Fax: 012 309-7822

Office of the Auditor-General

Website: www.agsa.co.za
PO Box 446
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 426-8000
Fax: 012 426-8257

Office on the Rights of the Child

The Presidency
Private Bag X1000
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 300-5500
Fax: 012 321-4566

Pan South African Language Board

Website: www.pansalb.org.za
Private Bag X08
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 341-9638
Fax: 012 341-5938

Public Investment Corporation

Website: www.pic.gov.za
Private Bag X187
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 369-3300
Fax: 012 348-5852/2272

Office of the Public Protector

Website: www.publicprotector.org
Private Bag X677
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 366-7000
Fax: 012 366-7047/362-3473
Toll-free number: 0800 11 2040

Petroleum Oil and Gas Corporation of South Africa (Pty) Limited

Website: www.petrosa.co.za
Private Bag X5
Parow 7499
Tel: 021 929-3000
Fax: 021 929-3144

Rand Water

Website: www.randwater.co.za
PO Box 1127
Johannesburg 2000
Tel: 011 682-0911
Fax: 011 682-0444/555
Customer service centre:
0860 10 10 60

Small Enterprise Development Agency

Website: www.seda.org.za
PO Box 56714
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 441-1000/0860 103 703
Fax: 012 441-2053

South African Airways

Website: www.saa.co.za or
www.flysaa.com
Private Bag X13
OR Tambo International Airport
1627
Tel: 011 978-1000/2500
Fax: 011 978-3507



CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

South African Bureau of Standards

Website: www.sabs.co.za
Private Bag X191
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 428-7911
Fax: 012 344-1568

South African Civil Aviation Authority

Website: www.caa.co.za
Private Bag X73
Halfway House 1685
Tel: 011 545-1000
Fax: 011 545-1465

South African Council for Educators

Website: www.sace.org.za
Private Bag X127
Centurion 0046
Tel: 012 663-9517
Fax: 012 663-9238
Helpline: 012 663-0419

South African Forestry Company Limited

PO Box 1771
Silverton 0127
Tel: 012 481-3500
Fax: 012 804-3716

South African Heritage Resources Agency

Website: www.sahra.org.za
Private Bag 4637
Cape Town 8000
Tel: 021 462-4502
Fax: 021 462-4509

South African Human Rights Commission

Website: www.sahrc.org.za
Private Bag X2700
Houghton 2041
Tel: 011 484-8300
Fax: 011 484-7149

South African Law Reform Commission

Website: www.doj.gov.za/salrc/index.htm
Private Bag X668
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 392-9540
Fax: 012 320-0936

South African Local Government Association

Website: www.salga.net
PO Box 2094
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 369-8000
Fax: 012 369-8001

South African National Parks

Website: www.sanparks.org
PO Box 787
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 428-9111
Fax: 012 426-5500

South African National Roads Agency

Website: www.nra.co.za
PO Box 415
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 426-6000
Fax: 012 362-2116/2101/2117

South African Nuclear Energy Corporation

Website: www.necsa.co.za
PO Box X582
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 305-4911
Fax: 012 305-3111

South African Post Office Limited

Website: www.postoffice.co.za
PO Box 10000
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 401-7000
Fax: 012 401-7707

South African Qualifications Authority

Website: www.saqqa.org.za
Private Bag X06
Waterkloof 0145
Tel: 012 431-5000
Fax: 012 431-5039

South African Reserve Bank

Website: www.resbank.co.za
PO Box 427
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 313-3911
Fax: 012 313-3929

South African Tourism

Website: www.southafrica.net
Private Bag X10012
Sandton 2146
Tel: 011 895-3000
Fax: 011 895-3001

Special Investigating Unit

Website: www.siu.org.za
PO Box 8197
Garsfontein 0042
Tel: 012 843-0000
Fax: 012 843-0113

State Information Technology Agency (Pty) Limited

Website: www.sita.co.za
PO Box 26100
Monument Park 0105
Tel: 012 482-3000
Fax: 012 482-2100

State Tender Board

Website: www.treasury.gov.za
Private Bag X115
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 315-5377
Fax: 012 315-5388



CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Technology for Women in Business

Website: www.twib.co.za
PO Box 395
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 841-4983/4990
Fax: 012 841-4954

Telkom SA Limited

Website: www.telkom.co.za
Private Bag X74
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 311-3911
Fax: 012 323-6733

Trade and Investment South Africa

Website: www.thedti.gov.za
Private Bag X84
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 394-1317
Fax: 012 394 0161
Customer care centre:
0861 843 384

Transnet Limited

Website: www.transnet.co.za
PO Box 72501
Parkview 2122
Tel: 011 308-3000
Fax: 011 308-2638

Umsobomvu Youth Fund

Website: www.youthportal.org.za
PO Box 982
Halfway House
1685
Tel: 011 651-7000
Fax: 011 805-9709

Universal Service Agency of South Africa

Website: www.usa.org.za
PO Box 12601
Midrand
1686
Tel: 011 564-1600
Fax: 011 564-1629

Water Research Commission

Website: www.wrc.org.za
Private Bag X03
Gezina 0031
Tel: 012 330-0340
Fax: 012 331-2565

Government communication and information centres

Eastern Cape

Eastern Cape Provincial Office
Private Bag X608
East London 5200
Tel: 043 722-2602
Fax: 043 722-2615
E-mail: lungisa@gcis.gov.za

Free State

Free State Provincial Office
PO Box 995
Bloemfontein 9300
Tel: 051 448-4504/5/6
Fax: 051 430-7032
E-mail: tshenolo@gcis.gov.za

Kroonstad Satellite Regional Office
PO Box 995
Bloemfontein 9300
Tel: 05621 32795/6
E-mail: kroonstadmpcc@gcis.gov.za

Gauteng

Gauteng Provincial Office
Private Bag X16
Johannesburg 2000
Tel: 011 834-3560
Fax: 011 834-3621
E-mail: matevhu@gcis.gov.za

KwaZulu-Natal

KwaZulu-Natal Provincial Office
Private Bag X54332
Durban 4000
Tel: 031 301-6787/8
Fax: 031 305-9431
E-mail: deven@gcis.gov.za

Limpopo

Limpopo Provincial Office
PO Box 2452
Polokwane 0700
Tel: 015 291-4689
Fax: 015 295-6982
E-mail: thanyani@gcis.gov.za

Mpumalanga

Mpumalanga Provincial Office
PO Box X2856
Nelspruit 1200
Tel: 013 753-2397
Fax: 013 753-2531
E-mail: tiisetso@gcis.gov.za

Northern Cape

Northern Cape Provincial Office
Private Bag X5038
Kimberley 8300
Tel: 053 832-1378/9
Fax: 053 832-1377
E-mail: mariusn@gcis.gov.za

Upington Regional Office
PO Box 2872
Upington 8800
Tel: 054 332-6206
Fax: 054 332-6218
E-mail: upingtongc@gcis.gov.za

North West

North West Provincial Office
Private Bag X2120
Mafikeng 2745
Tel: 018 381-7071
Fax: 018 381-7066
E-mail: mareka@gcis.gov.za

Western Cape

Western Cape Provincial Office
Private Bag X9007
Cape Town 8000
Tel: 021 421-5070
Fax: 021 419-8846
E-mail: brent@gcis.gov.za

CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Parliamentary Office
Private Bag X9075
Cape Town 8000
Tel: 021 465-3658
Fax: 021 461-1446
E-mail: colin@gcis.gov.za

Thusong Service Centres

Eastern Cape

Centane Thusong Service Centre
Bell Sreet
Centani
Tel: 047 498-1207
Fax: 047 498-1011

Cofimvaba Thusong Service Centre
Cnr High Street and Bellair Avenue
Cofimvaba
Tel: 047 874-0444
Fax: 047 874-0553

Qunu Thusong Service Centre
Qunu Village
Mthatha
Tel: 047 538-0351

Sterkspruit Thusong Service Centre
No 79 Main Road
Sterkspruit
Tel: 051 611-1004
Fax: 051 611-0042

Viegiesville Thusong Service Centre
Viegiesville
Tel: 047 538-9011
Fax: 047 538-9011

Tombo Thusong Service Centre
Tombo Village
Tel: 047 564-1152
Fax: 047 564-1206

Free State

Botshabelo Thusong Service Centre
1230 Section E
Botshabelo
Tel: 051 532-6791

Namahadi Thusong Service Centre
Charles Mopeli Road
Tel: 058 789-1147

Sediba/Onalerona Thusong
Service Centre
188 Sediba Village
Thaba Nchu
Tel: 051 357-0027

Qalabotjha Thusong Service Centre
1279 Gamede Street
Qalabotjha
Villiers
Tel: 058 821-0688

Trompsburg Thusong Service Centre
Booyesen Street
Madikgetla
Trompsburg
Tel: 051 713-0187/9
Fax: 051 713-0192

Zastron Thusong Service Centre
Cnr Mothee and Vegkop streets
Zastron
Tel: 051 673-1671
Fax: 051 673-1761

Phiritona/Heilbron Thusong
Service Centre
2264 Makoko Hlabane Street
Phiritona
Heilbron
Tel: 056 213-2795

Gauteng

Alexandra Thusong Service Centre
Cnr 8th Avenue & Roosevelt streets
Alexandra
Tel: 011 443-1358

Atteridgeville Thusong Service Centre
Mini-Munitoria Building
1770 Komane Street
Atteridgeville
Tel: 012 358-7326

Brandvlei Thusong Service Centre
Stand 64 off Randfontein-
Ventersdorp Road
Brandvlei
Cell: 083 584 6856

Daveyton Thusong Service Centre
Daveyton Mall
Eiselen Street
Daveyton
Benoni
Tel: 011 741-6188

Thokoza Thusong Service Centre
8015 Khumalo Street
Thokoza
Tel: 011 905-1404
Fax: 011 905-0172

Orange Farm Service Centre
15747 Orange Farm Ext 4
Tel: 011 211-1100

Duduza Thusong Service Centre
No 1 Nala Street
Duduza
Cell: 073 657 5680

Bekkersdal Thusong Service Centre
Cnr Godlo and Panyapanya streets
Bekkersdal
Tel: 011 755-3837

Kagiso Thusong Service Centre
8740 Kagiso Avenue
Kagiso Central
Tel: 011 951-2304
Fax: 011 935-2547

Diepsloot Thusong Service Centre
Stand 381 Diepsloot West
Diepsloot
Tel: 011 464-7073

Dobsonville Thusong Service Centre
2332 Luthuli Street
Dobsonville
Tel: 011 986-0036
Fax: 011 932-1440

CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Faranani Thusong Service Centre
Modjadjie Street
Tsakane
Brakpan
Tel: 011 566-7777

Ipelegeng Thusong Service Centre
1238 White City Jabavu
Soweto
Tel: 011 982-5810
Fax: 011 982-1200

Mamelodi Thusong Service Centre
9864 Makhubela Street
Mamelodi West
Telefax: 012 805-9085

Mohlakeng Thusong Service Centre
262 Ralerata Street
Mohlakeng
Randfontein
Tel: 011 414-1888
Fax: 011 414-0405

Orlando East Thusong Service Centre
1425 Sofasonke Street
Orlando East
Tel: 011 935-8432
Fax: 011 935-6492

Ratanda Thusong Service Centre
Cnr Heidelberg and Boshoeck streets
Ratanda
Tel: 016 340-4308
Fax: 016 850-0300

Soshanguve Thusong Service Centre
Shop 49, Nafcoc Shopping Centre
Section F
Soshanguve
Fax: 012 799-5005

Tembisa Thusong Service Centre
238 Igqagqa Section
Tembisa
Tel: 011 920-1020
Fax: 011 920-1011

Thokoza Thusong Service Centre
8015 Khumalo Street
Thokoza
Tel: 011 905-1404
Fax: 011 905-0172

Vaal/Sebokeng Thusong
Service Centre
88 Moshoeshoe Street
Sebokeng
Tel: 016 988-1502
Fax: 016 988-0586

Zithobeni Thusong Service Centre
2237 Mothibe Drive
Zithobeni
Tel: 013 937-0556

KwaThema Thusong Service Centre
54 Luthombo Street
Tornado Section
KwaThema
Tel: 011 738-8516

Boitshepville Thusong
Service Centre
Stand 2013, Phase 2
Tshepisi
Tel: 016 950-5432
Fax: 016 950-5000

Lord Khanyile Thusong
Service Centre
Cnr Freedom and Osizweni streets
Ivory Park
Telefax: 011 261-0249

Ga-Rankuwa Thusong
Service Centre
Municipal Building
Extention 5
Ga-Rankuwa
Tel: 012 358-9682

Onverwacht Thusong Service Centre
Onverwacht Municipal Library
Onverwacht
Tel: 012 732-0564

Impumulelo Thusong Service Centre
Impumulelo Municipal Building
Impumulelo
Devon
Tel: 017 688-0116

KwaZulu-Natal
Bamshela Thusong Service Centre
Ngcongcongong, Nwodsberg Road
Ozwathini 3242
Tel: 032 294-9076
Fax: 032 294-9075

Dududu Thusong Service Centre
Dududu Main Road
Telefax: 039 974-0989

Dukuza Thusong Service Centre
Dukuza Village
Tel: 036 438-6103
Fax: 036 438-6136

Mbazwana Thusong Service Centre
Mbazwana
Telefax: 035 571-0138

Mbabazane Thusong Service Centre
White Mountain Road
Telefax: 036 353-3212

Tugela Ferry Thusong
Service Centre
Main Road
Tugela Ferry
Tel: 033 493-0895
Fax: 033 493-0724

Bomela Thusong Service Centre
Padock
Nyamdezulu
Telefax: 039 688-2000

Archie Gumede Thusong
Service Centre
1106 Zazi Road
Clernaville
Clermont
Telefax: 031 718-3407

CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Nhlazuka Thusong Service Centre
Nhlazuka Village
Mbuthisweni Tribal Court and Clinic
Richmond
Tel: 033 897-6892
Fax: 033 342-5442

Lindela Thusong Service Centre
Ntolwana Village
Telefax: 035 474-4733

Limpopo

Botlokwa Thusong Service Centre
Dwarsrivier
Tel: 015 527-1596

Kgautswane Thusong Service
Centre
Kgautswane Village
Tel: 013 231-7515
Fax: 013 238-0122

Leboeng Thusong Service Centre
Leboeng Village
Safety Centre
Burgersfort
Tel: 013 769-9026
Fax: 015 812-9201

Makhuva Thusong Service Centre
Makhuva Village
Fax: 015 812-5602
Mapela Service Centre
Mapela Village
Tel: 015 413-0000/2
Fax: 015 413-0023

Festus Sengaka Mothudi Thusong
Service Centre
Ramokgopa Village
Tel: 015 501-0243
Fax: 015 501-0419

Mokwakwaila Thusong
Service Centre
Mokwakwaila Village
Telefax: 015 812-0425

Bulamahlo Thusong Service Centre
No 30-32
Mahwibidung Section
Bulamahlo
Cell: 072 126 1732

Makuya Thusong Service Centre
Makuya Village
Thohoyandou
Telefax: 015 962-5307

Mabatlane/Vaalwater Thusong
Service Centre
Modimolle
Tel: 014 755-3751
Fax: 014 755-3534

Babirwa Thusong Service Centre
Babirwa Village
Tel: 015 505-5345
Fax: 015 571-5803

Zava Thusong Service Centre
Zava Village
Tel: 015 811-5567
Fax: 015 812-2068

Eldorado Thusong Service Centre
Eldorado Village
Tel: 015 291-4689
Fax: 015 295-6982

Mpumalanga

Casteel Thusong Service Centre
KaMthakathi Station
Casteel
Tel: 013 777-6108
Fax: 013 777-6113

Matsamo Thusong Service Centre
Matsamo Tribal Offices
Schoemansdal
Telefax: 013 781-0659

Mpuluzi Thusong Service Centre
Ferne
Tel: 017 843-1055
Fax: 017 843-3959

Tholulwazi Thusong Service Centre
Leslie
Telefax: 017 683-1031

Thuthukani Thusong Service Centre
New Denmark Hostel
Standerton
Telefax: 017 797-1370

Kgolomodumo Thusong
Service Centre
Marble Hall
Tel: 013 267-0252
Fax: 013 267-0252

Marapyane Thusong Service Centre
Marapyane Shopping complex
Marapyane
Tel: 013 766-6993

Mbangwane Thusong
Service Centre
Malalane
Tel: 013 781-0659

Northern Cape

Augrabies Thusong Service Centre
199 Tin Crescent
Augrabies
Tel: 054 332-6206
Fax: 054 332-6205

Colesberg Thusong Service Centre
Chamberlaine Square
Colesberg
Tel: 051 753-2170
Fax: 051 753-2182

Rethusaneng Thusong
Service Centre
Cnr Matanzima and Letsholo
streets, Mankuwane
Kimberley
Tel: 053 872-1197
Fax: 053 872-2647

CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Pescodia Thusong Service Centre
62 Sparrow Street
Pescodia
Kimberley
Telefax: 053 832-1378

Calvinia Thusong Service Centre
541 Church Street
Calvinia
Telefax: 027 341-1216

Mothibistad Thusong Service Centre
Hauma Family Trust Building
Breestraat
Kuruman
Telefax: 053 712-2769

North West

Lerethlabetse Thusong Service Centre
Lebotlwane Village
Tel: 012 252-2437
Fax: 012 252-2434

Tshedimosetso Thusong Service Centre
Boikhutso Village
Ventersdorp
Tel: 018 264-2332
Fax: 018 264-2051

Tshidilamolomo Thusong Service Centre
Taung Forum
1st Floor, Office No 3, Taung
Telefax: 018 683-0010

Victor Tong Thusong Service Centre
Morokweng Village
Telefax: 053 761-0093

Khutsong Thusong Service Centre
Portion 1 Stand 1
Khutsong
Carletonville
Tel: 018 783-9032
Fax: 018 783-9033

Manamela Thusong Service Centre
Manamela Village
Tel: 014 555-1300
Fax: 014 555-5240

Monakato Thusong Service Centre
Monakato
Tel: 014 554-8815
Fax: 014 554-8593

Swartruggens Service Centre
Swartruggens
Tel: 014 544-0011

Western Cape

Bonteheuvel Thusong Service Centre
Cnr Jakkalsvlei and Elder streets
Bonteheuvel
Cape Town
Telefax: 021 695-5425

Beaufort West Thusong Service Centre
51 Devries Street, Rustdene
Beaufort West
Telefax: 023 415-3144

George/Tembalethu Thusong Service Centre
Cnr Jeriko and Sandkraalweg streets

Thembalethu
Tel: 044 880-1711
Fax: 044 880-1194

Guga Sithembe Thusong Service Centre
Washington Street
Langa
Tel: 021 400-4573
Fax: 021 418-8221

Hartebeeskraal/Atlantis Thusong Service Centre
1 Nottingham Street
Atlantis
Cape Town 7349
Telefax: 021 572-1872

Langebaan Thusong Service Centre
No 7 Anton Sien Street
Langebaan
Tel: 022 772-2622
Fax: 022 772-2151

Laingsburg Thusong Service Centre
Cnr Main Street and 3rd Avenue
Laingsburg
Tel: 023 551-1899
Fax: 023 415-1008

Masibambane Thusong Service Centre
1 Mandela Street
Vanrhynsdorp
Tel: 022 772-2049
Fax: 027 219-1574

Plettenberg Bay Thusong Service Centre
Sishuba Street
Kuranokuthula
Tel: 044 501-3134
Fax: 044 880-1165

Waboomskraal Thusong Service Centre
Sandklaar Road
Waboomskraal
Telefax: 044 886-0040

Worcester/Unobuntu Thusong Service Centre
Cnr Mtswazi and Nkenta streets
Zweletemba
Worcester
Tel: 023 345-2739
Fax: 023 345-1031

Zolane Thusong Service Centre
6th Avenue
Nyanga East
Tel: 021 386-8656
Fax: 021 386-1034

CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Vrenendal Thusong Service Centre
Bultweg
Vrenendal North
Tel: 027 201-3311
Fax: 027 219-1574

Riversdale Thusong Service Centre
Van den Berg Street
Riversdal
Telefax: 028 713-3647

Lingeletu Thusong Service Centre
Lingeletu
Tel: 022 486-4593
Fax: 022 486-4415

Citrus Dal Thusong Service Centre
Bohemia Street
Citrus Dal
Tel: 022 772-2049
Fax: 027 219-1574

Hawson Thusong Service Centre
Overstrand
Tel: 021 421-5070
Fax: 021 419-8846

Swellendam Thusong
Service Centre
1 Vollenhoven Street
Railton
Swellendam
Tel: 021 421-5070
Fax: 021 419-8846

Foreign representatives in South Africa

Albania (Republic of)
[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 87393
Houghton 2041
Tel: 011 465-3871
Fax: 011 467-0952
E-mail: nrose@tiscali.co.za

**Algeria (Democratic People's
Republic of)** [Embassy]
PO Box 57480
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-5074/5
Fax: 012 342-6479

Angola (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 8685
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 342-0049/50
Fax: 012 342-7039

Argentina (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 11125
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 430-3513/6
Fax: 012 430-3521
E-mail: argembas@global.co.za

Australia
[High Commission]
Private Bag X150
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 342-6000
Fax: 012 342-8442

Austria (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 95572
Waterkloof 0145
Tel: 012 452-9155/9121
Fax: 012 460-1151
E-mail: pretoria-ob@bmaa.gv.at

**Bangladesh (People's Republic
of)**
[High Commission]
410 Farenden Street
Sunnyside
Pretoria 0002
Tel: 012 343-2105/7
Fax: 012 343-5222
E-mail: banglacom@global.co.za

Belarus (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 4107
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 430-7664
Fax: 012 342-6280

Belgium (Kingdom of)
[Embassy]
625 Leyds Street
Muckleneuk
Pretoria 0002
Tel: 012 440-3201/2
Fax: 012 440-3216
E-mail: pretoria@diplobel.org

Benin (Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 26484
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-6978
Fax: 012 342-1823
E-mail: embenin@yebo.co.za

Bosnia and Herzegovina
[Embassy]
PO Box 11464
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 346-5547/7366
Fax: 012 346-2295
E-mail: bih@saol.com

Botswana (Republic of)
[High Commission]
PO Box 57035
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 430-9640
Fax: 012 342-1845

Brazil (Federative Republic of)
[Embassy]
PO Box 3269
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 426-9400
Fax: 012 426-9494
E-mail:
pretoria@brazilianembassy.org.za

CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Bulgaria (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 26296
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-3720
Fax: 012 342-3721
E-mail: embulgsa@iafrica.com

Burundi (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 12914
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-4881/3
Fax: 012 342-4885
E-mail: ambabusa@yahoo.fr

Cameroon (Republic of)

[High Commission]
PO Box 13790
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 362-4731
Fax: 012 362-4732
E-mail: hicocam@cameroon.co.za

Canada

[High Commission]
Private Bag X13
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 422-3000
Fax: 012 422-3052

Central African Republic

[Honorary Consulate-General]
PO Box 2774
Kempton Park 1620
Tel: 011 970-1355
Fax: 011 970-1352
E-mail: johan@eriksons.co.za

Chile (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 2449
Brooklyn Square 0075
Tel: 012 460-8090
Fax: 012 460-8093
E-mail: chile@iafrica.com

China (People's Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 95764
Waterkloof 0145
Tel: 012 342-6500/4194
Fax: 012 342-4244/4154

Colombia (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 12791
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-0211/4
Fax: 012 342-0216
E-mail: visas@embassyofcolombia.co.za

Comoros (Federal Islamic Republic of the)

[Embassy]
817 Thomas Ave
Arcadia 0083
Tel: 012 343-9483
Fax: 012 342-0138
Cell: 082 622 0139

Congo (Democratic Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 28795
Sunnyside 0132
Tel: 012 343-2455
Fax: 012 344-4054
E-mail: rdcongo@lantic.co.za

Congo (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 40427
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-5508
Fax: 012 342-5510
E-mail: congo@telkomsa.net

Costa Rica (Republic of)

[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 68140
Bryanston 2021
Tel: 011 705-3434
Fax: 011 705-1222
E-mail: bish@mega.co.za

Cote d'Ivoire (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 13510
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-6913
Fax: 012 342-6713
E-mail: ambacipretoria@yahoo.fr

Croatia (Republic of)

[Embassy]
Website: <http://za.mvp.hr>
PO Box 11335
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-1206
Fax: 012 342-1819
E-mail: croatianembassy@ionline.co.za

Cuba (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 11605
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 346-2215
Fax: 012 346-2216
E-mail: embacuba@cubanembassy.co.za

Cyprus (Republic of)

[High Commission]
PO Box 14554
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-5258
Fax: 012 342-5596
E-mail: cyprusjb@mweb.co.ca

Czech Republic

[Embassy]
PO Box 13671
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 431-2380
Fax: 012 430-2033
E-mail: pretoria@embassy.mzv.cz

Denmark (Kingdom of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 11439
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 430-9340
Fax: 012 342-7620
E-mail: pryamb@um.dk

CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Egypt (Arab Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 30025
Sunnyside 0132
Tel: 012 343-1590/1
Fax: 012 343-1082
E-mail: egyptemb@global.co.za

Equatorial Guinea (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 12720
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-9945/6470
Fax: 012 342-6469
E-mail:
egembassytres@telkomsa.net

Eritrea (State of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 11371
Queenswood 0121
Tel: 012 333-1302
Fax: 012 333-2330

Estonia (Republic of)

[Honorary Consulate]
16 Hofmeyer Street
Welgemoed
Bellville 7530
Tel: 021 913-3850/082 550 6363
Fax: 021 913-2579/863-2190
E-mail: estonia@mweb.co.za

Ethiopia (Federal Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 11469
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 346-3542
Fax: 012 346-3867
E-mail: ethiopia@sentechnsa.com

Finland (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 443
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 343-0275
Fax: 012 343-3095
Fax: (visas) (012) 343-4369
E-mail: sanomat.pre@formin.fi

France (Republic of)

[Embassy]
Website:
www.ambafrance/rsa/org.za
250 Melk Street
Cnr Middle Street
New Muckleneuk 0181
Tel: 012 425-1600
Fax: 012 425-1609
E-mail: france@ambafrance-rsa.org

Gabon (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 9222
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 342-4376/7
Fax: 012 342-4375

The Gambia (Republic of)

[High Commission]
Private Bag X9949
Sandton 2146
Tel: 011 784-1059
Fax: 011 784-0790
Cell: 083 222 6747

Germany (Federal Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 2023
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 427-8900
Fax (visas): 012 427-8982
Fax: 012 343-9401
E-mail:
GermanEmbassyPretoria@gonet.co.za

Ghana (Republic of)

[High Commission]
1038 Arcadia Street
Hatfield 0038
Tel: 012 342-5847/9
Fax: 012 342-5863
E-mail: ghcom27@icon.co.za

Greece (Hellenic Republic)

[Embassy]
1003 Church Street
Arcadia 0083
Tel: 012 430-7351/2/3

Fax: 012 430-4313
E-mail: embgrsaf@global.co.za or
hunem@cis.co.za

Grenada

[Honorary Consulate]
Johannesburg
Third Floor Digital House
Park Lane
Sandton 2196
Cell: 083 461-6559
Fax: 011 787-6407

Guatemala (Republic of)

[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 1661
Cape Town 8000
Tel: 021 418-2020
Fax: 021 418-1280

Guinea (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 13523
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-7348/4906
Fax: 012 342-7348
E-mail: embaguinea@l.iafrica.com

Guinea-Bissau (Republic of)

[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 9689
Edenglen 1613
Tel: 011 622-3688
Fax: 011 622-5351

Guyana (Republic of)

[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 1788
Randburg 2125
Tel: 011 789-9760
Fax: 011 789-9763
E-mail: raebenz@compuserve.com

Haiti (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 14362
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 430-7560
Fax: 012 342-7042

CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Holy See (The Vatican)

PO Box 26017
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 344-3815/6
Fax: 012 344-3595
E-mail: nunziosa@iafrica.com

Hungary (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 13843
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 430-3020/30
Fax: 012 430-3029
E-mail: huembprt@mweb.co.za

Iceland (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 14325
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-5885
Fax: 012 342-0883
E-mail: mspencer@shanduka.co.za

India (Republic of)

[High Commission]
PO Box 40216
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-5392/5
Fax: 012 342-5310/430 3326
E-mail: hcpta@iafrica.com or
dhc@iafrica.com

Indonesia (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 13155
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-3350/3
Fax: 012 342-3369
E-mail: indonemb@lantic.co.za

Iran (Islamic Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 12546
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-5880/1
Fax: 012 342-1878
E-mail: office@iranembassy.org.za

Iraq (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 11089
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 362-2021
Fax: 012 362-2027
E-mail: abrtemb@iraqmosamail.net

Ireland

[Embassy]
PO Box 4174
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 342-5062
Fax: 012 342-4752

Israel (State of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 3726
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 348-0470
Fax: 012 470-3555
E-mail: operator@pretoria.mfa.gov.il

Italy (Republic of)

[Embassy]
796 George Avenue
Arcadia 0083
Tel: 012 423-0000
Fax: 012 430-5547
E-mail: ambital@iafrica.com
Ivory Coast (see Côte d'Ivoire)

Jamaica

[High Commission]
1119 Burnett Street
Hatfield 0083
Tel: 012 362-6667
Tel: 012 366-8500
Fax: 012 366-8510
E-mail: jhcpretoria@telkomsa.net

Japan

[Embassy]
Private Bag X999
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 452-1500
Fax: 012 460-3800/1
E-mail: enquiries@embjapan.org.za

Jordan (Hashemite Kingdom of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 14730
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-8615/2
Fax: 012 342-7847
E-mail: embjordpta@telkomsa.net

Kazakhstan (Republic of)

[Honorary Consulate]
Johannesburg
Bateman BV
Bartlett Road
Boksburg
Tel: 011 899-2673
Fax: 012 899-3914
E-mail:
sivi.gounden@batemanbv.com

Kenya (Republic of)

[High Commission]
PO Box 35954
Menlo Park 0102
Tel: 012 362-2249/50/51
Fax: 012 362-2252
E-mail: kenrep@mweb.co.za

Korea (Democratic People's Republic)

[Embassy]
PO Box 1238
Garsfontein 0042
Tel: 012 991-8661
Fax: 012 991-8662
E-mail: dprkembassy@lantic.net

Korea (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 939
Groenkloof 0027
Tel: 012 460-2508/9
Fax: 012 460-1158
E-mail: korrsa@mweb.co.za

Kuwait (State of)

[Embassy]
Private Bag X920
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 342-0877

CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Fax: 012 342-0876
E-mail: safarku@global.co.za

Latvia (Republic of)

[Honorary Consulate]
Johannesburg
24 Impala Road
Chiselhurst
Sandton 2196
Tel: 011 505-9100
Fax: 011 505-9147
E-mail: neishlos@icon.co.za
lynette@africanresonance.com

Lebanon (Lebanese Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 941
Groenkloof 0027
Tel: 012 346-7020
Fax: 012 346-7022
E-mail: stelebsa@africa.com

Lesotho (Kingdom of)

[High Commission]
PO Box 55817
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 460-7648
Fax: 012 460-7649
E-mail:
lesothopretoria@metroweb.co.za

Liberia (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 14082
Hatfield 0028
Cell: 072 928 0841
Fax: 086 503 6036
E-mail: libempta@lia.net

Libya (Socialist People's Libyan Arab Jamahiriya)

[Embassy]
PO Box 40388
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-3902
Fax: 012 342-3904
E-mail: online319096@telkomsa.net

Liechtenstein (Principality of)

Representation accredited from
Switzerland

Lithuania (Republic of)

[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 1737
Houghton 2041
Tel: 011 486-3660
Fax: 011 486-3650
E-mail: lietuvos@iafrica.com or
lietuvos@iafrica.com

Madagascar (Republic of)

[Consulate-General]
PO Box 11722
Queenswood 0120
Tel: 012 342-0983/4/5/6
Fax: 012 342-0995
E-mail: consul@infodoor.co.za

Malawi (Republic of)

[High Commission]
PO Box 11172
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-0146/1759
Fax: 012 342-0147
E-mail: highcomalai@telkomsa.net
Telex: 3-22017 SA

Malaysia

[High Commission]
PO Box 11673
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-5990/3
Fax: 012 430-7773
E-mail: mwpretoria@ishoppe.co.za

Mali (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 12978
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-7464/0676
Fax: 012 342-0670

Malta (Republic of)

[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 12978
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-7464/0676

Fax: 012 342-0670

E-mail:
maltaconsulate@intekom.co.za

Mauritania (Islamic Republic of)

[Embassy]
146 Anderson Street
Brooklyn 0181
Tel: 012 362-3578
Fax: 012 362-3304
E-mail:
rimambapretoria@webmail.co.za

Mauritius (Republic of)

[High Commission]
1163 Pretorius Street
Hatfield 0083
Tel: 012 342-1283/4
Fax: 012 342-1286
E-mail: mhcpta@mweb.co.za

Mexico (United Mexican States)

[Embassy]
PO Box 9077
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 362-2822-9
Fax: 012 362-2882 or 086 408 731
E-mail: embamexza@mweb.co.za

Monaco (Principality of)

[Honorary Consulate]
Unit No 1 Milton's Way
11 Bell Crescent Close
Westlake Business Park,
Westlake 7945
Tel: 021 702-0991/2
Fax: 021 702-0993
E-mail: consulmonaco@telkomsa.net

Morocco (Kingdom of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 12382
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 343-0230/40
Fax: 012 342-0613
E-mail: sifmapre@telkomsa.net

Mozambique (Republic of)

[High Commission]
PO Box 40750
Arcadia 0007



CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Tel: 012 401-0300
Fax: 012 326-6388

Myanmar (Union of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 12121
Queenswood 0121
Tel: 012 341-2556/7
Fax: 012 341-2553
E-mail: euompta@global.co.za

Namibia (Republic of)

[High Commission]
PO Box 29806
Sunnyside 0132
Tel: 012 481-9100
Fax: 012 344-5998/343-7294
E-mail: secretary@namibia.org.za

Netherlands (Kingdom of the)

[Embassy]
PO Box 117
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 425-4500
Fax: 012 425-4511
E-mail: nlgovpre@cis.co.za

New Zealand

[High Commission]
Private Bag X17
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-8656
Fax: 012 342-8640

Nigeria (Federal Republic of)

[High Commission]
PO Box 27332
Sunnyside 0132
Tel: 012 342-0805/0663
Fax: (012) 342-1668
E-mail: nhlep@iafrica.com

Norway (Kingdom of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 11612
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-6100
Fax: 012 342-6099
E-mail: hkmarin@iafrica.com

Oman (Sultanate of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 2650
Brooklyn 0075
Tel: 012 346-0808/4428
Fax: 012 346-1660

Pakistan (Islamic Republic of)

[High Commission]
PO Box 11803
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 362-4072/3
Fax: 012 362-3967
E-mail: pareppretoria@worldonline.co.za

Palestine (State of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 56021
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-6411
Fax: 012 342-6412

Panama (Republic of)

[Embassy]
Old Mutual Centre
26th Floor
303 West Street
Durban 4001
Tel: 031 336-2682
Fax: 031 336-2511
Cell: 072 994 4332

Papua New Guinea

The Australian diplomatic representatives are in charge of the consular interests of Papua New Guinea in South Africa

Paraguay (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 95774
Waterkloof 0145
Tel: 012 347-1047
Fax: 012 347-0403
E-mail: embapar@iafrica.com

Peru (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 907
Groenkloof 0027
Tel: 012 346-8744
Fax: 012 346-8886
E-mail: emperu2@telkomsa.net or emperu2@telkomsa.net

Philippines (Republic of the)

[Embassy]
PO Box 2562
Brooklyn Square 0075
Tel: 012 346-0451/2
Fax: 012 346-0454
E-mail: pretoriapae@mweb.co.za

Poland (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 12277
Queenswood 0121
Tel: 012 430-2631/2
Fax: 012 430-2608
E-mail: e20@mweb.co.za

Portugal (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 27102
Sunnyside 0132
Tel: 012 341-2340/1/2
Fax: 012 341-3975
E-mail: portemb@satis.co.za

Qatar (State of)

[Embassy]
Private Bag X13
Brooklyn Square 0075
Tel: 012 452-1700
Fax: 012 346-6732
E-mail: qatar-emb@lantic.net

Romania (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 11295
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 460-6940
Fax: 012 460-6947



CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Russian Federation (The)

[Embassy]
PO Box 6743
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 362-1337/8
Fax: 012 362-0116
Telex: 320088 RUSEM

Rwanda (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 55224
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-6536
Fax: 012 342-7106

Saharawi (Arab Democratic Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 11352
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-5532
Fax: 012 430-7428
E-mail: Samoba19@yahoo.com

San Marino (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 2013
Brooklyn Square 0075
Tel: 012 460-5826
Fax: 012 460-5826
E-mail: affariesteri@omniway.sm

São Tomé and Príncipe (Democratic Republic of)

[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 28
Franschoek 7690
Tel: 021 876-2494
Fax: 021 876-3237

Saudi Arabia (Kingdom of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 13930
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 362-4230/4240
Fax: 012 362-4239

Senegal (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 2948
Brooklyn Square 0075
Tel: 012 460-5263
Fax: 012 346-5550

Serbia (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 13026
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 460-5626
Fax: 012 460-6103

Seychelles (Republic of)

[Consulate General]
PO Box 1548
Ferndale 2160
Tel: 011 467-8101/2
Fax: 011 465-9093

Sierra Leone (Republic of)

[High Commission]
E-mail: sleone.et@telecom.net

Singapore (Republic of)

[High Commission]
PO Box 11809
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 430-6035
Fax: 012 342-4425

Slovak (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 12736
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-2051/2
Fax: 012 342-3688
E-mail: slovakem@telkomsa.net

Spain (Kingdom of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 1633
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 460-0123
Fax: 012 343-4891

Sri Lanka (Democratic Socialist Republic of)

[High Commission]
410 Alexander Street
Brooklyn 0181
Tel: 012 460-7690/79
Fax: 012 460-7702
E-mail: srilanka@global.co.za

Sudan (Republic of the)

[Embassy]
PO Box 25513
Monument Park 0105
Tel: 012 342-4538/7903
Fax: 012 342-4539/0940

Suriname (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 149
Pretoria
Tel: 012 346 7627/45
Tel: 012 346 7721
Fax: 012 346 0802
E-mail: embsur@lantic.net

Swaziland (Kingdom of)

[High Commission]
PO Box 14294
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 344-1910/17/24
Fax: 012 343-0455

Sweden (Kingdom of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 13477
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 426-6400
Fax: 012 426-6464
E-mail: consulates@hkshipping.co.za

Switzerland (Swiss Confederation of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 2508
Brooklyn Square 0075
Tel: 012 452-0660
Fax: 012 346-6605
E-mail: Vertretung@pre.rep.admin.ch



CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Syrian Arab Republic

[Embassy]
PO Box 12830
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-4701
Fax: 012 342-4566

Taipei

[Liaison Office in South Africa]
PO Box 649
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 430-6071-3/342-7110
Fax: 012 430-5816
E-mail: taipeisa@telkomsa.net

Tanzania (United Republic of)

[High Commission]
PO Box 56572
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-4393/71
Fax: 012 430-4383
E-mail: thc@tanzania.org.za

Thailand (Kingdom of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 12080
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-4516/4506
Fax: 012 342-4805
E-mail: visa@thaiembassy.co.za

Trinidad and Tobago (Republic of)

[High Commission]
PO Box 95872
Waterkloof 0145
Tel: 012 460-9688
Fax: 012 346-7302
E-mail: tthepretoria@telkomsa.net

Tunisia (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 56535
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-6282/83
Fax: 012 342-6284
Telex: 320053 TUEMB SA

Turkey (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 56014
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-6053-7
Fax: (012) 342-6052
E-mail: pretbe@global.co.za

Uganda (Republic of)

[High Commission]
PO Box 12442
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 342-6031/3
Fax: 012 342-6206

Ukraine

[Embassy]
PO Box 57291
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 460-1946
Fax: 012 460-1944

United Arab Emirates

[Embassy]
PO Box 57090
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-7736
Fax: 012 342-7738

United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland

[Her Britannic Majesty's High Commission]
255 Hill Street
Arcadia 0083
Tel: 012 421-7500
Fax: 012 421-7555
E-mail: media.pretoria@fco.gov.uk

United States of America

[Embassy]
PO Box 9536
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 431-4000
After hours: 082 285 2341
Fax: 012 342-2299/2911

Uruguay (Oriental Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 3247
Pretoria 0001
Tel: 012 362-6521/2
Fax: 012 362-6523
E-mail: urusud@pixie.co.za

Vanuatu (Republic of)

[Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 114
Green Point, 8051
Tel: 021 434-6570
Fax: 021 434-6518
E-Mail: Christian@brendel.co.za

Venezuela (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 11821
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 362-6593
Fax: 012 362-6591
E-mail: embasadaf@icon.co.za

Vietnam (Socialist Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 13692
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 362-8119
Fax: 012 362-8115
E-mail: vnnto@worldonline.co.za

Yemen (Republic of)

[Embassy]
PO Box 13343
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 425-0760
Fax: 012 425-0762
E-mail: info@yemenembassy.org.za

Zambia (Republic of)

[High Commission]
PO Box 12234
Hatfield 0028
Tel: 012 326-1854
Fax: 012 326-2140
E-mail: zahpta@mweb.co.za

CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Zimbabwe (Republic of)

[High Commission]
PO Box 55140
Arcadia 0007
Tel: 012 342-5125
Fax: 012 342-5126
Telex: 320055ZIMPA SA

Representatives of the Republic of South Africa abroad

Afghanistan (Transitional Islamic State of)

Representation accredited from
Islamabad, Pakistan

African Union and United Nations Economic Commission for Africa

[South African Mission]
PO Box 1091
Addis Ababa
Ethiopia
Tel: 0025 111 3713034
Fax: 00 25111 371 1330
E-mail:
sa.embassy.addis@telecom.net.et

Albania (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Rome, Italy

Algeria (Democratic People's Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
30 Rue Capitan Hocine Slimane
El Biar
Algiers 16000
Algeria
Tel: 00 2132 123 0384
Fax: 00 213 2123 123 0827
E-mail: sae@assila.net

Andorra (Principality of)

Representation accredited from
Madrid, Spain

Angola (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
Caixa Postal 6212
Luanda
Angola
Tel: 00 2442 22 33 0593/4187
Fax: 00 2442 22 39 8730/
00 2442 22 39 8725
E-mail: saemb.ang@netangola.com

Antigua and Barbuda

Representation accredited from
Kingston, Jamaica

Argentina (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
Avenida Marcelo T de Alvear 590
8th Floor
C1058AAF
Buenos Aires 1050
Argentina
Tel: 0054 11 4317 2900
Fax: 0054 11 4317 2963
E-mail: info@sudafrica.org.ar

Armenia (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Kyiv, Ukraine

Australia (Commonwealth of)

[South African High Commission]
Rhodes Place
State Circle
Yarralumla
Canberra ACT 2600
Australia
Tel: 00 61 2 6272 7300
Fax: 00 61 26273 3543
E-mail: consular@sahc.org.au or
info@sahc.org.au

Austria (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
Sandgasse 33
A-1190 Vienna
Austria
Tel: 00 431 320 6493
Fax: 00 431 320 649351
E-mail: ambassador@saembvie.at

Azerbaijan (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Ankara, Turkey

Bahamas (The Commonwealth of the)

Representation accredited from
Kingston, Jamaica

Bahrain (Kingdom of)

Representation accredited from
Riyadh, Saudi Arabia

Bangladesh (People's Republic of)

Representation accredited from
New Delhi, India

Barbados

Representation accredited from
Kingston, Jamaica

Belarus (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Moscow, Russia

Belgium (Kingdom of)

[South African Embassy]
(Embassy to Belgium and
Luxembourg and
Mission to the European
Communities)
Rue de la Loi b-7/8
Brussels 1040
Belgium
Tel: 00 32 2285 4400
Fax: 00 32 2285 4402
E-mail: embassy@southafrica.be

Botswana (Republic of)

[South African High Commission]
Private Bag 00402
Gaborone
Botswana
Tel: 00 267 390 4800/1/2
Fax: 00 267 390 5501
E-mail: sahcgabs@botsnet.bw

CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Brazil (Federative Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
SES – Avenida das Nacoes
Quadra 801
Lote 6
CEP.: 70 406-900
Brasilia – DF
Brazil
Tel: 00 55 6133 12 9500
Fax: 00 55 6133 22 8491
E-mail: saemb@solar.com.br

Brunei Darussalam (Negara Brunei Darussalam)

Representation accredited from
Kuala Lumpur, Malaysia

Bulgaria (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
26 Bacho Kiro Street
2nd Floor
Sofia 1000
Bulgaria
Tel: 00 359 2 981 6682
Fax: 00 359 2 981 5776
E-mail: saembsof@techno-link.com

Burkina Faso (People's Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
Villa 1110
Hotel Sofitel
Burkina Faso
Tel: 00 226 5037 6099
Fax: 00 226 5037 6097
E-mail:
tocknellg@foreign.gov.za
ouagadougou@foreign.gov.za

Burundi

[South African Liaison Office]
BP 185 Bujumbura
Burundi
Tel: 00 257 22244 650
Fax: 00 257 22248 219
E-mail: saebujfin@usan-bu.net

Cambodia (Kingdom of)

Representation accredited from
Bangkok, Thailand

Cameroon (Republic of)

[South African High Commission]
Boite Postal 1636
Yaounde
Cameroon
Tel: 00 237 220 0438
Fax: 00 237 220 0995
E-mail: yaounde@foreign.gov.za

Canada

[South African High Commission]
15 Sussex Drive
Ontario KIM 1M8
Ottawa
Canada
Tel: 00 1 613 744 0330
Fax: 00 1 613 741 1639
E-mail:
rsafrica@southafrica-canada.ca

Cape Verde (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Dakar, Senegal

Central African Republic

Representation accredited from
Yaoundé, Cameroon

Chad

[South African Embassy]
Hotel Sahel
BP 1500
N'Djaména
Chad
Tel: 00 235 522 209
Fax: 086 517 8850
E-mail: ndjamena@foreign.gov.za

Chile (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
Torre San Ramon Piso 16
Avenida 11 de Septiembre
2353
Santiago, Providencia
Chile
Tel: 00 56 2 231 2860/3
Fax: 00 56 2 231 3185/5491
E-mail: info@embajada-sudafrica.cl

China (People's Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
5 Dongzhimenwai Dajie
Beijing 100600
People's Republic of China
Tel: 00 86 10 6532 0171
Fax: 00 86 10 6532 7319
E-mail:
corporateservices@saembassy.org.cn

Colombia (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Caracas, Venezuela

Comores (The Union of)

[South African High Commission]
Room 112 Itsandra Royal Hotel
Moroni
Comores
Tel: 00 269 321 947

Congo (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
82 Avenue Marechal Lyautey
Brazzaville
Republic of Congo
Tel: 00 242 530 1388
E-mail: brazzaville@foreign.gov.za

Cook Islands

Representation accredited from
Canberra, Australia

Costa Rica (Republic of)

[South African Consulate-General]
PO Box 2816-1000
San Jose
Costa Rica
Tel: 00 506 222 1470
Fax: 00 506 223 8223
E-mail: gicaltd@racsa.co.cr

CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Côte d'Ivoire (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
Ambassade D'Afrique du Sud
08 BP 1806
Abidjan 08
Cote d'Ivoire
Tel: 00 225 2244 5963
Fax: 00 225 2244 7450
E-mail: ambafsudpol@aviso.ci

Croatia (Republic of)

[South African Honorary Consulate]
Agrokor d.d, Trg D. Petrovica 3.
10 000 Zagreb
Croatia
Tel: 00 1 385 1 4894 111
Fax: 00 1 385 1 4844 363
E-mail: branko.miksa@agrokor.hr

Cuba (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
Ave 5ta, No 4201, esq 42
Miramar Playa
Ciudad de La Habana
Havana
Cuba
Tel: 00 53 7 204 9671/6
Fax: 00 53 7 204 1101
E-mail: rsacuba@cenial.inf.cu

Cyprus (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Athens, Greece

Czech Republic

[South African Embassy]
PO Box 133
100 00 Prague 10
Czech Republic
Tel: 00 42 26731 1114/2527
Fax: 00 42 26731 1395
E-mail: saprague@terminal.cz

Democratic Republic of the Congo (DRC)

[South African Embassy]
Boite Postale 7829
Kinshasa
DRC
Tel: 00 243 88 81 492 8855/8866
Fax: 00 243 88 81 555 4321
E-mail: ambasud@stelecom.cd

Denmark (Kingdom of)

[South African Embassy]
PO Box 128
DK-2900 Hellerup
Denmark
Tel: 00 45 3918 0155
Fax: 00 45 3918 4006
E-mail: sa.embassy@southafrica.dk

Djibouti (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Addis Ababa, Ethiopia

Dominica (Commonwealth of)

Representation accredited from
Kingston, Jamaica

Dominican Republic

Representation accredited from
Havana, Cuba

East Timor (Republic of Timor Leste)

Representation accredited from
Jakarta, Indonesia

Ecuador (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Lima, Peru

Egypt (Arab Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
55 Road 18
Maadi
Cairo
Arab Republic of Egypt
Tel: 000 202 2359 4365/4940
Fax: 00 202 2359 5015
E-mail: saembcai@tedata.net.eg

El Salvador (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Mexico City, Mexico

Equatorial Guinea (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
PO Box 5
Malabo
Equatorial Guinea
Tel: 00 240 207737
Fax: 00 240 092746
E-mail: saemmalabo@yahoo.co.uk

Eritrea (State of)

[South African Embassy]
Intercontinental Hotel
Room 101
Asmara
State of Eritrea
Tel: 00 291 1 150 400 Ext 2282
Fax: 00 291 1151 940
E-mail: saemb@eol.com.er

Estonia (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Helsinki, Finland

Ethiopia (Federal Democratic Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
PO Box 1091
Addis Ababa
Ethiopia
Tel: 00 25 111 371 3034
Fax: 00 25 111 371 1330
E-mail: sa.embassy.addis@telecom.net.et

European Union

[South African Mission]
26 Rue de la Loi B7/8
Brussels 1040
Belgium
Tel: 00 32 2285 4400
Fax: 00 32 2285 4402
E-mail: embassy@southafrica.be

CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Fiji (Republic of the Fiji Islands)

[South African High Commission]
Temporary Office:
Holiday Inn – Suva
Victoria Parade
Suva
Fiji
Tel: 00 679 330 1600
Fax: 00 679 331 9620
E-mail: freestate@connect.com.fi

Finland (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
Rahapajankatu 1A 5
00160 Helsinki
Finland
Tel: 00 358 9 6860 3100
Fax: 00 358 9 6860 3160
E-mail: saeinfo@welho.com

France (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
50 Quai d'Orsay
75343 Paris Cedex 07
France
Tel: 00 33 15359 2323
Fax: 00 33 15359 2368
E-mail: info@afriquesud.net

Gabon (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
BP 4063
Libreville
Gabon
Tel: 00 241 77 4530/1
Fax: 00 241 77 4536
E-mail: saegabon@internetgabon.com

The Gambia

Representation accredited from
Dakar, Senegal

Georgia (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Kyiv, Ukraine

Germany (Federal Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
Tiergartenstrasse 18
10785 Berlin
Germany
Tel: 00 49 30 220 730
Fax: 00 49 30 220 73190
E-mail: berlin.info@foreign.gov.za

Ghana (Republic of)

[South African High Commission]
PO Box 298
Trade Fair, Accra
Ghana
Tel: 00 233 2176 2380/4480/3880
Fax: 00 233 2176 2381
E-mail: sahcgh@africaonline.com.gh

Greece (Hellenic Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
PO Box 61152
GR 151-10
Athens
Greece
Tel: 00 30 210 610 6645
Fax: 00 30 210 610 6640
E-mail: embassy@southafrica.gr

Grenada

Representation accredited from
Kingston, Jamaica

Guatemala (Republic of)

10 A Avenida 30-57, Zona 5
Ciudad de Guatemala
Guatemala
Tel: 00 502 2332 6953/2385 0482
Fax: 00 502 2331 5734
E-mail: fmonterroso@ufm.edu.gt

Guinea (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
Coleah
Mossoudougou
Conakry
Guinea
Tel: 00 224 30 49 0875/6/7
Fax: 00 224 30 49 0879
E-mail: conakrys@foreign.gov.za

Guinea-Bissau (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Dakar, Senegal

Guyana (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Kingston, Jamaica

Haiti (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Kingston, Jamaica

Hellenic Republic

Information under Greece

Holy See (The Vatican)

Representation accredited from
Berne, Switzerland

Honduras (Republic of)

[South African Honorary Consulate]
2 Ave. 12 Calle
Barrio Las Acacias, Casa 104
San Pedro Sula
Honduras
Tel: 00 504 552 4702/8975
Fax: 00 504 553 2553
E-mail: bmemb@globalnet.hn

Hong Kong

[South African Consulate-General]
2706-10 Great Eagle Centre
23 Harbour Road
Wanchai
Hong Kong
Tel: 00 852 2577 3279
Fax: 00 852 2890 1975
E-mail: sacghgk@netvigator.com

CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Hungary (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
H-1026 Budapest
Gardonyi Geza ut 17
Hungary
Tel: 00 36 1392 0999
Fax: 00 36 1200 7277
E-mail: saemb@sa-embassy.hu

Iceland (Republic of)

[South African Honorary Consulate-General]
PO Box 462
121 Reykjavik
Iceland
Tel: 00 354 591 0355
Fax: 00 354 591 0358
E-mail: jr@fif.is

India (Republic of)

[South African High Commission]
B18 Vasant Marg
Vasant Vihar
New Delhi 110 057
India
Tel: 00 9111 2 614 9411-19
Fax: 00 9111 2 614 3605
E-mail: dhc@sahc-india.com

Indonesia (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
PO Box 1329
Jakarta
Indonesia
Tel: 00 62 21 574 0660
Fax: 00 62 21 574 0661
E-mail: saembassy@centrin.net.id

International Monetary Fund and World Bank – Washington DC

[South African Permanent Mission]
Suite 380 3201
New Mexico Avenue NW
Washington DC 20016
United States of America
Tel: 00 1 202 364 8320
Fax: 00 1 202 354 6008

Iran (Islamic Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
PO Box 11365-7476
Tehran
Iran
Tel: 00 98 21270 2866-9
Fax: 00 98 21271 9516
E-mail: saemb@neda.net

Ireland

[South African Embassy]
2nd Floor, Alexandra House Earlsfort
Centre, Earlsfort Terrace
Dublin 2
Ireland
Tel: 00 353 1661 5553
Fax: 00 353 1661 5590
E-mail: information@saedublin.com

Israel (State of)

[South African Embassy]
PO Box 7138
Tel Aviv 61071
Israel
Tel: 00 972 3525 2566
Fax: 00 972 3525 3230
E-mail: amb@saemb.org.il

Italy (Italian Republic)

[South African Embassy]
Via Tanaro 14
Rome 0019
Italy
Tel: 00 39 0685 2541
Fax: 00 39 0685 254300/4301
E-mail: sae@flashnet.it

Jamaica

[South African High Commission]
15 Hillcrest Avenue
Kingston 6
Jamaica, WI
Tel: 00 876 978 3160/4457
Fax: 00 876 978 0339
E-mail: sahc@cwjamaica.com

Japan

[South African Embassy]
3rd & 4th Floor Oriken Hirakawa-
cho Building
Hirakawa-cho 2-chome 1-1
Chiyoda-ku
Tokyo 102-0093
Japan
Tel: 00 81 03 3265 3366-9
Fax: 00 81 03 3265 1108
E-mail: visa@rsatk.com

Jordan (Hashemite Kingdom of)

[South African Embassy]
Website: www.saembjor.com
PO Box 851508
Sweifieh 11185
Jordan
Tel: 00 962 6 592 1194
Fax: 00 962 6 592 0080
E-mail: saembjor@index.com.jo

Kazakhstan (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
48 A Ivanilov Street
Gorny Gigant Suburb
Almaty 050059
Kazakhstan
Tel: 00 7 3272 598 260/61
Fax: 00 7 3272 598 259
E-mail: almaty@foreign.gov.za

Kenya (Republic of)

[South African High Commission]
PO Box 42441
Nairobi
Kenya
Tel: 00 254 20 282 7100
Fax: 00 254 20 282 7236
E-mail: sahc@africaonline.co.ke

Kiribati (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Canberra, Australia

Korea (Democratic People's Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Beijing, China

CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Korea (Republic of South)

[South African Embassy]
Website: www.southafrica-embassy.or.kr
1-37 Hannam-dong
Yongsan-gu
Seoul 140-885
Korea
Tel: 00 82 2792 4855
Fax: 00 82 2792 4856
E-mail: general@southafrica-embassy.or.kr

Kuwait (The State of)

[South African Embassy]
Website: www.southafricaq8.com
PO Box 2262
40173 Mishref
Kuwait
Tel: 00 965 561 7988
Fax: 00 965 561 7917
E-mail: saemb@southafricaq8.com

Kyrgyz Republic

Representation accredited from
Ankara, Turkey

Lao People's Democratic Republic

Representation accredited from
Bangkok, Thailand

Latvia (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Helsinki, Finland

Lebanon (Republic of)

[South African Honorary Consulate]
Representation accredited from
Damascus, Syria
Bizri Building 3rd Floor
Takieddine Solh Ave
Kraytem
Beirut
Lebanon
Tel: + 096 11 804100
Fax: + 096 11 804200
E-mail: sahonconsulate@leebea.com

Lesotho (Kingdom of)

[South African High Commission]
Private Bag A266
Maseru 0100
Kingdom of Lesotho
Tel: 00 266 2231 5758
Fax: 00 266 2231 0128
E-mail: sahcmas@leo.co.ls

Liberia (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Abidjan, Ivory Coast

Libya (Great Socialist People's Libyan Arab Jamahiriya)

[South African Embassy]
PO Box 1230
Tripoli
Libya
Tel: 00 218 21333 7006
Fax: 00 218 21 334 0432
E-mail: satripoli@hotmail.com

Liechtenstein (Principality of)

Representation accredited from
Bern, Switzerland

Lithuania (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Copenhagen, Denmark

Luxembourg (Grand Duchy of)

Representation accredited from
Brussels, Belgium

Madagascar (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
BP 12101-05
Zoom
101 Antananarivo
Madagascar
Tel: 00 261 20 224 3350
Fax: 00 261 20 224 3386
E-mail: antananarivo@foreign.gov.za

Malawi (Republic of)

[South African High Commission]
PO Box 30043
Lilongwe 3
Malawi
Tel: 00 265 1773 722/597/036
Fax: 00 265 1772 571
E-mail: sahc@malawi.net

Malaysia (Federation of)

[South African High Commission]
Suite 22,01 Level 22
No 3 Jalan Kia Peng
50450 Kuala Lumpur
Malaysia
Tel: 00 603 2170 2412
Fax: 00 603 2164 3742
E-mail: sahcadm@streamyx.com

Maldives (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
New Delhi, India

Mali (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
Website: www.saemali.info
Boite Postal 2015
Bamako
Mali
Tel: 00 223 229 2925/27
Fax: 00 223 229 2926
E-mail: bamako@foreign.gov.za

Malta

Representation accredited from
Rome, Italy

Marshall Islands (Republic of the)

Representation accredited from
Canberra, Australia

Mauritania (Islamic Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Dakar, Senegal

CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Mauritius (Republic of)

[South African High Commission]
PO Box 908
Port Louis
Mauritius
Tel: 00 230 212 6925/6/8/9/30
Fax: 00 230 212 6936/1171
E-mail: sahc@intnet.mu

Mexico (United Mexican States)

[South African Embassy]
Embajada de Sudafrica
Apartado Postal 105-219
Colonia Polanco
C.P 11560
Mexico DF
Tel: 00 525 55282 9260-65
Fax: 00 525 55282 9259/9186
E-mail:
admin@embajadasudafrica.com.mx

Micronesia (Federated States of)

Representation accredited from
Canberra, Australia

Moldova (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Kyiv, Ukraine

Monaco (Principality of)

Representation accredited from
Beijing, PRC

Mongolia

Representation accredited from
Beijing, PRC

Morocco (Kingdom of)

[South African Embassy]
34 Rue des Saadiens
Rabat
Morocco
Tel: 00 212 37 706760
Tel: 00 212 37 724550
E-mail: sudaf@menara.ma

Mozambique (Republic of)

[South African High Commission]
Caixa Postal 1120
Maputo
Mozambique
Tel: 00 258 2149 1614/0059
Fax: 00 258 2149 3029
E-mail: sahc_admin@tropical.co.mz

Myanmar (The Union of)

Representation accredited from
Bangkok, Thailand

Namibia (Republic of)

[South African High Commission]
PO Box 23100
Windhoek
Namibia
Tel: 00 264 61205 7111
Fax: 00 264 6122 4140
E-mail: sahcwin@iafrica.com.na

Nauru (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Canberra, Australia

Nepal (Kingdom of)

Representation accredited from
New Delhi, India

Netherlands (Kingdom of the)

[South African Embassy]
Website: www.southafrica.nl
Wassenaarseweg 40
2596 CJ, The Hague
The Netherlands
Tel: 00 31 70 392 4501
Fax: 00 31 70 346 0669
E-mail: info@zuidafrika.nl

New Zealand

[South African Honorary Consulate]
Wellington
New Zealand
Tel: 00 64 4 2348006
Fax: 00 64 4 2348075
Cell: 00 64 21 465254
E-mail: gfortuin@paradise.net.nz

Nicaragua

Representation accredited from
Mexico City, Mexico

Niger (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Abidjan, Ivory Coast

Nigeria (Federal Republic of)

[South African High Commission]
10B Club Road
Ikoyi
Lagos
Nigeria
Tel: 00 234 1 461 2067/4041
Fax: 00 234 1 461 2064/2053
E-mail: sahc_abuja@yahoo.com

Niue

Representation accredited from
Canberra, Australia

Norfolk Island

Representation accredited from
Canberra, Australia

Norway (Kingdom of)

[South African Embassy]
Website: www.saemboslo.no
PO Box 2822 Solli
0204 Oslo
Norway
Tel: 00 47 2327 3220
Fax: 00 47 2244 3975
E-mail: info@saemboslo.no

Oman (Sultanate of)

[South African Embassy]
PO Box 231 PC 118
Al Harthy Complex
Muscat
Oman
Tel: 00 968 694 791
Fax: 00 968 694 792
E-mail: ambsaao@omantel.net.om



CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Pakistan (Islamic Republic of)

[South African High Commission]
48 Khayabane-e-Iqbal
Sector F-8/2, Islamabad
Pakistan
Tel: 00 9251 226 2354/5/6
Fax: 00 9251 225 0114
E-mail: xhosa@isb.comsats.net.pk

Palestine (State of)

[South African Representative Office]
PO Box 567
Ramallah
West Bank – State of Palestine
Tel: 00 972 2298/7355/7929
Fax: 00 972 2298 7356
E-mail: info@sarep.org

Palestine (State of)

[South African Representative Office]
PO Box 1258
Gaza City
Gaza
Tel: 00 972 8284 1313/23
Fax: 00 972 8284 1333
E-mail: info@sarep.org

Palau (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Canberra, Australia

Panama (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Lima, Peru

Papua New Guinea

Representation accredited from
Singapore

Paraguay (Republic of)

[South African Honorary Consulate]
Asuncion Fulgencio R Moreno 509
Piso 8, Asuncion
Paraguay

Peru (Republic of)

[South African Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 27-013
L27, Lima
Peru
Tel: 00 511 422 2280
Fax: 00 511 442 7154

Philippines (Republic of the)

[South African Embassy]
29th Floor Yuchengco Tower
RCBC Plaza
#6819 Ayala Avenue
Makati City,
Metro Manila
Philippines
Tel: 00 63 2 889 9383
Fax: 00 63 2 889 9337
E-mail: manila@foreign.gov.za

Poland (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
IPC Business Centre
6th Floor
ul. Koszykowa 54
Warsaw 00-675
Poland
Tel: 00 48 22 625 6228/6233
Fax: 00 48 22 625 6270/6284
E-mail: saembassy@supermedia.pl

Portugal (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
Avenida Luis Bvar 10
1069-024 Lisbon
Portugal
Tel: 00 351 21 319 2200
Fax: 00 351 21 353 5713
E-mail:
embsa@embaixada-africadosul.pt

Qatar (State of)

[South African Embassy]
PO Box 24744
Doha
State of Qatar
Tel: 00 974 485 7111
Fax: 00 974 483 5961
E-mail: saembdoha@qatar.net.qa

Romania

[South African Embassy]
26-28 Stirbei Voda
Union International Business Centre
2nd Floor
Bucharest
Romania
Tel: 00 40 21 313 37 25/35/85
Fax: 00 40 21 313 37 95
E-mail: bucharest@foreign.gov.za

Russian Federation

[South African Embassy]
Granatny Pereulok 1
Building 9
103102 Moscow
Russian Federation
Tel: 00 7 095 540 1177
Fax: 00 7 095 540 1178
E-mail: tradesa@econsa.ru
moscow.sanf@foreign.gov.za

Rwanda (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
PO Box 6563
Kacyiru-Sud
Kigali
Rwanda
Tel: 00 250 583 185/6/7/8
Fax: 00 250 511 758
E-mail: kigali.admin@foreign.gov.za

Saint Kitts and Nevis

Representation accredited from
Kingston, Jamaica

Saint Lucia

Representation accredited from
Kingston, Jamaica

Saint Vincent and the Grenadines

Representation accredited from
Kingston, Jamaica

Samoa (The Independent State of)

Representation accredited from
Canberra, Australia

CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

San Marino (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Rome, Italy

São Tomé and Príncipe (Democratic Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
Avenida da Independencia
No 7 Representacao da Republica
da Africa de Sul
São Tomé
São Tomé and Príncipe
Tel: 00 239 227 568

Saudi Arabia (Kingdom of)

[South African Embassy]
PO Box 94006
Riyadh 11693
Saudi Arabia
Tel: 00 966 1422 9716/19/20
Fax: 00 966 1422 9712
E-mail:
embassy@southafrica.com.sa

Senegal (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
PO Box 21010
Dakar-Ponty
Dakar
Senegal
Tel: 00 221 33 865 1959
Fax: 00 221 33 864 2359
E-mail: ambafsud@sentoo.sn

Serbia and Montenegro

Representation accredited from
Athens, Greece

Seychelles (Republic of)

Representation accredited from Port
Louis, Mauritius

Sierra Leone (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Abidjan, Ivory Coast

Singapore (Republic of)

[South African High Commission]
15th Floor Odeon Towers
331 North Bridge Road
Singapore
Tel: 00 65 6339 3319
Fax: 00 65 6337 6658
E-mail: hom@southafricahc.org.sg

Slovak Republic

[South African Honorary Consulate]
Revova 27
811 02 Bratislava
Slovak Republic
Tel: 00 421 2 544 17 841
Fax: 00 421 2 544 17 853
mlopasov@jacsk.jnj.com

Slovenia (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Vienna, Austria

Solomon Islands

Representation accredited from
Canberra, Australia

Somalia (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Addis Ababa, Ethiopia

Spain (Kingdom of)

[South African Embassy]
Edificio Lista
Calle de Claudio Coello 91-6
Cor of J Ortega Y Gasset
Madrid 28006
Spain
Tel: 00 34 91 436 3780
Fax: 00 34 91 577 7414
E-mail: embassy@sudafrica.com

Sri Lanka (Democratic Socialist Republic of)

[South African High Commission]
(Temporary offices)
Level 26, East Tower
World Trade Centre
Echelon Square
Colombo 01
Sri Lanka
Tel: 00 4 11 5635 966
Fax: 00 4 11 5505 899
E-mail: safrica@bellmail.lk

Sudan (Republic of the)

[South African Embassy]
PO Box 12137
Khartoum
The Sudan
Tel: 00 249 183 585 301/2/3/4
Fax: 00 249 183 585 082
E-mail: khartoum@foreign.gov.za

Swaziland (Kingdom of)

[South African High Commission]
PO Box 2507
Mbabane H100
Swaziland
Tel: 00 268 404 4651-4
Fax: 00 268 404 4335
E-mail: sahc@iafricaonline.co.sz

Sweden (Kingdom of)

[South African Embassy]
Fleminggaten 20
Stockholm
Sweden
Tel: 00 46 8 824 3950
Fax: 00 46 8 660 7136
E-mail: saemb.swe@telia.com

Switzerland (Swiss Confederation)

[South African Embassy]
29 Alpenstrasse
3006 Berne 6
Switzerland
Tel: 00 41 31 350 1313
Fax: 00 41 31 350 1310/1311
E-mail: ambassador@southafrica.ch

CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

Syrian Arab Republic

[South African Embassy]
PO Box 9141
Damascus
Syria
Tel: 00 963 11 61351520
Fax: 00 963 11 611 1714
E-mail: saembdam@scs-net.org

Taiwan

[Liaison Office of South Africa]
PO Box 118-140
Taipei
Taiwan
Tel: 00 886 2 2715 3251/4
Fax: 00 886 2 2712 5109
E-mail:
tourism.taipei@foreign.gov.za
or trade.taipei@foreign.gov.za

Tajikistan (United Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Ankara, Turkey

Tanzania (United Republic of)

[South African High Commission]
PO Box 10723 Msaki
Dar-es-Salaam
Tanzania
Tel: 00 2 5522 260 1800
Fax: 00 2 5522 260 0684
E-mail: consular@sahc-tz.com

Thailand (Kingdom of)

[South African Embassy]
Floor 12 A, M-Thai Tower,
All Seasons Place,
No 87 Wireless Road,
Prathumwan, Lumpini,
Bangkok, 10330
Thailand
Tel: 00 66 02 250 9012-14
Fax: 00 66 02 250 1064
E-mail: saembkk@loxinfo.co.th

Togo (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Abidjan, Ivory Coast

Tokelau

Representation accredited from
Canberra, Australia

Tonga (Kingdom of)

Representation accredited from
Canberra, Australia

Trinidad and Tobago (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
2nd Floor, Victoria Park Suites
14-17 Victoria Square
Park Street
Port of Spain
Tel: 00 1 868 6233291
Fax: 00 1 868 6233067
E-mail: trinidad@foreign.gov.za

Tunisia (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
7 Rue Achart
Nord-Hilton
Tunis
Tunisia
Tel: 00 216 7179 8449
Fax: 00 216 7180 1918/1170
E-mail: sa@emb-safrica.intl.tn

Turkey (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
PO Box 30
Kucukesat
06662 Ankara
Turkey
Tel: 00 90 312 446 4056
Fax: 00 90 313 446 6434
E-mail: saemb@ada.net.tr

Uganda (Republic of)

[South African High Commission]
PO Box 22667
Kampala
Uganda
Tel: 00 256 41 434 3543/4/6
Fax: 00 256 41 434 8216
E-mail:
Kampala.sahc@foreign.gov.za

Ukraine

[South African Embassy]
P O Box 7
Central Post Office
11 Kreshchtyk Street
01001 Kyiv
Ukraine
Tel: 00 38044 287 7172/4451
Fax: 00 38 044 289 7206
E-mail: saemb@utel.net.ua

United Arab Emirates

[South African Embassy]
PO Box 29446
Abu Dhabi
United Arab Emirates
Tel: 00 9712 447 3446
Fax: 00 9712 447 3031
E-mail: saemb@emirates.net.ae

United Kingdom of Great Britain and Northern Ireland

[South African High Commission]
South Africa House
9 Duncannon Street
Trafalgar Square
London WC2N 5DP
United Kingdom
Tel: 00 44 207 451 7299
Fax: 00 44 207 451 7284
E-mail:
london.general@southafricahouse.com

United Nations – New York

[South African Permanent Mission]
333 East 38th Street
9th Floor, New York
NY 10016
United States of America
Tel: 00 1212 213 5583
Fax: 00 1212 692 2498
E-mail: soafun@worldnet.att.net



CONTACT INFORMATION AS AT DECEMBER 2007

United Nations – Geneva

[South African Permanent Mission]
65 Rue du Rhone
Geneva 1204
Switzerland
Tel: 00 41 22 849 5454
Fax: 00 41 22 849 5432
E-mail:
mission@south-africa@ties.itu.int

United States of America

[South African Embassy]
3051 Massachusetts Avenue NW
Washington DC 20008
United States of America
Tel: 00 1 202 232 4400
Fax: 00 1 202 265 1607
E-mail: info@saembassy.org

Uruguay (Oriental Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
PO Box 498
Montevideo 11000
Uruguay
Tel: 00 598 2623 0161
Fax: 00 598 2623 0066
E-mail: safem@netgate.com.uy

Uzbekistan (Republic of)

[South African Embassy]
30-A Asaka Street
Taskent
Uzbekistan
Tel: 00 99 871 137 0170/71
Fax: 00 99 871 137 2546
E-mail: mtimcke@bbc.com.uz

Vanuatu (Republic of)

Representation accredited from
Canberra, Australia

Venezuela (Bolivarian Republic of) [South African Embassy]

PO Box 2613
Carmelitas
1010
Caracas
Venezuela
Tel: 00 58 212 952 0026
Fax: 00 58 212 951 3613
E-mail:
embajador.caracas@foreign.gov.za

Vietnam

[South African Embassy]
PO Box 102
Hanoi
Vietnam
Tel: 00 84 4 936 2000
Fax: 00 84 4 936 1991
E-mail: hanoi@foreign.gov.za

Yemen (Republic of)

[South African Honorary Consulate]
PO Box 353
Sana'a
Republic of Yemen
Tel: 00 67 1 22 3493
Fax: 00 67 1 221611
E-mail: zubieri@ynet.ye

Zambia (Republic of)

[South African High Commission]
Private Bag W369
Lusaka
Zambia
Tel: 00 260 126 0999
Fax: 00 260 126 3001
E-mail: sahc@zamnet.zm

Zimbabwe (Republic of)

[South African High Commission]
PO Box A1654
Avondale
Harare
Tel: 00 263 4 75 3147/8/9
Fax: 00 263 475 7908
E-mail: admin@saembassy.co.zw



LEGISLATION AS AT 29 JANUARY 2008

Criminal Law (Sentencing) Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 38 of 2007)
Electronic Communications Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 37 of 2007)
Revenue Laws Second Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 36 of 2007)
Revenue Laws Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 35 of 2007)
South African Express Act, 2007 (Act 34 of 2007)
Broadband Infraco Act, 2007 (Act 33 of 2007)
Criminal Law (Sexual Offences And Related Matters) Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 32 of 2007)
Education Laws Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 31 of 2007)
Public Service Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 30 of 2007)
Health Professions Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 29 of 2007)
Electricity Regulation Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 28 of 2007)
Adjustments Appropriation Act, 2007 (Act 27 of 2007)
Securities Transfer Tax Administration Act, 2007 (Act 26 of 2007)
Securities Transfer Tax Act, 2007 (Act 25 of 2007)
Cross-Boundary Municipalities Laws Repeal and Related Matters Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 24 of 2007)
Constitution Thirteenth Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 23 of 2007)
Traditional Health Practitioners Act, 2007 (Act 22 of 2007)
Banks Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 20 of 2007)
Government Immovable Asset Management Act, 2007 (Act 19 of 2007)
National Sport and Recreation Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 18 of 2007)
Housing Consumers Protection Measures Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 17 of 2007)
Special Adjustments Appropriation Act (2007/08 financial year) Act, 2007 (Act 16 of 2007)
Repeal of the Black Administration Act and Amendment of Certain Laws Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 13 of 2007)
Municipal Fiscal Powers and Functions Act, 2007 (Act 12 of 2007)
Pension Funds Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 11 of 2007)
South African Red Cross Society and Legal Protection of Certain Emblems Act, 2007 (Act 10 of 2007)
Taxation Laws Second Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 9 of 2007)
Taxation Laws Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 8 of 2007)
Appropriation Act, 2007 (Act 7 of 2007)
Transnet Pension Fund Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 6 of 2007)
South African Airways Act, 2007 (Act 5 of 2007)
Convention on International Interests in Mobile Equipment Act, 2007 (Act 4 of 2007)
Immigration Amendment Act, 2007 (Act 3 of 2007)
Finance Act, 2007 (Act 2 of 2007)
Division of Revenue Act, 2007 (Act 1 of 2007)

The index is arranged word-by-word. Abbreviations and acronyms are used in the index. For the full forms of abbreviations and acronyms, consult the Addendum. All Acts are listed alphabetically under Acts.

2010 Action Agenda 563
 2010 FIFA World Cup TM 10, 12, 14, 17, 19, 21, 23, 25, 113, 138, 222, 240, 331-332, 437, 508, 512-513, 527-531
 4x4 regulations 211

A

AAPS 59
 Aardklop, Potchefstroom 92
 abalone-farming 210
 ABC 67, 123
 Abet 183
 Absa Museum and Archives, Johannesburg 103
 Abuja Declaration 338
 Abuja Treaty 147
 ACAP 216
 Access Strategy 314
 access to arts 89-90
 Acsa 138
 ACT 86
 Acts
 Abet, 2000 178, 183
 Adjustments Appropriation, 2006 223
 Adjustments Appropriation Bill 223
 Africa Growth and Opportunity, 2000 149
 Agricultural Pests, 1983 61
 Air Quality, 2004 214
 Appropriation, 2006 223
 Appropriation Bill 223
 Attorneys Amendment, 1993 373
 BBBEE, 2003 161, 234
 Biodiversity, 2004 202
 Broadcasting, 1999 119
 CGE, 1996 381
 Child Care, 1983 185
 Children, 2005 488
 Choice on Termination of Pregnancy, 1996 341
 Civil Unions, 2006 376
 Collective Investment Schemes Control 240
 Communal Land Rights, 2004 75
 Companies, 1973 3, 129, 303
 Companies Bill, 2006/07 160
 Compensation for Occupational Injuries and Diseases, 1993 166
 Competition, 1998 158
 Conservation of Agricultural Resources, 1983 51, 213
 Constitution of the Republic of South Africa, 1996 428
 Construction Industry Development, 2000 163
 Consumer Protection Bill, 2007/08 160
 Correctional Services, 1998 387
 Criminal Law (Sexual Offences and Related Matters) Amendment, 2006 372
 Cultural Institutions, 1998 101, 102
 DBSA, 1997 239
 Deeds Registries, 1937 76
 Defence, 2002 439
 Disaster Management, 2002 63, 309
 Division of Revenue, 2007 223, 305
 Domestic Violence, 1998 428
 Education Amendment, 2005 179
 Education Laws Amendment, 2002 180
 Electronic Communications, 2005 113, 133
 Employment Equity, 1998 167
 Employment of Educators, 1998 178
 Environment Conservation, 1989 207
 FAIS, 2002 241, 242
 FET, 1998 178
 FET Colleges, 2006 178
 FICA, 2001 228
 Film and Publications, 1996 100, 101
 Finance, 2007 223
 Gas, 2001 413
 GET and FET Quality Assurance, 2001 174
 GMO, 1997 50
 Hazardous Substances, 1973 410
 HE, 1997 176, 178
 Home Loan and Mortgage Disclosure, 2000 351-352
 Housing Consumer Protection Measures, 1998 352
 Icasa Amendment, 2006 114, 119
 IEC, 1996 308
 IGP Framework, 2005 308
 IGR Framework, 2005 305
 Immigration, 2002 321, 323, 531
 Immigration Amendment, 2004 321

- Income Tax, 1962 231
Income Tax, 1994 164
Independent Broadcasting Authority, 1993 129
Inspection of Financial Institutions, 1998 238
Insurance Amendment, 2003 159
Intergovernmental Relations Framework, 2005 508
International Health Regulations, 1974 346
Labour Relations, 1995 166, 393
Land and Agricultural Development Bank, 2002 66, 240
Legal Deposit, 1997 100, 106, 190
Liquor Products, 1989 73
Local Government: Municipal Demarcation, 1998 302
Local Government: Municipal Finance Management, 2003 305
Local Government: Municipal Property Rates, 2004 305
Local Government: Municipal Structures, 1998 303
Local Government: Municipal Systems, 2000 304, 305
Lotteries, 1997 235
Magistrates', 1993 364
Manpower Training, 1981 164
Marine Living Resources, 1998 215
Marketing of Agricultural Products, 1996 61, 62
MDDA, 2002 133
Meat Safety, 2000 74
Mediation in Certain Divorce Matters, 1987 379
Medical Schemes, 1998 310, 336
Medical Schemes Amendment, 2001 336
Mental Healthcare, 2002 330
MFMA, 2003 225
Military Veterans, 1999 444
Mine Health and Safety, 1996 166, 345, 401
MPRDA, 2002 398
National Archives and Records Service of South Africa, 1996 104
National Credit, 2005 237
National Education Policy, 1996 172, 176, 178
National Environment Management: Air Quality, 2004 213, 214
National Environment Management: Waste Bill, 2007 213
National Environmental Management: Biodiversity, 2004 194, 200
National Environmental Management: Protected Areas, 2003 194, 204
National Environmental Management: Protected Areas Amendment, 2004 194, 205
National Forests, 1998 600
National Gambling, 2004 233
National Gambling Amendment, 2006 234
National Health, 2003 330, 341
National Heritage Resources, 1999 83
National House of Traditional Leaders, 1997 298
National Strategic Intelligence, 1994 451
National Water, 1998 214, 591
NCACC, 2002 439
NCLIS, 2001 105, 189
NHC, 1999 83
NLSA, 1998 105, 190
NNR, 1999 410
NPA, 1998 369, 370
Nuclear Energy, 1999 410
Nursing, 2005 330
Occupational Diseases in Mines and Works, 1993 166
Occupational Health and Safety, 1993 345
Occupational Injuries and Diseases, 1993 345
Occupational Injuries and Diseases Amendment, 1997 166
OHS, 1993 166
Older Persons, 2006 488
Organised Local Government, 1997 302, 303
PanSALB, 1995 3
Pension Funds, 1956 242
Petroleum Products Amendment, 2003 411
PFMA, 1999 225, 231
Pharmacy Amendment, 2000 332
PIC, 2004 229
Precious Metals, 2005 398
Preferential Procurement Policy Framework, 2000 227
Prevention of Illegal Eviction and Unlawful Occupation of Land, 1998 352-353
Prevention of Organised Crime, 1998 228, 370
Promotion of Equality and Prevention of Unfair Discrimination, 2000 366
Protection of Constitutional Democracy and Related Activities, 2004 228, 439
Public Audit, 1997 235
Radio, 1926 120
Refugees, 1998 321

- Rental Housing, 1999 351
 Rental Housing Amendment, 2007 351
 Repeal of the Black Administration Act and
 Amendment of Certain Laws, 2006 376
 Revenue Laws Amendment, 2006 223
 Revenue Laws Second Amendment, 2006 223
 Right of Appearance in Courts, 1995 373
 SACE, 2000 176
 SAGNC, 1998 84
 SALRC, 1973 380
 SAPS, 1995 428
 Saqa, 1995 164
 SARB, 1989 235
 Sars, 1997 230
 Second Small Business Tax Amnesty and
 Amendment of Taxation Laws, 2006 223
 Sectional Titles, 1968 76
 Securities Services, 2004 248
 Sentech, 1996 122
 SIU and Special Tribunals, 1996 371
 Skills Development, 1998 164, 165
 Skills Development Levies, 1999 164
 Small Business Tax Amnesty and Amendment of
 Taxation Laws, 2006 223
 South African Citizenship, 1995 320
 South African Schools, 1996 172, 178
 Telecommunications, 1996 113
 Telecommunications Amendment, 2001 117
 Tobacco Products Control Amendment, 1999 342
 Traditional Leadership and Governance
 Framework, 2003 298
 Unemployment Insurance Amendment, 2003 165
 Unemployment Insurance Contributions, 2002
 165
 Water Services, 1997 591, 592
 Witness Protection, 1998 373
 World Heritage Convention, 1999 195, 206
 Adopt-a-Beach Programme 211
 advertising 133-134
 Africa
 and South Africa 314-315
 foreign relations with 254
 African
 economic development 146
 indigenous churches 4
 traditionalists 5-6
 African Botanic Gardens Network 200
 African Film Summit 100
 African Languages Literary Museum 98
 African Renaissance 30, 43
 Afrikaans churches 5
 Afrikaanse Taalmuseum, Paarl 102
 AFU 370
 Aggenys copper mine 15
 AGIS 51
 AGOA 149, 150
 Agri SA 67
 agribusiness 67-68
 agricultural
 marketing 61-62
 production 52-59
 Agricultural Fires Information System 51
 agriculture/agricultural sector
 see also Department of Agriculture
 Angora wool 11
 animal products 9, 16
 asparagus 17
 barley 53
 beef cattle 58
 bee-keeping 59
 cabbages 56
 canola 53
 cattle 11, 19, 24, 58
 cherries 17
 chicory 11
 citrus 22, 23, 55
 coffee 11, 24
 cotton 15, 21, 23, 24, 56
 credit and assistance 63-65
 dairy-farming 9, 11, 14, 21, 22, 57-58
 deciduous fruit 11, 54
 dried-fruit industry 14
 drought management 63
 dry beans 54
 Eastern Cape 11
 economy 50
 eggs 21
 farm income 52
 field crops 16, 53
 floriculture 57
 flowers 17, 21
 focused investment 65-66
 forestry plantations 11, 24
 Free State 16-17
 fruit 9, 15, 17, 21
 game-farming 12, 15, 59

- GMOs 50-51
- grapes 9, 15
- ground-nuts 21, 53
- horticulture 17, 53
- indigenous food crops 60
- irrigation 51
- karakul-pelt 15
- KwaZulu-Natal 13-14
- Limpopo 24-25
- livestock 57-58
- lucerne 53
- maize 11, 15, 19, 23, 24, 53
- meat 21
- mixed crops 19
- Mpumalanga 22-23
- Northern Cape 15
- North West 18-19
- nuts 23, 24
- olives 11
- onions 56
- ostrich-farming 9, 11
- peanuts 15, 23, 24
- pigs 58-59
- potatoes 17, 23, 55-56
- poultry 58-59
- prices 52
- production 52-59
- research 68-69, 482
- risk management 63
- sheep-farming 9, 11, 14, 23
- small stock 58
- sorghum 11, 17, 21, 53
- soya 17, 53
- stock-farming 14
- subtropical fruit 23, 55
- sugar 14, 22, 53
- sunflower seed 23, 53
- sunflowers 17, 19, 21, 23, 24
- sustainable resource management and use 51
- tea 11, 14, 24, 57
- tobacco 23, 56-57
- tomatoes 56
- training 68-69
- tropical fruit 22, 24
- vegetables 9, 14, 17, 21, 23, 24
- Western Cape 9
- wheat 15, 17, 23, 53
- wine 55
- agritourism 24, 65-66
- Agulhas 6
- Agulhas Current 7
- AHPCSA 328, 333
- Ai-Ais Hot Springs Game Park 15
- Ai-Ais-Richtersveld TFCA 15, 205
- AICs 4-5
- ZCC 5
- AIDS
 - see HIV and AIDS
- AIP 127
- Airlift Strategy 574
- air-passenger departure tax 233
- air pollution 214
- airlines 576-578
 - SAA 576-578
- airports 575-576
 - Eastern Cape 11
 - Gauteng 20
 - KwaZulu-Natal 12
 - Limpopo 23
 - Mpumalanga 22
 - Western Cape 8
- ALC 465
- alcohol abuse 343
- Alexander Bay 15
- Alexandria 11
- Alexkor 162
- Algeria 263
- Algoa Bay 11
- Aliwal North 11
- All Africa Editor's Conference 127
- All Africa Games 515
- allied health professions 333
- Alsi 245
- AltX 250
- Amatola mountain region 546
- Americas
 - trade with 149-150
- AML/CFT 228
- Amnesty Unit 227
- AMTS 461-462
- ANC 308
- Anglo-Boer/South African War, 1899-1902 34-35
- AngloGold 410
- Angola 257
- Angora wool production 11
- Anti-Corruption Co-ordinating Committee 317

- Anti-Corruption Strategy 317
 - AP 129
 - apartheid 37-41
 - Apartheid Museum, Johannesburg 103
 - APC 276
 - Apex Fund 145
 - Apollo Film Festival, Victoria West 100
 - APR 256
 - APRM 147, 256, 262, 263, 315
 - APSD 311
 - aguaculture 59, 210
 - aquaria 209
 - ARC 19, 20, 51, 63, 68, 69, 200, 471-473
 - ARC-GCI
 - ARC-IAE 471
 - ARC-IIC 472
 - ARC-Infruitec/Nietvoorbij 473
 - ARC-ISCW 471
 - ARC-ITSC 472
 - ARC-LBD: Animal production 473
 - ARC-OVI 473
 - ARC-PPR 472
 - ARC-SGI 472
 - ARC-VOPI 472
 - ArcelorMittal 481
 - architecture 96
 - archives and heraldry 104
 - repositories 104
 - armaments 447-451
 - Armcor 447-448
 - Defence, Science and Technology Institute 447
 - Defence Support Group 448
 - Denel 448-449
 - NCACC 450-451
 - Test and Evaluation Group 448
 - Armcor
 - art galleries 95
 - Durban Art gallery 95
 - Johannesburg Art Gallery 95
 - Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Art Museum, Port Elizabeth 95
 - South African National Gallery, Cape Town 95
 - Art in Correctional Facilities Programme 89-90
 - art museums 103
 - Arts and Culture *see* Department of Arts and Culture 447-448
 - arts
 - and culture initiatives 86-89
 - festivals 91-92
 - institutions 84-86
 - Arts Alive International Festival, Johannesburg 91
 - ArtsCape, Cape Town 84
 - ASA 134
 - Asean 150, 270
 - AsgiSA 44, 51, 90, 138-139, 145, 157, 177, 180, 222, 229, 278, 459, 524
 - Asia
 - foreign relations with 267-271
 - trade with 150-151
 - Assegai Awards 134
 - Associated Scientific and Technical Association of South Africa 120
 - ASP 72
 - astronomy 458-459
 - athletics 516
 - Atlantic Ocean 6, 8, 14
 - ATNS 576
 - ATPs 65-66
 - AU 254-257, 313
 - AUC 147
 - Auditor-General 235
 - Augrabies Falls National Park 15, 197
 - Australasia
 - foreign relations with 271
 - trade with 150
 - Australia
 - trade with 150
 - Awesome Africa Music Festival, Durban 92
- ## B
- BAC 437-438
 - Bakone Malapa Open Air Museum 24, 104
 - banking industry 236-237
 - Barberton 22
 - Barberton mountain land 21, 422-423
 - Basa 86
 - basic education
 - access to 178, 189
 - Bathurst 11
 - Batho Pele (People First) 311, 314
 - Battle of Blood River/Ncome Project 88
 - battlefields 104, 557
 - Baviaanskloof Wilderness Area 204
 - BBBEE 99, 145, 161
 - Codes of Good Practice 161

- gambling industry 234
- BBSDP 156, 157, 161
- BCLME 216
- BED 63-64
- BEE 113, 145, 158, 161, 163, 399-400, 527
 - Policy Unit 17
- bee-keeping 59
- Beit Bridge 23
- Bela-Bela 23, 24
- Benefit 216
- Benelux countries 276-277
- Benguela Current 6, 10, 216
- Benin 265
- Benoni 20
- BER 482
- Besa 243, 250-251
 - bond turnover 250-251
 - listed and unlisted derivative trades 251
 - listed bonds 251
 - market performance 250-251
 - operational developments 250
 - regulatory developments 250
- Bethlehem 16
- BGIS 204
- Bhisho 11
- big baobab tree 24
- bilateral agreements 289-293
- Biobank South Africa 200
- biodiversity/biological diversity 196-198
 - bioregional programmes 202-203
 - Cape Floral Kingdom 196
 - Cape Floral Region 196
 - desert biome 198
 - forest biome 198
 - fynbos biome 197-198
 - grassland biome 197
 - knowledge and information management 203-204
 - Maputoland-Pondoland 196
 - marine life 196
 - Nama-Karoo biome 197
 - planning and assessment 202
 - policy support 202
 - preservation 198-204
 - research 201-202
 - savanna biome 196-197
 - succulent Karoo biome 196, 197
 - thicket biome 198
- Biodiversity Conservation and Sustainable Development Project 203
- biofuels 413
- Biopad 481
- biosphere reserves 205-206
- biotechnology 459-460
- Birds and Environmental Change in South Africa Programme 203
- birth defects 344
- blank-tape levy 93
- Blind SA 105, 106
- Blindlib 105, 106
- BLNS countries 148, 149, 231
- Bloemfontein 16
- Bloemhof 17
- Blue Flag Programme 211
 - Beaches 211 (list of)
- Blue IQ projects 18
- BMCC 129
- BNCs 146
- BNG Programme 351
- Bohlabela district 549
- Boksburg 20
- Bond Exchange Actuarial Society of South Africa 250
- bond turnover 250-251
- Bophirima district 550
- botanical gardens 8, 200, 201
- Botswana 257
- BPO & O 161
- Braille Services Trust 105
- Brakpan 20
- Bredasdorp 9
- breeding centres 208-209
- Bridges to the Future Initiative 183
- British colonial era 31-33
- Brits 18
- Broadband Infracore 162
- Broadband Strategy 112
- Broadcasting Complaints Commission of South Africa 128
- Broadcasting Digital Migration Strategy 112, 113, 120
- broadcasting role-players 120-121
 - commercial radio stations 121
 - radio 120-121
 - Satellite Communications Network 121
- Bronkhorstspuit 21

BSA 514
 Buddhism 6
 Budget Council 229
 budget evaluation 227
 Bureau of Heraldry 104
 Burkina Faso 265
 Burundi 262, 444-445
 Bushmanland Conservation Initiative 203
 bushveld 24, 196
 Bushveld Complex 423
 Business Partners Limited 160
 BWC 284

C

CAA 443
 Cabinet 297
 CAD 97
 Calabash 92
 Caledon 9
 Cameroon 261
 Canada
 foreign relations with 273
 trade with 150
 canoeing and skiing 516-517
 capacitating courts 368-369
 Cape 203
 Cape Agulhas 6
 Cape Craft and Design Institute 97
 Cape Floral Kingdom 8, 196, 206
 Cape Floral Region 196
 Cape Floristic Region World Heritage Site 8, 9, 201
 Cape Peninsula 9, 425
 Cape Peninsula Publicity Broadcasting Association 120
 Cape Peninsula University of Technology 9
 Cape Talk MW 121
 Cape Town 7
 City Ballet 95
 harbour/port 8
 International Airport 8
 International Jazz Festival 92
 South African National Gallery 95
 Table Bay 30
 tourism 534-535
 Cape West Coast Biosphere Reserve 205
 Cape winelands 537-538
 Capricorn district 548-549
 Cara 499
 care and support to families 499
 career management 312
 SAPS 435
 Caribbean 273
 Carnarvon 15
 Carolina 22
 CASP 62, 68
 CBD 194
 CBE 164
 CBNRM 213
 CBRTA 565
 CC 296
 CCMA 166
 CDM 422
 CDW 311
 Cederberg Wilderness Area 204
 CEF 398, 407, 412
 Cell C 116
 CEM 173, 174
 Census 2001 2
 Central Africa
 foreign relations with 261-263
 Central African Republic 261-262
 Central Asia 270
 Central Electronic Monitoring System 234
 Central Europe 279
 Central Karoo 11, 537
 Central University of Technology 16
 Centre for African Literary Studies 98
 Centre for the Book, Cape Town 105, 190
 CFM 369, 375
 CGE 362, 376, 381-382
 Chad 262
 Chamber of Mines 402
 CHE 176
 chemicals 217
 Chief Albert Luthuli's House, KwaDukuza 88
 chiefs' courts 366
 child
 abuse and neglect 495-497
 justice 375
 pornography 101
 childcare legislation 488-489
 Childline South Africa 497
 children awaiting trial 375
 CHPC 463
 Chris Hani Baragwanath Hospital 20

- Christiana 17
- Christian churches/Christianity 4-5
- chronic diseases 344-345
- churches 4-5
 - Afrikaans 5
 - Christian 4-5
 - Roman Catholic 5
 - ZCC 5
- CHW 329
- CIDB 163
- CIP 155
- circuit local divisions 363
- CIS 240-241
- Cites 195, 219
- Citizen Relations Portal 373
- citizenship matters 320-321
- civic services 320
- civil aviation 573-574
- civil jurisdiction 366
- ClARA 75
- Classic FM 121
- classification and categorisation of offenders 386-387
- Climate Change Summit, Cape Town 212
- climatic
 - and atmospheric change 212
 - features 7
- clinics 334
- Cluster Co-ordination
 - SAPS 433
- CMAs 586
- CMCs 391
- coal
 - energy resource 409-410
 - mining industry 17, 23, 404
- coastal
 - forests 13
 - research 484
- coasts 6-7
- Coast-to-Coast Highway 17
- Coega IDZ 12
- Coert Steynberg Museum, Pretoria 102
- Cofisa 21
- Colesberg 14
- Collect-a-Can 217
- collective agreements 166
- Commission for the Conservation of Antarctic Marine Living Resources 218
- Commission for the Promotion and Protection of the Rights of Cultural, Religious and Linguistic Communities 4
- Commission on Traditional Leadership Disputes and Claims 298
- Commonwealth 286-287
- communications 111-134
 - advertising 133-134
 - ASA 134
 - Icasa 114
 - liberalisation 117
 - media 119-123
 - media diversity 130-133
 - media organisations and role-players 127-130
 - mobile communications 116
 - PNC on ISAD 115
 - postal sector 117-119
 - print 123-127
 - telecommunications 112-114
 - Telkom 115-116
 - Universal Services and Access Agency of South Africa 114
- community
 - courts 365
 - development 492-493
 - health 329, 336-340
 - newspapers 125
 - radio stations 113
- Community Arts Centre Programme 86
- community corrections for offenders 392
- Community Phone Shop 116
- Community Residential Unit Programme 353
- Comoros 258
- Companies and Intellectual Property Registration Office 160
- Compensation Fund 166-167
 - collective agreements 166
 - Directorate: Collective Bargaining 166
 - dispute resolution 166
 - employment equity 167
 - Labour-Market Policy 166-167
- Competition Commission 158
- competition policy 158
- Comprehensive Housing Plan 350-351
- comprehensive social security 489-491
 - employment assistance 491
 - social-assistance policy developments 489-490
 - social-assistance programmes 490

- Comsec 452
 Compton Herbarium 201
 Congo 261, 445
 conservation 194
 aquaria 209
 areas 204-209
 biosphere reserves 205-206
 breeding centres 208-209
 challenges 211-217
 habitat- and wildlife-management areas 206-207
 marine protected areas 204
 national and cultural monuments 206
 national parks and equivalent reserves 204-205
 private-sector involvement 219
 protected land and seascapes 207
 scientific reserves 204
 snake parks 209
 sustainable-use areas 207
 TFCAs 205
 wetlands 207
 wilderness areas 204
 world heritage sites 206
 zoological gardens 207-208
 Conservation International 203
 Consolidated Plan of Action for Science and Technology 200
 consolidation housing subsidies 354
 Constitution Hill Project 88
 Constitution of the Republic of South Africa 296, 362
 elections 308-309
 founding provisions 296
 fundamental rights 296
 languages 2-3
 preamble 296
 provinces 8-25
 Constitutional Court 363
 Construction Charter 163
 consumer
 and corporate regulation 160
 goods 346
 control
 of sojourn 322
 of travellers 322
 Convention to Combat Desertification 213
 co-operative governance 308
 copper 15
 Correctional Services *see* Department of Correctional Services
 correctional supervision 393
 corruption 312-313
 Cosmos Country 551-552
 Côte d'Ivoire 263-264
 Council for Geoscience 399, 479-480
 Council for Scientific and Industrial Research 20
 Courier Freight Group 118-119
 court system *see* judicial system
 courts for income tax offenders 365
 CPFs 429
 CPIDP 163
 CPIX 143
 CPP 368
 CPSI 314
 Cradle of Humankind 2, 206, 424-425
 Cradock 11
 crafts 97
 CRC 433
 Create SA 97
 cricket 517
 crime and crime prevention 284, 374
 Crime Intelligence 433
 criminal jurisdiction 364-365
 Criminal Justice Review Commission 375
 Critical Ecosystem Partnership Fund 203
 cross-border
 gas trade agreement 413
 transport 568-569
 CRLR 74, 77
 CSIR 399, 473-474
 Eras 474
 knowledge services 474
 national research systems 474
 research and development outcomes 474
 CSN 121
 CSP 153, 419
 Cullinan 20, 21
 cultural
 heritage theft 83
 history collections 103
 industries 90-91
 tourism 90
 villages 90
 Cultural Heartland 551
 curatorships 378
 Custodians of Rare and Endangered Wildflowers 203



customs duty 231-232
cycling 517-518

D

dance 94-95
Dance Factory, Johannesburg 94
Dassen Island 204
day parole 393
DBSA 203, 239-240, 256
De Aar 14
De Beers Consolidated Mines 15
De Beers Museum, Kimberley 103
De Wildt Cheetah-Breeding and Research Centre 208
debt management 222-223
deceased estates 377
décor magazines 126
deeds registration 75-76
Defence *see* SANDF
Defence, Science and Technology Institute 447
Defence Support Group 448
Defiance Campaign 38
Democracy in the Classroom Project 183
Denel 162, 448-451
 businesses 449
Denel Aviation 449
Denel Dynamics 449
Denel Land Systems 450
Denel Munitions Pretoria Metal Pressings 450
Denel Optronics 449
Denel-Saab Aerostructures 449
Department of Agriculture *see also* agriculture
 Agri SA 50
 credit and assistance 63-65
 economy 50
 exports 52
 GMOs 50-51
 imports and exports control 70-71
 international relations 69
 international trade relations 69-70
 Land Affairs 74-77
 Nafu 50
 risk management 63
 Strategic Plan for South African Agriculture 50
 research 68
 use of natural agricultural resources 51
Department of Arts and Culture 81-106
 access to arts 89-90
 architecture 96
 archives and heraldry 104
 arts festivals 91-92
 crafts 97
 cultural industries 90-91
 cultural tourism 90
 dance 94-95
 design 87-98
 education and training 89
 film 99-101
 initiatives 86-89
 institutions 84-86
 international relations 91
 library and information services 104-106
 literature 98-99
 museums 101-104
 music 92-94
 national symbols 82
 organisations 83-84
 photography 96
 rock art 96-97
 theatre 92
 visual arts 95-96
Department of Communications 112
 see also communications
 2010 Strategy 113
Department of Correctional Services 382-394
 classification and categorisation of offenders 386-387
 CMCs 391
 community corrections 392
 correctional supervision 393
 day parole 393
 education and training of offenders 389-390
 employee organisations 393
 good governance 393-394
 healthcare services 388-389
 institutional committees 389
 international co-operation 394
 managing awaiting-trial detainees 385
 mother-and-child units 387
 offender accommodation 384-385
 Museum, Pretoria 102
 nutrition 389
 privilege system 387-388
 psychological services 390
 rehabilitation 389

- reintegration into society 392
- release of offenders 391
- safety and security 385-386
- social-work services 390
- supervision of parolees 392-393
- spiritual care of offenders 390-391
- young offenders 387
- Department of Defence *see* SANDF
- Department of Education 171-190
 - Abet 183-184
 - curriculum 179-180
 - ECD 184-185
 - expenditure equity 177-178
 - FET colleges 181-183
 - functions 173
 - HIV and AIDS 187-188
 - HRD Strategy 187
 - infrastructure 186-187
 - Learner Unit Record Information and Tracking System 186
 - learners with special needs 183-184
 - LIS 189-190
 - management and governance development 185-186
 - Ministry of Education 172-174
 - national and provincial departments 172-173
 - partnerships, international relations, funding 188-189
 - policy 178-181
 - portal 188
 - school enrichment 185
 - School Register of Needs 196
 - school safety measures 187
 - statutory bodies 174-177
 - structures 172-174
 - unions 188
 - Values in Education Initiative 182-183
- Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism 193-219
 - see also* Tourism
 - air pollution 214
 - aquaculture 210
 - aquaria 209
 - biological diversity 196
 - breeding centres 208-209
 - chemicals 217
 - conservation areas 204
 - conservation challenges 211-218
 - environmental management 193-219
 - habitat- and wildlife-management areas 206-207
 - environmental injustices 217
 - international co-operation 218-219
 - Mapungubwe National Park 205
 - marine pollution, poaching, sustainability 215-217
 - marine resources 209-210
 - mission 194
 - national and cultural monuments 206
 - new fisheries 210
 - NSSD 195-196
 - policy and legislation 194-195
 - preserving biodiversity 198-204
 - private-sector involvement 219
 - recycling 217
 - snake parks 209
 - state of the environment 195
 - waste management 213
 - water-quality management 214
 - wetlands 207
 - world heritage sites 206
 - WSSD 195
 - Zoological gardens 207-208
- Department of Finance *see* National Treasury
- Department of Foreign Affairs 253-293
 - Africa 254-267
 - Americas 272-275
 - Asia and Middle East 267
 - Central Africa 261-263
 - Europe 275-281
 - multilateral diplomacy 281-287
 - southern Africa 257-261
- Department of Health 327-346
 - alcohol and substance abuse 343
 - birth defects 344
 - budget 329
 - chronic diseases, disabilities, geriatrics 344-345
 - community health 336-340
 - consumer goods 346
 - environmental health 341
 - health authorities 328
 - health team 332-336
 - INP and food security 346
 - mental health 345
 - occupational health 345
 - oral health 344

- policy 329-332
- quarantinable diseases 346
- reproductive health 340-341
- statutory bodies 328
- tobacco control 342-343
- traditional medicine 341-342
- violence 343-344
- Department of Home Affairs 320-323
 - citizenship matters 320
 - civic services 320
 - control of sojourn 322
 - control of travellers 322
 - immigration 321-322
 - permanent residence 322-323
 - population register 320-321
 - removal of undesirable persons 323
 - temporary residence 323
 - visas 322
- Department of Housing 349-358
 - capacity-building 353-355
 - institutions 356-358
 - legislation and policy 350-353
 - subsidies 354-355
- Department of Justice and Constitutional Development 361-395
 - crime prevention 374
- Department of Correctional Services 382-394
 - human rights 374
 - IJS 374-375
 - judicial system 362-373
 - legal structures 377-382
 - legislative and constitutional development 376
- Department of Land Affairs 74-77
 - cadastral surveys 76
 - CRLR 77
 - deeds registration 75-76
 - Land and Tenure Reform 74-75
 - Land Planning and Information 75
 - land-reform implementation 74-75
 - Restitution 77
 - spatial planning information 76
 - surveys and mapping 76-77
 - vesting and disposal of state land 75
- Department of Minerals and Energy 397-425
 - BEE 399-400
 - biomass 416-417
 - electricity 413-416
 - energy 405-416
 - geology 422-425
 - hydro 420-422
 - mine environmental management 398-399
 - mineral wealth 403
 - mining industry 400
 - policy 398
 - renewable energy 417-418
 - solar 418-419
 - wind 419-420
- Department of Provincial and Local Government 298-306
- Department of Public Service and Administration 309-319
 - APRM 315
 - Batho Pele 311
 - Batho Pele Portal 314
 - CDW programme 311
 - CPD 332
 - CPSI 314
 - employee health and wellness 313
 - employment practices and career development 312
 - evaluation of employee assistance 318
 - fighting corruption 312-313
 - G&A Cluster 315
 - gender mainstreaming 317
 - Gito Council 313-314
 - governance monitoring 318-319
 - HRD 313
 - international and African Affairs 314-315
 - labour relations improvement 316-317
 - leadership and performance improvement 318
 - macro-organisational issues 310-311
 - medical assistance 310
 - monitoring and evaluation 313
 - PILIR 310
 - professional ethics and human-resource reviews 317
 - PSC 315-316
 - public-administration investigations 317
 - research, learning, knowledge management 311
 - restructuring 309-310
 - Samdi 319
 - service delivery and quality assurance 318
 - Sita 314
 - size 309
- Department of Safety and Security 427-452
 - ICD 428

- defence 439
- ICD 428
- intelligence services 451-452
- SAPS 428-438
- Secretariat for Safety and Security 428
- Department of Science and Technology 455-485
 - general research areas 482-484
 - international co-operation 465-466
 - legislation 456
 - National System of Innovation 456-457
 - NRF 466-471
 - policy and initiatives 461-465
 - private-sector involvement 484-485
 - promoting niche areas 458
 - public funding 460
 - science councils 471-481
 - scientific and research organisations and structures 481
- Department of Social Development 487-504
 - care and support families 499
 - combating fraud and corruption 491
 - community development and sustainable livelihoods 492-493
 - comprehensive social security 489-491
 - health insurance 491-492
 - impact of HIV and AIDS 493-495
 - interdepartmental collaboration 499
 - legislation 488-489
 - NPOs 503-504
 - people with disabilities 501
 - rights of vulnerable groups 495-499
 - social relief 491
 - statutory bodies 503
 - substance abuse 499-500
 - UN Population Fund Second Country Support Programme 501-502
 - welfare services 502-503
 - women 500
 - youth development 501
- Department of Sport and Recreation 507-520
 - 2007 sports highlights 515-520
 - 2010 FIFA World Cup™ 512-513
 - legislation 512
 - programmes 508
 - sports organisations 513
- Department of Trade and Industry 144-167
 - African economic development 146-147
 - Americas 149
 - AsgiSA 138-139, 145, 268
 - Asia 150-151
 - BBBEE 145, 161
 - BBSDP 161
 - BEE 161
 - BPO & O 161
 - broadening economic participation 145
 - Compensation Fund 166-167
 - competition policy 158
 - consumer and corporate regulation 160
 - CSP 153
 - domestic expenditure 141-142
 - domestic output 139-141
 - employment and skills development 164-166
 - employment equity 167
 - enterprise and industry development 155-156
 - European Free Trade Area 149
 - European Union 149
 - export development and promotion 153, 154
 - exchange rates 142
 - foreign trade and payments 143-144
 - global positioning and integration 146-148
 - IIC 154
 - indicators 139-142
 - institutional support framework 158-160
 - international operations 155
 - ITED 146
 - Jipsa 138-139
 - manufacturing 157-158
 - multilateral economic relations 151
 - New Partnerships for Africa's Development 147
 - NIPP 157
 - price inflation 142-143
 - promoting and facilitating investment 153-154
 - public works programmes 163-164
 - SADC 148
 - small, medium and micro-enterprises 158-160
 - SOEs 161-163
 - Southern African Customs Union 148
 - targeted investment strategy 146
 - TEO 156-157
 - Tisa 153
 - trade with Americas 149
 - trade with Asia 150-151
 - trade with Europe 148-149
 - Unctad 152
 - WED 153
 - WEF 153

- Workplace Challenge Programme 157
 - WTO 152-153
 - Department of Transport 561-582
 - ATNS 576-578
 - civil aviation 573
 - maritime affairs 580-582
 - policy 562-563
 - ports 578
 - public entities and other agencies 564
 - public transport 566-571
 - rail transport 571
 - road transport 565
 - Transnet Limited 565
 - Department of Water Affairs and Forestry 585-607
 - see also* forests/forestry
 - forestry 599-607
 - hydrological conditions 586
 - MIG 590-591
 - policy and legislation 591
 - regional and international co-operation and initiatives 599
 - water-management institutions 594
 - water-resource management and conditions 587-590
 - water-resource management 593
 - WfW Programme 596-599
 - deputy ministers 297
 - Deputy President 297
 - Derivatives Traders' Association 251
 - desert biome 198
 - design 97-98
 - Design Indaba Conference and Expo 97
 - Detective Service 433
 - development co-operation 260
 - Diamond Exchange and Export Centre 398
 - diamond
 - fields 424, 541-542
 - industry 15, 16, 17, 18, 33, 405
 - difaqane 31
 - Dinaledi schools 180
 - Directorate: Air Force Acquisition 445-446
 - Directorate: Army Acquisition 445
 - Directorate: Biodiversity Management 207
 - Directorate: Collective Bargaining 166
 - Directorate: Leadership and Performance Improvement 318
 - Directorate: Naval Acquisition 446
 - Directorate: Personnel Separation 444
 - Directorate: Radiation Control 410
 - Directorate: Service Delivery and Quality Assurance 318
 - Directorate: Water-Quality Management 214
 - disabilities 344-345
 - disarmament 284
 - disaster management 309
 - Discount Benefit Scheme 355
 - dispute resolution 166
 - domestic
 - bonds 244
 - currency market 245-246
 - expenditure 141-142
 - output 139-141
 - tourism 528
 - DNA 422
 - Drakensberg 13, 14
 - escarpment 423
 - KwaZulu-Natal 557
 - DRC 263
 - dried-fruit industry 14
 - drought management 63
 - DSO 370
 - Dube Trade Port 138
 - Dukuduku 13
 - dune forests 11
 - Durban 13, 554-555
 - Art Gallery 95
 - Film Festival 100
 - harbour 12
 - International Airport 12
 - Institute of Technology 13
 - Local History Museum 103
 - Museum of Natural History 103
 - Dutch East India Company 30
 - Dwesa 11
- E**
- EAFM 216
 - early colonial period 30-31
 - early inhabitants 30
 - Early Warning System 227, 309
 - EASSy 112
 - East Asia 267-268
 - East Coast Radio 121
 - East Griqualand 555
 - East London 11, 12

- Museum 103
- Eastern Cape 10-12
 - 2010 FIFA World Cup TM 12
 - agriculture, fishing, forestry 11-12
 - industry 12
 - people 11
 - tourism 546-548
- Eastern Europe 279-281
- E-Cadre Strategy 113
- ECD 184-185
- economy
 - see Department of Trade and Industry
- Ecosocc 254
- ecosystems 202
 - management 194
- Eco-Technology 65
- ecotourism 22
- Ecowas 255
- EDC 412
- EDCTP 465, 466
- EDLs 331
- Edoardo Villa Museum 95
- education
 - see Department of Education
- education and training
 - arts and culture 89
 - media 129-130
 - of offenders 389
 - SAPS 435-436
- Education Information Policy 186
- education infrastructure 186-187
- educational portal 188
- educator unions 188
- EEA 178
- EEZ 215, 443
- EFA 189
- e-filing 233
- EFTA 146, 149
- e-government projects 313-314
- Egypt 264
- EIDD 155
- E-Justice Programme 375-376
- elections 43, 308-309
- electricity 413-416
 - INEP 415
 - national and regional co-operation 416
 - Nersa 416
 - SAPP 416
- ELRC 177, 188
- Emerald Animal world, Vanderbijlpark 208
- emergency
 - housing 353-354
 - medical services 335
- employee health and wellness 313
- emigrants' blocked assets 247
- employment
 - equity 167
 - practices 312
- eNaTIS 562-653
- Encounters Documentary Festival 100
- energy 405-422
 - and the environment 421-422
 - biofuels 413
 - biomass 416-417
 - CEF 412
 - coal 409-410
 - cross-border gas trade agreement 413
 - efficiency 407-408
 - fuel products 413
 - households 409
 - hydro 420
 - IEP 408
 - in the economy 406-407
 - Integrated Energy Centres Programme 408
 - liquid fuels 411-412
 - NER 416
 - Nersa 416
 - nuclear 410-411
 - oil and gas 412-413
 - renewable 417-418
 - research 482
 - solar 418-419
 - Sasol 412
 - statistics 407
 - wind 419-420
- Energy-Efficiency Strategy 407
- Engelburg House Art Collection, Pretoria 102
- Enlargement Protocol 149
- environmental
 - health 341
 - injustices 217
 - protection vessels 215
 - research 483-484
 - environmental management
 - see Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism

EPWP 163, 184, 185, 207
 equality courts 366
 Equatorial Guinea 261
 equity in expenditure
 education 177-178
 equity market 244-245
 Eritrea 445
 Ermelo 22
 erosion and desertification 213
 ESDS 164-166
 legislation 164
 NSA 165
 NSDS 164
 NSF 165
 OHS 166
 Seta 164-165
 UIF 165
 ESF 177
 Eskom 138, 162, 407, 408, 409, 414-415, 418,
 420, 421, 481
 Estcourt 13
 estate duty 232
 ETDP Seta 188
 Ethiopia 260, 445
 ETQAs 175
 e-tv 122
 EU 147, 148, 149, 275-276, 499
 Europe
 foreign relations with 275-281
 trade with 148-149
 Eurorand bonds 243-244
 exchange control 246
 reforms 226
 exchange rates 143
 excise duty 232
 Export Strategy 154
 exports 153, 154
 fishery-control officers 215

F

FAIS 241
 family courts 365
 Family Planning Programme 341
 FAO 61, 63, 69
 farming *see* agriculture
 FCIS 240-241
 FCJ 128
 FCTC 342
 FDI 146, 153
 ferrous minerals 405
 FET 172, 173, 176-177, 187, 189
 colleges 178, 181
 FETC 175
 FFC 228-229
 film 99-101
 distributors 100
 festivals 100
 FIC 225, 228-229
 Film and Television Production Rebate 99
 Finance *see* National Treasury
 financial markets 243-246
 Financial Sector Charter 226
 financial sector continuity planning 251
 First Decade of Freedom 41-43
 fiscal policy framework 222
 Fish River Canyon 15
 Fish River SDI 12
 Fish River Valley 203
 fisheries/fishing industry/sector 9,11
 Benefit 216
 EAFM 216
 environmental protection vessels 215
 fishing rights 210
 international co-operation 215
 partnerships 215-216
 research 484
 research observer scheme 217
 subsistence fishing 215
 transboundary research collaborations 216
 vessels 215
 Fitzsimons Snake Park, Durban 209
 FLISP 355
 FNB Dance Umbrella 94
 FOCAC 269
 Fomboni Peace Agreement 258
 food
 safety and quality assurance 72-74
 security 62-63
 Food and Trees for Africa 202
 food-control system 73
 foreign
 investors 249
 trade and payments 143-144

Foreign Correspondents' Association of South Africa 129
 foreign relations
 see Department of Foreign Affairs
 Foreign Services Management Unit 155
 forest biome 198
 forests/forestry 8, 10, 11, 13, 22, 24, 198, 599-607
 see also Department of Water Affairs and Forestry
 afforestation 600
 Champion Tree Project 602
 commercial forests 606
 community forestry 607
 FTFA 607
 indigenous forests 605
 industry and exports 603-604
 legislation 605
 National Arbor Week 601
 plantation yields 606
 primary wood-processing 606
 research and training 607
 Safcol 603
 socio-economic reform and growth 602-603
 sustainable forest management 604-605
 woodlands 606
 Forum of Black Journalists 127
 fossils 2, 15, 30, 206
 FPB 100
 fraud and corruption 491
 Free State 16-17
 2010 FIFA World Cup TM 17
 agriculture 16-17
 botanical garden 201
 manufacturing and industry 17
 mining 17
 people 16
 tourism 544-546
 free State Consolidated Goldfields 17
 freedom Charter 20, 39
 Freedom of Commercial Speech trust 128
 Freedom Park Project 88
 free-to-air television 122
 freight transport 569-570
 frost, humidity, fog 7-8
 FSB 237-238, 248
 FSL 431, 434-435
 FSPs 237, 241-242
 FTA 148, 149, 150, 261, 272
 funding

education 188
 fynbos biome 197-198
 FXI 128

G

G&A Cluster 315
 GAAP 248
 Gabon 261
 Gambia 266
 gambling 233-234
 BBBEE 234
 compliance 234
 national statistics 234
 responsible gambling 234
 game-farming/industry/ranching 12, 15, 59
 GaRankuwa 20
 Garden Route 535-536
 Gariep Hydroelectric Power Station 409
 Gateway International Airport 23
 grass and wetlands 552
 Gauteng 19-21
 2010 FIFA World Cup TM 21
 agriculture and industry 21
 manufacturing 20-21
 people 20
 technology 21
 tourism 552-554
 Gauteng Economic Development Agency 19
 Gauteng Shared Services Centre 19
 GBIF 199
 GDP 143, 158, 212, 222, 524
 GEF 203
 GEM 189
 Skills Development Programme 189
 Gems 310
 Gemsbok National Park 15
 gender
 equity 189
 mainstreaming 317
 genebanks 200
 general interest magazines 126
 geology 422-425
 GEOSS 464
 geriatrics 344-345
 Germany 277-278
 Germiston 20
 Gertrude Posel Gallery 95

GET 172, 173, 179
 GETC 175
 GGR 234
 Ghana 265
 GHG 212 421
 Giant's Castle 13
 Gito Council 313
 global finance 285
 GMOs 50-51
 gold-mining industry 16, 17, 22, 404
 Golden Gate Highlands National Park 16, 423
 golf 518
 government bonds 243
 government system 295-323
 Cabinet 297
 Constitution 296
 co-operative governance 308
 Deputy President 297
 disaster management 309
 elections 308-309
 Government 296
 Government Communications 306-307
 home affairs 320
 International Marketing Council 307-308
 local government 302-306
 Parliament 296-297
 President 297
 provincial government 300-302
 Public Service 309-320
 traditional leadership 297-298
 governance monitoring 318-319
 Graaff-Reinet 11
 Grahamstown 11
 Graskop 22
 grassland biome 22, 197
 Grasslands Programme 202
 Great Escarpment 7, 423
 Great Karoo 10, 11
 Great Limpopo Transfrontier Park 205
 Great North Road 23
 Great Trek 32
 Greater China 268-269
 Green Kalahari 542-543
 Greening of the Nation Project 202
 Groot Constantia
 house museum 103
 GSP 149
 Guardian's Fund 378

Guinea 266
 Guinea-Bissau 266

H

Hantam Karoo 543-544
 harbours *see* ports
 Harmony Gold Refinery 17
 Hartbeespoort Dam Snake and Animal Park 209
 HartRAO 467
 HE 172, 174, 176, 187, 189, 313
 libraries 190
 universities 181-182
 Health *see* Department of Health
 health
 authorities 328-329
 insurance 491-492
 team 332-335
 healthcare services for offenders 388
 Hedcom 173, 174
 Heidelberg 21
 herbaria 201
 Heritage Month celebrations 89
 Hess 465
 high courts 363
 Highlands Meander 551
 Highveld Stereo 121
 Hindus 6
 history 30-44
 Anglo-Boer/South African War and its aftermath
 34-35
 apartheid 37-38
 British colonial era 31-33
 early colonial period 30-31
 early inhabitants 30
 end of apartheid 38-41
 First Decade of Freedom 41-43
 mineral revolution 33-34
 Second Decade of Freedom 43-44
 segregation 35-37
 HIV and AIDS 187-188, 260, 313, 329, 336, 339-
 340, 388, 493-495
 advocacy, awareness, outreach 494
 business sector 495
 care and support 494-495
 FBOs 495
 orphans 495
 partnerships 495

- Workplace Policy and Strategy 493-494
 - Youth Programme 493
 - Hluhluwe-Umfolozi Park 197
 - HMO 467
 - Hoedspruit Research and Breeding Programme 209
 - Home Affairs *see* Department of Home Affairs
 - home- and community-based care 340
 - hominid sites 206
 - Honorary Fishery Control Officers Policy 215
 - Horn of Africa 263
 - hospitals 334-335
 - house museums 103
 - households
 - energy consumption 409
 - houses of traditional leaders 298
 - Housing *see* Department of Housing
 - HPCSA 328, 332
 - HR Connect 309
 - HRC 282
 - HRD 313
 - tourism 529-531
 - HRDS 187, 310
 - HRM 313
 - HSGIC 255, 256
 - HSRC 476-478
 - cross-cutting units 477-478
 - national priority initiatives 478
 - research programmes 477
 - Human Resource 2010 Strategy 441
 - human rights 282, 374
 - humanitarian issues 283-284
 - hydrological conditions 586-587
 - hydropower 420
 - ocean energy 420
- I**
- IAEA 284
 - IBSA 151
 - Icasa 114
 - ICC 377
 - Icosamp 61
 - ICPA 394
 - Icsu 465
 - ICT 10, 112, 113, 138, 186, 310, 313
 - E-Education 179
 - IDC 160
 - IDP 203, 304
 - IDZs 146, 155
 - IEC 308, 408
 - IEP 408
 - IF 457
 - IFSNP 62
 - IIC 154
 - IJS 374-375
 - IMC 307-308
 - IMCI 328, 337
 - immigration 321-322
 - IMS 153, 158
 - Inclusionary Housing Policy 351
 - income tax 231
 - Independent Complaints Directorate 428
 - India
 - trade with 146
 - Indian Ocean islands 258
 - indigenous
 - fauna 203
 - flora 203
 - Indlela 164
 - Infrastructure Delivery Improvement Programme 163
 - India
 - trade with 151
 - Indian Ocean 6, 10, 12
 - indigenous
 - forests 8, 13
 - fruit crops 60
 - games 510
 - languages 2
 - music 94
 - Indigenous Knowledge System 460
 - Indigenous Music and Oral History Project 88-89
 - individual housing subsidies 354
 - industrial minerals 405
 - Industrial Policy Framework 145
 - Industrial Policy Plan for the Economic Cluster 145
 - INEP 414, 415
 - Innovation Hub 21
 - INP 346
 - Institute for Tropical and Subtropical Crops 23
 - institutional
 - housing subsidies 355
 - investors 246-247
 - support framework 158-159
 - insurance companies 238

integrated development plans 304-305
 Integrated Victim-Empowerment Policy 498
 intelligence services 451-452
 Comsec 452
 Inspector-General 452
 ISC 452
 JSCI 451
 NCC 452
 NIA 451
 OIC 452
 Sanai 452
 SASS 451
 International Agenda for Botanic Gardens in Conservation 200
 International Commission for the Conservation of Atlantic Tunas 218
 international community
 education 189
 International Legal Relations 377
 International Monetary Fund 236
 International Operations Unit 155
 international relations
 agriculture 69-70
 arts and culture 91
 education 188
 International Relations, Peace and Security Cluster 254
 international tax agreements 230
 international tourism 526-527
 International Trade Administration 146
 International Whaling Commission 218
 Internet 115, 118
 Interpretive and Informative Marine and Coastal Signage Programme 211
 Intersec 251
 Intersite Property Solutions 573
 Investing in Culture Programme 86-88
 Iron Age 30
 IQMS 188
 Ireland 278
 IRWH 66
 ISAD 112
 ISC 452
 ISCW 51
 iSimangaliso Wetlands Park 13, 197, 206
 ISO 234, 476
 IT 112, 313
 ITED 146, 147

iThemba Labs 468
 IUCN 204
 Iziko museums, Cape Town 102

J

Japan
 trade with 151
 JBCC 257, 259
 JCC 257, 275
 JCPS Cluster 374, 440
 Jewish 6
 Jipsa 138-139, 164, 268, 278, 456
 Johannesburg 19, 553
 Art Gallery 95, 103
 Johannesburg Fresh Produce Market 24
 Johannesburg Zoological Gardens 208
 journalism awards 130
 Joy of Jazz International Festival 92
 JSC 367, 380
 JSCD 441
 JSCI 451
 JSE Limited 21, 226, 245, 248-250
 foreign investors 249
 international involvement 248-249
 product developments 249-250
 regulation 248
 judicial system 362-374
 capacitating courts 368-369
 circuit local divisions 363
 civil jurisdiction 366
 community courts 365
 Constitutional Court 363
 courts for income tax offenders 365
 crime prevention 374
 criminal jurisdiction 364-365
 equality courts 366
 family courts 365
 high courts 363
 human rights 374
 legal practitioners 373
 magistrates' courts 364
 modernising of 375
 NPA 369-373
 regional courts 363
 restructuring the court system 368-369
 small claims courts 366
 Supreme Court of Appeal 363

transformation 366-368
junior and small-scale mining 402-403
Junior LandCare 66
Justice and Correctional Services *see* Department
of Justice and Constitutional
Development
Justice College 378-379

K

Kalahari 15, 196, 542
Kalahari Gemsbok National Park 15
Kamberg Nature Reserve 13
karakul sheep industry 14, 15
Karoo 423, 547
Karoo National Park 197
Kathu 15
Kaya FM 121
Keiskamma Valley 10
Keiskammahoe 11
Kempton Park 20
Kenya 259-260
Kgalagadi Transfrontier Park 15, 197, 205
Khoekhoe 30
Khoisan 30, 31
Khula Enterprise Finance Limited 159
Kimberley 14, 15, 33
King William's Town 11
Kirstenbosch National Botanical Garden 8, 201
Kirstenbosch Research Centre 201
Klein Karoo Nasionale Kunstefees, Oudtshoorn 91
Kleinplasie Open Air Museum, Worcester 103
Klerksdorp 18
Knysna forest 198
Koeberg Nuclear Power Station 410, 413
Kogelberg Biosphere Reserve 205
Koreas 268
Kosi Bay 13
Kosi Bay Lake System 207
KPCS 284
Kroonstad 16
Kruger House Museum, Pretoria 102, 103
Kruger Mpumalanga International Airport 22
Kruger National Park 24, 197
Kruger-to-Canyons Biosphere Reserve 206
Krugersdorp 20
Kuruman 14
KwaZulu-Natal 12-14

2010 FIFA World Cup TM 14
agriculture and industry 13-14
people 13
tourism 554-557
KwaZulu-Natal Drakensberg 197
KwaZulu-Natal Herbarium 201

L

LAB 362, 379
Labour Court 363
Labour-Market Policy Programme 16167
labour relations improvement 316-317
Lake Chrissie 22
land 6-8
climatic features 7
coasts 6-7
frost, humidity, fog 7-8
oceans 6
rainfall 7
relief features 7
sunshine 8
temperatures 7
land administration 62
Land and Agricultural Development Bank of South
Africa 66, 240
land and its people 1-28
land 6-8
languages 2-4
people 2
provinces 8-25
religion 4-6
Land Bank 66, 240
Land Claims Court 363
LandCare Programme 64-65
Langkloof 10
Langkloof Valley 11
languages 2-3
indigenous 2
policy 2-3
Latin America
foreign relations with 274-275
trade with 150
law-making 297
Law Society of South Africa 373
LDC 257
Learner Unit Record Information and Tracking
System 186

Learning and Knowledge Management Programme 311
 LED 305
 legacy projects 88
 legal
 deposit libraries 106
 practitioners 373
 services 436
 structures 377-382
 Legal Deposit Committee 105
 legislation
 health 330-331
 housing 350-353
 local government 305
 National Treasury 223-225
 Science and Technology 456
 Social Development 488-489
 Sport and Recreation 512
 legislative and constitutional development 376-377
 Lejweleputswa 17, 545-546
 Leslie Hill Molecular Systematics Laboratory 201
 DNA-bank 201
 Lesotho 257
 LHWP 257
 liberalisation 117
 Liberia 265
 libraries
 see LIS
 Library of Parliament 106
 library services at national level 105
 Libya 267
 Lichtenburg Biodiversity Conservation Centre 208
 lifestyle magazines 126
 Limpopo 23-25
 2010 FIFA World Cup™ 25
 agriculture 24
 industry 24
 people 24
 tourism 548
 Limpopo Parks and Tourism Board 24
 Limpopo River 23
 Limpopo Valley 30
 Limpopo/Shashe TFCA 205
 liquid fuels 411-413
 Liquid Fuels Charter 400
 LIS 104-106, 189-190
 listed bonds 251

literature 98-99
 Little Karoo 536-537
 local
 financial assistance 247-248
 government 302-306, 335
 Local Government Strategy Agenda (2006 – 2011) 303
 Loerie Awards 133
 Lowveld 22
 LRAD 75
 LTR 74
 Lubombo Transfrontier Conservation and Resource Area 205
 Luthuli Museum, KwaDukuza 102

M

macroeconomic strategy 229-230
 macro-organisational issues 310-311
 Macufe 16, 92
 Madikwe Game Reserve 18
 Mafikeng 17, 34
 Mafikeng Industrial Development Initiative 18
 Mafisa 66-67
 Magazine Publishers' Association of South Africa 127
 magazines 125-127
 circulation and readership 125-127
 distribution 127
 Magistrates' Commission 380
 magistrates' courts 364
 Magwa 11
 malaria 337-338
 Malawi 257-258
 male interest magazines 126
 Malelane 22
 Mali 266
 Maloti-Drakensberg Transfrontier Conservation and Development Area 205
 Mandela, President Nelson 20, 262
 mangroves 11
 Mangaung African Culture Festival 16
 Mangaung Library Services 106
 manufacturing 10, 12, 13, 17, 19, 20-21, 157-158
 Mappo-Seta 89, 130
 Mapungubwe 24, 30, 205
 Mapungubwe Heritage Site 206
 Maputo Corridor 22, 23

- Maputo Development Corridor 23, 155
 Maputoland-Pondoland biodiversity 196
 Marine Biodiversity Programme 202
 marine
 aquaculture 210
 life 196
 pollution 215
 protected areas 202, 204
 research 484
 resources 209-211
 Marion Island 204
 maritime affairs 580-582
 safety 582
 Sasar 581
 search-and-rescue services 581
 training 581
 transport 580-581
 Market Theatre, Johannesburg 84, 92
 marketing
 agriculture 61-62
 communications awards 133-134
 Masifunde Sonke 183
 Master of the High Court 377
 Mata Mata Tourist Access 15
 MATD 385
 Mauritania 264-265
 Mbeki, President Thabo 256, 259, 261, 263, 270, 274, 297, 315, 410, 438, 488
 McGregor Museum, Kimberley 103
 MDDA 124, 130-133
 measles 337
 meat safety 74
 Mechem 450
 media 119-134
 advertising 133-134
 broadcasting 119
 broadcasting role-players 120-121
 diversity 130-133
 freedom 119
 free-to-air television 122
 journalism awards 130
 magazines 125-127
 M-Net 121
 news agencies 129
 newspapers 123-125
 online media 127
 organisations and role-players 127-130
 policy and legislation 119-120
 print 123-127
 radio 120-121
 SABC 121
 satellite broadcasting 122
 Satellite Communications Network 121
 signal distribution 122
 television 121
 training centres 129-130
 Media 24 123
 Media Institute of Southern Africa 129
 Media Workers' Association of South Africa 128
 medical
 assistance 310
 schemes 336
 medicine administration 331
 Mediterranean Europe 278-279
 Medium Term Expenditure Framework 83
 Melrose House, Pretoria 103
 mental health 345
 Mercosur 69, 70, 146, 150, 274
 meta-information 105
 meteorite impact sites 424
 metropolitan councils 303
 Metrorail 573
 mfecane 31
 MFN 149
 MHIC 345
 MHSI 401
 Michaelis Collection, Cape Town 102
 Micro Finance Regulatory Council 237
 microlending industry 237
 Middelburg 23
 Middle East 271-272
 Middleveld 22
 Midem, France 93
 Midlands, KwaZulu-Natal 557
 MIDP 158
 MIG 305, 590-591
 military
 history museums 104
 veterans 444
 Millennium Seed Bank Project 202
 mine
 environmental management 398-399
 -safety research 482
 mineral wealth 403-405
 coal 404
 diamonds 405

- ferrous metals 405
- gold 404
- industrial minerals 405
- non-ferrous minerals 405
- platinum-group metals 404-405
- processed minerals
- production 405
- reserves 403
- silver 404
- minerals
 - discovery 33
 - revolution 33-34
- Minerals, Energy and Geology *see* Department of Minerals and Energy
- mineworkers 400-401
- Ministerial Task Team on Child Pornography 101
- mining industry 400-403
 - Chamber of Mines 402
 - Free State 18
 - junior and small-scale mining 402-403
 - Limpopo 25
 - mine health and safety 401
 - mineworkers 400-410
 - MQA 401-402
 - Northern Cape 15-16
- Mining Supply and Industrial Park 18
- Ministry of Education 172-174
- MinMec 303
- Mintek 399, 474-476
- Mlambo-Ncguka, Dep Pres Phumzile 297
- Mmino 84
- M-Net 121-122
- mobile communications 116
- Modimolle 23
- Mokopane Biodiversity Conservation Centre 208
- Mondi Shanduka Newspaper Awards 130
- monetary policy 236
- money-market activity 244
- Montreal Protocol 219
- Mopani district 549
- Morocco 264
- Mosadi wa Konokono (Women of Substance) 89
- Moshito Music Conference and Exhibition 92-93
- Motheo 544
- mother-and-child units for offenders 387
- Mother City 8
- motor cars/vehicles 11
 - manufacturing 11, 12, 13
- motoring magazines 126
- MoU 150, 151, 205, 215
- mountaineering 518
- Mozambique 258-259
- Mozambique-Agulhas Current 6
- MPAs 202, 204
- MPC 235
- MPRDA 398
- Mpumalanga 21-23
 - 2010 FIFA World Cup TM 23
 - agriculture and forestry 22-23
 - industry 23
 - people 22
 - tourism 550-552
- MQA 401-402
- MRC 329, 334, 341, 478-479
 - National Programme for Environment and Development Research 479
 - National Programme for Health Systems and Policy Research 479
 - National Programme for Infection and Immunity Research 479
 - National Programme for Non-Communicable Disease Research 479
 - National Programme for Research in Molecules to Disease 478
 - National Programme for Women and Child Health Research 479
 - South African National Health Knowledge Network 479
- Mrs Ples 103
- MSDF 441
- MST 174, 185, 186
- Msunduzi Municipal Library 106
- MTEF 114, 146, 222, 384
- Mthatha 11
- MTN 116
- MultiChoice Africa 122
- multilateral
 - agreements 288
 - diplomacy 281-287
 - economic relations 151
- multilingualism 3
- Municipal Demarcation Board 302
- municipalities 303
- Museum Africa, Johannesburg 103
- Museum of the Council for Geoscience, Pretoria 102
- museums 15, 24, 101-104



music 92-93
Musina 23
Muslims 6

N

N6 Route 547
NAASP 255
NAC 84
Naci 460, 462
NACF 312
NACH 317
NAFVSA 106
Nafu 68
NAM 287
Nama-Karoo biome 15, 197
Namaland 197, 543
Namaqua Development Corridor 15
Namaqua National Park 197
Namaqualand 14, 197
NAMC 62
Namibia 15, 197, 198, 259
Nat Nakasa Award for Courageous Journalism 130
Natal Museum, Pietermaritzburg 102, 103
National Agrometeorological Committee 63
National Air Space Committee 77
national analytical services
 food safety and quality 73-74
National Archives of South Africa 100, 104
National Arts Festival, Grahamstown 91, 92
National Assembly 296
National Association of Broadcasters 129
National Audit of Heritage Resources Project in
 Public Custodianship 83
National Biodiversity Framework 199, 202
National Book Policy 98
National Climate-Change Response Strategy 212-
 213
National Climatic Change Strategy 421
National Consumer Tribunal 237
National Council for Library and Information
 Services 105
National Crafts Development Initiative 97
National Education Convention 188
National Education Information Management
 System 179
National Emergency Communications Framework
 113
National Film, Video and Sound Archives 104
National Framework for Teacher Education 186
National Gambling Statistics Database 234
national health 328
National Herbarium of South Africa 201
National Heritage Resources Fund 83
National Industrial Policy Framework 146
National Information Society Leadership
 Programme 465
National Inspectorate 435
National Institute for Tropical Diseases 482
National Land Type Survey 51
National Library of South Africa, Cape Town 104,
 105-106
National Library of South Africa, Pretoria 104, 105-
 106
National Lottery 235
National Museum, Bloemfontein 102, 103
National Nanotechnology Strategy 463
national parks 204-205 (list of)
National Plan for Higher Education 182
National Plan of Action for Seabirds 216
National Policy for Seals and Seabirds in South
 Africa 216
National Product Development Centre 97
National Professional Diploma in Education
 Programme 186
National Protocol on Assessment 180
National Reference Centre for African Traditional
 Medicines 341
National Register of Oral Sources 104
National School Health Policy 331
National School Nutrition Programme 180
National Spatial Information Framework 75
National Strategy for MST Education 180-181
national symbols 82-83
 animal 83
 anthem 82
 bird 83
 coat of arms 82
 fish 83
 flag 82
 flower 83
 orders 82-83
 tree 83
National System of Innovation 456-465
National Treasury 221-251

- Amnesty Unit 227
 Auditor-General 235
 Besa 250-251
 Budget Council 229
 budget evaluation 227
 debt management 222-223
 Early Warning System 227
 exchange control 246-248
 exchange-control reforms 226
 FFC 228-229
 financial expenditure 226
 financial markets 243
 financial sector 235-242
 Financial Sector Charter 226
 financial-sector continuity planning 251
 Financial Intelligence Centre 228
 fiscal policy framework 222
 gambling 233-234
 international tax agreements 230
 JSE Limited 248-250
 legislation 223
 macroeconomic strategy 229-230
 MFMA, 2003 225-226
 NLB 235
 organisational performance 233
 PFMA, 1999 225
 PIC 229
 policies, systems, skills development 227
 procurement 227-228
 retirement fund reform 227
 Sars 230
 sources of revenue 231-233
 Strate Limited 251
 tax system 230
 Treasury norms and standards 227
 National Traditional Dance and Music Festival 94
 National Waste Management Strategy 213
 National Youth, Arts, Culture and Heritage Expressions Campaign 89
 National Zoological Gardens of South Africa, Pretoria 207, 468
 Aquarium and Reptile Park 209
 nation-building 4
 natural history collections 103
 NBFET 176
 NBSAP 199
 NCACC 439, 450-451
 NCC 452
 NCHM 102, 103
 NCLIS 105, 189
 NCOP 296, 303, 512
 NCPCF 429
 NCPS 374
 NCR 237
 NCRF 129
 NCS 179-180, 185
 NDA 503
 Ndebele Museum, Middelburg 104
 NDMC 309
 NDPP 370
 Necsa 410, 411
 NEEA 407
 NEF 145
 NEIMS 186
 Nelson Mandela Metropolitan Art Museum, Port Elizabeth 95
 Nelson Mandela Metropolitan University 11
 Nelson Mandela Museum, Mthatha 88, 102
 Nelspruit 22, 550-551
 Nemisa 100, 129
 Nepad 43, 112, 113-114, 145, 147, 255, 256, 416, 563
 Nepal 445
 Nersa 416
 New Asian African Strategic Partnership 147
 New Zealand 271
 Newcastle 13
 news agencies 129
 Newspaper Association of South Africa 127
 newspapers 123-125
 Newtown Film and TV School 100
 Next-Generation Network Project 314
 NFVF 99
 NGB 233
 NGOs 188-189, 304
 Ngodwana 23
 NHBRC 356
 NHC 83
 NHFC 356
 NHLS 333-334, 481-482
 NHRP 332
 NIA 451
 NICD 333
 Nicoc 451
 NIF 75
 Niger 267

Nigeria 265
 NIPP 157
 NLB 235
 NLDS 57-58
 NLPF 3
 NLRD 175
 NLS 2
 NLSA 104, 105-106, 190
 NNR 410, 411
 non-ferrous minerals 405
 non-motorised transport 563
 non-profit health sector 335
 North Africa 263
 North America
 trade with 149-150
 North Coast, KwaZulu-Natal 555
 North-East Asia
 trade with 150-151
 North-South co-operation 285
 North West 17-19
 2010 FIFA World Cup TM 19
 agriculture 18-19
 Film Festival 100
 manufacturing 18
 mining 18
 people 18
 tourism 549-550
 Northern Cape 14-16, 196
 agriculture and industry 15
 mining 15
 people 15
 tourism 541-544
 Northern Flagship Institution, Pretoria 102, 103
 NPA 362, 369
 NPI 157
 NPOs 503-504
 NPS 373
 NQF 175
 NRDS 456, 461
 NRF 199, 208, 465, 466-467
 NRG 234
 NSA 165, 514
 NSBAC 158
 NSDS 164
 NSF 164, 165
 NSFAS 172, 177, 181
 NSSD 195-196
 NTAs 186

nuclear energy 410-411
 Nufcor 410
 Nu-Metro 100
 Nurcha 356
 nurses 333
 nutrition for offenders 389
 NWRS 592
 NZG 207, 209

O

occupational health 345
 ocean energy 420
 oceans 6
 Odendaalsrus 17
 ODS 219
 offender accommodation 384
 Office of the Family Advocate 379
 Office of the Press Ombudsman 128
 Office of the Registrar of Banks 236
 official languages 2
 OHS 166
 OIC 452
 OIE 71
 oil and gas 412-413
 OIV 73
 Okiep 15
 Onderstepoort Biological Products 60-61
 Onderstepoort Veterinary Institute 20
 One City Festival, Taung 92
 One Force 443-444
 online media 127
 OPDs 190
 Oppikoppi 92
 OPSC 316, 318
 OR Tambo International Airport 20
 oral health 344
 professionals 332
 Oral History Project 104
 Orange Free State 32
 Orange River 14, 16, 33
 Orange River Valley 15, 198
 Order of Ikhamanga 83
 Order of Luthuli 82
 Order of Mapungubwe 82
 Order of Mendi for Bravery 83
 Order of the Baobab 82
 Order of the Companions of OR Tambo 82

ostrich-farming/industry 11
 outreach programmes 501
 Overberg 540-541
 Overberg Test Range 449-450
 overcrowding in prisons 384-385

P

P4 121
 Pacific Islands 271
 Panorama 551
 PanSALB 3
 PAP 254
 Parcelplus 118
 parenting magazines 126
 Parliament 296
 partnerships
 education 188
 Parys 16
 PBMR 462
 PCC 302, 308
 PCLU 372
 PDPHCP 335
 peace support
 SANDF 444-445
 Pebble-Bed Modular Reactor 162
 people with disabilities
 housing subsidies 355
 social development services 501
 Peoples' Housing Process 355
 PEPFAR 273
 Performing Arts Centre of the Free State,
 Bloemfontein 84
 permanent residence 322-323
 pest control 61
 Petronet 580
 PetroSA 264, 412
 PFMA 225
 Phalaborwa SDI 23
 pharmacists 332-333
 photography 96
 PHPT 357
 Phuthaditjhaba 16
 physicians 332
 PIC 229
 PICC 98
 Piet Retief 22
 Pietermaritzburg 557
 Pilanesberg National Park 18, 424
 PILAR 310
 Pilgrim's Rest, Mpumalanga
 mining museum 103
 Pioneer Open Air Museum, Pretoria 102, 103
 PLAS 74, 233
 platinum production 17, 18
 platinum-group metals 404
 Playhouse Company, Durban 84
 PMSA 127
 PNC on ISAD 115
 Poetry Africa 98
 poker 518
 Policy on Religion and Education 180
 polio 337
 Polokwane 23
 population 2
 Population Register 320-321
 Porcinarium, Irene 102
 Port Edward 12
 Port Elizabeth 11, 12
 Museum 103
 Oceanarium 209
 Snake Park 209
 Port of Ngqura 12
 Port Nolloth 15
 Port St Johns 11
 Festival 92
 ports 578-580
 Cape Town 8
 deepwater ports 579
 Durban 12
 East London 11
 Edward 12
 hub ports 579-580
 Landlord Services 578-579
 Lighthouse Services 579
 Maritime Services 579
 multipurpose ports 580
 Ngqura 12
 pipelines 580
 Port and Corporate Affairs 579
 Port Elizabeth 11
 Portcon International 579
 Richards Bay 13
 St Johns 11
 Trade and Logistics 578
 Postbank 118

Potchefstroom 18
 postage stamps 118
 postal sector 117-119
 international and regional co-operation 119
 policy and legislation 117
 South African Post Office 117-118
 power stations 23
 PRC 150-151
 President 297
 Presidential Working Group on Big Business 438
 Pretoria 20, 21, 553-554
 Art Museum 103
 Freedom Park 88
 State Theatre 84
 Pretoria National Botanical Garden 200, 201
 price inflation 142-143
 primary
 capital-market activity 243-244
 healthcare 328-329
 Prince Edward islands 204
 print 123-127
 circulation 127
 distribution 127
 magazines 125-127
 newspapers 123-125
 online media 127
 Printing Industries Federation of South Africa 129
 private individuals resident in South Africa 247
 private-sector bond issuance 243
 privilege system for offenders 387-388
 processed minerals 405
 procurement 227-228
 Professional Photographers of South Africa 129
 Project Consolidate 305-306
 project-linked housing subsidies 354
 Property Charter 163
 Protea Atlas Database 201
 protected areas 194
 Protection and Security Services 434
 Protocol on the African Court of Human and
 People's Rights 254
 provinces 8-25
 Eastern Cape 10-12
 Free State 16-17
 Gauteng 19-21
 KwaZulu-Natal 12-14
 Limpopo 23-25

Mpumalanga 21-23
 North West 17-19
 Northern Cape 14-16
 Western Cape 8-10
 provincial
 government 300-302
 health 328, 334-335
 library services 105
 PSC 315
 Protocol 255
 PSCBC 313
 psychological services for offenders 390
 PSW 311
 PTA 150
 public
 holidays 3
 libraries 105
 Public Protector 379-380
 Public Service *see* Department of Public Service
 and Administration
 Public Service Gender Equality Strategic
 Framework 312
 public transport 566-568
 buses 568
 motor vehicles 567
 TRP 567-568
 National Transport Register 567
 Public Transport Action Plan 562
 Public Transport Strategy 562
 public works programmes 163-164
 CBE 164
 CIDB 163
 CPIDP 163
 EPWP 163

Q

Quality Assurance of Qualifications and Curriculum
 Unit 175
 Quality Improvement and Development Strategy
 178
 quarantinable diseases 346

R

RAC 62
 radio 120-121

- Radio 702 121
 Radio Algoa 121
 Radio Jacaranda 121
 Radio KFM 121
 Radio Oranje 121
 Radio Sesotho 120
 Radio Xhosa 120
 Radio Zulu 120
 Radioactive Waste Management Policy 214
 rail transport 571-572
 rainfall 7
 Ramsar Convention 207
 Rand exchange rate 245-246
 Rand Refinery 17
 RDP 227
 Re Aga Boswa Project 368
 real gross domestic product 140
 RECs 255
 recreation rehabilitation programme 511
 recycling 217
 regional courts 363
 rehabilitation of offenders 389
 reintegration into society of offenders 392
 release of offenders 391-392
 relief features 7
 religion 4-6
 African traditionalists 5-6
 Afrikaans churches 5
 AICs 4-5
 Christian churches 4-5
 churches 4-5
 Hindus 6
 Jewish 6
 Muslims 6
 ZCC 5
 religious groups 4
 relocation assistance 355
 removal of undesirable persons 323
 renewable energy 417-418
 rental housing for the poor 351
 reproductive health 340-341
 Research and Development Unit 175
 reservist system 429-430
 responsible gambling 234
 retirement fund reform 227
 retirement funds 242
 RFSTP 62-63
 RHLF 357
 Richards Bay 13
 Richards Bay Coal Terminal 13
 Richards Bay Minerals 13
 Richmond 13
 Richtersveld Cultural and Botanical Landscape 206
 Richtersveld National Park 15, 197
 Risa 468-471
 risk management 63
 RNCS 173
 road-traffic safety 570-571
 Arrive Alive 571
 legislation 571
 RAF 571
 road transport 565
 municipal roads 566
 national roads 565-566
 provincial roads 566
 toll roads 566
 Robben Island 206, 216
 Robben Island Museum, Cape Town 102
 rock art 96-97
 Roman Catholic Church 5
 Roodepoort 20
 Rosslyn 20
 Royal National Park 13
 rugby 518-519
 Rugby World Cup 515
 Rules Board for Courts of Law 378
 rural housing subsidies 355
 Rustenburg 18, 550
 Rustenburg Nature Reserve 18
 Rwanda 262
- S**
- SA Army 444
 SA Navy 441, 443, 444
 SAA 162
 SAAF 443, 444, 445
 SAAO 467
 Saasta 466
 Saavi 340
 SABC 119, 120, 121
 SABC News International 121
 Sabi 199
 Sabie 22
 Sabif 199
 SABS 480-481

- Regulatory Affairs and Consumer Protection 481
- SABS Holdings 481
- StanSa 480
- SACAA 565
- SACE 176, 188
 - Code of Professional Ethics 176
- Sacendu Project 343
- Sacu 69, 146, 148, 150, 151, 231, 259, 272
- SADC 43, 51, 69, 70, 146, 148, 215, 239, 255, 259, 260, 377, 399, 460, 526
 - Protocol on Trade 148, 261
- SADC-EU EPA negotiations 276
- SADR 264
- SAEON 199-200, 468
- Safcol 163
- Safety and Security *see* Department of Safety and Security
- Safex 248
- SAGNC 84
- Sahra 83
- SAHRC 362, 376, 381
 - advocacy, public awareness, community outreach 381
 - education and training 381
 - legal services 381
 - research and documentation 381
 - structure 381
- Saiab 467
- Saids 514-515
- Saldanha Bay 6
- Saldanha Steel Project 10
- Salga 303
- SALRC 376, 380
- Salt 467
- Samaf 159
- Samas 94
- Samdi 313, 319-320
- SAMHS 442, 444, 446-447
- Sammy Marks Museum, Pretoria 102, 103
- Samora Machel Project 88
- Samos System 236
- Samsa 215, 564
- San people
 - rock art/engravings 15, 16, 30, 96
- Sanai 452
- Sanas 234
- Sanbi 194, 198, 200-201, 202, 203
- SANC 333
- SANDF 258, 259, 262, 335, 439-451
 - armaments 447
 - Armcor Business 447
 - bases 443
 - Chief of the SANDF 441
 - Command and Management Information Systems 446
 - Defence, Science and Technology Institute 447
 - Defence Secretariat 441
 - Defence Strategy 439-440
 - Defence Support Group 448
 - Denel 448-451
 - Directorate: Air Force Acquisition 445-446
 - Directorate: Naval Acquisition 446
 - Facilities, Land and Environment 446
 - force employment 443
 - force preparation 444
 - force support 444
 - functions 439
 - Human Resource 2010 Strategy 441
 - Inspector-General 442
 - legislation 439
 - managing transformation 442
 - military strategic capabilities 440-441
 - military strategic concepts 440
 - military strategic objectives 440
 - Military Strategy 440
 - military veterans 444
 - missions 440
 - MSDS 441
 - One Force 443-444
 - operational commitments 443
 - operations 442
 - organisational structure 441
 - peace support 444
 - policy and planning 442
 - resettlement 444
 - South African Military Health Service System 446
 - support to SAPS 442, 443
 - Test and Evaluation Group 448
- Sanef 127, 128
- Saneri 407-408, 462
- Sanlam Community Press Awards 130
- Sanlam's Financial Journalist of the Year 130
- Sanli 183, 188
- SANParks 194, 204-205
- Sanral 564
- Sapa 129

- SAPC 328, 333
 Sapca 61
 Sapia 400, 411
 Sapip 72
 Sapo 113, 117-119
 business centres 118
 Courier Freight Group 118-119
 Internet facilities 118
 Parcelplus 118
 postage stamps 118
 Postbank 118
 Securemail 118
 social pensioners 118
 SAPP 416-417, 420
 Sappi Magazine Publishers' Association of South Africa PICA Awards 130
 SAPS 428-439
 2010 FIFA World Cup™ 437
 BAC 437-438
 Career Management 435
 cluster co-ordination 433
 Code of Conduct 428
 Communication and Liaison Services 437
 community and sector policing 429
 contact crime 430
 Crime Intelligence 433
 Crime Record and Forensic Science Services 433
 Criminal Record Centre 433-434
 Detective Service 433
 divisions 431-439
 Efficiency Services 436-437
 Finance and Administration 436
 Forensic Science Laboratory 434
 Information and Systems Management 437
 Internal Audit 437
 JCPS Cluster 429
 Legal Services 436
 National Inspectorate 435
 performance management 429
 Personnel Services 436
 policing capacity 430
 policy 429-431
 Presidential Working Group on Big Business 438
 protection and security services 434-435
 regional and continental initiatives 431
 reservist system 429-430
 restructuring 430-431
 Strategic Management 436
 strategic overview 429-431
 Supply Chain Management 435
 technology 431
 Training 435-436
 violence against women and children 430
 visible policing 432-433
 Saqa 130, 164, 175-176
 Sarah Baartman monument 88
 SARB 223, 235-236, 244, 246, 250
 SARCC 573
 Sarchi 460
 SARPCCO 431
 Sars 149, 230-233, 365
 air-passenger departure tax 233
 customs duty 231-232
 e-filing 233
 estate duty 232
 excise duty 232
 Filing of Tax Returns Season 233
 income tax 231
 international tax agreements 230
 organisational performance 233
 skills-development levy 232
 stamp duty 232
 tax system 230
 transfer duty 232
 UST 232
 VAT 231
 Sasa 458
 Sascoc 508, 513-514
 Sasda 400
 Sasol Limited 412, 481
 Sasolburg 16
 SASS 451
 SASSMC 403
 satellite broadcasting 122
 Satellite Communications Network 121
 SAUJ 128
 savanna biome 24, 196-197
 Sawen 159
 SAWIMA 398
 SAX 162
 SCCU 373
 school
 -admission policy 180
 enrichment 185
 -governing bodies 172
 safety measures 187
 sport 511

- School Register of Needs 186
 science and technology 282
 Science and Technology *see* Department of
 Science and Technology
 science councils 471-481
 scientific reserves 204
 SCLP 215
 Scopa 226
 SDIs 155
 Second Decade of Freedom 43-44
 secondary capital-market activity 244-246
 Secretariat for Safety and Security 428
 Secunda 23
 Securemail 118
 Seda 145, 158-159
 segregation 35-37
 semi-precious stones 15
 Senegal 266-267
 Sentech Limited 122
 Servcon Housing Solutions 356-357
 Seta 164-165, 187, 188
 settlers 32
 sexual offences courts 372-373
 SFWS 592-593
 SHF 357
 SHI 331
 Sho't Left Campaign 525-526
 Sierra Leone 267
 signal distribution 122
 silver mining industry 17, 404
 Single Public Service 310
 Sishen Mine 15
 Sita 314
 Sithengi Film and Video Festival and Market, Cape
 Town 100
 SIU 362, 371
 SKA 14
 Skep 203
 Skeppies 203
 skills database 309
 skills-development levy 232
 slaves/slavery 30, 31, 32
 small claims courts 366
 SMEDP 155, 156
 SMEs 228
 SMMes 158, 207, 525
 SMPP 509
 snake parks 209
 Soca Unit 371-372
 soccer 519
 Social Responsibility Index 249
 social
 -crime prevention 497
 development 285
 housing 353
 relief 491
 transformation 4
 Social Development *see* Department of Social
 Development
 Social Housing Regulatory Authority 353
 social-work services for offenders 390
 SOEs 161-162, 223, 407
 SoilCare 65
 solar energy 418-419
 CSP 419
 solar-passive building design 418
 solar-thermal power generation 419
 solar water-heating programme 418-419
 Soshanguve 20
 sources of revenue 231-233
 South Africa-EU TDCa 70, 149
 South Africa-Japan Partnership Forum 151
 South African Bank Note Company 236
 South African corporates 247
 South African National Gallery, Cape Town 103
 South African Air Force Museum, Pretoria 102
 South African Breweries (SAB) Journalism Awards
 130
 South African Cultural History Museum, Cape Town
 102, 103
 South African Electronic Music Conference 94
 South African Fashion Week 97
 South African Guild of Motoring Journalists 129
 South African Institute of Aquatic Biodiversity,
 Grahamstown 103
 South African Library for the Blind 105, 106
 South African Museum, Cape Town 102, 103
 South African Music Week 92, 93
 South African National Council for the Blind 105
 South African National Gallery, Cape Town 95, 102
 South African National Museum of Military History,
 Johannesburg 102, 104
 South African National Survey of Arachnida 203
 South African Reptile Conservation Assessment
 203
 South African Republic (Transvaal) 32, 33

- South African Railways 120
 South African Typographical Union 129
 South African Wetlands Conservation Programme 207
 South African Young Nuclear Professionals 411
 South Asia
 foreign relations with 269-270
 trade with 151
 South Coast, KwaZulu-Natal 556-557
 South Sotho Museum, Witsieshoek 104
 South-East Asia
 foreign relations with 270
 trade with 150
 Southern Africa
 foreign relations with 257-261
 Southern African Development Community Protocol on Education and Training 189
 Southern African Editors' Forum 127
 Southern African Large Telescope 14
 Soweto 20
 Film Festival 100
 space science 458
 special interest magazines 127
 Specialist Press Association 129
 Spectrum Management Policy 113
 Spier Summer Festival, Western Cape 92
 spiritual care of offenders 390-391
 Splashy Fen Music Festival, Durban 92
 Sport and Recreation South Africa 507-520
 sport magazines 126
 Sports Tourism Project 508-509
 Springbok 15
 Springbok Radio 120
 Springs 20
 SRSA 508, 510, 511
 St Lucia Estuary 13
 Stakeholder Management Policy Framework 113
 stamp duty 232
 Standerton 22
 State Legal Services 376
 state of the environment 195
 State Theatre, Pretoria 84
 State Veterinary Services 60
 statutory bodies
 education 174-177
 health 328
 social services 503
 Stellenbosch University 9
 Step 203
 Sterkfontein caves 30
 Ster-Kinekor 100
 Strate Limited 251
 stokvels 241
 Stone Age 30
 Stutterheim 11
 subsistence fishing 215
 substance abuse 343, 499-500
 succulent Karoo biome 196, 197
 succulents 15
 Sudan 264, 445
 sugar-cane production/industry 14
 Suikerbosrand
 museum 103
 Sun City 18
 sunshine 8
 Sunshine Coast 547-548
 supervision of parolees 392-393
 Supply-Chain Management Framework 228
 SAPS 435
 Supreme Court of Appeal 16, 363
 surfing 519
 sustainable development
 African continent 399
 Agenda 21 70
 sustainable resource management and use 51
 international agreements and conventions 70
 irrigation 51
 physical degradation 51
 sustainable
 livelihoods 492-493
 -use areas 207
 Sutherland 14
 Swaziland 259
 swimming 519
- T**
- Table Bay 30
 Table Mountain 425
 Table Mountain National Park 201
 Tankwa-Karoo National Park 197
 Tanzania 259

- targeted investment strategy 146
- TAU SA 67
- Taung child 30
- tax system 230
- taxonomic research 201
- TB 336, 339
- TDCA 69, 148, 149, 275
- tea plantations 14
- technology 21
- telecommunications 112-114
 - policy 112-114
- telemedicine 329-330
- telephone-interpreting services 3
- television 121-122
 - free-to-air television 121
 - M-Net 121
 - SABC 121
 - satellite broadcasting 121
 - signal distribution 121-122
- Telkom 115-116
 - CoEs 116
 - economic empowerment 116
 - Telkom Foundation 116
 - training and development 116
- temperatures 7
- temporary residence 223
- tennis 519-520
- TEO 156-157
- TEP 528-529
- Test and Evaluation Group
 - SANDF 448
- TFCAs 205
- TGCSA 532-533
- Thabazimbi 23
- Thabo Mofutsanyana 545
- theatre 92
- Theiler Veterinary Science Museum, Onderstepoort 102
- thicket biome 198
- Threatened Species Programme 203
- Three Continents Film Festival 100
- Thubelisha Homes 357-358
- Thulamela 30
- Thusong Service Centres 314
- Thutong 188
- Time of the Writer 98
- Tisa 146, 153-156
 - CSP 153
 - enterprise and industry development 155-156
 - export development and promotion 153, 154
 - IIC 154
 - international operations 155
 - promoting and facilitating investment 153-154
- Tissa 3
- TLP 529
- Togo 266
- tourism 19, 24, 198, 204, 523-557
 - see also Department of Environmental Affairs and Tourism
 - 2010 FIFA World Cup TM 527-531
 - accommodation 532
 - guiding 530
 - hints for the tourist 531-533
 - HRD 529-531
 - policy and initiatives 525-527
 - provinces 534-557
 - research 533-534
 - safety 533
 - skills development 530-531
 - tourist safety 533
 - TSA 534
- tobacco control 342
- Tourism and Hospitality Education and Training Authority 529-530
- Tourism Indaba 529
- Track and Trace System 313
- traditional
 - councils 297-297
 - leadership 297-298
 - medicine 341-342
- transfer duty 232
- Transformation Project
 - SANDF 442
- Transnet 138, 163, 565
- Transnet Freight Rail 572-573
- Transport see Department of Transport
- Transvaal Museum, Pretoria 102, 103
- Transvaal Snake Park, Midrand 209
- Treasury norms and standards 227
- TRC 42, 372, 382
- triathlon 520
- Tshumisano 464
- Tsitsikamma 548
- Tsitsikamma forest 198
- Tsongakraal, Letsitele 104
- Tsonga Open-Air Museum 24

Tswaing Meteorite Crater Museum, Pretoria 102, 103
Tunisia 267
Twib 159
Two Oceans Aquarium, Cape Town 209
Tzaneen 24

U

UEMP 211-212
UIF 165
Uitenhage 11
Ukhahlamba-Drakensberg Park 206
Umalusi 174, 175
UN
 and South Africa 285-286
UN Charter 440
UN Millennium Declaration 195
UN Population Fund
 Second Country Support Programme for South Africa 501-502
UN Security Council 282
UN World Food Programme 62
UN World Summit Outcome 281
UNCPD 285
Unctad 152
UNEP 216
Unesco 189
UNFCCC 212, 218, 422
UNGA 281
Unicef 189
United International Pictures 100
United Kingdom 278
United States of America
 foreign relations with 272-273
Universal Service and Access Policy 112-113
Universal Service Fund 113, 114
universities 181-182 (list of)
 Eastern Cape 11
 Free State 16
 Gauteng 20
 KwaZulu-Natal 13
 Western Cape 9
University of Cape Town 9
University of Fort Hare 11
University of Johannesburg 20
University of KwaZulu-Natal 13
University of Pretoria 20

University of South Africa 20
University of South Africa Gallery 95
University of the Free State 16
University of the Western Cape 9
University of the Witwatersrand 20
UNWTO 526
Upton 14
Upper Karoo 543
uranium-mining industry 17
uridashi bonds 244
Usaasa 112-113, 114
USALs 113, 114
uShaka Marine World, Durban 209
UST 232

V

Vaal Dam 21
Vaal River 16, 21, 33
Vaal Triangle 21
Vaalharts Irrigation Scheme 15
Vanderbijlpark 20
VAT 231
VeldCare 65
VEP 497
Vereeniging 20
veterinary services 60-61, 68
Vhembe district 549
Victim-Empowerment Programme 375
violence
 against women and children 343
 prevention 343-344
Virgin Mobile 116
Virginia 17
visas 322
Visible Policing 432
visual arts 95-96
Vodacom 116
Vodacom Awards for Journalism Across All Mediums 130
Voortrekker Museum, Pietermaritzburg 102
Vredefort Dome 206, 424
Vryburg 18
Vulindlela Academy 240

W

Wada 515

- Walter Sisulu University of Technology 11
 War Museum of the Boer Republics, Bloemfontein 102, 104
 waste management 213-214
 Water Affairs and Forestry *see* Department of Water Affairs and Forestry
 water-management institutions 594-596
 CMAs 594
 irrigation boards 595-596
 research 595
 water boards 595
 WfW Programme 596-597
 WRC 595
 WUAs 595-596
 water-quality management 214
 water research 482-483
 water-resource management 587-590, 593-594, 597
 dams and water schemes 597-598
 flood and drought management 597
 groundwater resources 598-599
 monitoring water resources 588-590
 NWRIA 594
 WAR Programme 593-594
 Waterberg 23, 548
 Waterberg Biosphere Reserve 206
 WaterCare 65
 weekend newspapers 126
 WEF 147, 153
 welfare services 502-503
 Welcome Campaign 525
 Welkom 16, 17
 West Africa 263
 West Bank (East London) IDZ 12
 West Coast 538-540
 Western Cape 8-10
 2010 FIFA World Cup™ 10
 agriculture and marine fishery 9
 industry 10
 people 9
 tourism 9, 534
 Western Electric Company 120
 wetlands 202, 207
 Wetlands International 207
 WfW Programme 596-597
 WHO 337, 342, 421
 Wild Coast 10, 11, 546-547
 SDI 12
 Wild Frontier 552
 wilderness areas 197, 204
 Wildlife Biodiversity Resources 200
 Willem Prinsloo Agricultural Museum, Pretoria 102, 103
 William Fehr Collection, Cape Town 102
 William Humphreys Art Gallery, Kimberley 102, 103
 wind turbines 419-420
 Windybrow Theatre, Johannesburg 84
 Windybrow Theatre Festival, Johannesburg 92
 Wine and Spirits Agreement 73
 WINSA 411
 WIO-LaB Project 216
 Witbank 22, 23
 Witness-Protection Programme 373
 Wits Theatre 94
 Witwatersrand goldfields 34, 423
 Women
 and sport 509-510
 magazines 125-126
 social-development services 500
 Women's Monument 88
 Working for Wetlands Programme 202, 207
 Workplace Challenge Programme 157
 World Catalogue for Natural Resources 51
 World Cup Health Unit 332
 World Food Summit Plan of Action 63
 World Heritage Convention 194, 206
 world heritage sites 206
 World Parks Congress 204
 World Wetlands Day 207
 WRCC 113
 WSAs 586
 WSSD 43, 195-196, 281, 399, 417
 WTO 69, 146, 151, 152-153, 278
 WUAs 586
 WWF-SA 202
- X**
- Xhariep 544-545
- Y**
- YFM 121
 Yield-X 245
 young offenders 387
 Youth into Science Strategy 465
 youth



development 501
international obligations 501
magazines 126

Z

Zambia 259
ZCC 5
Zimbabwe 260
zoological gardens 207-208
Zulu kingdom 31
Zululand and Elephant Coast 555-556